

The Java EE 7

Tutorial

Release 7 for Java EE Platform

E39031-01

August 2013

The Java EE 7 Tutorial, Release 7 for Java EE Platform

E39031-01

Copyright © 2013, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Eric Jendrock, Ricardo Cervera-Navarro, Ian Evans, Devika Gollapudi, Kim Haase, William Markito, Chinmayee Srivathsa

Contributing Author:

Contributor:

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle America, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

Contents

Preface	xxxvii
Audience	xxxvii
Documentation Accessibility	xxxvii
Before You Read This Book	xxxviii
Related Documentation	xxxviii
Conventions	xxxviii
Default Paths and File Names	xxxix

Part I Introduction

1 Overview

1.1	Java EE 7 Platform Highlights	1-2
1.2	Java EE Application Model	1-2
1.3	Distributed Multitiered Applications	1-3
1.3.1	Security	1-4
1.3.2	Java EE Components	1-4
1.3.3	Java EE Clients	1-5
1.3.3.1	Web Clients	1-5
1.3.3.2	Application Clients	1-5
1.3.3.3	Applets	1-5
1.3.3.4	The JavaBeans Component Architecture	1-6
1.3.3.5	Java EE Server Communications	1-6
1.3.4	Web Components	1-6
1.3.5	Business Components	1-7
1.3.6	Enterprise Information System Tier	1-8
1.4	Java EE Containers	1-8
1.4.1	Container Services	1-8
1.4.2	Container Types	1-9
1.5	Web Services Support	1-10
1.5.1	XML	1-11
1.5.2	SOAP Transport Protocol	1-11
1.5.3	WSDL Standard Format	1-11
1.6	Java EE Application Assembly and Deployment	1-12
1.7	Development Roles	1-12
1.7.1	Java EE Product Provider	1-12

1.7.2	Tool Provider.....	1-12
1.7.3	Application Component Provider.....	1-13
1.7.3.1	Enterprise Bean Developer.....	1-13
1.7.3.2	Web Component Developer	1-13
1.7.3.3	Application Client Developer.....	1-13
1.7.4	Application Assembler	1-13
1.7.5	Application Deployer and Administrator.....	1-13
1.8	Java EE 7 APIs	1-14
1.8.1	Enterprise JavaBeans Technology	1-17
1.8.2	Java Servlet Technology.....	1-17
1.8.3	JavaServer Faces Technology	1-18
1.8.4	JavaServer Pages Technology	1-18
1.8.5	JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library	1-19
1.8.6	Java Persistence API.....	1-19
1.8.7	Java Transaction API.....	1-19
1.8.8	Java API for RESTful Web Services.....	1-19
1.8.9	Managed Beans	1-19
1.8.10	Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE.....	1-20
1.8.11	Dependency Injection for Java	1-20
1.8.12	Bean Validation	1-20
1.8.13	Java Message Service API.....	1-20
1.8.14	Java EE Connector Architecture	1-20
1.8.15	JavaMail API.....	1-21
1.8.16	Java Authorization Contract for Containers.....	1-21
1.8.17	Java Authentication Service Provider Interface for Containers.....	1-21
1.8.18	Java API for WebSocket	1-21
1.8.19	Java API for JSON Processing.....	1-22
1.8.20	Concurrency Utilities for Java EE.....	1-22
1.8.21	Batch Applications for the Java Platform	1-22
1.9	Java EE 7 APIs in the Java Platform, Standard Edition 7	1-22
1.9.1	Java Database Connectivity API.....	1-22
1.9.2	Java Naming and Directory Interface API	1-23
1.9.3	JavaBeans Activation Framework	1-23
1.9.4	Java API for XML Processing.....	1-23
1.9.5	Java Architecture for XML Binding	1-23
1.9.6	Java API for XML Web Services	1-24
1.9.7	SOAP with Attachments API for Java	1-24
1.9.8	Java Authentication and Authorization Service.....	1-24
1.9.9	Common Annotations for the Java Platform	1-24
1.10	GlassFish Server Tools	1-24

2 Using the Tutorial Examples

2.1	Required Software	2-1
2.1.1	Java EE 7 Software Development Kit.....	2-1
2.1.1.1	SDK Installation Tips	2-2
2.1.2	Java Platform, Standard Edition.....	2-2
2.1.3	Java EE 7 Tutorial Component.....	2-2

2.1.3.1	To Obtain the Tutorial Component Using the Update Tool	2-2
2.1.4	NetBeans IDE	2-3
2.1.4.1	To Install NetBeans IDE without GlassFish Server	2-3
2.1.4.2	To Add GlassFish Server as a Server in NetBeans IDE.....	2-3
2.1.5	Apache Maven	2-3
2.2	Starting and Stopping the GlassFish Server.....	2-4
2.2.1	To Start the GlassFish Server Using NetBeans IDE	2-4
2.2.2	To Stop the GlassFish Server Using NetBeans IDE	2-4
2.2.3	To Start the GlassFish Server from the Command Line.....	2-4
2.2.4	To Stop the GlassFish Server from the Command Line.....	2-4
2.3	Starting the Administration Console	2-5
2.3.1	To Start the Administration Console in NetBeans IDE.....	2-5
2.4	Starting and Stopping the Java DB Server.....	2-5
2.4.1	To Start the Database Server Using NetBeans IDE.....	2-5
2.5	Building the Examples	2-6
2.6	Tutorial Example Directory Structure	2-6
2.7	Java EE 7 Maven Archetypes in the Tutorial	2-6
2.7.1	Installing the Tutorial Archetypes	2-6
2.7.1.1	Installing the Tutorial Archetypes from NetBeans IDE.....	2-6
2.7.1.2	Installing the Tutorial Archetypes Using Maven	2-7
2.8	Getting the Latest Updates to the Tutorial.....	2-7
2.8.1	To Update the Tutorial Using the Command Line.....	2-7
2.8.2	To Update the Tutorial Using NetBeans IDE	2-7
2.9	Debugging Java EE Applications	2-7
2.9.1	Using the Server Log.....	2-7
2.9.1.1	To Use the Administration Console Log Viewer.....	2-8
2.9.2	Using a Debugger	2-8
2.9.2.1	To Debug an Application Using a Debugger	2-8

Part II Platform Basics

3 Resource Creation

3.1	Resources and JNDI Naming	3-1
3.2	DataSource Objects and Connection Pools	3-2
3.3	Creating Resources Administratively	3-2

4 Injection

4.1	Resource Injection	4-1
4.2	Dependency Injection.....	4-2
4.3	Main Differences Between Resource Injection and Dependency Injection	4-2

5 Packaging

5.1	Packaging Applications	5-1
5.2	Packaging Enterprise Beans	5-3
5.2.1	Packaging Enterprise Beans in EJB JAR Modules.....	5-3
5.2.2	Packaging Enterprise Beans in WAR Modules	5-3

5.3	Packaging Web Archives	5-4
5.4	Packaging Resource Adapter Archives	5-5

Part III The Web Tier

6 Getting Started with Web Applications

6.1	Web Applications.....	6-1
6.2	Web Application Lifecycle.....	6-2
6.3	A Web Module That Uses JavaServer Faces Technology: The hello1 Example.....	6-3
6.3.1	To View the hello1 Web Module Using NetBeans IDE.....	6-3
6.3.1.1	Introduction to Scopes	6-6
6.3.2	Packaging and Deploying the hello1 Web Module	6-6
6.3.2.1	To Build and Package the hello1 Web Module Using NetBeans IDE.....	6-7
6.3.2.2	To Build and Package the hello1 Web Module Using Maven	6-7
6.3.3	Viewing Deployed Web Modules	6-7
6.3.3.1	To View Deployed Web Modules Using the Administration Console	6-7
6.3.3.2	To View Deployed Web Modules Using the asadmin Command	6-7
6.3.3.3	To View Deployed Web Modules Using NetBeans IDE.....	6-8
6.3.4	Running the Deployed hello1 Web Module	6-8
6.3.4.1	Dynamic Reloading of Deployed Modules	6-8
6.3.5	Undeploying the hello1 Web Module	6-8
6.3.5.1	To Undeploy the hello1 Web Module Using NetBeans IDE.....	6-8
6.3.5.2	To Undeploy the hello1 Web Module Using the asadmin Command	6-8
6.4	A Web Module That Uses Java Servlet Technology: The hello2 Example	6-9
6.4.1	Mapping URLs to Web Components.....	6-9
6.4.2	Examining the hello2 Web Module.....	6-9
6.4.2.1	To View the hello2 Web Module Using NetBeans IDE	6-9
6.4.3	Running the hello2 Example	6-11
6.4.3.1	To Run the hello2 Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	6-11
6.4.3.2	To Run the hello2 Example Using Maven	6-11
6.5	Configuring Web Applications.....	6-12
6.5.1	Setting Context Parameters	6-12
6.5.1.1	To Add a Context Parameter Using NetBeans IDE.....	6-12
6.5.1.2	To Create a web.xml File Using NetBeans IDE.....	6-12
6.5.2	Declaring Welcome Files	6-13
6.5.3	Mapping Errors to Error Screens.....	6-13
6.5.3.1	To Set Up Error Mapping Using NetBeans IDE.....	6-13
6.5.4	Declaring Resource References	6-14
6.5.4.1	Declaring a Reference to a Resource.....	6-15
6.5.4.2	Declaring a Reference to a Web Service	6-15
6.6	Further Information about Web Applications	6-15

7 JavaServer Faces Technology

7.1	What Is a JavaServer Faces Application?	7-2
7.2	JavaServer Faces Technology Benefits	7-3
7.3	A Simple JavaServer Faces Application.....	7-3

7.4	User Interface Component Model	7-5
7.4.1	User Interface Component Classes	7-5
7.4.2	Component Rendering Model	7-7
7.4.3	Conversion Model	7-8
7.4.4	Event and Listener Model	7-8
7.4.5	Validation Model	7-9
7.5	Navigation Model.....	7-10
7.6	The Lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces Application.....	7-13
7.6.1	Overview of the JavaServer Faces Lifecycle	7-13
7.6.2	Restore View Phase	7-15
7.6.3	Apply Request Values Phase	7-16
7.6.4	Process Validations Phase	7-16
7.6.5	Update Model Values Phase	7-17
7.6.6	Invoke Application Phase.....	7-17
7.6.7	Render Response Phase	7-17
7.7	Further Information about JavaServer Faces Technology	7-18

8 Introduction to Facelets

8.1	What Is Facelets?	8-1
8.2	The Lifecycle of a Facelets Application.....	8-3
8.3	Developing a Simple Facelets Application.....	8-3
8.3.1	Creating a Facelets Application.....	8-4
8.3.1.1	Developing a Managed Bean.....	8-4
8.3.1.2	Creating Facelets Views.....	8-5
8.3.2	Configuring the Application.....	8-7
8.3.3	Running the guessnumber-jsf Facelets Example.....	8-7
8.3.3.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the guessnumber-jsf Example Using NetBeans IDE 8-8	
8.3.3.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the guessnumber-jsf Example Using Maven	8-8
8.3.3.3	To Run the guessnumber-jsf Example.....	8-8
8.4	Using Facelets Templates.....	8-8
8.5	Composite Components.....	8-10
8.6	Web Resources	8-12
8.7	Relocatable Resources	8-13
8.8	Resource Library Contracts	8-13
8.8.1	The hello1-rlc Example Application	8-14
8.8.1.1	Configuring the hello1-rlc Example.....	8-15
8.8.1.2	The Facelets Pages for the hello1-rlc Example	8-15
8.8.1.3	To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello1-rlc Example Using NetBeans IDE .	8-16
8.8.1.4	To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello1-rlc Example Using Maven and the asadmin Command 8-16	
8.8.1.5	To Run the hello1-rlc Example	8-16
8.9	HTML5 Friendly Markup.....	8-16
8.9.1	Using Pass-through Elements.....	8-17
8.9.2	Using Pass-through Attributes	8-18
8.9.3	The reservation Example Application	8-19
8.9.3.1	The Facelets Pages for the reservation Application.....	8-19

8.9.3.2	The Managed Bean for the reservation Application	8-20
8.9.3.3	To Build, Package, and Deploy the reservation Example Using NetBeans IDE	8-21
8.9.3.4	To Build, Package, and Deploy the reservation Example Using Maven and the asadmin Command	8-21
8.9.3.5	To Run the reservation Example	8-21

9 Expression Language

9.1	Overview of the EL	9-1
9.2	Immediate and Deferred Evaluation Syntax	9-2
9.2.1	Immediate Evaluation	9-2
9.2.2	Deferred Evaluation	9-3
9.3	Value and Method Expressions	9-3
9.3.1	Value Expressions	9-3
9.3.1.1	Referencing Objects Using Value Expressions	9-4
9.3.1.2	Referring to Object Properties Using Value Expressions	9-4
9.3.1.3	Where Value Expressions Can Be Used	9-6
9.3.2	Method Expressions	9-7
9.3.2.1	Parameterized Method Calls	9-8
9.4	Literal Expressions	9-8
9.5	Operators	9-9
9.6	Reserved Words	9-10
9.7	Examples of EL Expressions	9-10

10 Using JavaServer Faces Technology in Web Pages

10.1	Setting Up a Page	10-1
10.2	Adding Components to a Page Using HTML Tag Library Tags	10-2
10.2.1	Common Component Tag Attributes	10-4
10.2.1.1	The id Attribute	10-5
10.2.1.2	The immediate Attribute	10-5
10.2.1.3	The rendered Attribute	10-6
10.2.1.4	The style and styleClass Attributes	10-6
10.2.1.5	The value and binding Attributes	10-6
10.2.2	Adding HTML Head and Body Tags	10-7
10.2.3	Adding a Form Component	10-7
10.2.4	Using Text Components	10-8
10.2.4.1	Rendering a Field with the h:inputText Tag	10-10
10.2.4.2	Rendering a Password Field with the h:inputSecret Tag	10-10
10.2.4.3	Rendering a Label with the h:outputLabel Tag	10-10
10.2.4.4	Rendering a Link with the h:outputLink Tag	10-11
10.2.4.5	Displaying a Formatted Message with the h:outputFormat Tag	10-11
10.2.5	Using Command Component Tags for Performing Actions and Navigation	10-12
10.2.5.1	Rendering a Button with the h:commandButton Tag	10-12
10.2.5.2	Rendering a Link with the h:commandLink Tag	10-13
10.2.6	Adding Graphics and Images with the h:graphicImage Tag	10-13
10.2.7	Laying Out Components with the h:panelGrid and h:panelGroup Tags	10-14
10.2.8	Displaying Components for Selecting One Value	10-15

10.2.8.1	Displaying a Check Box Using the h:selectBooleanCheckbox Tag	10-16
10.2.8.2	Displaying a Menu Using the h:selectOneMenu Tag	10-16
10.2.9	Displaying Components for Selecting Multiple Values.....	10-17
10.2.10	Using the f:selectItem and f:selectItems Tags	10-18
10.2.10.1	Using the f:selectItems Tag	10-18
10.2.10.2	Using the f:selectItem Tag	10-18
10.2.11	Displaying the Results from Selection Components	10-19
10.2.12	Using Data-Bound Table Components.....	10-19
10.2.13	Displaying Error Messages with the h:message and h:messages Tags	10-22
10.2.14	Creating Bookmarkable URLs with the h:button and h:link Tags	10-23
10.2.15	Using View Parameters to Configure Bookmarkable URLs	10-23
10.2.16	The bookmarks Example Application	10-24
10.2.16.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the bookmarks Example Using NetBeans IDE	10-25
10.2.16.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the bookmarks Example Using Maven and the asadmin Command 10-25	
10.2.16.3	To Run the bookmarks Example	10-25
10.2.17	Resource Relocation Using h:outputScript and h:outputStylesheet Tags.....	10-25
10.3	Using Core Tags	10-27

11 Using Converters, Listeners, and Validators

11.1	Using the Standard Converters.....	11-1
11.1.1	Converting a Component's Value	11-2
11.1.2	Using DateTimeConverter	11-3
11.1.3	Using NumberConverter	11-4
11.2	Registering Listeners on Components	11-5
11.2.1	Registering a Value-Change Listener on a Component.....	11-6
11.2.2	Registering an Action Listener on a Component.....	11-6
11.3	Using the Standard Validators.....	11-8
11.3.1	Validating a Component's Value.....	11-9
11.3.2	Using LongRangeValidator.....	11-9
11.4	Referencing a Managed Bean Method	11-10
11.4.1	Referencing a Method That Performs Navigation.....	11-10
11.4.2	Referencing a Method That Handles an Action Event.....	11-11
11.4.3	Referencing a Method That Performs Validation	11-11
11.4.4	Referencing a Method That Handles a Value-Change Event.....	11-11

12 Developing with JavaServer Faces Technology

12.1	Managed Beans in JavaServer Faces Technology.....	12-1
12.1.1	Creating a Managed Bean.....	12-1
12.1.2	Using the EL to Reference Managed Beans	12-2
12.2	Writing Bean Properties.....	12-3
12.2.1	Writing Properties Bound to Component Values.....	12-4
12.2.1.1	UIInput and UIOutput Properties	12-5
12.2.1.2	UIData Properties	12-5
12.2.1.3	UISelectBoolean Properties	12-6

12.2.1.4	UISelectMany Properties	12-7
12.2.1.5	UISelectOne Properties	12-7
12.2.1.6	UISelectedItem Properties	12-8
12.2.1.7	UISelectItems Properties	12-8
12.2.2	Writing Properties Bound to Component Instances.....	12-9
12.2.3	Writing Properties Bound to Converters, Listeners, or Validators	12-10
12.3	Writing Managed Bean Methods.....	12-11
12.3.1	Writing a Method to Handle Navigation.....	12-11
12.3.2	Writing a Method to Handle an Action Event	12-12
12.3.3	Writing a Method to Perform Validation.....	12-12
12.3.4	Writing a Method to Handle a Value-Change Event	12-13
12.4	Using Bean Validation.....	12-14
12.4.1	Validating Null and Empty Strings	12-17

13 Using Ajax with JavaServer Faces Technology

13.1	Overview of Ajax	13-1
13.2	Using Ajax Functionality with JavaServer Faces Technology.....	13-2
13.3	Using Ajax with Facelets.....	13-3
13.3.1	Using the f:ajax Tag	13-3
13.4	Sending an Ajax Request	13-4
13.4.1	Using the event Attribute	13-5
13.4.2	Using the execute Attribute.....	13-5
13.4.3	Using the immediate Attribute	13-5
13.4.4	Using the listener Attribute.....	13-6
13.5	Monitoring Events on the Client.....	13-6
13.6	Handling Errors	13-6
13.7	Receiving an Ajax Response.....	13-7
13.8	Partial Processing and Partial Rendering.....	13-8
13.9	Ajax Request Lifecycle	13-8
13.10	Grouping of Components.....	13-8
13.11	Loading JavaScript as a Resource.....	13-9
13.11.1	Using JavaScript API in a Facelets Application	13-9
13.11.2	Using the @ResourceDependency Annotation in a Bean Class.....	13-10
13.12	The ajaxguessnumber Example Application	13-10
13.12.1	The ajaxguessnumber Source Files.....	13-11
13.12.1.1	The ajaxgreeting.xhtml Facelets Page.....	13-11
13.12.1.2	The UserNumberBean Backing Bean.....	13-12
13.12.1.3	The DukesNumberBean CDI Bean	13-12
13.12.2	Running the ajaxguessnumber Example.....	13-12
13.12.2.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the ajaxguessnumber Example Using NetBeans IDE	13-12
13.12.2.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the ajaxguessnumber Example Using Maven.....	13-12
13.12.2.3	To Run the ajaxguessnumber Example	13-13
13.13	Further Information about Ajax in JavaServer Faces Technology.....	13-13

14 Composite Components: Advanced Topics and Example

14.1	Attributes of a Composite Component.....	14-1
14.2	Invoking a Managed Bean	14-2
14.3	Validating Composite Component Values	14-2
14.4	The compositecomponentlogin Example Application.....	14-2
14.4.1	The Composite Component File.....	14-3
14.4.2	The Using Page	14-4
14.4.3	The Managed Bean	14-4
14.4.4	Running the compositecomponentlogin Example.....	14-5
14.4.4.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the compositecomponentlogin Example Using NetBeans IDE	14-5
14.4.4.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the compositecomponentlogin Example Using Maven	14-5
14.4.4.3	To Run the compositecomponentlogin Example.....	14-5

15 Creating Custom UI Components and Other Custom Objects

15.1	Determining Whether You Need a Custom Component or Renderer.....	15-2
15.1.1	When to Use a Custom Component	15-2
15.1.2	When to Use a Custom Renderer	15-4
15.1.3	Component, Renderer, and Tag Combinations.....	15-4
15.2	Understanding the Image Map Example	15-5
15.2.1	Why Use JavaServer Faces Technology to Implement an Image Map?	15-5
15.2.2	Understanding the Rendered HTML.....	15-5
15.2.3	Understanding the Facelets Page	15-6
15.2.4	Configuring Model Data.....	15-7
15.2.5	Summary of the Image Map Application Classes.....	15-8
15.3	Steps for Creating a Custom Component.....	15-9
15.4	Creating Custom Component Classes	15-9
15.4.1	Specifying the Component Family.....	15-12
15.4.2	Performing Encoding	15-12
15.4.3	Performing Decoding.....	15-14
15.4.4	Enabling Component Properties to Accept Expressions	15-14
15.4.5	Saving and Restoring State.....	15-15
15.5	Delegating Rendering to a Renderer.....	15-16
15.5.1	Creating the Renderer Class.....	15-17
15.5.2	Identifying the Renderer Type.....	15-18
15.6	Implementing an Event Listener	15-18
15.6.1	Implementing Value-Change Listeners.....	15-19
15.6.2	Implementing Action Listeners	15-20
15.7	Handling Events for Custom Components.....	15-20
15.8	Defining the Custom Component Tag in a Tag Library Descriptor.....	15-21
15.9	Using a Custom Component	15-22
15.10	Creating and Using a Custom Converter	15-23
15.10.1	Creating a Custom Converter	15-24
15.10.2	Using a Custom Converter	15-26
15.11	Creating and Using a Custom Validator	15-27

15.11.1	Implementing the Validator Interface	15-28
15.11.2	Specifying a Custom Tag.....	15-30
15.11.3	Using a Custom Validator	15-30
15.12	Binding Component Values and Instances to Managed Bean Properties	15-31
15.12.1	Binding a Component Value to a Property.....	15-32
15.12.2	Binding a Component Value to an Implicit Object.....	15-33
15.12.3	Binding a Component Instance to a Bean Property.....	15-34
15.13	Binding Converters, Listeners, and Validators to Managed Bean Properties.....	15-35

16 Configuring JavaServer Faces Applications

16.1	Using Annotations to Configure Managed Beans	16-1
16.1.1	Using Managed Bean Scopes	16-2
16.1.1.1	Eager Application-Scoped Beans	16-3
16.2	Application Configuration Resource File.....	16-3
16.2.1	Ordering of Application Configuration Resource Files	16-4
16.3	Using Faces Flows.....	16-5
16.3.1	Packaging Flows in an Application	16-7
16.3.2	The Simplest Possible Flow: The simple-flow Example Application	16-7
16.3.2.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the simple-flow Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	16-8
16.3.2.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the simple-flow Example Using Maven and the asadmin Command 16-9	
16.3.2.3	To Run the simple-flow Example.....	16-9
16.3.3	The checkout-module Example Application	16-9
16.3.3.1	The Facelets Pages for the checkout-module Example	16-10
16.3.3.2	Using a Configuration File to Configure a Flow.....	16-11
16.3.3.3	Using a Java Class to Configure a Flow	16-12
16.3.3.4	The Flow-Scoped Managed Beans	16-13
16.3.3.5	To Build, Package, and Deploy the checkout-module Example Using NetBeans IDE 16-13	
16.3.3.6	To Build, Package, and Deploy the checkout-module Example Using Maven and the asadmin Command 16-14	
16.3.3.7	To Run the checkout-module Example	16-14
16.4	Configuring Managed Beans.....	16-14
16.4.1	Using the managed-bean Element	16-15
16.4.2	Initializing Properties Using the managed-property Element.....	16-17
16.4.2.1	Referencing a Java Enum Type.....	16-18
16.4.2.2	Referencing a Context Initialization Parameter	16-18
16.4.2.3	Initializing Map Properties	16-19
16.4.2.4	Initializing Array and List Properties.....	16-20
16.4.2.5	Initializing Managed Bean Properties	16-20
16.4.3	Initializing Maps and Lists	16-21
16.5	Registering Application Messages	16-21
16.5.1	Using FacesMessage to Create a Message.....	16-23
16.5.2	Referencing Error Messages.....	16-23
16.6	Using Default Validators	16-24
16.7	Registering a Custom Validator.....	16-24
16.8	Registering a Custom Converter	16-25

16.9	Configuring Navigation Rules.....	16-26
16.9.1	To Configure a Navigation Rule.....	16-27
16.10	Registering a Custom Renderer with a Render Kit.....	16-28
16.11	Registering a Custom Component	16-30
16.12	Basic Requirements of a JavaServer Faces Application.....	16-31
16.12.1	Configuring an Application with a Web Deployment Descriptor	16-31
16.12.1.1	Identifying the Servlet for Lifecycle Processing.....	16-32
16.12.1.2	To Specify a Path to an Application Configuration Resource File	16-33
16.12.1.3	To Specify Where State Is Saved	16-33
16.12.2	Configuring Project Stage	16-34
16.12.3	Including the Classes, Pages, and Other Resources	16-34

17 Java Servlet Technology

17.1	What Is a Servlet?.....	17-1
17.2	Servlet Lifecycle.....	17-2
17.2.1	Handling Servlet Lifecycle Events	17-2
17.2.1.1	Defining the Listener Class	17-2
17.2.2	Handling Servlet Errors	17-3
17.3	Sharing Information	17-3
17.3.1	Using Scope Objects	17-4
17.3.2	Controlling Concurrent Access to Shared Resources.....	17-4
17.4	Creating and Initializing a Servlet.....	17-4
17.5	Writing Service Methods	17-5
17.5.1	Getting Information from Requests	17-5
17.5.2	Constructing Responses.....	17-6
17.6	Filtering Requests and Responses	17-7
17.6.1	Programming Filters	17-7
17.6.2	Programming Customized Requests and Responses.....	17-8
17.6.3	Specifying Filter Mappings	17-9
17.6.3.1	To Specify Filter Mappings Using NetBeans IDE.....	17-9
17.7	Invoking Other Web Resources	17-10
17.7.1	Including Other Resources in the Response	17-11
17.7.2	Transferring Control to Another Web Component	17-11
17.8	Accessing the Web Context	17-11
17.9	Maintaining Client State	17-12
17.9.1	Accessing a Session	17-12
17.9.2	Associating Objects with a Session	17-12
17.9.3	Session Management.....	17-12
17.9.3.1	To Set the Timeout Period Using NetBeans IDE.....	17-12
17.9.4	Session Tracking	17-13
17.10	Finalizing a Servlet	17-13
17.10.1	Tracking Service Requests.....	17-13
17.10.2	Notifying Methods to Shut Down.....	17-14
17.10.3	Creating Polite Long-Running Methods	17-15
17.11	Uploading Files with Java Servlet Technology.....	17-15
17.11.1	The @MultipartConfig Annotation	17-15
17.11.2	The getParts and getPart Methods.....	17-16

17.12	Asynchronous Processing.....	17-16
17.12.1	Asynchronous Processing in Servlets.....	17-17
17.12.2	Waiting for a Resource.....	17-18
17.13	Non-Blocking I/O.....	17-19
17.13.1	Reading a Large HTTP POST Request Using Non-Blocking I/O.....	17-20
17.14	Protocol Upgrade Processing.....	17-21
17.15	The mood Example Application.....	17-23
17.15.1	Components of the mood Example Application.....	17-23
17.15.2	Running the mood Example.....	17-23
17.15.2.1	To Run the mood Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	17-24
17.15.2.2	To Run the mood Example Using Maven.....	17-24
17.16	The fileupload Example Application.....	17-24
17.16.1	Architecture of the fileupload Example Application.....	17-24
17.16.2	Running the fileupload Example.....	17-27
17.16.2.1	To Build, Package, and Run the fileupload Example Using NetBeans IDE ...	17-27
17.16.2.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the fileupload Example Using Maven.....	17-27
17.16.2.3	To Run the fileupload Example.....	17-27
17.17	The dukeetf Example Application.....	17-28
17.17.1	Architecture of the dukeetf Example Application.....	17-28
17.17.1.1	The Servlet.....	17-28
17.17.1.2	The Enterprise Bean.....	17-30
17.17.1.3	The HTML Page.....	17-31
17.17.2	Running the dukeetf Example Application.....	17-32
17.17.2.1	To Run the dukeetf Example Application Using NetBeans IDE.....	17-32
17.17.2.2	To Run the dukeetf Example Application Using Maven.....	17-32
17.18	Further Information about Java Servlet Technology.....	17-32

18 Java API for WebSocket

18.1	Introduction to WebSocket.....	18-1
18.2	Creating WebSocket Applications in Java EE.....	18-2
18.3	Programmatic Endpoints.....	18-3
18.4	Annotated Endpoints.....	18-4
18.5	Sending and Receiving Messages.....	18-5
18.5.1	Sending Messages.....	18-5
18.5.1.1	Sending Messages to All Peers Connected to an Endpoint.....	18-5
18.5.2	Receiving Messages.....	18-6
18.6	Maintaining Client State.....	18-6
18.7	Using Encoders and Decoders.....	18-7
18.7.1	Implementing Encoders to Convert Java Objects into WebSocket Messages.....	18-7
18.7.2	Implementing Decoders to Convert WebSocket Messages into Java Objects.....	18-8
18.8	Path Parameters.....	18-9
18.9	Handling Errors.....	18-10
18.10	The dukeetf2 Example Application.....	18-10
18.10.1	Architecture of the dukeetf2 Sample Application.....	18-10
18.10.1.1	The Endpoint.....	18-10
18.10.1.2	The Enterprise Bean.....	18-11
18.10.1.3	The HTML Page.....	18-12

18.10.2	Running the dukeetf2 Example Application	18-13
18.10.2.1	To Run the dukeetf2 Example Application Using NetBeans IDE	18-13
18.10.2.2	To Run the dukeetf2 Example Application Using Maven.....	18-13
18.11	The websocketbot Example Application	18-13
18.11.1	Architecture of the websocketbot Example Application	18-13
18.11.1.1	The CDI Bean	18-14
18.11.1.2	The WebSocket Endpoint	18-14
18.11.1.3	The Application Messages	18-16
18.11.1.4	The Encoder Classes.....	18-16
18.11.1.5	The Message Decoder	18-16
18.11.1.6	The HTML Page.....	18-17
18.11.2	Running the websocketbot Example Application	18-17
18.11.2.1	To Configure a Proxy Server in the GlassFish Server	18-18
18.11.2.2	To Run the websocketbot Example Application Using NetBeans IDE	18-18
18.11.2.3	To Run the websocketbot Example Application Using Maven.....	18-18
18.11.2.4	To Test the websocketbot Example Application.....	18-19
18.12	Further Information about WebSocket	18-19

19 JSON Processing

19.1	Introduction to JSON.....	19-1
19.1.1	JSON Syntax	19-1
19.1.2	Uses of JSON	19-2
19.1.3	Generating and Parsing JSON Data.....	19-2
19.2	JSON Processing in Java EE.....	19-3
19.3	Using the Object Model API.....	19-3
19.3.1	Creating an Object Model from JSON Data.....	19-4
19.3.2	Creating an Object Model from Application Code.....	19-4
19.3.3	Navigating an Object Model	19-5
19.3.4	Writing an Object Model to a Stream	19-6
19.4	Using the Streaming API	19-7
19.4.1	Reading JSON Data Using a Parser.....	19-7
19.4.2	Writing JSON Data Using a Generator.....	19-8
19.5	JSON in Java EE RESTful Web Services	19-8
19.6	The jsonpmodel Example Application	19-9
19.6.1	Components of the jsonpmodel Example Application	19-9
19.6.2	Running the jsonpmodel Example Application	19-9
19.6.2.1	To Run the jsonpmodel Example Application Using NetBeans IDE.....	19-9
19.6.2.2	To Run the jsonpmodel Example Application using Maven	19-10
19.7	The jsonpstreaming Example Application	19-10
19.7.1	Components of the jsonpstreaming Example Application.....	19-10
19.7.2	Running the jsonpstreaming Example Application	19-11
19.7.2.1	To Run the jsonpstreaming Example Application Using NetBeans IDE	19-11
19.7.2.2	To Run the jsonpstreaming Example Application Using Maven.....	19-11
19.8	Further Information about the Java API for JSON Processing.....	19-11

20 Internationalizing and Localizing Web Applications

20.1	Java Platform Localization Classes.....	20-1
20.2	Providing Localized Messages and Labels	20-2
20.2.1	Establishing the Locale.....	20-2
20.2.2	Setting the Resource Bundle.....	20-3
20.2.3	Retrieving Localized Messages.....	20-3
20.3	Date and Number Formatting.....	20-4
20.4	Character Sets and Encodings.....	20-4
20.4.1	Character Sets.....	20-4
20.4.2	Character Encoding.....	20-5

Part IV Web Services

21 Introduction to Web Services

21.1	What Are Web Services?	21-1
21.2	Types of Web Services.....	21-1
21.2.1	"Big" Web Services.....	21-1
21.2.2	RESTful Web Services	21-2
21.3	Deciding Which Type of Web Service to Use	21-3

22 Building Web Services with JAX-WS

22.1	Creating a Simple Web Service and Clients with JAX-WS	22-2
22.1.1	Requirements of a JAX-WS Endpoint.....	22-2
22.1.2	Coding the Service Endpoint Implementation Class	22-3
22.1.3	Building, Packaging, and Deploying the Service.....	22-4
22.1.3.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the Service Using NetBeans IDE.....	22-4
22.1.3.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the Service Using Maven	22-4
22.1.4	Testing the Methods of a Web Service Endpoint.....	22-4
22.1.4.1	To Test the Service without a Client	22-4
22.1.5	A Simple JAX-WS Application Client.....	22-5
22.1.5.1	Coding the Application Client.....	22-5
22.1.5.2	Running the Application Client	22-6
22.1.6	A Simple JAX-WS Web Client	22-6
22.1.6.1	Coding the Servlet	22-6
22.1.6.2	Running the Web Client	22-8
22.2	Types Supported by JAX-WS.....	22-8
22.2.1	Schema-to-Java Mapping.....	22-9
22.2.2	Java-to-Schema Mapping.....	22-9
22.3	Web Services Interoperability and JAX-WS.....	22-10
22.4	Further Information about JAX-WS	22-10

23 Building RESTful Web Services with JAX-RS

23.1	What Are RESTful Web Services?	23-1
23.2	Creating a RESTful Root Resource Class.....	23-2
23.2.1	Developing RESTful Web Services with JAX-RS	23-2
23.2.2	Overview of a JAX-RS Application.....	23-3

23.2.3	The @Path Annotation and URI Path Templates	23-5
23.2.4	Responding to HTTP Methods and Requests	23-6
23.2.4.1	The Request Method Designator Annotations.....	23-6
23.2.4.2	Using Entity Providers to Map HTTP Response and Request Entity Bodies...	23-8
23.2.5	Using @Consumes and @Produces to Customize Requests and Responses	23-9
23.2.5.1	The @Produces Annotation.....	23-9
23.2.5.2	The @Consumes Annotation.....	23-10
23.2.6	Extracting Request Parameters	23-11
23.3	Example Applications for JAX-RS.....	23-14
23.3.1	Creating A Simple RESTful Web Service	23-14
23.3.1.1	To Create a RESTful Web Service Using NetBeans IDE	23-14
23.3.2	The rsvp Example Application	23-15
23.3.2.1	Components of the rsvp Example Application.....	23-15
23.3.2.2	Running the rsvp Example Application.....	23-16
23.3.3	Real-World Examples.....	23-17
23.4	Further Information about JAX-RS.....	23-17

24 Accessing REST Resources with the JAX-RS Client API

24.1	Overview of the Client API	24-1
24.1.1	Creating a Basic Client Request using the Client API.....	24-1
24.1.1.1	Obtaining the Client Instance	24-2
24.1.1.2	Setting the Client Target	24-2
24.1.1.3	Setting Path Parameters in Targets	24-2
24.1.1.4	Invoking the Request	24-3
24.2	Using the Client API in the JAX-RS Example Applications	24-4
24.2.1	The Client API in the rsvp Example Application	24-4
24.2.2	The Client API in the customer Example Application.....	24-5
24.3	Advanced Features of the Client API	24-6
24.3.1	Configuring the Client Request	24-7
24.3.1.1	Setting Message Headers in the Client Request.....	24-7
24.3.1.2	Setting Cookies in the Client Request.....	24-7
24.3.1.3	Adding Filters to the Client.....	24-8
24.3.2	Asynchronous Invocations in the Client API	24-9
24.3.2.1	Using Custom Callbacks in Asynchronous Invocations.....	24-9

25 JAX-RS: Advanced Topics and Example

25.1	Annotations for Field and Bean Properties of Resource Classes	25-1
25.1.1	Extracting Path Parameters	25-2
25.1.2	Extracting Query Parameters.....	25-2
25.1.3	Extracting Form Data	25-3
25.1.4	Extracting the Java Type of a Request or Response.....	25-3
25.2	Validating Resource Data with Bean Validation.....	25-4
25.2.1	Using Constraint Annotations on Resource Methods.....	25-4
25.2.2	Validating Entity Data	25-5
25.2.3	Validation Exception Handling and Response Codes	25-6
25.3	Subresources and Runtime Resource Resolution.....	25-7

25.3.1	Subresource Methods.....	25-7
25.3.2	Subresource Locators.....	25-7
25.4	Integrating JAX-RS with EJB Technology and CDI.....	25-8
25.5	Conditional HTTP Requests.....	25-9
25.6	Runtime Content Negotiation.....	25-10
25.7	Using JAX-RS With JAXB.....	25-11
25.7.1	Using Java Objects to Model Your Data.....	25-13
25.7.2	Starting from an Existing XML Schema Definition.....	25-14
25.7.3	Using JSON with JAX-RS and JAXB.....	25-16
25.8	The customer Example Application.....	25-17
25.8.1	Overview of the customer Example Application.....	25-17
25.8.2	The Customer and Address Entity Classes.....	25-17
25.8.3	The CustomerService Class.....	25-19
25.8.4	Using the JAX-RS Client in the CustomerBean Classes.....	25-21
25.8.5	Running the customer Example.....	25-22
25.8.5.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the customer Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	25-22
25.8.5.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the customer Example Using Maven.....	25-22

Part V Enterprise Beans

26 Enterprise Beans

26.1	What Is an Enterprise Bean?.....	26-1
26.1.1	Benefits of Enterprise Beans.....	26-1
26.1.2	When to Use Enterprise Beans.....	26-2
26.1.3	Types of Enterprise Beans.....	26-2
26.2	What Is a Session Bean?.....	26-2
26.2.1	Types of Session Beans.....	26-2
26.2.1.1	Stateful Session Beans.....	26-2
26.2.1.2	Stateless Session Beans.....	26-3
26.2.1.3	Singleton Session Beans.....	26-3
26.2.2	When to Use Session Beans.....	26-3
26.3	What Is a Message-Driven Bean?.....	26-4
26.3.1	What Makes Message-Driven Beans Different from Session Beans?.....	26-4
26.3.2	When to Use Message-Driven Beans.....	26-5
26.4	Accessing Enterprise Beans.....	26-5
26.4.1	Using Enterprise Beans in Clients.....	26-6
26.4.1.1	Portable JNDI Syntax.....	26-6
26.4.2	Deciding on Remote or Local Access.....	26-7
26.4.3	Local Clients.....	26-7
26.4.3.1	Accessing Local Enterprise Beans Using the No-Interface View.....	26-8
26.4.3.2	Accessing Local Enterprise Beans That Implement Business Interfaces.....	26-8
26.4.4	Remote Clients.....	26-9
26.4.5	Web Service Clients.....	26-10
26.4.6	Method Parameters and Access.....	26-10
26.4.6.1	Isolation.....	26-10
26.4.6.2	Granularity of Accessed Data.....	26-10
26.5	The Contents of an Enterprise Bean.....	26-11

26.6	Naming Conventions for Enterprise Beans.....	26-11
26.7	The Lifecycles of Enterprise Beans	26-11
26.7.1	The Lifecycle of a Stateful Session Bean.....	26-11
26.7.2	The Lifecycle of a Stateless Session Bean	26-12
26.7.3	The Lifecycle of a Singleton Session Bean.....	26-13
26.7.4	The Lifecycle of a Message-Driven Bean.....	26-13
26.8	Further Information about Enterprise Beans	26-14

27 Getting Started with Enterprise Beans

27.1	Creating the Enterprise Bean.....	27-1
27.1.1	Coding the Enterprise Bean Class	27-1
27.1.2	Creating the converter Web Client.....	27-2
27.1.3	Running the converter Example.....	27-3
27.1.3.1	To Run the converter Example in NetBeans IDE.....	27-3
27.1.3.2	To Run the converter Example Using Maven	27-3
27.2	Modifying the Java EE Application.....	27-4
27.2.1	To Modify a Class File.....	27-4

28 Running the Enterprise Bean Examples

28.1	The cart Example.....	28-1
28.1.1	The Business Interface.....	28-2
28.1.2	Session Bean Class	28-2
28.1.2.1	Lifecycle Callback Methods	28-4
28.1.2.2	Business Methods	28-4
28.1.3	The @Remove Method	28-5
28.1.4	Helper Classes	28-5
28.1.5	Running the cart Example	28-5
28.1.5.1	To Run the cart Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	28-6
28.1.5.2	To Run the cart Example Using Maven	28-6
28.2	A Singleton Session Bean Example: counter.....	28-7
28.2.1	Creating a Singleton Session Bean	28-7
28.2.1.1	Initializing Singleton Session Beans.....	28-7
28.2.1.2	Managing Concurrent Access in a Singleton Session Bean.....	28-8
28.2.1.3	Handling Errors in a Singleton Session Bean.....	28-11
28.2.2	The Architecture of the counter Example	28-11
28.2.3	Running the counter Example	28-13
28.2.3.1	To Run the counter Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	28-13
28.2.3.2	To Run the counter Example Using Maven.....	28-13
28.3	A Web Service Example: helloservice.....	28-14
28.3.1	The Web Service Endpoint Implementation Class	28-14
28.3.2	Stateless Session Bean Implementation Class.....	28-14
28.3.3	Running the helloservice Example.....	28-15
28.3.3.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the helloservice Example Using NetBeans IDE	28-15
28.3.3.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the helloservice Example Using Maven.....	28-15
28.3.3.3	To Test the Service without a Client	28-15

28.4	Using the Timer Service	28-16
28.4.1	Creating Calendar-Based Timer Expressions	28-16
28.4.1.1	Specifying Multiple Values in Calendar Expressions	28-17
28.4.2	Programmatic Timers.....	28-18
28.4.2.1	The @Timeout Method	28-18
28.4.2.2	Creating Programmatic Timers	28-19
28.4.3	Automatic Timers	28-20
28.4.4	Canceling and Saving Timers	28-20
28.4.5	Getting Timer Information	28-21
28.4.6	Transactions and Timers.....	28-21
28.4.7	The timersession Example.....	28-21
28.4.8	Running the timersession Example.....	28-23
28.4.8.1	To Run the timersession Example Using NetBeans IDE	28-24
28.4.8.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the timersession Example Using Maven	28-24
28.4.8.3	To Run the Web Client.....	28-24
28.5	Handling Exceptions	28-24

29 Using the Embedded Enterprise Bean Container

29.1	Overview of the Embedded Enterprise Bean Container	29-1
29.2	Developing Embeddable Enterprise Bean Applications.....	29-1
29.2.1	Running Embedded Applications.....	29-2
29.2.2	Creating the Enterprise Bean Container.....	29-2
29.2.2.1	Explicitly Specifying Enterprise Bean Modules to be Initialized	29-3
29.2.3	Looking Up Session Bean References	29-3
29.2.4	Shutting Down the Enterprise Bean Container	29-3
29.3	The standalone Example Application.....	29-4
29.3.1	Runing the standalone Example Application in NetBeans IDE	29-5
29.3.2	Running the standalone Example Application using Maven	29-5

30 Using Asynchronous Method Invocation in Session Beans

30.1	Asynchronous Method Invocation.....	30-1
30.1.1	Creating an Asynchronous Business Method	30-1
30.1.2	Calling Asynchronous Methods from Enterprise Bean Clients.....	30-2
30.1.2.1	Retrieving the Final Result from an Asynchronous Method Invocation	30-2
30.1.2.2	Cancelling an Asynchronous Method Invocation	30-3
30.1.2.3	Checking the Status of an Asynchronous Method Invocation	30-3
30.2	The async Example Application	30-3
30.2.1	Architecture of the async Example Application	30-3
30.2.2	Running the async Example.....	30-4
30.2.2.1	To Configure the Keystore and Truststore in GlassFish Server	30-4
30.2.2.2	To Run the async Example Application Using NetBeans IDE.....	30-5
30.2.2.3	To Run the async Example Application Using Maven	30-6

Part VI Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE

31 Introduction to Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE

31.1	Getting Started.....	31-2
31.2	Overview of CDI.....	31-3
31.3	About Beans.....	31-4
31.4	About CDI Managed Beans.....	31-4
31.5	Beans as Injectable Objects.....	31-5
31.6	Using Qualifiers.....	31-5
31.7	Injecting Beans.....	31-6
31.8	Using Scopes.....	31-7
31.9	Giving Beans EL Names.....	31-8
31.10	Adding Setter and Getter Methods.....	31-9
31.11	Using a Managed Bean in a Facelets Page.....	31-9
31.12	Injecting Objects by Using Producer Methods.....	31-10
31.13	Configuring a CDI Application.....	31-10
31.14	Using the @PostConstruct and @PreDestroy Annotations With CDI Managed Bean Classes 31-11	
31.14.1	To Initialize a Managed Bean Using the @PostConstruct Annotation.....	31-11
31.14.2	To Prepare for the Destruction of a Managed Bean Using the @PreDestroy Annotation 31-11	
31.15	Further Information about CDI.....	31-12

32 Running the Basic Contexts and Dependency Injection Examples

32.1	The simplegreeting CDI Example.....	32-1
32.1.1	The simplegreeting Source Files.....	32-1
32.1.2	The Facelets Template and Page.....	32-2
32.1.3	Running the simplegreeting Example.....	32-3
32.1.3.1	To Build, Package, and Run the simplegreeting Example Using NetBeans IDE..... 32-3	
32.1.3.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the simplegreeting Example Using Maven....	32-4
32.1.3.3	To Run the simplegreeting Example.....	32-4
32.2	The guessnumber-cdi CDI Example.....	32-4
32.2.1	The guessnumber-cdi Source Files.....	32-4
32.2.1.1	The @MaxNumber and @Random Qualifier Interfaces.....	32-5
32.2.1.2	The Generator Managed Bean.....	32-6
32.2.1.3	The UserNumberBean Managed Bean.....	32-6
32.2.2	The Facelets Page.....	32-8
32.2.3	Running the guessnumber-cdi Example.....	32-10
32.2.3.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the guessnumber-cdi Example Using NetBeans IDE 32-10	
32.2.3.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the guessnumber-cdi Example Using Maven..... 32-10	
32.2.3.3	To Run the guessnumber Example.....	32-10

33 Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE: Advanced Topics

33.1	Packaging CDI Applications.....	33-1
33.2	Using Alternatives in CDI Applications.....	33-2

33.2.1	Using Specialization	33-3
33.3	Using Producer Methods, Producer Fields, and Disposer Methods in CDI Applications	33-4
33.3.1	Using Producer Methods.....	33-4
33.3.2	Using Producer Fields to Generate Resources	33-5
33.3.3	Using a Disposer Method	33-5
33.4	Using Predefined Beans in CDI Applications.....	33-5
33.5	Using Events in CDI Applications.....	33-7
33.5.1	Defining Events.....	33-7
33.5.2	Using Observer Methods to Handle Events	33-7
33.5.3	Firing Events.....	33-8
33.6	Using Interceptors in CDI Applications	33-9
33.7	Using Decorators in CDI Applications	33-11
33.8	Using Stereotypes in CDI Applications.....	33-12

34 Running the Advanced Contexts and Dependency Injection Examples

34.1	The encoder Example: Using Alternatives.....	34-1
34.1.1	The Coder Interface and Implementations	34-1
34.1.2	The encoder Facelets Page and Managed Bean.....	34-2
34.1.3	Running the encoder Example.....	34-3
34.1.3.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the encoder Example Using NetBeans IDE....	34-3
34.1.3.2	To Run the encoder Example Using NetBeans IDE	34-4
34.1.3.3	To Build, Package, and Deploy the encoder Example Using Maven	34-4
34.1.3.4	To Run the encoder Example Using Maven	34-5
34.2	The producermethods Example: Using a Producer Method To Choose a Bean Implementation	34-5
34.2.1	Components of the producermethods Example	34-6
34.2.2	Running the producermethods Example	34-7
34.2.2.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the producermethods Example Using NetBeans IDE	34-7
34.2.2.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the producermethods Example Using Maven	34-7
34.2.2.3	To Run the producermethods Example	34-7
34.3	The producerfields Example: Using Producer Fields to Generate Resources	34-8
34.3.1	The Producer Field for the producerfields Example	34-8
34.3.2	The producerfields Entity and Session Bean	34-9
34.3.3	The producerfields Facelets Pages and Managed Bean	34-10
34.3.4	Running the producerfields Example.....	34-12
34.3.4.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the producerfields Example Using NetBeans IDE ...	34-12
34.3.4.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the producerfields Example Using Maven...	34-12
34.3.4.3	To Run the producerfields Example.....	34-13
34.4	The billpayment Example: Using Events and Interceptors	34-13
34.4.1	The PaymentEvent Event Class	34-13
34.4.2	The PaymentHandler Event Listener	34-14
34.4.3	The billpayment Facelets Pages and Managed Bean.....	34-14
34.4.4	The LoggedInterceptor Interceptor Class	34-16
34.4.5	Running the billpayment Example	34-17

34.4.5.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the billpayment Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	34-17
34.4.5.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the billpayment Example Using Maven	34-17
34.4.5.3	To Run the billpayment Example.....	34-18
34.5	The decorators Example: Decorating a Bean	34-18
34.5.1	Components of the decorators Example	34-19
34.5.2	Running the decorators Example	34-19
34.5.2.1	To Build, Package, and Deploy the decorators Example Using NetBeans IDE	34-19
34.5.2.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the decorators Example Using Maven	34-20
34.5.2.3	To Run the decorators Example	34-20

Part VII Persistence

35 Introduction to the Java Persistence API

35.1	Entities	35-1
35.1.1	Requirements for Entity Classes.....	35-1
35.1.2	Persistent Fields and Properties in Entity Classes	35-2
35.1.2.1	Persistent Fields	35-2
35.1.2.2	Persistent Properties.....	35-3
35.1.2.3	Using Collections in Entity Fields and Properties	35-3
35.1.2.4	Validating Persistent Fields and Properties.....	35-4
35.1.3	Primary Keys in Entities	35-6
35.1.4	Multiplicity in Entity Relationships	35-7
35.1.5	Direction in Entity Relationships	35-8
35.1.5.1	Bidirectional Relationships	35-8
35.1.5.2	Unidirectional Relationships	35-9
35.1.5.3	Queries and Relationship Direction.....	35-9
35.1.5.4	Cascade Operations and Relationships.....	35-9
35.1.5.5	Orphan Removal in Relationships	35-9
35.1.6	Embeddable Classes in Entities	35-10
35.2	Entity Inheritance.....	35-11
35.2.1	Abstract Entities	35-11
35.2.2	Mapped Superclasses	35-11
35.2.3	Non-Entity Superclasses	35-12
35.2.4	Entity Inheritance Mapping Strategies	35-12
35.2.4.1	The Single Table per Class Hierarchy Strategy	35-12
35.2.4.2	The Table per Concrete Class Strategy	35-13
35.2.4.3	The Joined Subclass Strategy	35-14
35.3	Managing Entities	35-14
35.3.1	The EntityManager Interface	35-14
35.3.1.1	Container-Managed Entity Managers	35-14
35.3.1.2	Application-Managed Entity Managers.....	35-15
35.3.1.3	Finding Entities Using the EntityManager	35-16
35.3.1.4	Managing an Entity Instance's Lifecycle	35-16
35.3.1.5	Persisting Entity Instances	35-16
35.3.1.6	Removing Entity Instances.....	35-17

35.3.1.7	Synchronizing Entity Data to the Database.....	35-17
35.3.2	Persistence Units.....	35-17
35.4	Querying Entities.....	35-18
35.5	Further Information about Persistence.....	35-19

36 Running the Persistence Examples

36.1	The order Application.....	36-1
36.1.1	Entity Relationships in the order Application.....	36-2
36.1.1.1	Self-Referential Relationships.....	36-2
36.1.1.2	One-to-One Relationships.....	36-3
36.1.1.3	One-to-Many Relationship Mapped to Overlapping Primary and Foreign Keys.....	36-3
36.1.1.4	Unidirectional Relationships.....	36-4
36.1.2	Primary Keys in the order Application.....	36-4
36.1.2.1	Generated Primary Keys.....	36-4
36.1.2.2	Compound Primary Keys.....	36-5
36.1.3	Entity Mapped to More Than One Database Table.....	36-7
36.1.4	Cascade Operations in the order Application.....	36-7
36.1.5	BLOB and CLOB Database Types in the order Application.....	36-8
36.1.6	Temporal Types in the order Application.....	36-8
36.1.7	Managing the order Application's Entities.....	36-9
36.1.7.1	Creating Entities.....	36-9
36.1.7.2	Finding Entities.....	36-9
36.1.7.3	Setting Entity Relationships.....	36-9
36.1.7.4	Using Queries.....	36-10
36.1.7.5	Removing Entities.....	36-10
36.1.8	Running the order Example.....	36-10
36.1.8.1	To Run the order Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	36-11
36.1.8.2	To Run the order Example Using Maven.....	36-11
36.2	The roster Application.....	36-11
36.2.1	Relationships in the roster Application.....	36-12
36.2.1.1	The Many-To-Many Relationship in roster.....	36-12
36.2.2	Entity Inheritance in the roster Application.....	36-13
36.2.3	Criteria Queries in the roster Application.....	36-14
36.2.3.1	Metamodel Classes in the roster Application.....	36-14
36.2.3.2	Obtaining a CriteriaBuilder Instance in RequestBean.....	36-15
36.2.3.3	Creating Criteria Queries in RequestBean's Business Methods.....	36-15
36.2.4	Automatic Table Generation in the roster Application.....	36-16
36.2.5	Running the roster Example.....	36-16
36.2.5.1	To Run the roster Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	36-16
36.2.5.2	To Run the roster Example Using Maven.....	36-17
36.3	The address-book Application.....	36-18
36.3.1	Bean Validation Constraints in address-book.....	36-18
36.3.2	Specifying Error Messages for Constraints in address-book.....	36-19
36.3.3	Validating Contact Input from a JavaServer Faces Application.....	36-19
36.3.4	Running the address-book Example.....	36-20
36.3.4.1	To Run the address-book Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	36-20

36.3.4.2	To Run the address-book Example Using Maven	36-20
----------	---	-------

37 The Java Persistence Query Language

37.1	Query Language Terminology.....	37-1
37.2	Creating Queries Using the Java Persistence Query Language	37-2
37.2.1	Named Parameters in Queries.....	37-2
37.2.2	Positional Parameters in Queries	37-3
37.3	Simplified Query Language Syntax	37-3
37.3.1	Select Statements.....	37-3
37.3.2	Update and Delete Statements.....	37-4
37.4	Example Queries	37-4
37.4.1	Simple Queries	37-4
37.4.1.1	A Basic Select Query	37-4
37.4.1.2	Eliminating Duplicate Values	37-4
37.4.1.3	Using Named Parameters	37-5
37.4.2	Queries That Navigate to Related Entities.....	37-5
37.4.2.1	A Simple Query with Relationships	37-5
37.4.2.2	Navigating to Single-Valued Relationship Fields.....	37-5
37.4.2.3	Traversing Relationships with an Input Parameter	37-5
37.4.2.4	Traversing Multiple Relationships.....	37-6
37.4.2.5	Navigating According to Related Fields.....	37-6
37.4.3	Queries with Other Conditional Expressions.....	37-6
37.4.3.1	The LIKE Expression.....	37-6
37.4.3.2	The IS NULL Expression	37-7
37.4.3.3	The IS EMPTY Expression.....	37-7
37.4.3.4	The BETWEEN Expression	37-7
37.4.3.5	Comparison Operators	37-7
37.4.4	Bulk Updates and Deletes	37-8
37.4.4.1	Update Queries	37-8
37.4.4.2	Delete Queries	37-8
37.5	Full Query Language Syntax.....	37-8
37.5.1	BNF Symbols	37-8
37.5.2	BNF Grammar of the Java Persistence Query Language.....	37-9
37.5.3	FROM Clause	37-12
37.5.3.1	Identifiers.....	37-12
37.5.3.2	Identification Variables.....	37-14
37.5.3.3	Range Variable Declarations.....	37-15
37.5.3.4	Collection Member Declarations	37-15
37.5.3.5	Joins	37-15
37.5.4	Path Expressions	37-16
37.5.4.1	Examples of Path Expressions	37-16
37.5.4.2	Expression Types.....	37-17
37.5.4.3	Navigation	37-17
37.5.5	WHERE Clause	37-17
37.5.5.1	Literals.....	37-18
37.5.5.2	Input Parameters	37-18
37.5.5.3	Conditional Expressions.....	37-18

37.5.5.4	Operators and Their Precedence	37-19
37.5.5.5	BETWEEN Expressions	37-19
37.5.5.6	IN Expressions	37-19
37.5.5.7	LIKE Expressions	37-20
37.5.5.8	NULL Comparison Expressions.....	37-20
37.5.5.9	Empty Collection Comparison Expressions	37-20
37.5.5.10	Collection Member Expressions.....	37-21
37.5.5.11	Subqueries	37-21
37.5.5.12	Functional Expressions	37-22
37.5.5.13	Case Expressions	37-23
37.5.5.14	NULL Values.....	37-24
37.5.5.15	Equality Semantics	37-24
37.5.6	SELECT Clause.....	37-25
37.5.6.1	Return Types	37-25
37.5.6.2	The DISTINCT Keyword.....	37-26
37.5.6.3	Constructor Expressions.....	37-26
37.5.7	ORDER BY Clause	37-27
37.5.8	GROUP BY and HAVING Clauses	37-27

38 Using the Criteria API to Create Queries

38.1	Overview of the Criteria and Metamodel APIs.....	38-1
38.2	Using the Metamodel API to Model Entity Classes.....	38-2
38.2.1	Using Metamodel Classes	38-3
38.3	Using the Criteria API and Metamodel API to Create Basic Typesafe Queries	38-4
38.3.1	Creating a Criteria Query	38-4
38.3.2	Query Roots.....	38-5
38.3.3	Querying Relationships Using Joins	38-5
38.3.4	Path Navigation in Criteria Queries	38-6
38.3.5	Restricting Criteria Query Results	38-6
38.3.5.1	The Expression Interface Methods.....	38-6
38.3.5.2	Expression Methods in the CriteriaBuilder Interface.....	38-7
38.3.6	Managing Criteria Query Results.....	38-8
38.3.6.1	Ordering Results.....	38-8
38.3.6.2	Grouping Results.....	38-9
38.3.7	Executing Queries.....	38-9
38.3.7.1	Single-Valued Query Results.....	38-9
38.3.7.2	Collection-Valued Query Results.....	38-9

39 Creating and Using String-Based Criteria Queries

39.1	Overview of String-Based Criteria API Queries.....	39-1
39.1.1	Creating String-Based Queries.....	39-1
39.1.2	Executing String-Based Queries	39-2

40 Controlling Concurrent Access to Entity Data with Locking

40.1	Overview of Entity Locking and Concurrency.....	40-1
40.1.1	Using Optimistic Locking.....	40-2

40.2	Lock Modes.....	40-2
40.2.1	Setting the Lock Mode	40-3
40.2.2	Using Pessimistic Locking.....	40-4
40.2.2.1	Pessimistic Locking Timeouts.....	40-4

41 Using a Second-Level Cache with Java Persistence API Applications

41.1	Overview of the Second-Level Cache	41-1
41.1.1	Controlling Whether Entities May Be Cached	41-2
41.2	Specifying the Cache Mode Settings to Improve Performance.....	41-3
41.2.1	Setting the Cache Retrieval and Store Modes.....	41-3
41.2.1.1	Cache Retrieval Mode.....	41-3
41.2.1.2	Cache Store Mode.....	41-3
41.2.1.3	Setting the Cache Retrieval or Store Mode	41-4
41.2.2	Controlling the Second-Level Cache Programmatically	41-4
41.2.2.1	Checking Whether An Entity's Data is Cached.....	41-5
41.2.2.2	Removing an Entity from the Cache.....	41-5
41.2.2.3	Removing All Data from the Cache	41-5

Part VIII Messaging

42 Java Message Service Concepts

42.1	Overview of the JMS API.....	42-1
42.1.1	What Is Messaging?.....	42-1
42.1.2	What Is the JMS API?	42-2
42.1.3	When Can You Use the JMS API?	42-2
42.1.4	How Does the JMS API Work with the Java EE Platform?	42-3
42.2	Basic JMS API Concepts.....	42-4
42.2.1	JMS API Architecture	42-4
42.2.2	Messaging Styles.....	42-4
42.2.2.1	Point-to-Point Messaging Style	42-5
42.2.2.2	Publish/Subscribe Messaging Style	42-5
42.2.3	Message Consumption.....	42-6
42.3	The JMS API Programming Model	42-6
42.3.1	JMS Administered Objects	42-7
42.3.1.1	JMS Connection Factories.....	42-8
42.3.1.2	JMS Destinations.....	42-8
42.3.2	Connections	42-9
42.3.3	Sessions	42-9
42.3.4	JMSContext Objects	42-9
42.3.5	JMS Message Producers.....	42-10
42.3.6	JMS Message Consumers.....	42-10
42.3.6.1	JMS Message Listeners.....	42-11
42.3.6.2	JMS Message Selectors.....	42-12
42.3.6.3	Consuming Messages from Topics	42-12
42.3.6.4	Creating Durable Subscriptions	42-13
42.3.6.5	Creating Shared Subscriptions	42-15

42.3.7	JMS Messages	42-16
42.3.7.1	Message Headers	42-16
42.3.7.2	Message Properties.....	42-17
42.3.7.3	Message Bodies	42-17
42.3.8	JMS Queue Browsers.....	42-18
42.3.9	JMS Exception Handling	42-19
42.4	Using Advanced JMS Features	42-19
42.4.1	Controlling Message Acknowledgment.....	42-20
42.4.2	Specifying Options for Sending Messages.....	42-21
42.4.2.1	Specifying Message Persistence	42-22
42.4.2.2	Setting Message Priority Levels	42-22
42.4.2.3	Allowing Messages to Expire	42-22
42.4.2.4	Specifying a Delivery Delay.....	42-23
42.4.2.5	Using JMSProducer Method Chaining.....	42-23
42.4.3	Creating Temporary Destinations	42-23
42.4.4	Using JMS Local Transactions	42-24
42.4.5	Sending Messages Asynchronously.....	42-25
42.5	Using the JMS API in Java EE Applications.....	42-26
42.5.1	Creating Resources for Java EE Applications.....	42-26
42.5.2	Using Resource Injection in Enterprise Bean or Web Components	42-28
42.5.2.1	Injecting a ConnectionFactory, Topic, or Queue.....	42-28
42.5.2.2	Injecting a JMSContext Object	42-28
42.5.3	Using Java EE Components to Produce and to Synchronously Receive Messages	42-28
42.5.3.1	Managing JMS Resources in Web and EJB Components.....	42-29
42.5.3.2	Managing Transactions in Session Beans.....	42-29
42.5.4	Using Message-Driven Beans to Receive Messages Asynchronously	42-29
42.5.5	Managing JTA Transactions.....	42-32
42.6	Further Information about JMS.....	42-34

43 Java Message Service Examples

43.1	Overview of the JMS Examples	43-1
43.2	Writing Simple JMS Applications.....	43-2
43.2.1	Starting the JMS Provider	43-3
43.2.2	Creating JMS Administered Objects	43-3
43.2.2.1	To Create Resources for the Simple Examples.....	43-3
43.2.3	Building All the Simple Examples	43-4
43.2.3.1	To Build All the Simple Examples Using NetBeans IDE.....	43-4
43.2.3.2	To Build All the Simple Examples on the Command Line.....	43-4
43.2.4	Sending Messages.....	43-4
43.2.4.1	The Producer.java Client	43-5
43.2.4.2	To Run the Producer Client	43-6
43.2.5	Receiving Messages Synchronously	43-7
43.2.5.1	The SynchConsumer.java Client	43-7
43.2.5.2	To Run the SynchConsumer and Producer Clients.....	43-7
43.2.6	Using a Message Listener for Asynchronous Message Delivery.....	43-9
43.2.6.1	Writing the AsynchConsumer.java and TextListener.java Clients	43-9

43.2.6.2	To Run the AsyncConsumer and Producer Clients	43-10
43.2.7	Browsing Messages on a Queue	43-11
43.2.7.1	The MessageBrowser.java Client	43-11
43.2.7.2	To Run the QueueBrowser Client	43-12
43.2.8	Running Multiple Consumers on the Same Destination	43-13
43.2.9	Acknowledging Messages	43-14
43.2.9.1	To Run the ClientAckConsumer Client	43-15
43.3	Writing More Advanced JMS Applications	43-16
43.3.1	Using Durable Subscriptions	43-16
43.3.1.1	To Create Resources for the Durable Subscription Example	43-17
43.3.1.2	To Run the Durable Subscription Example	43-17
43.3.1.3	To Run the unsubscriber Example	43-18
43.3.2	Using Local Transactions.....	43-18
43.3.2.1	To Create Resources for the transactedexample Example.....	43-20
43.3.2.2	To Run the transactedexample Clients.....	43-21
43.4	Writing High Performance and Scalable JMS Applications	43-23
43.4.1	Using Shared Nondurable Subscriptions.....	43-23
43.4.1.1	Writing the Clients for the Shared Consumer Example	43-23
43.4.1.2	To Run the SharedConsumer and Producer Clients	43-24
43.4.2	Using Shared Durable Subscriptions	43-24
43.4.2.1	To Run the ShareDurableSubscriberExample and Producer Clients	43-25
43.5	Sending and Receiving Messages Using a Simple Web Application	43-26
43.5.1	The websimplemessage Facelets Pages	43-26
43.5.2	The websimplemessage Managed Beans	43-26
43.5.3	Running the websimplemessage Example	43-28
43.5.3.1	Creating Resources for the websimplemessage Example	43-28
43.5.3.2	To Package and Deploy websimplemessage Using NetBeans IDE	43-28
43.5.3.3	To Package and Deploy websimplemessage Using Maven.....	43-28
43.5.3.4	To Run the websimplemessage Example.....	43-28
43.6	Receiving Messages Asynchronously using a Message-Driven Bean	43-29
43.6.1	Overview of the simplemessage Example	43-29
43.6.2	The simplemessage Application Client.....	43-29
43.6.3	The simplemessage Message-Driven Bean Class.....	43-30
43.6.3.1	The onMessage Method.....	43-30
43.6.4	Running the simplemessage Example	43-31
43.6.4.1	Creating Resources for the simplemessage Example	43-31
43.6.4.2	To Run the simplemessage Example Using NetBeans IDE.....	43-31
43.6.4.3	To Run the simplemessage Example Using Maven	43-32
43.7	Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB	43-32
43.7.1	Writing the Application Components for the clientsessionmdb Example.....	43-32
43.7.1.1	Coding the Application Client: MyAppClient.java.....	43-33
43.7.1.2	Coding the Publisher Session Bean.....	43-33
43.7.1.3	Coding the Message-Driven Bean: MessageBean.java.....	43-34
43.7.2	Running the clientsessionmdb Example	43-35
43.7.2.1	To Run clientsessionmdb Using NetBeans IDE	43-35
43.7.2.2	To Run clientsessionmdb Using Maven.....	43-35
43.8	Using an Entity to Join Messages from Two MDBs.....	43-36

43.8.1	Overview of the clientmdbentity Example Application	43-36
43.8.2	Writing the Application Components for the clientmdbentity Example	43-38
43.8.2.1	Coding the Application Client: HumanResourceClient.java	43-38
43.8.2.2	Coding the Message-Driven Beans for the clientmdbentity Example	43-38
43.8.2.3	Coding the Entity Class for the clientmdbentity Example	43-39
43.8.3	Running the clientmdbentity Example	43-40
43.8.3.1	To Run clientmdbentity Using NetBeans IDE	43-40
43.8.3.2	To Run clientmdbentity Using Maven	43-40
43.8.3.3	Viewing the Application Output	43-41
43.9	Using NetBeans IDE to Create JMS Resources	43-42
43.9.1	To Create JMS Resources Using NetBeans IDE	43-42
43.9.2	To Delete JMS Resources Using NetBeans IDE	43-42

Part IX Security

44 Introduction to Security in the Java EE Platform

44.1	Overview of Java EE Security	44-1
44.1.1	A Simple Application Security Walkthrough	44-2
44.1.1.1	Step 1: Initial Request	44-2
44.1.1.2	Step 2: Initial Authentication	44-2
44.1.1.3	Step 3: URL Authorization	44-3
44.1.1.4	Step 4: Fulfilling the Original Request	44-3
44.1.1.5	Step 5: Invoking Enterprise Bean Business Methods	44-4
44.1.2	Features of a Security Mechanism	44-4
44.1.3	Characteristics of Application Security	44-5
44.2	Security Mechanisms	44-5
44.2.1	Java SE Security Mechanisms	44-5
44.2.2	Java EE Security Mechanisms	44-6
44.2.2.1	Application-Layer Security	44-6
44.2.2.2	Transport-Layer Security	44-7
44.2.2.3	Message-Layer Security	44-8
44.3	Securing Containers	44-8
44.3.1	Using Annotations to Specify Security Information	44-8
44.3.2	Using Deployment Descriptors for Declarative Security	44-9
44.3.3	Using Programmatic Security	44-9
44.4	Securing the GlassFish Server	44-9
44.5	Working with Realms, Users, Groups, and Roles	44-10
44.5.1	What Are Realms, Users, Groups, and Roles?	44-10
44.5.1.1	What Is a Realm?	44-11
44.5.1.2	What Is a User?	44-12
44.5.1.3	What Is a Group?	44-12
44.5.1.4	What Is a Role?	44-12
44.5.1.5	Some Other Terminology	44-12
44.5.2	Managing Users and Groups on the GlassFish Server	44-13
44.5.2.1	To Add Users to the GlassFish Server	44-13
44.5.3	Setting Up Security Roles	44-13
44.5.4	Mapping Roles to Users and Groups	44-15

44.6	Establishing a Secure Connection Using SSL.....	44-16
44.6.1	Verifying and Configuring SSL Support.....	44-16
44.7	Further Information about Security	44-17

45 Getting Started Securing Web Applications

45.1	Overview of Web Application Security.....	45-1
45.2	Securing Web Applications	45-3
45.2.1	Specifying Security Constraints.....	45-3
45.2.1.1	Specifying a Web Resource Collection	45-4
45.2.1.2	Specifying an Authorization Constraint	45-4
45.2.1.3	Specifying a Secure Connection	45-5
45.2.1.4	Specifying Security Constraints for Resources.....	45-5
45.2.2	Specifying Authentication Mechanisms.....	45-6
45.2.2.1	HTTP Basic Authentication.....	45-7
45.2.2.2	Form-Based Authentication	45-8
45.2.2.3	Digest Authentication	45-9
45.2.3	Specifying an Authentication Mechanism in the Deployment Descriptor	45-9
45.2.4	Declaring Security Roles.....	45-10
45.3	Using Programmatic Security with Web Applications	45-10
45.3.1	Authenticating Users Programmatically	45-10
45.3.2	Checking Caller Identity Programmatically	45-12
45.3.3	Example Code for Programmatic Security	45-13
45.3.4	Declaring and Linking Role References	45-14
45.4	Examples: Securing Web Applications	45-15
45.4.1	To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples	45-15
45.4.2	The hello2-basicauth Example: Basic Authentication with a Servlet.....	45-16
45.4.2.1	Specifying Security for Basic Authentication Using Annotations.....	45-16
45.4.2.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello2-basicauth Example Using NetBeans IDE	45-17
45.4.2.3	To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello2-basicauth Example Using Maven	45-17
45.4.2.4	To Run the hello2-basicauth Example.....	45-17
45.4.3	The hello1-formauth Example: Form-Based Authentication with a JavaServer Faces	45-18
	Application	
45.4.3.1	Creating the Login Form and the Error Page	45-18
45.4.3.2	Specifying Security for the Form-Based Authentication Example.....	45-20
45.4.3.3	To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello1-formauth Example Using NetBeans IDE	45-20
	45-20	
45.4.3.4	To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello1-formauth Example Using Maven and	45-21
	the asadmin Command	
45.4.3.5	To Run the hello1-formauth Example	45-21

46 Getting Started Securing Enterprise Applications

46.1	Basic Security Tasks for Enterprise Applications.....	46-1
46.2	Securing Enterprise Beans	46-1
46.2.1	Securing an Enterprise Bean Using Declarative Security	46-4
46.2.1.1	Specifying Authorized Users by Declaring Security Roles	46-4
46.2.1.2	Specifying an Authentication Mechanism and Secure Connection	46-7

46.2.2	Securing an Enterprise Bean Programmatically.....	46-7
46.2.2.1	Accessing an Enterprise Bean Caller's Security Context	46-7
46.2.3	Propagating a Security Identity (Run-As).....	46-8
46.2.3.1	Configuring a Component's Propagated Security Identity	46-9
46.2.3.2	Trust between Containers	46-9
46.2.4	Deploying Secure Enterprise Beans	46-10
46.3	Examples: Securing Enterprise Beans	46-10
46.3.1	The cart-secure Example: Securing an Enterprise Bean with Declarative Security	46-10
46.3.1.1	Annotating the Bean.....	46-10
46.3.1.2	To Run the cart-secure Example Using NetBeans IDE	46-12
46.3.1.3	To Run the cart-secure Example Using Maven.....	46-13
46.3.2	The converter-secure Example: Securing an Enterprise Bean with Programmatic Security	46-13
46.3.2.1	Modifying ConverterBean.....	46-14
46.3.2.2	Modifying ConverterServlet	46-15
46.3.2.3	To Run the converter-secure Example Using NetBeans IDE	46-15
46.3.2.4	To Run the converter-secure Example Using Maven.....	46-15
46.3.2.5	To Run the converter-secure Example	46-16

47 Java EE Security: Advanced Topics

47.1	Working with Digital Certificates.....	47-1
47.1.1	Creating a Server Certificate	47-2
47.1.1.1	To Use keytool to Create a Server Certificate.....	47-3
47.1.2	Adding Users to the Certificate Realm.....	47-4
47.1.3	Using a Different Server Certificate with the GlassFish Server	47-4
47.1.3.1	To Specify a Different Server Certificate	47-4
47.2	Authentication Mechanisms.....	47-5
47.2.1	Client Authentication	47-5
47.2.2	Mutual Authentication.....	47-5
47.2.2.1	Enabling Mutual Authentication over SSL.....	47-7
47.2.2.2	Creating a Client Certificate for Mutual Authentication.....	47-7
47.3	Using Form-Based Login in JavaServer Faces Web Applications	47-9
47.3.1	Using j_security_check in JavaServer Faces Forms	47-9
47.3.2	Using a Managed Bean for Authentication in JavaServer Faces Applications.....	47-9
47.4	Using the JDBC Realm for User Authentication	47-11
47.4.1	To Configure a JDBC Authentication Realm	47-11
47.5	Securing HTTP Resources	47-13
47.6	Securing Application Clients.....	47-15
47.6.1	Using Login Modules.....	47-15
47.6.2	Using Programmatic Login	47-16
47.7	Securing Enterprise Information Systems Applications	47-16
47.7.1	Container-Managed Sign-On	47-16
47.7.2	Component-Managed Sign-On.....	47-17
47.7.3	Configuring Resource Adapter Security	47-17
47.7.4	Mapping an Application Principal to EIS Principals.....	47-18
47.8	Configuring Security Using Deployment Descriptors	47-19

47.8.1	Specifying Security for Basic Authentication in the Deployment Descriptor.....	47-19
47.8.2	Specifying Non-Default Principal-to-Role Mapping in the Deployment Descriptor	47-20
47.9	Further Information about Security	47-20

Part X Java EE Supporting Technologies

48 Transactions

48.1	Transactions in Java EE Applications	48-1
48.2	What Is a Transaction?	48-2
48.3	Container-Managed Transactions	48-2
48.3.1	Transaction Attributes	48-3
48.3.1.1	Required Attribute	48-3
48.3.1.2	RequiresNew Attribute.....	48-3
48.3.1.3	Mandatory Attribute.....	48-4
48.3.1.4	NotSupported Attribute	48-4
48.3.1.5	Supports Attribute.....	48-4
48.3.1.6	Never Attribute.....	48-4
48.3.1.7	Summary of Transaction Attributes	48-4
48.3.1.8	Setting Transaction Attributes	48-5
48.3.2	Rolling Back a Container-Managed Transaction	48-6
48.3.3	Synchronizing a Session Bean's Instance Variables	48-6
48.3.4	Methods Not Allowed in Container-Managed Transactions.....	48-6
48.4	Bean-Managed Transactions	48-7
48.4.1	JTA Transactions.....	48-7
48.4.2	Returning without Committing.....	48-7
48.4.3	Methods Not Allowed in Bean-Managed Transactions.....	48-8
48.5	Transaction Timeouts	48-8
48.5.1	To Set a Transaction Timeout.....	48-8
48.6	Updating Multiple Databases	48-8
48.7	Transactions in Web Components.....	48-9
48.8	Further Information about Transactions	48-9

49 Resource Adapters and Contracts

49.1	What Is a Resource Adapter?	49-1
49.1.1	Management Contracts	49-2
49.1.1.1	Lifecycle Management	49-2
49.1.1.2	Work Management Contract	49-3
49.1.2	Generic Work Context Contract	49-3
49.1.3	Outbound and Inbound Contracts.....	49-4
49.2	Metadata Annotations.....	49-4
49.3	Common Client Interface.....	49-6
49.4	Using Resource Adapters With Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI)	49-7
49.5	Further Information about Resource Adapters	49-7

50 The Resource Adapter Examples

50.1	The outboundconnector Example	50-1
50.1.1	Using the Outbound Resource Adapter	50-2
50.1.2	Implementing the Outbound Resource Adapter	50-4
50.1.3	Running the outboundconnector Example	50-5
50.1.3.1	To Run the outboundconnector Example using NetBeans IDE	50-5
50.1.3.2	To Run the outboundconnector Example from the Command Line	50-6
50.2	The inboundconnector Example	50-6
50.2.1	Using the Inbound Resource Adapter	50-7
50.2.2	Implementing the Inbound Resource Adapter	50-8
50.2.3	Running the inboundconnector Example	50-10
50.2.3.1	To Run the inboundconnector Example using NetBeans IDE	50-10
50.2.3.2	To Run the inboundconnector Example from the Command Line	50-10

51 Bean Validation: Advanced Topics

51.1	Creating Custom Constraints	51-1
51.1.1	Using the Built-In Constraints to Make a New Constraint	51-1
51.2	Customizing Validator Messages	51-2
51.2.1	The ValidationMessages Resource Bundle	51-2
51.2.1.1	Localizing Validation Messages	51-2
51.3	Grouping Constraints	51-2
51.3.1	Customizing Group Validation Order	51-3
51.4	Using Method Constraints in Type Hierarchies	51-3
51.4.1	Rules for Using Method Constraints in Type Hierarchies	51-4

52 Using Java EE Interceptors

52.1	Overview of Interceptors	52-1
52.1.1	Interceptor Classes	52-2
52.1.2	Interceptor Lifecycle	52-2
52.1.3	Interceptors and CDI	52-2
52.2	Using Interceptors	52-2
52.2.1	Intercepting Method Invocations	52-3
52.2.1.1	Using Multiple Method Interceptors	52-3
52.2.1.2	Accessing Target Method Parameters From an Interceptor Class	52-4
52.2.2	Intercepting Lifecycle Callback Events	52-4
52.2.2.1	Using AroundConstruct Interceptor Methods	52-5
52.2.2.2	Using Multiple Lifecycle Callback Interceptors	52-5
52.2.3	Intercepting Timeout Events	52-6
52.2.3.1	Using Multiple Timeout Interceptors	52-6
52.2.4	Binding Interceptors to Components	52-6
52.2.4.1	Declaring the Interceptor Bindings on an Interceptor Class	52-7
52.2.4.2	Binding a Component to an Interceptor	52-7
52.2.5	Ordering Interceptors	52-8
52.3	The interceptor Example Application	52-9
52.3.1	Running the interceptor Example	52-9
52.3.1.1	To Run the interceptor Example Using NetBeans IDE	52-10

52.3.1.2	To Run the interceptor Example Using Maven.....	52-10
----------	---	-------

53 Batch Processing

53.1	Introduction to Batch Processing.....	53-1
53.1.1	Steps in Batch Jobs.....	53-2
53.1.2	Status and Decision Elements.....	53-3
53.1.3	Parallel Processing.....	53-4
53.1.4	Batch Framework Functionality.....	53-4
53.2	Batch Processing in Java EE.....	53-4
53.2.1	The Batch Processing Framework.....	53-4
53.2.2	Creating Batch Applications.....	53-4
53.2.3	Elements of a Batch Job.....	53-5
53.2.4	Properties and Parameters.....	53-5
53.2.5	Job Instances and Job Executions.....	53-6
53.2.6	Batch and Exit Status.....	53-6
53.3	Simple Use Case.....	53-7
53.3.1	Chunk Step.....	53-7
53.3.2	Task Step.....	53-9
53.4	Using the Job Specification Language.....	53-9
53.4.1	The job Element.....	53-10
53.4.2	The step Element.....	53-10
53.4.2.1	The chunk Element.....	53-12
53.4.2.2	The batchlet Element.....	53-13
53.4.2.3	The partition Element.....	53-14
53.4.3	The flow Element.....	53-16
53.4.4	The split Element.....	53-16
53.4.5	The decision Element.....	53-16
53.5	Creating Batch Artifacts.....	53-17
53.5.1	Batch Artifact Interfaces.....	53-17
53.5.2	Dependency Injection in Batch Artifacts.....	53-19
53.5.3	Using the Context Objects from the Batch Runtime.....	53-20
53.6	Submitting Jobs to the Batch Runtime.....	53-21
53.6.1	Starting a Job.....	53-21
53.6.2	Checking the Status of a Job.....	53-22
53.6.3	Invoking the Batch Runtime in Your Application.....	53-22
53.7	Packaging Batch Applications.....	53-22
53.8	The webserverlog Example Application.....	53-22
53.8.1	Architecture of the webserverlog Example Application.....	53-23
53.8.1.1	The Job Definition File.....	53-23
53.8.1.2	The LogLine and LogFilteredLine Items.....	53-24
53.8.1.3	The Chunk Step Batch Artifacts.....	53-24
53.8.1.4	The Listener Batch Artifacts.....	53-26
53.8.1.5	The Task Step Batch Artifact.....	53-26
53.8.1.6	The JavaServer Faces Pages.....	53-27
53.8.1.7	The Session Bean.....	53-27
53.8.2	Running the webserverlog Example Application.....	53-27
53.8.2.1	To Run the webserverlog Example Application Using NetBeans IDE.....	53-28

53.8.2.2	To Run the webservice Example Application Using Maven	53-28
53.9	The phonebilling Example Application.....	53-28
53.9.1	Architecture of the phonebilling Example Application	53-28
53.9.1.1	The Job Definition File	53-29
53.9.1.2	The CallRecord and PhoneBill Entities	53-30
53.9.1.3	The Call Records Chunk Step	53-31
53.9.1.4	The Phone Billing Chunk Step.....	53-32
53.9.1.5	The JavaServer Faces Pages.....	53-33
53.9.1.6	The Session Bean.....	53-34
53.9.2	Running the phonebilling Example Application	53-34
53.9.2.1	To Run the phonebilling Example Application Using NetBeans IDE	53-34
53.9.2.2	To Run the phonebilling Example Application Using Maven.....	53-35
53.10	Further Information about Batch Processing.....	53-35

54 Concurrency Utilities

54.1	Concurrency Basics.....	54-1
54.1.1	Threads and Processes	54-1
54.2	Main Components of the Concurrency Utilities	54-2
54.3	Concurrency and Transactions	54-3
54.4	Concurrency and Security	54-3
54.5	The jobs Concurrency Example	54-3
54.5.1	Running the jobs Example.....	54-4
54.5.1.1	To Configure GlassFish Server for the Basic Concurrency Example.....	54-4
54.5.1.2	To Build, Package, and Deploy the jobs Example Using NetBeans IDE	54-5
54.5.1.3	To Build, Package, and Deploy the jobs Example Using Maven.....	54-5
54.5.1.4	To Run the jobs Example and Submit Jobs With Low Priority.....	54-5
54.5.1.5	To Run the jobs Example and Submit Jobs With High Priority.....	54-6

Part XI Case Studies

55 Duke's Bookstore Case Study Example

55.1	Design and Architecture of Duke's Bookstore.....	55-1
55.2	The Duke's Bookstore Interface	55-2
55.2.1	The Book Java Persistence API Entity	55-2
55.2.2	Enterprise Beans Used in Duke's Bookstore	55-3
55.2.3	Facelets Pages and Managed Beans Used in Duke's Bookstore.....	55-3
55.2.4	Custom Components and Other Custom Objects Used in Duke's Bookstore	55-4
55.2.5	Properties Files Used in Duke's Bookstore	55-5
55.2.6	Deployment Descriptors Used in Duke's Bookstore	55-6
55.3	Running the Duke's Bookstore Case Study Application.....	55-6
55.3.1	To Build and Deploy Duke's Bookstore Using NetBeans IDE	55-6
55.3.2	To Build and Deploy Duke's Bookstore Using Maven.....	55-6
55.3.3	To Run Duke's Bookstore	55-7

Index

Preface

This tutorial is a guide to developing enterprise applications for the Java Platform, Enterprise Edition 7 (Java EE 7) using GlassFish Server Open Source Edition.

Oracle GlassFish Server, a Java EE compatible application server, is based on GlassFish Server Open Source Edition, the leading open-source and open-community platform for building and deploying next-generation applications and services. GlassFish Server Open Source Edition, developed by the GlassFish project open-source community at <https://glassfish.java.net/>, is the first compatible implementation of the Java EE 7 platform specification. This lightweight, flexible, and open-source application server enables organizations not only to leverage the new capabilities introduced within the Java EE 7 specification, but also to add to their existing capabilities through a faster and more streamlined development and deployment cycle. Oracle GlassFish Server, the product version, and GlassFish Server Open Source Edition, the open-source version, are hereafter referred to as GlassFish Server.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Audience](#)
- [Documentation Accessibility](#)
- [Before You Read This Book](#)
- [Related Documentation](#)
- [Conventions](#)
- [Default Paths and File Names](#)

Audience

This tutorial is intended for programmers interested in developing and deploying Java EE 7 applications. It covers the technologies comprising the Java EE platform and describes how to develop Java EE components and deploy them on the Java EE Software Development Kit (SDK).

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit

<http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

Before You Read This Book

Before proceeding with this tutorial, you should have a good knowledge of the Java programming language. A good way to get to that point is to work through the Java Tutorials (<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/index.html>).

Related Documentation

The GlassFish Server documentation set describes deployment planning and system installation. To obtain documentation for GlassFish Server Open Source Edition, go to <https://glassfish.java.net/docs/>.

The Java EE 7 API specification can be viewed at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/api/> and is also provided in the Java EE 7 SDK.

Additionally, the Java EE Specifications at <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javaee/tech/index.html> might be useful.

For information about creating enterprise applications in the NetBeans Integrated Development Environment (IDE), see <http://www.netbeans.org/kb/>.

For information about the Java DB database for use with the GlassFish Server, see <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javadb/overview/index.html>.

The GlassFish Samples project is a collection of sample applications that demonstrate a broad range of Java EE technologies. The GlassFish Samples are bundled with the Java EE Software Development Kit (SDK) and are also available from the GlassFish Samples project page at <https://glassfish-samples.java.net/>.

Conventions

The following table describes the typographic conventions that are used in this book.

Convention	Meaning	Example
Boldface	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.	From the File menu, select Open Project . A cache is a copy that is stored locally.
Monospace	Monospace type indicates the names of files and directories, commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.	Edit your <code>.login</code> file. Use <code>ls -a</code> to list all files. <code>machine_name%</code> you have mail.

Convention	Meaning	Example
Italic	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.	Read Chapter 6 in the <i>User's Guide</i> . Do <i>not</i> save the file. The command to remove a file is <code>rm filename</code> .

Default Paths and File Names

The following table describes the default paths and file names that are used in this book.

Placeholder	Description	Default Value
<i>as-install</i>	Represents the base installation directory for the GlassFish Server or the SDK of which the GlassFish Server is a part.	Installations on the Solaris operating system, Linux operating system, and Mac operating system: <i>user's-home-directory/glassfish4/glassfish</i> Windows, all installations: <i>SystemDrive:\glassfish4\glassfish</i>
<i>as-install-parent</i>	Represents the parent of the base installation directory for GlassFish Server.	Installations on the Solaris operating system, Linux operating system, and Mac operating system: <i>user's-home-directory/glassfish4</i> Windows, all installations: <i>SystemDrive:\glassfish4</i>
<i>tut-install</i>	Represents the base installation directory for the <i>Java EE Tutorial</i> after you install the GlassFish Server or the SDK and run the Update Tool.	<i>as-install-parent/docs/javaee-tutorial</i>
<i>domain-dir</i>	Represents the directory in which a domain's configuration is stored.	<i>as-install/domains/domain1</i>

Part I

Introduction

Part I introduces the platform, the tutorial, and the examples. This part contains the following chapters:

- [Chapter 1, "Overview"](#)
- [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#)

Overview

This chapter introduces you to Java EE enterprise application development. Here you will review development basics, learn about the Java EE architecture and APIs, become acquainted with important terms and concepts, and find out how to approach Java EE application programming, assembly, and deployment.

Developers today increasingly recognize the need for distributed, transactional, and portable applications that leverage the speed, security, and reliability of server-side technology. **Enterprise applications** provide the business logic for an enterprise. They are centrally managed and often interact with other enterprise software. In the world of information technology, enterprise applications must be designed, built, and produced for less money, with greater speed, and with fewer resources.

With the Java Platform, Enterprise Edition (Java EE), development of Java enterprise applications has never been easier or faster. The aim of the Java EE platform is to provide developers with a powerful set of APIs while shortening development time, reducing application complexity, and improving application performance.

The Java EE platform is developed through the Java Community Process (JCP), which is responsible for all Java technologies. Expert groups, composed of interested parties, have created Java Specification Requests (JSRs) to define the various Java EE technologies. The work of the Java Community under the JCP program helps to ensure Java technology's standard of stability and cross-platform compatibility.

The Java EE platform uses a simplified programming model. XML deployment descriptors are optional. Instead, a developer can simply enter the information as an **annotation** directly into a Java source file, and the Java EE server will configure the component at deployment and runtime. These annotations are generally used to embed in a program data that would otherwise be furnished in a deployment descriptor. With annotations, you put the specification information in your code next to the program element affected.

In the Java EE platform, dependency injection can be applied to all resources a component needs, effectively hiding the creation and lookup of resources from application code. Dependency injection can be used in EJB containers, web containers, and application clients. Dependency injection allows the Java EE container to automatically insert references to other required components or resources, using annotations.

This tutorial uses examples to describe the features available in the Java EE platform for developing enterprise applications. Whether you are a new or experienced Enterprise developer, you should find the examples and accompanying text a valuable and accessible knowledge base for creating your own solutions.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Java EE 7 Platform Highlights](#)

- [Java EE Application Model](#)
- [Distributed Multitiered Applications](#)
- [Java EE Containers](#)
- [Web Services Support](#)
- [Java EE Application Assembly and Deployment](#)
- [Development Roles](#)
- [Java EE 7 APIs](#)
- [Java EE 7 APIs in the Java Platform, Standard Edition 7](#)
- [GlassFish Server Tools](#)

1.1 Java EE 7 Platform Highlights

The most important goal of the Java EE 7 platform is to simplify development by providing a common foundation for the various kinds of components in the Java EE platform. Developers benefit from productivity improvements with more annotations and less XML configuration, more Plain Old Java Objects (POJOs), and simplified packaging. The Java EE 7 platform includes the following new features:

- New technologies, including the following:
 - [Batch Applications for the Java Platform](#)
 - [Concurrency Utilities for Java EE](#)
 - [Java API for JSON Processing \(JSON-P\)](#)
 - [Java API for WebSocket](#)
- New features for Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) components (see [Enterprise JavaBeans Technology](#) for details)
- New features for servlets (see [Java Servlet Technology](#) for details)
- New features for JavaServer Faces components (see [JavaServer Faces Technology](#) for details)
- New features for the Java Message Service (JMS) (see [Java Message Service API](#) for details)

1.2 Java EE Application Model

The Java EE application model begins with the Java programming language and the Java virtual machine. The proven portability, security, and developer productivity they provide forms the basis of the application model. Java EE is designed to support applications that implement enterprise services for customers, employees, suppliers, partners, and others who make demands on or contributions to the enterprise. Such applications are inherently complex, potentially accessing data from a variety of sources and distributing applications to a variety of clients.

To better control and manage these applications, the business functions to support these various users are conducted in the middle tier. The middle tier represents an environment that is closely controlled by an enterprise's information technology department. The middle tier is typically run on dedicated server hardware and has access to the full services of the enterprise.

The Java EE application model defines an architecture for implementing services as multitier applications that deliver the scalability, accessibility, and manageability needed by enterprise-level applications. This model partitions the work needed to implement a multitier service into the following parts:

- The business and presentation logic to be implemented by the developer
- The standard system services provided by the Java EE platform

The developer can rely on the platform to provide solutions for the hard systems-level problems of developing a multitier service.

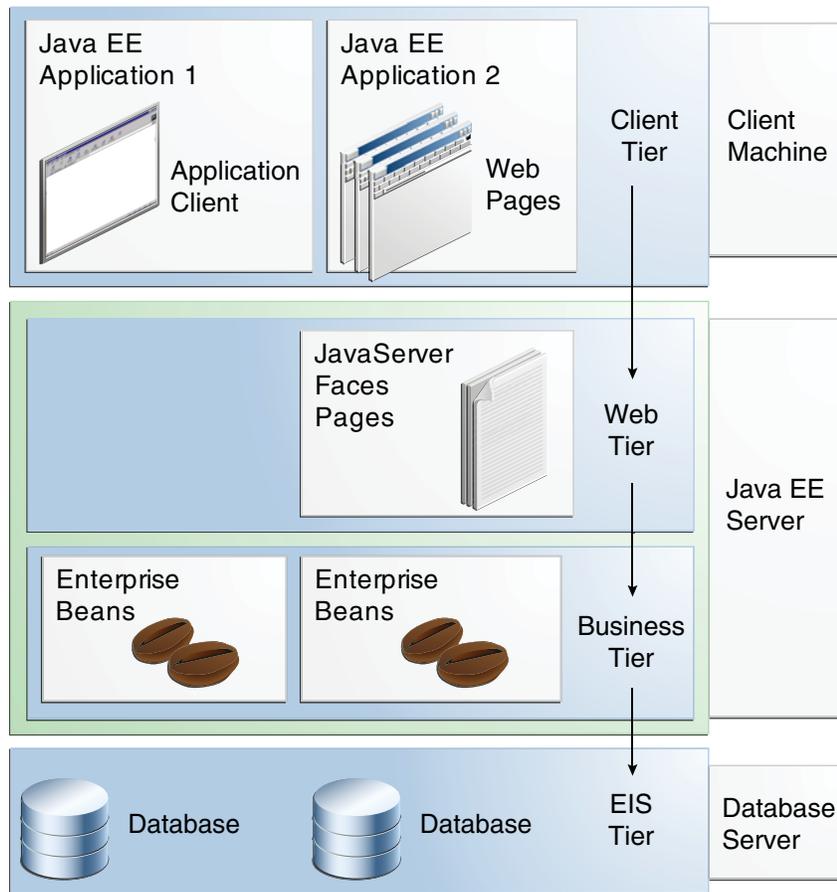
1.3 Distributed Multitiered Applications

The Java EE platform uses a distributed multitiered application model for enterprise applications. Application logic is divided into components according to function, and the application components that make up a Java EE application are installed on various machines, depending on the tier in the multitiered Java EE environment to which the application component belongs.

[Figure 1-1](#) shows two multitiered Java EE applications divided into the tiers described in the following list. The Java EE application parts shown in [Figure 1-1](#) are presented in [Java EE Components](#).

- Client-tier components run on the client machine.
- Web-tier components run on the Java EE server.
- Business-tier components run on the Java EE server.
- Enterprise information system (EIS)-tier software runs on the EIS server.

Although a Java EE application can consist of all tiers shown in [Figure 1-1](#), Java EE multitiered applications are generally considered to be three-tiered applications because they are distributed over three locations: client machines, the Java EE server machine, and the database or legacy machines at the back end. Three-tiered applications that run in this way extend the standard two-tiered client-and-server model by placing a multithreaded application server between the client application and back-end storage.

Figure 1–1 Multitiered Applications

1.3.1 Security

Although other enterprise application models require platform-specific security measures in each application, the Java EE security environment enables security constraints to be defined at deployment time. The Java EE platform makes applications portable to a wide variety of security implementations by shielding application developers from the complexity of implementing security features.

The Java EE platform provides standard declarative access control rules that are defined by the developer and interpreted when the application is deployed on the server. Java EE also provides standard login mechanisms so application developers do not have to implement these mechanisms in their applications. The same application works in a variety of security environments without changing the source code.

1.3.2 Java EE Components

Java EE applications are made up of components. A **Java EE component** is a self-contained functional software unit that is assembled into a Java EE application with its related classes and files and that communicates with other components.

The Java EE specification defines the following Java EE components:

- Application clients and applets are components that run on the client.
- Java Servlet, JavaServer Faces, and JavaServer Pages (JSP) technology components are web components that run on the server.

- Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) components (enterprise beans) are business components that run on the server.

Java EE components are written in the Java programming language and are compiled in the same way as any program in the language. The differences between Java EE components and "standard" Java classes are that Java EE components are assembled into a Java EE application, they are verified to be well formed and in compliance with the Java EE specification, and they are deployed to production, where they are run and managed by the Java EE server.

1.3.3 Java EE Clients

A Java EE client is usually either a web client or an application client.

1.3.3.1 Web Clients

A **web client** consists of two parts:

- Dynamic web pages containing various types of markup language (HTML, XML, and so on), which are generated by web components running in the web tier
- A web browser, which renders the pages received from the server

A web client is sometimes called a **thin client**. Thin clients usually do not query databases, execute complex business rules, or connect to legacy applications. When you use a thin client, such heavyweight operations are off-loaded to enterprise beans executing on the Java EE server, where they can leverage the security, speed, services, and reliability of Java EE server-side technologies.

1.3.3.2 Application Clients

An **application client** runs on a client machine and provides a way for users to handle tasks that require a richer user interface than can be provided by a markup language. An application client typically has a graphical user interface (GUI) created from the Swing or the Abstract Window Toolkit (AWT) API, but a command-line interface is certainly possible.

Application clients directly access enterprise beans running in the business tier. However, if application requirements warrant it, an application client can open an HTTP connection to establish communication with a servlet running in the web tier. Application clients written in languages other than Java can interact with Java EE servers, enabling the Java EE platform to interoperate with legacy systems, clients, and non-Java languages.

1.3.3.3 Applets

A web page received from the web tier can include an embedded applet. Written in the Java programming language, an **applet** is a small client application that executes in the Java virtual machine installed in the web browser. However, client systems will likely need the Java Plug-in and possibly a security policy file for the applet to successfully execute in the web browser.

Web components are the preferred API for creating a web client program, because no plug-ins or security policy files are needed on the client systems. Also, web components enable cleaner and more modular application design because they provide a way to separate applications programming from web page design. Personnel involved in web page design thus do not need to understand Java programming language syntax to do their jobs.

1.3.3.4 The JavaBeans Component Architecture

The server and client tiers might also include components based on the JavaBeans component architecture (JavaBeans components) to manage the data flow between the following:

- An application client or applet and components running on the Java EE server
- Server components and a database

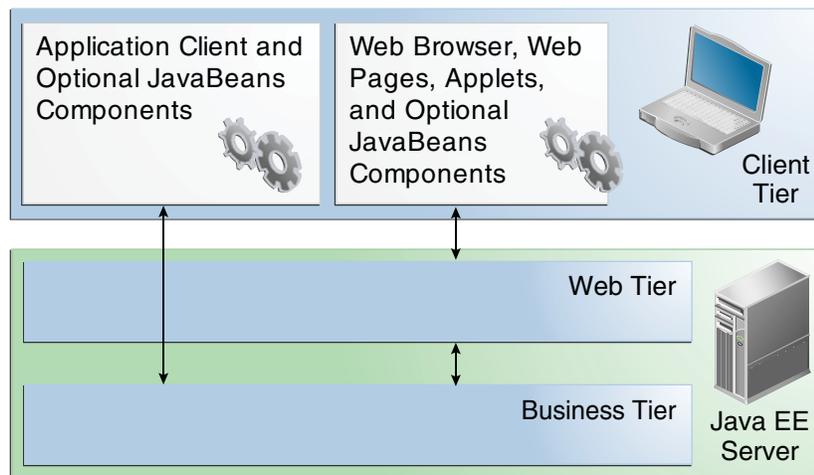
JavaBeans components are not considered Java EE components by the Java EE specification.

JavaBeans components have properties and have `get` and `set` methods for accessing the properties. JavaBeans components used in this way are typically simple in design and implementation but should conform to the naming and design conventions outlined in the JavaBeans component architecture.

1.3.3.5 Java EE Server Communications

Figure 1–2 shows the various elements that can make up the client tier. The client communicates with the business tier running on the Java EE server either directly or, as in the case of a client running in a browser, by going through web pages or servlets running in the web tier.

Figure 1–2 Server Communication



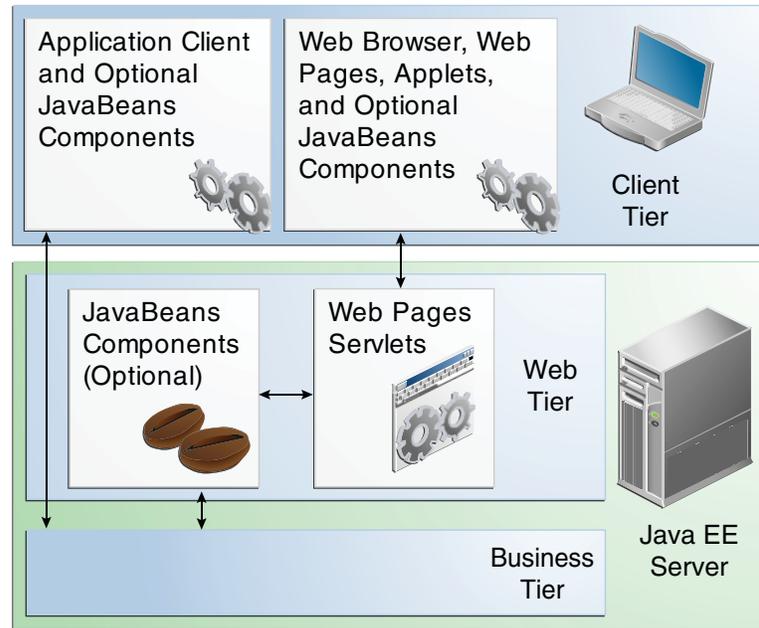
1.3.4 Web Components

Java EE web components are either servlets or web pages created using JavaServer Faces technology and/or JSP technology (JSP pages). **Servlets** are Java programming language classes that dynamically process requests and construct responses. **JSP pages** are text-based documents that execute as servlets but allow a more natural approach to creating static content. **JavaServer Faces technology** builds on servlets and JSP technology and provides a user interface component framework for web applications.

Static HTML pages and applets are bundled with web components during application assembly but are not considered web components by the Java EE specification. Server-side utility classes can also be bundled with web components and, like HTML pages, are not considered web components.

As shown in [Figure 1-3](#), the web tier, like the client tier, might include a JavaBeans component to manage the user input and send that input to enterprise beans running in the business tier for processing.

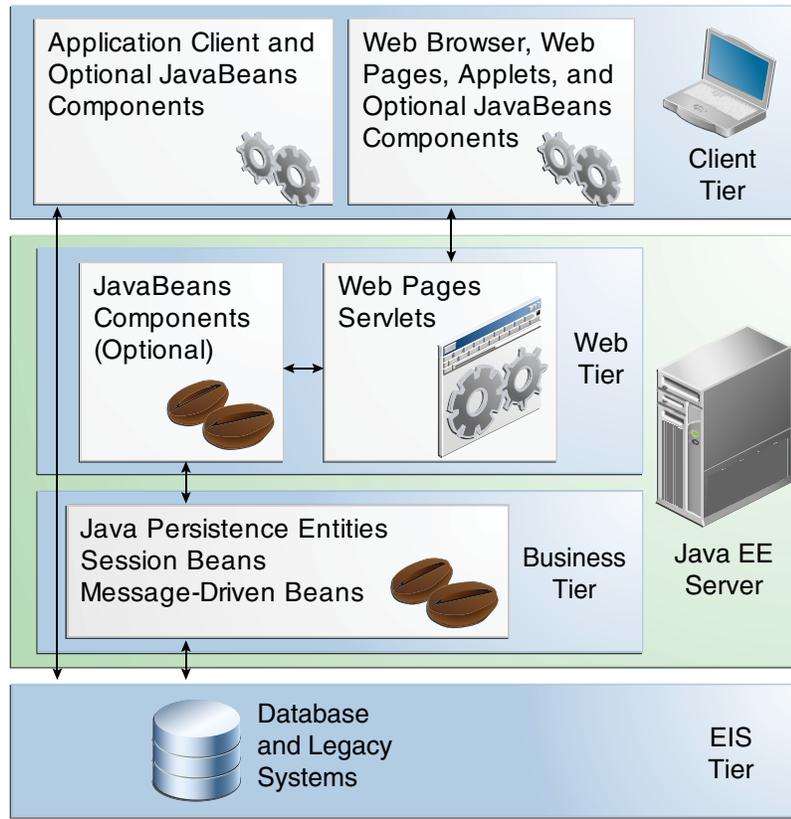
Figure 1-3 Web Tier and Java EE Applications



1.3.5 Business Components

Business code, which is logic that solves or meets the needs of a particular business domain such as banking, retail, or finance, is handled by enterprise beans running in either the business tier or the web tier. [Figure 1-4](#) shows how an enterprise bean receives data from client programs, processes it (if necessary), and sends it to the enterprise information system tier for storage. An enterprise bean also retrieves data from storage, processes it (if necessary), and sends it back to the client program.

Figure 1-4 Business and EIS Tiers



1.3.6 Enterprise Information System Tier

The enterprise information system tier handles EIS software and includes enterprise infrastructure systems, such as enterprise resource planning (ERP), mainframe transaction processing, database systems, and other legacy information systems. For example, Java EE application components might need access to enterprise information systems for database connectivity.

1.4 Java EE Containers

Normally, thin-client multitiered applications are hard to write because they involve many lines of intricate code to handle transaction and state management, multithreading, resource pooling, and other complex low-level details. The component-based and platform-independent Java EE architecture makes Java EE applications easy to write because business logic is organized into reusable components. In addition, the Java EE server provides underlying services in the form of a container for every component type. Because you do not have to develop these services yourself, you are free to concentrate on solving the business problem at hand.

1.4.1 Container Services

Containers are the interface between a component and the low-level platform-specific functionality that supports the component. Before it can be executed, a web, enterprise bean, or application client component must be assembled into a Java EE module and deployed into its container.

The assembly process involves specifying container settings for each component in the Java EE application and for the Java EE application itself. Container settings customize the underlying support provided by the Java EE server, including such services as security, transaction management, Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) API lookups, and remote connectivity. Here are some of the highlights.

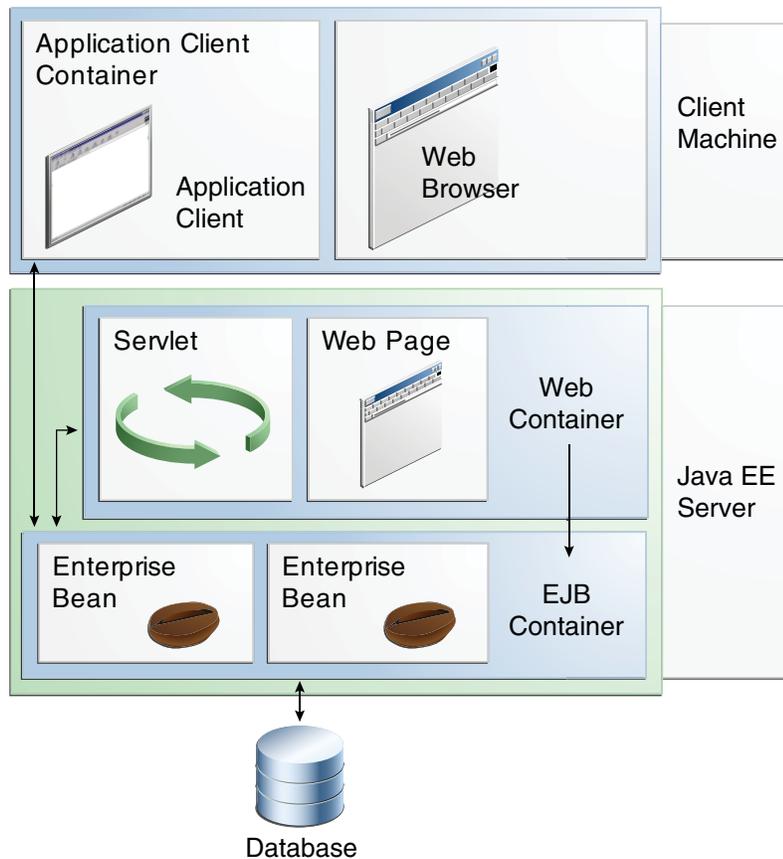
- The Java EE security model lets you configure a web component or enterprise bean so that system resources are accessed only by authorized users.
- The Java EE transaction model lets you specify relationships among methods that make up a single transaction so that all methods in one transaction are treated as a single unit.
- JNDI lookup services provide a unified interface to multiple naming and directory services in the enterprise so that application components can access these services.
- The Java EE remote connectivity model manages low-level communications between clients and enterprise beans. After an enterprise bean is created, a client invokes methods on it as if it were in the same virtual machine.

Because the Java EE architecture provides configurable services, application components within the same Java EE application can behave differently based on where they are deployed. For example, an enterprise bean can have security settings that allow it a certain level of access to database data in one production environment and another level of database access in another production environment.

The container also manages nonconfigurable services, such as enterprise bean and servlet lifecycles, database connection resource pooling, data persistence, and access to the Java EE platform APIs (see [Java EE 7 APIs](#)).

1.4.2 Container Types

The **deployment** process installs Java EE application components in the Java EE containers as illustrated in [Figure 1-5](#).

Figure 1-5 Java EE Server and Containers

- **Java EE server:** The runtime portion of a Java EE product. A Java EE server provides EJB and web containers.
- **Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) container:** Manages the execution of enterprise beans for Java EE applications. Enterprise beans and their container run on the Java EE server.
- **Web container:** Manages the execution of web pages, servlets, and some EJB components for Java EE applications. Web components and their container run on the Java EE server.
- **Application client container:** Manages the execution of application client components. Application clients and their container run on the client.
- **Applet container:** Manages the execution of applets. Consists of a web browser and Java Plug-in running on the client together.

1.5 Web Services Support

Web services are web-based enterprise applications that use open, XML-based standards and transport protocols to exchange data with calling clients. The Java EE platform provides the XML APIs and tools you need to quickly design, develop, test, and deploy web services and clients that fully interoperate with other web services and clients running on Java-based or non-Java-based platforms.

To write web services and clients with the Java EE XML APIs, all you do is pass parameter data to the method calls and process the data returned; for

document-oriented web services, you send documents containing the service data back and forth. No low-level programming is needed, because the XML API implementations do the work of translating the application data to and from an XML-based data stream that is sent over the standardized XML-based transport protocols. These XML-based standards and protocols are introduced in the following sections.

The translation of data to a standardized XML-based data stream is what makes web services and clients written with the Java EE XML APIs fully interoperable. This does not necessarily mean that the data being transported includes XML tags, because the transported data can itself be plain text, XML data, or any kind of binary data, such as audio, video, maps, program files, computer-aided design (CAD) documents, and the like. The next section introduces XML and explains how parties doing business can use XML tags and schemas to exchange data in a meaningful way.

1.5.1 XML

Extensible Markup Language (XML) is a cross-platform, extensible, text-based standard for representing data. Parties that exchange XML data can create their own tags to describe the data, set up schemas to specify which tags can be used in a particular kind of XML document, and use XML style sheets to manage the display and handling of the data.

For example, a web service can use XML and a schema to produce price lists, and companies that receive the price lists and schema can have their own style sheets to handle the data in a way that best suits their needs. Here are examples.

- One company might put XML pricing information through a program to translate the XML to HTML so that it can post the price lists to its intranet.
- A partner company might put the XML pricing information through a tool to create a marketing presentation.
- Another company might read the XML pricing information into an application for processing.

1.5.2 SOAP Transport Protocol

Client requests and web service responses are transmitted as Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) messages over HTTP to enable a completely interoperable exchange between clients and web services, all running on different platforms and at various locations on the Internet. HTTP is a familiar request-and-response standard for sending messages over the Internet, and SOAP is an XML-based protocol that follows the HTTP request-and-response model.

The SOAP portion of a transported message does the following:

- Defines an XML-based envelope to describe what is in the message and explain how to process the message
- Includes XML-based encoding rules to express instances of application-defined data types within the message
- Defines an XML-based convention for representing the request to the remote service and the resulting response

1.5.3 WSDL Standard Format

The Web Services Description Language (WSDL) is a standardized XML format for describing network services. The description includes the name of the service, the

location of the service, and ways to communicate with the service. WSDL service descriptions can be published on the Web. GlassFish Server provides a tool for generating the WSDL specification of a web service that uses remote procedure calls to communicate with clients.

1.6 Java EE Application Assembly and Deployment

A Java EE application is packaged into one or more standard units for deployment to any Java EE platform-compliant system. Each unit contains

- A functional component or components, such as an enterprise bean, web page, servlet, or applet
- An optional deployment descriptor that describes its content

Once a Java EE unit has been produced, it is ready to be deployed. Deployment typically involves using a platform's deployment tool to specify location-specific information, such as a list of local users who can access it and the name of the local database. Once deployed on a local platform, the application is ready to run.

1.7 Development Roles

Reusable modules make it possible to divide the application development and deployment process into distinct roles so that different people or companies can perform different parts of the process.

The first two roles, Java EE product provider and tool provider, involve purchasing and installing the Java EE product and tools. After software is purchased and installed, Java EE components can be developed by application component providers, assembled by application assemblers, and deployed by application deployers. In a large organization, each of these roles might be executed by different individuals or teams. This division of labor works because each of the earlier roles outputs a portable file that is the input for a subsequent role. For example, in the application component development phase, an enterprise bean software developer delivers EJB JAR files. In the application assembly role, another developer may combine these EJB JAR files into a Java EE application and save it in an EAR file. In the application deployment role, a system administrator at the customer site uses the EAR file to install the Java EE application into a Java EE server.

The different roles are not always executed by different people. If you work for a small company, for example, or if you are prototyping a sample application, you might perform tasks in every phase.

1.7.1 Java EE Product Provider

The Java EE product provider is the company that designs and makes available for purchase the Java EE platform APIs and other features defined in the Java EE specification. Product providers are typically application server vendors that implement the Java EE platform according to the Java EE 7 Platform specification.

1.7.2 Tool Provider

The tool provider is the company or person who creates development, assembly, and packaging tools used by component providers, assemblers, and deployers.

1.7.3 Application Component Provider

The application component provider is the company or person who creates web components, enterprise beans, applets, or application clients for use in Java EE applications.

1.7.3.1 Enterprise Bean Developer

An enterprise bean developer performs the following tasks to deliver an EJB JAR file that contains one or more enterprise beans:

- Writes and compiles the source code
- Specifies the deployment descriptor (optional)
- Packages the `.class` files and deployment descriptor into the EJB JAR file

1.7.3.2 Web Component Developer

A web component developer performs the following tasks to deliver a WAR file containing one or more web components:

- Writes and compiles servlet source code
- Writes JavaServer Faces, JSP, and HTML files
- Specifies the deployment descriptor (optional)
- Packages the `.class`, `.jsp`, and `.html` files and deployment descriptor into the WAR file

1.7.3.3 Application Client Developer

An application client developer performs the following tasks to deliver a JAR file containing the application client:

- Writes and compiles the source code
- Specifies the deployment descriptor for the client (optional)
- Packages the `.class` files and deployment descriptor into the JAR file

1.7.4 Application Assembler

The application assembler is the company or person who receives application modules from component providers and may assemble them into a Java EE application EAR file. The assembler or deployer can edit the deployment descriptor directly or can use tools that correctly add XML tags according to interactive selections.

A software developer performs the following tasks to deliver an EAR file containing the Java EE application:

- Assembles EJB JAR and WAR files created in the previous phases into a Java EE application (EAR) file
- Specifies the deployment descriptor for the Java EE application (optional)
- Verifies that the contents of the EAR file are well formed and comply with the Java EE specification

1.7.5 Application Deployer and Administrator

The application deployer and administrator is the company or person who configures and deploys application clients, web applications, Enterprise JavaBeans components,

and Java EE applications, administers the computing and networking infrastructure where Java EE components and applications run, and oversees the runtime environment. Duties include setting transaction controls and security attributes and specifying connections to databases.

During configuration, the deployer follows instructions supplied by the application component provider to resolve external dependencies, specify security settings, and assign transaction attributes. During installation, the deployer moves the application components to the server and generates the container-specific classes and interfaces.

A deployer or system administrator performs the following tasks to install and configure a Java EE application or components:

- Configures the Java EE application or components for the operational environment
- Verifies that the contents of the EAR, JAR, and/or WAR files are well formed and comply with the Java EE specification
- Deploys (installs) the Java EE application or components into the Java EE server

1.8 Java EE 7 APIs

Figure 1–6 shows the relationships among the Java EE containers.

Figure 1–6 Java EE Containers

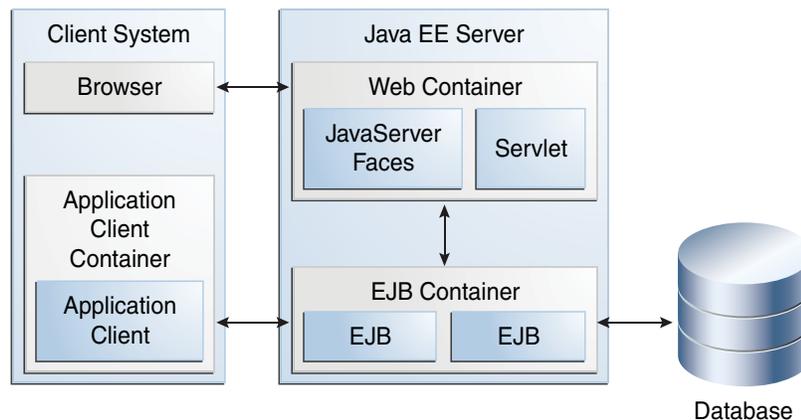


Figure 1–7 shows the availability of the Java EE 7 APIs in the web container.

Figure 1–7 Java EE APIs in the Web Container

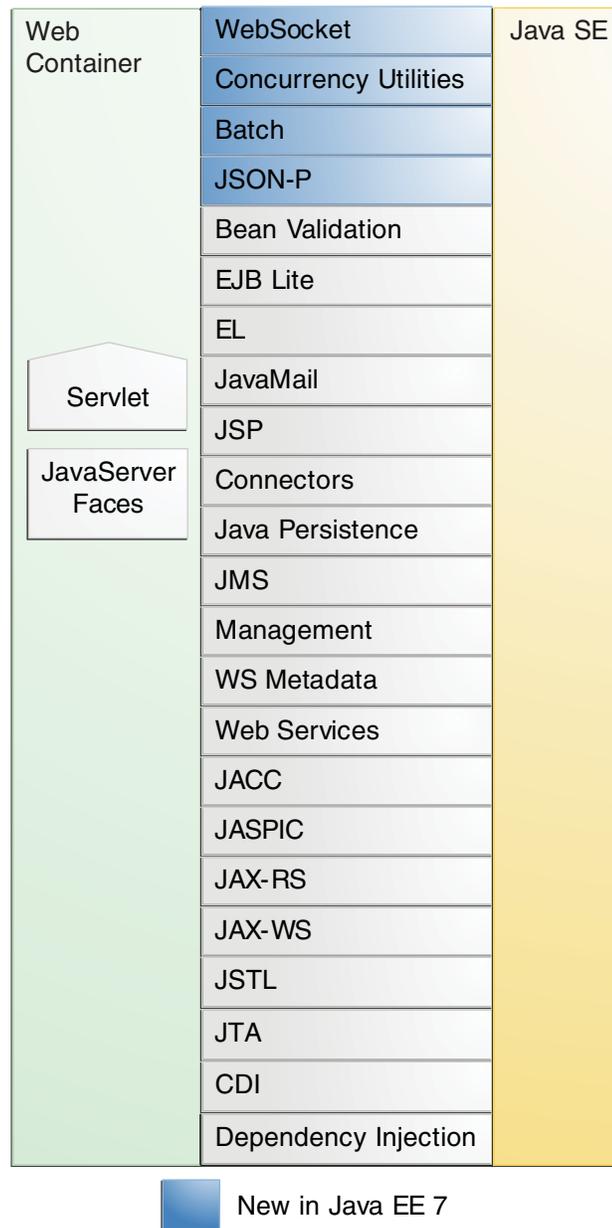


Figure 1–8 shows the availability of the Java EE 7 APIs in the EJB container.

Figure 1–8 Java EE APIs in the EJB Container

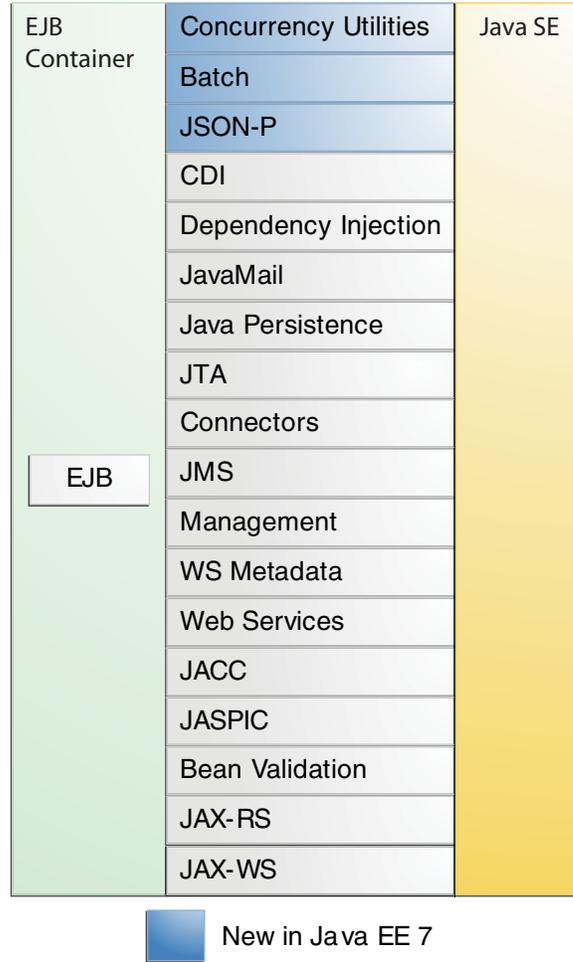
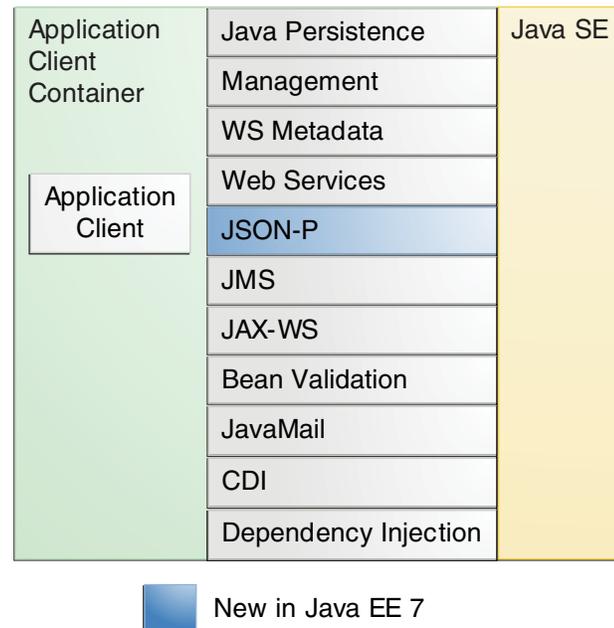


Figure 1–9 shows the availability of the Java EE 7 APIs in the application client container.

Figure 1–9 Java EE APIs in the Application Client Container

The following sections give a brief summary of the technologies required by the Java EE platform and the APIs used in Java EE applications.

1.8.1 Enterprise JavaBeans Technology

An **Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) component**, or **enterprise bean**, is a body of code having fields and methods to implement modules of business logic. You can think of an enterprise bean as a building block that can be used alone or with other enterprise beans to execute business logic on the Java EE server.

Enterprise beans are either session beans or message-driven beans.

- A **session bean** represents a transient conversation with a client. When the client finishes executing, the session bean and its data are gone.
- A **message-driven bean** combines features of a session bean and a message listener, allowing a business component to receive messages asynchronously. Commonly, these are Java Message Service (JMS) messages.

In the Java EE 7 platform, new enterprise bean features include the following:

- Asynchronous local session beans in EJB Lite
- Non-persistent timers in EJB Lite

The Java EE 7 platform requires Enterprise JavaBeans 3.2 and Interceptors 1.2. The Interceptors specification is part of the EJB specification.

1.8.2 Java Servlet Technology

Java Servlet technology lets you define HTTP-specific servlet classes. A servlet class extends the capabilities of servers that host applications accessed by way of a request-response programming model. Although servlets can respond to any type of request, they are commonly used to extend the applications hosted by web servers.

In the Java EE 7 platform, new Java Servlet technology features include the following:

- Non-blocking I/O
- HTTP protocol upgrade

The Java EE 7 platform requires Servlet 3.1.

1.8.3 JavaServer Faces Technology

JavaServer Faces technology is a user interface framework for building web applications. The main components of JavaServer Faces technology are as follows:

- A GUI component framework.
- A flexible model for rendering components in different kinds of HTML or different markup languages and technologies. A `Renderer` object generates the markup to render the component and converts the data stored in a model object to types that can be represented in a view.
- A standard `RenderKit` for generating HTML/4.01 markup.

The following features support the GUI components:

- Input validation
- Event handling
- Data conversion between model objects and components
- Managed model object creation
- Page navigation configuration
- Expression Language (EL)

All this functionality is available using standard Java APIs and XML-based configuration files.

In the Java EE 7 platform, new features of JavaServer Faces technology include the following:

- HTML 5 friendly markup
- Faces Flows
- Resource library contracts

The Java EE 7 platform requires JavaServer Faces 2.2 and Expression Language 3.0.

1.8.4 JavaServer Pages Technology

JavaServer Pages (JSP) technology lets you put snippets of servlet code directly into a text-based document. A JSP page is a text-based document that contains two types of text:

- Static data, which can be expressed in any text-based format such as HTML or XML
- JSP elements, which determine how the page constructs dynamic content

For information about JSP technology, see the *The Java EE 5 Tutorial* at <http://docs.oracle.com/javasee/5/tutorial/doc/>.

The Java EE 7 platform requires JavaServer Pages 2.3 for compatibility with earlier releases, but recommends the use of Facelets as the display technology in new applications.

1.8.5 JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library

The JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library (JSTL) encapsulates core functionality common to many JSP applications. Instead of mixing tags from numerous vendors in your JSP applications, you use a single, standard set of tags. This standardization allows you to deploy your applications on any JSP container that supports JSTL and makes it more likely that the implementation of the tags is optimized.

JSTL has iterator and conditional tags for handling flow control, tags for manipulating XML documents, internationalization tags, tags for accessing databases using SQL, and commonly used functions.

The Java EE 7 platform requires JSTL 1.2.

1.8.6 Java Persistence API

The Java Persistence API (JPA) is a Java standards-based solution for persistence. Persistence uses an object/relational mapping approach to bridge the gap between an object-oriented model and a relational database. The Java Persistence API can also be used in Java SE applications, outside of the Java EE environment. Java Persistence consists of the following areas:

- The Java Persistence API
- The query language
- Object/relational mapping metadata

The Java EE 7 platform requires Java Persistence API 2.1.

1.8.7 Java Transaction API

The Java Transaction API (JTA) provides a standard interface for demarcating transactions. The Java EE architecture provides a default auto commit to handle transaction commits and rollbacks. An auto commit means that any other applications that are viewing data will see the updated data after each database read or write operation. However, if your application performs two separate database access operations that depend on each other, you will want to use the JTA API to demarcate where the entire transaction, including both operations, begins, rolls back, and commits.

The Java EE 7 platform requires Java Transaction API 1.2.

1.8.8 Java API for RESTful Web Services

The Java API for RESTful Web Services (JAX-RS) defines APIs for the development of web services built according to the Representational State Transfer (REST) architectural style. A JAX-RS application is a web application that consists of classes packaged as a servlet in a WAR file along with required libraries.

The Java EE 7 platform requires JAX-RS 2.0.

1.8.9 Managed Beans

Managed Beans, lightweight container-managed objects (POJOs) with minimal requirements, support a small set of basic services, such as resource injection, lifecycle callbacks, and interceptors. Managed Beans represent a generalization of the managed beans specified by JavaServer Faces technology and can be used anywhere in a Java EE application, not just in web modules.

The Managed Beans specification is part of the Java EE 7 platform specification (JSR 342). The Java EE 7 platform requires Managed Beans 1.0.

1.8.10 Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE

Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI) defines a set of contextual services, provided by Java EE containers, that make it easy for developers to use enterprise beans along with JavaServer Faces technology in web applications. Designed for use with stateful objects, CDI also has many broader uses, allowing developers a great deal of flexibility to integrate different kinds of components in a loosely coupled but type-safe way.

The Java EE 7 platform requires CDI 1.1.

1.8.11 Dependency Injection for Java

Dependency Injection for Java defines a standard set of annotations (and one interface) for use on injectable classes.

In the Java EE platform, CDI provides support for Dependency Injection. Specifically, you can use DI injection points only in a CDI-enabled application.

The Java EE 7 platform requires Dependency Injection for Java 1.0.

1.8.12 Bean Validation

The Bean Validation specification defines a metadata model and API for validating data in JavaBeans components. Instead of distributing validation of data over several layers, such as the browser and the server side, you can define the validation constraints in one place and share them across the different layers.

The Java EE 7 platform requires Bean Validation 1.1.

1.8.13 Java Message Service API

The Java Message Service (JMS) API is a messaging standard that allows Java EE application components to create, send, receive, and read messages. It enables distributed communication that is loosely coupled, reliable, and asynchronous.

In the platform, new features of JMS include the following.

- A new, simplified API offers a simpler alternative to the previous API. This API includes a `JMSContext` object that combines the functions of a `Connection` and a `Session`.
- All objects with a `close` method implement the `java.lang.AutoCloseable` interface so that they can be used in a Java SE 7 `try-with-resources` statement.

The Java EE 7 platform requires JMS 2.0.

1.8.14 Java EE Connector Architecture

The Java EE Connector Architecture is used by tools vendors and system integrators to create resource adapters that support access to enterprise information systems that can be plugged in to any Java EE product. A **resource adapter** is a software component that allows Java EE application components to access and interact with the underlying resource manager of the EIS. Because a resource adapter is specific to its resource manager, a different resource adapter typically exists for each type of database or enterprise information system.

The Java EE Connector Architecture also provides a performance-oriented, secure, scalable, and message-based transactional integration of Java EE based web services with existing EISs that can be either synchronous or asynchronous. Existing applications and EISs integrated through the Java EE Connector Architecture into the Java EE platform can be exposed as XML-based web services by using JAX-WS and Java EE component models. Thus JAX-WS and the Java EE Connector Architecture are complementary technologies for enterprise application integration (EAI) and end-to-end business integration.

The Java EE 7 platform requires Java EE Connector Architecture 1.7.

1.8.15 JavaMail API

Java EE applications use the JavaMail API to send email notifications. The JavaMail API has two parts:

- An application-level interface used by the application components to send mail
- A service provider interface

The Java EE platform includes the JavaMail API with a service provider that allows application components to send Internet mail.

The Java EE 7 platform requires JavaMail 1.5.

1.8.16 Java Authorization Contract for Containers

The Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC) specification defines a contract between a Java EE application server and an authorization policy provider. All Java EE containers support this contract.

The JACC specification defines `java.security.Permission` classes that satisfy the Java EE authorization model. The specification defines the binding of container-access decisions to operations on instances of these permission classes. It defines the semantics of policy providers that use the new permission classes to address the authorization requirements of the Java EE platform, including the definition and use of roles.

The Java EE 7 platform requires JACC 1.5.

1.8.17 Java Authentication Service Provider Interface for Containers

The Java Authentication Service Provider Interface for Containers (JASPIC) specification defines a service provider interface (SPI) by which authentication providers that implement message authentication mechanisms may be integrated in client or server message-processing containers or runtimes. Authentication providers integrated through this interface operate on network messages provided to them by their calling containers. The authentication providers transform outgoing messages so that the source of each message can be authenticated by the receiving container, and the recipient of the message can be authenticated by the message sender.

Authentication providers authenticate each incoming messages and return to their calling containers the identity established as a result of the message authentication.

The Java EE 7 platform requires JASPIC 1.1.

1.8.18 Java API for WebSocket

WebSocket is an application protocol that provides full-duplex communications between two peers over TCP. The Java API for WebSocket enables Java EE applications

to create endpoints using annotations that specify the configuration parameters of the endpoint and designate its lifecycle callback methods.

The WebSocket API is new to the Java EE 7 platform. The Java EE 7 platform requires Java API for WebSocket 1.0.

1.8.19 Java API for JSON Processing

JSON is a text-based data exchange format derived from JavaScript that is used in web services and other connected applications. The Java API for JSON Processing (JSON-P) enables Java EE applications to parse, transform, and query JSON data using the object model or the streaming model.

JSON-P is new to the Java EE 7 platform. The Java EE 7 platform requires JSON-P 1.0.

1.8.20 Concurrency Utilities for Java EE

The Concurrency Utilities for Java EE is a standard API for providing asynchronous capabilities to Java EE application components through the following types of objects: managed executor service, managed scheduled executor service, managed thread factory, and context service.

Concurrency Utilities for Java EE are new to the Java EE 7 platform. The Java EE 7 platform requires Concurrency Utilities for Java EE 1.0.

1.8.21 Batch Applications for the Java Platform

Batch jobs are tasks that can be executed without user interaction. The Batch Applications for the Java Platform specification is a batch framework that provides support for creating and running batch jobs in Java applications. The batch framework consists of a batch runtime, a job specification language based on XML, a Java API to interact with the batch runtime, and a Java API to implement batch artifacts.

Batch Applications for the Java Platform is new to the Java EE 7 platform. The Java EE 7 platform requires Batch Applications for the Java Platform 1.0.

1.9 Java EE 7 APIs in the Java Platform, Standard Edition 7

Several APIs that are required by the Java EE 7 platform are included in the Java Platform, Standard Edition 7 (Java SE 7) and are thus available to Java EE applications.

1.9.1 Java Database Connectivity API

The Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) API lets you invoke SQL commands from Java programming language methods. You use the JDBC API in an enterprise bean when you have a session bean access the database. You can also use the JDBC API from a servlet or a JSP page to access the database directly without going through an enterprise bean.

The JDBC API has two parts:

- An application-level interface used by the application components to access a database
- A service provider interface to attach a JDBC driver to the Java EE platform

The Java SE 7 platform requires JDBC 4.1.

1.9.2 Java Naming and Directory Interface API

The Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) API provides naming and directory functionality, enabling applications to access multiple naming and directory services such as LDAP, DNS, and NIS. The JNDI API provides applications with methods for performing standard directory operations, such as associating attributes with objects and searching for objects using their attributes. Using JNDI, a Java EE application can store and retrieve any type of named Java object, allowing Java EE applications to coexist with many legacy applications and systems.

Java EE naming services provide application clients, enterprise beans, and web components with access to a JNDI naming environment. A **naming environment** allows a component to be customized without the need to access or change the component's source code. A container implements the component's environment and provides it to the component as a JNDI **naming context**.

A Java EE component can locate its environment naming context by using JNDI interfaces. A component can create a `javax.naming.InitialContext` object and look up the environment naming context in `InitialContext` under the name `java:comp/env`. A component's naming environment is stored directly in the environment naming context or in any of its direct or indirect subcontexts.

A Java EE component can access named system-provided and user-defined objects. The names of system-provided objects, such as JTA `UserTransaction` objects, are stored in the environment naming context `java:comp/env`. The Java EE platform allows a component to name user-defined objects, such as enterprise beans, environment entries, JDBC `DataSource` objects, and message connections. An object should be named within a subcontext of the naming environment according to the type of the object. For example, enterprise beans are named within the subcontext `java:comp/env/ejb`, and JDBC `DataSource` references are named within the subcontext `java:comp/env/jdbc`.

1.9.3 JavaBeans Activation Framework

The JavaBeans Activation Framework (JAF) is used by the JavaMail API. JAF provides standard services to determine the type of an arbitrary piece of data, encapsulate access to it, discover the operations available on it, and create the appropriate JavaBeans component to perform those operations.

1.9.4 Java API for XML Processing

The Java API for XML Processing (JAXP), part of the Java SE platform, supports the processing of XML documents using Document Object Model (DOM), Simple API for XML (SAX), and Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations (XSLT). JAXP enables applications to parse and transform XML documents independently of a particular XML processing implementation.

JAXP also provides namespace support, which lets you work with schemas that might otherwise have naming conflicts. Designed to be flexible, JAXP lets you use any XML-compliant parser or XSL processor from within your application and supports the Worldwide Web Consortium (W3C) schema. You can find information on the W3C schema at this URL: <http://www.w3.org/XML/Schema>.

1.9.5 Java Architecture for XML Binding

The Java Architecture for XML Binding (JAXB) provides a convenient way to bind an XML schema to a representation in Java language programs. JAXB can be used independently or in combination with JAX-WS, where it provides a standard data

binding for web service messages. All Java EE application client containers, web containers, and EJB containers support the JAXB API.

The Java EE 7 platform requires JAXB 2.2.

1.9.6 Java API for XML Web Services

The Java API for XML Web Services (JAX-WS) specification provides support for web services that use the JAXB API for binding XML data to Java objects. The JAX-WS specification defines client APIs for accessing web services as well as techniques for implementing web service endpoints. The Implementing Enterprise Web Services specification describes the deployment of JAX-WS-based services and clients. The EJB and Java Servlet specifications also describe aspects of such deployment. JAX-WS-based applications can be deployed using any of these deployment models.

The JAX-WS specification describes the support for message handlers that can process message requests and responses. In general, these message handlers execute in the same container and with the same privileges and execution context as the JAX-WS client or endpoint component with which they are associated. These message handlers have access to the same JNDI `java:comp/env` namespace as their associated component. Custom serializers and deserializers, if supported, are treated in the same way as message handlers.

The Java EE 7 platform requires JAX-WS 2.2.

1.9.7 SOAP with Attachments API for Java

The SOAP with Attachments API for Java (SAAJ) is a low-level API on which JAX-WS depends. SAAJ enables the production and consumption of messages that conform to the SOAP 1.1 and 1.2 specifications and SOAP with Attachments note. Most developers do not use the SAAJ API, instead using the higher-level JAX-WS API.

1.9.8 Java Authentication and Authorization Service

The Java Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS) provides a way for a Java EE application to authenticate and authorize a specific user or group of users to run it.

JAAS is a Java programming language version of the standard Pluggable Authentication Module (PAM) framework, which extends the Java Platform security architecture to support user-based authorization.

1.9.9 Common Annotations for the Java Platform

Annotations enable a declarative style of programming in the Java platform.

The Java EE 7 platform requires Common Annotations for the Java Platform 1.2.

1.10 GlassFish Server Tools

The GlassFish Server is a compliant implementation of the Java EE 7 platform. In addition to supporting all the APIs described in the previous sections, the GlassFish Server includes a number of Java EE tools that are not part of the Java EE 7 platform but are provided as a convenience to the developer.

This section briefly summarizes the tools that make up the GlassFish Server. Instructions for starting and stopping the GlassFish Server, starting the Administration Console, and starting and stopping the Java DB server are in [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).

The GlassFish Server contains the tools listed in [Table 1–1](#). Basic usage information for many of the tools appears throughout the tutorial. For detailed information, see the online help in the GUI tools.

Table 1–1 GlassFish Server Tools

Tool	Description
Administration Console	A web-based GUI GlassFish Server administration utility. Used to stop the GlassFish Server and to manage users, resources, and applications.
asadmin	A command-line GlassFish Server administration utility. Used to start and stop the GlassFish Server and to manage users, resources, and applications.
appclient	A command-line tool that launches the application client container and invokes the client application packaged in the application client JAR file.
capture-schema	A command-line tool to extract schema information from a database, producing a schema file that the GlassFish Server can use for container-managed persistence.
package-appclient	A command-line tool to package the application client container libraries and JAR files.
Java DB database	A copy of the Java DB server.
xjc	A command-line tool to transform, or bind, a source XML schema to a set of JAXB content classes in the Java programming language.
schemagen	A command-line tool to create a schema file for each namespace referenced in your Java classes.
wsimport	A command-line tool to generate JAX-WS portable artifacts for a given WSDL file. After generation, these artifacts can be packaged in a WAR file with the WSDL and schema documents, along with the endpoint implementation, and then deployed.
wsgen	A command-line tool to read a web service endpoint class and generate all the required JAX-WS portable artifacts for web service deployment and invocation.

Using the Tutorial Examples

This chapter tells you everything you need to know to install, build, and run the examples.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Required Software](#)
- [Starting and Stopping the GlassFish Server](#)
- [Starting the Administration Console](#)
- [Starting and Stopping the Java DB Server](#)
- [Building the Examples](#)
- [Tutorial Example Directory Structure](#)
- [Java EE 7 Maven Archetypes in the Tutorial](#)
- [Getting the Latest Updates to the Tutorial](#)
- [Debugging Java EE Applications](#)

2.1 Required Software

The following software is required to run the examples:

- [Java Platform, Standard Edition](#)
- [Java EE 7 Software Development Kit](#)
- [Java EE 7 Tutorial Component](#)
- [NetBeans IDE](#)
- [Apache Maven](#)

2.1.1 Java EE 7 Software Development Kit

GlassFish Server Open Source Edition 4 is targeted as the build and runtime environment for the tutorial examples. To build, deploy, and run the examples, you need a copy of the GlassFish Server and, optionally, NetBeans IDE. To obtain the GlassFish Server, you must install the Java EE 7 Software Development Kit (SDK), which you can download from

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javaee/downloads/index.html>. Make sure you download the Java EE 7 SDK, not the Java EE 7 Web Profile SDK.

There are distributions of the Java EE 7 SDK with and without the Java Platform, Standard Edition 7 Development Kit.

2.1.1.1 SDK Installation Tips

During the installation of the SDK, do the following:

- Allow the installer to download and configure the Update Tool. If you access the Internet through a firewall, provide the proxy host and port.
- Configure the GlassFish Server administration user name as `admin`, and specify no password. This is the default setting.
- Accept the default port values for the Admin Port (4848) and the HTTP Port (8080).
- Do not select the check box to create an operating system service for the domain.

You can leave the check box to start the domain after creation selected if you wish, but this is not required.

This tutorial refers to *as-install-parent*, the directory where you install the GlassFish Server. For example, the default installation directory on Microsoft Windows is `C:\glassfish4`, so *as-install-parent* is `C:\glassfish4`. The GlassFish Server itself is installed in *as-install*, the `glassfish` directory under *as-install-parent*. So on Microsoft Windows, *as-install* is `C:\glassfish4\glassfish`.

After you install the GlassFish Server, add the following directories to your `PATH` to avoid having to specify the full path when you use commands:

```
as-install-parent/bin
as-install/bin
```

2.1.2 Java Platform, Standard Edition

To build, deploy, and run the examples, you need a copy of the Java Platform, Standard Edition 7 Development Kit (JDK 7). Some distributions of the Java EE 7 SDK include JDK 7. You can download JDK 7 software separately from <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html>.

2.1.3 Java EE 7 Tutorial Component

The tutorial example source is contained in the tutorial component. To obtain the tutorial component, use the Update Tool.

2.1.3.1 To Obtain the Tutorial Component Using the Update Tool

1. Start the Update Tool by doing one of the following:
 - From the command line, enter the command `updatetool`.
 - On a Windows system, from the Start menu, select **All Programs**, then select **Java EE 7 SDK**, then select **Start Update Tool**.
2. Expand the **Java EE 7 SDK** node.
3. Select **Available Updates**.
4. From the list, select the **Java EE 7 Tutorial** check box.
5. Click **Install**.
6. Accept the license agreement.

After installation, the Java EE 7 Tutorial appears in the list of installed components. The tool is installed in the `as-parent-install/docs/javaee-tutorial` directory, which is referred to throughout the Tutorial as `tut-install`. This directory contains two subdirectories: `docs` and `examples`. The `examples` directory contains subdirectories for each of the technologies discussed in the tutorial.

Next Steps

Updates to the Java EE 7 Tutorial are published periodically. For details on obtaining these updates, see [Getting the Latest Updates to the Tutorial](#).

2.1.4 NetBeans IDE

The NetBeans integrated development environment (IDE) is a free, open-source IDE for developing Java applications, including enterprise applications. NetBeans IDE supports the Java EE platform. You can build, package, deploy, and run the tutorial examples from within NetBeans IDE.

To run the tutorial examples, you need the latest version of NetBeans IDE. You can download NetBeans IDE from <https://www.netbeans.org/downloads/index.html>. Make sure that you download the Java EE bundle.

2.1.4.1 To Install NetBeans IDE without GlassFish Server

When you install NetBeans IDE, do not install the version of GlassFish Server that comes with NetBeans IDE. To skip the installation of GlassFish Server, follow these steps.

1. On the first page of the NetBeans IDE Installer wizard, deselect the check box for GlassFish Server and click **OK**.
2. Accept both the License Agreement and the Junit License Agreement.
A few of the tutorial examples use the Junit library, so you should install it.
3. Continue with the installation of NetBeans IDE.

2.1.4.2 To Add GlassFish Server as a Server in NetBeans IDE

To run the tutorial examples in NetBeans IDE, you must add your GlassFish Server as a server in NetBeans IDE. Follow these instructions to add the GlassFish Server to NetBeans IDE.

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Servers**.
2. In the Servers wizard, click **Add Server**.
3. Under **Choose Server**, select **GlassFish Server** and click **Next**.
4. Under **Server Location**, browse to the location of the Java EE 7 SDK and click **Next**.
5. Under **Domain Location**, select **Register Local Domain**.
6. Click **Finish**.

2.1.5 Apache Maven

Maven is a Java technology-based build tool developed by the Apache Software Foundation and is used to build, package, and deploy the tutorial examples. To run the

tutorial examples from the command line, you need Maven 3.0 or higher. If you do not already have Maven, you can install it from:

<http://maven.apache.org>

Be sure to add the *maven-install/bin* directory to your path.

If you are using NetBeans IDE to build and run the examples, it includes a copy of Maven.

2.2 Starting and Stopping the GlassFish Server

You can start and stop the GlassFish Server using either NetBeans IDE or the command line.

2.2.1 To Start the GlassFish Server Using NetBeans IDE

1. Click the **Services** tab.
2. Expand **Servers**.
3. Right-click the GlassFish Server instance and select **Start**.

2.2.2 To Stop the GlassFish Server Using NetBeans IDE

To stop the GlassFish Server using NetBeans IDE, right-click the GlassFish Server instance and select **Stop**.

2.2.3 To Start the GlassFish Server from the Command Line

To start the GlassFish Server from the command line, open a terminal window or command prompt and execute the following:

```
asadmin start-domain --verbose
```

A **domain** is a set of one or more GlassFish Server instances managed by one administration server. Associated with a domain are the following:

- The GlassFish Server's port number. The default is 8080.
- The administration server's port number. The default is 4848.
- An administration user name and password. The default user name is `admin`, and by default no password is required.

You specify these values when you install the GlassFish Server. The examples in this tutorial assume that you chose the default ports as well as the default user name and lack of password.

With no arguments, the `start-domain` command initiates the default domain, which is `domain1`. The `--verbose` flag causes all logging and debugging output to appear on the terminal window or command prompt. The output also goes into the server log, which is located in `domain-dir/logs/server.log`.

Or, on Windows, from the **Start** menu, select **All Programs**, then select **Java EE 7 SDK**, then select **Start Application Server**.

2.2.4 To Stop the GlassFish Server from the Command Line

To stop the GlassFish Server, open a terminal window or command prompt and execute:

```
asadmin stop-domain domain1
```

Or, on Windows, from the **Start** menu, select **All Programs**, then select **Java EE 7 SDK**, then select **Stop Application Server**.

2.3 Starting the Administration Console

To administer the GlassFish Server and manage users, resources, and Java EE applications, use the Administration Console tool. The GlassFish Server must be running before you invoke the Administration Console. To start the Administration Console, open a browser at <http://localhost:4848/>.

Or, on Windows, from the **Start** menu, select **All Programs**, then select **Java EE 7 SDK**, then select **Administration Console**.

2.3.1 To Start the Administration Console in NetBeans IDE

1. Click the **Services** tab.
2. Expand **Servers**.
3. Right-click the GlassFish Server instance and select **View Domain Admin Console**.

Note: NetBeans IDE uses your default web browser to open the Administration Console.

2.4 Starting and Stopping the Java DB Server

The GlassFish Server includes the Java DB database server.

To start the Java DB server from the command line, open a terminal window or command prompt and execute:

```
asadmin start-database
```

To stop the Java DB server from the command line, open a terminal window or command prompt and execute:

```
asadmin stop-database
```

For information about the Java DB included with the GlassFish Server, see <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javadb/overview/index.html>.

2.4.1 To Start the Database Server Using NetBeans IDE

When you start the GlassFish Server using NetBeans IDE, the database server starts automatically. If you ever need to start the server manually, however, follow these steps.

1. Click the **Services** tab.
2. Expand **Databases**.
3. Right-click **Java DB** and select **Start Server**.

Next Steps

To stop the database using NetBeans IDE, right-click **Java DB** and select **Stop Server**.

2.5 Building the Examples

The tutorial examples are distributed with a configuration file for either NetBeans IDE or Maven. Either NetBeans IDE or Maven may be used to build, package, deploy, and run the examples. Directions for building the examples are provided in each chapter.

2.6 Tutorial Example Directory Structure

To facilitate iterative development and keep application source separate from compiled files, the tutorial examples use the Maven application directory structure.

Each application module has the following structure:

- `pom.xml`: Maven build file
- `src/main/java`: Java source files for the module
- `src/main/resources`: configuration files for the module, with the exception of web applications
- `src/main/webapp`: web pages, style sheets, tag files, and images (web applications only)
- `src/main/webapp/WEB-INF`: configuration files for web applications (web applications only)

When an example has multiple application modules packaged into an EAR file, its submodule directories use the following naming conventions:

- `example-name-app-client`: application clients
- `example-name-ejb`: enterprise bean JAR files
- `example-name-war`: web applications
- `example-name-ear`: enterprise applications
- `example-name-common`: library JAR containing components, classes, and files used by other modules

The Maven build file (`pom.xml`) distributed with the examples contain goals to compile and assemble the application into the `target` directory and deploy the archive to GlassFish Server.

2.7 Java EE 7 Maven Archetypes in the Tutorial

Some of the chapters have instructions on how to build an example application using Maven *archetypes*. Archetypes are templates for generating a particular Maven project. The Tutorial includes several Maven archetypes for generating Java EE 7 projects.

2.7.1 Installing the Tutorial Archetypes

You must install the included Maven archetypes into your local Maven repository before you can create new projects based on the archetypes. You can install the archetypes using NetBeans IDE or Maven.

2.7.1.1 Installing the Tutorial Archetypes from NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu choose **Open Project**.
2. Navigate to `tut-install/examples/`, select archetypes, and click **Open Project**.
3. In the **Projects** pane right-click on archetypes and select **Build**.

2.7.1.2 Installing the Tutorial Archetypes Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, navigate to `tut-install/examples/archetypes`.
2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

2.8 Getting the Latest Updates to the Tutorial

Check for any updates to the tutorial by using the Update Tool included with the Java EE 7 SDK.

2.8.1 To Update the Tutorial Using the Command Line

1. Open a terminal window and enter the following command to display the Update Tool:

```
updatetool
```

2. Select **Available Updates** in the tree to display a list of updated packages.
3. Look for updates to the Java EE 7 Tutorial (`javaee-tutorial`) package.
4. If there is an updated version of the Tutorial, select **Java EE 7 Tutorial** (`javaee-tutorial`) and click **Install**.

2.8.2 To Update the Tutorial Using NetBeans IDE

1. Open the **Services** tab in NetBeans IDE and expand **Servers**.
2. Right-click the GlassFish Server instance and select **View Domain Update Center** to display the Update Tool.
3. Select **Available Updates** in the tree to display a list of updated packages.
4. Look for updates to the Java EE 7 Tutorial (`javaee-tutorial`) package.
5. If there is an updated version of the Tutorial, select **Java EE 7 Tutorial** (`javaee-tutorial`) and click **Install**.

2.9 Debugging Java EE Applications

This section explains how to determine what is causing an error in your application deployment or execution.

2.9.1 Using the Server Log

One way to debug applications is to look at the server log in `domain-dir/logs/server.log`. The log contains output from the GlassFish Server and your applications. You can log messages from any Java class in your application with `System.out.println` and the Java Logging APIs (documented at <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/technotes/guides/logging/index.html>) and from web components with the `ServletContext.log` method.

If you use NetBeans IDE, logging output appears in the Output window as well as the server log.

If you start the GlassFish Server with the `--verbose` flag, all logging and debugging output will appear on the terminal window or command prompt and the server log. If

you start the GlassFish Server in the background, debugging information is available only in the log. You can view the server log with a text editor or with the Administration Console log viewer.

2.9.1.1 To Use the Administration Console Log Viewer

1. Select the GlassFish Server node.
2. Click **View Log Files**.
The log viewer opens and displays the last 40 entries.
3. To display other entries, follow these steps.
 - a. Click **Modify Search**.
 - b. Specify any constraints on the entries you want to see.
 - c. Click **Search** at the top of the log viewer.

2.9.2 Using a Debugger

The GlassFish Server supports the Java Platform Debugger Architecture (JPDA). With JPDA, you can configure the GlassFish Server to communicate debugging information using a socket.

2.9.2.1 To Debug an Application Using a Debugger

1. Enable debugging in the GlassFish Server using the Administration Console:
 - a. Expand the **Configurations** node, then expand the **server-config** node.
 - b. Select the **JVM Settings** node. The default debug options are set to:

```
-agentlib:jdwp=transport=dt_socket,server=y,suspend=n,address=9009
```

As you can see, the default debugger socket port is 9009. You can change it to a port not in use by the GlassFish Server or another service.
 - c. Select the **Debug Enabled** check box.
 - d. Click **Save**.
2. Stop the GlassFish Server and then restart it.

Part II

Platform Basics

Part II introduces platform basics. This part contains the following chapters:

- [Chapter 3, "Resource Creation"](#)
- [Chapter 4, "Injection"](#)
- [Chapter 5, "Packaging"](#)

Resource Creation

A resource is a program object that provides connections to such systems as database servers and messaging systems. Java EE components can access a wide variety of resources, including databases, mail sessions, Java Message Service objects, and URLs. The Java EE 7 platform provides mechanisms that allow you to access all these resources in a similar manner. This chapter examines several types of resources and explains how to create them.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Resources and JNDI Naming](#)
- [DataSource Objects and Connection Pools](#)
- [Creating Resources Administratively](#)

3.1 Resources and JNDI Naming

In a distributed application, components need to access other components and resources, such as databases. For example, a servlet might invoke remote methods on an enterprise bean that retrieves information from a database. In the Java EE platform, the Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) naming service enables components to locate other components and resources.

A **resource** is a program object that provides connections to systems, such as database servers and messaging systems. (A Java Database Connectivity resource is sometimes referred to as a data source.) Each resource object is identified by a unique, people-friendly name, called the JNDI name. For example, the JNDI name of the preconfigured JDBC resource for the Java DB database that is shipped with the GlassFish Server is `java:comp/DefaultDataSource`.

An administrator creates resources in a JNDI namespace. In the GlassFish Server, you can use either the Administration Console or the `asadmin` command to create resources. Applications then use annotations to inject the resources. If an application uses resource injection, the GlassFish Server invokes the JNDI API, and the application is not required to do so. However, it is also possible for an application to locate resources by making direct calls to the JNDI API.

A resource object and its JNDI name are bound together by the naming and directory service. To create a new resource, a new name/object binding is entered into the JNDI namespace. You inject resources by using the `@Resource` annotation in an application.

You can use a deployment descriptor to override the resource mapping that you specify in an annotation. Using a deployment descriptor allows you to change an application by repackaging it rather than by both recompiling the source files and

repackaging. However, for most applications, a deployment descriptor is not necessary.

3.2 DataSource Objects and Connection Pools

To store, organize, and retrieve data, most applications use a relational database. Java EE 7 components may access relational databases through the JDBC API. For information on this API, see <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/tech/index-jsp-136101.html>.

In the JDBC API, databases are accessed by using `DataSource` objects. A `DataSource` has a set of properties that identify and describe the real-world data source that it represents. These properties include such information as the location of the database server, the name of the database, the network protocol to use to communicate with the server, and so on. In the GlassFish Server, a data source is called a JDBC resource.

Applications access a data source by using a connection, and a `DataSource` object can be thought of as a factory for connections to the particular data source that the `DataSource` instance represents. In a basic `DataSource` implementation, a call to the `getConnection` method returns a connection object that is a physical connection to the data source.

A `DataSource` object may be registered with a JNDI naming service. If so, an application can use the JNDI API to access that `DataSource` object, which can then be used to connect to the data source it represents.

`DataSource` objects that implement connection pooling also produce a connection to the particular data source that the `DataSource` class represents. The connection object that the `getConnection` method returns is a handle to a `PooledConnection` object rather than being a physical connection. An application uses the connection object in the same way that it uses a connection. Connection pooling has no effect on application code except that a pooled connection, like all connections, should always be explicitly closed. When an application closes a connection that is pooled, the connection is returned to a pool of reusable connections. The next time `getConnection` is called, a handle to one of these pooled connections will be returned if one is available. Because connection pooling avoids creating a new physical connection every time one is requested, applications can run significantly faster.

A JDBC connection pool is a group of reusable connections for a particular database. Because creating each new physical connection is time consuming, the server maintains a pool of available connections to increase performance. When it requests a connection, an application obtains one from the pool. When an application closes a connection, the connection is returned to the pool.

Applications that use the Persistence API specify the `DataSource` object they are using in the `jta-data-source` element of the `persistence.xml` file:

```
<jta-data-source>jdbc/MyOrderDB</jta-data-source>
```

This is typically the only reference to a JDBC object for a persistence unit. The application code does not refer to any JDBC objects.

3.3 Creating Resources Administratively

Before you deploy or run many applications, you may need to create resources for them. An application can include a `glassfish-resources.xml` file that can be used to define resources for that application and others. You can then use the `asadmin`

command, specifying as the argument a file named `glassfish-resources.xml`, to create the resources administratively, as shown.

```
asadmin create-resources glassfish-resources.xml
```

The `glassfish-resources.xml` file can be created in any project using NetBeans IDE, or by hand. Some of the JMS examples use this approach to resource creation. A file for creating the resources needed for the JMS simple producer example can be found in the `jms/simple/producer/src/main/setup` directory.

You could also use the `asadmin create-jms-resource` command to create the resources for this example. When you are done using the resources, you would use the `asadmin list-jms-resources` command to display their names, and the `asadmin delete-jms-resource` command to remove them, regardless of the way you created the resources.

This chapter provides an overview of injection in Java EE and describes the two injection mechanisms provided by the platform: resource injection and dependency injection.

Java EE provides injection mechanisms that enable your objects to obtain references to resources and other dependencies without having to instantiate them directly. You declare the required resources and other dependencies in your classes by decorating fields or methods with one of the annotations that mark the field as an injection point. The container then provides the required instances at run time. Injection simplifies your code and decouples it from the implementations of its dependencies.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Resource Injection](#)
- [Dependency Injection](#)
- [Main Differences Between Resource Injection and Dependency Injection](#)

4.1 Resource Injection

Resource injection enables you to inject any resource available in the JNDI namespace into any container-managed object, such as a servlet, an enterprise bean, or a managed bean. For example, you can use resource injection to inject data sources, connectors, or custom resources available in the JNDI namespace.

The type you use for the reference to the injected instance is usually an interface, which decouples your code from the implementation of the resource.

For example, the following code injects a data source object that provides connections to the default Java DB database shipped with the GlassFish Server:

```
public class MyServlet extends HttpServlet {
    @Resource(name="java:comp/DefaultDataSource")
    private javax.sql.DataSource dsc;
    ...
}
```

In addition to field-based injection as in the previous example, you can inject resources using method-based injection:

```
public class MyServlet extends HttpServlet {
    private javax.sql.DataSource dsc;
    ...
    @Resource(name="java:comp/DefaultDataSource")
    public void setDsc(javax.sql.DataSource ds) {
        dsc = ds;
    }
}
```

```
    }  
}
```

To use method-based injection, the setter method must follow the JavaBeans conventions for property names: The method name must begin with `set`, have a `void` return type, and only one parameter.

The `Resource` annotation is in the `javax.annotation` package and is defined in JSR-250 (Common Annotations for the Java Platform). Resource injection resolves by name, so it is not type safe: the type of the resource object is not known at compile time, so you can get runtime errors if the types of the object and its reference do not match.

4.2 Dependency Injection

Dependency injection enables you to turn regular Java classes into managed objects and to inject them into any other managed object. Using dependency injection, your code can declare dependencies on any managed object. The container automatically provides instances of these dependencies at the injection points at run time, and it also manages the lifecycle of these instances for you.

Dependency injection in Java EE defines scopes, which determine the lifecycle of the objects that the container instantiates and injects. For example, a managed object that is only needed to respond to a single client request (such as a currency converter) has a different scope than a managed object that is needed to process multiple client requests within a session (such as a shopping cart).

You can define managed objects (also called **managed beans**) that you can later inject by assigning a scope to a regular class:

```
@javax.enterprise.context.RequestScoped  
public class CurrencyConverter { ... }
```

Use the `javax.inject.Inject` annotation to inject managed beans; for example:

```
public class MyServlet extends HttpServlet {  
    @Inject CurrencyConverter cc;  
    ...  
}
```

As opposed to resource injection, dependency injection is type safe because it resolves by type. To decouple your code from the implementation of the managed bean, you can reference the injected instances using an interface type and have your managed bean implement that interface.

For more information about dependency injection, see [Chapter 31, "Introduction to Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE"](#) and JSR-299 (Contexts and Dependency Injection for the Java EE Platform).

4.3 Main Differences Between Resource Injection and Dependency Injection

[Table 4–1](#) lists the main differences between resource injection and dependency injection.

Table 4–1 *Differences between Resource Injection and Dependency Injection*

Injection Mechanism	Can Inject JNDI Resources Directly	Can Inject Regular Classes Directly	Resolves By	Type Safe
Resource Injection	Yes	No	Resource name	No
Dependency Injection	No	Yes	Type	Yes

This chapter describes packaging. A Java EE application is packaged into one or more standard units for deployment to any Java EE platform-compliant system. Each unit contains a functional component or components, such as an enterprise bean, web page, servlet, or applet, and an optional deployment descriptor that describes its content.

The following topics are addressed here:

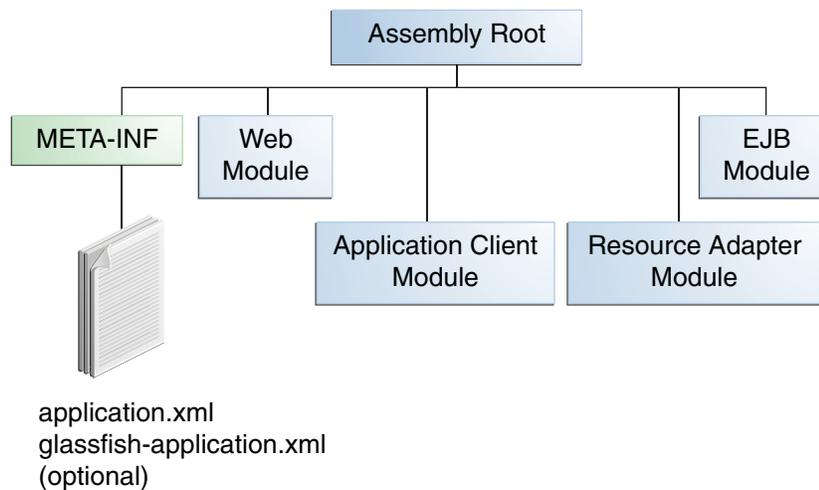
- [Packaging Applications](#)
- [Packaging Enterprise Beans](#)
- [Packaging Web Archives](#)
- [Packaging Resource Adapter Archives](#)

5.1 Packaging Applications

A Java EE application is delivered in a Java Archive (JAR) file, a Web Archive (WAR) file, or an Enterprise Archive (EAR) file. A WAR or EAR file is a standard JAR (.jar) file with a .war or .ear extension. Using JAR, WAR, and EAR files and modules makes it possible to assemble a number of different Java EE applications using some of the same components. No extra coding is needed; it is only a matter of assembling (or packaging) various Java EE modules into Java EE JAR, WAR, or EAR files.

An EAR file (see [Figure 5-1](#)) contains Java EE modules and, optionally, deployment descriptors. A **deployment descriptor**, an XML document with an .xml extension, describes the deployment settings of an application, a module, or a component. Because deployment descriptor information is declarative, it can be changed without the need to modify the source code. At runtime, the Java EE server reads the deployment descriptor and acts upon the application, module, or component accordingly.

Deployment information is most commonly specified in the source code by **annotations**. Deployment descriptors, if present, override what is specified in the source code.

Figure 5–1 EAR File Structure

The two types of deployment descriptors are Java EE and runtime. A **Java EE deployment descriptor** is defined by a Java EE specification and can be used to configure deployment settings on any Java EE-compliant implementation. A **runtime deployment descriptor** is used to configure Java EE implementation-specific parameters. For example, the GlassFish Server runtime deployment descriptor contains such information as the context root of a web application, as well as GlassFish Server implementation-specific parameters, such as caching directives. The GlassFish Server runtime deployment descriptors are named `glassfish-moduleType.xml` and are located in the same `META-INF` directory as the Java EE deployment descriptor.

A **Java EE module** consists of one or more Java EE components for the same container type and, optionally, one component deployment descriptor of that type. An enterprise bean module deployment descriptor, for example, declares transaction attributes and security authorizations for an enterprise bean. A Java EE module can be deployed as a stand-alone module.

Java EE modules are of the following types:

- EJB modules, which contain class files for enterprise beans and, optionally, an EJB deployment descriptor. EJB modules are packaged as JAR files with a `.jar` extension.
- Web modules, which contain servlet class files, web files, supporting class files, GIF and HTML files, and, optionally, a web application deployment descriptor. Web modules are packaged as JAR files with a `.war` (web archive) extension.
- Application client modules, which contain class files and, optionally, an application client deployment descriptor. Application client modules are packaged as JAR files with a `.jar` extension.
- Resource adapter modules, which contain all Java interfaces, classes, native libraries, and, optionally, a resource adapter deployment descriptor. Together, these implement the Connector architecture (see [Java EE Connector Architecture](#)) for a particular EIS. Resource adapter modules are packaged as JAR files with an `.rar` (resource adapter archive) extension.

5.2 Packaging Enterprise Beans

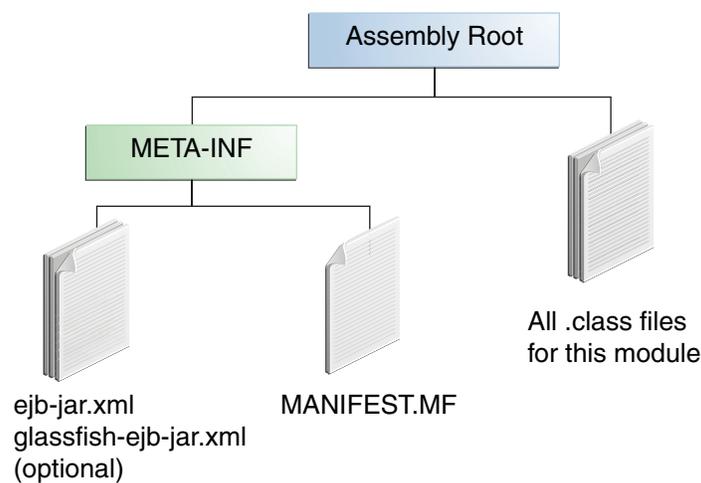
This section explains how enterprise beans can be packaged in EJB JAR or WAR modules.

5.2.1 Packaging Enterprise Beans in EJB JAR Modules

An EJB JAR file is portable and can be used for various applications.

To assemble a Java EE application, package one or more modules, such as EJB JAR files, into an EAR file, the archive file that holds the application. When deploying the EAR file that contains the enterprise bean's EJB JAR file, you also deploy the enterprise bean to the GlassFish Server. You can also deploy an EJB JAR that is not contained in an EAR file. [Figure 5–2](#) shows the contents of an EJB JAR file.

Figure 5–2 Structure of an Enterprise Bean JAR



5.2.2 Packaging Enterprise Beans in WAR Modules

Enterprise beans often provide the business logic of a web application. In these cases, packaging the enterprise bean within the web application's WAR module simplifies deployment and application organization. Enterprise beans may be packaged within a WAR module as Java programming language class files or within a JAR file that is bundled within the WAR module.

To include enterprise bean class files in a WAR module, the class files should be in the `WEB-INF/classes` directory.

To include a JAR file that contains enterprise beans in a WAR module, add the JAR to the `WEB-INF/lib` directory of the WAR module.

WAR modules that contain enterprise beans do not require an `ejb-jar.xml` deployment descriptor. If the application uses `ejb-jar.xml`, it must be located in the WAR module's `WEB-INF` directory.

JAR files that contain enterprise bean classes packaged within a WAR module are not considered EJB JAR files, even if the bundled JAR file conforms to the format of an EJB JAR file. The enterprise beans contained within the JAR file are semantically equivalent to enterprise beans located in the WAR module's `WEB-INF/classes` directory, and the environment namespace of all the enterprise beans are scoped to the WAR module.

For example, suppose that a web application consists of a shopping cart enterprise bean, a credit card processing enterprise bean, and a Java servlet front end. The shopping cart bean exposes a local, no-interface view and is defined as follows:

```
package com.example.cart;

@Stateless
public class CartBean { ... }
```

The credit card processing bean is packaged within its own JAR file, `cc.jar`, exposes a local, no-interface view, and is defined as follows:

```
package com.example.cc;

@Stateless
public class CreditCardBean { ... }
```

The servlet, `com.example.web.StoreServlet`, handles the web front end and uses both `CartBean` and `CreditCardBean`. The WAR module layout for this application looks as follows:

```
WEB-INF/classes/com/example/cart/CartBean.class
WEB-INF/classes/com/example/web/StoreServlet
WEB-INF/lib/cc.jar
WEB-INF/ejb-jar.xml
WEB-INF/web.xml
```

5.3 Packaging Web Archives

In the Java EE architecture, a **web module** is the smallest deployable and usable unit of web resources. A web module contains web components and static web content files, such as images, which are called **web resources**. A Java EE web module corresponds to a web application as defined in the Java Servlet specification.

In addition to web components and web resources, a web module can contain other files:

- Server-side utility classes, such as shopping carts
- Client-side classes, such as utility classes

A web module has a specific structure. The top-level directory of a web module is the **document root** of the application. The document root is where XHTML pages, client-side classes and archives, and static web resources, such as images, are stored.

The document root contains a subdirectory named `WEB-INF`, which can contain the following files and directories:

- `classes`: A directory that contains server-side classes: servlets, enterprise bean class files, utility classes, and JavaBeans components
- `lib`: A directory that contains JAR files that contain enterprise beans, and JAR archives of libraries called by server-side classes
- Deployment descriptors, such as `web.xml` (the web application deployment descriptor) and `ejb-jar.xml` (an EJB deployment descriptor)

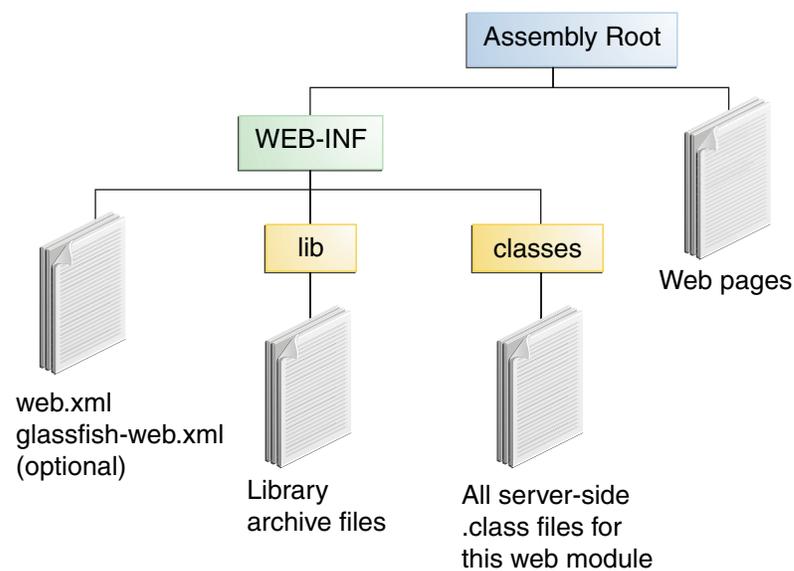
A web module needs a `web.xml` file if it uses JavaServer Faces technology, if it must specify certain kinds of security information, or if you want to override information specified by web component annotations.

You can also create application-specific subdirectories (that is, package directories) in either the document root or the `WEB-INF/classes/` directory.

A web module can be deployed as an unpacked file structure or can be packaged in a JAR file known as a Web Archive (WAR) file. Because the contents and use of WAR files differ from those of JAR files, WAR file names use a `.war` extension. The web module just described is portable; you can deploy it into any web container that conforms to the Java Servlet specification.

To deploy a WAR on the GlassFish Server, the file must contain a runtime deployment descriptor. The runtime DD is an XML file that contains such information as the **context root** of the web application and the mapping of the portable names of an application's resources to the GlassFish Server's resources. The GlassFish Server web application runtime DD is named `glassfish-web.xml` and is located in the `WEB-INF` directory (it is rarely used). The structure of a web module that can be deployed on the GlassFish Server is shown in [Figure 5-3](#).

Figure 5-3 Web Module Structure



5.4 Packaging Resource Adapter Archives

A Resource Adapter Archive (RAR) file stores XML files, Java classes, and other objects for Java EE Connector Architecture (JCA) applications. A resource adapter can be deployed on any Java EE server, much like a Java EE application. A RAR file can be contained in an Enterprise Archive (EAR) file, or it can exist as a separate file.

The RAR file contains:

- A JAR file with the implementation classes of the resource adapter
- An optional `META-INF/` directory that can store an `ra.xml` file and/or an application server-specific deployment descriptor used for configuration purposes.

A RAR file can be deployed on the application server as a standalone component or as part of a larger application. In both cases, the adapter is available to all applications using a lookup procedure.

Part III

The Web Tier

Part III explores the technologies in the web tier. This part contains the following chapters:

- Chapter 6, "Getting Started with Web Applications"
- Chapter 7, "JavaServer Faces Technology"
- Chapter 8, "Introduction to Facelets"
- Chapter 9, "Expression Language"
- Chapter 10, "Using JavaServer Faces Technology in Web Pages"
- Chapter 11, "Using Converters, Listeners, and Validators"
- Chapter 12, "Developing with JavaServer Faces Technology"
- Chapter 13, "Using Ajax with JavaServer Faces Technology"
- Chapter 14, "Composite Components: Advanced Topics and Example"
- Chapter 15, "Creating Custom UI Components and Other Custom Objects"
- Chapter 16, "Configuring JavaServer Faces Applications"
- Chapter 17, "Java Servlet Technology"
- Chapter 18, "Java API for WebSocket"
- Chapter 19, "JSON Processing"
- Chapter 20, "Internationalizing and Localizing Web Applications"

Getting Started with Web Applications

This chapter introduces web applications, which typically use JavaServer Faces technology and/or Java Servlet technology. A **web application** is a dynamic extension of a web or application server. Web applications are of the following types:

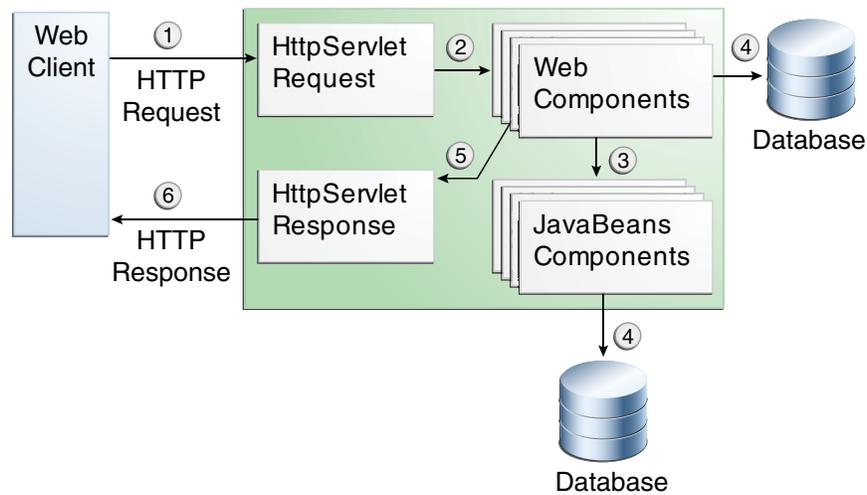
- **Presentation-oriented:** A **presentation-oriented web application** generates interactive web pages containing various types of markup language (HTML, XHTML, XML, and so on) and dynamic content in response to requests. Development of presentation-oriented web applications is covered in [Chapter 7, "JavaServer Faces Technology,"](#) through [Chapter 17, "Java Servlet Technology."](#)
- **Service-oriented:** A **service-oriented web application** implements the endpoint of a web service. Presentation-oriented applications are often clients of service-oriented web applications. Development of service-oriented web applications is covered in [Chapter 22, "Building Web Services with JAX-WS,"](#) and [Chapter 23, "Building RESTful Web Services with JAX-RS,"](#) in Part IV, "Web Services."

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Web Applications](#)
- [Web Application Lifecycle](#)
- [A Web Module That Uses JavaServer Faces Technology: The hello1 Example](#)
- [A Web Module That Uses Java Servlet Technology: The hello2 Example](#)
- [Configuring Web Applications](#)
- [Further Information about Web Applications](#)

6.1 Web Applications

In the Java EE platform, **web components** provide the dynamic extension capabilities for a web server. Web components can be Java servlets, web pages implemented with JavaServer Faces technology, web service endpoints, or JSP pages. [Figure 6-1](#) illustrates the interaction between a web client and a web application that uses a servlet. The client sends an HTTP request to the web server. A web server that implements Java Servlet and JavaServer Pages technology converts the request into an `HttpServletRequest` object. This object is delivered to a web component, which can interact with JavaBeans components or a database to generate dynamic content. The web component can then generate an `HttpServletResponse` or can pass the request to another web component. A web component eventually generates a `HttpServletResponse` object. The web server converts this object to an HTTP response and returns it to the client.

Figure 6–1 Java Web Application Request Handling

Servlets are Java programming language classes that dynamically process requests and construct responses. Java technologies, such as JavaServer Faces and Facelets, are used for building interactive web applications. (Frameworks can also be used for this purpose.) Although servlets and JavaServer Faces and Facelets pages can be used to accomplish similar things, each has its own strengths. Servlets are best suited for service-oriented applications (web service endpoints can be implemented as servlets) and the control functions of a presentation-oriented application, such as dispatching requests and handling nontextual data. JavaServer Faces and Facelets pages are more appropriate for generating text-based markup, such as XHTML, and are generally used for presentation-oriented applications.

Web components are supported by the services of a runtime platform called a **web container**. A web container provides such services as request dispatching, security, concurrency, and lifecycle management. A web container also gives web components access to such APIs as naming, transactions, and email.

Certain aspects of web application behavior can be configured when the application is installed, or *deployed*, to the web container. The configuration information can be specified using Java EE annotations or can be maintained in a text file in XML format called a web application deployment descriptor (DD). A web application DD must conform to the schema described in the Java Servlet specification.

This chapter gives a brief overview of the activities involved in developing web applications. First, it summarizes the web application lifecycle and explains how to package and deploy very simple web applications on the GlassFish Server. The chapter moves on to configuring web applications and discusses how to specify the most commonly used configuration parameters.

6.2 Web Application Lifecycle

A web application consists of web components; static resource files, such as images and cascading style sheets (CSS); and helper classes and libraries. The web container provides many supporting services that enhance the capabilities of web components and make them easier to develop. However, because a web application must take these services into account, the process for creating and running a web application is different from that of traditional stand-alone Java classes.

The process for creating, deploying, and executing a web application can be summarized as follows:

1. Develop the web component code.
2. Develop the web application deployment descriptor, if necessary.
3. Compile the web application components and helper classes referenced by the components.
4. Optionally, package the application into a deployable unit.
5. Deploy the application into a web container.
6. Access a URL that references the web application.

Developing web component code is covered in the later chapters. Steps 2 through 4 are expanded on in the following sections and illustrated with a Hello, World-style presentation-oriented application. This application allows a user to enter a name into an HTML form and then displays a greeting after the name is submitted.

The Hello application contains two web components that generate the greeting and the response. This chapter discusses the following simple applications:

- `hello1`, a JavaServer Faces technology-based application that uses two XHTML pages and a managed bean
- `hello2`, a servlet-based web application in which the components are implemented by two servlet classes

The applications are used to illustrate tasks involved in packaging, deploying, configuring, and running an application that contains web components. The source code for the examples is in the `tut-install/examples/web/jsf/hello1/` and `tut-install/examples/web/servlet/hello2/` directories.

6.3 A Web Module That Uses JavaServer Faces Technology: The hello1 Example

The `hello1` application is a web module that uses JavaServer Faces technology to display a greeting and response. You can use a text editor to view the application files, or you can use NetBeans IDE.

6.3.1 To View the hello1 Web Module Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/jsf`
3. Select the `hello1` folder and click **Open Project**.
4. Expand the **Web Pages** node and double-click the `index.xhtml` file to view it in the editor.

The `index.xhtml` file is the default landing page for a Facelets application. In a typical Facelets application, web pages are created in XHTML. For this application, the page uses simple tag markup to display a form with a graphic image, a header, a field, and two command buttons:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
```

```

<html lang="en"
  xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
  xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html">
<h:head>
  <title>Facelets Hello Greeting</title>
</h:head>
<h:body>
  <h:form>
    <h:graphicImage url="#{resource['images:duke.waving.gif']}"
      alt="Duke waving his hand"/>
    <h2>Hello, my name is Duke. What's yours?</h2>
    <h:inputText id="username"
      title="My name is: "
      value="#{hello.name}"
      required="true"
      requiredMessage="Error: A name is required."
      maxLength="25" />

    <p></p>
    <h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit"
      action="response">
    </h:commandButton>
    <h:commandButton id="reset" value="Reset" type="reset">
    </h:commandButton>
  </h:form>
  ...
</h:body>
</html>

```

The most complex element on the page is the `inputText` field. The `maxLength` attribute specifies the maximum length of the field. The `required` attribute specifies that the field must be filled out; the `requiredMessage` attribute provides the error message to be displayed if the field is left empty. The `title` attribute provides the text to be used by screen readers for the visually disabled. Finally, the `value` attribute contains an expression that will be provided by the `Hello` managed bean.

The web page connects to the `Hello` managed bean through the Expression Language () value expression `#{hello.name}`, which retrieves the value of the `name` property from the managed bean. Note the use of `hello` to reference the managed bean `Hello`. If no name is specified in the `@Named` annotation of the managed bean, the managed bean is always accessed with the first letter of the class name in lowercase.

The `Submit` `commandButton` element specifies the action as `response`, meaning that when the button is clicked, the `response.xhtml` page is displayed.

5. Double-click the `response.xhtml` file to view it.

The response page appears. Even simpler than the greeting page, the response page contains a graphic image, a header that displays the expression provided by the managed bean, and a single button whose action element transfers you back to the `index.xhtml` page:

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
  "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html lang="en"
  xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
  xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html">
<h:head>
  <title>Facelets Hello Response</title>

```

```

</h:head>
<h:body>
  <h:form>
    <h:graphicImage url="#{resource['images:duke.waving.gif']}"
      alt="Duke waving his hand"/>
    <h2>Hello, #{hello.name}!</h2>
    <p></p>
    <h:commandButton id="back" value="Back" action="index" />
  </h:form>
</h:body>
</html>

```

6. Expand the **Source Packages** node, then the `javaeetutorial.hello1` node.
7. Double-click the `Hello.java` file to view it.

The `Hello` class, called a managed bean class, provides getter and setter methods for the name property used in the Facelets page expressions. By default, the expression language refers to the class name, with the first letter in lowercase (`hello.name`).

```

package javaeetutorial.hello1;

import javax.enterprise.context.RequestScoped;
import javax.inject.Named;

@Named
@RequestScoped
public class Hello {

    private String name;

    public Hello() {
    }

    public String getName() {
        return name;
    }

    public void setName(String user_name) {
        this.name = user_name;
    }
}

```

If you use the default name for the bean class, you can specify `@Model` as the annotation instead of having to specify both `@Named` and `@RequestScoped`. The `@Model` annotation is called a **stereotype**, a term for an annotation that encapsulates other annotations. It is described later in [Using Stereotypes in CDI Applications](#). Other examples will use `@Model` where it is appropriate.

8. Under the **Web Pages** node, expand the **WEB-INF** node and double-click the `web.xml` file to view it.

The `web.xml` file contains several elements that are required for a Facelets application. All these are created automatically when you use NetBeans IDE to create an application:

- A context parameter specifying the project stage:

```

<context-param>
  <param-name>javax.faces.PROJECT_STAGE</param-name>
  <param-value>Development</param-value>

```

```
</context-param>
```

A context parameter provides configuration information needed by a web application. An application can define its own context parameters. In addition, JavaServer Faces technology and Java Servlet technology define context parameters that an application can use.

- A `servlet` element and its `servlet-mapping` element specifying the `FacesServlet`:

```
<servlet>
  <servlet-name>Faces Servlet</servlet-name>
  <servlet-class>
    javax.faces.webapp.FacesServlet
  </servlet-class>
  <load-on-startup>1</load-on-startup>
</servlet>
<servlet-mapping>
  <servlet-name>Faces Servlet</servlet-name>
  <url-pattern>/faces/*</url-pattern>
</servlet-mapping>
```

- A `welcome-file-list` element specifying the location of the landing page; note that the location is `faces/index.xhtml`, not just `index.xhtml`:

```
<welcome-file-list>
  <welcome-file>faces/index.xhtml</welcome-file>
</welcome-file-list>
```

6.3.1.1 Introduction to Scopes

In the `Hello.java` class, the annotations `javax.inject.Named` and `javax.enterprise.context.RequestScoped` identify the class as a managed bean using request scope. Scope defines how application data persists and is shared.

The most commonly used scopes in JavaServer Faces applications are the following:

- **Request** (`@RequestScoped`): Request scope persists during a single HTTP request in a web application. In an application like `hello1`, where the application consists of a single request and response, the bean uses request scope.
- **Session** (`@SessionScoped`): Session scope persists across multiple HTTP requests in a web application. When an application consists of multiple requests and responses where data needs to be maintained, beans use session scope.
- **Application** (`@ApplicationScoped`): Application scope persists across all users' interactions with a web application.

For more information on scopes in JavaServer Faces technology, see [Using Managed Bean Scopes](#).

6.3.2 Packaging and Deploying the hello1 Web Module

A web module must be packaged into a WAR in certain deployment scenarios and whenever you want to distribute the web module. You can package a web module into a WAR file by using Maven or by using the IDE tool of your choice. This tutorial shows you how to use NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, and deploy the `hello1` sample application.

You can deploy a WAR file to the GlassFish Server by

- Using NetBeans IDE

- Using the `asadmin` command
- Using the Administration Console
- Copying the WAR file into the `domain-dir/autodeploy/` directory

Throughout the tutorial, you will use NetBeans IDE or Maven for packaging and deploying.

6.3.2.1 To Build and Package the hello1 Web Module Using NetBeans IDE

1. Start the GlassFish Server as described in [To Start the GlassFish Server Using NetBeans IDE](#), if you have not already done so.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
3. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf
```
4. Select the `hello1` folder.
5. Click **Open Project**.
6. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `hello1` project and select **Build**. This command deploys the project to the server.

6.3.2.2 To Build and Package the hello1 Web Module Using Maven

1. Start the GlassFish Server as described in [To Start the GlassFish Server from the Command Line](#), if you have not already done so.
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf/hello1/
```

3. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command spawns any necessary compilations and creates the WAR file in `tut-install/examples/web/jsf/hello1/target/`. It then deploys the project to the server.

6.3.3 Viewing Deployed Web Modules

The GlassFish Server provides two ways to view the deployed web modules: the Administration Console and the `asadmin` command. You can also use NetBeans IDE to view deployed modules.

6.3.3.1 To View Deployed Web Modules Using the Administration Console

1. Open the URL `http://localhost:4848/` in a browser.
2. Select the **Applications** node.

The deployed web modules appear in the **Deployed Applications** table.

6.3.3.2 To View Deployed Web Modules Using the asadmin Command

Enter the following command:

```
asadmin list-applications
```

6.3.3.3 To View Deployed Web Modules Using NetBeans IDE

1. In the Services tab, expand the **Servers** node, then expand the **GlassFish Server** node.
2. Expand the **Applications** node to view the deployed modules.

6.3.4 Running the Deployed hello1 Web Module

Now that the web module is deployed, you can view it by opening the application in a web browser. By default, the application is deployed to host `localhost` on port `8080`. The context root of the web application is `hello1`.

1. Open a web browser.
2. Enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/hello1/
```

3. In the field, enter your name and click **Submit**.

The response page displays the name you submitted. Click **Back** to try again.

6.3.4.1 Dynamic Reloading of Deployed Modules

If dynamic reloading is enabled, you do not have to redeploy an application or module when you change its code or deployment descriptors. All you have to do is copy the changed pages or class files into the deployment directory for the application or module. The deployment directory for a web module named *context-root* is *domain-dir/applications/context-root*. The server checks for changes periodically and redeploys the application, automatically and dynamically, with the changes.

This capability is useful in a development environment because it allows code changes to be tested quickly. Dynamic reloading is not recommended for a production environment, however, because it may degrade performance. In addition, whenever a reload is done, the sessions at that time become invalid, and the client must restart the session.

In the GlassFish Server, dynamic reloading is enabled by default.

6.3.5 Undeploying the hello1 Web Module

You can undeploy web modules and other types of enterprise applications by using either NetBeans IDE or the `asadmin` command.

6.3.5.1 To Undeploy the hello1 Web Module Using NetBeans IDE

1. In the Services tab, expand the **Servers** node, then expand the **GlassFish Server** node.
2. Expand the **Applications** node.
3. Right-click the `hello1` module and select **Undeploy**.
4. To delete the class files and other build artifacts, go back to the **Projects** tab, right-click the project and select **Clean**.

6.3.5.2 To Undeploy the hello1 Web Module Using the asadmin Command

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf/hello1/
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn cargo:undeploy
```

3. To delete the class files and other build artifacts, enter the following command:

```
mvn clean
```

6.4 A Web Module That Uses Java Servlet Technology: The hello2 Example

Web applications are configured by means of annotations or by elements contained in the web application deployment descriptor.

The following sections give a brief introduction to the web application features you will usually want to configure. Examples demonstrate procedures for configuring the Hello, World application.

6.4.1 Mapping URLs to Web Components

When it receives a request, the web container must determine which web component should handle the request. The web container does so by mapping the **URL path** contained in the request to a web application and a web component. A URL path contains the context root and, optionally, a URL pattern:

```
http://host:port/context-root[/url-pattern]
```

You set the URL pattern for a servlet by using the `@WebServlet` annotation in the servlet source file. For example, the `GreetingServlet.java` file in the `hello2` application contains the following annotation, specifying the URL pattern as `/greeting`:

```
@WebServlet("/greeting")
public class GreetingServlet extends HttpServlet {
    ...
}
```

This annotation indicates that the URL pattern `/greeting` follows the context root. Therefore, when the servlet is deployed locally, it is accessed with the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/hello2/greeting
```

To access the servlet by using only the context root, specify `/` as the URL pattern.

6.4.2 Examining the hello2 Web Module

The `hello2` application behaves almost identically to the `hello1` application, but it is implemented using Java Servlet technology instead of JavaServer Faces technology. You can use a text editor to view the application files, or you can use NetBeans IDE.

6.4.2.1 To View the hello2 Web Module Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/servlet
```

3. Select the `hello2` folder and click **Open Project**.
4. Expand the **Source Packages** node, then the `javaeetutorial.hello2` node.

5. Double-click the `GreetingServlet.java` file to view it.

This servlet overrides the `doGet` method, implementing the `GET` method of HTTP. The servlet displays a simple HTML greeting form whose **Submit** button, like that of `hello1`, specifies a response page for its action. The following excerpt begins with the `@WebServlet` annotation that specifies the URL pattern, relative to the context root:

```
@WebServlet("/greeting")
public class GreetingServlet extends HttpServlet {

    @Override
    public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response)
        throws ServletException, IOException {

        response.setContentType("text/html");
        response.setBufferSize(8192);
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();

        // then write the data of the response
        out.println("<html lang=\"en\">"
            + "<head><title>Servlet Hello</title></head>");

        // then write the data of the response
        out.println("<body bgcolor=\"#ffffff\">"
            + "<img src=\"duke.waving.gif\" "
            + "alt=\"Duke waving his hand\">"
            + "<form method=\"get\">"
            + "<h2>Hello, my name is Duke. What's yours?</h2>"
            + "<input title=\"My name is: \" type=\"text\" "
            + "name=\"username\" size=\"25\">"
            + "<p></p>"
            + "<input type=\"submit\" value=\"Submit\">"
            + "<input type=\"reset\" value=\"Reset\">"
            + "</form>");

        String username = request.getParameter("username");
        if (username != null && username.length() > 0) {
            RequestDispatcher dispatcher =
                getServletContext().getRequestDispatcher("/response");

            if (dispatcher != null) {
                dispatcher.include(request, response);
            }
        }
        out.println("</body></html>");
        out.close();
    }
    ...
}
```

6. Double-click the `ResponseServlet.java` file to view it.

This servlet also overrides the `doGet` method, displaying only the response. The following excerpt begins with the `@WebServlet` annotation, which specifies the URL pattern, relative to the context root:

```
@WebServlet("/response")
public class ResponseServlet extends HttpServlet {

    @Override
```

```

public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request,
                  HttpServletResponse response)
    throws ServletException, IOException {
    PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();

    // then write the data of the response
    String username = request.getParameter("username");
    if (username != null && username.length() > 0) {
        out.println("<h2>Hello, " + username + "!</h2>");
    }
}
...

```

6.4.3 Running the hello2 Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the hello2 example.

6.4.3.1 To Run the hello2 Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. Start the GlassFish Server as described in [To Start the GlassFish Server Using NetBeans IDE](#), if you have not already done so.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
3. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/web/servlet
```
4. Select the hello2 folder.
5. Click **Open Project**.
6. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the hello2 project and select **Build** to package and deploy the project.
7. In the browser, specify the URL `http://localhost:8080/hello2/greeting`.

The URL specifies the context root, followed by the URL pattern.

The application looks much like the hello1 application. The major difference is that after you click **Submit**, the response appears below the greeting, not on a separate page.

6.4.3.2 To Run the hello2 Example Using Maven

1. Start the GlassFish Server as described in [To Start the GlassFish Server from the Command Line](#), if you have not already done so.
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/servlet/hello2/
```

3. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This target builds the WAR file, copies it to the `tut-install/examples/web/hello2/target/` directory, and deploys it.

4. In a web browser, open the URL `http://localhost:8080/hello2/greeting`.

The URL specifies the context root, followed by the URL pattern.

The application looks much like the `hello1` application. The major difference is that after you click **Submit**, the response appears below the greeting, not on a separate page.

6.5 Configuring Web Applications

This section describes the following tasks involved with configuring web applications:

- Setting context parameters
- Declaring welcome files
- Mapping errors to error screens
- Declaring resource references

6.5.1 Setting Context Parameters

The web components in a web module share an object that represents their application context. You can pass context parameters to the context, or initialization parameters to a servlet. Context parameters are available to the entire application. For information on initialization parameters, see [Creating and Initializing a Servlet](#).

6.5.1.1 To Add a Context Parameter Using NetBeans IDE

These steps apply generally to web applications, but do not apply specifically to the examples in this chapter.

1. Open the project.
2. Expand the project's node in the **Projects** tree.
3. Expand the **Web Pages** node and then the **WEB-INF** node.
4. Double-click `web.xml`.

If the project does not have a `web.xml` file, follow the steps in [To Create a web.xml File Using NetBeans IDE](#).

5. Click **General** at the top of the editor window.
6. Expand the **Context Parameters** node.
7. Click **Add**.
8. In the Add Context Parameter dialog box, in the **Parameter Name** field, enter the name that specifies the context object.
9. In the **Parameter Value** field, enter the parameter to pass to the context object.
10. Click **OK**.

6.5.1.2 To Create a web.xml File Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **New File**.
2. In the New File wizard, select the **Web** category, then select **Standard Deployment Descriptor** under **File Types**.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Click **Finish**.

A basic `web.xml` file appears in `web/WEB-INF/`.

6.5.2 Declaring Welcome Files

The **welcome files** mechanism allows you to specify a list of files that the web container will use for appending to a request for a URL (called a valid partial request) that is not mapped to a web component. For example, suppose that you define a welcome file `welcome.html`. When a client requests a URL such as `host:port/webapp/directory`, where `directory` is not mapped to a servlet or XHTML page, the file `host:port/webapp/directory/welcome.html` is returned to the client.

If a web container receives a valid partial request, the web container examines the welcome file list and appends to the partial request each welcome file in the order specified and checks whether a static resource or servlet in the WAR is mapped to that request URL. The web container then sends the request to the first resource that matches in the WAR.

If no welcome file is specified, the GlassFish Server will use a file named `index.html` as the default welcome file. If there is no welcome file and no file named `index.html`, the GlassFish Server returns a directory listing.

You specify welcome files in the `web.xml` file. By convention, you specify the welcome file for a JavaServer Faces application as `faces/file-name.xhtml`. The welcome file specification for the `hello1` example looks like this:

```
<welcome-file-list>
  <welcome-file>faces/index.xhtml</welcome-file>
</welcome-file-list>
```

A specified welcome file must not have a leading or trailing slash (/).

The `hello2` example does not specify a welcome file, because the URL request is mapped to the `GreetingServlet` web component through the URL pattern `/greeting`.

6.5.3 Mapping Errors to Error Screens

When an error occurs during execution of a web application, you can have the application display a specific error screen according to the type of error. In particular, you can specify a mapping between the status code returned in an HTTP response or a Java programming language exception returned by any web component and any type of error screen.

You can have multiple `error-page` elements in your deployment descriptor. Each element identifies a different error that causes an error page to open. This error page can be the same for any number of `error-page` elements.

6.5.3.1 To Set Up Error Mapping Using NetBeans IDE

These steps apply generally to web applications, but do not apply specifically to the examples in this chapter.

1. Open the project.
2. Expand the project's node in the **Projects** tab.
3. Expand the **Web Pages** node and then the **WEB-INF** node.
4. Double-click `web.xml`.

If the project does not have a `web.xml` file, follow the steps in [To Create a web.xml File Using NetBeans IDE](#).

5. Click **Pages** at the top of the editor window.
6. Expand the **Error Pages** node.

7. Click **Add**.
8. In the Add Error Page dialog box, click **Browse** to locate the page that you want to act as the error page.
9. Specify either an error code or an exception type:
 - To specify an error code, in the **Error Code** field, enter the HTTP status code that will cause the error page to be opened, or leave the field blank to include all error codes.
 - To specify an exception type, in the **Exception Type** field, enter the exception that will cause the error page to load. To specify all throwable errors and exceptions, enter `java.lang.Throwable`.
10. Click **OK**.

6.5.4 Declaring Resource References

If your web component uses such objects as enterprise beans, data sources, or web services, you use Java EE annotations to inject these resources into your application. Annotations eliminate a lot of the boilerplate lookup code and configuration elements that previous versions of Java EE required.

Although resource injection using annotations can be more convenient for the developer, there are some restrictions on using it in web applications. First, you can inject resources only into container-managed objects, since a container must have control over the creation of a component so that it can perform the injection into a component. As a result, you cannot inject resources into such objects as simple JavaBeans components. However, managed beans are managed by the container; therefore, they can accept resource injections.

Components that can accept resource injections are listed in [Table 6–1](#).

This section explains how to use a couple of the annotations supported by a web container to inject resources. [Chapter 36, "Running the Persistence Examples"](#), explains how web applications use annotations supported by the Java Persistence API. [Chapter 45, "Getting Started Securing Web Applications"](#), explains how to use annotations to specify information about securing web applications. See [Chapter 49, "Resource Adapters and Contracts"](#), for more information on resources.

Table 6–1 Web Components That Accept Resource Injections

Component	Interface/Class
Servlets	<code>javax.servlet.Servlet</code>
Servlet filters	<code>javax.servlet.ServletFilter</code>
Event listeners	<code>javax.servlet.ServletContextListener</code>
	<code>javax.servlet.ServletContextAttributeListener</code>
	<code>javax.servlet.ServletRequestListener</code>
	<code>javax.servlet.ServletRequestAttributeListener</code>
	<code>javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionListener</code>
	<code>javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionAttributeListener</code>
	<code>javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionBindingListener</code>
Managed beans	Plain Old Java Objects

6.5.4.1 Declaring a Reference to a Resource

The `@Resource` annotation is used to declare a reference to a resource, such as a data source, an enterprise bean, or an environment entry.

The `@Resource` annotation is specified on a class, a method, or a field. The container is responsible for injecting references to resources declared by the `@Resource` annotation and mapping it to the proper JNDI resources.

In the following example, the `@Resource` annotation is used to inject a data source into a component that needs to make a connection to the data source, as is done when using JDBC technology to access a relational database:

```
@Resource javax.sql.DataSource catalogDS;
public getProductsByCategory() {
    // get a connection and execute the query
    Connection conn = catalogDS.getConnection();
    ...
}
```

The container injects this data source prior to the component's being made available to the application. The data source JNDI mapping is inferred from the field name `catalogDS` and the type, `javax.sql.DataSource`.

If you have multiple resources that you need to inject into one component, you need to use the `@Resources` annotation to contain them, as shown by the following example:

```
@Resources ({
    @Resource(name="myDB" type=javax.sql.DataSource.class),
    @Resource(name="myMQ" type=javax.jms.ConnectionFactory.class)
})
```

The web application examples in this tutorial use the Java Persistence API to access relational databases. This API does not require you to explicitly create a connection to a data source. Therefore, the examples do not use the `@Resource` annotation to inject a data source. However, this API supports the `@PersistenceUnit` and `@PersistenceContext` annotations for injecting `EntityManagerFactory` and `EntityManager` instances, respectively. [Chapter 36, "Running the Persistence Examples"](#) describes these annotations and the use of the Java Persistence API in web applications.

6.5.4.2 Declaring a Reference to a Web Service

The `@WebServiceRef` annotation provides a reference to a web service. The following example shows uses the `@WebServiceRef` annotation to declare a reference to a web service. `WebServiceRef` uses the `wsdlLocation` element to specify the URI of the deployed service's WSDL file:

```
...
import javax.xml.ws.WebServiceRef;
...
public class ResponseServlet extends HttpServlet {
    @WebServiceRef(wsdlLocation=
        "http://localhost:8080/helloservice/hello?wsdl")
    static HelloService service;
}
```

6.6 Further Information about Web Applications

For more information on web applications, see

- [JavaServer Faces 2.2 specification](#):

<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=344>

- JavaServer Faces technology web site:

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javaee/javaserverfaces-139869.html>

- Java Servlet 3.1 specification:

<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=340>

- Java Servlet web site:

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/index-jsp-135475.html>

JavaServer Faces Technology

JavaServer Faces technology is a server-side component framework for building Java technology-based web applications.

JavaServer Faces technology consists of the following:

- An API for representing components and managing their state; handling events, server-side validation, and data conversion; defining page navigation; supporting internationalization and accessibility; and providing extensibility for all these features
- Tag libraries for adding components to web pages and for connecting components to server-side objects

JavaServer Faces technology provides a well-defined programming model and various tag libraries. The tag libraries contain tag handlers that implement the component tags. These features significantly ease the burden of building and maintaining web applications with server-side user interfaces (UIs). With minimal effort, you can complete the following tasks.

- Create a web page.
- Drop components onto a web page by adding component tags.
- Bind components on a page to server-side data.
- Wire component-generated events to server-side application code.
- Save and restore application state beyond the life of server requests.
- Reuse and extend components through customization.

This chapter provides an overview of JavaServer Faces technology. After explaining what a JavaServer Faces application is and reviewing some of the primary benefits of using JavaServer Faces technology, this chapter describes the process of creating a simple JavaServer Faces application. This chapter also introduces the JavaServer Faces lifecycle by describing the example JavaServer Faces application progressing through the lifecycle stages.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [What Is a JavaServer Faces Application?](#)
- [JavaServer Faces Technology Benefits](#)
- [A Simple JavaServer Faces Application](#)
- [User Interface Component Model](#)
- [Navigation Model](#)
- [The Lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces Application](#)

- [Further Information about JavaServer Faces Technology](#)

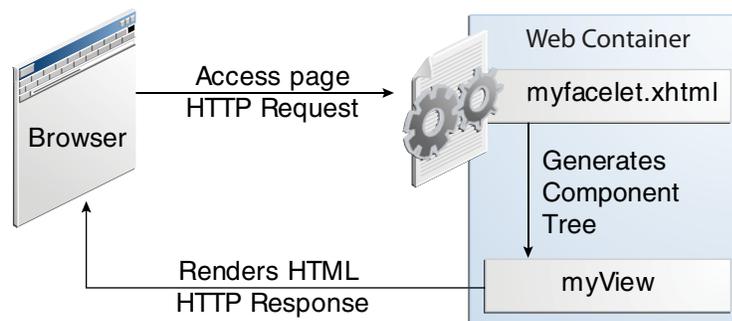
7.1 What Is a JavaServer Faces Application?

The functionality provided by a JavaServer Faces application is similar to that of any other Java web application. A typical JavaServer Faces application includes the following parts:

- A set of web pages in which components are laid out
- A set of tags to add components to the web page
- A set of **managed beans**, which are lightweight container-managed objects (POJOs). In a JavaServer Faces application, managed beans serve as backing beans, which define properties and functions for UI components on a page.
- A web deployment descriptor (`web.xml` file)
- Optionally, one or more **application configuration resource files**, such as a `faces-config.xml` file, which can be used to define page navigation rules and configure beans and other custom objects, such as custom components
- Optionally, a set of custom objects, which can include custom components, validators, converters, or listeners, created by the application developer
- Optionally, a set of custom tags for representing custom objects on the page

Figure 7-1 shows the interaction between client and server in a typical JavaServer Faces application. In response to a client request, a web page is rendered by the web container that implements JavaServer Faces technology.

Figure 7-1 Responding to a Client Request for a JavaServer Faces Page



The web page, `myfacelet.xhtml`, is built using JavaServer Faces component tags. Component tags are used to add components to the view (represented by `myView` in the diagram), which is the server-side representation of the page. In addition to components, the web page can also reference objects, such as the following:

- Any event listeners, validators, and converters that are registered on the components
- The JavaBeans components that capture the data and process the application-specific functionality of the components

On request from the client, the view is rendered as a response. Rendering is the process whereby, based on the server-side view, the web container generates output, such as HTML or XHTML, that can be read by the client, such as a browser.

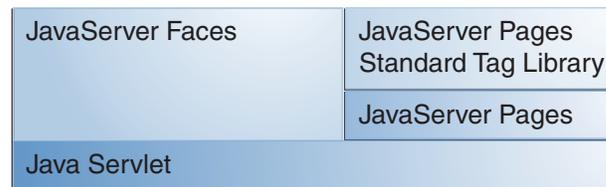
7.2 JavaServer Faces Technology Benefits

One of the greatest advantages of JavaServer Faces technology is that it offers a clean separation between behavior and presentation for web applications. A JavaServer Faces application can map HTTP requests to component-specific event handling and manage components as stateful objects on the server. JavaServer Faces technology allows you to build web applications that implement the finer-grained separation of behavior and presentation that is traditionally offered by client-side UI architectures.

The separation of logic from presentation also allows each member of a web application development team to focus on a single piece of the development process and provides a simple programming model to link the pieces. For example, page authors with no programming expertise can use JavaServer Faces technology tags in a web page to link to server-side objects without writing any scripts.

Another important goal of JavaServer Faces technology is to leverage familiar component and web-tier concepts without limiting you to a particular scripting technology or markup language. JavaServer Faces technology APIs are layered directly on top of the Servlet API, as shown in [Figure 7-2](#).

Figure 7-2 Java Web Application Technologies



This layering of APIs enables several important application use cases, such as using different presentation technologies, creating your own custom components directly from the component classes, and generating output for various client devices.

Facelets technology, available as part of JavaServer Faces technology, is the preferred presentation technology for building JavaServer Faces technology-based web applications. For more information on Facelets technology features, see [Chapter 8, "Introduction to Facelets"](#).

Facelets technology offers several advantages.

- Code can be reused and extended for components through the templating and composite component features.
- You can use annotations to automatically register the managed bean as a resource available for JavaServer Faces applications. In addition, implicit navigation rules allow developers to quickly configure page navigation (see [Navigation Model](#) for details). These features reduce the manual configuration process for applications.
- Most important, JavaServer Faces technology provides a rich architecture for managing component state, processing component data, validating user input, and handling events.

7.3 A Simple JavaServer Faces Application

JavaServer Faces technology provides an easy and user-friendly process for creating web applications. Developing a simple JavaServer Faces application typically requires the following tasks, which have already been described in [A Web Module That Uses JavaServer Faces Technology: The hello1 Example](#):

- Creating web pages using component tags
- Developing managed beans
- Mapping the `FacesServlet` instance

The `hello1` example includes a managed bean and two Facelets web pages. When accessed by a client, the first web page asks the user for his or her name, and the second page responds by providing a greeting.

For details on Facelets technology, see [Chapter 8, "Introduction to Facelets"](#). For details on using EL expressions, see [Chapter 9, "Expression Language"](#). For details on the JavaServer Faces programming model and building web pages using JavaServer Faces technology, see [Chapter 10, "Using JavaServer Faces Technology in Web Pages"](#).

Every web application has a lifecycle. Common tasks, such as handling incoming requests, decoding parameters, modifying and saving state, and rendering web pages to the browser, are all performed during a web application lifecycle. Some web application frameworks hide the details of the lifecycle from you, whereas others require you to manage them manually.

By default, JavaServer Faces automatically handles most of the lifecycle actions for you. However, it also exposes the various stages of the request lifecycle, so that you can modify or perform different actions if your application requirements warrant it.

The lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces application starts and ends with the following activity: The client makes a request for the web page, and the server responds with the page. The lifecycle consists of two main phases: *execute* and *render*.

During the *execute* phase, several actions can take place:

- The application view is built or restored.
- The request parameter values are applied.
- Conversions and validations are performed for component values.
- Managed beans are updated with component values.
- Application logic is invoked.

For a first (initial) request, only the view is built. For subsequent (postback) requests, some or all of the other actions can take place.

In the *render* phase, the requested view is rendered as a response to the client. Rendering is typically the process of generating output, such as HTML or XHTML, that can be read by the client, usually a browser.

The following short description of the example JavaServer Faces application passing through its lifecycle summarizes the activity that takes place behind the scenes.

The `hello1` example application goes through the following stages when it is deployed on the GlassFish Server.

1. When the `hello1` application is built and deployed on the GlassFish Server, the application is in an uninitiated state.
2. When a client makes an initial request for the `index.xhtml` web page, the `hello1` Facelets application is compiled.
3. The compiled Facelets application is executed, and a new component tree is constructed for the `hello1` application and is placed in a `FacesContext`.
4. The component tree is populated with the component and the managed bean property associated with it, represented by the EL expression `hello.name`.

5. A new view is built, based on the component tree.
6. The view is rendered to the requesting client as a response.
7. The component tree is destroyed automatically.
8. On subsequent (postback) requests, the component tree is rebuilt, and the saved state is applied.

For full details on the lifecycle, see [The Lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces Application](#).

7.4 User Interface Component Model

In addition to the lifecycle description, an overview of JavaServer Faces architecture provides better understanding of the technology.

JavaServer Faces components are the building blocks of a JavaServer Faces view. A component can be a user interface (UI) component or a non-UI component.

JavaServer Faces UI components are configurable, reusable elements that compose the user interfaces of JavaServer Faces applications. A component can be simple, such as a button, or can be compound, such as a table, composed of multiple components.

JavaServer Faces technology provides a rich, flexible component architecture that includes the following:

- A set of `javax.faces.component.UIComponent` classes for specifying the state and behavior of UI components
- A rendering model that defines how to render the components in various ways
- A conversion model that defines how to register data converters onto a component
- An event and listener model that defines how to handle component events
- A validation model that defines how to register validators onto a component

This section briefly describes each of these pieces of the component architecture.

7.4.1 User Interface Component Classes

JavaServer Faces technology provides a set of UI component classes and associated behavioral interfaces that specify all the UI component functionality, such as holding component state, maintaining a reference to objects, and driving event handling and rendering for a set of standard components.

The component classes are completely extensible, allowing component writers to create their own custom components. See [Chapter 15, "Creating Custom UI Components and Other Custom Objects"](#) for more information.

The abstract base class for all components is `javax.faces.component.UIComponent`. JavaServer Faces UI component classes extend the `UIComponentBase` class (a subclass of `UIComponent`), which defines the default state and behavior of a component. The following set of component classes is included with JavaServer Faces technology:

- `UIColumn`: Represents a single column of data in a `UIData` component.
- `UICommand`: Represents a control that fires actions when activated.
- `UIData`: Represents a data binding to a collection of data represented by a `javax.faces.model.DataModel` instance.

- `UIForm`: Represents an input form to be presented to the user. Its child components represent (among other things) the input fields to be included when the form is submitted. This component is analogous to the `form` tag in HTML.
- `UIGraphic`: Displays an image.
- `UIInput`: Takes data input from a user. This class is a subclass of `UIOutput`.
- `UIMessage`: Displays a localized error message.
- `UIMessages`: Displays a set of localized error messages.
- `UIOutcomeTarget`: Displays a link in the form of a link or a button.
- `UIOutput`: Displays data output on a page.
- `UIPanel`: Manages the layout of its child components.
- `UIParameter`: Represents substitution parameters.
- `UISelectBoolean`: Allows a user to set a boolean value on a control by selecting or deselecting it. This class is a subclass of the `UIInput` class.
- `UISelectedItem`: Represents a single item in a set of items.
- `UISelectItems`: Represents an entire set of items.
- `UISelectMany`: Allows a user to select multiple items from a group of items. This class is a subclass of the `UIInput` class.
- `UISelectOne`: Allows a user to select one item from a group of items. This class is a subclass of the `UIInput` class.
- `UIViewParameter`: Represents the query parameters in a request. This class is a subclass of the `UIInput` class.
- `UIViewRoot`: Represents the root of the component tree.

In addition to extending `UIComponentBase`, the component classes also implement one or more **behavioral interfaces**, each of which defines certain behavior for a set of components whose classes implement the interface.

These behavioral interfaces, all defined in the `javax.faces.component` package unless otherwise stated, are as follows:

- `ActionSource`: Indicates that the component can fire an action event. This interface is intended for use with components based on JavaServer Faces technology 1.1_01 and earlier versions. This interface is deprecated in JavaServer Faces 2.
- `ActionSource2`: Extends `ActionSource`, and therefore provides the same functionality. However, it allows components to use the Expression Language (EL) when they are referencing methods that handle action events.
- `EditableValueHolder`: Extends `ValueHolder` and specifies additional features for editable components, such as validation and emitting value-change events.
- `NamingContainer`: Mandates that each component rooted at this component have a unique ID.
- `StateHolder`: Denotes that a component has state that must be saved between requests.
- `ValueHolder`: Indicates that the component maintains a local value as well as the option of accessing data in the model tier.

- `javax.faces.event.SystemEventListenerHolder`: Maintains a list of `javax.faces.event.SystemEventListener` instances for each type of `javax.faces.event.SystemEvent` defined by that class.
- `javax.faces.component.behavior.ClientBehaviorHolder`: Adds the ability to attach `javax.faces.component.behavior.ClientBehavior` instances such as a reusable script.

`UICommand` implements `ActionSource2` and `StateHolder`. `UIOutput` and component classes that extend `UIOutput` implement `StateHolder` and `ValueHolder`. `UIInput` and component classes that extend `UIInput` implement `EditableValueHolder`, `StateHolder`, and `ValueHolder`. `UIComponentBase` implements `StateHolder`.

Only component writers will need to use the component classes and behavioral interfaces directly. Page authors and application developers will use a standard component by including a tag that represents it on a page. Most of the components can be rendered in different ways on a page. For example, a `UICommand` component can be rendered as a button or a link.

The next section explains how the rendering model works and how page authors can choose to render the components by selecting the appropriate tags.

7.4.2 Component Rendering Model

The JavaServer Faces component architecture is designed such that the functionality of the components is defined by the component classes, whereas the component rendering can be defined by a separate renderer class. This design has several benefits, including the following:

- Component writers can define the behavior of a component once but create multiple renderers, each of which defines a different way to render the component to the same client or to different clients.
- Page authors and application developers can change the appearance of a component on the page by selecting the tag that represents the appropriate combination of component and renderer.

A **render kit** defines how component classes map to component tags that are appropriate for a particular client. The JavaServer Faces implementation includes a standard HTML render kit for rendering to an HTML client.

The render kit defines a set of `javax.faces.render.Renderer` classes for each component that it supports. Each `Renderer` class defines a different way to render the particular component to the output defined by the render kit. For example, a `UISelectOne` component has three different renderers. One of them renders the component as a group of options. Another renders the component as a combo box. The third one renders the component as a list box. Similarly, a `UICommand` component can be rendered as a button or a link, using the `h:commandButton` or `h:commandLink` tag. The `command` part of each tag corresponds to the `UICommand` class, specifying the functionality, which is to fire an action. The `Button` or `Link` part of each tag corresponds to a separate `Renderer` class that defines how the component appears on the page.

Each custom tag defined in the standard HTML render kit is composed of the component functionality (defined in the `UIComponent` class) and the rendering attributes (defined by the `Renderer` class).

The section [Adding Components to a Page Using HTML Tag Library Tags](#) lists all supported component tags and illustrates how to use the tags in an example.

The JavaServer Faces implementation provides a custom tag library for rendering components in HTML.

7.4.3 Conversion Model

A JavaServer Faces application can optionally associate a component with server-side object data. This object is a JavaBeans component, such as a managed bean. An application gets and sets the object data for a component by calling the appropriate object properties for that component.

When a component is bound to an object, the application has two views of the component's data:

- The model view, in which data is represented as data types, such as `int` or `long`.
- The presentation view, in which data is represented in a manner that can be read or modified by the user. For example, a `java.util.Date` might be represented as a text string in the format `mm/dd/yy` or as a set of three text strings.

The JavaServer Faces implementation automatically converts component data between these two views when the bean property associated with the component is of one of the types supported by the component's data. For example, if a `UISelectBoolean` component is associated with a bean property of type `java.lang.Boolean`, the JavaServer Faces implementation will automatically convert the component's data from `String` to `Boolean`. In addition, some component data must be bound to properties of a particular type. For example, a `UISelectBoolean` component must be bound to a property of type `boolean` or `java.lang.Boolean`.

Sometimes you might want to convert a component's data to a type other than a standard type, or you might want to convert the format of the data. To facilitate this, JavaServer Faces technology allows you to register a `javax.faces.convert.Converter` implementation on `UIOutput` components and components whose classes subclass `UIOutput`. If you register the `Converter` implementation on a component, the `Converter` implementation converts the component's data between the two views.

You can either use the standard converters supplied with the JavaServer Faces implementation or create your own custom converter. Custom converter creation is covered in [Chapter 15, "Creating Custom UI Components and Other Custom Objects"](#).

7.4.4 Event and Listener Model

The JavaServer Faces event and listener model is similar to the JavaBeans event model in that it has strongly typed event classes and listener interfaces that an application can use to handle events generated by components.

The JavaServer Faces specification defines three types of events: application events, system events, and data-model events.

Application events are tied to a particular application and are generated by a `UIComponent`. They represent the standard events available in previous versions of JavaServer Faces technology.

An event object identifies the component that generated the event and stores information about the event. To be notified of an event, an application must provide an implementation of the listener class and must register it on the component that generates the event. When the user activates a component, such as by clicking a button, an event is fired. This causes the JavaServer Faces implementation to invoke the listener method that processes the event.

JavaServer Faces supports two kinds of application events: action events and value-change events.

An **action event** (class `javax.faces.event.ActionEvent`) occurs when the user activates a component that implements `ActionSource`. These components include buttons and links.

A **value-change event** (class `javax.faces.event.ValueChangeEvent`) occurs when the user changes the value of a component represented by `UIInput` or one of its subclasses. An example is selecting a check box, an action that results in the component's value changing to `true`. The component types that can generate these types of events are the `UIInput`, `UISelectOne`, `UISelectMany`, and `UISelectBoolean` components. Value-change events are fired only if no validation errors are detected.

Depending on the value of the `immediate` property (see [The immediate Attribute](#)) of the component emitting the event, action events can be processed during the invoke application phase or the apply request values phase, and value-change events can be processed during the process validations phase or the apply request values phase.

System events are generated by an `Object` rather than a `UIComponent`. They are generated during the execution of an application at predefined times. They are applicable to the entire application rather than to a specific component.

A **data-model event** occurs when a new row of a `UIData` component is selected.

There are two ways to cause your application to react to action events or value-change events that are emitted by a standard component:

- Implement an event listener class to handle the event and register the listener on the component by nesting either an `f:valueChangeListener` tag or an `f:actionListener` tag inside the component tag.
- Implement a method of a managed bean to handle the event and refer to the method with a method expression from the appropriate attribute of the component's tag.

See [Implementing an Event Listener](#) for information on how to implement an event listener. See [Registering Listeners on Components](#) for information on how to register the listener on a component.

See [Writing a Method to Handle an Action Event](#) and [Writing a Method to Handle a Value-Change Event](#) for information on how to implement managed bean methods that handle these events.

See [Referencing a Managed Bean Method](#) for information on how to refer to the managed bean method from the component tag.

When emitting events from custom components, you must implement the appropriate event class and manually queue the event on the component in addition to implementing an event listener class or a managed bean method that handles the event. [Handling Events for Custom Components](#) explains how to do this.

7.4.5 Validation Model

JavaServer Faces technology supports a mechanism for validating the local data of editable components (such as text fields). This validation occurs before the corresponding model data is updated to match the local value.

Like the conversion model, the validation model defines a set of standard classes for performing common data validation checks. The JavaServer Faces core tag library also defines a set of tags that correspond to the standard

`javax.faces.validator.Validator` implementations. See [Using the Standard Validators](#) for a list of all the standard validation classes and corresponding tags.

Most of the tags have a set of attributes for configuring the validator's properties, such as the minimum and maximum allowable values for the component's data. The page author registers the validator on a component by nesting the validator's tag within the component's tag.

In addition to validators that are registered on the component, you can declare a default validator which is registered on all `UIInput` components in the application. For more information on default validators, see [Using Default Validators](#).

The validation model also allows you to create your own custom validator and corresponding tag to perform custom validation. The validation model provides two ways to implement custom validation:

- Implement a `Validator` interface that performs the validation.
- Implement a managed bean method that performs the validation.

If you are implementing a `Validator` interface, you must also:

- Register the `Validator` implementation with the application.
- Create a custom tag or use an `f:validator` tag to register the validator on the component.

In the previously described standard validation model, the validator is defined for each input component on a page. The Bean Validation model allows the validator to be applied to all fields in a page. See [Using Bean Validation](#) and [Chapter 51, "Bean Validation: Advanced Topics"](#) for more information on Bean Validation.

7.5 Navigation Model

The JavaServer Faces navigation model makes it easy to define page navigation and to handle any additional processing that is needed to choose the sequence in which pages are loaded.

In JavaServer Faces technology, **navigation** is a set of rules for choosing the next page or view to be displayed after an application action, such as when a button or link is clicked.

Navigation can be implicit or user-defined. **Implicit navigation** comes into play when user-defined navigation rules are not configured in the application configuration resource files.

When you add a component such as a `commandButton` to a Facelets page, and assign another page as the value for its `action` property, the default navigation handler will try to match a suitable page within the application implicitly. In the following example, the default navigation handler will try to locate a page named `response.xhtml` within the application and navigate to it:

```
<h:commandButton value="submit" action="response">
```

User-defined navigation rules are declared in zero or more application configuration resource files, such as `faces-config.xml`, by using a set of XML elements. The default structure of a navigation rule is as follows:

```
<navigation-rule>
  <description></description>
  <from-view-id></from-view-id>
  <navigation-case>
```

```

        <from-action></from-action>
        <from-outcome></from-outcome>
        <if></if>
        <to-view-id></to-view-id>
    </navigation-case>
</navigation-rule>

```

User-defined navigation is handled as follows:

- Define the rules in the application configuration resource file.
- Refer to an outcome String from the button or link component's action attribute. This outcome String is used by the JavaServer Faces implementation to select the navigation rule.

Here is an example navigation rule:

```

<navigation-rule>
  <from-view-id>/greeting.xhtml</from-view-id>
  <navigation-case>
    <from-outcome>success</from-outcome>
    <to-view-id>/response.xhtml</to-view-id>
  </navigation-case>
</navigation-rule>

```

This rule states that when a command component (such as an `h:commandButton` or an `h:commandLink`) on `greeting.xhtml` is activated, the application will navigate from the `greeting.xhtml` page to the `response.xhtml` page if the outcome referenced by the button component's tag is `success`. Here is an `h:commandButton` tag from `greeting.xhtml` that would specify a logical outcome of `success`:

```
<h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit" action="success" />
```

As the example demonstrates, each `navigation-rule` element defines how to get from one page (specified in the `from-view-id` element) to the other pages of the application. The `navigation-rule` elements can contain any number of `navigation-case` elements, each of which defines the page to open next (defined by `to-view-id`) based on a logical outcome (defined by `from-outcome`).

In more complicated applications, the logical outcome can also come from the return value of an **action method** in a managed bean. This method performs some processing to determine the outcome. For example, the method can check whether the password the user entered on the page matches the one on file. If it does, the method might return `success`; otherwise, it might return `failure`. An outcome of `failure` might result in the logon page being reloaded. An outcome of `success` might cause the page displaying the user's credit card activity to open. If you want the outcome to be returned by a method on a bean, you must refer to the method using a method expression, with the `action` attribute, as shown by this example:

```
<h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit"
  action="#{cashierBean.submit}" />
```

When the user clicks the button represented by this tag, the corresponding component generates an action event. This event is handled by the default `javax.faces.event.ActionListener` instance, which calls the action method referenced by the component that triggered the event. The action method returns a logical outcome to the action listener.

The listener passes the logical outcome and a reference to the action method that produced the outcome to the default `javax.faces.application.NavigationHandler`. The `NavigationHandler` selects the page to display next by matching the outcome or

the action method reference against the navigation rules in the application configuration resource file by the following process:

1. The `NavigationHandler` selects the navigation rule that matches the page currently displayed.
2. It matches the outcome or the action method reference that it received from the default `javax.faces.event.ActionListener` with those defined by the navigation cases.
3. It tries to match both the method reference and the outcome against the same navigation case.
4. If the previous step fails, the navigation handler attempts to match the outcome.
5. Finally, the navigation handler attempts to match the action method reference if the previous two attempts failed.
6. If no navigation case is matched, it displays the same view again.

When the `NavigationHandler` achieves a match, the render response phase begins. During this phase, the page selected by the `NavigationHandler` will be rendered.

The Duke's Tutoring case study example application (to be provided in the next release of this Tutorial) uses navigation rules in the business methods that handle creating, editing, and deleting the users of the application. For example, the form for creating a student has the following `h:commandButton` tag:

```
<h:commandButton id="submit"
    action="#{adminBean.createStudent(studentManager.newStudent)}"
    value="#{bundle['action.submit']}" />
```

The action event calls the `dukestutoring.ejb.AdminBean.createStudent` method:

```
public String createStudent(Student student) {
    em.persist(student);
    return "createdStudent";
}
```

The return value of `createdStudent` has a corresponding navigation case in the `faces-config.xml` configuration file:

```
<navigation-rule>
  <from-view-id>/admin/student/createStudent.xhtml</from-view-id>
  <navigation-case>
    <from-outcome>createdStudent</from-outcome>
    <to-view-id>/admin/index.xhtml</to-view-id>
  </navigation-case>
</navigation-rule>
```

After the student is created, the user is returned to the Administration index page.

For more information on how to define navigation rules, see [Configuring Navigation Rules](#).

For more information on how to implement action methods to handle navigation, see [Writing a Method to Handle an Action Event](#).

For more information on how to reference outcomes or action methods from component tags, see [Referencing a Method That Performs Navigation](#).

7.6 The Lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces Application

The lifecycle of an application refers to the various stages of processing of that application, from its initiation to its conclusion. All applications have lifecycles. During a web application lifecycle, common tasks such as the following are performed:

- Handling incoming requests
- Decoding parameters
- Modifying and saving state
- Rendering web pages to the browser

The JavaServer Faces web application framework manages lifecycle phases automatically for simple applications or allows you to manage them manually for more complex applications as required.

JavaServer Faces applications that use advanced features may require interaction with the lifecycle at certain phases. For example, Ajax applications use partial processing features of the lifecycle. A clearer understanding of the lifecycle phases is key to creating well-designed components.

A simplified view of the JavaServer faces lifecycle, consisting of the two main phases of a JavaServer Faces web application, is introduced in [A Simple JavaServer Faces Application](#). This section examines the JavaServer Faces lifecycle in more detail.

7.6.1 Overview of the JavaServer Faces Lifecycle

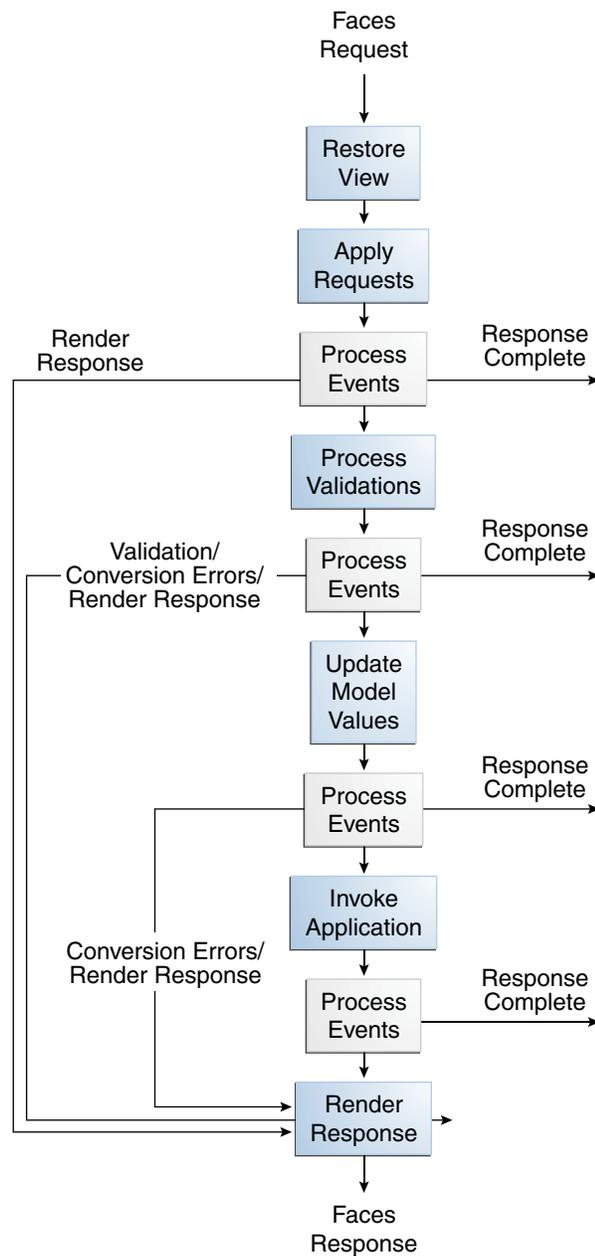
The lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces application begins when the client makes an HTTP request for a page and ends when the server responds with the page, translated to HTML.

The lifecycle can be divided into two main phases, **execute** and **render**. The execute phase is further divided into subphases to support the sophisticated component tree. This structure requires that component data be converted and validated, component events be handled, and component data be propagated to beans in an orderly fashion.

A JavaServer Faces page is represented by a tree of components, called a **view**. During the lifecycle, the JavaServer Faces implementation must build the view while considering the state saved from a previous submission of the page. When the client requests a page, the JavaServer Faces implementation performs several tasks, such as validating the data input of components in the view and converting input data to types specified on the server side.

The JavaServer Faces implementation performs all these tasks as a series of steps in the JavaServer Faces request-response lifecycle. [Figure 7-3](#) illustrates these steps.

Figure 7-3 JavaServer Faces Standard Request-Response Lifecycle



The request-response lifecycle handles two kinds of requests: initial requests and postbacks. An **initial request** occurs when a user makes a request for a page for the first time. A **postback request** occurs when a user submits the form contained on a page that was previously loaded into the browser as a result of executing an initial request.

When the lifecycle handles an initial request, it executes only the Restore View and Render Response phases, because there is no user input or action to process. Conversely, when the lifecycle handles a postback, it executes all of the phases.

Usually, the first request for a JavaServer Faces page comes in from a client, as a result of clicking a link or button component on a JavaServer Faces page. To render a response that is another JavaServer Faces page, the application creates a new view and

stores it in the `javax.faces.context.FacesContext` instance, which represents all of the information associated with processing an incoming request and creating a response. The application then acquires object references needed by the view and calls the `FacesContext.renderResponse` method, which forces immediate rendering of the view by skipping to the **Render Response Phase** of the lifecycle, as is shown by the arrows labelled **Render Response** in the diagram.

Sometimes, an application might need to redirect to a different web application resource, such as a web service, or generate a response that does not contain JavaServer Faces components. In these situations, the developer must skip the **Render Response** phase by calling the `FacesContext.responseComplete` method. This situation is also shown in the diagram, with the arrows labelled **Response Complete**.

The most common situation is that a JavaServer Faces component submits a request for another JavaServer Faces page. In this case, the JavaServer Faces implementation handles the request and automatically goes through the phases in the lifecycle to perform any necessary conversions, validations, and model updates, and to generate the response.

There is one exception to the lifecycle described in this section. When a component's `immediate` attribute is set to `true`, the validation, conversion, and events associated with these components are processed during the **Apply Request Values Phase** rather than in a later phase.

The details of the lifecycle explained in the following sections are primarily intended for developers who need to know information such as when validations, conversions, and events are usually handled and ways to change how and when they are handled. For more information on each of the lifecycle phases, download the latest JavaServer Faces Specification documentation from <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=344>.

The JavaServer Faces application lifecycle execute phase contains the following sub-phases:

- [Restore View Phase](#)
- [Apply Request Values Phase](#)
- [Process Validations Phase](#)
- [Update Model Values Phase](#)
- [Invoke Application Phase](#)
- [Render Response Phase](#)

7.6.2 Restore View Phase

When a request for a JavaServer Faces page is made, usually by an action such as when a link or a button component is clicked, the JavaServer Faces implementation begins the **Restore View** phase.

During this phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation builds the view of the page, wires event handlers and validators to components in the view, and saves the view in the `FacesContext` instance, which contains all the information needed to process a single request. All the application's components, event handlers, converters, and validators have access to the `FacesContext` instance.

If the request for the page is an initial request, the JavaServer Faces implementation creates an empty view during this phase and the lifecycle advances to the **Render Response** phase, during which the empty view is populated with the components referenced by the tags in the page.

If the request for the page is a postback, a view corresponding to this page already exists in the `FacesContext` instance. During this phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation restores the view by using the state information saved on the client or the server.

7.6.3 Apply Request Values Phase

After the component tree is restored during a postback request, each component in the tree extracts its new value from the request parameters by using its `decode()` (`processDecodes()`) method. The value is then stored locally on each component.

If any `decode` methods or event listeners have called the `renderResponse` method on the current `FacesContext` instance, the JavaServer Faces implementation skips to the Render Response phase.

If any events have been queued during this phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation broadcasts the events to interested listeners.

If some components on the page have their `immediate` attributes (see [The immediate Attribute](#)) set to `true`, then the validations, conversions, and events associated with these components will be processed during this phase. If any conversion fails, an error message associated with the component is generated and queued on `FacesContext`. This message will be displayed during the Render Response phase, along with any validation errors resulting from the Process Validations phase.

At this point, if the application needs to redirect to a different web application resource or generate a response that does not contain any JavaServer Faces components, it can call the `FacesContext.responseComplete` method.

At the end of this phase, the components are set to their new values, and messages and events have been queued.

If the current request is identified as a partial request, the partial context is retrieved from the `FacesContext`, and the partial processing method is applied.

7.6.4 Process Validations Phase

During this phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation processes all validators registered on the components in the tree, by using its `validate(processValidators)` method. It examines the component attributes that specify the rules for the validation and compares these rules to the local value stored for the component. The JavaServer Faces implementation also completes conversions for input components that do not have the `immediate` attribute set to `true`.

If the local value is invalid, or if any conversion fails, the JavaServer Faces implementation adds an error message to the `FacesContext` instance, and the lifecycle advances directly to the Render Response phase so that the page is rendered again with the error messages displayed. If there were conversion errors from the Apply Request Values phase, the messages for these errors are also displayed.

If any `validate` methods or event listeners have called the `renderResponse` method on the current `FacesContext`, the JavaServer Faces implementation skips to the Render Response phase.

At this point, if the application needs to redirect to a different web application resource or generate a response that does not contain any JavaServer Faces components, it can call the `FacesContext.responseComplete` method.

If events have been queued during this phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation broadcasts them to interested listeners.

If the current request is identified as a partial request, the partial context is retrieved from the `FacesContext`, and the partial processing method is applied.

7.6.5 Update Model Values Phase

After the JavaServer Faces implementation determines that the data is valid, it traverses the component tree and sets the corresponding server-side object properties to the components' local values. The JavaServer Faces implementation updates only the bean properties pointed at by an input component's value attribute. If the local data cannot be converted to the types specified by the bean properties, the lifecycle advances directly to the Render Response phase so that the page is re-rendered with errors displayed. This is similar to what happens with validation errors.

If any `updateModels` methods or any listeners have called the `renderResponse` method on the current `FacesContext` instance, the JavaServer Faces implementation skips to the Render Response phase.

At this point, if the application needs to redirect to a different web application resource or generate a response that does not contain any JavaServer Faces components, it can call the `FacesContext.responseComplete` method.

If any events have been queued during this phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation broadcasts them to interested listeners.

If the current request is identified as a partial request, the partial context is retrieved from the `FacesContext`, and the partial processing method is applied.

7.6.6 Invoke Application Phase

During this phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation handles any application-level events, such as submitting a form or linking to another page.

At this point, if the application needs to redirect to a different web application resource or generate a response that does not contain any JavaServer Faces components, it can call the `FacesContext.responseComplete` method.

If the view being processed was reconstructed from state information from a previous request and if a component has fired an event, these events are broadcast to interested listeners.

Finally, the JavaServer Faces implementation transfers control to the Render Response phase.

7.6.7 Render Response Phase

During this phase, JavaServer Faces builds the view and delegates authority to the appropriate resource for rendering the pages.

If this is an initial request, the components that are represented on the page will be added to the component tree. If this is not an initial request, the components are already added to the tree, so they need not be added again.

If the request is a postback and errors were encountered during the Apply Request Values phase, Process Validations phase, or Update Model Values phase, the original page is rendered again during this phase. If the pages contain `h:message` or `h:messages` tags, any queued error messages are displayed on the page.

After the content of the view is rendered, the state of the response is saved so that subsequent requests can access it. The saved state is available to the Restore View phase.

7.7 Further Information about JavaServer Faces Technology

For more information on JavaServer Faces technology, see

- JavaServer Faces 2.2 specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=344>
- JavaServer Faces project web site:
<https://javaserverfaces.java.net/>

Introduction to Facelets

The term **Facelets** refers to the view declaration language for JavaServer Faces technology. Facelets is a part of the JavaServer Faces specification and also the preferred presentation technology for building JavaServer Faces technology-based applications. JavaServer Pages (JSP) technology, previously used as the presentation technology for JavaServer Faces, does not support all the new features available in JavaServer Faces in the Java EE 7 platform. JSP technology is considered to be a deprecated presentation technology for JavaServer Faces.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [What Is Facelets?](#)
- [The Lifecycle of a Facelets Application](#)
- [Developing a Simple Facelets Application](#)
- [Using Facelets Templates](#)
- [Composite Components](#)
- [Web Resources](#)
- [Relocatable Resources](#)
- [Resource Library Contracts](#)
- [HTML5 Friendly Markup](#)

8.1 What Is Facelets?

Facelets is a powerful but lightweight page declaration language that is used to build JavaServer Faces views using HTML style templates and to build component trees. Facelets features include the following:

- Use of XHTML for creating web pages
- Support for Facelets tag libraries in addition to JavaServer Faces and JSTL tag libraries
- Support for the Expression Language (EL)
- Templating for components and pages

Advantages of Facelets for large-scale development projects include the following:

- Support for code reuse through templating and composite components
- Functional extensibility of components and other server-side objects through customization

- Faster compilation time
- Compile-time EL validation
- High-performance rendering

In short, the use of Facelets reduces the time and effort that needs to be spent on development and deployment.

Facelets views are usually created as XHTML pages. JavaServer Faces implementations support XHTML pages created in conformance with the XHTML Transitional Document Type Definition (DTD), as listed at http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/#a_dtd_XHTML-1.0-Transitional. By convention, web pages built with XHTML have an .xhtml extension.

JavaServer Faces technology supports various tag libraries to add components to a web page. To support the JavaServer Faces tag library mechanism, Facelets uses XML namespace declarations. [Table 8–1](#) lists the tag libraries supported by Facelets.

Table 8–1 Tag Libraries Supported by Facelets

Tag Library	URI	Prefix	Example	Contents
JavaServer Faces Facelets Tag Library	http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/facelets	ui:	ui:component ui:insert	Tags for templating
JavaServer Faces HTML Tag Library	http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html	h:	h:head h:body h:outputText h:inputText	JavaServer Faces component tags for all UIComponent objects
JavaServer Faces Core Tag Library	http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/core	f:	f:actionListener f:attribute	Tags for JavaServer Faces custom actions that are independent of any particular render kit
Pass-through Elements Tag Library	http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf	p:	p:type	Tags to support HTML5 friendly markup
Pass-through Attributes Tag Library	http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/passthrough	jsf:	jsf:id	Tags to support HTML5 friendly markup
JSTL Core Tag Library	http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsp/jstl/core	c:	c:forEach c:catch	JSTL 1.2 Core Tags
JSTL Functions Tag Library	http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsp/jstl/linebreakfunctions	fn:	fn:toUpperCase fn:toLowerCase	JSTL 1.2 Functions Tags

In addition, Facelets supports tags for composite components, for which you can declare custom prefixes. For more information on composite components, see [Composite Components](#).

Facelets provides two namespaces to support HTML5 friendly markup. For details, see [HTML5 Friendly Markup](#).

Based on the JavaServer Faces support for Expression Language (EL) syntax, Facelets uses EL expressions to reference properties and methods of managed beans. EL expressions can be used to bind component objects or values to methods or properties of managed beans that are used as backing beans. For more information on using EL expressions, see [Using the EL to Reference Managed Beans](#).

8.2 The Lifecycle of a Facelets Application

The JavaServer Faces specification defines the lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces application. For more information on this lifecycle, see [The Lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces Application](#). The following steps describe that process as applied to a Facelets-based application.

1. When a client, such as a browser, makes a new request to a page that is created using Facelets, a new component tree or `javax.faces.component.UIViewRoot` is created and placed in the `FacesContext`.
2. The `UIViewRoot` is applied to the Facelets, and the view is populated with components for rendering.
3. The newly built view is rendered back as a response to the client.
4. On rendering, the state of this view is stored for the next request. The state of input components and form data is stored.
5. The client may interact with the view and request another view or change from the JavaServer Faces application. At this time the saved view is restored from the stored state.
6. The restored view is once again passed through the JavaServer Faces lifecycle, which eventually will either generate a new view or re-render the current view if there were no validation problems and no action was triggered.
7. If the same view is requested, the stored view is rendered once again.
8. If a new view is requested, then the process described in Step2 is continued.
9. The new view is then rendered back as a response to the client.

8.3 Developing a Simple Facelets Application

This section describes the general steps involved in developing a JavaServer Faces application. The following tasks are usually required:

- Developing the managed beans
- Creating the pages using the component tags
- Defining page navigation
- Mapping the `FacesServlet` instance
- Adding managed bean declarations

8.3.1 Creating a Facelets Application

The example used in this tutorial is the `guessnumber-jsf` application. The application presents you with a page that asks you to guess a number between 0 and 10, validates your input against a random number, and responds with another page that informs you whether you guessed the number correctly or incorrectly.

8.3.1.1 Developing a Managed Bean

In a typical JavaServer Faces application, each page of the application connects to a managed bean that serves as a backing bean. The backing bean defines the methods and properties that are associated with the components. In this example, both pages use the same backing bean.

The following managed bean class, `UserNumberBean.java`, generates a random number from 0 to 10:

```
package javaeetutorial.guessnumber;

import java.io.Serializable;
import java.util.Random;
import javax.enterprise.context.SessionScoped;
import javax.inject.Named;

@Named
@SessionScoped
public class UserNumberBean implements Serializable {

    private static final long serialVersionUID = 5443351151396868724L;
    Integer randomInt = null;
    Integer userNumber = null;
    String response = null;
    private long maximum=10;
    private long minimum=0;

    public UserNumberBean() {
        Random randomGR = new Random();
        randomInt = new Integer(randomGR.nextInt(10));
        // Print number to server log
        System.out.println("Duke's number: " + randomInt);
    }

    public void setUserNumber(Integer user_number) {
        userNumber = user_number;
    }

    public Integer getUserNumber() {
        return userNumber;
    }

    public String getResponse() {
        if ((userNumber == null)
            || (userNumber.compareTo(randomInt) != 0)) {
            return "Sorry, " + userNumber + " is incorrect.";
        } else {
            return "Yay! You got it!";
        }
    }

    public long getMaximum() {
        return (this.maximum);
    }
}
```

```

    }

    public void setMaximum(long maximum) {
        this.maximum = maximum;
    }

    public long getMinimum() {
        return (this.minimum);
    }

    public void setMinimum(long minimum) {
        this.minimum = minimum;
    }
}

```

Note the use of the `@Named` annotation, which makes the managed bean accessible through the EL. The `@SessionScoped` annotation registers the bean scope as `session` to enable you to make multiple guesses as you run the application.

8.3.1.2 Creating Facelets Views

To create a page or view, you add components to the pages, wire the components to backing bean values and properties, and register converters, validators, or listeners on the components.

For the example application, XHTML web pages serve as the front end. The first page of the example application is a page called `greeting.xhtml`. A closer look at various sections of this web page provides more information.

The first section of the web page declares the content type for the page, which is XHTML:

```

<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">

```

The next section specifies the language of the XHTML page, then declares the XML namespace for the tag libraries that are used in the web page:

```

<html lang="en"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html"
    xmlns:f="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/core">

```

The next section uses various tags to insert components into the web page:

```

<h:head>
    <h:outputStylesheet library="css" name="default.css"/>
    <title>Guess Number Facelets Application</title>
</h:head>
<h:body>
    <h:form>
        <h:graphicImage value="#{resource['images:wave.med.gif']}"
            alt="Duke waving his hand"/>

        <h2>
            Hi, my name is Duke. I am thinking of a number from
            #{userNumberBean.minimum} to #{userNumberBean.maximum}.
            Can you guess it?
        </h2>
        <p><h:inputText
            id="userNo"
            title="Type a number from 0 to 10:"

```

```

        value="#{userNumberBean.userNumber}">
        <f:validateLongRange
            minimum="#{userNumberBean.minimum}"
            maximum="#{userNumberBean.maximum}"/>
    </h:inputText>
    <h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit"
        action="response"/>
</p>
<h:message showSummary="true" showDetail="false"
    style="color: #d20005;
    font-family: 'New Century Schoolbook', serif;
    font-style: oblique;
    text-decoration: overline"
    id="errors1"
    for="userNo"/>
</h:form>
</h:body>

```

Note the use of the following tags:

- Facelets HTML tags (those beginning with h:) to add components
- The Facelets core tag `f:validateLongRange` to validate the user input

An `h:inputText` tag accepts user input and sets the value of the managed bean property `userNumber` through the EL expression `#{userNumberBean.userNumber}`. The input value is validated for value range by the JavaServer Faces standard validator tag `f:validateLongRange`.

The image file, `wave.med.gif`, is added to the page as a resource; so is the style sheet. For more details about the resources facility, see [Web Resources](#).

An `h:commandButton` tag with the ID `submit` starts validation of the input data when a user clicks the button. Using implicit navigation, the tag redirects the client to another page, `response.xhtml`, which shows the response to your input. The page specifies only `response`, which by default causes the server to look for `response.xhtml`.

You can now create the second page, `response.xhtml`, with the following content:

```

<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">

<html lang="en"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html">

    <h:head>
        <h:outputStylesheet library="css" name="default.css"/>
        <title>Guess Number Facelets Application</title>
    </h:head>
    <h:body>
        <h:form>
            <h:graphicImage value="#{resource['images:wave.med.gif']}"
                alt="Duke waving his hand"/>

            <h2>
                <h:outputText id="result"
                    value="#{userNumberBean.response}"/>
            </h2>
            <h:commandButton id="back" value="Back" action="greeting"/>
        </h:form>
    </h:body>
</html>

```

This page also uses implicit navigation, setting the `action` attribute for the **Back** button to send the user to the `greeting.xhtml` page.

8.3.2 Configuring the Application

Configuring a JavaServer Faces application involves mapping the Faces Servlet in the web deployment descriptor file, such as a `web.xml` file, and possibly adding managed bean declarations, navigation rules, and resource bundle declarations to the application configuration resource file, `faces-config.xml`.

If you are using NetBeans IDE, a web deployment descriptor file is automatically created for you. In such an IDE-created `web.xml` file, change the default greeting page, which is `index.xhtml`, to `greeting.xhtml`. Here is an example `web.xml` file, showing this change in **bold**.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<web-app version="3.1" xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee
  http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee/web-app_3_1.xsd">
  <context-param>
    <param-name>javax.faces.PROJECT_STAGE</param-name>
    <param-value>Development</param-value>
  </context-param>
  <servlet>
    <servlet-name>Faces Servlet</servlet-name>
    <servlet-class>javax.faces.webapp.FacesServlet</servlet-class>
    <load-on-startup>1</load-on-startup>
  </servlet>
  <servlet-mapping>
    <servlet-name>Faces Servlet</servlet-name>
    <url-pattern>/faces/*</url-pattern>
  </servlet-mapping>
  <session-config>
    <session-timeout>
      30
    </session-timeout>
  </session-config>
  <welcome-file-list>
    <welcome-file>faces/greeting.xhtml</welcome-file>
  </welcome-file-list>
</web-app>
```

Note the use of the context parameter `PROJECT_STAGE`. This parameter identifies the status of a JavaServer Faces application in the software lifecycle.

The stage of an application can affect the behavior of the application. For example, if the project stage is defined as `Development`, debugging information is automatically generated for the user. If not defined by the user, the default project stage is `Production`.

8.3.3 Running the `guessnumber-jsf` Facelets Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the `guessnumber-jsf` example. The source code for this example is available in the `tut-install/examples/web/jsf/guessnumber-jsf/` directory.

8.3.3.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the guessnumber-jsf Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/jsf`
3. Select the `guessnumber-jsf` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `guessnumber-jsf` project and select **Build**.
This option builds the example application and deploys it to your GlassFish Server instance.

8.3.3.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the guessnumber-jsf Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/web/jsf/guessnumber-jsf/`
2. Enter the following command:
`mvn install`
This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `guessnumber-jsf.war`, that is located in the `target` directory. It then deploys it to the server.

8.3.3.3 To Run the guessnumber-jsf Example

1. Open a web browser.
2. Enter the following URL in your web browser:
`http://localhost:8080/guessnumber`
3. In the field, enter a number from 0 to 10 and click **Submit**.
Another page appears, reporting whether your guess is correct or incorrect.
4. If you guessed incorrectly, click **Back** to return to the main page.
You can continue to guess until you get the correct answer, or you can look in the server log, where the `UserNumberBean` constructor displays it.

8.4 Using Facelets Templates

JavaServer Faces technology provides the tools to implement user interfaces that are easy to extend and reuse. Templating is a useful Facelets feature that allows you to create a page that will act as the base, or **template**, for the other pages in an application. By using templates, you can reuse code and avoid recreating similarly constructed pages. Templating also helps in maintaining a standard look and feel in an application with a large number of pages.

[Table 8–2](#) lists Facelets tags that are used for templating and their respective functionality.

Table 8–2 *Facelets Templating Tags*

Tag	Function
<code>ui:component</code>	Defines a component that is created and added to the component tree.
<code>ui:composition</code>	Defines a page composition that optionally uses a template. Content outside of this tag is ignored.
<code>ui:debug</code>	Defines a debug component that is created and added to the component tree.
<code>ui:decorate</code>	Similar to the composition tag but does not disregard content outside this tag.
<code>ui:define</code>	Defines content that is inserted into a page by a template.
<code>ui:fragment</code>	Similar to the component tag but does not disregard content outside this tag.
<code>ui:include</code>	Encapsulate and reuse content for multiple pages.
<code>ui:insert</code>	Inserts content into a template.
<code>ui:param</code>	Used to pass parameters to an included file.
<code>ui:repeat</code>	Used as an alternative for loop tags, such as <code>c:forEach</code> or <code>h:dataTable</code> .
<code>ui:remove</code>	Removes content from a page.

For more information on Facelets templating tags, see the documentation at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaserverfaces/2.2/vdldocs/facelets/>.

The Facelets tag library includes the main templating tag `ui:insert`. A template page that is created with this tag allows you to define a default structure for a page. A template page is used as a template for other pages, usually referred to as client pages.

Here is an example of a template saved as `template.xhtml`:

```
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:ui="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/facelets"
    xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html">

    <h:head>
        <meta http-equiv="Content-Type"
            content="text/html; charset=UTF-8" />
        <h:outputStylesheet library="css" name="default.css" />
        <h:outputStylesheet library="css" name="cssLayout.css" />
        <title>Facelets Template</title>
    </h:head>

    <h:body>
        <div id="top" class="top">
            <ui:insert name="top">Top Section</ui:insert>
        </div>
        <div>
            <div id="left">
                <ui:insert name="left">Left Section</ui:insert>
            </div>
            <div id="content" class="left_content">
                <ui:insert name="content">Main Content</ui:insert>
            </div>
        </div>
    </h:body>
</html>
```

```
</h:body>
</html>
```

The example page defines an XHTML page that is divided into three sections: a top section, a left section, and a main section. The sections have style sheets associated with them. The same structure can be reused for the other pages of the application.

The client page invokes the template by using the `ui:composition` tag. In the following example, a client page named `templateclient.xhtml` invokes the template page named `template.xhtml` from the preceding example. A client page allows content to be inserted with the help of the `ui:define` tag.

```
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
      xmlns:ui="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/facelets"
      xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html">

  <h:body>
    <ui:composition template="./template.xhtml">
      <ui:define name="top">
        Welcome to Template Client Page
      </ui:define>

      <ui:define name="left">
        <h:outputLabel value="You are in the Left Section"/>
      </ui:define>

      <ui:define name="content">
        <h:graphicImage value="#{resource['images:wave.med.gif']}/>
        <h:outputText value="You are in the Main Content Section"/>
      </ui:define>
    </ui:composition>
  </h:body>
</html>
```

You can use NetBeans IDE to create Facelets template and client pages. For more information on creating these pages, see <https://netbeans.org/kb/docs/web/jsf20-intro.html>.

8.5 Composite Components

JavaServer Faces technology offers the concept of composite components with Facelets. A **composite component** is a special type of template that acts as a component.

Any component is essentially a piece of reusable code that behaves in a particular way. For example, an input component accepts user input. A component can also have validators, converters, and listeners attached to it to perform certain defined actions.

A composite component consists of a collection of markup tags and other existing components. This reusable, user-created component has a customized, defined functionality and can have validators, converters, and listeners attached to it like any other component.

With Facelets, any XHTML page that contains markup tags and other components can be converted into a composite component. Using the resources facility, the composite component can be stored in a library that is available to the application from the defined resources location.

Table 8–3 lists the most commonly used composite tags and their functions.

Table 8–3 Composite Component Tags

Tag	Function
<code>composite:interface</code>	Declares the usage contract for a composite component. The composite component can be used as a single component whose feature set is the union of the features declared in the usage contract.
<code>composite:implementation</code>	Defines the implementation of the composite component. If a <code>composite:interface</code> element appears, there must be a corresponding <code>composite:implementation</code> .
<code>composite:attribute</code>	Declares an attribute that may be given to an instance of the composite component in which this tag is declared.
<code>composite:insertChildren</code>	Any child components or template text within the composite component tag in the using page will be reparented into the composite component at the point indicated by this tag's placement within the <code>composite:implementation</code> section.
<code>composite:valueHolder</code>	Declares that the composite component whose contract is declared by the <code>composite:interface</code> in which this element is nested exposes an implementation of <code>ValueHolder</code> suitable for use as the target of attached objects in the using page.
<code>composite:editableValueHolder</code>	Declares that the composite component whose contract is declared by the <code>composite:interface</code> in which this element is nested exposes an implementation of <code>EditableValueHolder</code> suitable for use as the target of attached objects in the using page.
<code>composite:actionSource</code>	Declares that the composite component whose contract is declared by the <code>composite:interface</code> in which this element is nested exposes an implementation of <code>ActionSource2</code> suitable for use as the target of attached objects in the using page.

For more information and a complete list of Facelets composite tags, see the documentation at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaxserverfaces/2.2/docs/vdldocs/facelets/>.

The following example shows a composite component that accepts an email address as input:

```
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:composite="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/composite"
    xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html">

    <h:head>
        <title>This content will not be displayed</title>
    </h:head>
    <h:body>
        <composite:interface>
            <composite:attribute name="value" required="false"/>
        </composite:interface>

        <composite:implementation>
```

```

        <h:outputLabel value="Email id: "></h:outputLabel>
        <h:inputText value="#{cc.attrs.value}"></h:inputText>
    </composite:implementation>
</h:body>
</html>

```

Note the use of `cc.attrs.value` when defining the value of the `inputText` component. The word `cc` in JavaServer Faces is a reserved word for composite components. The `#{cc.attrs.attribute-name}` expression is used to access the attributes defined for the composite component's interface, which in this case happens to be `value`.

The preceding example content is stored as a file named `email.xhtml` in a folder named `resources/emcomp`, under the application web root directory. This directory is considered a library by JavaServer Faces, and a component can be accessed from such a library. For more information on resources, see [Web Resources](#).

The web page that uses this composite component is generally called a **using page**. The using page includes a reference to the composite component, in the `xml` namespace declarations:

```

<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html"
    xmlns:em="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/composite/emcomp">

    <h:head>
        <title>Using a sample composite component</title>
    </h:head>

    <body>
        <h:form>
            <em:email value="Enter your email id" />
        </h:form>
    </body>
</html>

```

The local composite component library is defined in the `xmlns` namespace with the declaration `xmlns:em="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/composite/emcomp"`. The component itself is accessed through the `em:email` tag. The preceding example content can be stored as a web page named `emuserpage.xhtml` under the web root directory. When compiled and deployed on a server, it can be accessed with the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/application-name/faces/emuserpage.xhtml
```

8.6 Web Resources

Web resources are any software artifacts that the web application requires for proper rendering, including images, script files, and any user-created component libraries. Resources must be collected in a standard location, which can be one of the following.

- A resource packaged in the web application root must be in a subdirectory of a `resources` directory at the web application root: `resources/resource-identifier`.
- A resource packaged in the web application's classpath must be in a subdirectory of the `META-INF/resources` directory within a web application: `META-INF/resources/resource-identifier`. You can use this file structure to package resources in a JAR file bundled in the web application.

The JavaServer Faces runtime will look for the resources in the preceding listed locations, in that order.

Resource identifiers are unique strings that conform to the following format (all on one line):

```
[locale-prefix/][library-name/][library-version/]resource-name[/resource-version]
```

Elements of the resource identifier in brackets ([]) are optional, indicating that only a *resource-name*, which is usually a file name, is a required element. For example, the most common way to specify a style sheet, image, or script is to use the `library` and `name` attributes, as in the following tag from the `guessnumber-jsf` example:

```
<h:outputStylesheet library="css" name="default.css"/>
```

This tag specifies that the `default.css` style sheet is in the directory `web/resources/css`.

You can also specify the location of an image using the following syntax, also from the `guessnumber-jsf` example:

```
<h:graphicImage value="#{resource['images:wave.med.gif']}" />
```

This tag specifies that the image named `wave.med.gif` is in the directory `web/resources/images`.

Resources can be considered as a library location. Any artifact, such as a composite component or a template that is stored in the `resources` directory, becomes accessible to the other application components, which can use it to create a resource instance.

8.7 Relocatable Resources

You can place a resource tag in one part of a page and specify that it be rendered in another part of the page. To do this, you use the `target` attribute of a tag that specifies a resource. Acceptable values for this attribute are as follows:

- "head" renders the resource in the head element.
- "body" renders the resource in the body element.
- "form" renders the resource in the form element.

For example, the following `h:outputScript` tag is placed within an `h:form` element, but it renders the JavaScript in the head element:

```
<h:form>
  <h:outputScript name="myscript.js" library="mylibrary" target="head"/>
</h:form>
```

The `h:outputStylesheet` tag also supports resource relocation, in a similar way.

Relocatable resources are essential for composite components that use stylesheets and can also be useful for composite components that use JavaScript. See [The compositecomponentlogin Example Application](#) for an example.

8.8 Resource Library Contracts

Resource library contracts allow you to define a different look and feel for different parts of one or more applications, instead of either having to use the same look and feel for all or having to specify a different look on a page-by-page basis.

To do this, you create a `contracts` section of your web application. Within the `contracts` section, you can specify any number of named areas, each of which is called a contract. Within each contract you can specify resources such as template files, stylesheets, JavaScript files, and images.

For example, you could specify two contracts named `c1` and `c2`, each of which uses a template and other files:

```
src/main/webapp
  WEB-INF/
    contracts
      c1
        template.xhtml
        style.css
        myImg.gif
        myJS.js
      c2
        template.xhtml
        style2.css
        img2.gif
        JS2.js
    index.xhtml
  ...
```

One part of the application can use `c1`, while another can use `c2`.

Another way to use contracts is to specify a single contract that contains multiple templates:

```
src/main/webapp
  contracts
    myContract
      template1.xhtml
      template2.xhtml
      style.css
      img.png
      img2.png
```

You can package a resource library contract in a JAR file for reuse in different applications. If you do so, the contracts must be located under `META-INF/contracts`. You can then place the JAR file in the `WEB-INF/lib` directory of an application. This means that the application would be organized as follows:

```
src/main/webapp/
  WEB-INF/lib/myContract.jar
  ...
```

You can specify the contract usage within an application's `faces-config.xml` file, under the `resource-library-contracts` element. You need to use this element only if your application uses more than one contract, however.

8.8.1 The `hello1-rlc` Example Application

The `hello1-rlc` example modifies the simple `hello1` example from [A Web Module That Uses JavaServer Faces Technology: The `hello1` Example](#) to use two resource library contracts. Each of the two pages in the application uses a different contract.

The managed bean for `hello1-rlc`, `Hello.java`, is identical to the one for `hello1` (except that it replaces the `@Named` and `@RequestScoped` annotations with `@Model`).

8.8.1.1 Configuring the hello1-rlc Example

The faces-config.xml file for the hello1-rlc example contains the following elements:

```
<resource-library-contracts>
  <contract-mapping>
    <url-pattern>/reply/*</url-pattern>
    <contracts>reply</contracts>
  </contract-mapping>
  <contract-mapping>
    <url-pattern>*</url-pattern>
    <contracts>hello</contracts>
  </contract-mapping>
</resource-library-contracts>
```

The contract-mapping elements within the resource-library-contracts element map each contract to a different set of pages within the application. One contract, named reply, is used for all pages under the reply area of the application (/reply/*). The other contract, hello, is used for all other pages in the application (*).

The application is organized as follows:

```
hello1-rlc
  pom.xml
  src/main/java/javaeetutorial/hello1rlc/Hello.java
  src/main/webapp
    WEB-INF
      faces-config.xml
      web.xml
    contracts
      hello
        default.css
        duke.handsOnHips.gif
        template.xhtml
      reply
        default.css
        duke.thumbsup.gif
        template.xhtml
    reply
      response.xhtml
      greeting.xhtml
```

The web.xml file specifies the welcome-file as faces/greeting.xhtml. This Facelets page, since it is not located under src/main/webapp/reply, uses the hello contract, while src/main/webapp/reply/response.xhtml uses the reply contract.

8.8.1.2 The Facelets Pages for the hello1-rlc Example

The greeting.xhtml and response.xhtml pages have identical code calling in their templates:

```
<ui:composition template="/template.xhtml">
```

The template.xhtml files in the hello and reply contracts differ only in two respects: the placeholder text for the title element ("Hello Template" and "Reply Template") and the graphic that each specifies.

The default.css stylesheets in the two contracts differ in only one respect: the background color specified for the body element.

8.8.1.3 To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello1-rlc Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, choose **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/jsf/hello1-rlc`
3. Select the `hello1-rlc` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `hello1-rlc` project and select **Build**.
This option builds the example application and deploys it to your GlassFish Server instance.

8.8.1.4 To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello1-rlc Example Using Maven and the `asadmin` Command

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/web/jsf/hello1-rlc/`
2. Enter the following command:
`mvn install`
This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `hello1-rlc.war`, that is located in the `target` directory. It then deploys it to your GlassFish Server instance.

8.8.1.5 To Run the hello1-rlc Example

1. Enter the following URL in your web browser:
`http://localhost:8080/hello1-rlc`
2. The `greeting.xhtml` page looks just like the one from `hello1` except for its background color and graphic.
3. In the text field, enter your name and click **Submit**.
4. The response page also looks just like the one from `hello1` except for its background color and graphic.
The page displays the name you submitted. Click **Back** to return to the `greeting.xhtml` page.

8.9 HTML5 Friendly Markup

When you want to produce user interface features for which HTML does not have its own elements, you can create a custom JavaServer Faces component and insert it in your Facelets page. This mechanism can cause a simple element to create complex web code. However, creating such a component is a significant task (see [Chapter 15, "Creating Custom UI Components and Other Custom Objects"](#)).

HTML5 offers new elements and attributes that can make it unnecessary to write your own components. It also provides many new capabilities for existing components. JavaServer Faces technology supports HTML5 not by introducing new UI components that imitate HTML5 ones, but by allowing you to use HTML5 markup directly. It also allows you to use JavaServer Faces attributes within HTML5 elements. JavaServer Faces technology support for HTML5 falls into two categories:

- Pass-through elements
- Pass-through attributes

The effect of the HTML5 friendly markup feature is to offer the Facelets page author almost complete control over the rendered page output, rather than having to pass this control off to component authors. You can mix and match JavaServer Faces and HTML5 components and elements as you see fit.

8.9.1 Using Pass-through Elements

Pass-through elements allow you to use HTML5 tags and attributes but to treat them as equivalent to JavaServer Faces components, associated with a server-side `UIComponent` instance.

To make a non-JavaServer Faces element a pass-through element, specify at least one of its attributes using the `http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf` namespace. For example, the following code declares the namespace with the short name `jsf`:

```
<html ... xmlns:jsf="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf"
...
  <input type="email" jsf:id="email" name="email"
        value="#{reservationBean.email}" required="required"/>
```

Here, the `jsf` prefix is placed on the `id` attribute so that the HTML5 input tag's attributes are treated as part of the Facelets page. This means that, for example, you can use EL expressions to retrieve managed bean properties.

Table 8-4 shows how pass-through elements are rendered as Facelets tags. The JSF implementation uses the element name and the identifying attribute to determine the corresponding Facelets tag that will be used in the server-side processing. The browser, however, interprets the markup that the page author has written.

Table 8-4 How Facelets Renders HTML5 Elements

HTML5 Element Name	Identifying Attribute	Facelets Tag
a	jsf:action	h:commandLink
a	jsf:actionListener	h:commandLink
a	jsf:value	h:outputLink
a	jsf:outcome	h:link
body		h:body
button		h:commandButton
button	jsf:outcome	h:button
form		h:form
head		h:head
img		h:graphicImage
input	type="button"	h:commandButton
input	type="checkbox"	h:selectBooleanCheckbox
input	type="color"	h:inputText
input	type="date"	h:inputText
input	type="datetime"	h:inputText
input	type="datetime-local"	h:inputText

Table 8–4 (Cont.) How Facelets Renders HTML5 Elements

HTML5 Element Name	Identifying Attribute	Facelets Tag
input	type="email"	h:inputText
input	type="month"	h:inputText
input	type="number"	h:inputText
input	type="range"	h:inputText
input	type="search"	h:inputText
input	type="time"	h:inputText
input	type="url"	h:inputText
input	type="week"	h:inputText
input	type="file"	h:inputFile
input	type="hidden"	h:inputHidden
input	type="password"	h:inputSecret
input	type="reset"	h:commandButton
input	type="submit"	h:commandButton
input	type="*"	h:inputText
label		h:outputLabel
link		h:outputStylesheet
script		h:outputScript
select	multiple="*"	h:selectManyListbox
select		h:selectOneListbox
textarea		h:inputTextArea

8.9.2 Using Pass-through Attributes

Pass-through attributes are the converse of pass-through elements. They allow you to pass non-JavaServer Faces attributes through to the browser without interpretation. If you specify a pass-through attribute in a JavaServer Faces `UIComponent`, the attribute name and value are passed straight through to the browser without being interpreted by JavaServer Faces components or renderers. There are several ways to specify pass-through attributes:

- Use the JavaServer Faces namespace for pass-through attributes to prefix the attribute names within a JavaServer Faces component. For example, the following code declares the namespace with the short name `p`, then passes the `type`, `min`, `max`, `required`, and `title` attributes through to the HTML5 input component:

```
<html ... xmlns:p="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/passthrough"
...

<h:form prependId="false">
<h:inputText id="nights" p:type="number" value="#{bean.nights}"
    p:min="1" p:max="30" p:required="required"
    p:title="Enter a number between 1 and 30 inclusive.">
...

```

This will cause the following markup to be rendered (assuming that `bean.nights` has a default value set to 1):

```
<input id="nights" type="number" value="1" min="1" max="30"
      required="required"
      title="Enter a number between 1 and 30 inclusive.">
```

- To pass a single attribute, nest the `f:passThroughAttribute` tag within a component tag. For example:

```
<h:inputText value="#{user.email}">
  <f:passThroughAttribute name="type" value="email" />
</h:inputText>
```

This code would be rendered similarly to the following:

```
<input value="me@me.com" type="email" />
```

- To pass a group of attributes, nest the `f:passThroughAttributes` tag within a component tag, specifying an EL value that must evaluate to a `Map<String, Object>`. For example:

```
<h:inputText value="#{bean.nights}">
  <f:passThroughAttributes value="#{bean.nameValuePairs}" />
</h:inputText>
```

If the bean used the following `Map` declaration and initialized the map in the constructor as follows, the markup would be similar to the output of the code that uses the pass-through attribute namespace.

```
private Map<String, Object> nameValuePairs;
...
public Bean() {
    this.nameValuePairs = new HashMap<>();
    this.nameValuePairs.put("type", "number");
    this.nameValuePairs.put("min", "1");
    this.nameValuePairs.put("max", "30");
    this.nameValuePairs.put("required", "required");
    this.nameValuePairs.put("title",
        "Enter a number between 1 and 4 inclusive.");
}
```

8.9.3 The reservation Example Application

The reservation example application provides a set of HTML5 input elements of various types to simulate purchasing tickets for a theatrical event. It consists of two Facelets pages, `reservation.xhtml` and `confirmation.xhtml`, and a backing bean, `ReservationBean.java`. The pages use both pass-through attributes and pass-through elements.

8.9.3.1 The Facelets Pages for the reservation Application

The first important feature of the Facelets pages for the reservation application is the `DOCTYPE` header. Most Facelets pages in JavaServer Faces applications refer to the XHTML DTD. The facelets pages for this application begin simply with the following `DOCTYPE` header, which indicates an HTML5 page:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
```

The namespace declarations in the `html` element of the `reservation.xhtml` page specify both the `jsf` and the `passthrough` namespaces:

```
<html lang="en"
      xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
```

```

xmlns:f="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/core"
xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html"
xmlns:p="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/passthrough"
xmlns:jsf="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf">

```

Next, an empty `h:head` tag followed by an `h:outputStylesheet` tag within the `h:body` tag illustrates the use of a relocatable resource (as described in [Relocatable Resources](#)):

```

<h:head>
</h:head>
<h:body>
  <h:outputStylesheet name="css/stylessheet.css" target="head"/>

```

The `reservation.xhtml` page uses pass-through elements for most of the form fields on the page. This allows it to use some HTML5-specific input element types, such as date and email. For example, the following element renders both a date format and a calendar from which you can choose a date. The `jsf` prefix on the `id` attribute makes the element a pass-through one:

```

<input type="date" jsf:id="date" name="date"
  value="#{reservationBean.date}" required="required"
  title="Enter or choose a date."/>

```

The field for the number of tickets, however, uses the `h:passThroughAttributes` tag to pass a `Map` defined in the managed bean. It also recalculates the total in response to a change in the field:

```

<h:inputText id="tickets" value="#{reservationBean.tickets}">
  <f:passThroughAttributes value="#{reservationBean.ticketAttrs}"/>
  <f:ajax event="change" render="total"
    listener="#{reservationBean.calculateTotal}"/>
</h:inputText>

```

The field for the price specifies the number type as a pass-through attribute of the `h:inputText` element, offering a range of four ticket prices. Here, the `p` prefix on the HTML5 attributes passes them through to the browser uninterpreted by the JavaServer Faces input component:

```

<h:inputText id="price" p:type="number"
  value="#{reservationBean.price}"
  p:min="80" p:max="120"
  p:step="20" p:required="required"
  p:title="Enter a price: 80, 100, 120, or 140.">
  <f:ajax event="change" render="total"
    listener="#{reservationBean.calculateTotal}"/>
</h:inputText>

```

The output of the `calculateTotal` method that is specified as the listener for the Ajax event is rendered in the output element whose `id` and `name` value is `total`. See [Chapter 13, "Using Ajax with JavaServer Faces Technology"](#), for more information.

The second Facelets page, `confirmation.xhtml`, uses a pass-through output element to display the values entered by the user and provides a Facelets `h:commandButton` tag to allow the user to return to the `reservation.xhtml` page.

8.9.3.2 The Managed Bean for the reservation Application

The session-scoped managed bean for the reservation application, `ReservationBean.java`, contains properties for all the elements on the Facelets pages. It also contains two methods, `calculateTotal` and `clear`, that act as listeners for Ajax events on the `reservation.xhtml` page.

8.9.3.3 To Build, Package, and Deploy the reservation Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, choose **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/jsf/reservation`
3. Select the `reservation` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `reservation` project and select **Build**.

This option builds the example application and deploys it to your GlassFish Server instance.

8.9.3.4 To Build, Package, and Deploy the reservation Example Using Maven and the `asadmin` Command

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf/reservation/
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `reservation.war`, that is located in the `target` directory. It then deploys it to your GlassFish Server instance.

8.9.3.5 To Run the reservation Example

At the time of the publication of this tutorial, the browser that most fully implements HTML5 is Google Chrome, and it is recommended that you use it to run this example. Other browsers are catching up, however, and may work equally well by the time you read this.

1. Enter the following URL in your web browser:

```
http://localhost:8080/reservation
```

2. Enter information in the fields of the `reservation.xhtml` page.

The **Performance Date** field has a date field with up and down arrows that allow you to increment and decrement the month, day, and year, as well as a larger down arrow that brings up a date editor in calendar form.

The **Number of Tickets** and **Ticket Price** fields also have up and down arrows that allow you to increment and decrement the values within the allowed range and steps. The Estimated Total changes when you change either of these two fields.

Email addresses and dates are checked for format, but not for validity (you can make a reservation for a past date, for instance).

3. Click **Make Reservation** to complete the reservation, or **Clear** to restore the fields to their default values.
4. If you click **Make Reservation**, the `confirmation.xhtml` page appears, displaying the submitted values.

Click **Back** to return to the `reservation.xhtml` page.

Expression Language

This chapter introduces the Expression Language (also referred to as the EL), which provides an important mechanism for enabling the presentation layer (web pages) to communicate with the application logic (managed beans). The EL is used by both JavaServer Faces technology and JavaServer Pages (JSP) technology. The EL represents a union of the expression languages offered by JavaServer Faces technology and JSP technology.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of the EL](#)
- [Immediate and Deferred Evaluation Syntax](#)
- [Value and Method Expressions](#)
- [Literal Expressions](#)
- [Operators](#)
- [Reserved Words](#)
- [Examples of EL Expressions](#)

9.1 Overview of the EL

The EL allows page authors to use simple expressions to dynamically access data from JavaBeans components. For example, the `test` attribute of the following conditional tag is supplied with an EL expression that compares 0 with the number of items in the session-scoped bean named `cart`.

```
<c:if test="${sessionScope.cart.numberOfItems > 0}">
    ...
</c:if>
```

JavaServer Faces technology uses the EL for the following functions:

- Deferred and immediate evaluation of expressions
- The ability to set as well as get data
- The ability to invoke methods

See [Using the EL to Reference Managed Beans](#) for more information on how to use the EL in JavaServer Faces applications.

To summarize, the EL provides a way to use simple expressions to perform the following tasks:

- Dynamically read application data stored in JavaBeans components, various data structures, and implicit objects
- Dynamically write data, such as user input into forms, to JavaBeans components
- Invoke arbitrary static and public methods
- Dynamically perform arithmetic operations

The EL is also used to specify the following kinds of expressions that a custom tag attribute will accept:

- **Immediate evaluation expressions** or **deferred evaluation expressions**. An immediate evaluation expression is evaluated at once by the underlying technology, such as JavaServer Faces. A deferred evaluation expression can be evaluated later by the underlying technology using the EL.
- **Value expression** or **method expression**. A **value expression** references data, whereas a **method expression** invokes a method.
- **Rvalue expression** or **lvalue expression**. An **rvalue expression** can only read a value, whereas an **lvalue expression** can both read and write that value to an external object.

Finally, the EL provides a pluggable API for resolving expressions so custom resolvers that can handle expressions not already supported by the EL can be implemented.

9.2 Immediate and Deferred Evaluation Syntax

The EL supports both immediate and deferred evaluation of expressions. Immediate evaluation means that the expression is evaluated and the result returned as soon as the page is first rendered. Deferred evaluation means that the technology using the expression language can use its own machinery to evaluate the expression sometime later during the page's lifecycle, whenever it is appropriate to do so.

Those expressions that are evaluated immediately use the `{}` syntax. Expressions whose evaluation is deferred use the `#{}` syntax.

Because of its multiphase lifecycle, JavaServer Faces technology uses mostly deferred evaluation expressions. During the lifecycle, component events are handled, data is validated, and other tasks are performed in a particular order. Therefore, a JavaServer Faces implementation must defer evaluation of expressions until the appropriate point in the lifecycle.

Other technologies using the EL might have different reasons for using deferred expressions.

9.2.1 Immediate Evaluation

All expressions using the `{}` syntax are evaluated immediately. These expressions can be used only as the value of a tag attribute that can accept runtime expressions.

The following example shows a tag whose `value` attribute references an immediate evaluation expression that updates the quantity of books retrieved from the backing bean named `catalog`:

```
<h:outputText value="{catalog.bookQuantity}" />
```

The JavaServer Faces implementation evaluates the expression `{catalog.bookQuantity}`, converts it, and passes the returned value to the tag handler. The value is updated on the page.

Immediate evaluation expressions are always read-only value expressions. The preceding example expression cannot set the book quantity, but instead can only get the quantity from the catalog bean.

9.2.2 Deferred Evaluation

Deferred evaluation expressions take the form `#{expr}` and can be evaluated at other phases of a page lifecycle as defined by whatever technology is using the expression. In the case of JavaServer Faces technology, its controller can evaluate the expression at different phases of the lifecycle, depending on how the expression is being used in the page.

The following example shows a JavaServer Faces `h:inputText` tag, which represents a field component into which a user enters a value. The `h:inputText` tag's `value` attribute references a deferred evaluation expression that points to the `name` property of the `customer` bean:

```
<h:inputText id="name" value="#{customer.name}" />
```

For an initial request of the page containing this tag, the JavaServer Faces implementation evaluates the `#{customer.name}` expression during the render-response phase of the lifecycle. During this phase, the expression merely accesses the value of `name` from the `customer` bean, as is done in immediate evaluation.

For a postback request, the JavaServer Faces implementation evaluates the expression at different phases of the lifecycle, during which the value is retrieved from the request, validated, and propagated to the `customer` bean.

As shown in this example, deferred evaluation expressions can be

- Value expressions that can be used to both read and write data
- Method expressions

Value expressions (both immediate and deferred) and method expressions are explained in the next section.

9.3 Value and Method Expressions

The EL defines two kinds of expressions: value expressions and method expressions. Value expressions can either yield a value or set a value. Method expressions reference methods that can be invoked and can return a value.

9.3.1 Value Expressions

Value expressions can be further categorized into `rvalue` and `lvalue` expressions. `Rvalue` expressions can read data but cannot write it. `Lvalue` expressions can both read and write data.

All expressions that are evaluated immediately use the `${}` delimiters and are always `rvalue` expressions. Expressions whose evaluation can be deferred use the `#{}` delimiters and can act as both `rvalue` and `lvalue` expressions. Consider the following two value expressions:

```
${customer.name}
```

```
#{customer.name}
```

The former uses immediate evaluation syntax, whereas the latter uses deferred evaluation syntax. The first expression accesses the `name` property, gets its value, adds

the value to the response, and gets rendered on the page. The same can happen with the second expression. However, the tag handler can defer the evaluation of this expression to a later time in the page lifecycle, if the technology using this tag allows.

In the case of JavaServer Faces technology, the latter tag's expression is evaluated immediately during an initial request for the page. In this case, this expression acts as an rvalue expression. During a postback request, this expression can be used to set the value of the name property with user input. In this case, the expression acts as an lvalue expression.

9.3.1.1 Referencing Objects Using Value Expressions

Both rvalue and lvalue expressions can refer to the following objects and their properties or attributes:

- JavaBeans components
- Collections
- Java SE enumerated types
- Implicit objects

To refer to these objects, you write an expression using a variable that is the name of the object. The following expression references a managed bean called `customer`:

```
${customer}
```

The web container evaluates the variable that appears in an expression by looking up its value according to the behavior of `PageContext.findAttribute(String)`, where the `String` argument is the name of the variable. For example, when evaluating the expression `${customer}`, the container will look for `customer` in the page, request, session, and application scopes and will return its value. If `customer` is not found, a null value is returned.

You can use a custom EL resolver to alter the way variables are resolved. For instance, you can provide an EL resolver that intercepts objects with the name `customer`, so that `${customer}` returns a value in the EL resolver instead.

To reference an enum constant with an expression, use a `String` literal. For example, consider this Enum class:

```
public enum Suit {hearts, spades, diamonds, clubs}
```

To refer to the `Suit` constant `Suit.hearts` with an expression, use the `String` literal "hearts". Depending on the context, the `String` literal is converted to the enum constant automatically. For example, in the following expression in which `mySuit` is an instance of `Suit`, "hearts" is first converted to `Suit.hearts` before it is compared to the instance:

```
${mySuit == "hearts"}
```

9.3.1.2 Referring to Object Properties Using Value Expressions

To refer to properties of a bean or an enum instance, items of a collection, or attributes of an implicit object, you use the `.` or `[]` notation.

To reference the name property of the `customer` bean, use either the expression `${customer.name}` or the expression `${customer["name"]}`. The part inside the brackets is a `String` literal that is the name of the property to reference.

You can use double or single quotes for the `String` literal. You can also combine the `[]` and `.` notations, as shown here:

```

${customer.address["street"]}

```

Properties of an enum constant can also be referenced in this way. However, as with JavaBeans component properties, the properties of an Enum class must follow JavaBeans component conventions. This means that a property must at least have an accessor method called *getProperty*, where *Property* is the name of the property that can be referenced by an expression.

For example, consider an Enum class that encapsulates the names of the planets of our galaxy and includes a method to get the mass of a planet. You can use the following expression to reference the method `getMass` of the Enum class `Planet`:

```

${myPlanet.mass}

```

If you are accessing an item in an array or list, you must use either a literal value that can be converted to `int` or the `[]` notation with an `int` and without quotes. The following examples could resolve to the same item in a list or array, assuming that socks can be converted to `int`:

- `${customer.orders[1]}`
- `${customer.orders.socks}`

In contrast, an item in a Map can be accessed using a string literal key; no coercion is required:

```

${customer.orders["socks"]}

```

An rvalue expression also refers directly to values that are not objects, such as the result of arithmetic operations and literal values, as shown by these examples:

- `${"literal"}`
- `${customer.age + 20}`
- `${true}`
- `${57}`

The EL defines the following literals:

- Boolean: `true` and `false`
- Integer: as in Java
- Floating-point: as in Java
- String: with single and double quotes; `"` is escaped as `\"`, `'` is escaped as `\'`, and `\` is escaped as `\\`
- Null: `null`

You can also write expressions that perform operations on an enum constant. For example, consider the following Enum class:

```

public enum Suit {club, diamond, heart, spade}

```

After declaring an enum constant called `mySuit`, you can write the following expression to test whether `mySuit` is `spade`:

```

${mySuit == "spade"}

```

When it resolves this expression, the EL resolving mechanism will invoke the `valueOf` method of the Enum class with the `Suit` class and the `spade` type, as shown here:

```

mySuit.valueOf(Suit.class, "spade")

```

9.3.1.3 Where Value Expressions Can Be Used

Value expressions using the `{ }` delimiters can be used in

- Static text
- Any standard or custom tag attribute that can accept an expression

The value of an expression in static text is computed and inserted into the current output. Here is an example of an expression embedded in static text:

```
<some:tag>
    some text ${expr} some text
</some:tag>
```

If the static text appears in a tag body, note that an expression *will not* be evaluated if the body is declared to be tagdependent.

Lvalue expressions can be used only in tag attributes that can accept lvalue expressions.

A tag attribute value using either an rvalue or lvalue expression can be set in the following ways:

- With a single expression construct:

```
<some:tag value="${expr}" />
<another:tag value="#{expr}" />
```

These expressions are evaluated, and the result is converted to the attribute's expected type.

- With one or more expressions separated or surrounded by text:

```
<some:tag value="some${expr}${expr}text${expr}" />
<another:tag value="some#{expr}#{expr}text#{expr}" />
```

These kinds of expression, called **composite expressions**, are evaluated from left to right. Each expression embedded in the composite expression is converted to a `String` and then concatenated with any intervening text. The resulting `String` is then converted to the attribute's expected type.

- With text only:

```
<some:tag value="sometext" />
```

This expression is called a **literal expression**. In this case, the attribute's `String` value is converted to the attribute's expected type. Literal value expressions have special syntax rules. See [Literal Expressions](#) for more information. When a tag attribute has an `enum` type, the expression that the attribute uses must be a literal expression. For example, the tag attribute can use the expression `"hearts"` to mean `Suit.hearts`. The literal is converted to `Suit`, and the attribute gets the value `Suit.hearts`.

All expressions used to set attribute values are evaluated in the context of an expected type. If the result of the expression evaluation does not match the expected type exactly, a type conversion will be performed. For example, the expression `${1.2E4}` provided as the value of an attribute of type `float` will result in the following conversion:

```
Float.valueOf("1.2E4").floatValue()
```

See Section 1.23 of the JavaServer Pages 3.0 Expression Language specification (available from <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=341>) for the complete type conversion rules.

9.3.2 Method Expressions

Another feature of the EL is its support of deferred method expressions. A method expression is used to invoke an arbitrary public method of a bean, which can return a result.

In JavaServer Faces technology, a component tag represents a component on a page. The component tag uses method expressions to invoke methods that perform some processing for the component. These methods are necessary for handling events that the components generate and for validating component data, as shown in this example:

```
<h:form>
  <h:inputText
    id="name"
    value="#{customer.name}"
    validator="#{customer.validateName}"/>
  <h:commandButton
    id="submit"
    action="#{customer.submit}" />
</h:form>
```

The `h:inputText` tag displays as a field. The `validator` attribute of this `h:inputText` tag references a method, called `validateName`, in the bean, called `customer`.

Because a method can be invoked during different phases of the lifecycle, method expressions must always use the deferred evaluation syntax.

Like lvalue expressions, method expressions can use the `.` and the `[]` operators. For example, `#{object.method}` is equivalent to `#{object["method"]}`. The literal inside the `[]` is converted to `String` and is used to find the name of the method that matches it. Once the method is found, it is invoked, or information about the method is returned.

Method expressions can be used only in tag attributes and only in the following ways:

- With a single expression construct, where *bean* refers to a JavaBeans component and *method* refers to a method of the JavaBeans component:

```
<some:tag value="#{bean.method}"/>
```

The expression is evaluated to a method expression, which is passed to the tag handler. The method represented by the method expression can then be invoked later.

- With text only:

```
<some:tag value="sometext"/>
```

Method expressions support literals primarily to support `action` attributes in JavaServer Faces technology. When the method referenced by this method expression is invoked, the method returns the `String` literal, which is then converted to the expected return type, as defined in the tag's tag library descriptor.

9.3.2.1 Parameterized Method Calls

The EL offers support for parameterized method calls. Method calls can use parameters without having to use static EL functions.

Both the `.` and `[]` operators can be used for invoking method calls with parameters, as shown in the following expression syntax:

- `expr-a[expr-b] (parameters)`
- `expr-a.identifier-b (parameters)`

In the first expression syntax, `expr-a` is evaluated to represent a bean object. The expression `expr-b` is evaluated and cast to a string that represents a method in the bean represented by `expr-a`. In the second expression syntax, `expr-a` is evaluated to represent a bean object, and `identifier-b` is a string that represents a method in the bean object. The `parameters` in parentheses are the arguments for the method invocation. Parameters can be zero or more values or expressions, separated by commas.

Parameters are supported for both value expressions and method expressions. In the following example, which is a modified tag from the `guessnumber` application, a random number is provided as an argument rather than from user input to the method call:

```
<h:inputText value="#{userNumberBean.userNumber('5')}">
```

The preceding example uses a value expression.

Consider the following example of a JavaServer Faces component tag that uses a method expression:

```
<h:commandButton action="#{trader.buy}" value="buy"/>
```

The EL expression `trader.buy` calls the `trader` bean's `buy` method. You can modify the tag to pass on a parameter. Here is the revised tag where a parameter is passed:

```
<h:commandButton action="#{trader.buy('SOMESTOCK')}" value="buy"/>
```

In the preceding example, you are passing the string `'SOMESTOCK'` (a stock symbol) as a parameter to the `buy` method.

9.4 Literal Expressions

A literal expression is evaluated to the text of the expression, which is of type `String`. A literal expression does not use the `${}` or `#{}` delimiters.

If you have a literal expression that includes the reserved `${}` or `#{}` syntax, you need to escape these characters as follows:

- By creating a composite expression as shown here:

```
${'${'}exprA}
```

```
#{'#'}exprB}
```

The resulting values would then be the strings `${exprA}` and `#{exprB}`.

- By using the escape characters `\$` and `\#` to escape what would otherwise be treated as an eval-expression:

```
\${exprA}
```

```
\#{exprB}
```

The resulting values would again be the strings `${exprA}` and `#{exprB}`.

When a literal expression is evaluated, it can be converted to another type. [Table 9-1](#) shows examples of various literal expressions and their expected types and resulting values.

Table 9-1 *Literal Expressions*

Expression	Expected Type	Result
Hi	String	Hi
true	Boolean	Boolean.TRUE
42	int	42

Literal expressions can be evaluated immediately or deferred and can be either value or method expressions. At what point a literal expression is evaluated depends on where it is being used. If the tag attribute that uses the literal expression is defined to accept a deferred value expression, when referencing a value, the literal expression is evaluated at a point in the lifecycle that is determined by other factors, such as where the expression is being used and to what it is referring.

In the case of a method expression, the method that is referenced is invoked and returns the specified `String` literal. For example, the `h:commandButton` tag of the `guessnumber` application uses a literal method expression as a logical outcome to tell the JavaServer Faces navigation system which page to display next.

9.5 Operators

In addition to the `.` and `[]` operators discussed in [Value and Method Expressions](#), the EL provides the following operators, which can be used in rvalue expressions only:

- **Arithmetic:** `+`, `-` (binary), `*`, `/` and `div`, `%` and `mod`, `-` (unary)
- **Logical:** `and`, `&&`, `or`, `||`, `not`, `!`
- **Relational:** `==`, `eq`, `!=`, `ne`, `<`, `lt`, `>`, `gt`, `<=`, `ge`, `>=`, `le`. Comparisons can be made against other values or against Boolean, string, integer, or floating-point literals.
- **Empty:** The empty operator is a prefix operation that can be used to determine whether a value is null or empty.
- **Conditional:** `A ? B : C`. Evaluate B or C, depending on the result of the evaluation of A.

The precedence of operators highest to lowest, left to right is as follows:

- `[]` `.`
- `()` (used to change the precedence of operators)
- `-` (unary) `not` `!` `empty`
- `*` `/` `div` `%` `mod`
- `+` `-` (binary)
- `<>` `<=>` `lt` `gt` `le` `ge`
- `==` `!=` `eq` `ne`
- `&&` `and`
- `||` `or`

- ? :

9.6 Reserved Words

The following words are reserved for the EL and should not be used as identifiers:

```
and
or
not
eq
ne
lt
gt
le
ge
true
false
null
instanceof
empty
div
mod
```

9.7 Examples of EL Expressions

Table 9–2 contains example EL expressions and the result of evaluating them.

Table 9–2 Example Expressions

EL Expression	Result
<code>\${1 > (4/2)}</code>	false
<code>\${4.0 >= 3}</code>	true
<code>\${100.0 == 100}</code>	true
<code>\${(10*10) ne 100}</code>	false
<code>\${'a' < 'b'}</code>	true
<code>\${'hip' gt 'hit'}</code>	false
<code>\${4 > 3}</code>	true
<code>\${1.2E4 + 1.4}</code>	12001.4
<code>\${3 div 4}</code>	0.75
<code>\${10 mod 4}</code>	2
<code>\${!empty param.Add}</code>	False if the request parameter named Add is null or an empty string.
<code>\${pageContext.request.contextPath}</code>	The context path.
<code>\${sessionScope.cart.numberOfItems}</code>	The value of the numberOfItems property of the session-scoped attribute named cart.
<code>\${param['mycom.productId']}</code>	The value of the request parameter named mycom.productId.
<code>\${header["host"]}</code>	The host.

Table 9–2 (Cont.) Example Expressions

EL Expression	Result
<code>\${departments[deptName]}</code>	The value of the entry named <code>deptName</code> in the <code>departments</code> map.
<code>\${requestScope['javax.servlet.forward.servlet_path']}</code>	The value of the request-scoped attribute named <code>javax.servlet.forward.servlet_path</code> .
<code>#{customer.lName}</code>	Gets the value of the property <code>lName</code> from the <code>customer</code> bean during an initial request. Sets the value of <code>lName</code> during a postback.
<code>#{customer.calcTotal}</code>	The return value of the method <code>calcTotal</code> of the <code>customer</code> bean.

Using JavaServer Faces Technology in Web Pages

Web pages (Facelets pages, in most cases) represent the presentation layer for web applications. The process of creating web pages for a JavaServer Faces application includes using component tags to add components to the page and wire them to backing beans, validators, listeners, converters, and other server-side objects that are associated with the page.

This chapter explains how to create web pages using various types of component and core tags. In the next chapter, you will learn about adding converters, validators, and listeners to component tags to provide additional functionality to components.

Many of the examples in this chapter are taken from [Chapter 55, "Duke's Bookstore Case Study Example."](#)

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Setting Up a Page](#)
- [Adding Components to a Page Using HTML Tag Library Tags](#)
- [Using Core Tags](#)

10.1 Setting Up a Page

A typical JavaServer Faces web page includes the following elements:

- A set of namespace declarations that declare the JavaServer Faces tag libraries
- Optionally, the HTML head (`h:head`) and body (`h:body`) tags
- A form tag (`h:form`) that represents the user input components

To add the JavaServer Faces components to your web page, you need to provide the page access to the two standard tag libraries: the JavaServer Faces HTML render kit tag library and the JavaServer Faces core tag library. The JavaServer Faces standard HTML tag library defines tags that represent common HTML user interface components. This library is linked to the HTML render kit at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaxserverfaces/2.2/renderkitdocs/>. The JavaServer Faces core tag library defines tags that perform core actions and are independent of a particular render kit.

For a complete list of JavaServer Faces Facelets tags and their attributes, refer to the documentation at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaxserverfaces/2.2/vldocs/facelets/>.

To use any of the JavaServer Faces tags, you need to include appropriate directives at the top of each page specifying the tag libraries.

For Facelets applications, the XML namespace directives uniquely identify the tag library URI and the tag prefix.

For example, when you create a Facelets XHTML page, include namespace directives as follows:

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
      xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html"
      xmlns:f="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/core">
```

The XML namespace URI identifies the tag library location, and the prefix value is used to distinguish the tags belonging to that specific tag library. You can also use other prefixes instead of the standard `h` or `f`. However, when including the tag in the page, you must use the prefix that you have chosen for the tag library. For example, in the following web page, the `form` tag must be referenced using the `h` prefix because the preceding tag library directive uses the `h` prefix to distinguish the tags defined in HTML tag library:

```
<h:form ...>
```

The sections [Adding Components to a Page Using HTML Tag Library Tags](#) and [Using Core Tags](#) describe how to use the component tags from the JavaServer Faces standard HTML tag library and the core tags from the JavaServer Faces core tag library.

10.2 Adding Components to a Page Using HTML Tag Library Tags

The tags defined by the JavaServer Faces standard HTML tag library represent HTML form components and other basic HTML elements. These components display data or accept data from the user. This data is collected as part of a form and is submitted to the server, usually when the user clicks a button. This section explains how to use each of the component tags shown in [Table 10-1](#).

Table 10-1 The Component Tags

Tag	Functions	Rendered as	Appearance
<code>h:column</code>	Represents a column of data in a data component	A column of data in an HTML table	A column in a table
<code>h:commandButton</code>	Submits a form to the application	An HTML <code><input type=type></code> element, where the <code>type</code> value can be "submit", "reset", or "image"	A button
<code>h:commandLink</code>	Links to another page or location on a page	An HTML <code><a href></code> element	A link
<code>h:dataTable</code>	Represents a data wrapper	An HTML <code><table></code> element	A table that can be updated dynamically
<code>h:form</code>	Represents an input form (inner tags of the form receive the data that will be submitted with the form)	An HTML <code><form></code> element	No appearance
<code>h:graphicImage</code>	Displays an image	An HTML <code></code> element	An image

Table 10–1 (Cont.) The Component Tags

Tag	Functions	Rendered as	Appearance
h:inputFile	Allows a user to upload a file	An HTML <input type="file"> element	A field with a Browse... button
h:inputHidden	Allows a page author to include a hidden variable in a page	An HTML <input type="hidden"> element	No appearance
h:inputSecret	Allows a user to input a string without the actual string appearing in the field	An HTML <input type="password"> element	A field, which displays a row of characters instead of the actual string entered
h:inputText	Allows a user to input a string	An HTML <input type="text"> element	A field
h:inputTextarea	Allows a user to enter a multiline string	An HTML <textarea> element	A multi-row field
h:message	Displays a localized message	An HTML tag if styles are used	A text string
h:messages	Displays localized messages	A set of HTML tags if styles are used	A text string
h:outputFormat	Displays a formatted message	Plain text	Plain text
h:outputLabel	Displays a nested component as a label for a specified input field	An HTML <label> element	Plain text
h:outputLink	Links to another page or location on a page without generating an action event	An HTML <a> element	A link
h:outputText	Displays a line of text	Plain text	Plain text
h:panelGrid	Displays a table	An HTML <table> element with <tr> and <td> elements	A table
h:panelGroup	Groups a set of components under one parent	A HTML <div> or element	A row in a table
h:selectBooleanCheckbox	Allows a user to change the value of a Boolean choice	An HTML <input type="checkbox"> element.	A check box
h:selectManyCheckbox	Displays a set of check boxes from which the user can select multiple values	A set of HTML <input> elements of type checkbox	A group of check boxes
h:selectManyListbox	Allows a user to select multiple items from a set of items, all displayed at once	An HTML <select> element	A box
h:selectManyMenu	Allows a user to select multiple items from a set of items	An HTML <select> element	A menu

Table 10–1 (Cont.) The Component Tags

Tag	Functions	Rendered as	Appearance
<code>h:selectOneListbox</code>	Allows a user to select one item from a set of items, all displayed at once	An HTML <code><select></code> element	A box
<code>h:selectOneMenu</code>	Allows a user to select one item from a set of items	An HTML <code><select></code> element	A menu
<code>h:selectOneRadio</code>	Allows a user to select one item from a set of items	An HTML <code><input type="radio"></code> element	A group of options

The tags correspond to components in the `javax.faces.component` package. The components are discussed in more detail in [Chapter 12, "Developing with JavaServer Faces Technology."](#)

The next section explains the important attributes that are common to most component tags. For each of the components discussed in the following sections, [Writing Bean Properties](#) explains how to write a bean property bound to a particular component or its value.

For reference information about the tags and their attributes, see the API documentation for the Facelets tag library at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaxserverfaces/2.2/vdldocs/facelets/>.

10.2.1 Common Component Tag Attributes

Most of the component tags support the attributes shown in [Table 10–2](#).

Table 10–2 Common Component Tag Attributes

Attribute	Description
<code>binding</code>	Identifies a bean property and binds the component instance to it.
<code>id</code>	Uniquely identifies the component.
<code>immediate</code>	If set to <code>true</code> , indicates that any events, validation, and conversion associated with the component should happen when request parameter values are applied.
<code>rendered</code>	Specifies a condition under which the component should be rendered. If the condition is not satisfied, the component is not rendered.
<code>style</code>	Specifies a Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) style for the tag.
<code>styleClass</code>	Specifies a CSS class that contains definitions of the styles.
<code>value</code>	Specifies the value of the component, in the form of a value expression.

All the tag attributes except `id` can accept expressions, as defined by the EL, described in [Expression Language](#).

An attribute such as `rendered` or `value` can be set on the page and then modified in the backing bean for the page.

10.2.1.1 The id Attribute

The `id` attribute is not usually required for a component tag but is used when another component or a server-side class must refer to the component. If you don't include an `id` attribute, the JavaServer Faces implementation automatically generates a component ID. Unlike most other JavaServer Faces tag attributes, the `id` attribute takes expressions using only the evaluation syntax described in [Immediate Evaluation](#), which uses the `{}` delimiters. For more information on expression syntax, see [Value Expressions](#).

10.2.1.2 The immediate Attribute

Input components and command components (those that implement the `ActionSource` interface, such as buttons and links) can set the `immediate` attribute to `true` to force events, validations, and conversions to be processed when request parameter values are applied.

You need to carefully consider how the combination of an input component's `immediate` value and a command component's `immediate` value determines what happens when the command component is activated.

Suppose that you have a page with a button and a field for entering the quantity of a book in a shopping cart. If the `immediate` attributes of both the button and the field are set to `true`, the new value entered in the field will be available for any processing associated with the event that is generated when the button is clicked. The event associated with the button as well as the events, validation, and conversion associated with the field are all handled when request parameter values are applied.

If the button's `immediate` attribute is set to `true` but the field's `immediate` attribute is set to `false`, the event associated with the button is processed without updating the field's local value to the model layer. The reason is that any events, conversion, and validation associated with the field occur *after* request parameter values are applied.

The `bookshowcart.xhtml` page of the Duke's Bookstore case study has examples of components using the `immediate` attribute to control which component's data is updated when certain buttons are clicked. The `quantity` field for each book does not set the `immediate` attribute, so the value is `false` (the default).

```
<h:inputText id="quantity"
             size="4"
             value="#{item.quantity}"
             title="#{bundle.ItemQuantity}">
    <f:validateLongRange minimum="1"/>
</h:inputText>
```

The `immediate` attribute of the **Continue Shopping** hyperlink is set to `true`, while the `immediate` attribute of the **Update Quantities** hyperlink is set to `false`:

```
<h:commandLink id="continue"
               action="bookcatalog"
               immediate="true">
    <h:outputText value="#{bundle.ContinueShopping}"/>
</h:commandLink>
...
<h:commandLink id="update"
               action="#{showcart.update}"
               immediate="false">
    <h:outputText value="#{bundle.UpdateQuantities}"/>
</h:commandLink>
```

If you click the **Continue Shopping** hyperlink, none of the changes entered into the quantity input fields will be processed. If you click the **Update Quantities** hyperlink, the values in the quantity fields will be updated in the shopping cart.

10.2.1.3 The rendered Attribute

A component tag uses a Boolean EL expression along with the `rendered` attribute to determine whether the component will be rendered. For example, the `commandLink` component in the following section of a page is not rendered if the cart contains no items:

```
<h:commandLink id="check"
    ...
    rendered="#{cart.numberOfItems > 0}">
    <h:outputText
        value="#{bundle.CartCheck}"/>
</h:commandLink>
```

Unlike nearly every other JavaServer Faces tag attribute, the `rendered` attribute is restricted to using `rvalue` expressions. As explained in [Value and Method Expressions](#), these `rvalue` expressions can only read data; they cannot write the data back to the data source. Therefore, expressions used with `rendered` attributes can use the arithmetic operators and literals that `rvalue` expressions can use but `lvalue` expressions cannot use. For example, the expression in the preceding example uses the `>` operator.

Note: In this example and others, `bundle` refers to a `java.util.ResourceBundle` file that contains locale-specific strings to be displayed. Resource bundles are discussed in [Chapter 20, "Internationalizing and Localizing Web Applications"](#).

10.2.1.4 The style and styleClass Attributes

The `style` and `styleClass` attributes allow you to specify CSS styles for the rendered output of your tags. [Displaying Error Messages with the `h:message` and `h:messages` Tags](#) describes an example of using the `style` attribute to specify styles directly in the attribute. A component tag can instead refer to a CSS class.

The following example shows the use of a `dataTable` tag that references the style class `list-background`:

```
<h:dataTable id="items"
    ...
    styleClass="list-background"
    value="#{cart.items}"
    var="book">
```

The style sheet that defines this class is `stylesheet.css`, which will be included in the application. For more information on defining styles, see *Cascading Style Sheets Specification* at <http://www.w3.org/Style/CSS/>.

10.2.1.5 The value and binding Attributes

A tag representing an output component uses the `value` and `binding` attributes to bind its component's value or instance, respectively, to a data object. The `value` attribute is used more commonly than the `binding` attribute, and examples appear throughout this chapter. For more information on these attributes, see [Creating a Managed Bean](#), [Writing Properties Bound to Component Values](#), and [Writing Properties Bound to Component Instances](#).

10.2.2 Adding HTML Head and Body Tags

The HTML head (`h:head`) and body (`h:body`) tags add HTML page structure to JavaServer Faces web pages.

- The `h:head` tag represents the head element of an HTML page
- The `h:body` tag represents the body element of an HTML page

The following is an example of an XHTML page using the usual head and body markup tags:

```
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
  <head>
    <title>Add a title</title>
  </head>
  <body>
    Add Content
  </body>
</html>
```

The following is an example of an XHTML page using `h:head` and `h:body` tags:

```
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
      xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html">
  <h:head>
    Add a title
  </h:head>
  <h:body>
    Add Content
  </h:body>
</html>
```

Both of the preceding example code segments render the same HTML elements. The head and body tags are useful mainly for resource relocation. For more information on resource relocation, see [Resource Relocation Using `h:outputScript` and `h:outputStylesheet` Tags](#).

10.2.3 Adding a Form Component

An `h:form` tag represents an input form, which includes child components that can contain data that is either presented to the user or submitted with the form.

[Figure 10–1](#) shows a typical login form in which a user enters a user name and password, then submits the form by clicking the **Login** button.

Figure 10–1 A Typical Form

The figure shows a simple login form. It consists of three main components: a text input field for the user name, a password input field, and a submit button. The user name field contains the text 'Duke'. The password field contains a series of asterisks '*****'. The submit button is labeled 'Login'.

The `h:form` tag represents the form on the page and encloses all the components that display or collect data from the user, as shown here:

```
<h:form>
... other JavaServer Faces tags and other content...
</h:form>
```

The `h:form` tag can also include HTML markup to lay out the components on the page. Note that the `h:form` tag itself does not perform any layout; its purpose is to collect data and to declare attributes that can be used by other components in the form.

A page can include multiple `h:form` tags, but only the values from the form submitted by the user will be included in the postback request.

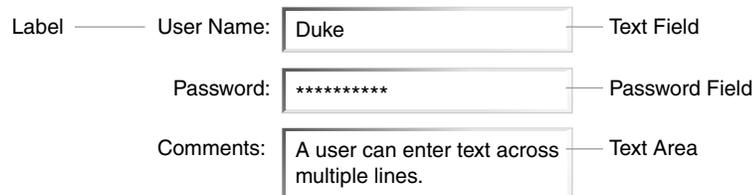
10.2.4 Using Text Components

Text components allow users to view and edit text in web applications. The basic types of text components are as follows:

- Label, which displays read-only text
- Field, which allows users to enter text (on one or more lines), often to be submitted as part of a form
- Password field, which is a type of field that displays a set of characters, such as asterisks, instead of the password text that the user enters

Figure 10–2 shows examples of these text components.

Figure 10–2 Example Text Components



Text components can be categorized as either input or output. A JavaServer Faces output component, such as a label, is rendered as read-only text. A JavaServer Faces input component, such as a field, is rendered as editable text.

The input and output components can each be rendered in various ways to display more specialized text.

Table 10–3 lists the tags that represent the input components.

Table 10–3 Input Tags

Tag	Function
<code>h:inputHidden</code>	Allows a page author to include a hidden variable in a page
<code>h:inputSecret</code>	The standard password field: accepts one line of text with no spaces and displays it as a set of asterisks as it is entered
<code>h:inputText</code>	The standard field: accepts a one-line text string
<code>h:inputTextarea</code>	The standard multi-line field: accepts multiple lines of text

The input tags support the tag attributes shown in [Table 10–4](#) in addition to those described in [Common Component Tag Attributes](#). Note that this table does not include all the attributes supported by the input tags but just those that are used most often. For the complete list of attributes, refer to the documentation at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaxserverfaces/2.2/vdldocs/facelets/>.

Table 10–4 Input Tag Attributes

Attribute	Description
converter	Identifies a converter that will be used to convert the component's local data. See Using the Standard Converters for more information on how to use this attribute.
converterMessage	Specifies an error message to display when the converter registered on the component fails.
dir	Specifies the direction of the text displayed by this component. Acceptable values are <code>ltr</code> , meaning left-to-right, and <code>rtl</code> , meaning right-to-left.
label	Specifies a name that can be used to identify this component in error messages.
lang	Specifies the code for the language used in the rendered markup, such as <code>en</code> or <code>pt-BR</code> .
required	Takes a <code>boolean</code> value that indicates whether the user must enter a value in this component.
requiredMessage	Specifies an error message to display when the user does not enter a value into the component.
validator	Identifies a method expression pointing to a managed bean method that performs validation on the component's data. See Referencing a Method That Performs Validation for an example of using the <code>f:validator</code> tag.
validatorMessage	Specifies an error message to display when the validator registered on the component fails to validate the component's local value.
valueChangeListener	Identifies a method expression that points to a managed bean method that handles the event of entering a value in this component. See Referencing a Method That Handles a Value-Change Event for an example of using <code>valueChangeListener</code> .

[Table 10–5](#) lists the tags that represent the output components.

Table 10–5 Output Tags

Tag	Function
<code>h:outputFormat</code>	Displays a formatted message
<code>h:outputLabel</code>	The standard read-only label: displays a component as a label for a specified input field
<code>h:outputLink</code>	Displays an <code><a href></code> tag that links to another page without generating an action event
<code>h:outputText</code>	Displays a one-line text string

The output tags support the `converter` tag attribute in addition to those listed in [Common Component Tag Attributes](#).

The rest of this section explains how to use some of the tags listed in [Table 10–3](#) and [Output Tags](#). The other tags are written in a similar way.

10.2.4.1 Rendering a Field with the `h:inputText` Tag

The `h:inputText` tag is used to display a field. A similar tag, the `h:outputText` tag, displays a read-only, single-line string. This section shows you how to use the `h:inputText` tag. The `h:outputText` tag is written in a similar way.

Here is an example of an `h:inputText` tag:

```
<h:inputText id="name"
             label="Customer Name"
             size="30"
             value="#{cashierBean.name}"
             required="true"
             requiredMessage="#{bundle.ReqCustomerName}">
  <f:valueChangeListener
    type="dukesbookstore.listeners.NameChanged" />
</h:inputText>
```

The `label` attribute specifies a user-friendly name that will be used in the substitution parameters of error messages displayed for this component.

The `value` attribute refers to the name property of a managed bean named `CashierBean`. This property holds the data for the name component. After the user submits the form, the value of the name property in `CashierBean` will be set to the text entered in the field corresponding to this tag.

The `required` attribute causes the page to reload, displaying errors, if the user does not enter a value in the name field. The JavaServer Faces implementation checks whether the value of the component is null or is an empty string.

If your component must have a non-null value or a `String` value at least one character in length, you should add a `required` attribute to your tag and set its value to `true`. If your tag has a `required` attribute that is set to `true` and the value is null or a zero-length string, no other validators that are registered on the tag are called. If your tag does not have a `required` attribute set to `true`, other validators that are registered on the tag are called, but those validators must handle the possibility of a null or zero-length string. See [Validating Null and Empty Strings](#) for more information.

10.2.4.2 Rendering a Password Field with the `h:inputSecret` Tag

The `h:inputSecret` tag renders an `<input type="password">` HTML tag. When the user types a string into this field, a row of asterisks is displayed instead of the text entered by the user. Here is an example:

```
<h:inputSecret redisplay="false"
              value="#{loginBean.password}" />
```

In this example, the `redisplay` attribute is set to `false`. This will prevent the password from being displayed in a query string or in the source file of the resulting HTML page.

10.2.4.3 Rendering a Label with the `h:outputLabel` Tag

The `h:outputLabel` tag is used to attach a label to a specified input field for the purpose of making it accessible. The following page uses an `h:outputLabel` tag to render the label of a check box:

```
<h:selectBooleanCheckbox id="fanClub"
```

```

                rendered="false"
                binding="#{cashierBean.specialOffer}" />
<h:outputLabel for="fanClub"
                rendered="false"
                binding="#{cashierBean.specialOfferText}">
    <h:outputText id="fanClubLabel"
                 value="#{bundle.DukeFanClub}" />
</h:outputLabel>
...

```

The `h:selectBooleanCheckbox` tag and the `h:outputLabel` tag have `rendered` attributes that are set to `false` on the page but are set to `true` in the `CashierBean` under certain circumstances. The `for` attribute of the `h:outputLabel` tag maps to the `id` of the input field to which the label is attached. The `h:outputText` tag nested inside the `h:outputLabel` tag represents the label component. The `value` attribute on the `h:outputText` tag indicates the text that is displayed next to the input field.

Instead of using an `h:outputText` tag for the text displayed as a label, you can simply use the `h:outputLabel` tag's `value` attribute. The following code snippet shows what the previous code snippet would look like if it used the `value` attribute of the `h:outputLabel` tag to specify the text of the label:

```

<h:selectBooleanCheckbox id="fanClub"
                        rendered="false"
                        binding="#{cashierBean.specialOffer}" />
<h:outputLabel for="fanClub"
                rendered="false"
                binding="#{cashierBean.specialOfferText}"
                value="#{bundle.DukeFanClub}" />
</h:outputLabel>
...

```

10.2.4.4 Rendering a Link with the `h:outputLink` Tag

The `h:outputLink` tag is used to render a link that, when clicked, loads another page but does not generate an action event. You should use this tag instead of the `h:commandLink` tag if you always want the URL specified by the `h:outputLink` tag's `value` attribute to open and do not want any processing to be performed when the user clicks the link. Here is an example:

```

<h:outputLink value="javadocs">
    Documentation for this demo
</h:outputLink>

```

The text in the body of the `h:outputLink` tag identifies the text that the user clicks to get to the next page.

10.2.4.5 Displaying a Formatted Message with the `h:outputFormat` Tag

The `h:outputFormat` tag allows display of concatenated messages as a `MessageFormat` pattern, as described in the API documentation for `java.text.MessageFormat`. Here is an example of an `h:outputFormat` tag:

```

<h:outputFormat value="Hello, {0}!">
    <f:param value="#{hello.name}" />
</h:outputFormat>

```

The `value` attribute specifies the `MessageFormat` pattern. The `f:param` tag specifies the substitution parameters for the message. The value of the parameter replaces the `{0}`

in the sentence. If the value of `"#{hello.name}"` is "Bill", the message displayed in the page is as follows:

```
Hello, Bill!
```

An `h:outputFormat` tag can include more than one `f:param` tag for those messages that have more than one parameter that must be concatenated into the message. If you have more than one parameter for one message, make sure that you put the `f:param` tags in the proper order so that the data is inserted in the correct place in the message. Here is the preceding example modified with an additional parameter:

```
<h:outputFormat value="Hello, {0}! You are visitor number {1} to the page.">
  <f:param value="#{hello.name}" />
  <f:param value="#{bean.numVisitor}" />
</h:outputFormat>
```

The value of `{1}` is replaced by the second parameter. The parameter is an EL expression, `bean.numVisitor`, where the property `numVisitor` of the managed bean `bean` keeps track of visitors to the page. This is an example of a value-expression-enabled tag attribute accepting an EL expression. The message displayed in the page is now as follows:

```
Hello, Bill! You are visitor number 10 to the page.
```

10.2.5 Using Command Component Tags for Performing Actions and Navigation

In JavaServer Faces applications, the `button` and `link` component tags are used to perform actions, such as submitting a form, and for navigating to another page. These tags are called command component tags because they perform an action when activated.

The `h:commandButton` tag is rendered as a button. The `h:commandLink` tag is rendered as a link.

In addition to the tag attributes listed in [Common Component Tag Attributes](#), the `h:commandButton` and `h:commandLink` tags can use the following attributes:

- `action`, which is either a logical outcome `String` or a method expression pointing to a bean method that returns a logical outcome `String`. In either case, the logical outcome `String` is used to determine what page to access when the command component tag is activated.
- `actionListener`, which is a method expression pointing to a bean method that processes an action event fired by the command component tag.

See [Referencing a Method That Performs Navigation](#) for more information on using the `action` attribute. See [Referencing a Method That Handles an Action Event](#) for details on using the `actionListener` attribute.

10.2.5.1 Rendering a Button with the `h:commandButton` Tag

If you are using an `h:commandButton` component tag, the data from the current page is processed when a user clicks the button, and the next page is opened. Here is an example of the `h:commandButton` tag:

```
<h:commandButton value="Submit"
  action="#{cashierBean.submit}" />
```

Clicking the button will cause the `submit` method of `CashierBean` to be invoked because the `action` attribute references this method. The `submit` method performs some processing and returns a logical outcome.

The value attribute of the example `h:commandButton` tag references the button's label. For information on how to use the `action` attribute, see [Referencing a Method That Performs Navigation](#).

10.2.5.2 Rendering a Link with the `h:commandLink` Tag

The `h:commandLink` tag represents an HTML link and is rendered as an HTML `<a>` element.

A `h:commandLink` tag must include a nested `h:outputText` tag, which represents the text that the user clicks to generate the event. Here is an example:

```
<h:commandLink id="Duke" action="bookstore">
  <f:actionListener
    type="dukesbookstore.listeners.LinkBookChangeListener" />
  <h:outputText value="#{bundle.Book201}" />
</h:commandLink>
```

This tag will render HTML that looks something like the following:

```
<a id="_idt16:Duke" href="#"
  onclick="mojarra.jsfcljs(document.getElementById('j_idt16'),
    {'j_idt16:Duke':'j_idt16:Duke'}, '');
  return false;">My Early Years: Growing Up on Star7, by Duke</a>
```

Note: The `h:commandLink` tag will render JavaScript scripting language. If you use this tag, make sure that your browser is enabled for JavaScript technology.

10.2.6 Adding Graphics and Images with the `h:graphicImage` Tag

In a JavaServer Faces application, use the `h:graphicImage` tag to render an image on a page:

```
<h:graphicImage id="mapImage" url="/resources/images/book_all.jpg"/>
```

In this example, the `url` attribute specifies the path to the image. The URL of the example tag begins with a slash (`/`), which adds the relative context path of the web application to the beginning of the path to the image.

Alternatively, you can use the facility described in [Web Resources](#) to point to the image location. Here are two examples:

```
<h:graphicImage id="mapImage"
  name="book_all.jpg"
  library="images"
  alt="#{bundle.ChooseBook}"
  usemap="#bookMap" />

<h:graphicImage value="#{resource['images:wave.med.gif']}" />
```

You can use similar syntax to refer to an image in a style sheet. The following syntax in a style sheet specifies that the image is to be found at `resources/img/top-background.jpg`:

```
header {
  position: relative;
  height: 150px;
  background: #fff url("#{resource['img:top-background.jpg']}) repeat-x;
  ...
}
```

10.2.7 Laying Out Components with the h:panelGrid and h:panelGroup Tags

In a JavaServer Faces application, you use a panel as a layout container for a set of other components. A panel is rendered as an HTML table. [Table 10–6](#) lists the tags used to create panels.

Table 10–6 Panel Component Tags

Tag	Attributes	Function
h:panelGrid	columns, columnClasses, footerClass, headerClass, panelClass, rowClasses, role	Displays a table
h:panelGroup	layout	Groups a set of components under one parent

The h:panelGrid tag is used to represent an entire table. The h:panelGroup tag is used to represent rows in a table. Other tags are used to represent individual cells in the rows.

The columns attribute defines how to group the data in the table and therefore is required if you want your table to have more than one column. The h:panelGrid tag also has a set of optional attributes that specify CSS classes: columnClasses, footerClass, headerClass, panelClass, and rowClasses. The role attribute can have the value "presentation" to indicate that the purpose of the table is to format the display rather than to show data.

If the headerClass attribute value is specified, the h:panelGrid tag must have a header as its first child. Similarly, if a footerClass attribute value is specified, the h:panelGrid tag must have a footer as its last child.

Here is an example:

```
<h:panelGrid columns="2"
    headerClass="list-header"
    styleClass="list-background"
    rowClasses="list-row-even, list-row-odd"
    summary="#{bundle.CustomerInfo}"
    title="#{bundle.Checkout}"
    role="presentation">
  <f:facet name="header">
    <h:outputText value="#{bundle.Checkout}"/>
  </f:facet>

  <h:outputLabel for="name" value="#{bundle.Name}" />
  <h:inputText id="name" size="30"
    value="#{cashierBean.name}"
    required="true"
    requiredMessage="#{bundle.RegCustomerName}">
    <f:valueChangeListener
      type="dukesbookstore.listeners.NameChanged" />
  </h:inputText>
  <h:message styleClass="error-message" for="name"/>

  <h:outputLabel for="ccno" value="#{bundle.CCNumber}"/>
  <h:inputText id="ccno"
    size="19"
    converterMessage="#{bundle.CreditMessage}"
    required="true"
    requiredMessage="#{bundle.RegCreditCard}">
  <f:converter converterId="ccno"/>
</h:panelGrid>
```

```

    <f:validateRegex
        pattern="\d{16}|\d{4} \d{4} \d{4} \d{4}|\d{4}-\d{4}-\d{4}-\d{4}" />
    </h:inputText>
    <h:message styleClass="error-message" for="ccno"/>
    ...
</h:panelGrid>

```

The preceding `h:panelGrid` tag is rendered as a table that contains components in which a customer inputs personal information. This `h:panelGrid` tag uses style sheet classes to format the table. The following code shows the `list-header` definition:

```

.list-header {
    background-color: #ffffff;
    color: #000000;
    text-align: center;
}

```

Because the `h:panelGrid` tag specifies a `headerClass`, the `h:panelGrid` tag must contain a header. The example `h:panelGrid` tag uses an `f:facet` tag for the header. Facets can have only one child, so an `h:panelGroup` tag is needed if you want to group more than one component within an `f:facet`. The example `h:panelGrid` tag has only one cell of data, so an `h:panelGroup` tag is not needed. (For more information about facets, see [Using Data-Bound Table Components](#).)

The `h:panelGroup` tag has an attribute, `layout`, in addition to those listed in [Common Component Tag Attributes](#). If the `layout` attribute has the value `block`, an HTML `div` element is rendered to enclose the row; otherwise, an HTML `span` element is rendered to enclose the row. If you are specifying styles for the `h:panelGroup` tag, you should set the `layout` attribute to `block` in order for the styles to be applied to the components within the `h:panelGroup` tag. You should do this because styles, such as those that set width and height, are not applied to inline elements, which is how content enclosed by the `span` element is defined.

An `h:panelGroup` tag can also be used to encapsulate a nested tree of components so that the tree of components appears as a single component to the parent component.

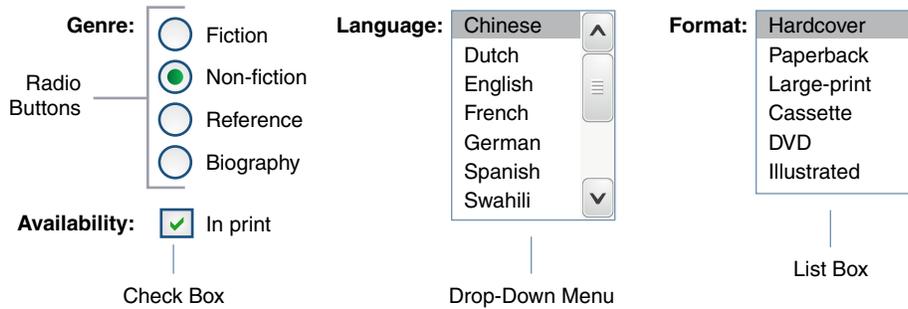
Data, represented by the nested tags, is grouped into rows according to the value of the `columns` attribute of the `h:panelGrid` tag. The `columns` attribute in the example is set to 2, and therefore the table will have two columns. The column in which each component is displayed is determined by the order in which the component is listed on the page modulo 2. So, if a component is the fifth one in the list of components, that component will be in the 5 modulo 2 column, or column 1.

10.2.8 Displaying Components for Selecting One Value

Another commonly used component is one that allows a user to select one value, whether it is the only value available or one of a set of choices. The most common tags for this kind of component are as follows:

- An `h:selectBooleanCheckbox` tag, displayed as a check box, which represents a Boolean state
- An `h:selectOneRadio` tag, displayed as a set of options
- An `h:selectOneMenu` tag, displayed as a scrollable list
- An `h:selectOneListbox` tag, displayed as an unscrollable list

[Figure 10-3](#) shows examples of these components.

Figure 10–3 Example Components for Selecting One Item

10.2.8.1 Displaying a Check Box Using the `h:selectBooleanCheckbox` Tag

The `h:selectBooleanCheckbox` tag is the only tag that JavaServer Faces technology provides for representing a Boolean state.

Here is an example that shows how to use the `h:selectBooleanCheckbox` tag:

```
<h:selectBooleanCheckbox id="fanClub"
    rendered="false"
    binding="#{cashierBean.specialOffer}" />
<h:outputLabel for="fanClub"
    rendered="false"
    binding="#{cashierBean.specialOfferText}"
    value="#{bundle.DukeFanClub}" />
```

The `h:selectBooleanCheckbox` tag and the `h:outputLabel` tag have rendered attributes that are set to `false` on the page but are set to `true` in the `CashierBean` under certain circumstances. When the `h:selectBooleanCheckbox` tag is rendered, it displays a check box to allow users to indicate whether they want to join the Duke Fan Club. When the `h:outputLabel` tag is rendered, it displays the label for the check box. The label text is represented by the `value` attribute.

10.2.8.2 Displaying a Menu Using the `h:selectOneMenu` Tag

A component that allows the user to select one value from a set of values can be rendered as a box or a set of options. This section describes the `h:selectOneMenu` tag. The `h:selectOneRadio` and `h:selectOneListbox` tags are used in a similar way. The `h:selectOneListbox` tag is similar to the `h:selectOneMenu` tag except that `h:selectOneListbox` defines a `size` attribute that determines how many of the items are displayed at once.

The `h:selectOneMenu` tag represents a component that contains a list of items from which a user can select one item. This menu component is sometimes known as a drop-down list or a combo box. The following code snippet shows how the `h:selectOneMenu` tag is used to allow the user to select a shipping method:

```
<h:selectOneMenu id="shippingOption"
    required="true"
    value="#{cashierBean.shippingOption}">
    <f:selectItem itemValue="2"
        itemLabel="#{bundle.QuickShip}" />
    <f:selectItem itemValue="5"
        itemLabel="#{bundle.NormalShip}" />
    <f:selectItem itemValue="7"
        itemLabel="#{bundle.SaverShip}" />
</h:selectOneMenu>
```

The value attribute of the `h:selectOneMenu` tag maps to the property that holds the currently selected item's value. In this case, the value is set by the backing bean. You are not required to provide a value for the currently selected item. If you don't provide a value, the browser determines which one is selected.

Like the `h:selectOneRadio` tag, the `h:selectOneMenu` tag must contain either an `f:selectItems` tag or a set of `f:selectItem` tags for representing the items in the list. [Using the `f:selectItem` and `f:selectItems` Tags](#) describes these tags.

10.2.9 Displaying Components for Selecting Multiple Values

In some cases, you need to allow your users to select multiple values rather than just one value from a list of choices. You can do this using one of the following component tags:

- An `h:selectManyCheckbox` tag, displayed as a set of check boxes
- An `h:selectManyMenu` tag, displayed as a menu
- An `h:selectManyListbox` tag, displayed as a box

Figure 10–4 shows examples of these components.

Figure 10–4 Example Components for Selecting Multiple Values



These tags allow the user to select zero or more values from a set of values. This section explains the `h:selectManyCheckbox` tag. The `h:selectManyListbox` and `h:selectManyMenu` tags are used in a similar way.

Unlike a menu, a list displays a subset of items in a box; a menu displays only one item at a time when the user is not selecting the menu. The `size` attribute of the `h:selectManyListbox` tag determines the number of items displayed at one time. The box includes a scroll bar for scrolling through any remaining items in the list.

The `h:selectManyCheckbox` tag renders a group of check boxes, with each check box representing one value that can be selected:

```
<h:selectManyCheckbox id="newslettercheckbox"
    layout="pageDirection"
    value="#{cashierBean.newsletters}">
    <f:selectItems value="#{cashierBean.newsletterItems}" />
</h:selectManyCheckbox>
```

The value attribute of the `h:selectManyCheckbox` tag identifies the `newsletters` property of the `CashierBean` managed bean. This property holds the values of the currently selected items from the set of check boxes. You are not required to provide a value for the currently selected items. If you don't provide a value, the first item in the list is selected by default. In the `CashierBean` managed bean, this value is instantiated to 0, so no items are selected by default.

The `layout` attribute indicates how the set of check boxes is arranged on the page. Because `layout` is set to `pageDirection`, the check boxes are arranged vertically. The default is `lineDirection`, which aligns the check boxes horizontally.

The `h:selectManyCheckbox` tag must also contain a tag or set of tags representing the set of check boxes. To represent a set of items, you use the `f:selectItems` tag. To represent each item individually, you use the `f:selectItem` tag. The following section explains these tags in more detail.

10.2.10 Using the `f:selectItem` and `f:selectItems` Tags

The `f:selectItem` and `f:selectItems` tags represent components that can be nested inside a component that allows you to select one or multiple items. An `f:selectItem` tag contains the value, label, and description of a single item. An `f:selectItems` tag contains the values, labels, and descriptions of the entire list of items.

You can use either a set of `f:selectItem` tags or a single `f:selectItems` tag within your component tag.

The advantages of using the `f:selectItems` tag are as follows.

- Items can be represented by using different data structures, including `Array`, `Map`, and `Collection`. The value of the `f:selectItems` tag can represent even a generic collection of POJOs.
- Different lists can be concatenated into a single component, and the lists can be grouped within the component.
- Values can be generated dynamically at runtime.

The advantages of using `f:selectItem` are as follows:

- Items in the list can be defined from the page.
- Less code is needed in the backing bean for the `f:selectItem` properties.

The rest of this section shows you how to use the `f:selectItems` and `f:selectItem` tags.

10.2.10.1 Using the `f:selectItems` Tag

The following example from [Displaying Components for Selecting Multiple Values](#) shows how to use the `h:selectManyCheckbox` tag:

```
<h:selectManyCheckbox id="newslettercheckbox"
    layout="pageDirection"
    value="#{cashierBean.newsletters}">
    <f:selectItems value="#{cashierBean.newsletterItems}" />
</h:selectManyCheckbox>
```

The `value` attribute of the `f:selectItems` tag is bound to the managed bean property `cashierBean.newsletterItems`. The individual `SelectItem` objects are created programmatically in the managed bean.

See [UISelectItems Properties](#) for information on how to write a managed bean property for one of these tags.

10.2.10.2 Using the `f:selectItem` Tag

The `f:selectItem` tag represents a single item in a list of items. Here is the example from [Displaying a Menu Using the `h:selectOneMenu` Tag](#) once again:

```
<h:selectOneMenu id="shippingOption"
```

```

        required="true"
        value="#{cashierBean.shippingOption}">
<f:selectItem itemValue="2"
    itemLabel="#{bundle.QuickShip}"/>
<f:selectItem itemValue="5"
    itemLabel="#{bundle.NormalShip}"/>
<f:selectItem itemValue="7"
    itemLabel="#{bundle.SaverShip}"/>
</h:selectOneMenu>

```

The `itemValue` attribute represents the value for the `f:selectItem` tag. The `itemLabel` attribute represents the String that appears in the list component on the page.

The `itemValue` and `itemLabel` attributes are value-binding-enabled, meaning that they can use value-binding expressions to refer to values in external objects. These attributes can also define literal values, as shown in the example `h:selectOneMenu` tag.

10.2.11 Displaying the Results from Selection Components

If you display components that allow a user to select values, you may also want to display the result of the selection.

For example, you might want to thank a user who selected the checkbox to join the Duke Fan Club, as described in [Displaying a Check Box Using the `h:selectBooleanCheckbox` Tag](#). Because the checkbox is bound to the `specialOffer` property of `CashierBean`, a `UISelectBoolean` value, you can call the `isSelected` method of the property to determine whether to render a thank-you message:

```

<h:outputText value="#{bundle.DukeFanClubThanks}"
    rendered="#{cashierBean.specialOffer.isSelected()}" />

```

Similarly, you might want to acknowledge that a user subscribed to newsletters using the `h:selectManyCheckbox` tag, as described in [Displaying Components for Selecting Multiple Values](#). To do so, you can retrieve the value of the `newsletters` property, the String array that holds the selected items:

```

<h:outputText value="#{bundle.NewsletterThanks}"
    rendered="#{!empty cashierBean.newsletters}" />
<ul>
    <ui:repeat value="#{cashierBean.newsletters}" var="nli">
        <li><h:outputText value="#{nli}" /></li>
    </ui:repeat>
</ul>

```

An introductory thank-you message is displayed only if the `newsletters` array is not empty. Then a `ui:repeat` tag, a simple way to show values in a loop, displays the contents of the selected items in an itemized list. (This tag is listed in [Table 8-2](#).)

10.2.12 Using Data-Bound Table Components

Data-bound table components display relational data in a tabular format. In a JavaServer Faces application, the `h:dataTable` component tag supports binding to a collection of data objects and displays the data as an HTML table. The `h:column` tag represents a column of data within the table, iterating over each record in the data source, which is displayed as a row. Here is an example:

```

<h:dataTable id="items"
    captionClass="list-caption"
    columnClasses="list-column-center, list-column-left,
    list-column-right, list-column-center"

```

```

        footerClass="list-footer"
        headerClass="list-header"
        rowClasses="list-row-even, list-row-odd"
        styleClass="list-background"
        summary="#{bundle.ShoppingCart}"
        value="#{cart.items}"
        border="1"
        var="item">
<h:column>
    <f:facet name="header">
        <h:outputText value="#{bundle.ItemQuantity}" />
    </f:facet>
    <h:inputText id="quantity"
        size="4"
        value="#{item.quantity}"
        title="#{bundle.ItemQuantity}">
        <f:validateLongRange minimum="1"/>
    </h:inputText>
    <h:message for="quantity"/>
</h:column>
<h:column>
    <f:facet name="header">
        <h:outputText value="#{bundle.ItemTitle}"/>
    </f:facet>
    <h:commandLink action="#{showcart.details}">
        <h:outputText value="#{item.item.title}"/>
    </h:commandLink>
</h:column>
...
<f:facet name="footer">
    <h:panelGroup>
        <h:outputText value="#{bundle.Subtotal}"/>
        <h:outputText value="#{cart.total}" />
        <f:convertNumber currencySymbol="$" type="currency" />
    </h:panelGroup>
</f:facet>
<f:facet name="caption">
    <h:outputText value="#{bundle.Caption}"/>
</f:facet>
</h:dataTable>

```

The example `h:dataTable` tag displays the books in the shopping cart, as well as the quantity of each book in the shopping cart, the prices, and a set of buttons the user can click to remove books from the shopping cart.

The `h:column` tags represent columns of data in a data component. While the data component is iterating over the rows of data, it processes the column component associated with each `h:column` tag for each row in the table.

The `h:dataTable` tag shown in the preceding code example iterates through the list of books (`cart.items`) in the shopping cart and displays their titles, authors, and prices. Each time the `h:dataTable` tag iterates through the list of books, it renders one cell in each column.

The `h:dataTable` and `h:column` tags use facets to represent parts of the table that are not repeated or updated. These parts include headers, footers, and captions.

In the preceding example, `h:column` tags include `f:facet` tags for representing column headers or footers. The `h:column` tag allows you to control the styles of these headers and footers by supporting the `headerClass` and `footerClass` attributes. These

attributes accept space-separated lists of CSS classes, which will be applied to the header and footer cells of the corresponding column in the rendered table.

Facets can have only one child, so an `h:panelGroup` tag is needed if you want to group more than one component within an `f:facet`. Because the facet tag representing the footer includes more than one tag, the `h:panelGroup` tag is needed to group those tags. Finally, this `h:dataTable` tag includes an `f:facet` tag with its `name` attribute set to `caption`, causing a table caption to be rendered above the table.

This table is a classic use case for a data component because the number of books might not be known to the application developer or the page author when that application is developed. The data component can dynamically adjust the number of rows of the table to accommodate the underlying data.

The `value` attribute of an `h:dataTable` tag references the data to be included in the table. This data can take the form of any of the following:

- A list of beans
- An array of beans
- A single bean
- A `javax.faces.model.DataModel` object
- A `java.sql.ResultSet` object
- A `javax.servlet.jsp.jstl.sql.Result` object
- A `javax.sql.RowSet` object

All data sources for data components have a `DataModel` wrapper. Unless you explicitly construct a `DataModel` wrapper, the JavaServer Faces implementation will create one around data of any of the other acceptable types. See [Writing Bean Properties](#) for more information on how to write properties for use with a data component.

The `var` attribute specifies a name that is used by the components within the `h:dataTable` tag as an alias to the data referenced in the `value` attribute of `h:dataTable`.

In the example `h:dataTable` tag, the `value` attribute points to a list of books. The `var` attribute points to a single book in that list. As the `h:dataTable` tag iterates through the list, each reference to `item` points to the current book in the list.

The `h:dataTable` tag also has the ability to display only a subset of the underlying data. This feature is not shown in the preceding example. To display a subset of the data, you use the optional `first` and `rows` attributes.

The `first` attribute specifies the first row to be displayed. The `rows` attribute specifies the number of rows, starting with the first row, to be displayed. For example, if you wanted to display records 2 through 10 of the underlying data, you would set `first` to 2 and `rows` to 9. When you display a subset of the data in your pages, you might want to consider including a link or button that causes subsequent rows to display when clicked. By default, both `first` and `rows` are set to zero, and this causes all the rows of the underlying data to display.

[Table 10–7](#) shows the optional attributes for the `h:dataTable` tag.

Table 10–7 Optional Attributes for the `h:dataTable` Tag

Attribute	Defines Styles for
<code>captionClass</code>	Table caption
<code>columnClasses</code>	All the columns

Table 10–7 (Cont.) Optional Attributes for the h:dataTable Tag

Attribute	Defines Styles for
footerClass	Footer
headerClass	Header
rowClasses	Rows
styleClass	The entire table

Each of the attributes in [Table 10–7](#) can specify more than one style. If `columnClasses` or `rowClasses` specifies more than one style, the styles are applied to the columns or rows in the order that the styles are listed in the attribute. For example, if `columnClasses` specifies styles `list-column-center` and `list-column-right` and if the table has two columns, the first column will have style `list-column-center`, and the second column will have style `list-column-right`.

If the style attribute specifies more styles than there are columns or rows, the remaining styles will be assigned to columns or rows starting from the first column or row. Similarly, if the style attribute specifies fewer styles than there are columns or rows, the remaining columns or rows will be assigned styles starting from the first style.

10.2.13 Displaying Error Messages with the h:message and h:messages Tags

The `h:message` and `h:messages` tags are used to display error messages when conversion or validation fails. The `h:message` tag displays error messages related to a specific input component, whereas the `h:messages` tag displays the error messages for the entire page.

Here is an example `h:message` tag from the `guessnumber` application:

```
<p>
  <h:inputText id="userNo"
              title="Type a number from 0 to 10:"
              value="#{userNumberBean.userNumber}">
    <f:validateLongRange minimum="#{userNumberBean.minimum}"
                        maximum="#{userNumberBean.maximum}" />
  </h:inputText>
  <h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit"
                  action="response" />
</p>
<h:message showSummary="true" showDetail="false"
           style="color: #d20005;
           font-family: 'New Century Schoolbook', serif;
           font-style: oblique;
           text-decoration: overline"
           id="errors1"
           for="userNo" />
```

The `for` attribute refers to the ID of the component that generated the error message. The error message is displayed at the same location that the `h:message` tag appears in the page. In this case, the error message will appear after the **Submit** button.

The `style` attribute allows you to specify the style of the text of the message. In the example in this section, the text will be a shade of red, New Century Schoolbook, serif font family, and oblique style, and a line will appear over the text. The message and messages tags support many other attributes for defining styles. For more information on these attributes, refer to the documentation at

<http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaxserverfaces/2.2/vldocs/facelists/>.

Another attribute supported by the `h:messages` tag is the `layout` attribute. Its default value is `list`, which indicates that the messages are displayed in a bullet list using the HTML `ul` and `li` elements. If you set the attribute value to `table`, the messages will be rendered in a table using the HTML `table` element.

The preceding example shows a standard validator that is registered on the input component. The message tag displays the error message that is associated with this validator when the validator cannot validate the input component's value. In general, when you register a converter or validator on a component, you are queueing the error messages associated with the converter or validator on the component. The `h:message` and `h:messages` tags display the appropriate error messages that are queued on the component when the validators or converters registered on that component fail to convert or validate the component's value.

Standard error messages are provided with standard converters and standard validators. An application architect can override these standard messages and supply error messages for custom converters and validators by registering custom error messages with the application.

10.2.14 Creating Bookmarkable URLs with the `h:button` and `h:link` Tags

The ability to create bookmarkable URLs refers to the ability to generate links based on a specified navigation outcome and on component parameters.

In HTTP, most browsers by default send GET requests for URL retrieval and POST requests for data processing. The GET requests can have query parameters and can be cached, which is not advised for POST requests, which send data to servers for processing. The other JavaServer Faces tags capable of generating links use either simple GET requests, as in the case of `h:outputLink`, or POST requests, as in the case of `h:commandLink` or `h:commandButton` tags. GET requests with query parameters provide finer granularity to URL strings. These URLs are created with one or more `name=value` parameters appended to the simple URL after a `?` character and separated by either `&`; or `&` strings.

To create a bookmarkable URL, use an `h:link` or `h:button` tag. Both of these tags can generate a link based on the `outcome` attribute of the component. For example:

```
<h:link outcome="somepage" value="Message" />
```

The `h:link` tag will generate a URL link that points to the `somepage.xhtml` file on the same server. The following sample HTML is generated from the preceding tag, assuming that the application name is `simplebookmark`:

```
<a href="/simplebookmark/faces/somepage.xhtml">Message</a>
```

This is a simple GET request that cannot pass any data from page to page. To create more complex GET requests and utilize the complete functionality of the `h:link` tag, use view parameters.

10.2.15 Using View Parameters to Configure Bookmarkable URLs

To pass a parameter from one page to another, use the `includeViewParams` attribute in your `h:link` tag and, in addition, use an `f:param` tag to specify the name and value to be passed. Here the `h:link` tag specifies the outcome page as `personal.xhtml` and provides a parameter named `Result` whose value is a managed bean property:

```
<h:body>
```

```

<h:form>
  <h:graphicImage url="#{resource['images:duke.waving.gif']}"
    alt="Duke waving his hand"/>
  <h2>Hello, #{hello.name}!</h2>
  <p>I've made your
    <h:link outcome="personal" value="personal greeting page!"
      includeViewParams="true">
      <f:param name="Result" value="#{hello.name}"/>
    </h:link>
  </p>
  <h:commandButton id="back" value="Back" action="index" />
</h:form>
</h:body>

```

If the `includeViewParams` attribute is set on the component, the view parameters are added to the hyperlink. Therefore, the resulting URL will look something like this if the value of `hello.name` is Timmy:

```
http://localhost:8080/bookmarks/faces/personal.xhtml?Result=Timmy
```

On the outcome page, specify the core tags `f:metadata` and `f:viewparam` as the source of parameters for configuring the URLs. View parameters are declared as part of `f:metadata` for a page, as shown in the following example:

```

<f:metadata>
  <f:viewParam name="Result" value="#{hello.name}"/>
</f:metadata>

```

This allows you to specify the bean property value on the page:

```
<h:outputText value="Howdy, #{hello.name}!" />
```

As a view parameter, the name also appears in the page's URL. If you edit the URL, you change the output on the page.

Because the URL can be the result of various parameter values, the order of the URL creation has been predefined. The order in which the various parameter values are read is as follows:

1. Component
2. Navigation-case parameters
3. View parameters

10.2.16 The bookmarks Example Application

The `bookmarks` example application modifies the `hello1` application described in [A Web Module That Uses JavaServer Faces Technology: The hello1 Example](#) to use a bookmarkable URL that uses view parameters.

Like `hello1`, the application includes the `Hello.java` managed bean, an `index.xhtml` page, and a `response.xhtml` page. In addition, it includes a `personal.xhtml` page, to which a bookmarkable URL and view parameters are passed from the `response.xhtml` page, as described in [Using View Parameters to Configure Bookmarkable URLs](#).

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the `bookmarks` example. The source code for this example is available in the `tut-install/examples/web/jsf/bookmarks/` directory.

10.2.16.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the bookmarks Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, choose **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf
```

3. Select the `bookmarks` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `bookmarks` project and select **Build**.

This option builds the example application and deploys it to your GlassFish Server instance.

10.2.16.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the bookmarks Example Using Maven and the `asadmin` Command

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf/bookmarks/
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `bookmarks.war`, that is located in the `target` directory. It then deploys it to your GlassFish Server instance.

10.2.16.3 To Run the bookmarks Example

1. Enter the following URL in your web browser:

```
http://localhost:8080/bookmarks
```

2. In the text field, enter a name and click **Submit**.
3. On the response page, move your mouse over the "personal greeting page" link to view the URL with the `view` parameter, then click the link.

The `personal.xhtml` page opens, displaying a greeting to the name you typed.

4. In the URL field, modify the **Result** parameter value and press **Return**.

The name in the greeting changes to what you typed.

10.2.17 Resource Relocation Using `h:outputScript` and `h:outputStylesheet` Tags

Resource relocation refers to the ability of a JavaServer Faces application to specify the location where a resource can be rendered. Resource relocation can be defined with the following HTML tags:

- `h:outputScript`
- `h:outputStylesheet`

These tags have `name` and `target` attributes, which can be used to define the render location. For a complete list of attributes for these tags, see the documentation at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaxserverfaces/2.2/vdldocs/facelets/>.

For the `h:outputScript` tag, the `name` and `target` attributes define where the output of a resource may appear. Here is an example:

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
      xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html">
  <h:head id="head">
    <title>Resource Relocation</title>
  </h:head>
  <h:body id="body">
    <h:form id="form">
      <h:outputScript name="hello.js"/>
      <h:outputStylesheet name="hello.css"/>
    </h:form>
  </h:body>
</html>
```

Since the `target` attribute is not defined in the tags, the style sheet `hello.css` is rendered in the head element of the page, and the `hello.js` script is rendered in the body of the page.

Here is the HTML generated by the preceding code:

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
  <head>
    <title>Resource Relocation</title>
    <link type="text/css" rel="stylesheet"
          href="/context-root/faces/javax.faces.resource/hello.css"/>
  </head>
  <body>
    <form id="form" name="form" method="post"
          action="..." enctype="...">
      <script type="text/javascript"
            src="/context-root/faces/javax.faces.resource/hello.js">
      </script>
    </form>
  </body>
</html>
```

If you set the `target` attribute for the `h:outputScript` tag, the incoming GET request provides the location parameter. Here is an example:

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
      xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html">
  <h:head id="head">
    <title>Resource Relocation</title>
  </h:head>
  <h:body id="body">
    <h:form id="form">
      <h:outputScript name="hello.js" target="#{param.location}"/>
      <h:outputStylesheet name="hello.css"/>
    </h:form>
  </h:body>
</html>
```

In this case, if the incoming request does not provide a location parameter, the default locations will still apply: The style sheet is rendered in the head, and the script is rendered inline. However, if the incoming request specifies the location parameter as the head, both the style sheet and the script will be rendered in the head element.

The HTML generated by the preceding code is as follows:

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
```

```

<head>
  <title>Resource Relocation</title>
  <link type="text/css" rel="stylesheet"
        href="/context-root/faces/javax.faces.resource/hello.css"/>
  <script type="text/javascript"
        src="/context-root/faces/javax.faces.resource/hello.js">
  </script>
</head>
<body>
  <form id="form" name="form" method="post"
        action="..." enctype="...">
  </form>
</body>
</html>

```

Similarly, if the incoming request provides the location parameter as the body, the script will be rendered in the body element.

The preceding section describes simple uses for resource relocation. That feature can add even more functionality for the components and pages. A page author does not have to know the location of a resource or its placement.

By using a `@ResourceDependency` annotation for the components, component authors can define the resources for the component, such as a style sheet and script. This allows the page authors freedom from defining resource locations.

10.3 Using Core Tags

The tags included in the JavaServer Faces core tag library are used to perform core actions that are not performed by HTML tags.

[Table 10–8](#) lists the event handling core tags.

Table 10–8 Event Handling Core Tags

Tag	Function
f:actionListener	Adds an action listener to a parent component
f:phaseListener	Adds a <code>PhaseListener</code> to a page
f:setPropertyActionListener	Registers a special action listener whose sole purpose is to push a value into a managed bean when a form is submitted
f:valueChangeListener	Adds a value-change listener to a parent component

[Table 10–9](#) lists the data conversion core tags.

Table 10–9 Data Conversion Core Tags

Tag	Function
f:converter	Adds an arbitrary converter to the parent component
f:convertDateTime	Adds a <code>DateTimeConverter</code> instance to the parent component
f:convertNumber	Adds a <code>NumberConverter</code> instance to the parent component

[Table 10–10](#) lists the facet core tags.

Table 10–10 Facet Core Tags

Tag	Function
f:facet	Adds a nested component that has a special relationship to its enclosing tag
f:metadata	Registers a facet on a parent component

[Table 10–11](#) lists the core tags that represent items in a list.

Table 10–11 Core Tags that Represent Items in a List

Tag	Function
f:selectItem	Represents one item in a list of items
f:selectItems	Represents a set of items

[Table 10–12](#) lists the validator core tags.

Table 10–12 Validator Core Tags

Tag	Function
f:validateDoubleRange	Adds a <code>DoubleRangeValidator</code> to a component
f:validateLength	Adds a <code>LengthValidator</code> to a component
f:validateLongRange	Adds a <code>LongRangeValidator</code> to a component
f:validator	Adds a custom validator to a component
f:validateRegex	Adds a <code>RegexValidator</code> to a component
f:validateBean	Delegates the validation of a local value to a <code>BeanValidator</code>
f:validateRequired	Enforces the presence of a value in a component

[Table 10–13](#) lists the core tags that fall into other categories.

Table 10–13 Miscellaneous Core Tags

Tag Category	Tag	Function
Attribute configuration	f:attribute	Adds configurable attributes to a parent component
Localization	f:loadBundle	Specifies a <code>ResourceBundle</code> that is exposed as a <code>Map</code>
Parameter substitution	f:param	Substitutes parameters into a <code>MessageFormat</code> instance and adds query string name-value pairs to a URL
Ajax	f:ajax	Associates an Ajax action with a single component or a group of components based on placement
Event	f:event	Allows installing a <code>ComponentSystemEventListener</code> on a component

These tags, which are used in conjunction with component tags, are explained in other sections of this tutorial. [Table 10–14](#) lists the sections that explain how to use specific core tags.

Table 10–14 *Where the Core Tags Are Explained*

Tags	Where Explained
Event handling tags	Registering Listeners on Components
Data conversion tags	Using the Standard Converters
f:facet	Using Data-Bound Table Components and Laying Out Components with the h:panelGrid and h:panelGroup Tags
f:loadBundle	Setting the Resource Bundle
f:metadata	Using View Parameters to Configure Bookmarkable URLs
f:param	Displaying a Formatted Message with the h:outputFormat Tag
f:selectItem and f:selectItems	Using the f:selectItem and f:selectItems Tags
Validator tags	Using the Standard Validators
f:ajax	Chapter 13, "Using Ajax with JavaServer Faces Technology"

Using Converters, Listeners, and Validators

The previous chapter described components and explained how to add them to a web page. This chapter provides information on adding more functionality to the components through converters, listeners, and validators.

- Converters are used to convert data that is received from the input components.
- Listeners are used to listen to the events happening in the page and perform actions as defined.
- Validators are used to validate the data that is received from the input components.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Using the Standard Converters](#)
- [Registering Listeners on Components](#)
- [Using the Standard Validators](#)
- [Referencing a Managed Bean Method](#)

11.1 Using the Standard Converters

The JavaServer Faces implementation provides a set of `Converter` implementations that you can use to convert component data. For more information on the conceptual details of the conversion model, see [Conversion Model](#). The standard `Converter` implementations, located in the `javax.faces.convert` package, are as follows:

- `BigDecimalConverter`
- `BigIntegerConverter`
- `BooleanConverter`
- `ByteConverter`
- `CharacterConverter`
- `DateTimeConverter`
- `DoubleConverter`
- `EnumConverter`
- `FloatConverter`
- `IntegerConverter`
- `LongConverter`

- `NumberConverter`
- `ShortConverter`

A standard error message is associated with each of these converters. If you have registered one of these converters onto a component on your page, and the converter is not able to convert the component's value, the converter's error message will display on the page. For example, the following error message appears if `BigIntegerConverter` fails to convert a value:

```
{0} must be a number consisting of one or more digits
```

In this case, the `{0}` substitution parameter will be replaced with the name of the input component on which the converter is registered.

Two of the standard converters (`DateTimeConverter` and `NumberConverter`) have their own tags, which allow you to configure the format of the component data using the tag attributes. For more information about using `DateTimeConverter`, see [Using DateTimeConverter](#). For more information about using `NumberConverter`, see [Using NumberConverter](#). The following section explains how to convert a component's value, including how to register other standard converters with a component.

11.1.1 Converting a Component's Value

To use a particular converter to convert a component's value, you need to register the converter onto the component. You can register any of the standard converters in one of the following ways:

- Nest one of the standard converter tags inside the component's tag. These tags are `f:convertDateTime` and `f:convertNumber`, which are described in [Using DateTimeConverter](#) and [Using NumberConverter](#), respectively.
- Bind the value of the component to a managed bean property of the same type as the converter.
- Refer to the converter from the component tag's `converter` attribute.
- Nest an `f:converter` tag inside of the component tag, and use either the `f:converter` tag's `converterId` attribute or its binding attribute to refer to the converter.

As an example of the second technique, if you want a component's data to be converted to an `Integer`, you can simply bind the component's value to a managed bean property. Here is an example:

```
Integer age = 0;  
public Integer getAge(){ return age;}  
public void setAge(Integer age) {this.age = age;}
```

If the component is not bound to a bean property, you can use the third technique by using the `converter` attribute directly on the component tag:

```
<h:inputText converter="javax.faces.convert.IntegerConverter" />
```

This example shows the `converter` attribute referring to the fully qualified class name of the converter. The `converter` attribute can also take the ID of the component.

The data from the `h:inputText` tag in the this example will be converted to a `java.lang.Integer` value. The `Integer` type is a supported type of `NumberConverter`. If you don't need to specify any formatting instructions using the `f:convertNumber` tag attributes, and if one of the standard converters will suffice, you can simply reference that converter by using the component tag's `converter` attribute.

Finally, you can nest an `f:converter` tag within the component tag and use either the converter tag's `converterId` attribute or its `binding` attribute to reference the converter.

The `converterId` attribute must reference the converter's ID. Here is an example:

```
<h:inputText value="#{loginBean.age}" />
  <f:converter converterId="Integer" />
</h:inputText>
```

Instead of using the `converterId` attribute, the `f:converter` tag can use the `binding` attribute. The `binding` attribute must resolve to a bean property that accepts and returns an appropriate `Converter` instance.

11.1.2 Using `DateTimeConverter`

You can convert a component's data to a `java.util.Date` by nesting the `convertDateTime` tag inside the component tag. The `convertDateTime` tag has several attributes that allow you to specify the format and type of the data. [Table 11-1](#) lists the attributes.

Here is a simple example of a `convertDateTime` tag:

```
<h:outputText value="#{cashier.shipDate}">
  <f:convertDateTime type="date" dateStyle="full" />
</h:outputText>
```

When binding the `DateTimeConverter` to a component, ensure that the managed bean property to which the component is bound is of type `java.util.Date`. In the preceding example, `cashier.shipDate` must be of type `java.util.Date`.

The example tag can display the following output:

```
Saturday, September 25, 2011
```

You can also display the same date and time by using the following tag where the date format is specified:

```
<h:outputText value="#{cashier.shipDate}">
  <f:convertDateTime pattern="EEEEEEEE, MMM dd, yyyy" />
</h:outputText>
```

If you want to display the example date in Spanish, you can use the `locale` attribute:

```
<h:outputText value="#{cashier.shipDate}">
  <f:convertDateTime dateStyle="full"
    locale="es"
    timeStyle="long" type="both" />
</h:outputText>
```

This tag would display the following output:

```
jueves 27 de octubre de 2011 15:07:04 GMT
```

Refer to the "Customizing Formats" lesson of the *Java Tutorial* at <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/i18n/format/simpleDateFormat.html> for more information on how to format the output using the `pattern` attribute of the `convertDateTime` tag.

Table 11–1 Attributes for the `f:convertDateTime` Tag

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>binding</code>	<code>DateTimeConverter</code>	Used to bind a converter to a managed bean property.
<code>dateStyle</code>	<code>String</code>	Defines the format, as specified by <code>java.text.DateFormat</code> , of a date or the date part of a date string. Applied only if <code>type</code> is <code>date</code> or <code>both</code> and if <code>pattern</code> is not defined. Valid values: <code>default</code> , <code>short</code> , <code>medium</code> , <code>long</code> , and <code>full</code> . If no value is specified, <code>default</code> is used.
<code>for</code>	<code>String</code>	Used with composite components. Refers to one of the objects within the composite component inside which this tag is nested.
<code>locale</code>	<code>String</code> or <code>Locale</code>	Locale whose predefined styles for dates and times are used during formatting or parsing. If not specified, the <code>Locale</code> returned by <code>FacesContext.getLocale</code> will be used.
<code>pattern</code>	<code>String</code>	Custom formatting pattern that determines how the date/time string should be formatted and parsed. If this attribute is specified, <code>dateStyle</code> , <code>timeStyle</code> , and <code>type</code> attributes are ignored.
<code>timeStyle</code>	<code>String</code>	Defines the format, as specified by <code>java.text.DateFormat</code> , of a time or the time part of a date string. Applied only if <code>type</code> is <code>time</code> and <code>pattern</code> is not defined. Valid values: <code>default</code> , <code>short</code> , <code>medium</code> , <code>long</code> , and <code>full</code> . If no value is specified, <code>default</code> is used.
<code>timeZone</code>	<code>String</code> or <code>TimeZone</code>	Time zone in which to interpret any time information in the date string.
<code>type</code>	<code>String</code>	Specifies whether the string value will contain a date, a time, or both. Valid values are <code>date</code> , <code>time</code> , or <code>both</code> . If no value is specified, <code>date</code> is used.

11.1.3 Using `NumberConverter`

You can convert a component's data to a `java.lang.Number` by nesting the `convertNumber` tag inside the component tag. The `convertNumber` tag has several attributes that allow you to specify the format and type of the data. [Table 11–2](#) lists the attributes.

The following example uses a `convertNumber` tag to display the total prices of the contents of a shopping cart:

```
<h:outputText value="#{cart.total}">
  <f:convertNumber currencySymbol="$" type="currency"/>
</h:outputText>
```

When binding the `NumberConverter` to a component, ensure that the managed bean property to which the component is bound is of a primitive type or has a type of `java.lang.Number`. In the preceding example, `cart.total` is of type `double`.

Here is an example of a number that this tag can display:

\$934

This result can also be displayed by using the following tag, where the currency pattern is specified:

```
<h:outputText id="cartTotal"
  value="#{cart.Total}">
  <f:convertNumber pattern="$####" />
</h:outputText>
```

See the "Customizing Formats" lesson of the *Java Tutorial* at <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/i18n/format/decimalFormat.html> for more information on how to format the output by using the `pattern` attribute of the `convertNumber` tag.

Table 11–2 Attributes for the `f:convertNumber` Tag

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>binding</code>	<code>NumberConverter</code>	Used to bind a converter to a managed bean property.
<code>currencyCode</code>	<code>String</code>	ISO 4217 currency code, used only when formatting currencies.
<code>currencySymbol</code>	<code>String</code>	Currency symbol, applied only when formatting currencies.
<code>for</code>	<code>String</code>	Used with composite components. Refers to one of the objects within the composite component inside which this tag is nested.
<code>groupingUsed</code>	<code>Boolean</code>	Specifies whether formatted output contains grouping separators.
<code>integerOnly</code>	<code>Boolean</code>	Specifies whether only the integer part of the value will be parsed.
<code>locale</code>	<code>String</code> or <code>Locale</code>	Locale whose number styles are used to format or parse data.
<code>maxFractionDigits</code>	<code>int</code>	Maximum number of digits formatted in the fractional part of the output.
<code>maxIntegerDigits</code>	<code>int</code>	Maximum number of digits formatted in the integer part of the output.
<code>minFractionDigits</code>	<code>int</code>	Minimum number of digits formatted in the fractional part of the output.
<code>minIntegerDigits</code>	<code>int</code>	Minimum number of digits formatted in the integer part of the output.
<code>pattern</code>	<code>String</code>	Custom formatting pattern that determines how the number string is formatted and parsed.
<code>type</code>	<code>String</code>	Specifies whether the string value is parsed and formatted as a number, currency, or percentage. If not specified, number is used.

11.2 Registering Listeners on Components

An application developer can implement listeners as classes or as managed bean methods. If a listener is a managed bean method, the page author references the method from either the component's `valueChangeListener` attribute or its `actionListener` attribute. If the listener is a class, the page author can reference the listener from either an `f:valueChangeListener` tag or an `f:actionListener` tag and nest the tag inside the component tag to register the listener on the component.

[Referencing a Method That Handles an Action Event](#) and [Referencing a Method That Handles a Value-Change Event](#) explain how a page author uses the `valueChangeListener` and `actionListener` attributes to reference managed bean methods that handle events.

This section explains how to register a `NameChanged` value-change listener and a `BookChange` action listener implementation on components. The Duke's Bookstore case study includes both of these listeners.

11.2.1 Registering a Value-Change Listener on a Component

A page author can register a `ValueChangeListener` implementation on a component that implements `EditableValueHolder` by nesting an `f:valueChangeListener` tag within the component's tag on the page. The `f:valueChangeListener` tag supports the attributes shown in [Table 11-3](#), one of which must be used.

Table 11-3 *Attributes for the `f:valueChangeListener` Tag*

Attribute	Description
<code>type</code>	References the fully qualified class name of a <code>ValueChangeListener</code> implementation. Can accept a literal or a value expression.
<code>binding</code>	References an object that implements <code>ValueChangeListener</code> . Can accept only a value expression, which must point to a managed bean property that accepts and returns a <code>ValueChangeListener</code> implementation.

The following example shows a value-change listener registered on a component:

```
<h:inputText id="name"
    size="30"
    value="#{cashier.name}"
    required="true"
    requiredMessage="#{bundle.ReqCustomerName}">
    <f:valueChangeListener
        type="dukesbookstore.listeners.NameChanged" />
</h:inputText>
```

In the example, the core tag `type` attribute specifies the custom `NameChanged` listener as the `ValueChangeListener` implementation registered on the `name` component.

After this component tag is processed and local values have been validated, its corresponding component instance will queue the `ValueChangeEvent` associated with the specified `ValueChangeListener` to the component.

The `binding` attribute is used to bind a `ValueChangeListener` implementation to a managed bean property. This attribute works in a similar way to the `binding` attribute supported by the standard converter tags. See [Binding Component Values and Instances to Managed Bean Properties](#) for more information.

11.2.2 Registering an Action Listener on a Component

A page author can register an `ActionListener` implementation on a command component by nesting an `f:actionListener` tag within the component's tag on the page. Similarly to the `f:valueChangeListener` tag, the `f:actionListener` tag supports both the `type` and `binding` attributes. One of these attributes must be used to reference the action listener.

Here is an example of an `h:commandLink` tag that references an `ActionListener` implementation:

```
<h:commandLink id="Duke" action="bookstore">
    <f:actionListener
        type="dukesbookstore.listeners.LinkBookChangeListener" />
    <h:outputText value="#{bundle.Book201}" />
</h:commandLink>
```

The type attribute of the `f:actionListener` tag specifies the fully qualified class name of the `ActionListener` implementation. Similarly to the `f:valueChangeListener` tag, the `f:actionListener` tag also supports the binding attribute. See [Binding Converters, Listeners, and Validators to Managed Bean Properties](#) for more information about binding listeners to managed bean properties.

In addition to the `actionListener` tag that allows you register a custom listener onto a component, the core tag library includes the `f:setPropertyActionListener` tag. You use this tag to register a special action listener onto the `ActionSource` instance associated with a component. When the component is activated, the listener will store the object referenced by the tag's `value` attribute into the object referenced by the tag's `target` attribute.

The `bookcatalog.xhtml` page of the Duke's Bookstore application uses `f:setPropertyActionListener` with two components: the `h:commandLink` component used to link to the `bookdetails.xhtml` page and the `h:commandButton` component used to add a book to the cart:

```
<h:dataTable id="books"
  value="#{bookRequestBean.books}"
  var="book"
  headerClass="list-header"
  styleClass="list-background"
  rowClasses="list-row-even, list-row-odd"
  border="1"
  summary="#{bundle.BookCatalog}" >
  ...
  <h:column>
    <f:facet name="header">
      <h:outputText value="#{bundle.ItemTitle}"/>
    </f:facet>
    <h:commandLink action="#{catalog.details}"
      value="#{book.title}">
      <f:setPropertyActionListener target="#{requestScope.book}"
        value="#{book}"/>
    </h:commandLink>
  </h:column>
  ...
  <h:column>
    <f:facet name="header">
      <h:outputText value="#{bundle.CartAdd}"/>
    </f:facet>
    <h:commandButton id="add"
      action="#{catalog.add}"
      value="#{bundle.CartAdd}">
      <f:setPropertyActionListener target="#{requestScope.book}"
        value="#{book}"/>
    </h:commandButton>
  </h:column>
```

The `h:commandLink` and `h:commandButton` tags are within an `h:dataTable` tag, which iterates over the list of books. The `var` attribute refers to a single book in the list of books.

The object referenced by the `var` attribute of an `h:dataTable` tag is in page scope. However, in this case, you need to put this object into request scope so that when the user activates the `commandLink` component to go to `bookdetails.xhtml` or activates the `commandButton` component to go to `bookcatalog.xhtml`, the book data is available to those pages. Therefore, the `f:setPropertyActionListener` tag is used to set the

current book object into request scope when the `commandLink` or `commandButton` component is activated.

In the preceding example, the `f:setPropertyActionListener` tag's `value` attribute references the book object. The `f:setPropertyActionListener` tag's `target` attribute references the value expression `requestScope.book`, which is where the book object referenced by the `value` attribute is stored when the `commandLink` or the `commandButton` component is activated.

11.3 Using the Standard Validators

JavaServer Faces technology provides a set of standard classes and associated tags that page authors and application developers can use to validate a component's data.

Table 11-4 lists all the standard validator classes and the tags that allow you to use the validators from the page.

Table 11-4 The Validator Classes

Validator Class	Tag	Function
<code>BeanValidator</code>	<code>validateBean</code>	Registers a bean validator for the component.
<code>DoubleRangeValidator</code>	<code>validateDoubleRange</code>	Checks whether the local value of a component is within a certain range. The value must be floating-point or convertible to floating-point.
<code>LengthValidator</code>	<code>validateLength</code>	Checks whether the length of a component's local value is within a certain range. The value must be a <code>java.lang.String</code> .
<code>LongRangeValidator</code>	<code>validateLongRange</code>	Checks whether the local value of a component is within a certain range. The value must be any numeric type or <code>String</code> that can be converted to a long.
<code>RegexValidator</code>	<code>validateRegEx</code>	Checks whether the local value of a component is a match against a regular expression from the <code>java.util.regex</code> package.
<code>RequiredValidator</code>	<code>validateRequired</code>	Ensures that the local value is not empty on an <code>EditableValueHolder</code> component.

All these validator classes implement the `Validator` interface. Component writers and application developers can also implement this interface to define their own set of constraints for a component's value.

Similar to the standard converters, each of these validators has one or more standard error messages associated with it. If you have registered one of these validators onto a component on your page, and the validator is unable to validate the component's value, the validator's error message will display on the page. For example, the error message that displays when the component's value exceeds the maximum value allowed by `LongRangeValidator` is as follows:

```
{1}: Validation Error: Value is greater than allowable maximum of "{0}"
```

In this case, the `{1}` substitution parameter is replaced by the component's label or id, and the `{0}` substitution parameter is replaced with the maximum value allowed by the validator.

See [Displaying Error Messages with the `h:message` and `h:messages` Tags](#) for information on how to display validation error messages on the page when validation fails.

Instead of using the standard validators, you can use Bean Validation to validate data. See [Using Bean Validation](#) for more information.

11.3.1 Validating a Component's Value

To validate a component's value using a particular validator, you need to register that validator on the component. You can do this in one of the following ways:

- Nest the validator's corresponding tag (shown in [Table 11-4](#)) inside the component's tag. [Using LongRangeValidator](#) explains how to use the `validateLongRange` tag. You can use the other standard tags in the same way.
- Refer to a method that performs the validation from the component tag's `validator` attribute.
- Nest a validator tag inside the component tag, and use either the validator tag's `validatorId` attribute or its `binding` attribute to refer to the validator.

See [Referencing a Method That Performs Validation](#) for more information on using the `validator` attribute.

The `validatorId` attribute works similarly to the `converterId` attribute of the `converter` tag, as described in [Converting a Component's Value](#).

Keep in mind that validation can be performed only on components that implement `EditableValueHolder`, because these components accept values that can be validated.

11.3.2 Using LongRangeValidator

The following example shows how to use the `validateLongRange` validator on an input component named `quantity`:

```
<h:inputText id="quantity" size="4" value="#{item.quantity}">
  <f:validateLongRange minimum="1"/>
</h:inputText>
<h:message for="quantity"/>
```

This tag requires the user to enter a number that is at least 1. The `validateLongRange` tag also has a `maximum` attribute, which sets a maximum value for the input.

The attributes of all the standard validator tags accept EL value expressions. This means that the attributes can reference managed bean properties rather than specify literal values. For example, the `validateLongRange` tag in the preceding example can reference managed bean properties called `minimum` and `maximum` to get the minimum and maximum values acceptable to the validator implementation, as shown in this snippet from the `guessnumber` example:

```
<h:inputText id="userNo"
  title="Type a number from 0 to 10:"
  value="#{userNumberBean.userNumber}">
  <f:validateLongRange minimum="#{userNumberBean.minimum}"
    maximum="#{userNumberBean.maximum}" />
</h:inputText>
```

11.4 Referencing a Managed Bean Method

A component tag has a set of attributes for referencing managed bean methods that can perform certain functions for the component associated with the tag. These attributes are summarized in [Table 11–5](#).

Table 11–5 Component Tag Attributes That Reference Managed Bean Methods

Attribute	Function
<code>action</code>	Refers to a managed bean method that performs navigation processing for the component and returns a logical outcome <code>String</code>
<code>actionListener</code>	Refers to a managed bean method that handles action events
<code>validator</code>	Refers to a managed bean method that performs validation on the component's value
<code>valueChangeListener</code>	Refers to a managed bean method that handles value-change events

Only components that implement `ActionSource` can use the `action` and `actionListener` attributes. Only components that implement `EditableValueHolder` can use the `validator` or `valueChangeListener` attributes.

The component tag refers to a managed bean method using a method expression as a value of one of the attributes. The method referenced by an attribute must follow a particular signature, which is defined by the tag attribute's definition in the documentation at

<http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaxserverfaces/2.2/vdldocs/faceslets/>. For example, the definition of the `validator` attribute of the `inputText` tag is the following:

```
void validate(javax.faces.context.FacesContext,
             javax.faces.component.UIComponent, java.lang.Object)
```

The following sections give examples of how to use the attributes.

11.4.1 Referencing a Method That Performs Navigation

If your page includes a component, such as a button or a link, that causes the application to navigate to another page when the component is activated, the tag corresponding to this component must include an `action` attribute. This attribute does one of the following:

- Specifies a logical outcome `String` that tells the application which page to access next
- References a managed bean method that performs some processing and returns a logical outcome `String`

The following example shows how to reference a navigation method:

```
<h:commandButton value="#{bundle.Submit}"
                 action="#{cashier.submit}" />
```

See [Writing a Method to Handle Navigation](#) for information on how to write such a method.

11.4.2 Referencing a Method That Handles an Action Event

If a component on your page generates an action event, and if that event is handled by a managed bean method, you refer to the method by using the component's `actionListener` attribute.

The following example shows how such a method could be referenced:

```
<h:commandLink id="Duke" action="bookstore"
    actionListener="#{actionBean.chooseBookFromLink}" />
```

The `actionListener` attribute of this component tag references the `chooseBookFromLink` method using a method expression. The `chooseBookFromLink` method handles the event when the user clicks the link rendered by this component. See [Writing a Method to Handle an Action Event](#) for information on how to write such a method.

11.4.3 Referencing a Method That Performs Validation

If the input of one of the components on your page is validated by a managed bean method, refer to the method from the component's tag by using the `validator` attribute.

The following simplified example from [The guessnumber-cdi CDI Example](#) shows how to reference a method that performs validation on `inputGuess`, an input component:

```
<h:inputText id="inputGuess"
    value="#{userNumberBean.userNumber}"
    required="true" size="3"
    disabled="#{userNumberBean.number eq userNumberBean.userNumber ...}"
    validator="#{userNumberBean.validateNumberRange}" />
</h:inputText>
```

The managed bean method `validateNumberRange` verifies that the input value is within the valid range, which changes each time another guess is made. See [Writing a Method to Perform Validation](#) for information on how to write such a method.

11.4.4 Referencing a Method That Handles a Value-Change Event

If you want a component on your page to generate a value-change event and you want that event to be handled by a managed bean method instead of a `ValueChangeListener` implementation, you refer to the method by using the component's `valueChangeListener` attribute:

```
<h:inputText id="name"
    size="30"
    value="#{cashier.name}"
    required="true"
    valueChangeListener="#{cashier.processValueChange}" />
</h:inputText>
```

The `valueChangeListener` attribute of this component tag references the `processValueChange` method of `CashierBean` by using a method expression. The `processValueChange` method handles the event of a user entering a name in the input field rendered by this component.

[Writing a Method to Handle a Value-Change Event](#) describes how to implement a method that handles a `ValueChangeEvent`.

Developing with JavaServer Faces Technology

This chapter provides an overview of managed beans and explains how to write methods and properties of managed beans that are used by a JavaServer Faces application. This chapter also introduces the Bean Validation feature.

[Chapter 10, "Using JavaServer Faces Technology in Web Pages"](#) and [Chapter 11, "Using Converters, Listeners, and Validators"](#) show how to add components to a page and connect them to server-side objects by using component tags and core tags, as well as how to provide additional functionality to the components through converters, listeners, and validators. Developing a JavaServer Faces application also involves the task of programming the server-side objects: managed beans, converters, event handlers, and validators.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Managed Beans in JavaServer Faces Technology](#)
- [Writing Bean Properties](#)
- [Writing Managed Bean Methods](#)
- [Using Bean Validation](#)

12.1 Managed Beans in JavaServer Faces Technology

A typical JavaServer Faces application includes one or more managed beans, each of which can be associated with the components used in a particular page. This section introduces the basic concepts of creating, configuring, and using managed beans in an application.

12.1.1 Creating a Managed Bean

A managed bean is created with a constructor with no arguments, a set of properties, and a set of methods that perform functions for a component. Each of the managed bean properties can be bound to one of the following:

- A component value
- A component instance
- A converter instance
- A listener instance
- A validator instance

The most common functions that managed bean methods perform include the following:

- Validating a component's data
- Handling an event fired by a component
- Performing processing to determine the next page to which the application must navigate

As with all JavaBeans components, a property consists of a private data field and a set of accessor methods, as shown by this code:

```
private Integer userNumber = null;
...
public void setUserNumber(Integer user_number) {
    userNumber = user_number;
}
public Integer getUserNumber() {
    return userNumber;
}
```

When bound to a component's value, a bean property can be any of the basic primitive and numeric types or any Java object type for which the application has access to an appropriate converter. For example, a property can be of type `java.util.Date` if the application has access to a converter that can convert the `Date` type to a `String` and back again. See [Writing Bean Properties](#) for information on which types are accepted by which component tags.

When a bean property is bound to a component instance, the property's type must be the same as the component object. For example, if a `javax.faces.component.UISelectBoolean` component is bound to the property, the property must accept and return a `UISelectBoolean` object. Likewise, if the property is bound to a converter, validator, or listener instance, the property must be of the appropriate converter, validator, or listener type.

For more information on writing beans and their properties, see [Writing Bean Properties](#).

12.1.2 Using the EL to Reference Managed Beans

To bind component values and objects to managed bean properties or to reference managed bean methods from component tags, page authors use the Expression Language syntax. As explained in [Overview of the EL](#), the following are some of the features that the EL offers:

- Deferred evaluation of expressions
- The ability to use a value expression to both read and write data
- Method expressions

Deferred evaluation of expressions is important because the JavaServer Faces lifecycle is split into several phases in which component event handling, data conversion and validation, and data propagation to external objects are all performed in an orderly fashion. The implementation must be able to delay the evaluation of expressions until the proper phase of the lifecycle has been reached. Therefore, the implementation's tag attributes always use deferred-evaluation syntax, which is distinguished by the `#{}` delimiter.

To store data in external objects, almost all JavaServer Faces tag attributes use lvalue expressions, which are expressions that allow both getting and setting data on external objects.

Finally, some component tag attributes accept method expressions that reference methods that handle component events or validate or convert component data.

To illustrate a JavaServer Faces tag using the EL, the following tag references a method that validates user input:

```
<h:inputText id="inputGuess"
  value="#{userNumberBean.userNumber}"
  required="true" size="3"
  disabled="#{userNumberBean.number eq userNumberBean.userNumber}"
  validator="#{userNumberBean.validateNumberRange}">
</h:inputText>
```

This tag binds the `inputGuess` component's value to the `UserNumberBean.userNumber` managed bean property by using an lvalue expression. The tag uses a method expression to refer to the `UserNumberBean.validateNumberRange` method, which performs validation of the component's local value. The local value is whatever the user types into the field corresponding to this tag. This method is invoked when the expression is evaluated.

Nearly all JavaServer Faces tag attributes accept value expressions. In addition to referencing bean properties, value expressions can reference lists, maps, arrays, implicit objects, and resource bundles.

Another use of value expressions is to bind a component instance to a managed bean property. A page author does this by referencing the property from the `binding` attribute:

```
<h:outputLabel for="fanClub"
  rendered="false"
  binding="#{cashier.specialOfferText}">
  <h:outputText id="fanClubLabel"
    value="#{bundle.DukeFanClub}"/>
</h:outputLabel>
```

In addition to using expressions with the standard component tags, you can configure your custom component properties to accept expressions by creating `javax.el.ValueExpression` or `javax.el.MethodExpression` instances for them.

For information on the EL, see [Chapter 9, "Expression Language"](#).

For information on referencing managed bean methods from component tags, see [Referencing a Managed Bean Method](#).

12.2 Writing Bean Properties

As explained in [Managed Beans in JavaServer Faces Technology](#), a managed bean property can be bound to one of the following items:

- A component value
- A component instance
- A converter implementation
- A listener implementation
- A validator implementation

These properties follow the conventions of JavaBeans components (also called beans). For more information on JavaBeans components, see the *JavaBeans Tutorial* at <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/javabeans/index.html>.

The component's tag binds the component's value to a managed bean property by using its `value` attribute and binds the component's instance to a managed bean property by using its `binding` attribute. Likewise, all the `converter`, `listener`, and `validator` tags use their `binding` attributes to bind their associated implementations to managed bean properties. See [Binding Component Values and Instances to Managed Bean Properties](#) and [Binding Converters, Listeners, and Validators to Managed Bean Properties](#) for more information.

To bind a component's value to a managed bean property, the type of the property must match the type of the component's value to which it is bound. For example, if a managed bean property is bound to a `UISelectBoolean` component's value, the property should accept and return a `boolean` value or a `Boolean` wrapper `Object` instance.

To bind a component instance to a managed bean property, the property must match the type of component. For example, if a managed bean property is bound to a `UISelectBoolean` instance, the property should accept and return a `UISelectBoolean` value.

Similarly, to bind a `converter`, `listener`, or `validator` implementation to a managed bean property, the property must accept and return the same type of `converter`, `listener`, or `validator` object. For example, if you are using the `convertDateTime` tag to bind a `javax.faces.convert.DateTimeConverter` to a property, that property must accept and return a `DateTimeConverter` instance.

The rest of this section explains how to write properties that can be bound to component values, to component instances for the component objects described in [Adding Components to a Page Using HTML Tag Library Tags](#), and to `converter`, `listener`, and `validator` implementations.

12.2.1 Writing Properties Bound to Component Values

To write a managed bean property that is bound to a component's value, you must match the property type to the component's value.

[Table 12-1](#) lists the `javax.faces.component` classes and the acceptable types of their values.

Table 12-1 Acceptable Types of Component Values

Component Class	Acceptable Types of Component Values
<code>UIInput</code> , <code>UIOutput</code> , <code>UISelectItem</code> , <code>UISelectOne</code>	Any of the basic primitive and numeric types or any Java programming language object type for which an appropriate <code>javax.faces.convert.Converter</code> implementation is available
<code>UIData</code>	array of beans, List of beans, single bean, <code>java.sql.ResultSet</code> , <code>javax.servlet.jsp.jstl.sql.Result</code> , <code>javax.sql.RowSet</code>
<code>UISelectBoolean</code>	<code>boolean</code> or <code>Boolean</code>
<code>UISelectItems</code>	<code>java.lang.String</code> , <code>Collection</code> , <code>Array</code> , <code>Map</code>
<code>UISelectMany</code>	array or List, though elements of the array or List can be any of the standard types

When they bind components to properties by using the value attributes of the component tags, page authors need to ensure that the corresponding properties match the types of the components' values.

12.2.1.1 UIInput and UIOutput Properties

The `UIInput` and `UIOutput` component classes are represented by the component tags that begin with `h:input` and `h:output`, respectively (for example, `h:inputText` and `h:outputText`).

In the following example, an `h:inputText` tag binds the name component to the name property of a managed bean called `CashierBean`.

```
<h:inputText id="name"
            size="30"
            value="#{cashier.name}"
            ...>
</h:inputText>
```

The following code snippet from the managed bean `CashierBean` shows the bean property type bound by the preceding component tag:

```
protected String name = null;

public void setName(String name) {
    this.name = name;
}
public String getName() {
    return this.name;
}
```

As described in [Using the Standard Converters](#), to convert the value of an input or output component, you can either apply a converter or create the bean property bound to the component with the matching type. Here is the example tag, from [Using DateTimeConverter](#), that displays the date when items will be shipped.

```
<h:outputText value="#{cashier.shipDate}">
    <f:convertDateTime type="date" dateStyle="full" />
</h:outputText>
```

The bean property represented by this tag must have a type of `java.util.Date`. The following code snippet shows the `shipDate` property, from the managed bean `CashierBean`, that is bound by the tag's value in the preceding example:

```
private Date shipDate;

public Date getShipDate() {
    return this.shipDate;
}
public void setShipDate(Date shipDate) {
    this.shipDate = shipDate;
}
```

12.2.1.2 UIData Properties

The `UIData` component class is represented by the `h:dataTable` component tag.

`UIData` components must be bound to one of the managed bean property types listed in [Table 12-1](#). Data components are discussed in [Using Data-Bound Table Components](#). Here is part of the start tag of `dataTable` from that section:

```
<h:dataTable id="items"
```

```

...
value="#{cart.items}"
...
var="item">

```

The value expression points to the `items` property of a shopping cart bean named `cart`. The cart bean maintains a map of `ShoppingCartItem` beans.

The `getItems` method from the cart bean populates a `List` with `ShoppingCartItem` instances that are saved in the `items` map when the customer adds books to the cart, as shown in the following code segment:

```

public synchronized List<ShoppingCartItem> getItems() {
    List<ShoppingCartItem> results = new ArrayList<ShoppingCartItem>();
    results.addAll(this.items.values());
    return results;
}

```

All the components contained in the `UIData` component are bound to the properties of the cart bean that is bound to the entire `UIData` component. For example, here is the `h:outputText` tag that displays the book title in the table:

```

<h:commandLink action="#{showcart.details}">
    <h:outputText value="#{item.item.title}"/>
</h:commandLink>

```

The title is actually a link to the `bookdetails.xhtml` page. The `h:outputText` tag uses the value expression `#{item.item.title}` to bind its `UIOutput` component to the `title` property of the `Book` entity. The first item in the expression is the `ShoppingCartItem` instance that the `h:dataTable` tag is referencing while rendering the current row. The second item in expression refers to the `item` property of `ShoppingCartItem`, which returns an `Object` (in this case, a `Book`). The `title` part of the expression refers to the `title` property of `Book`. The value of the `UIOutput` component corresponding to this tag is bound to the `title` property of the `Book` entity:

```

private String title;
...
public String getTitle() {
    return title;
}

public void setTitle(String title) {
    this.title = title;
}

```

12.2.1.3 UISelectBoolean Properties

The `UISelectBoolean` component class is represented by the component tag `h:selectBooleanCheckbox`.

Managed bean properties that hold a `UISelectBoolean` component's data must be of `boolean` or `Boolean` type. The example `selectBooleanCheckbox` tag from the section [Displaying Components for Selecting One Value](#) binds a component to a property. The following example shows a tag that binds a component value to a boolean property:

```

<h:selectBooleanCheckbox title="#{bundle.receiveEmails}"
    value="#{custFormBean.receiveEmails}">
</h:selectBooleanCheckbox>
<h:outputText value="#{bundle.receiveEmails}">

```

Here is an example property that can be bound to the component represented by the example tag:

```
private boolean receiveEmails = false;
...
public void setReceiveEmails(boolean receiveEmails) {
    this.receiveEmails = receiveEmails;
}
public boolean getReceiveEmails() {
    return receiveEmails;
}
```

12.2.1.4 UISelectMany Properties

The `UISelectMany` component class is represented by the component tags that begin with `h:selectMany` (for example, `h:selectManyRadio` and `h:selectManyListbox`).

Because a `UISelectMany` component allows a user to select one or more items from a list of items, this component must map to a bean property of type `List` or array. This bean property represents the set of currently selected items from the list of available items.

The following example of the `selectManyCheckbox` tag comes from [Displaying Components for Selecting Multiple Values](#):

```
<h:selectManyCheckbox id="newslettercheckbox"
    layout="pageDirection"
    value="#{cashier.newsletters}">
    <f:selectItems value="#{cashier.newsletterItems}" />
</h:selectManyCheckbox>
```

Here is the bean property that maps to the value of the `selectManyCheckbox` tag from the preceding example:

```
private String newsletters[] = new String[0];

public void setNewsletters(String newsletters[]) {
    this.newsletters = newsletters;
}
public String[] getNewsletters() {
    return this.newsletters;
}
```

The `UISelectItem` and `UISelectItems` components are used to represent all the values in a `UISelectMany` component. See [UISelectItem Properties](#) and [UISelectItems Properties](#) for information on writing the bean properties for the `UISelectItem` and `UISelectItems` components.

12.2.1.5 UISelectOne Properties

The `UISelectOne` component class is represented by the component tags that begin with `h:selectOne` (for example, `h:selectOneRadio` and `h:selectOneListbox`).

`UISelectOne` properties accept the same types as `UIInput` and `UIOutput` properties, because a `UISelectOne` component represents the single selected item from a set of items. This item can be any of the primitive types and anything else for which you can apply a converter.

Here is an example of the `h:selectOneMenu` tag from [Displaying a Menu Using the h:selectOneMenu Tag](#):

```
<h:selectOneMenu id="shippingOption"
```

```

        required="true"
        value="#{cashier.shippingOption}">
<f:selectItem itemValue="2"
        itemLabel="#{bundle.QuickShip}"/>
<f:selectItem itemValue="5"
        itemLabel="#{bundle.NormalShip}"/>
<f:selectItem itemValue="7"
        itemLabel="#{bundle.SaverShip}"/>
</h:selectOneMenu>

```

Here is the bean property corresponding to this tag:

```

private String shippingOption = "2";

public void setShippingOption(String shippingOption) {
    this.shippingOption = shippingOption;
}
public String getShippingOption() {
    return this.shippingOption;
}

```

Note that `shippingOption` represents the currently selected item from the list of items in the `UISelectOne` component.

The `UISelectItem` and `UISelectItems` components are used to represent all the values in a `UISelectOne` component. This is explained in the section [Displaying a Menu Using the `h:selectOneMenu` Tag](#).

For information on how to write the managed bean properties for the `UISelectItem` and `UISelectItems` components, see [UISelectItem Properties](#) and [UISelectItems Properties](#).

12.2.1.6 UISelectItem Properties

A `UISelectItem` component represents a single value in a set of values in a `UISelectMany` or a `UISelectOne` component. A `UISelectItem` component must be bound to a managed bean property of type `javax.faces.model.SelectItem`. A `SelectItem` object is composed of an `Object` representing the value, along with two `Strings` representing the label and description of the `UISelectItem` object.

The example `selectOneMenu` tag from [UISelectOne Properties](#) contains `selectItem` tags that set the values of the list of items in the page. Here is an example of a bean property that can set the values for this list in the bean:

```

SelectItem itemOne = null;

SelectItem getItemOne(){
    return itemOne;
}
void setItemOne(SelectItem item) {
    itemOne = item;
}

```

12.2.1.7 UISelectItems Properties

`UISelectItems` components are children of `UISelectMany` and `UISelectOne` components. Each `UISelectItems` component is composed of a set of either `UISelectItem` instances or any collection of objects, such as an array, a list, or even POJOs.

The following code snippet from `CashierBean` shows how to write the properties for `selectItems` tags containing `SelectItem` instances.

```
private String[] newsletters = new String[0];
...
private static SelectItem[] newsletterItems = {
    new SelectItem("Duke's Quarterly"),
    new SelectItem("Innovator's Almanac"),
    new SelectItem("Duke's Diet and Exercise Journal"),
    new SelectItem("Random Ramblings")
};
...
public void setNewsletters(String[] newsletters) {
    this.newsletters = newsletters;
}

public String[] getNewsletters() {
    return this.newsletters;
}

public SelectItem[] getNewsletterItems() {
    return newsletterItems;
}
```

Here, the `newsletters` property represents the `SelectItems` object, while the `newsletterItems` property represents a static array of `SelectItem` objects. The `SelectItem` class has several constructors; in this example, the first argument is an `Object` representing the value of the item, while the second argument is a `String` representing the label that appears in the `UISelectMany` component on the page.

12.2.2 Writing Properties Bound to Component Instances

A property bound to a component instance returns and accepts a component instance rather than a component value. The following components bind a component instance to a managed bean property:

```
<h:selectBooleanCheckbox id="fanClub"
    rendered="false"
    binding="#{cashier.specialOffer}" />
<h:outputLabel for="fanClub"
    rendered="false"
    binding="#{cashier.specialOfferText}"
    value="#{bundle.DukeFanClub}" />
</h:outputLabel>
```

The `selectBooleanCheckbox` tag renders a check box and binds the `fanClub` `UISelectBoolean` component to the `specialOffer` property of `CashierBean`. The `outputLabel` tag binds the value of the `value` attribute, which represents the check box's label, to the `specialOfferText` property of `CashierBean`. If the user orders more than \$100 worth of books and clicks the **Submit** button, the `submit` method of `CashierBean` sets both components' `rendered` properties to `true`, causing the check box and label to display when the page is rerendered.

Because the components corresponding to the example tags are bound to the managed bean properties, these properties must match the components' types. This means that the `specialOfferText` property must be of type `UIOutput`, and the `specialOffer` property must be of type `UISelectBoolean`:

```
UIOutput specialOfferText = null;
```

```
public UIOutput getSpecialOfferText() {
    return this.specialOfferText;
}
public void setSpecialOfferText(UIOutput specialOfferText) {
    this.specialOfferText = specialOfferText;
}

UISelectBoolean specialOffer = null;

public UISelectBoolean getSpecialOffer() {
    return this.specialOffer;
}
public void setSpecialOffer(UISelectBoolean specialOffer) {
    this.specialOffer = specialOffer;
}
```

For more general information on component binding, see [Managed Beans in JavaServer Faces Technology](#).

For information on how to reference a managed bean method that performs navigation when a button is clicked, see [Referencing a Method That Performs Navigation](#).

For more information on writing managed bean methods that handle navigation, see [Writing a Method to Handle Navigation](#).

12.2.3 Writing Properties Bound to Converters, Listeners, or Validators

All the standard converter, listener, and validator tags included with JavaServer Faces technology support binding attributes that allow you to bind converter, listener, or validator implementations to managed bean properties.

The following example shows a standard `convertDateTime` tag using a value expression with its binding attribute to bind the `javax.faces.convert.DateTimeConverter` instance to the `convertDate` property of `LoginBean`:

```
<h:inputText value="#{LoginBean.birthDate}">
    <f:convertDateTime binding="#{LoginBean.convertDate}" />
</h:inputText>
```

The `convertDate` property must therefore accept and return a `DateTimeConverter` object, as shown here:

```
private DateTimeConverter convertDate;
public DateTimeConverter getConvertDate() {
    ...
    return convertDate;
}
public void setConvertDate(DateTimeConverter convertDate) {
    convertDate.setPattern("EEEEEEEE, MMM dd, yyyy");
    this.convertDate = convertDate;
}
```

Because the converter is bound to a managed bean property, the managed bean property can modify the attributes of the converter or add new functionality to it. In the case of the preceding example, the property sets the date pattern that the converter uses to parse the user's input into a `Date` object.

The managed bean properties that are bound to validator or listener implementations are written in the same way and have the same general purpose.

12.3 Writing Managed Bean Methods

Methods of a managed bean can perform several application-specific functions for components on the page. These functions include

- Performing processing associated with navigation
- Handling action events
- Performing validation on the component's value
- Handling value-change events

By using a managed bean to perform these functions, you eliminate the need to implement the `javax.faces.validator.Validator` interface to handle the validation or one of the listener interfaces to handle events. Also, by using a managed bean instead of a `Validator` implementation to perform validation, you eliminate the need to create a custom tag for the `Validator` implementation.

In general, it is good practice to include these methods in the same managed bean that defines the properties for the components referencing these methods. The reason for doing so is that the methods might need to access the component's data to determine how to handle the event or to perform the validation associated with the component.

The following sections explain how to write various types of managed bean methods.

12.3.1 Writing a Method to Handle Navigation

An **action method**, a managed bean method that handles navigation processing, must be a public method that takes no parameters and returns an `Object`, which is the logical outcome that the navigation system uses to determine the page to display next. This method is referenced using the component tag's `action` attribute.

The following action method is from the managed bean `CashierBean`, which is invoked when a user clicks the **Submit** button on the page. If the user has ordered more than \$100 worth of books, this method sets the `rendered` properties of the `fanClub` and `specialOffer` components to `true`, causing them to be displayed on the page the next time that page is rendered.

After setting the components' `rendered` properties to `true`, this method returns the logical outcome `null`. This causes the JavaServer Faces implementation to rerender the page without creating a new view of the page, retaining the customer's input. If this method were to return `purchase`, which is the logical outcome to use to advance to a payment page, the page would rerender without retaining the customer's input. In this case, you want to rerender the page without clearing the data.

If the user does not purchase more than \$100 worth of books, or if the `thankYou` component has already been rendered, the method returns `bookreceipt`. The JavaServer Faces implementation loads the `bookreceipt.xhtml` page after this method returns:

```
public String submit() {
    ...
    if ((cart().getTotal() > 100.00) && !specialOffer.isRendered()) {
        specialOfferText.setRendered(true);
        specialOffer.setRendered(true);
        return null;
    } else if (specialOffer.isRendered() && !thankYou.isRendered()) {
        thankYou.setRendered(true);
        return null;
    } else {
        ...
    }
}
```

```
        cart.clear();
        return ("bookreceipt");
    }
}
```

Typically, an action method will return a `String` outcome, as shown in the previous example. Alternatively, you can define an `Enum` class that encapsulates all possible outcome strings and then make an action method return an `enum` constant, which represents a particular `String` outcome defined by the `Enum` class.

The following example uses an `Enum` class to encapsulate all logical outcomes:

```
public enum Navigation {
    main, accountHist, accountList, atm, atmAck, transferFunds,
    transferAck, error
}
```

When it returns an outcome, an action method uses the dot notation to reference the outcome from the `Enum` class:

```
public Object submit(){
    ...
    return Navigation.accountHist;
}
```

The section [Referencing a Method That Performs Navigation](#) explains how a component tag references this method. The section [Writing Properties Bound to Component Instances](#) explains how to write the bean properties to which the components are bound.

12.3.2 Writing a Method to Handle an Action Event

A managed bean method that handles an action event must be a public method that accepts an action event and returns `void`. This method is referenced using the component tag's `actionListener` attribute. Only components that implement `javax.faces.component.ActionSource` can refer to this method.

In the following example, a method from a managed bean named `ActionBean` processes the event of a user clicking one of the links on the page:

```
public void chooseBookFromLink(ActionEvent event) {
    String current = event.getComponent().getId();
    FacesContext context = FacesContext.getCurrentInstance();
    String bookId = books.get(current);
    context.getExternalContext().getSessionMap().put("bookId", bookId);
}
```

This method gets the component that generated the event from the event object; then it gets the component's ID, which is a code for the book. The method matches the code against a `HashMap` object that contains the book codes and corresponding book ID values. Finally, the method sets the book ID by using the selected value from the `HashMap` object.

[Referencing a Method That Handles an Action Event](#) explains how a component tag references this method.

12.3.3 Writing a Method to Perform Validation

Instead of implementing the `javax.faces.validator.Validator` interface to perform validation for a component, you can include a method in a managed bean to take care

of validating input for the component. A managed bean method that performs validation must accept a `javax.faces.context.FacesContext`, the component whose data must be validated, and the data to be validated, just as the `validate` method of the `Validator` interface does. A component refers to the managed bean method by using its `validator` attribute. Only values of `UIInput` components or values of components that extend `UIInput` can be validated.

Here is an example of a managed bean method that validates user input, from [The guessnumber-cdi CDI Example](#):

```
public void validateNumberRange(FacesContext context,
                               UIComponent toValidate,
                               Object value) {
    if (remainingGuesses <= 0) {
        FacesMessage message = new FacesMessage("No guesses left!");
        context.addMessage(toValidate.getClientId(context), message);
        ((UIInput) toValidate).setValid(false);
        return;
    }
    int input = (Integer) value;

    if (input < minimum || input > maximum) {
        ((UIInput) toValidate).setValid(false);

        FacesMessage message = new FacesMessage("Invalid guess");
        context.addMessage(toValidate.getClientId(context), message);
    }
}
```

The `validateNumberRange` method performs two different validations:

- If the user has run out of guesses, the method sets the `valid` property of the `UIInput` component to `false`. Then it queues a message onto the `FacesContext` instance, associating the message with the component ID, and returns.
- If the user has some remaining guesses, the method then retrieves the local value of the component. If the input value is outside the allowable range, the method again sets the `valid` property of the `UIInput` component to `false`, queues a different message on the `FacesContext` instance, and returns.

See [Referencing a Method That Performs Validation](#) for information on how a component tag references this method.

12.3.4 Writing a Method to Handle a Value-Change Event

A managed bean that handles a value-change event must use a public method that accepts a value-change event and returns `void`. This method is referenced using the component's `valueChangeListener` attribute. This section explains how to write a managed bean method to replace the `javax.faces.event.ValueChangeListener` implementation.

The following example tag comes from [Registering a Value-Change Listener on a Component](#), where the `h:inputText` tag with the `id` of `name` has a `ValueChangeListener` instance registered on it. This `ValueChangeListener` instance handles the event of entering a value in the field corresponding to the component. When the user enters a value, a value-change event is generated, and the `processValueChange(ValueChangeEvent)` method of the `ValueChangeListener` class is invoked:

```
<h:inputText id="name"
```

```

        size="30"
        value="#{cashier.name}"
        required="true"
        requiredMessage="#{bundle.ReqCustomerName}">
    <f:valueChangeListener
        type="dukesbookstore.listeners.NameChanged" />
</h:inputText>

```

Instead of implementing `ValueChangeListener`, you can write a managed bean method to handle this event. To do this, you move the `processValueChange(ValueChangeEvent)` method from the `ValueChangeListener` class, called `NameChanged`, to your managed bean.

Here is the managed bean method that processes the event of entering a value in the name field on the page:

```

public void processValueChange(ValueChangeEvent event)
    throws AbortProcessingException {
    if (null != event.getNewValue()) {
        FacesContext.getCurrentInstance().getExternalContext().
            getSessionMap().put("name", event.getNewValue());
    }
}

```

To make this method handle the `ValueChangeEvent` generated by an input component, reference this method from the component tag's `valueChangeListener` attribute. See [Referencing a Method That Handles a Value-Change Event](#) for more information.

12.4 Using Bean Validation

Validating input received from the user to maintain data integrity is an important part of application logic. Validation of data can take place at different layers in even the simplest of applications, as shown in [Developing a Simple Facelets Application](#). The `guessnumber` example application validates the user input (in the `h:inputText` tag) for numerical data at the presentation layer and for a valid range of numbers at the business layer.

JavaBeans Validation (Bean Validation) is a new validation model available as part of Java EE 7 platform. The Bean Validation model is supported by constraints in the form of annotations placed on a field, method, or class of a JavaBeans component, such as a managed bean.

Constraints can be built in or user defined. User-defined constraints are called custom constraints. Several built-in constraints are available in the `javax.validation.constraints` package. [Table 12-2](#) lists all the built-in constraints.

Table 12-2 Built-In Bean Validation Constraints

Constraint	Description	Example
<code>@AssertFalse</code>	The value of the field or property must be false.	<code>@AssertFalse</code> <code>boolean isUnsupported;</code>
<code>@AssertTrue</code>	The value of the field or property must be true.	<code>@AssertTrue</code> <code>boolean isActive;</code>

Table 12–2 (Cont.) Built-In Bean Validation Constraints

Constraint	Description	Example
@DecimalMax	The value of the field or property must be a decimal value lower than or equal to the number in the value element.	@DecimalMax("30.00") BigDecimal discount;
@DecimalMin	The value of the field or property must be a decimal value greater than or equal to the number in the value element.	@DecimalMin("5.00") BigDecimal discount;
@Digits	The value of the field or property must be a number within a specified range. The <code>integer</code> element specifies the maximum integral digits for the number, and the <code>fraction</code> element specifies the maximum fractional digits for the number.	@Digits(integer=6, fraction=2) BigDecimal price;
@Future	The value of the field or property must be a date in the future.	@Future Date eventDate;
@Max	The value of the field or property must be an integer value lower than or equal to the number in the value element.	@Max(10) int quantity;
@Min	The value of the field or property must be an integer value greater than or equal to the number in the value element.	@Min(5) int quantity;
@NotNull	The value of the field or property must not be null.	@NotNull String username;
@Null	The value of the field or property must be null.	@Null String unusedString;
@Past	The value of the field or property must be a date in the past.	@Past Date birthday;
@Pattern	The value of the field or property must match the regular expression defined in the <code>regexp</code> element.	@Pattern(regexp="\\(\\d{3}\\)\\d{3}-\\d{4}") String phoneNumber;

Table 12–2 (Cont.) Built-In Bean Validation Constraints

Constraint	Description	Example
@Size	The size of the field or property is evaluated and must match the specified boundaries. If the field or property is a <code>String</code> , the size of the string is evaluated. If the field or property is a <code>Collection</code> , the size of the <code>Collection</code> is evaluated. If the field or property is a <code>Map</code> , the size of the <code>Map</code> is evaluated. If the field or property is an array, the size of the array is evaluated. Use one of the optional <code>max</code> or <code>min</code> elements to specify the boundaries.	<code>@Size(min=2, max=240)</code> <code>String briefMessage;</code>

In the following example, a constraint is placed on a field using the built-in `@NotNull` constraint:

```
public class Name {
    @NotNull
    private String firstname;

    @NotNull
    private String lastname;
}
```

You can also place more than one constraint on a single JavaBeans component object. For example, you can place an additional constraint for size of field on the `firstname` and the `lastname` fields:

```
public class Name {
    @NotNull
    @Size(min=1, max=16)
    private String firstname;

    @NotNull
    @Size(min=1, max=16)
    private String lastname;
}
```

The following example shows a method with a user-defined constraint that checks for a predefined email address pattern such as a corporate email account:

```
@ValidEmail
public String getEmailAddress() {
    return emailAddress;
}
```

For a built-in constraint, a default implementation is available. A user-defined or custom constraint needs a validation implementation. In the above example, the `@ValidEmail` custom constraint needs an implementation class.

Any validation failures are gracefully handled and can be displayed by the `h:messages` tag.

Any managed bean that contains Bean Validation annotations automatically gets validation constraints placed on the fields on a JavaServer Faces application's web pages.

See [Validating Persistent Fields and Properties](#) for more information on using validation constraints.

12.4.1 Validating Null and Empty Strings

The Java programming language distinguishes between null and empty strings. An empty string is a string instance of zero length, whereas a null string has no value at all.

An empty string is represented as "". It is a character sequence of zero characters. A null string is represented by `null`. It can be described as the absence of a string instance.

Managed bean elements represented as a JavaServer Faces text component such as `inputText` are initialized with the value of the empty string by the JavaServer Faces implementation. Validating these strings can be an issue when user input for such fields is not required. Consider the following example, where the string `testString` is a bean variable that will be set using input entered by the user. In this case, the user input for the field is not required.

```
if (testString==null) {
    doSomething();
} else {
    doAnotherThing();
}
```

By default, the `doAnotherThing` method is called even when the user enters no data, because the `testString` element has been initialized with the value of an empty string.

In order for the Bean Validation model to work as intended, you must set the context parameter `javax.faces.INTERPRET_EMPTY_STRING_SUBMITTED_VALUES_AS_NULL` to `true` in the web deployment descriptor file, `web.xml`:

```
<context-param>
  <param-name>
    javax.faces.INTERPRET_EMPTY_STRING_SUBMITTED_VALUES_AS_NULL
  </param-name>
  <param-value>true</param-value>
</context-param>
```

This parameter enables the JavaServer Faces implementation to treat empty strings as null.

Suppose, on the other hand, that you have a `@NotNull` constraint on an element, meaning that input is required. In this case, an empty string will pass this validation constraint. However, if you set the context parameter `javax.faces.INTERPRET_EMPTY_STRING_SUBMITTED_VALUES_AS_NULL` to `true`, the value of the managed bean attribute is passed to the Bean Validation runtime as a null value, causing the `@NotNull` constraint to fail.

Using Ajax with JavaServer Faces Technology

Ajax is an acronym for Asynchronous JavaScript and XML, a group of web technologies that enable creation of dynamic and highly responsive web applications. Using Ajax, web applications can retrieve content from the server without interfering with the display on the client. In the Java EE 7 platform, JavaServer Faces technology provides built-in support for Ajax.

Early web applications were created mostly as static web pages. When a static web page is updated by a client, the entire page has to reload to reflect the update. In effect, every update needs a page reload to reflect the change. Repetitive page reloads can result in excessive network access and can impact application performance. Technologies such as Ajax were created to overcome these deficiencies.

This chapter describes using Ajax functionality in JavaServer Faces web applications.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of Ajax](#)
- [Using Ajax Functionality with JavaServer Faces Technology](#)
- [Using Ajax with Facelets](#)
- [Sending an Ajax Request](#)
- [Monitoring Events on the Client](#)
- [Handling Errors](#)
- [Receiving an Ajax Response](#)
- [Partial Processing and Partial Rendering](#)
- [Ajax Request Lifecycle](#)
- [Grouping of Components](#)
- [Loading JavaScript as a Resource](#)
- [The ajaxguessnumber Example Application](#)
- [Further Information about Ajax in JavaServer Faces Technology](#)

13.1 Overview of Ajax

Ajax refers to JavaScript and XML, technologies that are widely used for creating dynamic and asynchronous web content. While Ajax is not limited to JavaScript and XML technologies, more often than not they are used together by web applications.

The focus of this tutorial is on using JavaScript based Ajax functionality in JavaServer Faces web applications.

JavaScript is a dynamic scripting language for web applications. It allows users to add enhanced functionality to user interfaces and allows web pages to interact with clients asynchronously. JavaScript runs mainly on the client side (as in a browser) and thereby reduces server access by clients.

When a JavaScript function sends an asynchronous request from the client to the server, the server sends back a response that is used to update the page's Document Object Model (DOM). This response is often in the format of an XML document. The term *Ajax* refers to this interaction between the client and server.

The server response need not be in XML only; it can also be in other formats, such as JSON (<http://www.json.org/>). This tutorial does not focus on the response formats.

Ajax enables asynchronous and partial updating of web applications. Such functionality allows for highly responsive web pages that are rendered in near real time. Ajax-based web applications can access server and process information and can also retrieve data without interfering with the display and rendering of the current web page on a client (such as a browser).

Some of the advantages of using Ajax are as follows:

- Form data validation in real time, eliminating the need to submit the form for verification
- Enhanced functionality for web pages, such as user name and password prompts
- Partial update of the web content, avoiding complete page reloads

13.2 Using Ajax Functionality with JavaServer Faces Technology

Ajax functionality can be added to a JavaServer Faces application in one of the following ways:

- Adding the required JavaScript code to an application
- Using the built-in Ajax resource library

In earlier releases of the Java EE platform, JavaServer Faces applications provided Ajax functionality by adding the necessary JavaScript to the web page. In the Java EE 7 platform, standard Ajax support is provided by a built-in JavaScript resource library.

With the support of this JavaScript resource library, JavaServer Faces standard UI components, such as buttons, labels, or text fields, can be enabled for Ajax functionality. You can also load this resource library and use its methods directly from within the managed bean code. The next sections of the tutorial describe the use of the built-in Ajax resource library.

In addition, because the JavaServer Faces technology component model can be extended, custom components can be created with Ajax functionality.

An Ajax version of the `guessnumber` application, `ajaxguessnumber`, is available in the example repository. See [The `ajaxguessnumber` Example Application](#) for more information.

The Ajax specific `f:ajax` tag and its attributes are explained in the next sections.

13.3 Using Ajax with Facelets

As mentioned in the previous section, JavaServer Faces technology supports Ajax by using a built-in JavaScript resource library that is provided as part of the JavaServer Faces core libraries. This built-in Ajax resource can be used in JavaServer Faces web applications in one of the following ways:

- By using the `f:ajax` tag along with another standard component in a Facelets application. This method adds Ajax functionality to any UI component without additional coding and configuration.
- By using the JavaScript API method `jsf.ajax.request()` directly within the Facelets application. This method provides direct access to Ajax methods, and allows customized control of component behavior.

13.3.1 Using the `f:ajax` Tag

The `f:ajax` tag is a JavaServer Faces core tag that provides Ajax functionality to any regular UI component when used in conjunction with that component. In the following example, Ajax behavior is added to an input component by including the `f:ajax` core tag:

```
<h:inputText value="#{bean.message}">
  <f:ajax />
</h:inputText>
```

In this example, although Ajax is enabled, the other attributes of the `f:ajax` tag are not defined. If an event is not defined, the default action for the component is performed. For the `inputText` component, when no event attribute is specified, the default event is `valueChange`. [Table 13–1](#) lists the attributes of the `f:ajax` tag and their default actions.

Table 13–1 Attributes of the `f:ajax` Tag

Name	Type	Description
<code>disabled</code>	<code>javax.el.ValueExpression</code> that evaluates to a <code>Boolean</code>	A <code>Boolean</code> value that identifies the tag status. A value of <code>true</code> indicates that the Ajax behavior should not be rendered. A value of <code>false</code> indicates that the Ajax behavior should be rendered. The default value is <code>false</code> .
<code>event</code>	<code>javax.el.ValueExpression</code> that evaluates to a <code>String</code>	A <code>String</code> that identifies the type of event to which the Ajax action will apply. If specified, it must be one of the events supported by the component. If not specified, the default event (the event that triggers the Ajax request) is determined for the component. The default event is <code>action</code> for <code>javax.faces.component.ActionSource</code> components and <code>valueChange</code> for <code>javax.faces.component.EditableValueHolder</code> components.
<code>execute</code>	<code>javax.el.ValueExpression</code> that evaluates to an <code>Object</code>	A <code>Collection</code> that identifies a list of components to be executed on the server. If a literal is specified, it must be a space-delimited <code>String</code> of component identifiers and/or one of the keywords. If a <code>ValueExpression</code> is specified, it must refer to a property that returns a <code>Collection</code> of <code>String</code> objects. If not specified, the default value is <code>@this</code> .

Table 13–1 (Cont.) Attributes of the `f:ajax` Tag

Name	Type	Description
<code>immediate</code>	<code>javax.el.ValueExpression</code> that evaluates to a <code>Boolean</code>	A <code>Boolean</code> value that indicates whether inputs are to be processed early in the lifecycle. If <code>true</code> , behavior events generated from this behavior are broadcast during the Apply Request Values phase. Otherwise, the events will be broadcast during the Invoke Applications phase.
<code>listener</code>	<code>javax.el.MethodExpression</code>	The name of the listener method that is called when a <code>javax.faces.event.AjaxBehaviorEvent</code> has been broadcast for the listener.
<code>onevent</code>	<code>javax.el.ValueExpression</code> that evaluates to a <code>String</code>	The name of the JavaScript function that handles UI events.
<code>onerror</code>	<code>javax.el.ValueExpression</code> that evaluates to a <code>String</code>	The name of the JavaScript function that handles errors.
<code>render</code>	<code>javax.el.ValueExpression</code> that evaluates to an <code>Object</code>	A <code>Collection</code> that identifies a list of components to be rendered on the client. If a literal is specified, it must be a space-delimited <code>String</code> of component identifiers and/or one of the keywords. If a <code>ValueExpression</code> is specified, it must refer to a property that returns a <code>Collection</code> of <code>String</code> objects. If not specified, the default value is <code>@none</code> .

The keywords listed in [Table 13–2](#) can be used with the `execute` and `render` attributes of the `f:ajax` tag.

Table 13–2 Execute and Render Keywords

Keyword	Description
<code>@all</code>	All component identifiers
<code>@form</code>	The form that encloses the component
<code>@none</code>	No component identifiers
<code>@this</code>	The element that triggered the request

Note that when you use the `f:ajax` tag in a Facelets page, the JavaScript resource library is loaded implicitly. This resource library can also be loaded explicitly as described in [Loading JavaScript as a Resource](#).

13.4 Sending an Ajax Request

To activate Ajax functionality, the web application must create an Ajax request and send it to the server. The server then processes the request.

The application uses the attributes of the `f:ajax` tag listed in [Table 13–1](#) to create the Ajax request. The following sections explain the process of creating and sending an Ajax request using some of these attributes.

Note: Behind the scenes, the `jsf.ajax.request()` method of the JavaScript resource library collects the data provided by the `f:ajax` tag and posts the request to the JavaServer Faces lifecycle.

13.4.1 Using the event Attribute

The `event` attribute defines the event that triggers the Ajax action. Some of the possible values for this attribute are `click`, `keyup`, `mouseover`, `focus`, and `blur`.

If not specified, a default event based on the parent component will be applied. The default event is `action` for `javax.faces.component.ActionSource` components such as a `commandButton`, and `valueChange` for `javax.faces.component.EditableValueHolder` components such as `inputText`. In the following example, an Ajax tag is associated with the button component, and the event that triggers the Ajax action is a mouse click:

```
<h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit">
  <f:ajax event="click" />
</h:commandButton>
<h:outputText id="result" value="#{userNumberBean.response}" />
```

Note: You may have noticed that the listed events are very similar to JavaScript events. In fact, they are based on JavaScript events, but do not have the `on` prefix.

For a command button, the default event is `click`, so that you do not actually need to specify `event="click"` to obtain the desired behavior.

13.4.2 Using the execute Attribute

The `execute` attribute defines the component or components to be executed on the server. The component is identified by its `id` attribute. You can specify more than one executable component. If more than one component is to be executed, specify a space-delimited list of components.

When a component is executed, it participates in all phases of the request processing lifecycle except the Render Response phase.

The `execute` attribute can also be a keyword, such as `@all`, `@none`, `@this`, or `@form`. The default value is `@this`, which refers to the component within which the `f:ajax` tag is nested.

The following code specifies that the `h:inputText` component with the `id` value of `userNo` should be executed when the button is clicked:

```
<h:inputText id="userNo"
  title="Type a number from 0 to 10:"
  value="#{userNumberBean.userNumber}">
  ...
</h:inputText>
<h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit">
  <f:ajax event="click" execute="userNo" />
</h:commandButton>
```

13.4.3 Using the immediate Attribute

The `immediate` attribute indicates whether user inputs are to be processed early in the application lifecycle or later. If the attribute is set to `true`, events generated from this component are broadcast during the Apply Request Values phase. Otherwise, the events will be broadcast during the Invoke Applications phase.

If not defined, the default value of this attribute is `false`.

13.4.4 Using the listener Attribute

The `listener` attribute refers to a method expression that is executed on the server side in response to an Ajax action on the client. The listener's `javax.faces.event.AjaxBehaviorListener.processAjaxBehavior` method is called once during the Invoke Application phase of the lifecycle. In the following code from the reservation example application (see [The reservation Example Application](#)), a listener attribute is defined by an `f:ajax` tag, which refers to a method from the bean.

```
<f:ajax event="change" render="total"
        listener="#{reservationBean.calculateTotal}"/>
```

The `calculateTotal` method of `ReservationBean` recalculates the total cost of tickets whenever either the price or the number of tickets ordered changes and displays it in the output component named `total`.

13.5 Monitoring Events on the Client

The ongoing Ajax requests can be monitored by using the `onevent` attribute of the `f:ajax` tag. The value of this attribute is the name of a JavaScript function. JavaServer Faces calls the `onevent` function at each stage of the processing of an Ajax request: `begin`, `complete`, and `success`.

When calling the JavaScript function assigned to the `onevent` property, JavaServer Faces passes a data object to it. The data object contains the properties listed in [Table 13–3](#).

Table 13–3 *Properties of the onEvent Data Object*

Property	Description
<code>responseXML</code>	The response to the Ajax call in XML format
<code>responseText</code>	The response to the Ajax call in text format
<code>responseCode</code>	The response to the Ajax call in numeric code
<code>source</code>	The source of the current Ajax event: the DOM element
<code>status</code>	The status of the current Ajax call: <code>begin</code> , <code>complete</code> , or <code>success</code>
<code>type</code>	The type of the Ajax call: <code>event</code>

By using the `status` property of the data object, you can identify the current status of the Ajax request and monitor its progress. In the following example, `monitormyjaxevent` is a JavaScript function that monitors the Ajax request sent by the event:

```
<f:ajax event="click" render="errorMessage" onevent="monitormyjaxevent"/>
```

13.6 Handling Errors

JavaServer Faces handles Ajax errors through use of the `onerror` attribute of the `f:ajax` tag. The value of this attribute is the name of a JavaScript function.

When there is an error in processing a Ajax request, JavaServer Faces calls the defined `onerror` JavaScript function and passes a data object to it. The data object contains all the properties available for the `onevent` attribute, and in addition, the following properties:

- `description`

- `errorName`
- `errorMessage`

The type is `error`. The `status` property of the data object contains one of the valid error values listed in [Table 13-4](#).

Table 13-4 Valid Error Values for the Data Object status Property

Values	Description
<code>emptyResponse</code>	No Ajax response from server.
<code>httpError</code>	One of the valid HTTP errors: <code>request.status==null</code> or <code>request.status==undefined</code> or <code>request.status < 200</code> or <code>request.status>= 300</code>
<code>malformedXML</code>	The Ajax response is not well formed.
<code>serverError</code>	The Ajax response contains an <code>error</code> element.

In the following example, any errors that occurred in processing the Ajax request are handled by the `handlemyajaxerror` JavaScript function:

```
<f:ajax event="click" render="test" onerror="handlemyajaxerror"/>
```

13.7 Receiving an Ajax Response

After the application sends an Ajax request, it is processed on the server side, and a response is sent back to the client. As described earlier, Ajax allows for partial updating of web pages. To enable such partial updating, JavaServer Faces technology allows for partial processing of the view. The handling of the response is defined by the `render` attribute of the `f:ajax` tag.

Similar to the `execute` attribute, the `render` attribute defines which sections of the page will be updated. The value of a `render` attribute can be one or more component id values, one of the keywords `@this`, `@all`, `@none`, and `@form`, or an EL expression. In the following example, the `render` attribute simply identifies an output component to be displayed when the Ajax action has successfully completed.

```
<h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit">
  <f:ajax execute="userNo" render="result" />
</h:commandButton>
<h:outputText id="result" value="#{userNumberBean.response}" />
```

However, more often than not, the `render` attribute is likely to be associated with an event attribute. In the following example, an output component is displayed when the button component is clicked.

```
<h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit">
  <f:ajax event="click" execute="userNo" render="result"/>
</h:commandButton>
<h:outputText id="result" value="#{userNumberBean.response}" />
```

Note: Behind the scenes, once again the `jsf.ajax.request()` method handles the response. It registers a response-handling callback when the original request is created. When the response is sent back to the client, the callback is invoked. This callback automatically updates the client-side DOM to reflect the rendered response.

13.8 Partial Processing and Partial Rendering

The JavaServer Faces lifecycle spans all of the `execute` and `render` processes of an application. It is also possible to process and render only parts of an application, such as a single component. For example, the JavaServer Faces Ajax framework can generate requests containing information on which particular component may be processed and which particular component may be rendered back to the client.

Once such a partial request enters the JavaServer Faces lifecycle, the information is identified and processed by a `javax.faces.context.PartialViewContext` object. The JavaServer Faces lifecycle is still aware of such Ajax requests and modifies the component tree accordingly.

The `execute` and `render` attributes of the `f:ajax` tag are used to identify which components may be executed and rendered. For more information on these attributes, see [Chapter 13, "Using Ajax with JavaServer Faces Technology"](#).

13.9 Ajax Request Lifecycle

An Ajax request varies from other typical JavaServer Faces requests, and its processing is also handled differently by the JavaServer Faces lifecycle.

As described in [Partial Processing and Partial Rendering](#), when an Ajax request is received, the state associated with that request is captured by the `javax.faces.context.PartialViewContext`. This object provides access to information such as which components are targeted for processing/rendering. The `processPartial` method of `PartialViewContext` uses this information to perform partial component tree processing and rendering.

The `execute` attribute of the `f:ajax` tag identifies which segments of the server side component tree should be processed. Because components can be uniquely identified in the JavaServer Faces component tree, it is easy to identify and process a single component, a few components, or a whole tree. This is made possible by the `visitTree` method of the `UIComponent` class. The identified components then run through the JavaServer Faces request lifecycle phases.

Similar to the `execute` attribute, the `render` attribute identifies which segments of the JavaServer Faces component tree need to be rendered during the `render` response phase.

During the `render` response phase, the `render` attribute is examined. The identified components are found and asked to render themselves and their children. The components are then packaged up and sent back to the client as a response.

13.10 Grouping of Components

The previous sections describe how to associate a single UI component with Ajax functionality. You can also associate Ajax with more than one component at a time by grouping them together on a page. The following example shows how a number of components can be grouped by using the `f:ajax` tag.

```
<f:ajax>
  <h:form>
    <h:inputText id="input1"/>
    <h:commandButton id="Submit"/>
  </h:form>
</f:ajax>
```

In the example, neither component is associated with any Ajax event or render attributes yet. Therefore, no action will take place in case of user input. You can associate the above components with an event and a render attribute as follows:

```
<f:ajax event="click" render="@all">
  <h:form>
    <h:inputText id="input1" value="#{user.name}"/>
    <h:commandButton id="Submit"/>
  </h:form>
</f:ajax>
```

In the updated example, when the user clicks either component, the updated results will be displayed for all components. You can further fine tune the Ajax action by adding specific events to each of the components, in which case Ajax functionality becomes cumulative. Consider the following example:

```
<f:ajax event="click" render="@all">
  ...
  <h:commandButton id="Submit">
    <f:ajax event="mouseover"/>
  </h:commandButton>
  ...
</f:ajax>
```

Now the button component will fire an Ajax action in case of a mouseover event as well as a mouse click event.

13.11 Loading JavaScript as a Resource

The JavaScript resource file bundled with JavaServer Faces technology is named `jsf.js` and is available in the `javax.faces` library. This resource library supports Ajax functionality in JavaServer Faces applications.

If you use the `f:ajax` tag on a page, the `jsf.js` resource is automatically delivered to the client. It is not necessary to use the `h:outputScript` tag to specify this resource. You may want to use the `h:outputScript` tag to specify other JavaScript libraries.

In order to use a JavaScript resource directly with a `UIComponent`, you must explicitly load the resource in either of the following ways:

- By using the `h:outputScript` tag directly in a Facelets page
- By using the `javax.faces.application.ResourceDependency` annotation on a `UIComponent` Java class

13.11.1 Using JavaScript API in a Facelets Application

To use the bundled JavaScript resource API directly in a web application, such as a Facelets page, you need to first identify the default JavaScript resource for the page with the help of the `h:outputScript` tag. For example, consider the following section of a Facelets page:

```
<h:form>
  <h:outputScript name="jsf.js" library="javax.faces" target="head"/>
</h:form>
```

Specifying the target as `head` causes the script resource to be rendered within the `head` element on the HTML page.

In the next step, identify the component to which you would like to attach the Ajax functionality. Add the Ajax functionality to the component by using the JavaScript API. For example, consider the following:

```
<h:form>
  <h:outputScript name="jsf.js" library="javax.faces" target="head">
  <h:inputText id="inputname" value="#{userBean.name}" />
  <h:outputText id="outputname" value="#{userBean.name}" />
  <h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit"
    onclick="jsf.ajax.request(this, event,
      {execute:'inputname',render:'outputname'});
    return false;" />
</h:form>
```

The `jsf.ajax.request` method takes up to three parameters that specify source, event, and options. The source parameter identifies the DOM element that triggered the Ajax request, typically `this`. The optional event parameter identifies the DOM event that triggered this request. The optional options parameter contains a set of name/value pairs from [Table 13–5](#).

Table 13–5 Possible Values for the Options Parameter

Name	Value
<code>execute</code>	A space-delimited list of client identifiers or one of the keywords listed in Table 13–2 . The identifiers reference the components that will be processed during the execute phase of the lifecycle.
<code>render</code>	A space-delimited list of client identifiers or one of the keywords listed in Table 13–2 . The identifiers reference the components that will be processed during the render phase of the lifecycle.
<code>onevent</code>	A String that is the name of the JavaScript function to call when an event occurs.
<code>onerror</code>	A String that is the name of the JavaScript function to call when an error occurs.
<code>params</code>	An object that may include additional parameters to include in the request.

If no identifier is specified, the default assumed keyword for the `execute` attribute is `@this`, and for the `render` attribute it is `@none`.

You can also place the JavaScript method in a file and include it as a resource.

13.11.2 Using the `@ResourceDependency` Annotation in a Bean Class

Use the `javax.faces.application.ResourceDependency` annotation to cause the bean class to load the default `jsf.js` library.

To load the Ajax resource from the server side, use the `jsf.ajax.request` method within the bean class. This method is usually used when creating a custom component or a custom renderer for a component.

The following example shows how the resource is loaded in a bean class:

```
@ResourceDependency(name="jsf.js" library="javax.faces" target="head")
```

13.12 The ajaxguessnumber Example Application

To demonstrate the advantages of using Ajax, revisit the `guessnumber` example from [Chapter 8, "Introduction to Facelets"](#). If you modify this example to use Ajax, the response need not be displayed in the `response.xhtml` page. Instead, an asynchronous call is made to the bean on the server side, and the response is displayed in the

originating page by executing just the input component rather than by form submission.

The source code for this application is in the *tut-install/examples/web/jsf/ajaxguessnumber/* directory.

13.12.1 The ajaxguessnumber Source Files

The changes to the guessnumber application occur in 2 source files.

13.12.1.1 The ajaxgreeting.xhtml Facelets Page

The Facelets page for ajaxguessnumber, *ajaxgreeting.xhtml*, is almost the same as the *greeting.xhtml* page for the guessnumber application:

```
<h:head>
  <h:outputStylesheet library="css" name="default.css" />
  <title>Ajax Guess Number Facelets Application</title>
</h:head>
<h:body>
  <h:form id="AjaxGuess">
    <h:graphicImage value="#{resource['images:wave.med.gif']}"
      alt="Duke waving his hand" />
    <h2>
      Hi, my name is Duke. I am thinking of a number from
      #{dukesNumberBean.minimum} to #{dukesNumberBean.maximum}.
      Can you guess it?
    </h2>
    <p>
      <h:inputText
        id="userNo"
        title="Type a number from 0 to 10:"
        value="#{userNumberBean.userNumber}"
        <f:validateLongRange
          minimum="#{dukesNumberBean.minimum}"
          maximum="#{dukesNumberBean.maximum}" />
      </h:inputText>
      <h:commandButton id="submit" value="Submit" >
        <f:ajax execute="userNo" render="outputGroup" />
      </h:commandButton>
    </p>
    <p>
      <h:panelGroup layout="block" id="outputGroup">
        <h:outputText id="result" style="color:blue"
          value="#{userNumberBean.response}"
          rendered="#{!facesContext.validationFailed}" />
        <h:message id="errors1"
          showSummary="true"
          showDetail="false"
          style="color: #d20005;
          font-family: 'New Century Schoolbook', serif;
          font-style: oblique;
          text-decoration: overline"
          for="userNo" />
      </h:panelGroup>
    </p>
  </h:form>
</h:body>
```

The most important change is in the `h:commandButton` tag. The `action` attribute is removed from the tag, and `f:ajax` tag is added.

The `f:ajax` tag specifies that when the button is clicked, the `h:inputText` component with the `id` value `userNo` is executed. The components within the `outputGroup` panel group are then rendered. If a validation error occurs, the managed bean is not executed, the validation error message is displayed in the message pane. Otherwise, the result of the guess is rendered in the `result` component.

13.12.1.2 The UserNumberBean Backing Bean

A small change is also made in the `UserNumberBean` code so that the output component does not display any message for the default (null) value of the property `response`. Here is the modified bean code:

```
public String getResponse() {
    if ((userNumber != null) && (userNumber.compareTo(randomInt) == 0)) {
        return "Yay! You got it!";
    }
    if (userNumber == null) {
        return null;
    } else {
        return "Sorry, " + userNumber + " is incorrect.";
    }
}
```

13.12.1.3 The DukesNumberBean CDI Bean

The `DukesNumberBean` session-scoped CDI bean stores the range of guessable numbers and the randomly chosen number from that range. It is injected into `UserNumberBean` with the CDI `@Inject` annotation so the value of the random number can be compared to the number the user submitted.

13.12.2 Running the ajaxguessnumber Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the `ajaxguessnumber` application.

13.12.2.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the ajaxguessnumber Example Using NetBeans IDE

This procedure builds the application and deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/jsf`
3. Select the `ajaxguessnumber` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `ajaxguessnumber` project and select **Run**.

This command builds and deploys the project.

13.12.2.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the ajaxguessnumber Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:

tut-install/examples/web/jsf/ajaxguessnumber/

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `ajaxguessnumber.war`, located in the `target` directory. It then deploys the application.

13.12.2.3 To Run the `ajaxguessnumber` Example

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/ajaxguessnumber
```

2. Enter a value in the field and click **Submit**.

If the value is in the range 0 to 10, a message states whether the guess is correct or incorrect. If the value is outside that range, or if the value is not a number, an error message appears in red.

13.13 Further Information about Ajax in JavaServer Faces Technology

For more information on Ajax in JavaServer Faces Technology, see

- JavaServer Faces project web site:

<https://javaserverfaces.java.net/>

- JavaServer Faces JavaScript Library APIs:

<http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaserverfaces/2.2/jsdocs/symbols/jsf.ajax.html>

Composite Components: Advanced Topics and Example

This chapter describes the advanced features of composite components in JavaServer Faces technology.

A composite component is a special type of JavaServer Faces template that acts as a component. If you are new to composite components, see [Composite Components](#) before you proceed with this chapter.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Attributes of a Composite Component](#)
- [Invoking a Managed Bean](#)
- [Validating Composite Component Values](#)
- [The compositecomponentlogin Example Application](#)

14.1 Attributes of a Composite Component

You define an attribute of a composite component by using the `composite:attribute` tag. [Table 14-1](#) lists the commonly used attributes of this tag.

Table 14-1 Commonly Used Attributes of the `composite:attribute` Tag

Attribute	Description
<code>name</code>	Specifies the name of the composite component attribute to be used in the using page. Alternatively, the <code>name</code> attribute can specify standard event handlers such as <code>action</code> , <code>actionListener</code> , and <code>managed bean</code> .
<code>default</code>	Specifies the default value of the composite component attribute.
<code>required</code>	Specifies whether it is mandatory to provide a value for the attribute.
<code>method-signature</code>	Specifies a subclass of <code>java.lang.Object</code> as the type of the composite component's attribute. The <code>method-signature</code> element declares that the composite component attribute is a method expression. The <code>type</code> attribute and the <code>method-signature</code> attribute are mutually exclusive. If you specify both, <code>method-signature</code> is ignored. The default type of an attribute is <code>java.lang.Object</code> . Note: Method expressions are similar to value expressions, but rather than supporting the dynamic retrieval and setting of properties, method expressions support the invocation of a method of an arbitrary object, passing a specified set of parameters and returning the result from the called method (if any).

Table 14–1 (Cont.) Commonly Used Attributes of the composite:attribute Tag

Attribute	Description
type	Specifies a fully qualified class name as the type of the attribute. The type attribute and the method-signature attribute are mutually exclusive. If you specify both, method-signature is ignored. The default type of an attribute is <code>java.lang.Object</code> .

The following code snippet defines a composite component attribute and assigns it a default value:

```
<composite:attribute name="username" default="admin"/>
```

The following code snippet uses the method-signature element:

```
<composite:attribute name="myaction"
    method-signature="java.lang.String action()"/>
```

The following code snippet uses the type element:

```
<composite:attribute name="dateofjoining" type="java.util.Date"/>
```

14.2 Invoking a Managed Bean

To enable a composite component to handle server-side data, you can invoke a managed bean in one of the following ways:

- Pass the reference of the managed bean to the composite component.
- Directly use the properties of the managed bean.

The example application described in [The compositecomponentlogin Example Application](#) shows how to use a managed bean with a composite component by passing the reference of the managed bean to the component.

14.3 Validating Composite Component Values

JavaServer Faces provides the following tags for validating values of input components. These tags can be used with the `composite:valueHolder` or the `composite:editableValueHolder` tag.

[Table 14–2](#) lists commonly used validator tags.

Table 14–2 Validator Tags

Tag Name	Description
<code>f:validateBean</code>	Delegates the validation of the local value to the Bean Validation API.
<code>f:validateRegex</code>	Uses the pattern attribute to validate the wrapping component. The entire pattern is matched against the <code>String</code> value of the component. If it matches, it is valid.
<code>f:validateRequired</code>	Enforces the presence of a value. Has the same effect as setting the required element of a composite component's attribute to <code>true</code> .

14.4 The compositecomponentlogin Example Application

The `compositecomponentlogin` application creates a composite component that accepts a user name and a password. The component interacts with a managed bean.

The component stores the user name and password in the managed bean, retrieves the values from the bean, and displays these values on the Login page.

The `compositecomponentlogin` application has a composite component file, a using page, and a managed bean.

The source code for this application is in the `tut-install/examples/web/jsf/compositecomponentlogin/` directory.

14.4.1 The Composite Component File

The composite component file is an XHTML file, `/web/resources/ezcomp/LoginPanel.xhtml`. It has a `composite:interface` section that declares the labels for the user name, password, and login button. It also declares a managed bean, which defines properties for the user name and password.

```
<composite:interface>
  <composite:attribute name="namePrompt" default="User Name: " />
  <composite:attribute name="passwordPrompt" default="Password: " />

  <composite:attribute name="loginButtonText" default="Log In" />
  <composite:attribute name="loginAction"
    method-signature="java.lang.String action()" />
  <composite:attribute name="myLoginBean" />
  <composite:editableValueHolder name="vals" targets="form:name" />
  <composite:editableValueHolder name="passwordVal"
    targets="form:password" />
</composite:interface>
```

The composite component implementation accepts input values for the user name and password properties of the managed bean. The `h:outputStylesheet` tag specifies the stylesheet as a relocatable resource.

```
<composite:implementation>
  <h:form id="form">
    <h:outputStylesheet library="css" name="default.css"
      target="head" />
    <h:panelGrid columns="2" role="presentation">
      <h:outputLabel for="name"
        value="#{cc.attrs.namePrompt}" />
      <h:inputText id="name"
        value="#{cc.attrs.myLoginBean.name}"
        required="true" />
      <h:outputLabel for="password"
        value="#{cc.attrs.passwordPrompt}" />
      <h:inputSecret id="password"
        value="#{cc.attrs.myLoginBean.password}"
        required="true" />
    </h:panelGrid>
    <p>
      <h:commandButton id="loginButton"
        value="#{cc.attrs.loginButtonText}"
        action="#{cc.attrs.loginAction}" />
    </p>
  </h:form>
  ...
</composite:implementation>
```

14.4.2 The Using Page

The using page in this example application, `web/index.xhtml`, is an XHTML file that invokes the login composite component file along with the managed bean. It validates the user's input.

```
<div id="compositecomponent">
  <ez:LoginPanel myLoginBean="#{myLoginBean}"
    loginAction="#{myLoginBean.login}">
    <f:validateLength maximum="10" minimum="4" for="vals" />
    <f:validateRegex pattern="((?=.*\d)(?=.*[a-z])(?=.*[A-Z]).{4,10})"
      for="passwordVal"/>
  </ez:LoginPanel>
</div>
```

The `f:validateLength` tag requires the user name to have from 4 to 10 characters.

The `f:validateRegex` tag requires the password to have from 4 to 10 characters and to contain at least one digit, one lowercase letter, and one uppercase letter.

14.4.3 The Managed Bean

The managed bean, `MyLoginBean.java`, defines a method called `login`, which retrieves the values of the user name and password.

```
@Model
public class MyLoginBean implements Serializable {
    private static final long serialVersionUID = 1L;
    private String name;
    private String password;

    public MyLoginBean() {
    }

    public myloginBean(String name, String password) {
        this.name = name;
        this.password = password;
    }

    public String getPassword() {
        return password;
    }

    public void setPassword(String newValue) {
        password = newValue;
    }

    public String getName() {
        return name;
    }

    public void setName(String newValue) {
        name = newValue;
    }

    public String login() {
        if (getName().equals("javaee")) {
            String msg = "Success. Your user name is " + getName()
                + ", and your password is " + getPassword();
            FacesMessage facesMsg = new FacesMessage(msg, msg);
            FacesContext.getCurrentInstance().addMessage(null, facesMsg);
        }
    }
}
```

```

        return "index";
    } else {
        String msg = "Failure. Your user name is " + getName()
            + ", and your password is " + getPassword();
        FacesMessage facesMsg =
            new FacesMessage(FacesMessage.SEVERITY_ERROR, msg, msg);
        FacesContext.getCurrentInstance().addMessage(null, facesMsg);
        return "index";
    }
}
}
}

```

14.4.4 Running the compositecomponentlogin Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the compositecomponentlogin example.

14.4.4.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the compositecomponentlogin Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf
```
3. Select the compositecomponentlogin folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click compositecomponentlogin and select **Build**.

This command builds and deploys the application.

14.4.4.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the compositecomponentlogin Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:


```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf/compositecomponentlogin
```
2. Enter the following command to build and deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

14.4.4.3 To Run the compositecomponentlogin Example

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:


```
http://localhost:8080/compositecomponentlogin
```
2. In the Login Component page, enter values in the **User Name** and **Password** fields, then click **Log In**.

Because of the way the login method is coded, the login succeeds only if the user name is javaee.

Because of the `f:validateLength` tag, if the user name has fewer than 4 characters or more than 10 characters, a validation error message appears.

Because of the `f:validateRegex` tag, if the password has fewer than 4 characters or more than 10 characters or does not contain at least one digit, one lowercase

letter, and one uppercase letter, a "Regex Pattern not matched" error message appears.

Creating Custom UI Components and Other Custom Objects

JavaServer Faces technology offers a basic set of standard, reusable UI components that enable quick and easy construction of user interfaces for web applications. These components mostly map one-to-one to the elements in HTML 4. But often an application requires a component that has additional functionality or requires a completely new component. JavaServer Faces technology allows extension of standard components to enhance their functionality or to create custom components. A rich ecosystem of third party component libraries is built on this extension capability, but it is beyond the scope of this tutorial to examine them. A web search for "JSF Component Libraries" is a good starting point to learn more about this important aspect of using JavaServer Faces technology.

In addition to extending the functionality of standard components, a component writer might want to give a page author the ability to change the appearance of the component on the page or to alter listener behavior. Alternatively, the component writer might want to render a component to a different kind of client device type, such as a smartphone or a tablet instead of a desktop computer. Enabled by the flexible JavaServer Faces architecture, a component writer can separate the definition of the component behavior from its appearance by delegating the rendering of the component to a separate renderer. In this way, a component writer can define the behavior of a custom component once but create multiple renderers, each of which defines a different way to render the component to a particular kind of client device.

A `javax.faces.component.UIComponent` is a Java class that is responsible for representing a self-contained piece of the user interface during the request processing lifecycle. It is intended to represent the meaning of the component; the visual representation of the component is the responsibility of the `javax.faces.render.Renderer`. There can be multiple instances of the same `UIComponent` class in any given JavaServer Faces view, just as there can be multiple instances of any Java class in any given Java program.

JavaServer Faces technology provides the ability to create custom components by extending the `UIComponent` class, the base class for all standard UI components. A custom component can be used anywhere an ordinary component can be used, such as within a composite component. A `UIComponent` is identified by two names: `component-family` specifies the purpose of the component (input or output, for instance), while `component-type` indicates the specific purpose of a component, such as a text input field or a command button.

A `Renderer` is a helper to the `UIComponent` that deals with how that specific `UIComponent` class should appear in a specific kind of client device. Renderers are identified by two names: `render-kit-id` and `renderer-type`. A render kit is just a bucket into which a particular group of renderers is placed, and the `render-kit-id`

identifies the group. Most JavaServer Faces component libraries provide their own render kits.

A `javax.faces.view.facelets.Tag` object is a helper to the `UIComponent` and `Renderer` that allows the page author to include an instance of a `UIComponent` in a JavaServer Faces view. A tag represents a specific combination of `component-type` and `renderer-type`.

See [Component, Renderer, and Tag Combinations](#) for information on how components, renderers, and tags interact.

This chapter uses the image map component from the Duke's Bookstore case study example to explain how you can create simple custom components, custom renderers, and associated custom tags, and take care of all the other details associated with using the components and renderers in an application. See [Chapter 55, "Duke's Bookstore Case Study Example"](#) for more information about this example.

The chapter also describes how to create other custom objects: custom converters, custom listeners, and custom validators. It also describes how to bind component values and instances to data objects and how to bind custom objects to managed bean properties.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Determining Whether You Need a Custom Component or Renderer](#)
- [Understanding the Image Map Example](#)
- [Steps for Creating a Custom Component](#)
- [Creating Custom Component Classes](#)
- [Delegating Rendering to a Renderer](#)
- [Implementing an Event Listener](#)
- [Handling Events for Custom Components](#)
- [Defining the Custom Component Tag in a Tag Library Descriptor](#)
- [Using a Custom Component](#)
- [Creating and Using a Custom Converter](#)
- [Creating and Using a Custom Validator](#)
- [Binding Component Values and Instances to Managed Bean Properties](#)
- [Binding Converters, Listeners, and Validators to Managed Bean Properties](#)

15.1 Determining Whether You Need a Custom Component or Renderer

The JavaServer Faces implementation supports a very basic set of components and associated renderers. This section helps you to decide whether you can use standard components and renderers in your application or need a custom component or custom renderer.

15.1.1 When to Use a Custom Component

A component class defines the state and behavior of a UI component. This behavior includes converting the value of a component to the appropriate markup, queuing events on components, performing validation, and any other behavior related to how the component interacts with the browser and the request processing lifecycle.

You need to create a custom component in the following situations:

- You need to add new behavior to a standard component, such as generating an additional type of event (for example, notifying another part of the page that something changed in this component as a result of user interaction).
- You need to take a different action in the request processing of the value of a component from what is available in any of the existing standard components.
- You want to take advantage of an HTML capability offered by your target browser, but none of the standard JavaServer Faces components take advantage of the capability in the way you want, if at all. The current release does not contain standard components for complex HTML components, such as frames; however, because of the extensibility of the component architecture, you can use JavaServer Faces technology to create components like these. The Duke's Bookstore case study creates custom components that correspond to the HTML `map` and `area` tags.
- You need to render to a non-HTML client that requires extra components not supported by HTML. Eventually, the standard HTML render kit will provide support for all standard HTML components. However, if you are rendering to a different client, such as a phone, you might need to create custom components to represent the controls uniquely supported by the client. For example, some component architectures for wireless clients include support for tickers and progress bars, which are not available on an HTML client. In this case, you might also need a custom renderer along with the component; or you might need only a custom renderer.

You do not need to create a custom component in these cases:

- You need to aggregate components to create a new component that has its own unique behavior. In this situation, you can use a composite component to combine existing standard components. For more information on composite components, see [Composite Components](#) and [Chapter 14, "Composite Components: Advanced Topics and Example"](#).
- You simply need to manipulate data on the component or add application-specific functionality to it. In this situation, you should create a managed bean for this purpose and bind it to the standard component rather than create a custom component. See [Managed Beans in JavaServer Faces Technology](#) for more information on managed beans.
- You need to convert a component's data to a type not supported by its renderer. See [Using the Standard Converters](#) for more information about converting a component's data.
- You need to perform validation on the component data. Standard validators and custom validators can be added to a component by using the validator tags from the page. See [Using the Standard Validators](#) and [Creating and Using a Custom Validator](#) for more information about validating a component's data.
- You need to register event listeners on components. You can either register event listeners on components using the `f:valueChangeListener` and `f:actionListener` tags, or you can point at an event-processing method on a managed bean using the component's `actionListener` or `valueChangeListener` attributes. See [Implementing an Event Listener](#) and [Writing Managed Bean Methods](#) for more information.

15.1.2 When to Use a Custom Renderer

A renderer, which generates the markup to display a component on a web page, allows you to separate the semantics of a component from its appearance. By keeping this separation, you can support different kinds of client devices with the same kind of authoring experience. You can think of a renderer as a "client adapter." It produces output suitable for consumption and display by the client, and accepts input from the client when the user interacts with that component.

If you are creating a custom component, you need to ensure, among other things, that your component class performs these operations that are central to rendering the component:

- **Decoding:** Converting the incoming request parameters to the local value of the component
- **Encoding:** Converting the current local value of the component into the corresponding markup that represents it in the response

The JavaServer Faces specification supports two programming models for handling encoding and decoding:

- **Direct implementation:** The component class itself implements the decoding and encoding.
- **Delegated implementation:** The component class delegates the implementation of encoding and decoding to a separate renderer.

By delegating the operations to the renderer, you have the option of associating your custom component with different renderers so that you can render the component on different clients. If you don't plan to render a particular component on different clients, it may be simpler to let the component class handle the rendering. However, a separate renderer enables you to preserve the separation of semantics from appearance. The Duke's Bookstore application separates the renderers from the components, although it renders only to HTML 4 web browsers.

If you aren't sure whether you will need the flexibility offered by separate renderers but you want to use the simpler direct-implementation approach, you can actually use both models. Your component class can include some default rendering code, but it can delegate rendering to a renderer if there is one.

15.1.3 Component, Renderer, and Tag Combinations

When you create a custom component, you can create a custom renderer to go with it. To associate the component with the renderer and to reference the component from the page, you will also need a custom tag.

Although you need to write the custom component and renderer, there is no need to write code for a custom tag (called a tag handler). If you specify the component and renderer combination, Facelets creates the tag handler automatically.

In rare situations, you might use a custom renderer with a standard component rather than a custom component. Or you might use a custom tag without a renderer or a component. This section gives examples of these situations and summarizes what's required for a custom component, renderer, and tag.

You would use a custom renderer without a custom component if you wanted to add some client-side validation on a standard component. You would implement the validation code with a client-side scripting language, such as JavaScript, and then render the JavaScript with the custom renderer. In this situation, you need a custom

tag to go with the renderer so that its tag handler can register the renderer on the standard component.

Custom components as well as custom renderers need custom tags associated with them. However, you can have a custom tag without a custom renderer or custom component. For example, suppose that you need to create a custom validator that requires extra attributes on the validator tag. In this case, the custom tag corresponds to a custom validator and not to a custom component or custom renderer. In any case, you still need to associate the custom tag with a server-side object.

[Table 15–1](#) summarizes what you must or can associate with a custom component, custom renderer, or custom tag.

Table 15–1 Requirements for Custom Components, Custom Renderers, and Custom Tags

Custom Item	Must Have	Can Have
Custom component	Custom tag	Custom renderer or standard renderer
Custom renderer	Custom tag	Custom component or standard component
Custom JavaServer Faces tag	Some server-side object, like a component, a custom renderer, or custom validator	Custom component or standard component associated with a custom renderer

15.2 Understanding the Image Map Example

Duke's Bookstore includes a custom image map component on the `index.xhtml` page. This image map displays a selection of six book titles. When the user clicks one of the book titles in the image map, the application goes to a page that displays the title of the selected book as well as information about a featured book. The page allows the user to add either book (or none) to the shopping cart.

15.2.1 Why Use JavaServer Faces Technology to Implement an Image Map?

JavaServer Faces technology is an ideal framework to use for implementing this kind of image map because it can perform the work that must be done on the server without requiring you to create a server-side image map.

In general, client-side image maps are preferred over server-side image maps for several reasons. One reason is that the client-side image map allows the browser to provide immediate feedback when a user positions the mouse over a hotspot. Another reason is that client-side image maps perform better because they don't require round-trips to the server. However, in some situations, your image map might need to access the server to retrieve data or to change the appearance of non-form controls, tasks that a client-side image map cannot do.

Because the image map custom component uses JavaServer Faces technology, it has the best of both styles of image maps: It can handle the parts of the application that need to be performed on the server, while allowing the other parts of the application to be performed on the client side.

15.2.2 Understanding the Rendered HTML

Here is an abbreviated version of the form part of the HTML page that the application needs to render:

```
<form id="j_idt13" name="j_idt13" method="post">
```

```

        action="/dukesbookstore/faces/index.xhtml" ...>
    ...
    
    ...
    <map name="bookMap">
    <area alt="Duke"
        coords="67,23,212,268"
        shape="rect"
        onmouseout="document.forms[0]['j_idt13:mapImage'].src='resources/images/book_all.jpg'"
        onmouseover="document.forms[0]['j_idt13:mapImage'].src='resources/images/book_201.jpg'"
        onclick="document.forms[0]['bookMap_current'].value='Duke'; document.forms[0].submit()"
    />
    ...
    <input type="hidden" name="bookMap_current">
    </map>
    ...
</form>

```

The `img` tag associates an image (`book_all.jpg`) with the image map referenced in the `usemap` attribute value.

The `map` tag specifies the image map and contains a set of area tags.

Each area tag specifies a region of the image map. The `onmouseover`, `onmouseout`, and `onclick` attributes define which JavaScript code is executed when these events occur. When the user moves the mouse over a region, the `onmouseover` function associated with the region displays the map with that region highlighted. When the user moves the mouse out of a region, the `onmouseout` function re-displays the original image. If the user clicks on a region, the `onclick` function sets the value of the `input` tag to the ID of the selected area and submits the page.

The `input` tag represents a hidden control that stores the value of the currently selected area between client-server exchanges so that the server-side component classes can retrieve the value.

The server-side objects retrieve the value of `bookMap_current` and set the locale in the `javax.faces.context.FacesContext` instance according to the region that was selected.

15.2.3 Understanding the Facelets Page

Here is an abbreviated form of the Facelets page that the image map component uses to generate the HTML page shown in the preceding section. It uses custom `bookstore:map` and `bookstore:area` tags to represent the custom components:

```

<h:form>
    ...
    <h:graphicImage id="mapImage"
        name="book_all.jpg"
        library="images"
        alt="{bundle.ChooseBook}"
        usemap="#bookMap" />
    <bookstore:map id="bookMap"
        current="map1"
        immediate="true"
        action="bookstore">
    <f:actionListener
        type="dukesbookstore.listeners.MapBookChangeListener" />

```

```

<bookstore:area id="map1" value="#{Book201}"
  onmouseover="resources/images/book_201.jpg"
  onmouseout="resources/images/book_all.jpg"
  targetImage="mapImage" />
<bookstore:area id="map2" value="#{Book202}"
  onmouseover="resources/images/book_202.jpg"
  onmouseout="resources/images/book_all.jpg"
  targetImage="mapImage" />
...
</bookstore:map>
...
</h:form>

```

The `alt` attribute of the `h:graphicImage` tag maps to the localized string "Choose a Book from our Catalog".

The `f:actionListener` tag within the `bookstore:map` tag points to a listener class for an action event. The `processAction` method of the listener places the book ID for the selected map area into the session map. The way this event is handled is explained more in [Handling Events for Custom Components](#).

The `action` attribute of the `bookstore:map` tag specifies a logical outcome `String`, "bookstore", which by implicit navigation rules sends the application to the page `bookstore.xhtml`. For more information on navigation, see the section [Configuring Navigation Rules](#).

The `immediate` attribute of the `bookstore:map` tag is set to `true`, which indicates that the default `javax.faces.event.ActionListener` implementation should execute during the Apply Request Values phase of the request-processing lifecycle, instead of waiting for the Invoke Application phase. Because the request resulting from clicking the map does not require any validation, data conversion, or server-side object updates, it makes sense to skip directly to the Invoke Application phase.

The `current` attribute of the `bookstore:map` tag is set to the default area, which is `map1` (the book *My Early Years: Growing Up on Star7*, by Duke).

Notice that the `bookstore:area` tags do not contain any of the JavaScript, coordinate, or shape data that is displayed on the HTML page. The JavaScript is generated by the `dukesbookstore.renderers.AreaRenderer` class. The `onmouseover` and `onmouseout` attribute values indicate the image to be loaded when these events occur. How the JavaScript is generated is explained more in [Performing Encoding](#).

The coordinate, shape, and alternate text data are obtained through the `value` attribute, whose value refers to an attribute in application scope. The value of this attribute is a bean, which stores the `coords`, `shape`, and `alt` data. How these beans are stored in the application scope is explained more in the next section.

15.2.4 Configuring Model Data

In a JavaServer Faces application, data such as the coordinates of a hotspot of an image map is retrieved from the `value` attribute through a bean. However, the shape and coordinates of a hotspot should be defined together because the coordinates are interpreted differently depending on what shape the hotspot is. Because a component's value can be bound only to one property, the `value` attribute cannot refer to both the shape and the coordinates.

To solve this problem, the application encapsulates all of this information in a set of `ImageArea` objects. These objects are initialized into application scope by the managed bean creation facility (see [Managed Beans in JavaServer Faces Technology](#)). Here is

part of the managed bean declaration for the `ImageArea` bean corresponding to the South America hotspot:

```
<managed-bean eager="true">
  ...
  <managed-bean-name>Book201</managed-bean-name>
  <managed-bean-class>dukesbookstore.model.ImageArea</managed-bean-class>
  <managed-bean-scope>application</managed-bean-scope>
  <managed-property>
    ...
    <property-name>shape</property-name>
    <value>rect</value>
  </managed-property>
  <managed-property>
    ...
    <property-name>alt</property-name>
    <value>Duke</value>
  </managed-property>
  <managed-property>
    ...
    <property-name>coords</property-name>
    <value>67,23,212,268</value>
  </managed-property>
</managed-bean>
```

For more information on initializing managed beans with the managed bean creation facility, see the section [Application Configuration Resource File](#).

The value attributes of the `bookstore:area` tags refer to the beans in the application scope, as shown in this `bookstore:area` tag from `index.xhtml`:

```
<bookstore:area id="map1" value="#{Book201}"
  onmouseover="resources/images/book_201.jpg"
  onmouseout="resources/images/book_all.jpg"
  targetImage="mapImage" />
```

To reference the `ImageArea` model object bean values from the component class, you implement a `getValue` method in the component class. This method calls `super.getValue`. The superclass of *tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/src/java/dukesbookstore/components/AreaComponent.java*, `UIOutput`, has a `getValue` method that does the work of finding the `ImageArea` object associated with `AreaComponent`. The `AreaRenderer` class, which needs to render the `alt`, `shape`, and `coords` values from the `ImageArea` object, calls the `getValue` method of `AreaComponent` to retrieve the `ImageArea` object.

```
ImageArea iarea = (ImageArea) area.getValue();
```

`ImageArea` is a simple bean, so you can access the `shape`, `coordinates`, and `alternative text` values by calling the appropriate accessor methods of `ImageArea`. [Creating the Renderer Class](#) explains how to do this in the `AreaRenderer` class.

15.2.5 Summary of the Image Map Application Classes

[Table 15-2](#) summarizes all the classes needed to implement the image map component.

Table 15–2 Image Map Classes

Class	Function
AreaSelectedEvent	The <code>javax.faces.event.ActionEvent</code> indicating that an <code>AreaComponent</code> from the <code>MapComponent</code> has been selected.
AreaComponent	The class that defines <code>AreaComponent</code> , which corresponds to the <code>bookstore:area</code> custom tag.
MapComponent	The class that defines <code>MapComponent</code> , which corresponds to the <code>bookstore:map</code> custom tag.
AreaRenderer	This <code>javax.faces.render.Renderer</code> performs the delegated rendering for <code>AreaComponent</code> .
ImageArea	The bean that stores the shape and coordinates of the hotspots.
MapBookChangeListener	The action listener for the <code>MapComponent</code> .

The Duke's Bookstore source directory, called *bookstore-dir*, is `tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/src/java/dukesbookstore/`. The event and listener classes are located in *bookstore-dir*/`listeners/`. The component classes are located in *bookstore-dir*/`components/`. The renderer classes are located in *bookstore-dir*/`renderers/`. `ImageArea` is located in *bookstore-dir*/`model/`.

15.3 Steps for Creating a Custom Component

You can apply the following steps while developing your own custom component.

1. Create a custom component class that does the following:
 - a. Overrides the `getFamily` method to return the component family, which is used to look up renderers that can render the component.
 - b. Includes the rendering code or delegates it to a renderer (explained in Step 2).
 - c. Enables component attributes to accept expressions.
 - d. Queues an event on the component if the component generates events.
 - e. Saves and restores the component state.
2. Delegate rendering to a renderer if your component does not handle the rendering. To do this:
 - a. Create a custom renderer class by extending `javax.faces.render.Renderer`.
 - b. Register the renderer to a render kit.
3. Register the component.
4. Create an event handler if your component generates events.
5. Create a tag library descriptor (TLD) that defines the custom tag.

See [Registering a Custom Component](#) and [Registering a Custom Renderer with a Render Kit](#) for information on registering the custom component and the renderer. The section [Using a Custom Component](#) discusses how to use the custom component in a JavaServer Faces page.

15.4 Creating Custom Component Classes

As explained in [When to Use a Custom Component](#), a component class defines the state and behavior of a UI component. The state information includes the component's

type, identifier, and local value. The behavior defined by the component class includes the following:

- Decoding (converting the request parameter to the component's local value)
- Encoding (converting the local value into the corresponding markup)
- Saving the state of the component
- Updating the bean value with the local value
- Processing validation on the local value
- Queuing events

The `javax.faces.component.UIComponentBase` class defines the default behavior of a component class. All the classes representing the standard components extend from `UIComponentBase`. These classes add their own behavior definitions, as your custom component class will do.

Your custom component class must either extend `UIComponentBase` directly or extend a class representing one of the standard components. These classes are located in the `javax.faces.component` package and their names begin with `UI`.

If your custom component serves the same purpose as a standard component, you should extend that standard component rather than directly extend `UIComponentBase`. For example, suppose you want to create an editable menu component. It makes sense to have this component extend `UISelectOne` rather than `UIComponentBase` because you can reuse the behavior already defined in `UISelectOne`. The only new functionality you need to define is to make the menu editable.

Whether you decide to have your component extend `UIComponentBase` or a standard component, you might also want your component to implement one or more of these behavioral interfaces defined in the `javax.faces.component` package:

- **ActionSource:** Indicates that the component can fire a `javax.faces.event.ActionEvent`.
- **ActionSource2:** Extends `ActionSource` and allows component properties referencing methods that handle action events to use method expressions as defined by the EL.
- **EditableValueHolder:** Extends `ValueHolder` and specifies additional features for editable components, such as validation and emitting value-change events.
- **NamingContainer:** Mandates that each component rooted at this component have a unique ID.
- **StateHolder:** Denotes that a component has state that must be saved between requests.
- **ValueHolder:** Indicates that the component maintains a local value as well as the option of accessing data in the model tier.

If your component extends `UIComponentBase`, it automatically implements only `StateHolder`. Because all components directly or indirectly extend `UIComponentBase`, they all implement `StateHolder`. Any component that implements `StateHolder` also implements the `StateHelper` interface, which extends `StateHolder` and defines a `Map`-like contract that makes it easy for components to save and restore a partial view state.

If your component extends one of the other standard components, it might also implement other behavioral interfaces in addition to `StateHolder`. If your component extends `UICommand`, it automatically implements `ActionSource2`. If your component

extends `UIOutput` or one of the component classes that extend `UIOutput`, it automatically implements `ValueHolder`. If your component extends `UIInput`, it automatically implements `EditableValueHolder` and `ValueHolder`. See the JavaServer Faces API documentation to find out what the other component classes implement.

You can also make your component explicitly implement a behavioral interface that it doesn't already by virtue of extending a particular standard component. For example, if you have a component that extends `UIInput` and you want it to fire action events, you must make it explicitly implement `ActionSource2` because a `UIInput` component doesn't automatically implement this interface.

The Duke's Bookstore image map example has two component classes: `AreaComponent` and `MapComponent`. The `MapComponent` class extends `UICommand` and therefore implements `ActionSource2`, which means it can fire action events when a user clicks on the map. The `AreaComponent` class extends the standard component `UIOutput`. The `@FacesComponent` annotation registers the components with the JavaServer Faces implementation:

```
@FacesComponent("DemoMap")
public class MapComponent extends UICommand {...}

@FacesComponent("DemoArea")
public class AreaComponent extends UIOutput {...}
```

The `MapComponent` class represents the component corresponding to the `bookstore:map` tag:

```
<bookstore:map id="bookMap"
               current="map1"
               immediate="true"
               action="bookstore">
    ...
</bookstore:map>
```

The `AreaComponent` class represents the component corresponding to the `bookstore:area` tag:

```
<bookstore:area id="map1" value="#{Book201}"
                onmouseover="resources/images/book_201.jpg"
                onmouseout="resources/images/book_all.jpg"
                targetImage="mapImage" />
```

`MapComponent` has one or more `AreaComponent` instances as children. Its behavior consists of the following actions:

- Retrieving the value of the currently selected area
- Defining the properties corresponding to the component's values
- Generating an event when the user clicks on the image map
- Queuing the event
- Saving its state
- Rendering the HTML `map` tag and the HTML `input` tag

`MapComponent` delegates the rendering of the HTML `map` and `input` tags to the `MapRenderer` class.

`AreaComponent` is bound to a bean that stores the shape and coordinates of the region of the image map. You will see how all this data is accessed through the value

expression in [Creating the Renderer Class](#). The behavior of `AreaComponent` consists of the following:

- Retrieving the shape and coordinate data from the bean
- Setting the value of the hidden tag to the `id` of this component
- Rendering the area tag, including the JavaScript for the `onmouseover`, `onmouseout`, and `onclick` functions

Although these tasks are actually performed by `AreaRenderer`, `AreaComponent` must delegate the tasks to `AreaRenderer`. See [Delegating Rendering to a Renderer](#) for more information.

The rest of this section describes the tasks that `MapComponent` performs as well as the encoding and decoding that it delegates to `MapRenderer`. [Handling Events for Custom Components](#) details how `MapComponent` handles events.

15.4.1 Specifying the Component Family

If your custom component class delegates rendering, it needs to override the `getFamily` method of `UIComponent` to return the identifier of a **component family**, which is used to refer to a component or set of components that can be rendered by a renderer or set of renderers. The component family is used along with the renderer type to look up renderers that can render the component:

```
public String getFamily() {  
    return ("Map");  
}
```

The component family identifier, `Map`, must match that defined by the `component-family` elements included in the component and renderer configurations in the application configuration resource file. [Registering a Custom Renderer with a Render Kit](#) explains how to define the component family in the renderer configuration. [Registering a Custom Component](#) explains how to define the component family in the component configuration.

15.4.2 Performing Encoding

During the Render Response phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation processes the encoding methods of all components and their associated renderers in the view. The encoding methods convert the current local value of the component into the corresponding markup that represents it in the response.

The `UIComponentBase` class defines a set of methods for rendering markup: `encodeBegin`, `encodeChildren`, and `encodeEnd`. If the component has child components, you might need to use more than one of these methods to render the component; otherwise, all rendering should be done in `encodeEnd`. Alternatively, you can use the `encodeALL` method, which encompasses all the methods.

Because `MapComponent` is a parent component of `AreaComponent`, the area tags must be rendered after the beginning `map` tag and before the ending `map` tag. To accomplish this, the `MapRenderer` class renders the beginning `map` tag in `encodeBegin` and the rest of the `map` tag in `encodeEnd`.

The JavaServer Faces implementation automatically invokes the `encodeEnd` method of `AreaComponent`'s renderer after it invokes `MapRenderer`'s `encodeBegin` method and before it invokes `MapRenderer`'s `encodeEnd` method. If a component needs to perform the rendering for its children, it does this in the `encodeChildren` method.

Here are the `encodeBegin` and `encodeEnd` methods of `MapRenderer`:

```

@Override
public void encodeBegin(FacesContext context, UIComponent component)
    throws IOException {
    if ((context == null) || (component == null)) {
        throw new NullPointerException();
    }
    MapComponent map = (MapComponent) component;
    ResponseWriter writer = context.getResponseWriter();
    writer.startElement("map", map);
    writer.writeAttribute("name", map.getId(), "id");
}

@Override
public void encodeEnd(FacesContext context, UIComponent component)
    throws IOException {
    if ((context == null) || (component == null)){
        throw new NullPointerException();
    }
    MapComponent map = (MapComponent) component;
    ResponseWriter writer = context.getResponseWriter();
    writer.startElement("input", map);
    writer.writeAttribute("type", "hidden", null);
    writer.writeAttribute("name", getName(context, map), "clientId");
    writer.endElement("input");
    writer.endElement("map");
}

```

Notice that `encodeBegin` renders only the beginning `map` tag. The `encodeEnd` method renders the `input` tag and the ending `map` tag.

The encoding methods accept a `UIComponent` argument and a `javax.faces.context.FacesContext` argument. The `FacesContext` instance contains all the information associated with the current request. The `UIComponent` argument is the component that needs to be rendered.

The rest of the method renders the markup to the `javax.faces.context.ResponseWriter` instance, which writes out the markup to the current response. This basically involves passing the HTML tag names and attribute names to the `ResponseWriter` instance as strings, retrieving the values of the component attributes, and passing these values to the `ResponseWriter` instance.

The `startElement` method takes a `String` (the name of the tag) and the component to which the tag corresponds (in this case, `map`). (Passing this information to the `ResponseWriter` instance helps design-time tools know which portions of the generated markup are related to which components.)

After calling `startElement`, you can call `writeAttribute` to render the tag's attributes. The `writeAttribute` method takes the name of the attribute, its value, and the name of a property or attribute of the containing component corresponding to the attribute. The last parameter can be null, and it won't be rendered.

The name attribute value of the `map` tag is retrieved using the `getId` method of `UIComponent`, which returns the component's unique identifier. The name attribute value of the `input` tag is retrieved using the `getName(FacesContext, UIComponent)` method of `MapRenderer`.

If you want your component to perform its own rendering but delegate to a renderer if there is one, include the following lines in the encoding method to check whether there is a renderer associated with this component:

```

if (getRendererType() != null) {

```

```
        super.encodeEnd(context);
        return;
    }
```

If there is a renderer available, this method invokes the superclass's `encodeEnd` method, which does the work of finding the renderer. The `MapComponent` class delegates all rendering to `MapRenderer`, so it does not need to check for available renderers.

In some custom component classes that extend standard components, you might need to implement other methods in addition to `encodeEnd`. For example, if you need to retrieve the component's value from the request parameters, you must also implement the `decode` method.

15.4.3 Performing Decoding

During the Apply Request Values phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation processes the `decode` methods of all components in the tree. The `decode` method extracts a component's local value from incoming request parameters and uses a `javax.faces.convert.Converter` implementation to convert the value to a type that is acceptable to the component class.

A custom component class or its renderer must implement the `decode` method only if it must retrieve the local value or if it needs to queue events. The component queues the event by calling `queueEvent`.

Here is the `decode` method of `MapRenderer`:

```
@Override
public void decode(FacesContext context, UIComponent component) {
    if ((context == null) || (component == null)) {
        throw new NullPointerException();
    }
    MapComponent map = (MapComponent) component;
    String key = getName(context, map);
    String value = (String) context.getExternalContext().
        getRequestParameterMap().get(key);
    if (value != null)
        map.setCurrent(value);
}
}
```

The `decode` method first gets the name of the hidden input field by calling `getName(FacesContext, UIComponent)`. It then uses that name as the key to the request parameter map to retrieve the current value of the input field. This value represents the currently selected area. Finally, it sets the value of the `MapComponent` class's `current` attribute to the value of the input field.

15.4.4 Enabling Component Properties to Accept Expressions

Nearly all the attributes of the standard JavaServer Faces tags can accept expressions, whether they are value expressions or method expressions. It is recommended that you also enable your component attributes to accept expressions because it gives you much more flexibility when you write Facelets pages.

To enable the attributes to accept expressions, the component class must implement getter and setter methods for the component properties. These methods can use the facilities offered by the `StateHelper` interface to store and retrieve not only the values for these properties, but also the state of the components across multiple requests.

Because `MapComponent` extends `UICommand`, the `UICommand` class already does the work of getting the `ValueExpression` and `MethodExpression` instances associated with each of the attributes that it supports. Similarly, the `UIOutput` class that `AreaComponent` extends already obtains the `ValueExpression` instances for its supported attributes. For both components, the simple getter and setter methods store and retrieve the key values and state for the attributes, as shown in this code fragment from `AreaComponent`:

```
enum PropertyKeys {
    alt, coords, shape, targetImage;
}
public String getAlt() {
    return (String) getStateHelper().eval(PropertyKeys.alt, null);
}
public void setAlt(String alt) {
    getStateHelper().put(PropertyKeys.alt, alt);
}
...
```

However, if you have a custom component class that extends `UIComponentBase`, you will need to implement the methods that get the `ValueExpression` and `MethodExpression` instances associated with those attributes that are enabled to accept expressions. For example, you could include a method that gets the `ValueExpression` instance for the immediate attribute:

```
public boolean isImmediate() {
    if (this.immediateSet) {
        return (this.immediate);
    }
    ValueExpression ve = getValueExpression("immediate");
    if (ve != null) {
        Boolean value = (Boolean) ve.getValue(
            getFacesContext().getELContext());
        return (value.booleanValue());
    } else {
        return (this.immediate);
    }
}
```

The properties corresponding to the component attributes that accept method expressions must accept and return a `MethodExpression` object. For example, if `MapComponent` extended `UIComponentBase` instead of `UICommand`, it would need to provide an action property that returns and accepts a `MethodExpression` object:

```
public MethodExpression getAction() {
    return (this.action);
}
public void setAction(MethodExpression action) {
    this.action = action;
}
```

15.4.5 Saving and Restoring State

As described in [Enabling Component Properties to Accept Expressions](#), use of the `StateHelper` interface facilities allows you to save the component's state at the same time you set and retrieve property values. The `StateHelper` implementation allows partial state saving: it saves only the changes in the state since the initial request, not the entire state, because the full state can be restored during the Restore View phase.

Component classes that implement `StateHolder` may prefer to implement the `saveState(FacesContext)` and `restoreState(FacesContext, Object)` methods to help the JavaServer Faces implementation save and restore the state of components across multiple requests.

To save a set of values, you can implement the `saveState(FacesContext)` method. This method is called during the Render Response phase, during which the state of the response is saved for processing on subsequent requests. Here is a hypothetical method from `MapComponent`, which has only one attribute, `current`:

```
@Override
public Object saveState(FacesContext context) {
    Object values[] = new Object[2];
    values[0] = super.saveState(context);
    values[1] = current;
    return (values);
}
```

This method initializes an array, which will hold the saved state. It next saves all of the state associated with the component.

A component that implements `StateHolder` may also provide an implementation for `restoreState(FacesContext, Object)`, which restores the state of the component to that saved with the `saveState(FacesContext)` method. The `restoreState(FacesContext, Object)` method is called during the Restore View phase, during which the JavaServer Faces implementation checks whether there is any state that was saved during the last Render Response phase and needs to be restored in preparation for the next postback.

Here is a hypothetical `restoreState(FacesContext, Object)` method from `MapComponent`:

```
public void restoreState(FacesContext context, Object state) {
    Object values[] = (Object[]) state;
    super.restoreState(context, values[0]);
    current = (String) values[1];
}
```

This method takes a `FacesContext` and an `Object` instance, representing the array that is holding the state for the component. This method sets the component's properties to the values saved in the `Object` array.

Whether or not you implement these methods in your component class, you can use the `javax.faces.STATE_SAVING_METHOD` context parameter to specify in the deployment descriptor where you want the state to be saved: either `client` or `server`. If state is saved on the client, the state of the entire view is rendered to a hidden field on the page. By default, the state is saved on the server.

The web applications in the Duke's Forest case study save their view state on the client.

Saving state on the client uses more bandwidth as well as more client resources, while saving it on the server uses more server resources. You may also want to save state on the client if you expect your users to disable cookies.

15.5 Delegating Rendering to a Renderer

Both `MapComponent` and `AreaComponent` delegate all of their rendering to a separate renderer. The section [Performing Encoding](#) explains how `MapRenderer` performs the encoding for `MapComponent`. This section explains in detail the process of delegating

rendering to a renderer using `AreaRenderer`, which performs the rendering for `AreaComponent`.

To delegate rendering, you perform these tasks:

- Create the `Renderer` class.
- Register the renderer with a render kit by using the `@FacesRenderer` annotation (or by using the application configuration resource file, as explained in [Registering a Custom Renderer with a Render Kit](#)).
- Identify the renderer type in the `FacesRenderer` annotation.

15.5.1 Creating the Renderer Class

When delegating rendering to a renderer, you can delegate all encoding and decoding to the renderer, or you can choose to do part of it in the component class. The `AreaComponent` class delegates encoding to the `AreaRenderer` class.

The renderer class begins with a `@FacesRenderer` annotation:

```
@FacesRenderer(componentFamily = "Area",
rendererType = "dukesbookstore.renderers.AreaRenderer")
public class AreaRenderer extends Renderer {
```

The `@FacesRenderer` annotation registers the renderer class with the JavaServer Faces implementation as a renderer class. The annotation identifies the component family as well as the renderer type.

To perform the rendering for `AreaComponent`, `AreaRenderer` must implement an `encodeEnd` method. The `encodeEnd` method of `AreaRenderer` retrieves the shape, coordinates, and alternative text values stored in the `ImageArea` bean that is bound to `AreaComponent`. Suppose that the `area` tag currently being rendered has a value attribute value of `"book203"`. The following line from `encodeEnd` gets the value of the attribute `"book203"` from the `FacesContext` instance.

```
ImageArea ia = (ImageArea)area.getValue();
```

The attribute value is the `ImageArea` bean instance, which contains the `shape`, `coords`, and `alt` values associated with the `book203` `AreaComponent` instance. [Configuring Model Data](#) describes how the application stores these values.

After retrieving the `ImageArea` object, the method renders the values for `shape`, `coords`, and `alt` by simply calling the associated accessor methods and passing the returned values to the `ResponseWriter` instance, as shown by these lines of code, which write out the shape and coordinates:

```
writer.startElement("area", area);
writer.writeAttribute("alt", iarea.getAlt(), "alt");
writer.writeAttribute("coords", iarea.getCoords(), "coords");
writer.writeAttribute("shape", iarea.getShape(), "shape");
```

The `encodeEnd` method also renders the JavaScript for the `onmouseover`, `onmouseover`, and `onclick` attributes. The Facelets page need only provide the path to the images that are to be loaded during an `onmouseover` or `onmouseout` action:

```
<bookstore:area id="map3" value="#{Book203}"
onmouseover="resources/images/book_203.jpg"
onmouseout="resources/images/book_all.jpg"
targetImage="mapImage" />
```

The `AreaRenderer` class takes care of generating the JavaScript for these actions, as shown in the following code from `encodeEnd`. The JavaScript that `AreaRenderer` generates for the `onclick` action sets the value of the hidden field to the value of the current area's component ID and submits the page.

```
sb = new StringBuffer("document.forms[0]['"].append(targetImageId).
    append("'].src='");
sb.append(
    getURI(context,
        (String) area.getAttributes().get("onmouseout"));
sb.append("");
writer.writeAttribute("onmouseout", sb.toString(), "onmouseout");
sb = new StringBuffer("document.forms[0]['"].append(targetImageId).
    append("'].src='");
sb.append(
    getURI(context,
        (String) area.getAttributes().get("onmouseover"));
sb.append("");
writer.writeAttribute("onmouseover", sb.toString(), "onmouseover");
sb = new StringBuffer("document.forms[0]['"];
sb.append(getName(context, area));
sb.append("'].value='");
sb.append(iarea.getAlt());
sb.append("; document.forms[0].submit()");
writer.writeAttribute("onclick", sb.toString(), "value");
writer.endElement("area");
```

By submitting the page, this code causes the JavaServer Faces lifecycle to return back to the `Restore View` phase. This phase saves any state information, including the value of the hidden field, so that a new request component tree is constructed. This value is retrieved by the `decode` method of the `MapComponent` class. This `decode` method is called by the JavaServer Faces implementation during the `Apply Request Values` phase, which follows the `Restore View` phase.

In addition to the `encodeEnd` method, `AreaRenderer` contains an empty constructor. This is used to create an instance of `AreaRenderer` so that it can be added to the render kit.

The `@FacesRenderer` annotation registers the renderer class with the JavaServer Faces implementation as a renderer class. The annotation identifies the component family as well as the renderer type.

15.5.2 Identifying the Renderer Type

During the `Render Response` phase, the JavaServer Faces implementation calls the `getRendererType` method of the component's tag handler to determine which renderer to invoke, if there is one.

You identify the type associated with the renderer in the `rendererType` element of the `@FacesRenderer` annotation for `AreaRenderer` as well as in the `renderer-type` element of the tag library descriptor.

15.6 Implementing an Event Listener

The JavaServer Faces technology supports action events and value-change events for components.

Action events occur when the user activates a component that implements `javax.faces.component.ActionSource`. These events are represented by the class `javax.faces.event.ActionEvent`.

Value-change events occur when the user changes the value of a component that implements `javax.faces.component.EditableValueHolder`. These events are represented by the class `javax.faces.event.ValueChangeEvent`.

One way to handle events is to implement the appropriate listener classes. Listener classes that handle the action events in an application must implement the interface `javax.faces.event.ActionListener`. Similarly, listeners that handle the value-change events must implement the interface `javax.faces.event.ValueChangeListener`.

This section explains how to implement the two listener classes.

To handle events generated by custom components, you must implement an event listener and an event handler and manually queue the event on the component. See [Handling Events for Custom Components](#) for more information.

Note: You do not need to create an `ActionListener` implementation to handle an event that results solely in navigating to a page and does not perform any other application-specific processing. See [Writing a Method to Handle Navigation](#) for information on how to manage page navigation.

15.6.1 Implementing Value-Change Listeners

A `javax.faces.event.ValueChangeListener` implementation must include a `processValueChange(ValueChangeEvent)` method. This method processes the specified value-change event and is invoked by the JavaServer Faces implementation when the value-change event occurs. The `ValueChangeEvent` instance stores the old and the new values of the component that fired the event.

In the Duke's Bookstore case study, the `NameChanged` listener implementation is registered on the `name` `UIInput` component on the `bookcashier.xhtml` page. This listener stores into session scope the name the user entered in the field corresponding to the `name` component.

The `bookreceipt.xhtml` subsequently retrieves the name from the session scope:

```
<h:outputFormat title="thanks"
    value="#{bundle.ThankYouParam}">
    <f:param value="#{sessionScope.name}"/>
</h:outputFormat>
```

When the `bookreceipt.xhtml` page is loaded, it displays the name inside the message:

```
"Thank you, {0}, for purchasing your books from us."
```

Here is part of the `NameChanged` listener implementation:

```
public class NameChanged extends Object implements ValueChangeListener {

    @Override
    public void processValueChange(ValueChangeEvent event)
        throws AbortProcessingException {

        if (null != event.getNewValue()) {
            FacesContext.getCurrentInstance().getExternalContext().
                getSessionMap().put("name", event.getNewValue());
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }  
    }  
}
```

When the user enters the name in the field, a value-change event is generated, and the `processValueChange(ValueChangeEvent)` method of the `NameChanged` listener implementation is invoked. This method first gets the ID of the component that fired the event from the `ValueChangeEvent` object, and it puts the value, along with an attribute name, into the session map of the `FacesContext` instance.

[Registering a Value-Change Listener on a Component](#) explains how to register this listener onto a component.

15.6.2 Implementing Action Listeners

A `javax.faces.event.ActionListener` implementation must include a `processAction(ActionEvent)` method. The `processAction(ActionEvent)` method processes the specified action event. The JavaServer Faces implementation invokes the `processAction(ActionEvent)` method when the `ActionEvent` occurs.

The Duke's Bookstore case study uses two `ActionListener` implementations, `LinkBookChangeListener` and `MapBookChangeListener`. See [Handling Events for Custom Components](#) for details on `MapBookChangeListener`.

[Registering an Action Listener on a Component](#) explains how to register this listener onto a component.

15.7 Handling Events for Custom Components

As explained in [Implementing an Event Listener](#), events are automatically queued on standard components that fire events. A custom component, on the other hand, must manually queue events from its `decode` method if it fires events.

[Performing Decoding](#) explains how to queue an event on `MapComponent` using its `decode` method. This section explains how to write the class that represents the event of clicking on the map and how to write the method that processes this event.

As explained in [Understanding the Facelets Page](#), the `actionListener` attribute of the `bookstore:map` tag points to the `MapBookChangeListener` class. The listener class's `processAction` method processes the event of clicking the image map. Here is the `processAction` method:

```
@Override  
public void processAction(ActionEvent actionEvent)  
    throws AbortProcessingException {  
  
    AreaSelectedEvent event = (AreaSelectedEvent) actionEvent;  
    String current = event.getMapComponent().getCurrent();  
    FacesContext context = FacesContext.getCurrentInstance();  
    String bookId = books.get(current);  
    context.getExternalContext().getSessionMap().put("bookId", bookId);  
}
```

When the JavaServer Faces implementation calls this method, it passes in an `ActionEvent` object that represents the event generated by clicking on the image map. Next, it casts it to an `AreaSelectedEvent` object (see `tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/src/java/dukesbookstore/listeners/AreaSelectedEvent.java`). Then this method gets the `MapComponent` associated with the event. It then gets the value of the `MapComponent` object's `current`

attribute, which indicates the currently selected area. The method then uses the value of the current attribute to get the book's ID value from a `HashMap` object, which is constructed elsewhere in the `MapBookChangeListener` class. Finally the method places the ID obtained from the `HashMap` object into the session map for the application.

In addition to the method that processes the event, you need the event class itself. This class is very simple to write: You have it extend `ActionEvent` and provide a constructor that takes the component on which the event is queued and a method that returns the component. Here is the `AreaSelectedEvent` class used with the image map:

```
public class AreaSelectedEvent extends ActionEvent {
    public AreaSelectedEvent(MapComponent map) {
        super(map);
    }
    public MapComponent getMapComponent() {
        return ((MapComponent) getComponent());
    }
}
```

As explained in the section [Creating Custom Component Classes](#), in order for `MapComponent` to fire events in the first place, it must implement `ActionSource`. Because `MapComponent` extends `UICommand`, it also implements `ActionSource`.

15.8 Defining the Custom Component Tag in a Tag Library Descriptor

To use a custom tag, you declare it in a Tag Library Descriptor (TLD). The TLD file defines how the custom tag is used in a JavaServer Faces page. The web container uses the TLD to validate the tag. The set of tags that are part of the HTML render kit are defined in the `HTML_BASIC` TLD, available at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/javaxserverfaces/2.2/renderkitdocs/>.

The TLD file name must end with `taglib.xml`. In the Duke's Bookstore case study, the custom tags `area` and `map` are defined in the file `web/WEB-INF/bookstore.taglib.xml`.

All tag definitions must be nested inside the `facelet-taglib` element in the TLD. Each tag is defined by a `tag` element. Here are the tag definitions for the `area` and `map` components:

```
<facelet-taglib xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
...>
  <namespace>http://dukesbookstore</namespace>
  <tag>
    <tag-name>area</tag-name>
    <component>
      <component-type>DemoArea</component-type>
      <renderer-type>DemoArea</renderer-type>
    </component>
  </tag>
  <tag>
    <tag-name>map</tag-name>
    <component>
      <component-type>DemoMap</component-type>
      <renderer-type>DemoMap</renderer-type>
    </component>
  </tag>
</facelet-taglib>
```

The `component-type` element specifies the name defined in the `@FacesComponent` annotation, while the `renderer-type` element specifies the `rendererType` defined in the `@FacesRenderer` annotation.

The `facelet-taglib` element must also include a namespace element, which defines the namespace to be specified in pages that use the custom component. See [Using a Custom Component](#) for information on specifying the namespace in pages.

The TLD file is located in the `WEB-INF` directory. In addition, an entry is included in the web deployment descriptor (`web.xml`) to identify the custom tag library descriptor file as follows:

```
<context-param>
  <param-name>javax.faces.FACELETS_LIBRARIES</param-name>
  <param-value>/WEB-INF/bookstore.taglib.xml</param-value>
</context-param>
```

15.9 Using a Custom Component

To use a custom component in a page, you add the custom tag associated with the component to the page.

As explained in [Defining the Custom Component Tag in a Tag Library Descriptor](#), you must ensure that the TLD that defines any custom tags is packaged in the application if you intend to use the tags in your pages. TLD files are stored in the `WEB-INF/` directory or subdirectory of the WAR file or in the `META-INF/` directory or subdirectory of a tag library packaged in a JAR file.

You also need to include a namespace declaration in the page so that the page has access to the tags. The custom tags for the Duke's Bookstore case study are defined in `bookstore.taglib.xml`. The `ui:composition` tag on the `index.xhtml` page declares the namespace defined in the tag library:

```
<ui:composition xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
  xmlns:ui="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/facelets"
  xmlns:h="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/html"
  xmlns:f="http://xmlns.jcp.org/jsf/core"
  xmlns:bookstore="http://dukesbookstore"
  template="/bookstoreTemplate.xhtml">
```

Finally, to use a custom component in a page, you add the component's tag to the page.

The Duke's Bookstore case study includes a custom image map component on the `index.xhtml` page. This component allows you to select a book by clicking on a region of the image map:

```
...
<h:graphicImage id="mapImage"
  name="book_all.jpg"
  library="images"
  alt="{bundle.chooseLocale}"
  usemap="#bookMap" />
<bookstore:map id="bookMap"
  current="map1"
  immediate="true"
  action="bookstore">
  <f:actionListener
    type="dukesbookstore.listeners.MapBookChangeListener" />
  <bookstore:area id="map1" value="{Book201}"
    onmouseover="resources/images/book_201.jpg"
```

```

        onmouseout="resources/images/book_all.jpg"
        targetImage="mapImage" />
    ...
    <bookstore:area id="map6" value="#{Book207}"
        onmouseover="resources/images/book_207.jpg"
        onmouseout="resources/images//book_all.jpg"
        targetImage="mapImage" />
</bookstore:map>

```

The standard `h:graphicImage` tag associates an image (`book_all.jpg`) with an image map that is referenced in the `usemap` attribute value.

The custom `bookstore:map` tag that represents the custom component, `MapComponent`, specifies the image map, and contains a set of `bookstore:area` tags. Each custom `bookstore:area` tag represents a custom `AreaComponent` and specifies a region of the image map.

On the page, the `onmouseover` and `onmouseout` attributes specify the image that is displayed when the user performs the actions described by the attributes. The custom renderer also renders an `onclick` attribute.

In the rendered HTML page, the `onmouseover`, `onmouseout`, and `onclick` attributes define which JavaScript code is executed when these events occur. When the user moves the mouse over a region, the `onmouseover` function associated with the region displays the map with that region highlighted. When the user moves the mouse out of a region, the `onmouseout` function redisplay the original image. When the user clicks a region, the `onclick` function sets the value of a hidden `input` tag to the ID of the selected area and submits the page.

When the custom renderer renders these attributes in HTML, it also renders the JavaScript code. The custom renderer also renders the entire `onclick` attribute rather than let the page author set it.

The custom renderer that renders the HTML `map` tag also renders a hidden `input` component that holds the current area. The server-side objects retrieve the value of the hidden `input` field and set the locale in the `FacesContext` instance according to which region was selected.

15.10 Creating and Using a Custom Converter

A JavaServer Faces converter class converts strings to objects and objects to strings as required. Several standard converters are provided by JavaServer Faces for this purpose. See [Using the Standard Converters](#) for more information on these included converters.

As explained in [Conversion Model](#), if the standard converters included with JavaServer Faces cannot perform the data conversion that you need, you can create a custom converter to perform this specialized conversion. This implementation, at a minimum, must define how to convert data both ways between the two views of the data described in [Conversion Model](#).

All custom converters must implement the `javax.faces.convert.Converter` interface. This section explains how to implement this interface to perform a custom data conversion.

The Duke's Bookstore case study uses a custom `Converter` implementation, located in `tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/src/java/dukesbookstore/converters/CreditCardConverter.java`, to convert the data entered in the Credit Card Number field on the `bookcashier.xhtml` page. It strips blanks and hyphens from the text string and formats it so that a blank space separates every four characters.

Another common use case for a custom converter is in a list for a nonstandard object type. In the Duke's Tutoring case study (to be provided in the next release of this Tutorial), the `Student` and `Guardian` entities require a custom converter so they can be converted to and from a `UISelectItems` input component.

15.10.1 Creating a Custom Converter

The `CreditCardConverter` custom converter class is created as follows:

```
@FacesConverter("ccno")
public class CreditCardConverter implements Converter {
    ...
}
```

The `@FacesConverter` annotation registers the custom converter class as a converter with the name of `ccno` with the JavaServer Faces implementation. Alternatively, you can register the converter with entries in the application configuration resource file, as shown in [Registering a Custom Converter](#).

To define how the data is converted from the presentation view to the model view, the `Converter` implementation must implement the `getAsObject(FacesContext, UIComponent, String)` method from the `Converter` interface. Here is the implementation of this method from `CreditCardConverter`:

```
@Override
public Object getAsObject(FacesContext context,
    UIComponent component, String newValue)
    throws ConverterException {

    String convertedValue = null;
    if ( newValue == null ) {
        return newValue;
    }
    // Since this is only a String to String conversion,
    // this conversion does not throw ConverterException.

    convertedValue = newValue.trim();
    if ( (convertedValue.contains("-") ||
        (convertedValue.contains(" ") ) ) ) {
        char[] input = convertedValue.toCharArray();
        StringBuilder builder = new StringBuilder(input.length);
        for ( int i = 0; i < input.length; ++i ) {
            if ( input[i] == '-' || input[i] == ' ' ) {
                continue;
            } else {
                builder.append(input[i]);
            }
        }
        convertedValue = builder.toString();
    }
    return convertedValue;
}
```

During the Apply Request Values phase, when the components' `decode` methods are processed, the JavaServer Faces implementation looks up the component's local value in the request and calls the `getAsObject` method. When calling this method, the JavaServer Faces implementation passes in the current `FacesContext` instance, the component whose data needs conversion, and the local value as a `String`. The method then writes the local value to a character array, trims the hyphens and blanks, adds the rest of the characters to a `String`, and returns the `String`.

To define how the data is converted from the model view to the presentation view, the Converter implementation must implement the `getAsString(FacesContext, UIComponent, Object)` method from the Converter interface. Here is an implementation of this method:

```
@Override
public String getAsString(FacesContext context,
    UIComponent component, Object value)
    throws ConverterException {

    String inputVal = null;
    if ( value == null ) {
        return null;
    }
    // value must be of a type that can be cast to a String.
    try {
        inputVal = (String)value;
    } catch (ClassCastException ce) {
        FacesMessage errMsg = new FacesMessage(CONVERSION_ERROR_MESSAGE_ID);
        FacesContext.getCurrentInstance().addMessage(null, errMsg);
        throw new ConverterException(errMsg.getSummary());
    }
    // insert spaces after every four characters for better
    // readability if they are not already present.
    char[] input = inputVal.toCharArray();
    StringBuilder builder = new StringBuilder(input.length + 3);
    for ( int i = 0; i < input.length; ++i ) {
        if ( (i % 4) == 0 && i != 0 ) {
            if (input[i] != ' ' || input[i] != '-') {
                builder.append(" ");
                // if there are any "-"'s convert them to blanks.
            } else if (input[i] == '-') {
                builder.append(" ");
            }
        }
        builder.append(input[i]);
    }
    String convertedValue = builder.toString();
    return convertedValue;
}
```

During the Render Response phase, in which the components' encode methods are called, the JavaServer Faces implementation calls the `getAsString` method in order to generate the appropriate output. When the JavaServer Faces implementation calls this method, it passes in the current `FacesContext`, the `UIComponent` whose value needs to be converted, and the bean value to be converted. Because this converter does a String-to-String conversion, this method can cast the bean value to a `String`.

If the value cannot be converted to a `String`, the method throws an exception, passing an error message from the resource bundle that is registered with the application. [Registering Application Messages](#) explains how to register custom error messages with the application.

If the value can be converted to a `String`, the method reads the `String` to a character array and loops through the array, adding a space after every four characters.

You can also create a custom converter with a `@FacesConverter` annotation that specifies the `forClass` attribute, as shown in the following example from the Duke's Tutoring case study:

```
@FacesConverter(forClass=Guardian.class)
```

```
public class GuardianConverter implements Converter { ...
```

The `forClass` attribute registers the converter as the default converter for the `Guardian` class. Therefore, whenever that class is specified by a value attribute of an input component, the converter is invoked automatically.

A converter class can be a separate Java POJO class, as in the Duke's Bookstore case study. If it needs to access objects defined in a managed bean class, however, it can be a subclass of a JavaServer Faces managed bean, as in the `address-book` persistence example, where the converters use an enterprise bean that is injected into the managed bean class.

15.10.2 Using a Custom Converter

To apply the data conversion performed by a custom converter to a particular component's value, you must do one of the following:

- Reference the converter from the component tag's `converter` attribute.
- Nest an `f:converter` tag inside the component's tag and reference the custom converter from one of the `f:converter` tag's attributes.

If you are using the component tag's `converter` attribute, this attribute must reference the `Converter` implementation's identifier or the fully-qualified class name of the converter. [Creating and Using a Custom Converter](#) explains how to implement a custom converter.

The identifier for the credit card converter class is `ccno`, the value specified in the `@FacesConverter` annotation:

```
@FacesConverter("ccno")
public class CreditCardConverter implements Converter {
    ...
}
```

Therefore, the `CreditCardConverter` instance can be registered on the `ccno` component as shown in the following example:

```
<h:inputText id="ccno"
    size="19"
    converter="ccno"
    value="#{cashier.creditCardNumber}"
    required="true"
    requiredMessage="#{bundle.RegCreditCard}">
    ...
</h:inputText>
```

By setting the `converter` attribute of a component's tag to the converter's identifier or its class name, you cause that component's local value to be automatically converted according to the rules specified in the `Converter` implementation.

Instead of referencing the converter from the component tag's `converter` attribute, you can reference the converter from an `f:converter` tag nested inside the component's tag. To reference the custom converter using the `f:converter` tag, you do one of the following:

- Set the `f:converter` tag's `converterId` attribute to the `Converter` implementation's identifier defined in the `@FacesConverter` annotation or in the application configuration resource file. This method is shown in `bookcashier.xhtml`:

```
<h:inputText id="ccno"
    size="19"
    f:converter converterId="ccno" />
```

```

        value="#{cashier.creditCardNumber}"
        required="true"
        requiredMessage="#{bundle.ReqCreditCard}">
<f:converter converterId="ccno"/>
<f:validateRegex
    pattern="\d{16}|\d{4} \d{4} \d{4} \d{4}|\d{4}-\d{4}-\d{4}-\d{4}"/>
</h:inputText>

```

- Bind the Converter implementation to a managed bean property using the `f:converter` tag's binding attribute, as described in [Binding Converters, Listeners, and Validators to Managed Bean Properties](#).

The JavaServer Faces implementation calls the converter's `getAsObject` method to strip spaces and hyphens from the input value. The `getAsString` method is called when the `bookcashier.xhtml` page is redisplayed; this happens if the user orders more than \$100 worth of books.

In the Duke's Tutoring case study (to be provided in a future release of this tutorial), each converter is registered as the converter for a particular class. The converter is automatically invoked whenever that class is specified by a `value` attribute of an input component. In the following example, the `itemValue` attribute (highlighted in **bold**) calls the converter for the `Guardian` class:

```

<h:selectManyListbox id="selectGuardiansMenu"
    value="#{guardianManager.selectedGuardians}"
    size="5">
    <f:selectItems value="#{guardianManager.allGuardians}"
        var="selectedGuardian"
        itemLabel="#{selectedGuardian.name}"
        itemValue="#{selectedGuardian}" />
</h:selectManyListbox>

```

15.11 Creating and Using a Custom Validator

If the standard validators or Bean Validation don't perform the validation checking you need, you can create a custom validator to validate user input. As explained in [Validation Model](#), there are two ways to implement validation code:

- Implement a managed bean method that performs the validation.
- Provide an implementation of the `javax.faces.validator.Validator` interface to perform the validation.

[Writing a Method to Perform Validation](#) explains how to implement a managed bean method to perform validation. The rest of this section explains how to implement the `Validator` interface.

If you choose to implement the `Validator` interface and you want to allow the page author to configure the validator's attributes from the page, you also must specify a custom tag for registering the validator on a component.

If you prefer to configure the attributes in the `Validator` implementation, you can forgo specifying a custom tag and instead let the page author register the validator on a component using the `f:validator` tag, as described in [Using a Custom Validator](#).

You can also create a managed bean property that accepts and returns the `Validator` implementation you create, as described in [Writing Properties Bound to Converters, Listeners, or Validators](#). You can use the `f:validator` tag's binding attribute to bind the `Validator` implementation to the managed bean property.

Usually, you will want to display an error message when data fails validation. You need to store these error messages in a resource bundle.

After creating the resource bundle, you have two ways to make the messages available to the application. You can queue the error messages onto the `FacesContext` programmatically, or you can register the error messages in the application configuration resource file, as explained in [Registering Application Messages](#).

For example, an e-commerce application might use a general-purpose custom validator called `FormatValidator.java` to validate input data against a format pattern that is specified in the custom validator tag. This validator would be used with a Credit Card Number field on a Facelets page. Here is the custom validator tag:

```
<mystore:formatValidator
  formatPatterns="9999999999999999|9999 9999 9999 9999|9999-9999-9999-9999"/>
```

According to this validator, the data entered in the field must be one of the following:

- A 16-digit number with no spaces
- A 16-digit number with a space between every four digits
- A 16-digit number with hyphens between every four digits

The `f:validateRegex` tag makes a custom validator unnecessary in this situation. However, the rest of this section describes how this validator would be implemented and how to specify a custom tag so that the page author could register the validator on a component.

15.11.1 Implementing the Validator Interface

A `Validator` implementation must contain a constructor, a set of accessor methods for any attributes on the tag, and a `validate` method, which overrides the `validate` method of the `Validator` interface.

The hypothetical `FormatValidator` class also defines accessor methods for setting the `formatPatterns` attribute, which specifies the acceptable format patterns for input into the fields. The setter method calls the `parseFormatPatterns` method, which separates the components of the pattern string into a string array, `formatPatternsList`.

```
public String getFormatPatterns() {
    return (this.formatPatterns);
}
public void setFormatPatterns(String formatPatterns) {
    this.formatPatterns = formatPatterns;
    parseFormatPatterns();
}
```

In addition to defining accessor methods for the attributes, the class overrides the `validate` method of the `Validator` interface. This method validates the input and also accesses the custom error messages to be displayed when the `String` is invalid.

The `validate` method performs the actual validation of the data. It takes the `FacesContext` instance, the component whose data needs to be validated, and the value that needs to be validated. A validator can validate only data of a component that implements `javax.faces.component.EditableValueHolder`.

Here is an implementation of the `validate` method:

```
@FacesValidator
public class FormatValidator implements Validator, StateHolder {
    ...
}
```

```

public void validate(FacesContext context, UIComponent component,
                    Object toValidate) {

    boolean valid = false;
    String value = null;
    if ((context == null) || (component == null)) {
        throw new NullPointerException();
    }
    if (!(component instanceof UIInput)) {
        return;
    }
    if (null == formatPatternsList || null == toValidate) {
        return;
    }
    value = toValidate.toString();
    // validate the value against the list of valid patterns.
    Iterator patternIt = formatPatternsList.iterator();
    while (patternIt.hasNext()) {
        valid = isFormatValid(
            ((String)patternIt.next()), value);
        if (valid) {
            break;
        }
    }
    if ( !valid ) {
        FacesMessage errMsg =
            new FacesMessage(FORMAT_INVALID_MESSAGE_ID);
        FacesContext.getCurrentInstance().addMessage(null, errMsg);
        throw new ValidatorException(errMsg);
    }
}
}

```

The `@FacesValidator` annotation registers the `FormatValidator` class as a validator with the JavaServer Faces implementation. The `validate` method gets the local value of the component and converts it to a `String`. It then iterates over the `formatPatternsList` list, which is the list of acceptable patterns that was parsed from the `formatPatterns` attribute of the custom validator tag.

While iterating over the list, this method checks the pattern of the component's local value against the patterns in the list. If the pattern of the local value does not match any pattern in the list, this method generates an error message. It then creates a `javax.faces.application.FacesMessage` and queues it on the `FacesContext` for display, using a `String` that represents the key in the `Properties` file:

```

public static final String FORMAT_INVALID_MESSAGE_ID =
    "FormatInvalid";
}

```

Finally, the method passes the message to the constructor of `javax.faces.validator.ValidatorException`.

When the error message is displayed, the format pattern will be substituted for the `{0}` in the error message, which, in English, is as follows:

```
Input must match one of the following patterns: {0}
```

You may wish to save and restore state for your validator, although state saving is not usually necessary. To do so, you will need to implement the `StateHolder` interface as well as the `Validator` interface. To implement `StateHolder`, you would need to

implement its four methods: `saveState(FacesContext)`, `restoreState(FacesContext, Object)`, `isTransient`, and `setTransient(boolean)`. See [Saving and Restoring State](#) for more information.

15.11.2 Specifying a Custom Tag

If you implemented a `Validator` interface rather than implementing a managed bean method that performs the validation, you need to do one of the following:

- Allow the page author to specify the `Validator` implementation to use with the `f:validator` tag. In this case, the `Validator` implementation must define its own properties. [Using a Custom Validator](#) explains how to use the `f:validator` tag.
- Specify a custom tag that provides attributes for configuring the properties of the validator from the page.

To create a custom tag, you need to add the tag to the tag library descriptor for the application, `bookstore.taglib.xml`.

```
<tag>
  <tag-name>validator</tag-name>
  <validator>
    <validator-id>formatValidator</validator-id>
    <validator-class>
      dukesbookstore.validators.FormatValidator
    </validator-class>
  </validator>
</tag>
```

The `tag-name` element defines the name of the tag as it must be used in a Facelets page. The `validator-id` element identifies the custom validator. The `validator-class` element wires the custom tag to its implementation class.

[Using a Custom Validator](#) explains how to use the custom validator tag on the page.

15.11.3 Using a Custom Validator

To register a custom validator on a component, you must do one of the following:

- Nest the validator's custom tag inside the tag of the component whose value you want to be validated.
- Nest the standard `f:validator` tag within the tag of the component and reference the custom `Validator` implementation from the `f:validator` tag.

Here is a hypothetical custom `formatValidator` tag for the Credit Card Number field, nested within the `h:inputText` tag::

```
<h:inputText id="ccno" size="19"
  ...
  required="true">
  <mystore:formatValidator
    formatPatterns="9999999999999999|9999 9999 9999 9999|9999-9999-9999-9999"/>
</h:inputText>
<h:message styleClass="validationMessage" for="ccno"/>
```

This tag validates the input of the `ccno` field against the patterns defined by the page author in the `formatPatterns` attribute.

You can use the same custom validator for any similar component by simply nesting the custom validator tag within the component tag.

If the application developer who created the custom validator prefers to configure the attributes in the `Validator` implementation rather than allow the page author to configure the attributes from the page, the developer will not create a custom tag for use with the validator.

In this case, the page author must nest the `f:validator` tag inside the tag of the component whose data needs to be validated. Then the page author needs to do one of the following:

- Set the `f:validator` tag's `validatorId` attribute to the ID of the validator that is defined in the application configuration resource file.
- Bind the custom `Validator` implementation to a managed bean property using the `f:validator` tag's binding attribute, as described in [Binding Converters, Listeners, and Validators to Managed Bean Properties](#).

The following tag registers a hypothetical validator on a component using an `f:validator` tag and references the ID of the validator:

```
<h:inputText id="name" value="#{CustomerBean.name}"
             size="10" ...>
    <f:validator validatorId="customValidator" />
    ...
</h:inputText>
```

15.12 Binding Component Values and Instances to Managed Bean Properties

A component tag can wire its data to a managed bean by one of the following methods:

- Binding its component's value to a bean property
- Binding its component's instance to a bean property

To bind a component's value to a managed bean property, a component tag's `value` attribute uses an EL value expression. To bind a component instance to a bean property, a component tag's binding attribute uses a value expression.

When a component instance is bound to a managed bean property, the property holds the component's local value. Conversely, when a component's value is bound to a managed bean property, the property holds the value stored in the managed bean. This value is updated with the local value during the Update Model Values phase of the lifecycle. There are advantages to both of these methods.

Binding a component instance to a bean property has these advantages:

- The managed bean can programmatically modify component attributes.
- The managed bean can instantiate components rather than let the page author do so.

Binding a component's value to a bean property has these advantages:

- The page author has more control over the component attributes.
- The managed bean has no dependencies on the JavaServer Faces API (such as the component classes), allowing for greater separation of the presentation layer from the model layer.
- The JavaServer Faces implementation can perform conversions on the data based on the type of the bean property without the developer needing to apply a converter.

In most situations, you will bind a component's value rather than its instance to a bean property. You'll need to use a component binding only when you need to change one of the component's attributes dynamically. For example, if an application renders a component only under certain conditions, it can set the component's `rendered` property accordingly by accessing the property to which the component is bound.

When referencing the property using the component tag's `value` attribute, you need to use the proper syntax. For example, suppose a managed bean called `MyBean` has this `int` property:

```
protected int currentOption = null;
public int getCurrentOption(){...}
public void setCurrentOption(int option){...}
```

The `value` attribute that references this property must have this value-binding expression:

```
{myBean.currentOption}
```

In addition to binding a component's value to a bean property, the `value` attribute can specify a literal value or can map the component's data to any primitive (such as `int`), structure (such as an array), or collection (such as a list), independent of a JavaBeans component. [Table 15-3](#) lists some example value-binding expressions that you can use with the `value` attribute.

Table 15-3 Examples of Value-Binding Expressions

Value	Expression
A Boolean	<code>cart.numberOfItems > 0</code>
A property initialized from a context initialization parameter	<code>initParam.quantity</code>
A bean property	<code>cashierBean.name</code>
Value in an array	<code>books[3]</code>
Value in a collection	<code>books["fiction"]</code>
Property of an object in an array of objects	<code>books[3].price</code>

The next two sections explain how to use the `value` attribute to bind a component's value to a bean property or other data objects, and how to use the `binding` attribute to bind a component instance to a bean property.

15.12.1 Binding a Component Value to a Property

To bind a component's value to a managed bean property, you specify the name of the bean and the property using the `value` attribute.

This means that the first part of the EL value expression must match the name of the managed bean up to the first period (`.`) and the part of the value expression after the period must match the property of the managed bean.

For example, in the Duke's Bookstore case study, the `h:dataTable` tag in `bookcatalog.xhtml` sets the value of the component to the value of the `books` property of the stateless session bean `BookRequestBean`:

```
<h:dataTable id="books"
    value="#{bookRequestBean.books}"
    var="book"
    headerClass="list-header"
```

```

styleClass="list-background"
rowClasses="list-row-even, list-row-odd"
border="1"
summary="#{bundle.BookCatalog}">

```

The value is obtained by calling the bean's `getBooks` method.

If you use the application configuration resource file to configure managed beans instead of defining them in managed bean classes, the name of the bean in the value expression must match the `managed-bean-name` element of the managed bean declaration up to the first period (`.`) in the expression. Similarly, the part of the value expression after the period must match the name specified in the corresponding `property-name` element in the application configuration resource file.

For example, consider this managed bean configuration, which configures the `ImageArea` bean corresponding to the top left book in the image map on the `index.html` page of the Duke's Bookstore case study:

```

<managed-bean eager="true">
  ...
  <managed-bean-name>Book201</managed-bean-name>
  <managed-bean-class>dukesbookstore.model.ImageArea</managed-bean-class>
  <managed-bean-scope>application</managed-bean-scope>
  <managed-property>
    ...
    <property-name>shape</property-name>
    <value>rect</value>
  </managed-property>
  <managed-property>
    ...
    <property-name>alt</property-name>
    <value>Duke</value>
  </managed-property>
  ...

```

This example configures a bean called `Book201`, which has several properties, one of which is called `shape`.

Although the `bookstore:area` tags on the `index.xhtml` page do not bind to an `ImageArea` property (they bind to the bean itself), you could refer to the property using a value expression from the `value` attribute of the component's tag:

```
<h:outputText value="#{Book201.shape}" />
```

See [Configuring Managed Beans](#) for information on how to configure beans in the application configuration resource file.

15.12.2 Binding a Component Value to an Implicit Object

One external data source that a value attribute can refer to is an implicit object.

The `bookreceipt.xhtml` page of the Duke's Bookstore case study has a reference to an implicit object:

```

<h:outputFormat title="thanks"
  value="#{bundle.ThankYouParam}">
  <f:param value="#{sessionScope.name}" />
</h:outputFormat>

```

This tag gets the name of the customer from the session scope and inserts it into the parameterized message at the key `ThankYouParam` from the resource bundle. For example, if the name of the customer is `Gwen Canigetit`, this tag will render:

Thank you, `Gwen Canigetit`, for purchasing your books from us.

Retrieving values from other implicit objects is done in a similar way to the example shown in this section. [Table 15–4](#) lists the implicit objects to which a value attribute can refer. All of the implicit objects, except for the scope objects, are read-only and therefore should not be used as a value for a `UIInput` component.

Table 15–4 *Implicit Objects*

Implicit Object	What It Is
<code>applicationScope</code>	A Map of the application scope attribute values, keyed by attribute name
<code>cookie</code>	A Map of the cookie values for the current request, keyed by cookie name
<code>facesContext</code>	The <code>FacesContext</code> instance for the current request
<code>header</code>	A Map of HTTP header values for the current request, keyed by header name
<code>headerValues</code>	A Map of String arrays containing all the header values for HTTP headers in the current request, keyed by header name
<code>initParam</code>	A Map of the context initialization parameters for this web application
<code>param</code>	A Map of the request parameters for this request, keyed by parameter name
<code>paramValues</code>	A Map of String arrays containing all the parameter values for request parameters in the current request, keyed by parameter name
<code>requestScope</code>	A Map of the request attributes for this request, keyed by attribute name
<code>sessionScope</code>	A Map of the session attributes for this request, keyed by attribute name
<code>view</code>	The root <code>UIComponent</code> in the current component tree stored in the <code>FacesRequest</code> for this request

15.12.3 Binding a Component Instance to a Bean Property

A component instance can be bound to a bean property using a value expression with the `binding` attribute of the component's tag. You usually bind a component instance rather than its value to a bean property if the bean must dynamically change the component's attributes.

Here are two tags from the `bookcashier.xhtml` page that bind components to bean properties:

```
<h:selectBooleanCheckbox id="fanClub"
    rendered="false"
    binding="#{cashier.specialOffer}" />
<h:outputLabel for="fanClub"
    rendered="false"
    binding="#{cashier.specialOfferText}">
    <h:outputText id="fanClubLabel"
        value="#{bundle.DukeFanClub}" />
</h:outputLabel>
```

The `h:selectBooleanCheckbox` tag renders a check box and binds the `fanClub` `UISelectBoolean` component to the `specialOffer` property of the `cashier` bean. The `h:outputLabel` tag binds the component representing the check box's label to the

`specialOfferText` property of the `cashier` bean. If the application's locale is English, the `h:outputLabel` tag renders:

```
I'd like to join the Duke Fan Club, free with my purchase of over $100
```

The rendered attributes of both tags are set to `false`, to prevent the check box and its label from being rendered. If the customer makes a large order and clicks the **Submit** button, the `submit` method of `CashierBean` sets both components' rendered properties to `true`, causing the check box and its label to be rendered.

These tags use component bindings rather than value bindings, because the managed bean must dynamically set the values of the components' rendered properties.

If the tags were to use value bindings instead of component bindings, the managed bean would not have direct access to the components, and would therefore require additional code to access the components from the `FacesContext` instance to change the components' rendered properties.

[Writing Properties Bound to Component Instances](#) explains how to write the bean properties bound to the example components.

15.13 Binding Converters, Listeners, and Validators to Managed Bean Properties

As described in [Adding Components to a Page Using HTML Tag Library Tags](#), a page author can bind converter, listener, and validator implementations to managed bean properties using the `binding` attributes of the tags that are used to register the implementations on components.

This technique has similar advantages to binding component instances to managed bean properties, as described in [Binding Component Values and Instances to Managed Bean Properties](#). In particular, binding a converter, listener, or validator implementation to a managed bean property yields the following benefits:

- The managed bean can instantiate the implementation instead of allowing the page author to do so.
- The managed bean can programmatically modify the attributes of the implementation. In the case of a custom implementation, the only other way to modify the attributes outside of the implementation class would be to create a custom tag for it and require the page author to set the attribute values from the page.

Whether you are binding a converter, listener, or validator to a managed bean property, the process is the same for any of the implementations:

- Nest the converter, listener, or validator tag within an appropriate component tag.
- Make sure that the managed bean has a property that accepts and returns the converter, listener, or validator implementation class that you want to bind to the property.
- Reference the managed bean property using a value expression from the `binding` attribute of the converter, listener, or validator tag.

For example, say that you want to bind the standard `DateTime` converter to a managed bean property because you want to set the formatting pattern of the user's input in the managed bean rather than on the Facelets page. First, the page registers the converter onto the component by nesting the `f:convertDateTime` tag within the component tag. Then, the page references the property with the `binding` attribute of the `f:convertDateTime` tag:

```
<h:inputText value="#{loginBean.birthDate}">
  <f:convertDateTime binding="#{loginBean.convertDate}" />
</h:inputText>
```

The `convertDate` property would look something like this:

```
private DateTimeConverter convertDate;
public DateTimeConverter getConvertDate() {
    ...
    return convertDate;
}
public void setConvertDate(DateTimeConverter convertDate) {
    convertDate.setPattern("EEEEEEEE, MMM dd, yyyy");
    this.convertDate = convertDate;
}
```

See [Writing Properties Bound to Converters, Listeners, or Validators](#) for more information on writing managed bean properties for converter, listener, and validator implementations.

Configuring JavaServer Faces Applications

The process of building and deploying simple JavaServer Faces applications is described in earlier chapters of this tutorial. When you create large and complex applications, however, various additional configuration tasks are required. These tasks include the following:

- Registering managed beans with the application so that all parts of the application have access to them
- Configuring managed beans and model beans so that they are instantiated with the proper values when a page makes reference to them
- Defining navigation rules for each of the pages in the application so that the application has a smooth page flow, if non-default navigation is needed
- Packaging the application to include all the pages, resources, and other files so that the application can be deployed on any compliant container

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Using Annotations to Configure Managed Beans](#)
- [Application Configuration Resource File](#)
- [Using Faces Flows](#)
- [Configuring Managed Beans](#)
- [Registering Application Messages](#)
- [Using Default Validators](#)
- [Registering a Custom Validator](#)
- [Registering a Custom Converter](#)
- [Configuring Navigation Rules](#)
- [Registering a Custom Renderer with a Render Kit](#)
- [Registering a Custom Component](#)
- [Basic Requirements of a JavaServer Faces Application](#)

16.1 Using Annotations to Configure Managed Beans

JavaServer Faces support for bean annotations is introduced in [Chapter 7, "JavaServer Faces Technology"](#). Bean annotations can be used for configuring JavaServer Faces applications.

The `@Named` (`javax.inject.Named`) annotation in a class, along with a scope annotation, automatically registers that class as a resource with the JavaServer Faces implementation. Such a registered managed bean does not need `managed-bean` configuration entries in the application configuration resource file.

An example of using the `@Named` annotation in a class is as follows:

```
@Named
@SessionScoped
public class DukesBday{
    ...
}
```

The above code snippet shows a bean that is managed by the JavaServer Faces implementation and is available for the length of the session. You do not need to configure the managed bean instance in the `faces-config.xml` file. In effect, this is an alternative to the application configuration resource file approach and reduces the task of configuring managed beans.

You can also define the scope of the managed bean within the class file, as shown in the above example. You can annotate beans with any of the scopes listed in the next section, [Using Managed Bean Scopes](#).

All classes will be scanned for annotations at startup unless the `faces-config` element in the `faces-config.xml` file has the `metadata-complete` attribute set to `true`.

Annotations are also available for other artifacts, such as components, converters, validators, and renderers, to be used in place of application configuration resource file entries. These are discussed, along with registration of custom listeners, custom validators, and custom converters, in [Chapter 15, "Creating Custom UI Components and Other Custom Objects"](#).

16.1.1 Using Managed Bean Scopes

You can use annotations to define the scope in which the bean will be stored. You can specify one of the following scopes for a bean class:

- `Application` (`javax.enterprise.context.ApplicationScoped`): Application scope persists across all users' interactions with a web application.
- `Session` (`javax.enterprise.context.SessionScoped`): Session scope persists across multiple HTTP requests in a web application.
- `Flow` (`javax.faces.flow.FlowScoped`): Flow scope persists during a user's interaction with a specific flow of a web application. See [Using Faces Flows](#) for more information.
- `Request` (`javax.enterprise.context.RequestScoped`): Request scope persists during a single HTTP request in a web application.
- `Dependent` (`javax.enterprise.context.Dependent`): Indicates that the bean depends on some other bean.

You may want to use `@Dependent` when a managed bean references another managed bean. The second bean should not be in a scope (`@Dependent`) if it is supposed to be created only when it is referenced. If you define a bean as `@Dependent`, the bean is instantiated anew each time it is referenced, so it does not get saved in any scope.

If your managed bean is referenced by the `binding` attribute of a component tag, you should define the bean with a request scope. If you placed the bean in session or application scope instead, the bean would need to take precautions to ensure thread

safety, because `javax.faces.component.UIComponent` instances each depend on running inside of a single thread.

If you are configuring a bean that allows attributes to be associated with the view, you can use the view scope. The attributes persist until the user has navigated to the next view.

16.1.1.1 Eager Application-Scoped Beans

Managed beans are lazily instantiated. That is, that they are instantiated when a request is made from the application.

To force an application-scoped bean to be instantiated and placed in the application scope as soon as the application is started and before any request is made, the `eager` attribute of the managed bean should be set to `true` as shown in the following example:

```
@ManagedBean(eager=true)
@ApplicationScoped
```

16.2 Application Configuration Resource File

JavaServer Faces technology provides a portable configuration format (as an XML document) for configuring application resources. One or more XML documents, called *application configuration resource files*, may use this format to register and configure objects and resources, and to define navigation rules for applications. An application configuration resource file is usually named `faces-config.xml`.

You need an application configuration resource file in the following cases:

- To specify configuration elements for your application that are not available through managed bean annotations, such as localized messages and navigation rules
- To override managed bean annotations when the application is deployed

The application configuration resource file must be valid against the XML schema located at http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee/web-facesconfig_2_2.xsd.

In addition, each file must include the following information, in the following order:

- The XML version number, usually with an encoding attribute:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding='UTF-8'?>
```

- A `faces-config` tag enclosing all the other declarations:

```
<faces-config version="2.2" xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee
  http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee/web-facesconfig_2_2.xsd">
  ...
</faces-config>
```

You can have more than one application configuration resource file for an application. The JavaServer Faces implementation finds the configuration file or files by looking for the following:

- A resource named `/META-INF/faces-config.xml` in any of the JAR files in the web application's `/WEB-INF/lib/` directory and in parent class loaders. If a resource with this name exists, it is loaded as a configuration resource. This method is

practical for a packaged library containing some components and renderers. In addition, any file with a name that ends in `faces-config.xml` is also considered a configuration resource and is loaded as such.

- A context initialization parameter, `javax.faces.application.CONFIG_FILES`, in your web deployment descriptor file that specifies one or more (comma-delimited) paths to multiple configuration files for your web application. This method is most often used for enterprise-scale applications that delegate to separate groups the responsibility for maintaining the file for each portion of a big application.
- A resource named `faces-config.xml` in the `/WEB-INF/` directory of your application. Simple web applications make their configuration files available in this way.

To access the resources registered with the application, an application developer can use an instance of the `javax.faces.application.Application` class, which is automatically created for each application. The `Application` instance acts as a centralized factory for resources that are defined in the XML file.

When an application starts up, the JavaServer Faces implementation creates a single instance of the `Application` class and configures it with the information you provided in the application configuration resource file.

16.2.1 Ordering of Application Configuration Resource Files

Because JavaServer Faces technology allows the use of multiple application configuration resource files stored in different locations, the order in which they are loaded by the implementation becomes important in certain situations (for example, when using application-level objects). This order can be defined through an `ordering` element and its subelements in the application configuration resource file itself. The ordering of application configuration resource files can be absolute or relative.

Absolute ordering is defined by an `absolute-ordering` element in the file. With absolute ordering, the user specifies the order in which application configuration resource files will be loaded. The following example shows an entry for absolute ordering:

File `my-faces-config.xml`:

```
<faces-config>
  <name>myJSF</name>
  <absolute-ordering>
    <name>A</name>
    <name>B</name>
    <name>C</name>
  </absolute-ordering>
</faces-config>
```

In this example, A, B, and C are different application configuration resource files and are to be loaded in the listed order.

If there is an `absolute-ordering` element in the file, only the files listed by the subelement `name` are processed. To process any other application configuration resource files, an `others` subelement is required. In the absence of the `others` subelement, all other unlisted files will be ignored at load time.

Relative ordering is defined by an `ordering` element and its subelements `before` and `after`. With relative ordering, the order in which application configuration resource files will be loaded is calculated by considering ordering entries from the different files. The following example shows some of these considerations. In the following

example, config-A, config-B, and config-C are different application configuration resource files.

File config-A contains the following elements:

```
<faces-config>
  <name>config-A</name>
  <ordering>
    <before>
      <name>config-B</name>
    </before>
  </ordering>
</faces-config>
```

File config-B (not shown here) does not contain any ordering elements.

File config-C contains the following elements:

```
<faces-config>
  <name>config-C</name>
  <ordering>
    <after>
      <name>config-B</name>
    </after>
  </ordering>
</faces-config>
```

Based on the before subelement entry, file config-A will be loaded before the config-B file. Based on the after subelement entry, file config-C will be loaded after the config-B file.

In addition, a subelement `others` can also be nested within the `before` and `after` subelements. If the `others` element is present, the specified file may receive highest or lowest preference among both listed and unlisted configuration files.

If an `ordering` element is not present in an application configuration file, then that file will be loaded after all the files that contain `ordering` elements.

16.3 Using Faces Flows

The Faces Flows feature of JavaServer Faces technology allows you to create a set of pages with a scope, `FlowScoped`, that is greater than request scope but less than session scope. For example, you might want to create a series of pages for the checkout process in an online store. You could create a set of self-contained pages that could be transferred from one store to another as needed.

Faces Flows are somewhat analogous to subroutines in procedural programming, in the following ways:

- Like a subroutine, a flow has a well defined entry point, list of parameters, and return value. However, unlike a subroutine, a flow can return multiple values.
- Like a subroutine, a flow has a scope, allowing information to be available only during the invocation of the flow. Such information is not available outside the scope of the flow and does not consume any resources once the flow returns.
- Like a subroutine, a flow may call other flows before returning. The invocation of flows is maintained in a call stack: a new flow causes a push onto the stack and a return causes a pop.

An application can have any number of flows. Each flow includes a set of pages and, usually, one or more managed beans scoped to that flow. Each flow has a starting point, called a start node, and an exit point, called a return node.

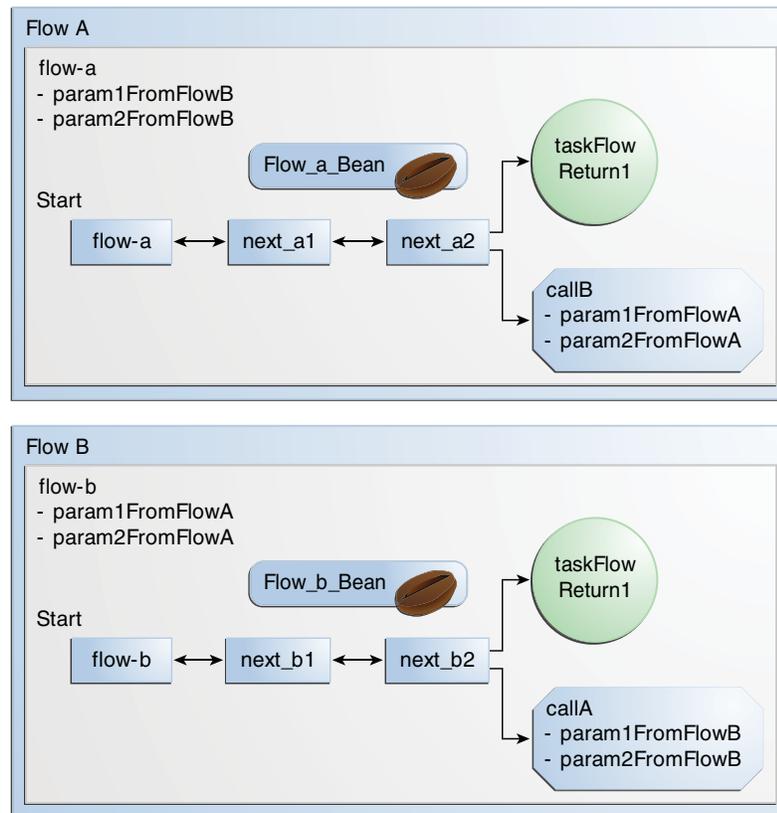
The data in a flow is scoped to that flow alone, but you can pass data from one flow to another by specifying parameters and calling the other flow.

Flows can be nested, so that if you call one flow from another and then exit the second flow, you return to the calling flow rather than to the second flow's return node.

You can configure a flow programmatically, by creating a class annotated `@FlowDefinition`, or you can configure a flow by using a configuration file. The configuration file can be limited to one flow, or you can use the `faces-config.xml` file to put all the flows in one place, if you have many flows in an application. The programmatic configuration places the code closer to the rest of the flow code and enables you to modularize the flows.

Figure 16–1 shows two flows and illustrates how they interact.

Figure 16–1 Two Faces Flows and their Interactions



In this figure, Flow A has a start node named `flow-a` and two additional pages, `next_a1` and `next_a2`. From `next_a2`, a user can either exit the flow using the defined return node, `taskFlowReturn1`, or call Flow B, passing two parameters. Flow A also defines two inbound parameters that it can accept from Flow B. Flow B is identical to Flow A except for the names of the flow and files. Each flow also has an associated managed bean; the beans are `Flow_a_Bean` and `Flow_b_Bean`.

16.3.1 Packaging Flows in an Application

Typically, you package flows in a web application using a directory structure that modularizes the flows. In the `src/main/webapp` directory of a Maven project, for example, you would place the Facelets files that are outside the flow at the top level as usual. Then the `webapp` files for each flow would be in a separate directory, while the Java files are under `src/main/java`. For example, the files for the application shown in [Figure 16–1](#) might look like this:

```
src/main/webapp/
  index.xhtml
  return.xhtml
  WEB_INF/
    beans.xml
    web.xml
  flow-a/
    flow-a.xhtml
    next_a1.xhtml
    next_a2.xhtml
  flow-b/
    flow-b-flow.xml
    next_b1.xhtml
    next_b2.xhtml
src/main/java/javaeetutorial/flowexample
  FlowA.java
  Flow_a_Bean.java
  Flow_b_Bean.java
```

In this example, `flow-a` is defined programmatically in `FlowA.java`, while `flow-b` is defined by the configuration file `flow-b-flow.xml`.

16.3.2 The Simplest Possible Flow: The simple-flow Example Application

The `simple-flow` example application demonstrates the most basic building blocks of a Faces Flows application and illustrates some of the conventions that make it easy to get started with iterative development using flows. You may want to start with a simple example like this one and build upon it.

This example provides an **implicit flow definition** by including an empty configuration file. A configuration file that has content, or a class annotated `@FlowDefinition`, provides an **explicit flow definition**.

The file layout of the `simple-flow` example looks like this:

```
src/main/webapp
  index.xhtml
  simple-flow-return.xhtml
  WEB_INF/
    web.xml
  simple-flow
    simple-flow-flow.xml
    simple-flow.xhtml
    simple-flow-page2.xhtml
```

The `simple-flow` example has an empty configuration file, which is by convention named `flow-name-flow.xml`. The flow does not require any configuration for the following reasons:

- The flow does not call another flow, nor does it pass parameters to another flow.

- The flow uses default names for the first page of the flow, *flow-name.xhtml*, and the return page, *flow-name-return.xhtml*.

This example has only four Facelets pages:

- *index.xhtml*, the start page, which contains almost nothing but a button that navigates to the first page of the flow:

```
<p><h:commandButton value="Enter Flow" action="simple-flow" /></p>
```

- *simple-flow.xhtml* and *simple-flow-page2.xhtml*, the two pages of the flow itself. In the absence of an explicit flow definition, the page whose name is the same as the name of the flow is assumed to be the start node of the flow. In this case, the flow is named *simple-flow*, so the page named *simple-flow.xhtml* is assumed to be the start node of the flow. The start node is the node navigated to upon entry into the flow. It can be thought of as the home page of the flow.

The *simple-flow.xhtml* page asks you to enter a flow-scoped value and provides a button that navigates to the next page of the flow:

```
<p>Value: <h:inputText id="input" value="#{flowScope.value}" /></p>
```

```
<p><h:commandButton value="Next" action="simple-flow-page2" /></p>
```

The second page, which can have any name, displays the flow-scoped value and provides a button that navigates to the return page:

```
<p>Value: #{flowScope.value}</p>
```

```
<p><h:commandButton value="Return" action="simple-flow-return" /></p>
```

- *simple-flow-return.xhtml*, the return page. The return page, which by convention is named *flow-name-return.xhtml*, must be located outside of the flow. This page displays the flow-scoped value, to show that it has no value outside of the flow, and provides a link that navigates to the *index.xhtml* page:

```
<p>Value (should be empty):
```

```
  <h:outputText id="output" value="#{flowScope.value}" /></p>
```

```
<p><h:link outcome="index" value="Back to Start" /></p>
```

The Facelets pages use only flow-scoped data, so the example does not need a managed bean.

16.3.2.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the simple-flow Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, choose **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf
```
3. Select the *simple-flow* folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the *simple-flow* project and select **Run**.

This option builds and deploys the example application to your GlassFish Server instance, then opens it in your default web browser.

16.3.2.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the simple-flow Example Using Maven and the asadmin Command

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf/simple-flow/
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `simple-flow.war`, that is located in the `target` directory. It then deploys the application to the server.

16.3.2.3 To Run the simple-flow Example

1. Enter the following URL in your web browser:

```
http://localhost:8080/simple-flow
```

2. On the `index.xhtml` page, click **Enter Flow**.
3. On the first page of the flow, enter any string in the **Value** field, then click **Next**.
4. On the second page of the flow, you can see the value you entered. Click **Return**.
5. On the return page, an empty pair of quotation marks encloses the inaccessible value. Click **Back to Start** to return to the `index.xhtml` page.

16.3.3 The checkout-module Example Application

The `checkout-module` example application is considerably more complex than `simple-flow`. It shows how you might use the Faces Flows feature to implement a checkout module for an online store.

Like the hypothetical example in [Figure 16–1](#), the example application contains two flows, each of which can call the other. Both flows have explicit flow definitions. One flow, `checkoutFlow`, is specified programmatically. The other flow, `joinFlow`, is specified in a configuration file.

For the `checkout-module` application, the directory structure is as follows (there is also a `src/main/webapp/resources` directory with a stylesheet and an image):

```
src/main/webapp/
  index.xhtml
  exithome.xhtml
  WEB_INF/
    beans.xml
    web.xml
  checkoutFlow/
    checkoutFlow.xhtml
    checkoutFlow2.xhtml
    checkoutFlow3.xhtml
    checkoutFlow4.xhtml
  joinFlow/
    joinFlow-flow.xml
    joinFlow.xhtml
    joinFlow2.xhtml
src/main/java/javaeetutorial/checkoutmodule
  CheckoutBean.java
  CheckoutFlow.java
  CheckoutFlowBean.java
```

```
JoinFlowBean.java
```

For the example, `index.xhtml` is the beginning page for the application as well as the return node for the checkout flow. The `exithome.xhtml` page is the return node for the join flow.

The configuration file `joinFlow-flow.xml` defines the join flow, while the source file `CheckoutFlow.java` defines the checkout flow.

The checkout flow contains four Facelets pages, while the join flow contains two.

The managed beans scoped to each flow are `CheckoutFlowBean.java` and `JoinFlowBean.java`, while `CheckoutBean.java` is the backing bean for the `index.html` page.

16.3.3.1 The Facelets Pages for the checkout-module Example

The starting page for the example, `index.xhtml`, summarizes the contents of a hypothetical shopping cart. It allows the user to click either of two buttons to enter one of the two flows:

```
<p><h:commandButton value="Check Out" action="checkoutFlow" /></p>
...
<p><h:commandButton value="Join" action="joinFlow" /></p>
```

This page is also the return node for the checkout flow.

The Facelets page `exithome.xhtml` is the return node for the join flow. This page has a button that allows you to return to the `index.xhtml` page.

The four Facelets pages within the checkout flow, starting with `checkoutFlow.xhtml` and ending with `checkoutFlow4.xhtml`, allow you to proceed to the next page or, in some cases, to return from the flow. The `checkoutFlow.xhtml` page allows you to access parameters passed from the join flow through the flow scope. These appear as empty quotation marks if you have not called the checkout flow from the join flow.

```
<p>If you called this flow from the Join flow, you can see these parameters:
  <h:outputText value="#{flowScope.param1Value}" />" and
  <h:outputText value="#{flowScope.param2Value}" />"
</p>
```

Only `checkoutFlow2.xhtml` has a button to return to the previous page, but moving between pages is generally permitted within flows. Here are the buttons for `checkoutFlow2.xhtml`:

```
<p><h:commandButton value="Continue" action="checkoutFlow3" /></p>
<p><h:commandButton value="Go Back" action="checkoutFlow" /></p>
<p><h:commandButton value="Exit Flow" action="returnFromCheckoutFlow" /></p>
```

The action `returnFromCheckoutFlow` is defined in the configuration source code file, `CheckoutFlow.java`.

The final page of the checkout flow, `checkoutFlow4.xhtml`, contains a button that calls the join flow:

```
<p><h:commandButton value="Join" action="calljoin" /></p>
<p><h:commandButton value="Exit Flow" action="returnFromCheckoutFlow" /></p>
```

The `calljoin` action is also defined in the configuration source code file, `CheckoutFlow.java`. This action enters the join flow, passing two parameters from the checkout flow.

The two pages in the join flow, `joinFlow.xhtml` and `joinFlow2.xhtml`, are similar to those in the checkout flow. The second page has a button to call the checkout flow as well as one to return from the join flow:

```
<p><h:commandButton value="Check Out" action="callcheckoutFlow"/></p>
<p><h:commandButton value="Exit Flow" action="returnFromJoinFlow"/></p>
```

For this flow, the actions `callcheckoutFlow` and `returnFromJoinFlow` are defined in the configuration file `joinFlow-flow.xml`.

16.3.3.2 Using a Configuration File to Configure a Flow

If you use an application configuration resource file to configure a flow, it must be named `flowName-flow.xml`. In this example, the join flow uses a configuration file named `joinFlow-flow.xml`. The file is a `faces-config` file that specifies a `flow-definition` element. This element must define the flow name using the `id` attribute. Under the `flow-definition` element there must be a `flow-return` element that specifies the return point for the flow. Any inbound parameters are specified with `inbound-parameter` elements. If the flow calls another flow, the `call-flow` element must use the `flow-reference` element to name the called flow and may use the `outbound-parameter` element to specify any outbound parameters.

The configuration file for the join flow looks like this:

```
<faces-config version="2.2" xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee \
  http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee/web-facesconfig_2_2.xsd">

  <flow-definition id="joinFlow">
    <flow-return id="returnFromJoinFlow">
      <from-outcome>#{joinFlowBean.returnValue}</from-outcome>
    </flow-return>

    <inbound-parameter>
      <name>param1FromCheckoutFlow</name>
      <value>#{flowScope.param1Value}</value>
    </inbound-parameter>
    <inbound-parameter>
      <name>param2FromCheckoutFlow</name>
      <value>#{flowScope.param2Value}</value>
    </inbound-parameter>

    <flow-call id="callcheckoutFlow">
      <flow-reference>
        <flow-id>checkoutFlow</flow-id>
      </flow-reference>
      <outbound-parameter>
        <name>param1FromJoinFlow</name>
        <value>param1 joinFlow value</value>
      </outbound-parameter>
      <outbound-parameter>
        <name>param2FromJoinFlow</name>
        <value>param2 joinFlow value</value>
      </outbound-parameter>
    </flow-call>
  </flow-definition>
</faces-config>
```

The `id` attribute of the `flow-definition` element defines the name of the flow as `joinFlow`. The value of the `id` attribute of the `flow-return` element identifies the name of the return node, and its value is defined in the `from-outcome` element as the `returnValue` property of the flow-scoped managed bean for the join flow, `JoinFlowBean`.

The names and values of the inbound parameters are retrieved from the flow scope in order (`flowScope.param1Value`, `flowScope.param2Value`), based on the way they were defined in the checkout flow configuration.

The `flow-call` element defines how the join flow calls the checkout flow. The `id` attribute of the element, `callcheckoutFlow`, defines the action of calling the flow. Within the `flow-call` element, the `flow-reference` element defines the actual name of the flow to call, `checkoutFlow`. The `outbound-parameter` elements define the parameters to be passed when `checkoutFlow` is called. Here they are just arbitrary strings.

16.3.3.3 Using a Java Class to Configure a Flow

If you use a Java class to configure a flow, it must have the name of the flow. The class for the checkout flow is called `CheckoutFlow.java`.

```
import java.io.Serializable;
import javax.enterprise.inject.Produces;
import javax.faces.flow.Flow;
import javax.faces.flow.builder.FlowBuilder;
import javax.faces.flow.builder.FlowBuilderParameter;
import javax.faces.flow.builder.FlowDefinition;

class CheckoutFlow implements Serializable {

    private static final long serialVersionUID = 1L;

    @Produces
    @FlowDefinition
    public Flow defineFlow(@FlowBuilderParameter FlowBuilder flowBuilder) {

        String flowId = "checkoutFlow";
        flowBuilder.id("", flowId);
        flowBuilder.viewNode(flowId,
            "/" + flowId + "/" + flowId + ".xhtml").
            markAsStartNode();

        flowBuilder.returnNode("returnFromCheckoutFlow").
            fromOutcome("#{checkoutFlowBean.returnValue}");

        flowBuilder.inboundParameter("param1FromJoinFlow",
            "#{flowScope.param1Value}");
        flowBuilder.inboundParameter("param2FromJoinFlow",
            "#{flowScope.param2Value}");

        flowBuilder.flowCallNode("calljoin").flowReference("", "joinFlow").
            outboundParameter("param1FromCheckoutFlow",
                "#{checkoutFlowBean.name}").
            outboundParameter("param2FromCheckoutFlow",
                "#{checkoutFlowBean.city}");
        return flowBuilder.getFlow();
    }
}
```

The class performs actions that are almost identical to those performed by the configuration file `joinFlow-flow.xml`. It contains a single method, `defineFlow`, as a producer method with the `@FlowDefinition` qualifier that returns a `javax.faces.flow.Flow` class. The `defineFlow` method takes one parameter, a `FlowBuilder` with the qualifier `@FlowBuilderParameter`, which is passed in from the JavaServer Faces implementation. The method then calls methods from the `javax.faces.flow.Builder.FlowBuilder` class to configure the flow.

First, the method defines the flow id as `checkoutFlow`. Then it explicitly defines the start node for the flow. By default, this is the name of the flow with a `.html` suffix.

The method then defines the return node similarly to the way the configuration file does. The `returnNode` method sets the name of the return node as `returnFromCheckoutFlow`, and the chained `fromOutcome` method specifies its value as the `returnValue` property of the flow-scoped managed bean for the checkout flow, `CheckoutFlowBean`.

The `inboundParameter` method sets the names and values of the inbound parameters from the join flow, which are retrieved from the flow scope in order (`flowScope.param1Value`, `flowScope.param2Value`), based on the way they were defined in the join flow configuration.

The `flowCallNode` method defines how the checkout flow calls the join flow. The argument, `callJoin`, specifies the action of calling the flow. The chained `flowReference` method defines the actual name of the flow to call, `joinFlow`, then calls `outboundParameter` methods to define the parameters to be passed when `joinFlow` is called. Here they are values from the `CheckoutFlowBean` managed bean.

Finally, the `defineFlow` method calls the `getFlow` method and returns the result.

16.3.3.4 The Flow-Scoped Managed Beans

Each of the two flows has a managed bean that defines properties for the pages within the flow. For example, the `CheckoutFlowBean` defines properties whose values are entered by the user on both the `checkoutFlow.xhtml` page and the `checkoutFlow3.xhtml` page.

Each managed bean has a `getReturnValue` method that sets the value of the return node. For the `CheckoutFlowBean`, the return node is the `index.xhtml` page, specified using implicit navigation:

```
public String getReturnValue() {
    return "index";
}
```

For the `JoinFlowBean`, the return node is the `exithome.xhtml` page.

16.3.3.5 To Build, Package, and Deploy the checkout-module Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, choose **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf
```
3. Select the `checkout-module` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `checkout-module` project and select **Run**.

This option builds and deploys the example application to your GlassFish Server instance, then opens it in your default web browser.

16.3.3.6 To Build, Package, and Deploy the checkout-module Example Using Maven and the `asadmin` Command

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsf/checkout-module/
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `checkout-module.war`, that is located in the `target` directory. It then deploys the application to the server.

16.3.3.7 To Run the checkout-module Example

1. Enter the following URL in your web browser:

```
http://localhost:8080/checkout-module
```

2. The `index.xhtml` page presents hypothetical results of the shopping expedition. Click either **Check Out** or **Join** to enter one of the two flows.
3. Follow the flow, providing input as needed and choosing whether to continue, go back, or exit the flow.

In the checkout flow, only one of the input fields is validated (the credit card field expects 16 digits), so you can enter any values you like. The join flow does not require you to check any boxes in its checkbox menus.

4. On the last page of a flow, select the option to enter the other flow. This allows you to view the inbound parameters from the previous flow.
5. Because flows are nested, if you click **Exit Flow** from a called flow, you will return to the first page of the calling flow. (You may see a warning, which you can ignore.) Click **Exit Flow** on that page to go to the specified return node.

16.4 Configuring Managed Beans

When a page references a managed bean for the first time, the JavaServer Faces implementation initializes it either based on a `@Named` annotation and scope annotation in the bean class or according to its configuration in the application configuration resource file. For information on using annotations to initialize beans, see [Using Annotations to Configure Managed Beans](#).

You can use either annotations or the application configuration resource file to instantiate managed beans that are used in a JavaServer Faces application and to store them in scope. The managed bean creation facility is configured in the application configuration resource file using `managed-bean` XML elements to define each bean. This file is processed at application startup time. For information on using this facility, see [Using the managed-bean Element](#).

Managed beans created in the application configuration resource file are JavaServer Faces managed beans, not CDI managed beans.

With the managed bean creation facility, you can:

- Create beans in one centralized file that is available to the entire application, rather than conditionally instantiate beans throughout the application
- Customize a bean's properties without any additional code
- Customize a bean's property values directly from within the configuration file so that it is initialized with these values when it is created
- Using `value` elements, set a property of one managed bean to be the result of evaluating another value expression

This section shows you how to initialize beans using the managed bean creation facility. See [Writing Bean Properties](#) and [Writing Managed Bean Methods](#) for information on programming managed beans.

16.4.1 Using the managed-bean Element

A managed bean is initiated in the application configuration resource file using a `managed-bean` element, which represents an instance of a bean class that must exist in the application. At runtime, the JavaServer Faces implementation processes the `managed-bean` element. If a page references the bean, and if no bean instance exists, the JavaServer Faces implementation instantiates the bean as specified by the element configuration.

Here is an example managed bean configuration from the Duke's Bookstore case study:

```
<managed-bean eager="true">
  <managed-bean-name>Book201</managed-bean-name>
  <managed-bean-class>dukesbookstore.model.ImageArea</managed-bean-class>
  <managed-bean-scope>application</managed-bean-scope>
  <managed-property>
    <property-name>shape</property-name>
    <value>rect</value>
  </managed-property>
  <managed-property>
    <property-name>alt</property-name>
    <value>Duke</value>
  </managed-property>
  <managed-property>
    <property-name>coords</property-name>
    <value>67,23,212,268</value>
  </managed-property>
</managed-bean>
```

Using NetBeans IDE, you can add a managed bean declaration by doing the following:

1. After opening your project in NetBeans IDE, expand the project node in the **Projects** tab.
2. Expand the **Web Pages** and **WEB-INF** nodes of the project node.
3. If there is no `faces-config.xml` in the project, create one as follows:
 - a. From the **File** menu, select **New File**.
 - b. In the New File wizard, select the **JavaServer Faces** category, then select **JSF Faces Configuration** and click **Next**.
 - c. On the Name and Location page, change the name and location of the file if necessary. The default file name is `faces-config.xml`.
 - d. Click **Finish**.

4. Double-click `faces-config.xml` if the file is not already open.
5. After `faces-config.xml` opens in the editor window, select **XML** from the sub-tab options.
6. Right-click in the editor window.
7. From the **Insert** menu, select **Managed Bean**.
8. In the Add Managed Bean dialog box:
 - a. Enter the display name of the bean in the **Bean Name** field.
 - b. Click **Browse** to locate the bean's class.
9. In the Browse Class dialog box:
 - a. Start typing the name of the class you are looking for in the **Class Name** field. While you are typing, the dialog box will show the matching classes.
 - b. Select the class from the **Matching Classes** list.
 - c. Click **OK**.
10. In the Add Managed Bean dialog box:
 - a. Select the bean's scope from the **Scope** menu.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The preceding steps will add the `managed-bean` element and three elements inside of that element: a `managed-bean-name` element, a `managed-bean-class` element, and a `managed-bean-scope` element. You will need to edit the XML of the configuration file directly to further configure this managed bean.

The `managed-bean-name` element defines the key under which the bean will be stored in a scope. For a component's value to map to this bean, the component tag's `value` attribute must match the `managed-bean-name` up to the first period.

The `managed-bean-class` element defines the fully qualified name of the JavaBeans component class used to instantiate the bean.

The `managed-bean` element can contain zero or more `managed-property` elements, each corresponding to a property defined in the bean class. These elements are used to initialize the values of the bean properties. If you don't want a particular property initialized with a value when the bean is instantiated, do not include a `managed-property` definition for it in your application configuration resource file.

If a `managed-bean` element does not contain other `managed-bean` elements, it can contain one `map-entries` element or `list-entries` element. The `map-entries` element configures a set of beans that are instances of `Map`. The `list-entries` element configures a set of beans that are instances of `List`.

In the following example, the `newsletters` managed bean, representing a `UISelectItems` component, is configured as an `ArrayList` that represents a set of `SelectItem` objects. Each `SelectItem` object is in turn configured as a managed bean with properties:

```
<managed-bean>
  <managed-bean-name>newsletters</managed-bean-name>
  <managed-bean-class>java.util.ArrayList</managed-bean-class>
  <managed-bean-scope>application</managed-bean-scope>
  <list-entries>
    <value-class>javax.faces.model.SelectItem</value-class>
    <value>#{newsletter0}</value>
    <value>#{newsletter1}</value>
```

```

        <value>#{newsletter2}</value>
        <value>#{newsletter3}</value>
    </list-entries>
</managed-bean>
<managed-bean>
    <managed-bean-name>newsletter0</managed-bean-name>
    <managed-bean-class>javax.faces.model.SelectItem</managed-bean-class>
    <managed-bean-scope>none</managed-bean-scope>
    <managed-property>
        <property-name>label</property-name>
        <value>Duke's Quarterly</value>
    </managed-property>
    <managed-property>
        <property-name>value</property-name>
        <value>200</value>
    </managed-property>
</managed-bean>
...

```

This approach may be useful for quick-and-dirty creation of selection item lists, before a development team has had time to create such lists from the database. Note that each of the individual newsletter beans has a `managed-bean-scope` setting of `none`, so that they will not themselves be placed into any scope.

See [Initializing Array and List Properties](#) for more information on configuring collections as beans.

To map to a property defined by a `managed-property` element, you must ensure that the part of a component tag's value expression after the period matches the `managed-property` element's `property-name` element. In the earlier example, the maximum property is initialized with the value 10. The next section, [Initializing Properties Using the managed-property Element](#), explains in more detail how to use the `managed-property` element. See [Initializing Managed Bean Properties](#) for an example of initializing a managed bean property.

16.4.2 Initializing Properties Using the managed-property Element

A `managed-property` element must contain a `property-name` element, which must match the name of the corresponding property in the bean. A `managed-property` element must also contain one of a set of elements that defines the value of the property. This value must be of the same type as that defined for the property in the corresponding bean. Which element you use to define the value depends on the type of the property defined in the bean. [Table 16-1](#) lists all the elements that are used to initialize a value.

Table 16-1 Sub-elements of managed-property Elements That Define Property Values

Element	Value It Defines
<code>list-entries</code>	Defines the values in a list
<code>map-entries</code>	Defines the values of a map
<code>null-value</code>	Explicitly sets the property to null
<code>value</code>	Defines a single value, such as a <code>String</code> , <code>int</code> , or JavaServer Faces EL expression

[Using the managed-bean Element](#) includes an example of initializing an `int` property (a primitive type) using the `value` subelement. You also use the `value` subelement to initialize `String` and other reference types. The rest of this section describes how to

use the `value` subelement and other subelements to initialize properties of Java Enum types, `Map`, `array`, and `Collection`, as well as initialization parameters.

16.4.2.1 Referencing a Java Enum Type

A managed bean property can also be a Java Enum type (see <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api/java/lang/Enum.html>). In this case, the `value` element of the managed-property element must be a `String` that matches one of the `String` constants of the Enum. In other words, the `String` must be one of the valid values that can be returned if you were to call `valueOf(Class, String)` on `enum`, where `Class` is the Enum class and `String` is the contents of the `value` subelement. For example, suppose the managed bean property is the following:

```
public enum Suit { Hearts, Spades, Diamonds, Clubs}
...
public Suit getSuit() { ... return Suit.Hearts; }
```

Assuming you want to configure this property in the application configuration resource file, the corresponding managed-property element looks like this:

```
<managed-property>
  <property-name>Suit</property-name>
  <value>Hearts</value>
</managed-property>
```

When the system encounters this property, it iterates over each of the members of the enum and calls `toString()` on each member until it finds one that is exactly equal to the value from the `value` element.

16.4.2.2 Referencing a Context Initialization Parameter

Another powerful feature of the managed bean creation facility is the ability to reference implicit objects from a managed bean property.

Suppose you have a page that accepts data from a customer, including the customer's address. Suppose also that most of your customers live in a particular area code. You can make the area code component render this area code by saving it in an implicit object and referencing it when the page is rendered.

You can save the area code as an initial default value in the context `initParam` implicit object by adding a context parameter to your web application and setting its value in the deployment descriptor. For example, to set a context parameter called `defaultAreaCode` to 650, add a `context-param` element to the deployment descriptor, and give the parameter the name `defaultAreaCode` and the value 650.

Next, you write a managed-bean declaration that configures a property that references the parameter:

```
<managed-bean>
  <managed-bean-name>customer</managed-bean-name>
  <managed-bean-class>CustomerBean</managed-bean-class>
  <managed-bean-scope>request</managed-bean-scope>
  <managed-property>
    <property-name>areaCode</property-name>
    <value>#{initParam.defaultAreaCode}</value>
  </managed-property>
  ...
</managed-bean>
```

To access the area code at the time the page is rendered, refer to the property from the area component tag's `value` attribute:

```
<h:inputText id=area value="#{customer.areaCode}"
```

Values are retrieved from other implicit objects in a similar way.

16.4.2.3 Initializing Map Properties

The `map-entries` element is used to initialize the values of a bean property with a type of `Map` if the `map-entries` element is used within a `managed-property` element. A `map-entries` element contains an optional `key-class` element, an optional `value-class` element, and zero or more `map-entry` elements.

Each of the `map-entry` elements must contain a `key` element and either a `null-value` or `value` element. Here is an example that uses the `map-entries` element:

```
<managed-bean>
  ...
  <managed-property>
    <property-name>prices</property-name>
    <map-entries>
      <map-entry>
        <key>My Early Years: Growing Up on *7</key>
        <value>30.75</value>
      </map-entry>
      <map-entry>
        <key>Web Servers for Fun and Profit</key>
        <value>40.75</value>
      </map-entry>
    </map-entries>
  </managed-property>
</managed-bean>
```

The map created from this `map-entries` tag contains two entries. By default, all the keys and values are converted to `String`. If you want to specify a different type for the keys in the map, embed the `key-class` element just inside the `map-entries` element:

```
<map-entries>
  <key-class>java.math.BigDecimal</key-class>
  ...
</map-entries>
```

This declaration will convert all the keys into `java.math.BigDecimal`. Of course, you must make sure the keys can be converted to the type you specify. The key from the example in this section cannot be converted to a `BigDecimal`, because it is a `String`.

If you want to specify a different type for all the values in the map, include the `value-class` element after the `key-class` element:

```
<map-entries>
  <key-class>int</key-class>
  <value-class>java.math.BigDecimal</value-class>
  ...
</map-entries>
```

Note that this tag sets only the type of all the value subelements.

Each `map-entry` in the preceding example includes a value subelement. The value subelement defines a single value, which will be converted to the type specified in the bean.

Instead of using a `map-entries` element, it is also possible to assign the entire map using a `value` element that specifies a map-typed expression.

16.4.2.4 Initializing Array and List Properties

The `list-entries` element is used to initialize the values of an array or `List` property. Each individual value of the array or `List` is initialized using a `value` or `null-value` element. Here is an example:

```
<managed-bean>
  ...
  <managed-property>
    <property-name>books</property-name>
    <list-entries>
      <value-class>java.lang.String</value-class>
      <value>Web Servers for Fun and Profit</value>
      <value>#{myBooks.bookId[3]}</value>
      <null-value/>
    </list-entries>
  </managed-property>
</managed-bean>
```

This example initializes an array or a `List`. The type of the corresponding property in the bean determines which data structure is created. The `list-entries` element defines the list of values in the array or `List`. The `value` element specifies a single value in the array or `List` and can reference a property in another bean. The `null-value` element will cause the `setBooks` method to be called with an argument of `null`. A `null` property cannot be specified for a property whose data type is a Java primitive, such as `int` or `boolean`.

16.4.2.5 Initializing Managed Bean Properties

Sometimes you might want to create a bean that also references other managed beans so you can construct a graph or a tree of beans. For example, suppose you want to create a bean representing a customer's information, including the mailing address and street address, each of which is also a bean. The following `managed-bean` declarations create a `CustomerBean` instance that has two `AddressBean` properties: one representing the mailing address, and the other representing the street address. This declaration results in a tree of beans with `CustomerBean` as its root and the two `AddressBean` objects as children.

```
<managed-bean>
  <managed-bean-name>customer</managed-bean-name>
  <managed-bean-class>
    com.example.mybeans.CustomerBean
  </managed-bean-class>
  <managed-bean-scope> request </managed-bean-scope>
  <managed-property>
    <property-name>mailingAddress</property-name>
    <value>#{addressBean}</value>
  </managed-property>
  <managed-property>
    <property-name>streetAddress</property-name>
    <value>#{addressBean}</value>
  </managed-property>
  <managed-property>
    <property-name>customerType</property-name>
    <value>New</value>
  </managed-property>
</managed-bean>
<managed-bean>
  <managed-bean-name>addressBean</managed-bean-name>
  <managed-bean-class>
```

```

        com.example.mybeans.AddressBean
    </managed-bean-class>
    <managed-bean-scope> none </managed-bean-scope>
    <managed-property>
        <property-name>street</property-name>
        <null-value/>
    </managed-property>
    ...
</managed-bean>

```

The first `CustomerBean` declaration (with the `managed-bean-name` of `customer`) creates a `CustomerBean` in request scope. This bean has two properties, `mailingAddress` and `streetAddress`. These properties use the `value` element to reference a bean named `addressBean`.

The second managed bean declaration defines an `AddressBean`, but does not create it, because its `managed-bean-scope` element defines a scope of `none`. Recall that a scope of `none` means that the bean is created only when something else references it. Because both the `mailingAddress` and the `streetAddress` properties reference `addressBean` using the `value` element, two instances of `AddressBean` are created when `CustomerBean` is created.

When you create an object that points to other objects, do not try to point to an object with a shorter life span, because it might be impossible to recover that scope's resources when it goes away. A session-scoped object, for example, cannot point to a request-scoped object. And objects with `none` scope have no effective life span managed by the framework, so they can point only to other `none`-scoped objects. [Table 16–2](#) outlines all of the allowed connections.

Table 16–2 Allowable Connections Between Scoped Objects

An Object of This Scope	May Point to an Object of This Scope
none	none
application	none, application
session	none, application, session
request	none, application, session, request, view
view	none, application, session, view

Be sure not to allow cyclical references between objects. For example, neither of the `AddressBean` objects in the preceding example should point back to the `CustomerBean` object, because `CustomerBean` already points to the `AddressBean` objects.

16.4.3 Initializing Maps and Lists

In addition to configuring `Map` and `List` properties, you can also configure a `Map` and a `List` directly so that you can reference them from a tag rather than referencing a property that wraps a `Map` or a `List`.

16.5 Registering Application Messages

Application messages can include any strings displayed to the user, as well as custom error messages (which are displayed by the `message` and `messages` tags) for your custom converters or validators. To make messages available at application startup time, do one of the following:

- Queue an individual message onto the `javax.faces.context.FacesContext` instance programmatically, as described in [Using FacesMessage to Create a Message](#)
- Register all the messages with your application using the application configuration resource file

Here is the section of the `faces-config.xml` file that registers the messages for the Duke's Bookstore case study application:

```
<application>
  <resource-bundle>
    <base-name>dukesbookstore.web.messages.Messages</base-name>
    <var>bundle</var>
  </resource-bundle>
  <locale-config>
    <default-locale>en</default-locale>
    <supported-locale>es</supported-locale>
    <supported-locale>de</supported-locale>
    <supported-locale>fr</supported-locale>
  </locale-config>
</application>
```

This set of elements causes the application to be populated with the messages that are contained in the specified resource bundle.

The `resource-bundle` element represents a set of localized messages. It must contain the fully qualified path to the resource bundle containing the localized messages (in this case, `dukesbookstore.web.messages.Messages`). The `var` element defines the EL name by which page authors refer to the resource bundle.

The `locale-config` element lists the default locale and the other supported locales. The `locale-config` element enables the system to find the correct locale based on the browser's language settings.

The `supported-locale` and `default-locale` tags accept the lowercase, two-character codes defined by ISO 639-1 (see http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/php/English_list.php). Make sure your resource bundle actually contains the messages for the locales you specify with these tags.

To access the localized message, the application developer merely references the key of the message from the resource bundle.

You can pull localized text into an `alt` tag for a graphic image, as in the following example:

```
<h:graphicImage id="mapImage"
  name="book_all.jpg"
  library="images"
  alt="#{bundle.ChooseBook}"
  usemap="#bookMap" />
```

The `alt` attribute can accept value expressions. In this case, the `alt` attribute refers to localized text that will be included in the alternative text of the image rendered by this tag.

16.5.1 Using FacesMessage to Create a Message

Instead of registering messages in the application configuration resource file, you can access the `java.util.ResourceBundle` directly from managed bean code. The code snippet below locates an email error message:

```
String message = "";
...
message = ExampleBean.loadErrorMessage(context,
    ExampleBean.EX_RESOURCE_BUNDLE_NAME,
    "EmailError");
context.addMessage(toValidate.getClientId(context),
    new FacesMessage(message));
```

These lines call the bean's `loadErrorMessage` method to get the message from the `ResourceBundle`. Here is the `loadErrorMessage` method:

```
public static String loadErrorMessage(FacesContext context,
    String basename, String key) {
    if ( bundle == null ) {
        try {
            bundle = ResourceBundle.getBundle(basename,
                context.getViewRoot().getLocale());
        } catch (Exception e) {
            return null;
        }
    }
    return bundle.getString(key);
}
```

16.5.2 Referencing Error Messages

A JavaServer Faces page uses the `message` or `messages` tags to access error messages, as explained in [Displaying Error Messages with the h:message and h:messages Tags](#).

The error messages these tags access include:

- The standard error messages that accompany the standard converters and validators that ship with the API. See Section 2.5.2.4 of the JavaServer Faces specification for a complete list of standard error messages.
- Custom error messages contained in resource bundles registered with the application by the application architect using the `resource-bundle` element in the configuration file.

When a converter or validator is registered on an input component, the appropriate error message is automatically queued on the component.

A page author can override the error messages queued on a component by using the following attributes of the component's tag:

- `converterMessage`: References the error message to display when the data on the enclosing component can not be converted by the converter registered on this component.
- `requiredMessage`: References the error message to display when no value has been entered into the enclosing component.
- `validatorMessage`: References the error message to display when the data on the enclosing component cannot be validated by the validator registered on this component.

All three attributes are enabled to take literal values and value expressions. If an attribute uses a value expression, this expression references the error message in a resource bundle. This resource bundle must be made available to the application in one of the following ways:

- By the application architect using the `resource-bundle` element in the configuration file
- By the page author using the `f:loadBundle` tag

Conversely, the `resource-bundle` element must be used to make available to the application those resource bundles containing custom error messages that are queued on the component as a result of a custom converter or validator being registered on the component.

The following tags show how to specify the `requiredMessage` attribute using a value expression to reference an error message:

```
<h:inputText id="ccno" size="19"
  required="true"
  requiredMessage="#{customMessages.ReqMessage}">
  ...
</h:inputText>
<h:message styleClass="error-message" for="ccno"/>
```

The value expression used by `requiredMessage` in this example references the error message with the `ReqMessage` key in the resource bundle, `customMessages`.

This message replaces the corresponding message queued on the component and will display wherever the message or messages tag is placed on the page.

16.6 Using Default Validators

In addition to the validators you declare on the components, you can also specify zero or more default validators in the application configuration resource file. The default validator applies to all `javax.faces.component.UIInput` instances in a view or component tree and is appended after the local defined validators. Here is an example of a default validator registered in the application configuration resource file:

```
<faces-config>
  <application>
    <default-validators>
      <validator-id>javax.faces.Bean</validator-id>
    </default-validators>
  </application>
</faces-config>
```

16.7 Registering a Custom Validator

If the application developer provides an implementation of the `javax.faces.validator.Validator` interface to perform validation, you must register this custom validator either by using the `@FacesValidator` annotation, as described in [Implementing the Validator Interface](#), or by using the `validator` XML element in the application configuration resource file:

```
<validator>
  ...
  <validator-id>FormatValidator</validator-id>
  <validator-class>
    myapplication.validators.FormatValidator
```

```

</validator-class>
<attribute>
  ...
  <attribute-name>formatPatterns</attribute-name>
  <attribute-class>java.lang.String</attribute-class>
</attribute>
</validator>

```

Attributes specified in a validator tag override any settings in the `@FacesValidator` annotation.

The `validator-id` and `validator-class` elements are required subelements. The `validator-id` element represents the identifier under which the `Validator` class should be registered. This ID is used by the tag class corresponding to the custom validator tag.

The `validator-class` element represents the fully qualified class name of the `Validator` class.

The `attribute` element identifies an attribute associated with the `Validator` implementation. It has required `attribute-name` and `attribute-class` subelements. The `attribute-name` element refers to the name of the attribute as it appears in the validator tag. The `attribute-class` element identifies the Java type of the value associated with the attribute.

[Creating and Using a Custom Validator](#) explains how to implement the `Validator` interface.

[Using a Custom Validator](#) explains how to reference the validator from the page.

16.8 Registering a Custom Converter

As is the case with a custom validator, if the application developer creates a custom converter, you must register it with the application either by using the `@FacesConverter` annotation, as described in [Creating a Custom Converter](#), or by using the converter XML element in the application configuration resource file. Here is a hypothetical converter configuration for `CreditCardConverter` from the Duke's Bookstore case study:

```

<converter>
  <description>
    Converter for credit card numbers that normalizes
    the input to a standard format
  </description>
  <converter-id>CreditCardConverter</converter-id>
  <converter-class>
    dukesbookstore.converters.CreditCardConverter
  </converter-class>
</converter>

```

Attributes specified in a converter tag override any settings in the `@FacesConverter` annotation.

The `converter` element represents a `javax.faces.convert.Converter` implementation and contains required `converter-id` and `converter-class` elements.

The `converter-id` element identifies an ID that is used by the `converter` attribute of a UI component tag to apply the converter to the component's data. [Using a Custom Converter](#) includes an example of referencing the custom converter from a component tag.

The `converter-class` element identifies the Converter implementation.

[Creating and Using a Custom Converter](#) explains how to create a custom converter.

16.9 Configuring Navigation Rules

Navigation between different pages of a JavaServer Faces application, such as choosing the next page to be displayed after a button or link component is clicked, is defined by a set of rules. Navigation rules can be implicit, or they can be explicitly defined in the application configuration resource file. For more information on implicit navigation rules, see [Navigation Model](#).

Each navigation rule specifies how to navigate from one page to another page or set of pages. The JavaServer Faces implementation chooses the proper navigation rule according to which page is currently displayed.

After the proper navigation rule is selected, the choice of which page to access next from the current page depends on two factors:

- The action method invoked when the component was clicked
- The logical outcome referenced by the component's tag or returned from the action method

The outcome can be anything the developer chooses, but [Table 16–3](#) lists some outcomes commonly used in web applications.

Table 16–3 Common Outcome Strings

Outcome	What It Means
success	Everything worked. Go on to the next page.
failure	Something is wrong. Go on to an error page.
login	The user needs to log in first. Go on to the login page.
no results	The search did not find anything. Go to the search page again.

Usually, the action method performs some processing on the form data of the current page. For example, the method might check whether the user name and password entered in the form match the user name and password on file. If they match, the method returns the outcome `success`. Otherwise, it returns the outcome `failure`. As this example demonstrates, both the method used to process the action and the outcome returned are necessary to determine the correct page to access.

Here is a navigation rule that could be used with the example just described:

```
<navigation-rule>
  <from-view-id>/login.xhtml</from-view-id>
  <navigation-case>
    <from-action>#{LoginForm.login}</from-action>
    <from-outcome>success</from-outcome>
    <to-view-id>/storefront.xhtml</to-view-id>
  </navigation-case>
  <navigation-case>
    <from-action>#{LoginForm.logon}</from-action>
    <from-outcome>failure</from-outcome>
    <to-view-id>/logon.xhtml</to-view-id>
  </navigation-case>
</navigation-rule>
```

This navigation rule defines the possible ways to navigate from `login.xhtml`. Each `navigation-case` element defines one possible navigation path from `login.xhtml`. The first `navigation-case` says that if `LoginForm.login` returns an outcome of success, then `storefront.xhtml` will be accessed. The second `navigation-case` says that `login.xhtml` will be re-rendered if `LoginForm.login` returns failure.

The configuration of an application's page flow consists of a set of navigation rules. Each rule is defined by the `navigation-rule` element in the `faces-config.xml` file.

Each `navigation-rule` element corresponds to one component tree identifier defined by the optional `from-view-id` element. This means that each rule defines all the possible ways to navigate from one particular page in the application. If there is no `from-view-id` element, the navigation rules defined in the `navigation-rule` element apply to all the pages in the application. The `from-view-id` element also allows wildcard matching patterns. For example, this `from-view-id` element says that the navigation rule applies to all the pages in the books directory:

```
<from-view-id>/books/*</from-view-id>
```

A `navigation-rule` element can contain zero or more `navigation-case` elements. The `navigation-case` element defines a set of matching criteria. When these criteria are satisfied, the application will navigate to the page defined by the `to-view-id` element contained in the same `navigation-case` element.

The navigation criteria are defined by optional `from-outcome` and `from-action` elements. The `from-outcome` element defines a logical outcome, such as success. The `from-action` element uses a method expression to refer to an action method that returns a `String`, which is the logical outcome. The method performs some logic to determine the outcome and returns the outcome.

The `navigation-case` elements are checked against the outcome and the method expression in this order:

1. Cases specifying both a `from-outcome` value and a `from-action` value. Both of these elements can be used if the action method returns different outcomes depending on the result of the processing it performs.
2. Cases specifying only a `from-outcome` value. The `from-outcome` element must match either the outcome defined by the `action` attribute of the `javax.faces.component.UICommand` component or the outcome returned by the method referred to by the `UICommand` component.
3. Cases specifying only a `from-action` value. This value must match the action expression specified by the component tag.

When any of these cases is matched, the component tree defined by the `to-view-id` element will be selected for rendering.

16.9.1 To Configure a Navigation Rule

Using NetBeans IDE, you can configure a navigation rule by doing the following:

1. After opening your project in NetBeans IDE, expand the project node in the **Projects** tab.
2. Expand the **Web Pages** and **WEB-INF** nodes of the project node.
3. Double-click `faces-config.xml`.
4. After `faces-config.xml` opens in the editor window, right-click in the editor window.

5. From the **Insert** menu, select **Navigation Rule**.
6. In the Add Navigation Rule dialog box:
 - a. Enter or browse for the page that represents the starting view for this navigation rule.
 - b. Click **Add**.
7. Right-click again in the editor window.
8. From the **Insert** menu, select **Navigation Case**.
9. In the Add Navigation Case dialog box:
 - a. From the **From View** menu, select the page that represents the starting view for the navigation rule (from Step 6a).
 - b. (optional) In the **From Action** field, enter the action method invoked when the component that triggered navigation is activated.
 - c. (optional) In the **From Outcome** field, enter the logical outcome string that the activated component references from its `action` attribute.
 - d. From the **To View** menu, select or browse for the page that will be opened if this navigation case is selected by the navigation system.
 - e. Click **Add**.

[Referencing a Method That Performs Navigation](#) explains how to use a component tag's `action` attribute to point to an action method. [Writing a Method to Handle Navigation](#) explains how to write an action method.

16.10 Registering a Custom Renderer with a Render Kit

When the application developer creates a custom renderer, as described in [Delegating Rendering to a Renderer](#), you must register it using the appropriate render kit. Because the image map application implements an HTML image map, the `AreaRenderer` and `MapRenderer` classes in the Duke's Bookstore case study should be registered using the HTML render kit.

You register the renderer either by using the `@FacesRenderer` annotation, as described in [Creating the Renderer Class](#), or by using the `render-kit` element of the application configuration resource file. Here is a hypothetical configuration of `AreaRenderer`:

```
<render-kit>
  <renderer>
    <component-family>Area</component-family>
    <renderer-type>DemoArea</renderer-type>
    <renderer-class>
      dukessbookstore.renderers.AreaRenderer
    </renderer-class>
    <attribute>
      <attribute-name>onmouseout</attribute-name>
      <attribute-class>java.lang.String</attribute-class>
    </attribute>
    <attribute>
      <attribute-name>onmouseover</attribute-name>
      <attribute-class>java.lang.String</attribute-class>
    </attribute>
    <attribute>
      <attribute-name>styleClass</attribute-name>
      <attribute-class>java.lang.String</attribute-class>
    </attribute>
  </renderer>
</render-kit>
```

```

        </attribute>
    </renderer>
    ...

```

Attributes specified in a `renderer` tag override any settings in the `@FacesRenderer` annotation.

The `render-kit` element represents a `javax.faces.render.RenderKit` implementation. If no `render-kit-id` is specified, the default HTML render kit is assumed. The `renderer` element represents a `javax.faces.render.Renderer` implementation. By nesting the `renderer` element inside the `render-kit` element, you are registering the renderer with the `RenderKit` implementation associated with the `render-kit` element.

The `renderer-class` is the fully qualified class name of the `Renderer`.

The `component-family` and `renderer-type` elements are used by a component to find renderers that can render it. The `component-family` identifier must match that returned by the component class's `getFamily` method. The component family represents a component or set of components that a particular renderer can render. The `renderer-type` must match that returned by the `getRendererType` method of the tag handler class.

By using the component family and renderer type to look up renderers for components, the JavaServer Faces implementation allows a component to be rendered by multiple renderers and allows a renderer to render multiple components.

Each of the `attribute` tags specifies a render-dependent attribute and its type. The `attribute` element doesn't affect the runtime execution of your application. Rather, it provides information to tools about the attributes the `Renderer` supports.

The object responsible for rendering a component (be it the component itself or a renderer to which the component delegates the rendering) can use facets to aid in the rendering process. These facets allow the custom component developer to control some aspects of rendering the component. Consider this custom component tag example:

```

<d:dataScroller>
    <f:facet name="header">
        <h:panelGroup>
            <h:outputText value="Account Id" />
            <h:outputText value="Customer Name" />
            <h:outputText value="Total Sales" />
        </h:panelGroup>
    </f:facet>
    <f:facet name="next">
        <h:panelGroup>
            <h:outputText value="Next" />
            <h:graphicImage url="/images/arrow-right.gif" />
        </h:panelGroup>
    </f:facet>
    ...
</d:dataScroller>

```

The `dataScroller` component tag includes a component that will render the header and a component that will render the **Next** button. If the renderer associated with this component renders the facets, you can include the following facet elements in the `renderer` element:

```

<facet>
    <description>This facet renders as the header of the table. It should be
        a panelGroup with the same number of columns as the data

```

```
</description>
<display-name>header</display-name>
<facet-name>header</facet-name>
</facet>
<facet>
  <description>This facet renders as the content of the "next" button in
    the scroller. It should be a panelGroup that includes an outputText
    tag that has the text "Next" and a right arrow icon.
  </description>
  <display-name>Next</display-name>
  <facet-name>next</facet-name>
</facet>
```

If a component that supports facets provides its own rendering and you want to include facet elements in the application configuration resource file, you need to put them in the component's configuration rather than the renderer's configuration.

16.11 Registering a Custom Component

In addition to registering custom renderers (as explained in the preceding section), you also must register the custom components that are usually associated with the custom renderers. You use either a `@FacesComponent` annotation, as described in [Creating Custom Component Classes](#), or the component element of the application configuration resource file.

Here is a hypothetical component element from the application configuration resource file that registers `AreaComponent`:

```
<component>
  <component-type>DemoArea</component-type>
  <component-class>
    dukessbookstore.components.AreaComponent
  </component-class>
  <property>
    <property-name>alt</property-name>
    <property-class>java.lang.String</property-class>
  </property>
  <property>
    <property-name>coords</property-name>
    <property-class>java.lang.String</property-class>
  </property>
  <property>
    <property-name>shape</property-name>
    <property-class>java.lang.String</property-class>
  </property>
</component>
```

Attributes specified in a component tag override any settings in the `@FacesComponent` annotation.

The `component-type` element indicates the name under which the component should be registered. Other objects referring to this component use this name. For example, the `component-type` element in the configuration for `AreaComponent` defines a value of `DemoArea`, which matches the value returned by the `AreaTag` class's `getComponentType` method.

The `component-class` element indicates the fully qualified class name of the component. The property elements specify the component properties and their types.

If the custom component can include facets, you can configure the facets in the component configuration using `facet` elements, which are allowed after the `component-class` elements. See [Registering a Custom Renderer with a Render Kit](#) for further details on configuring facets.

16.12 Basic Requirements of a JavaServer Faces Application

In addition to configuring your application, you must satisfy other requirements of JavaServer Faces applications, including properly packaging all the necessary files and providing a deployment descriptor. This section describes how to perform these administrative tasks.

JavaServer Faces applications can be packaged in a WAR file, which must conform to specific requirements to execute across different containers. At a minimum, a WAR file for a JavaServer Faces application may contain the following:

- A web application deployment descriptor, called `web.xml`, to configure resources required by a web application (required)
- A specific set of JAR files containing essential classes (optional)
- A set of application classes, JavaServer Faces pages, and other required resources, such as image files

A WAR file may also contain:

- An application configuration resource file, which configures application resources
- A set of tag library descriptor files

For example, a Java Server Faces web application WAR file using Facelets typically has the following directory structure:

```
$PROJECT_DIR
[Web Pages]
+- /[xhtml or html documents]
+- /resources
+- /WEB-INF
    +- /web.xml
    +- /beans.xml (optional)
    +- /classes (optional)
    +- /lib (optional)
    +- /faces-config.xml (optional)
    +- /*.taglib.xml (optional)
    +- /glassfish-web.xml (optional)
```

The `web.xml` file (or web deployment descriptor), the set of JAR files, and the set of application files must be contained in the `WEB-INF` directory of the WAR file.

16.12.1 Configuring an Application with a Web Deployment Descriptor

Web applications are commonly configured using elements contained in the web application deployment descriptor, `web.xml`. The deployment descriptor for a JavaServer Faces application must specify certain configurations, including the following:

- The servlet used to process JavaServer Faces requests
- The servlet mapping for the processing servlet
- The path to the configuration resource file, if it exists and is not located in a default location

The deployment descriptor can also include other, optional configurations, such as:

- Specifying where component state is saved
- Encrypting state saved on the client
- Compressing state saved on the client
- Restricting access to pages containing JavaServer Faces tags
- Turning on XML validation
- Specifying the Project Stage
- Verifying custom objects

This section gives more details on these configurations. Where appropriate, it also describes how you can make these configurations using NetBeans IDE.

16.12.1.1 Identifying the Servlet for Lifecycle Processing

A requirement of a JavaServer Faces application is that all requests to the application that reference previously saved JavaServer Faces components must go through `javax.faces.webapp.FacesServlet`. A `FacesServlet` instance manages the request processing lifecycle for web applications and initializes the resources required by JavaServer Faces technology.

Before a JavaServer Faces application can launch its first web page, the web container must invoke the `FacesServlet` instance in order for the application lifecycle process to start. See [The Lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces Application](#) for more information.

The following example shows the default configuration of the `FacesServlet`:

```
<servlet>
  <servlet-name>FacesServlet</servlet-name>
  <servlet-class>javax.faces.webapp.FacesServlet</servlet-class>
</servlet>
```

You provide a mapping configuration entry to make sure the `FacesServlet` instance is invoked. The mapping to `FacesServlet` can be a prefix mapping, such as `/faces/*`, or an extension mapping, such as `*.xhtml`. The mapping is used to identify a page as having JavaServer Faces content. Because of this, the URL to the first page of the application must include the URL pattern mapping.

The following elements, commonly used in the tutorial examples, specify a prefix mapping:

```
<servlet-mapping>
  <servlet-name>FacesServlet</servlet-name>
  <url-pattern>/faces/*</url-pattern>
</servlet-mapping>
...
<welcome-file-list>
  <welcome-file>faces/greeting.xhtml</welcome-file>
</welcome-file-list>
```

The following elements, also commonly used in the tutorial examples, specify an extension mapping:

```
<servlet-mapping>
  <servlet-name>Faces Servlet</servlet-name>
  <url-pattern>*.xhtml</url-pattern>
</servlet-mapping>
...
```

```
<welcome-file-list>
  <welcome-file>index.xhtml</welcome-file>
</welcome-file-list>
```

When you use this mechanism, users access the application as shown in the following example:

```
http://localhost:8080/guessNumber
```

In the case of extension mapping, if a request comes to the server for a page with an `.html` extension, the container will send the request to the `FacesServlet` instance, which will expect a corresponding page of the same name containing the content to exist.

If you are using NetBeans IDE to create your application, a web deployment descriptor is automatically created for you with default configurations. If you created your application without an IDE, you can create a web deployment descriptor.

16.12.1.2 To Specify a Path to an Application Configuration Resource File

As explained in [Application Configuration Resource File](#), an application can have multiple application configuration resource files. If these files are not located in the directories that the implementation searches by default or the files are not named `faces-config.xml`, you need to specify paths to these files.

To specify these paths using NetBeans IDE, do the following:

1. Expand the node of your project in the **Projects** tab.
2. Expand the **Web Pages** and **WEB-INF** nodes that are under the project node.
3. Double-click `web.xml`.
4. After the `web.xml` file appears in the editor, click **General** at the top of the editor window.
5. Expand the **Context Parameters** node.
6. Click **Add**.
7. In the Add Context Parameter dialog box:
 - a. Enter `javax.faces.CONFIG_FILES` in the **Param Name** field.
 - b. Enter the path to your configuration file in the **Param Value** field.
 - c. Click **OK**.
8. Repeat steps 1 through 7 for each configuration file.

16.12.1.3 To Specify Where State Is Saved

For all the components in a web application, you can specify in your deployment descriptor where you want the state to be saved, on either client or server. You do this by setting a context parameter in your deployment descriptor. By default, state is saved on the server, so you need to specify this context parameter only if you want to save state on the client. See [Saving and Restoring State](#) for information on the advantages and disadvantages of each location.

To specify where state is saved using NetBeans IDE, do the following:

1. Expand the node of your project in the **Projects** tab.
2. Expand the **Web Pages** and **WEB-INF** nodes under the project node.
3. Double-click `web.xml`.

4. After the `web.xml` file appears in the editor window, click **General** at the top of the editor window.
5. Expand the **Context Parameters** node.
6. Click **Add**.
7. In the Add Context Parameter dialog box:
 - a. Enter `javax.faces.STATE_SAVING_METHOD` in the **Param Name** field.
 - b. Enter `client` or `server` in the **Param Value** field.
 - c. Click **OK**.

If state is saved on the client, the state of the entire view is rendered to a hidden field on the page. The JavaServer Faces implementation saves the state on the server by default. Duke's Forest saves its state on the client.

16.12.2 Configuring Project Stage

Project Stage is a context parameter identifying the status of a JavaServer Faces application in the software lifecycle. The stage of an application can affect the behavior of the application. For example, error messages can be displayed during the Development stage but suppressed during the Production stage.

The possible Project Stage values are as follows:

- Development
- UnitTest
- SystemTest
- Production

Project Stage is configured through a context parameter in the web deployment descriptor file. Here is an example:

```
<context-param>
  <param-name>javax.faces.PROJECT_STAGE</param-name>
  <param-value>Development</param-value>
</context-param>
```

If no Project Stage is defined, the default stage is `Development`. You can also add custom stages according to your requirements.

16.12.3 Including the Classes, Pages, and Other Resources

When packaging web applications using the included build scripts, you'll notice that the scripts package resources in the following ways:

- All web pages are placed at the top level of the WAR file.
- The `faces-config.xml` file and the `web.xml` file are packaged in the `WEB-INF` directory.
- All packages are stored in the `WEB-INF/classes/` directory.
- All application JAR files are packaged in the `WEB-INF/lib/` directory.
- All resource files are either under the root of the web application `/resources` directory, or in the web application's classpath, `META-INF/resources/resourceIdentifier` directory. For more information on resources, see [Web Resources](#).

When packaging your own applications, you can use NetBeans IDE or you can use XML files such as those created for Maven. You can modify the XML files to fit your situation. However, you can continue to package your WAR files by using the directory structure described in this section, because this technique complies with the commonly accepted practice for packaging web applications.

Java Servlet Technology

Java Servlet technology provides dynamic, user-oriented content in web applications using a request-response programming model.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [What Is a Servlet?](#)
- [Servlet Lifecycle](#)
- [Sharing Information](#)
- [Creating and Initializing a Servlet](#)
- [Writing Service Methods](#)
- [Filtering Requests and Responses](#)
- [Invoking Other Web Resources](#)
- [Accessing the Web Context](#)
- [Maintaining Client State](#)
- [Finalizing a Servlet](#)
- [Uploading Files with Java Servlet Technology](#)
- [Asynchronous Processing](#)
- [Non-Blocking I/O](#)
- [Protocol Upgrade Processing](#)
- [The mood Example Application](#)
- [The fileupload Example Application](#)
- [The dukeetf Example Application](#)
- [Further Information about Java Servlet Technology](#)

17.1 What Is a Servlet?

A servlet is a Java programming language class used to extend the capabilities of servers that host applications accessed by means of a request-response programming model. Although servlets can respond to any type of request, they are commonly used to extend the applications hosted by web servers. For such applications, Java Servlet technology defines HTTP-specific servlet classes.

The `javax.servlet` and `javax.servlet.http` packages provide interfaces and classes for writing servlets. All servlets must implement the `Servlet` interface, which defines

lifecycle methods. When implementing a generic service, you can use or extend the `GenericServlet` class provided with the Java Servlet API. The `HttpServlet` class provides methods, such as `doGet` and `doPost`, for handling HTTP-specific services.

17.2 Servlet Lifecycle

The lifecycle of a servlet is controlled by the container in which the servlet has been deployed. When a request is mapped to a servlet, the container performs the following steps.

1. If an instance of the servlet does not exist, the web container
 - a. Loads the servlet class.
 - b. Creates an instance of the servlet class.
 - c. Initializes the servlet instance by calling the `init` method. Initialization is covered in [Creating and Initializing a Servlet](#).
2. Invokes the `service` method, passing request and response objects. Service methods are discussed in [Writing Service Methods](#).

If it needs to remove the servlet, the container finalizes the servlet by calling the servlet's `destroy` method. For more information, see [Finalizing a Servlet](#).

17.2.1 Handling Servlet Lifecycle Events

You can monitor and react to events in a servlet's lifecycle by defining listener objects whose methods get invoked when lifecycle events occur. To use these listener objects, you must define and specify the listener class.

17.2.1.1 Defining the Listener Class

You define a listener class as an implementation of a listener interface. [Table 17–1](#) lists the events that can be monitored and the corresponding interface that must be implemented. When a listener method is invoked, it is passed an event that contains information appropriate to the event. For example, the methods in the `HttpSessionListener` interface are passed an `HttpSessionEvent`, which contains an `HttpSession`.

Table 17–1 *Servlet Lifecycle Events*

Object	Event	Listener Interface and Event Class
Web context	Initialization and destruction	<code>javax.servlet.ServletContextListener</code> and <code>ServletContextEvent</code>
Web context	Attribute added, removed, or replaced	<code>javax.servlet.ServletContextAttributeListener</code> and <code>ServletContextAttributeEvent</code>
Session	Creation, invalidation, activation, passivation, and timeout	<code>javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionListener</code> , <code>javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionActivationListener</code> , and <code>HttpSessionEvent</code>
Session	Attribute added, removed, or replaced	<code>javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionAttributeListener</code> and <code>HttpSessionBindingEvent</code>

Table 17-1 (Cont.) Servlet Lifecycle Events

Object	Event	Listener Interface and Event Class
Request	A servlet request has started being processed by web components	<code>javax.servlet.ServletRequestListener</code> and <code>ServletRequestEvent</code>
Request	Attribute added, removed, or replaced	<code>javax.servlet.ServletRequestAttributeListener</code> and <code>ServletRequestAttributeEvent</code>

Use the `@WebListener` annotation to define a listener to get events for various operations on the particular web application context. Classes annotated with `@WebListener` must implement one of the following interfaces:

```
javax.servlet.ServletContextListener
javax.servlet.ServletContextAttributeListener
javax.servlet.ServletRequestListener
javax.servlet.ServletRequestAttributeListener
javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionListener
javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionAttributeListener
```

For example, the following code snippet defines a listener that implements two of these interfaces:

```
import javax.servlet.ServletContextAttributeListener;
import javax.servlet.ServletContextListener;
import javax.servlet.annotation.WebListener;

@WebListener()
public class SimpleServletListener implements ServletContextListener,
    ServletContextAttributeListener {
    ...
}
```

17.2.2 Handling Servlet Errors

Any number of exceptions can occur when a servlet executes. When an exception occurs, the web container generates a default page containing the following message:

```
A Servlet Exception Has Occurred
```

But you can also specify that the container should return a specific error page for a given exception.

17.3 Sharing Information

Web components, like most objects, usually work with other objects to accomplish their tasks. Web components can do so by

- Using private helper objects (for example, JavaBeans components).
- Sharing objects that are attributes of a public scope.
- Using a database.
- Invoking other web resources. The Java Servlet technology mechanisms that allow a web component to invoke other web resources are described in [Invoking Other Web Resources](#).

17.3.1 Using Scope Objects

Collaborating web components share information by means of objects that are maintained as attributes of four scope objects. You access these attributes by using the `getAttribute` and `setAttribute` methods of the class representing the scope. [Table 17–2](#) lists the scope objects.

Table 17–2 *Scope Objects*

Scope Object	Class	Accessible from
Web context	<code>javax.servlet.ServletContext</code>	Web components within a web context. See Accessing the Web Context .
Session	<code>javax.servlet.http.HttpSession</code>	Web components handling a request that belongs to the session. See Maintaining Client State .
Request	Subtype of <code>javax.servlet.ServletRequest</code>	Web components handling the request.
Page	<code>javax.servlet.jsp.JspContext</code>	The JSP page that creates the object.

17.3.2 Controlling Concurrent Access to Shared Resources

In a multithreaded server, shared resources can be accessed concurrently. In addition to scope object attributes, shared resources include in-memory data, such as instance or class variables, and external objects, such as files, database connections, and network connections.

Concurrent access can arise in several situations:

- Multiple web components accessing objects stored in the web context.
- Multiple web components accessing objects stored in a session.
- Multiple threads within a web component accessing instance variables. A web container will typically create a thread to handle each request. To ensure that a servlet instance handles only one request at a time, a servlet can implement the `SingleThreadModel` interface. If a servlet implements this interface, no two threads will execute concurrently in the servlet's service method. A web container can implement this guarantee by synchronizing access to a single instance of the servlet or by maintaining a pool of web component instances and dispatching each new request to a free instance. This interface does not prevent synchronization problems that result from web components' accessing shared resources, such as static class variables or external objects.

When resources can be accessed concurrently, they can be used in an inconsistent fashion. You prevent this by controlling the access using the synchronization techniques described in the [Threads](#) lesson at <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/essential/concurrency/index.html>.

17.4 Creating and Initializing a Servlet

Use the `@WebServlet` annotation to define a servlet component in a web application. This annotation is specified on a class and contains metadata about the servlet being declared. The annotated servlet must specify at least one URL pattern. This is done by using the `urlPatterns` or `value` attribute on the annotation. All other attributes are optional, with default settings. Use the `value` attribute when the only attribute on the

annotation is the URL pattern; otherwise use the `urlPatterns` attribute when other attributes are also used.

Classes annotated with `@WebServlet` must extend the `javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet` class. For example, the following code snippet defines a servlet with the URL pattern `/report`:

```
import javax.servlet.annotation.WebServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;

@WebServlet("/report")
public class MoodServlet extends HttpServlet {
    ...
}
```

The web container initializes a servlet after loading and instantiating the servlet class and before delivering requests from clients. To customize this process to allow the servlet to read persistent configuration data, initialize resources, and perform any other one-time activities, you can either override the `init` method of the `Servlet` interface or specify the `initParams` attribute of the `@WebServlet` annotation. The `initParams` attribute contains a `@WebInitParam` annotation. If it cannot complete its initialization process, a servlet throws an `UnavailableException`.

Use an initialization parameter to provide data needed by a particular servlet. By contrast, a context parameter provides data that is available to all components of a web application.

17.5 Writing Service Methods

The service provided by a servlet is implemented in the service method of a `GenericServlet`, in the `doMethod` methods (where *Method* can take the value `Get`, `Delete`, `Options`, `Post`, `Put`, or `Trace`) of an `HttpServlet` object, or in any other protocol-specific methods defined by a class that implements the `Servlet` interface. The term **service method** is used for any method in a servlet class that provides a service to a client.

The general pattern for a service method is to extract information from the request, access external resources, and then populate the response, based on that information. For HTTP servlets, the correct procedure for populating the response is to do the following:

1. Retrieve an output stream from the response.
2. Fill in the response headers.
3. Write any body content to the output stream.

Response headers must always be set before the response has been committed. The web container will ignore any attempt to set or add headers after the response has been committed. The next two sections describe how to get information from requests and generate responses.

17.5.1 Getting Information from Requests

A request contains data passed between a client and the servlet. All requests implement the `ServletRequest` interface. This interface defines methods for accessing the following information:

- Parameters, which are typically used to convey information between clients and servlets

- Object-valued attributes, which are typically used to pass information between the web container and a servlet or between collaborating servlets
- Information about the protocol used to communicate the request and about the client and server involved in the request
- Information relevant to localization

You can also retrieve an input stream from the request and manually parse the data. To read character data, use the `BufferedReader` object returned by the request's `getReader` method. To read binary data, use the `ServletInputStream` returned by `getInputStream`.

HTTP servlets are passed an HTTP request object, `HttpServletRequest`, which contains the request URL, HTTP headers, query string, and so on. An HTTP request URL contains the following parts:

```
http://[host]:[port][request-path]?[query-string]
```

The request path is further composed of the following elements:

- **Context path:** A concatenation of a forward slash (/) with the context root of the servlet's web application.
- **Servlet path:** The path section that corresponds to the component alias that activated this request. This path starts with a forward slash (/).
- **Path info:** The part of the request path that is not part of the context path or the servlet path.

You can use the `getContextPath`, `getServletPath`, and `getPathInfo` methods of the `HttpServletRequest` interface to access this information. Except for URL encoding differences between the request URI and the path parts, the request URI is always comprised of the context path plus the servlet path plus the path info.

Query strings are composed of a set of parameters and values. Individual parameters are retrieved from a request by using the `getParameter` method. There are two ways to generate query strings.

- A query string can explicitly appear in a web page.
- A query string is appended to a URL when a form with a `GET` HTTP method is submitted.

17.5.2 Constructing Responses

A response contains data passed between a server and the client. All responses implement the `ServletResponse` interface. This interface defines methods that allow you to

- Retrieve an output stream to use to send data to the client. To send character data, use the `PrintWriter` returned by the response's `getWriter` method. To send binary data in a Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) body response, use the `ServletOutputStream` returned by `getOutputStream`. To mix binary and text data, as in a multipart response, use a `ServletOutputStream` and manage the character sections manually.
- Indicate the content type (for example, `text/html`) being returned by the response with the `setContentType(String)` method. This method must be called before the response is committed. A registry of content type names is kept by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/>.

- Indicate whether to buffer output with the `setBufferSize(int)` method. By default, any content written to the output stream is immediately sent to the client. Buffering allows content to be written before anything is sent back to the client, thus providing the servlet with more time to set appropriate status codes and headers or forward to another web resource. The method must be called before any content is written or before the response is committed.
- Set localization information, such as locale and character encoding. See [Chapter 20, "Internationalizing and Localizing Web Applications"](#) for details.

HTTP response objects, `javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse`, have fields representing HTTP headers, such as the following:

- Status codes, which are used to indicate the reason a request is not satisfied or that a request has been redirected.
- Cookies, which are used to store application-specific information at the client. Sometimes, cookies are used to maintain an identifier for tracking a user's session (see [Session Tracking](#)).

17.6 Filtering Requests and Responses

A **filter** is an object that can transform the header and content (or both) of a request or response. Filters differ from web components in that filters usually do not themselves create a response. Instead, a filter provides functionality that can be "attached" to any kind of web resource. Consequently, a filter should not have any dependencies on a web resource for which it is acting as a filter; this way, it can be composed with more than one type of web resource.

The main tasks that a filter can perform are as follows:

- Query the request and act accordingly.
- Block the request-and-response pair from passing any further.
- Modify the request headers and data. You do this by providing a customized version of the request.
- Modify the response headers and data. You do this by providing a customized version of the response.
- Interact with external resources.

Applications of filters include authentication, logging, image conversion, data compression, encryption, tokenizing streams, XML transformations, and so on.

You can configure a web resource to be filtered by a chain of zero, one, or more filters in a specific order. This chain is specified when the web application containing the component is deployed and is instantiated when a web container loads the component.

17.6.1 Programming Filters

The filtering API is defined by the `Filter`, `FilterChain`, and `FilterConfig` interfaces in the `javax.servlet` package. You define a filter by implementing the `Filter` interface.

Use the `@WebFilter` annotation to define a filter in a web application. This annotation is specified on a class and contains metadata about the filter being declared. The annotated filter must specify at least one URL pattern. This is done by using the `urlPatterns` or `value` attribute on the annotation. All other attributes are optional,

with default settings. Use the `value` attribute when the only attribute on the annotation is the URL pattern; use the `urlPatterns` attribute when other attributes are also used.

Classes annotated with the `@WebFilter` annotation must implement the `javax.servlet.Filter` interface.

To add configuration data to the filter, specify the `initParams` attribute of the `@WebFilter` annotation. The `initParams` attribute contains a `@WebInitParam` annotation. The following code snippet defines a filter, specifying an initialization parameter:

```
import javax.servlet.Filter;
import javax.servlet.annotation.WebFilter;
import javax.servlet.annotation.WebInitParam;

@WebFilter(filterName = "TimeOfDayFilter",
urlPatterns = {"/"},
initParams = {
    @WebInitParam(name = "mood", value = "awake")})
public class TimeOfDayFilter implements Filter {
    ....
}
```

The most important method in the `Filter` interface is `doFilter`, which is passed request, response, and filter chain objects. This method can perform the following actions:

- Examine the request headers.
- Customize the request object if the filter wishes to modify request headers or data.
- Customize the response object if the filter wishes to modify response headers or data.
- Invoke the next entity in the filter chain. If the current filter is the last filter in the chain that ends with the target web component or static resource, the next entity is the resource at the end of the chain; otherwise, it is the next filter that was configured in the WAR. The filter invokes the next entity by calling the `doFilter` method on the chain object, passing in the request and response it was called with or the wrapped versions it may have created. Alternatively, the filter can choose to block the request by not making the call to invoke the next entity. In the latter case, the filter is responsible for filling out the response.
- Examine response headers after invoking the next filter in the chain.
- Throw an exception to indicate an error in processing.

In addition to `doFilter`, you must implement the `init` and `destroy` methods. The `init` method is called by the container when the filter is instantiated. If you wish to pass initialization parameters to the filter, you retrieve them from the `FilterConfig` object passed to `init`.

17.6.2 Programming Customized Requests and Responses

There are many ways for a filter to modify a request or a response. For example, a filter can add an attribute to the request or can insert data in the response.

A filter that modifies a response must usually capture the response before it is returned to the client. To do this, you pass a stand-in stream to the servlet that generates the response. The stand-in stream prevents the servlet from closing the original response stream when it completes and allows the filter to modify the servlet's response.

To pass this stand-in stream to the servlet, the filter creates a response wrapper that overrides the `getWriter` or `getOutputStream` method to return this stand-in stream. The wrapper is passed to the `doFilter` method of the filter chain. Wrapper methods default to calling through to the wrapped request or response object.

To override request methods, you wrap the request in an object that extends either `ServletRequestWrapper` or `HttpServletRequestWrapper`. To override response methods, you wrap the response in an object that extends either `ServletResponseWrapper` or `HttpServletResponseWrapper`.

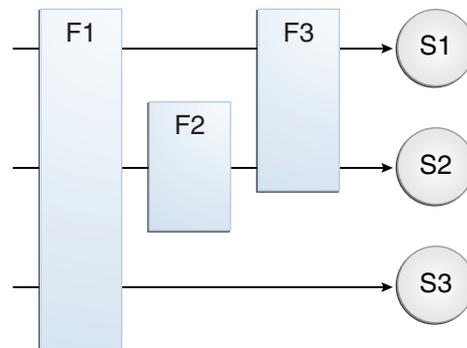
17.6.3 Specifying Filter Mappings

A web container uses filter mappings to decide how to apply filters to web resources. A filter mapping matches a filter to a web component by name or to web resources by URL pattern. The filters are invoked in the order in which filter mappings appear in the filter mapping list of a WAR. You specify a filter mapping list for a WAR in its deployment descriptor by either using NetBeans IDE or coding the list by hand with XML.

If you want to log every request to a web application, you map the hit counter filter to the URL pattern `/*`.

You can map a filter to one or more web resources, and you can map more than one filter to a web resource. This is illustrated in [Figure 17-1](#), where filter F1 is mapped to servlets S1, S2, and S3; filter F2 is mapped to servlet S2; and filter F3 is mapped to servlets S1 and S2.

Figure 17-1 Filter-to-Servlet Mapping



Recall that a filter chain is one of the objects passed to the `doFilter` method of a filter. This chain is formed indirectly by means of filter mappings. The order of the filters in the chain is the same as the order in which filter mappings appear in the web application deployment descriptor.

When a filter is mapped to servlet S1, the web container invokes the `doFilter` method of F1. The `doFilter` method of each filter in S1's filter chain is invoked by the preceding filter in the chain by means of the `chain.doFilter` method. Because S1's filter chain contains filters F1 and F3, F1's call to `chain.doFilter` invokes the `doFilter` method of filter F3. When F3's `doFilter` method completes, control returns to F1's `doFilter` method.

17.6.3.1 To Specify Filter Mappings Using NetBeans IDE

1. Expand the application's project node in the **Project** tab.

2. Expand the **Web Pages** and **WEB-INF** nodes under the project node.
3. Double-click `web.xml`.
4. Click **Filters** at the top of the editor window.
5. Expand the **Servlet Filters** node in the editor window.
6. Click **Add Filter Element** to map the filter to a web resource by name or by URL pattern.
7. In the Add Servlet Filter dialog box, enter the name of the filter in the **Filter Name** field.
8. Click **Browse** to locate the servlet class to which the filter applies.

You can include wildcard characters so that you can apply the filter to more than one servlet.
9. Click **OK**.
10. To constrain how the filter is applied to requests, follow these steps.
 - a. Expand the **Filter Mappings** node.
 - b. Select the filter from the list of filters.
 - c. Click **Add**.
 - d. In the Add Filter Mapping dialog box, select one of the following dispatcher types:
 - **REQUEST**: Only when the request comes directly from the client
 - **ASYNC**: Only when the asynchronous request comes from the client
 - **FORWARD**: Only when the request has been forwarded to a component (see [Transferring Control to Another Web Component](#))
 - **INCLUDE**: Only when the request is being processed by a component that has been included (see [Including Other Resources in the Response](#))
 - **ERROR**: Only when the request is being processed with the error page mechanism (see [Handling Servlet Errors](#))

You can direct the filter to be applied to any combination of the preceding situations by selecting multiple dispatcher types. If no types are specified, the default option is **REQUEST**.

17.7 Invoking Other Web Resources

Web components can invoke other web resources both indirectly and directly. A web component indirectly invokes another web resource by embedding a URL that points to another web component in content returned to a client. While it is executing, a web component directly invokes another resource by either including the content of another resource or forwarding a request to another resource.

To invoke a resource available on the server that is running a web component, you must first obtain a `RequestDispatcher` object by using the `getRequestDispatcher("URL")` method. You can get a `RequestDispatcher` object from either a request or the web context; however, the two methods have slightly different behavior. The method takes the path to the requested resource as an argument. A request can take a relative path (that is, one that does not begin with a `/`), but the web context requires an absolute path. If the resource is not available or if the server has not implemented a `RequestDispatcher` object for that type of resource,

`getRequestDispatcher` will return null. Your servlet should be prepared to deal with this condition.

17.7.1 Including Other Resources in the Response

It is often useful to include another web resource, such as banner content or copyright information) in the response returned from a web component. To include another resource, invoke the `include` method of a `RequestDispatcher` object:

```
include(request, response);
```

If the resource is static, the `include` method enables programmatic server-side includes. If the resource is a web component, the effect of the method is to send the request to the included web component, execute the web component, and then include the result of the execution in the response from the containing servlet. An included web component has access to the request object but is limited in what it can do with the response object.

- It can write to the body of the response and commit a response.
- It cannot set headers or call any method, such as `setCookie`, that affects the headers of the response.

17.7.2 Transferring Control to Another Web Component

In some applications, you might want to have one web component do preliminary processing of a request and have another component generate the response. For example, you might want to partially process a request and then transfer to another component, depending on the nature of the request.

To transfer control to another web component, you invoke the `forward` method of a `RequestDispatcher`. When a request is forwarded, the request URL is set to the path of the forwarded page. The original URI and its constituent parts are saved as request attributes

```
javax.servlet.forward.[request-uri|context-path|servlet-path|path-info|query-string].
```

The `forward` method should be used to give another resource responsibility for replying to the user. If you have already accessed a `ServletOutputStream` or `PrintWriter` object within the servlet, you cannot use this method; doing so throws an `IllegalStateException`.

17.8 Accessing the Web Context

The context in which web components execute is an object that implements the `ServletContext` interface. You retrieve the web context by using the `getServletContext` method. The web context provides methods for accessing

- Initialization parameters
- Resources associated with the web context
- Object-valued attributes
- Logging capabilities

The counter's access methods are synchronized to prevent incompatible operations by servlets that are running concurrently. A filter retrieves the counter object by using the context's `getAttribute` method. The incremented value of the counter is recorded in the log.

17.9 Maintaining Client State

Many applications require that a series of requests from a client be associated with one another. For example, a web application can save the state of a user's shopping cart across requests. Web-based applications are responsible for maintaining such state, called a **session**, because HTTP is stateless. To support applications that need to maintain state, Java Servlet technology provides an API for managing sessions and allows several mechanisms for implementing sessions.

17.9.1 Accessing a Session

Sessions are represented by an `HttpSession` object. You access a session by calling the `getSession` method of a request object. This method returns the current session associated with this request; or, if the request does not have a session, this method creates one.

17.9.2 Associating Objects with a Session

You can associate object-valued attributes with a session by name. Such attributes are accessible by any web component that belongs to the same web context *and* is handling a request that is part of the same session.

Recall that your application can notify web context and session listener objects of servlet lifecycle events ([Handling Servlet Lifecycle Events](#)). You can also notify objects of certain events related to their association with a session such as the following:

- When the object is added to or removed from a session. To receive this notification, your object must implement the `javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionBindingListener` interface.
- When the session to which the object is attached will be passivated or activated. A session will be passivated or activated when it is moved between virtual machines or saved to and restored from persistent storage. To receive this notification, your object must implement the `javax.servlet.http.HttpSessionActivationListener` interface.

17.9.3 Session Management

Because an HTTP client has no way to signal that it no longer needs a session, each session has an associated timeout so that its resources can be reclaimed. The timeout period can be accessed by using a session's `getMaxInactiveInterval` and `setMaxInactiveInterval` methods.

- To ensure that an active session is not timed out, you should periodically access the session by using service methods because this resets the session's time-to-live counter.
- When a particular client interaction is finished, you use the session's `invalidate` method to invalidate a session on the server side and remove any session data.

17.9.3.1 To Set the Timeout Period Using NetBeans IDE

To set the timeout period in the deployment descriptor using NetBeans IDE, follow these steps.

1. Open the project if you haven't already.
2. Expand the node of your project in the **Projects** tab.
3. Expand the **Web Pages** and **WEB-INF** nodes that are under the project node.

4. Double-click `web.xml`.
5. Click **General** at the top of the editor.
6. In the **Session Timeout** field, enter an integer value.

The integer value represents the number of minutes of inactivity that must pass before the session times out.

17.9.4 Session Tracking

To associate a session with a user, a web container can use several methods, all of which involve passing an identifier between the client and the server. The identifier can be maintained on the client as a cookie, or the web component can include the identifier in every URL that is returned to the client.

If your application uses session objects, you must ensure that session tracking is enabled by having the application rewrite URLs whenever the client turns off cookies. You do this by calling the response's `encodeURL(URL)` method on all URLs returned by a servlet. This method includes the session ID in the URL only if cookies are disabled; otherwise, the method returns the URL unchanged.

17.10 Finalizing a Servlet

The web container may determine that a servlet should be removed from service (for example, when a container wants to reclaim memory resources or when it is being shut down). In such a case, the container calls the `destroy` method of the `Servlet` interface. In this method, you release any resources the servlet is using and save any persistent state. The `destroy` method releases the database object created in the `init` method.

A servlet's service methods should all be complete when a servlet is removed. The server tries to ensure this by calling the `destroy` method only after all service requests have returned or after a server-specific grace period, whichever comes first. If your servlet has operations that may run longer than the server's grace period, the operations could still be running when `destroy` is called. You must make sure that any threads still handling client requests complete.

The remainder of this section explains how to do the following:

- Keep track of how many threads are currently running the `service` method.
- Provide a clean shutdown by having the `destroy` method notify long-running threads of the shutdown and wait for them to complete.
- Have the long-running methods poll periodically to check for shutdown and, if necessary, stop working, clean up, and return.

17.10.1 Tracking Service Requests

To track service requests, include in your servlet class a field that counts the number of service methods that are running. The field should have synchronized access methods to increment, decrement, and return its value:

```
public class ShutdownExample extends HttpServlet {
    private int serviceCounter = 0;
    ...
    // Access methods for serviceCounter
    protected synchronized void enteringServiceMethod() {
        serviceCounter++;
    }
}
```

```
protected synchronized void leavingServiceMethod() {
    serviceCounter--;
}
protected synchronized int numServices() {
    return serviceCounter;
}
}
```

The service method should increment the service counter each time the method is entered and should decrement the counter each time the method returns. This is one of the few times that your `HttpServlet` subclass should override the service method. The new method should call `super.service` to preserve the functionality of the original service method:

```
protected void service(HttpServletRequest req,
                        HttpServletResponse resp)
    throws ServletException, IOException {
    enteringServiceMethod();
    try {
        super.service(req, resp);
    } finally {
        leavingServiceMethod();
    }
}
```

17.10.2 Notifying Methods to Shut Down

To ensure a clean shutdown, your `destroy` method should not release any shared resources until all the service requests have completed. One part of doing this is to check the service counter. Another part is to notify the long-running methods that it is time to shut down. For this notification, another field is required. The field should have the usual access methods:

```
public class ShutdownExample extends HttpServlet {
    private boolean shuttingDown;
    ...
    //Access methods for shuttingDown
    protected synchronized void setShuttingDown(boolean flag) {
        shuttingDown = flag;
    }
    protected synchronized boolean isShuttingDown() {
        return shuttingDown;
    }
}
```

Here is an example of the `destroy` method using these fields to provide a clean shutdown:

```
public void destroy() {
    /* Check to see whether there are still service methods /*
    /* running, and if there are, tell them to stop. */
    if (numServices() > 0) {
        setShuttingDown(true);
    }

    /* Wait for the service methods to stop. */
    while(numServices() > 0) {
        try {
            Thread.sleep(interval);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
```

```

    }
}

```

17.10.3 Creating Polite Long-Running Methods

The final step in providing a clean shutdown is to make any long-running methods behave politely. Methods that might run for a long time should check the value of the field that notifies them of shutdowns and should interrupt their work, if necessary:

```

public void doPost(...) {
    ...
    for(i = 0; ((i < lotsOfStuffToDo) &&
        !isShuttingDown()); i++) {
        try {
            partOfLongRunningOperation(i);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            ...
        }
    }
}

```

17.11 Uploading Files with Java Servlet Technology

Supporting file uploads is a very basic and common requirement for many web applications. In prior versions of the Servlet specification, implementing file upload required the use of external libraries or complex input processing. The Java Servlet specification now helps to provide a viable solution to the problem in a generic and portable way. Java Servlet technology now supports file upload out of the box, so any web container that implements the specification can parse multipart requests and make mime attachments available through the `HttpServletRequest` object.

A new annotation, `javax.servlet.annotation.MultipartConfig`, is used to indicate that the servlet on which it is declared expects requests to be made using the `multipart/form-data` MIME type. Servlets that are annotated with `@MultipartConfig` can retrieve the `Part` components of a given `multipart/form-data` request by calling the `request.getPart(String name)` or `request.getParts()` method.

17.11.1 The `@MultipartConfig` Annotation

The `@MultipartConfig` annotation supports the following optional attributes:

- `location`: An absolute path to a directory on the file system. The `location` attribute does not support a path relative to the application context. This location is used to store files temporarily while the parts are processed or when the size of the file exceeds the specified `fileSizeThreshold` setting. The default location is `""`.
- `fileSizeThreshold`: The file size in bytes after which the file will be temporarily stored on disk. The default size is 0 bytes.
- `maxFileSize`: The maximum size allowed for uploaded files, in bytes. If the size of any uploaded file is greater than this size, the web container will throw an exception (`IllegalStateException`). The default size is unlimited.
- `maxRequestSize`: The maximum size allowed for a `multipart/form-data` request, in bytes. The web container will throw an exception if the overall size of all uploaded files exceeds this threshold. The default size is unlimited.

For, example, the `@MultipartConfig` annotation could be constructed as follows:

```
@MultipartConfig(location="/tmp", fileSizeThreshold=1024*1024,
    maxFileSize=1024*1024*5, maxRequestSize=1024*1024*5*5)
```

Instead of using the `@MultipartConfig` annotation to hard-code these attributes in your file upload servlet, you could add the following as a child element of the servlet configuration element in the `web.xml` file.

```
<multipart-config>
  <location>/tmp</location>
  <max-file-size>20848820</max-file-size>
  <max-request-size>418018841</max-request-size>
  <file-size-threshold>1048576</file-size-threshold>
</multipart-config>
```

17.11.2 The `getParts` and `getPart` Methods

The Servlet specification supports two additional `HttpServletRequest` methods:

- `Collection<Part> getParts()`
- `Part getPart(String name)`

The `request.getParts()` method returns collections of all `Part` objects. If you have more than one input of type `file`, multiple `Part` objects are returned. Since `Part` objects are named, the `getPart(String name)` method can be used to access a particular `Part`. Alternatively, the `getParts()` method, which returns an `Iterable<Part>`, can be used to get an `Iterator` over all the `Part` objects.

The `javax.servlet.http.Part` interface is a simple one, providing methods that allow introspection of each `Part`. The methods do the following:

- Retrieve the name, size, and content-type of the `Part`
- Query the headers submitted with a `Part`
- Delete a `Part`
- Write a `Part` out to disk

For example, the `Part` interface provides the `write(String filename)` method to write the file with the specified name. The file can then be saved in the directory that is specified with the `location` attribute of the `@MultipartConfig` annotation or, in the case of the fileupload example, in the location specified by the `Destination` field in the form.

17.12 Asynchronous Processing

Web containers in application servers normally use a server thread per client request. Under heavy load conditions, containers need a large amount of threads to serve all the client requests. Scalability limitations include running out of memory or exhausting the pool of container threads. To create scalable web applications, you must ensure that no threads associated with a request are sitting idle, so the container can use them to process new requests.

There are two common scenarios where a thread associated with a request can be sitting idle:

- The thread needs to wait for a resource to become available or process data before building the response. For example, an application may need to query a database or access data from a remote web service before generating the response.

- The thread needs to wait for an event before generating the response. For example, an application may have to wait for a JMS message, new information from another client, or new data available in a queue before generating the response.

These scenarios represent blocking operations that limit the scalability of web applications. Asynchronous processing refers to assigning these blocking operations to a new thread and retuning the thread associated with the request immediately to the container.

17.12.1 Asynchronous Processing in Servlets

Java EE provides asynchronous processing support for servlets and filters. If a servlet or a filter reaches a potentially blocking operation when processing a request, it can assign the operation to an asynchronous execution context and return the thread associated with the request immediately to the container without generating a response. The blocking operation completes in the asynchronous execution context in a different thread, which can generate a response or dispatch the request to another servlet.

To enable asynchronous processing on a servlet, set the parameter `asyncSupported` to `true` on the `@WebServlet` annotation as follows:

```
@WebServlet(urlPatterns={"/asyncservlet"}, asyncSupported=true)
public class AsyncServlet extends HttpServlet { ... }
```

The `javax.servlet.AsyncContext` class provides the functionality that you need to perform asynchronous processing inside service methods. To obtain an instance of `AsyncContext`, call the `startAsync()` method on the request object of your service method; for example:

```
public void doGet(HttpServletRequest req, HttpServletResponse resp) {
    ...
    AsyncContext acontext = req.startAsync();
    ...
}
```

This call puts the request into asynchronous mode and ensures that the response is not committed after exiting the service method. You have to generate the response in the asynchronous context after the blocking operation completes or dispatch the request to another servlet.

[Table 17–3](#) describes the basic functionality provided by the `AsyncContext` class.

Table 17–3 *Functionality provided by the `AsyncContext` class*

Method signature	Description
<code>void start(Runnable run)</code>	<p>The container provides a different thread in which the blocking operation can be processed.</p> <p>You provide code for the blocking operation as a class that implements the <code>Runnable</code> interface. You can provide this class as an inner class when calling the <code>start</code> method or use another mechanism to pass the <code>AsyncContext</code> instance to your class.</p>
<code>ServletRequest getRequest()</code>	<p>Returns the request used to initialize this asynchronous context. In the example above the request is the same as in the service method.</p> <p>You can use this method inside the asynchronous context to obtain parameters from the request.</p>

Table 17-3 (Cont.) Functionality provided by the AsyncContext class

Method signature	Description
<code>ServletResponse getResponse()</code>	Returns the response used to initialize this asynchronous context. In the example above the response is the same as in the service method. You can use this method inside the asynchronous context to write to the response with the results of the blocking operation.
<code>void complete()</code>	Completes the asynchronous operation and closes the response associated with this asynchronous context. You call this method after writing to the response object inside the asynchronous context.
<code>void dispatch(String path)</code>	Dispatches the request and response objects to the given path. You use this method to have another servlet write to the response after the blocking operation completes.

17.12.2 Waiting for a Resource

This section demonstrates how to use the functionality provided by the `AsyncContext` class for the following use case:

1. A servlet receives a parameter from a GET request.
2. The servlet uses a resource, such as a database or a web service, to retrieve information based on the value of the parameter. The resource can be slow at times, so this may be a blocking operation.
3. The servlet generates a response using the result from the resource.

The following code shows a basic servlet that does not use asynchronous processing:

```
@WebServlet(urlPatterns={"/syncservlet"})
public class SyncServlet extends HttpServlet {
    private MyRemoteResource resource;
    @Override
    public void init(ServletConfig config) {
        resource = MyRemoteResource.create("config1=x,config2=y");
    }

    @Override
    public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response) {
        response.setContentType("text/html;charset=UTF-8");
        String param = request.getParameter("param");
        String result = resource.process(param);
        /* ... print to the response ... */
    }
}
```

The following code shows the same servlet using asynchronous processing:

```
@WebServlet(urlPatterns={"/asyncservlet"}, asyncSupported=true)
public class AsyncServlet extends HttpServlet {
    /* ... Same variables and init method as in SyncServlet ... */

    @Override
    public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response) {
```

```

response.setContentType("text/html;charset=UTF-8");
final AsyncContext acontext = request.startAsync();
acontext.start(new Runnable() {
    public void run() {
        String param = acontext.getRequest().getParameter("param");
        String result = resource.process(param);
        HttpServletResponse response = acontext.getResponse();
        /* ... print to the response ... */
        acontext.complete();
    }
}
}

```

`AsyncServlet` adds `asyncSupported=true` to the `@WebServlet` annotation. The rest of the differences are inside the service method:

- `request.startAsync()` causes the request to be processed asynchronously; the response is not sent to the client at the end of the service method.
- `acontext.start(new Runnable() {...})` gets a new thread from the container.
- The code inside the `run()` method of the inner class executes in the new thread. The inner class has access to the asynchronous context to read parameters from the request and write to the response. Calling the `complete()` method of the asynchronous context commits the response and sends it to the client.

The service method of `AsyncServlet` returns immediately, and the request is processed in the asynchronous context.

17.13 Non-Blocking I/O

Web containers in application servers normally use a server thread per client request. To develop scalable web applications, you must ensure that threads associated with client requests are never sitting idle waiting for a blocking operation to complete. [Asynchronous Processing](#) provides a mechanism to execute application-specific blocking operations in a new thread, returning the thread associated with the request immediately to the container. Even if you use asynchronous processing for all the application-specific blocking operations inside your service methods, threads associated with client requests can be momentarily sitting idle because of input/output considerations.

For example, if a client is submitting a large HTTP POST request over a slow network connection, the server can read the request faster than the client can provide it. Using traditional I/O, the container thread associated with this request would be sometimes sitting idle waiting for the rest of the request.

Java EE provides non-blocking I/O support for servlets and filters when processing requests in asynchronous mode. The following steps summarize how to use non-blocking I/O to process requests and write responses inside service methods:

1. Put the request in asynchronous mode as described in [Asynchronous Processing](#).
2. Obtain an input stream and/or an output stream from the request and response objects in the service method.
3. Assign a read listener to the input stream and/or a write listener to the output stream.
4. Process the request and the response inside the listener's callback methods.

Table 17-4 and Table 17-5 describe the methods available in the servlet input and output streams for non-blocking I/O support. Table 17-6 describes the interfaces for read listeners and write listeners.

Table 17-4 Non-blocking I/O support in `javax.servlet.ServletInputStream`

Method	Description
<code>void setReadListener(ReadListener rl)</code>	Associates this input stream with a listener object that contains callback methods to read data asynchronously. You provide the listener object as an anonymous class or use another mechanism to pass the input stream to the read listener object.
<code>boolean isReady()</code>	Returns true if data can be read without blocking.
<code>boolean isFinished()</code>	Returns true when all the data has been read.

Table 17-5 Non-blocking I/O support in `javax.servlet.ServletOutputStream`

Method	Description
<code>void setWriteListener(WriteListener wl)</code>	Associates this output stream with a listener object that contains callback methods to write data asynchronously. You provide the write listener object as an anonymous class or use another mechanism to pass the output stream to the write listener object.
<code>boolean isReady()</code>	Returns true if data can be written without blocking.

Table 17-6 Listener interfaces for non-blocking I/O support

Interface	Methods	Description
ReadListener	<code>void onDataAvailable()</code> <code>void onAllDataRead()</code> <code>void onError(Throwable t)</code>	A <code>ServletInputStream</code> instance calls these methods on its listener when there is data available to read, when all the data has been read, or when there is an error.
WriteListener	<code>void onWritePossible()</code> <code>void onError(Throwable t)</code>	A <code>ServletOutputStream</code> instance calls these methods on its listener when it is possible to write data without blocking or when there is an error.

17.13.1 Reading a Large HTTP POST Request Using Non-Blocking I/O

The code in this section shows how to read a large HTTP POST request inside a servlet by putting the request in asynchronous mode (as described in [Asynchronous Processing](#)) and using the non-blocking I/O functionality from Table 17-4 and Table 17-6.

```
@WebServlet(urlPatterns={"/asyncioservlet"}, asyncSupported=true)
public class AsyncIOServlet extends HttpServlet {
    @Override
    public void doPost(HttpServletRequest request,
                      HttpServletResponse response)
        throws IOException {
        final AsyncContext acontext = request.startAsync();
```

```

final ServletInputStream input = request.getInputStream();

input.setReadListener(new ReadListener() {
    byte buffer[] = new byte[4*1024];
    StringBuilder sbuilder = new StringBuilder();
    @Override
    public void onDataAvailable() {
        try {
            do {
                int length = input.read(buffer);
                sbuilder.append(new String(buffer, 0, length));
            } while(input.isReady());
        } catch (IOException ex) { ... }
    }
    @Override
    public void onAllDataRead() {
        try {
            acontext.getResponse().getWriter()
                .write("...the response...");
        } catch (IOException ex) { ... }
        acontext.complete();
    }
    @Override
    public void onError(Throwable t) { ... }
});
}
}

```

This example declares the web servlet with asynchronous support using the `@WebServlet` annotation parameter `asyncSupported=true`. The service method first puts the request in asynchronous mode by calling the `startAsync()` method of the request object, which is required in order to use non-blocking I/O. Then the service method obtains an input stream associated with the request and assigns a read listener defined as an inner class. The listener reads parts of the request as they become available and then writes some response to the client when it finishes reading the request.

17.14 Protocol Upgrade Processing

In HTTP/1.1 clients can request to switch to a different protocol on the current connection by using the `Upgrade` header field. If the server accepts the request to switch to the protocol indicated by the client, it generates an HTTP response with status 101 (switching protocols). After this exchange, the client and the server communicate using the new protocol.

For example, a client can make an HTTP request to switch to the XYZP protocol as follows:

```

GET /xyzpresource HTTP/1.1
Host: localhost:8080
Accept: text/html
Upgrade: XYZP
Connection: Upgrade
OtherHeaderA: Value

```

The client can specify parameters for the new protocol using HTTP headers. The server can accept the request and generate a response as follows:

```

HTTP/1.1 101 Switching Protocols

```

```
Upgrade: XYZP
Connection: Upgrade
OtherHeaderB: Value
```

(XYZP data)

Java EE supports the HTTP protocol upgrade functionality in servlets as described in [Table 17-7](#).

Table 17-7 Protocol upgrade support

Class or Interface	Method
HttpServletRequest	<p>HttpUpgradeHandler upgrade(Class handler)</p> <p>The upgrade method starts the protocol upgrade processing. This method instantiates a class that implements the HttpUpgradeHandler interface and delegates the connection to it. You call the upgrade method inside a service method when accepting a request from a client to switch protocols.</p>
HttpUpgradeHandler	<p>void init(WebConnection wc)</p> <p>The init method is called when the servlet accepts the request to switch protocols. You implement this method and obtain input and output streams from the WebConnection object to implement the new protocol</p>
HttpUpgradeHandler	<p>void destroy()</p> <p>The destroy method is called when the client disconnects. You implement this method and free any resources associated with processing the new protocol.</p>
WebConnection	<p>ServletInputStream getInputStream()</p> <p>The getInputStream method provides access to the input stream of the connection. You can use Non-Blocking I/O with the returned stream to implement the new protocol.</p>
WebConnection	<p>ServletOutputStream getOutputStream()</p> <p>The getOutputStream method provides access to the output stream of the connection. You can use Non-Blocking I/O with the returned stream to implement the new protocol.</p>

The following code demonstrates how to accept an HTTP protocol upgrade request from a client:

```
@WebServlet(urlPatterns={"/xyzpresource"})
public class XYZPUpgradeServlet extends HttpServlet {
    @Override
    public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response) {
        if ("XYZP".equals(request.getHeader("Upgrade"))) {
            /* Accept upgrade request */
            response.setStatus(101);
            response.setHeader("Upgrade", "XYZP");
            response.setHeader("Connection", "Upgrade");
            response.setHeader("OtherHeaderB", "Value");
            /* Delegate the connection to the upgrade handler */
            XYZPUpgradeHandler = request.upgrade(XYZPUpgradeHandler.class);
            /* (the service method returns immediately) */
        } else {
            /* ... write error response ... */
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }
}

```

The `XYZPUpgradeHandler` class handles the connection:

```

public class XYZPUpgradeHandler implements HttpUpgradeHandler {
    @Override
    public void init(WebConnection wc) {
        ServletInputStream input = wc.getInputStream();
        ServletOutputStream output = wc.getOutputStream();
        /* ... implement XYZP using these streams (protocol-specific) ... */
    }
    @Override
    public void destroy() { ... }
}

```

The class that implements `HttpUpgradeHandler` uses the streams from the current connection to communicate with the client using the new protocol. See the Servlet 3.1 specification for details on HTTP protocol upgrade support.

17.15 The mood Example Application

The mood example application, located in the `tut-install/examples/web/mood/` directory, is a simple example that displays Duke's moods at different times during the day. The example shows how to develop a simple application by using the `@WebServlet`, `@WebFilter`, and `@WebListener` annotations to create a servlet, a listener, and a filter.

17.15.1 Components of the mood Example Application

The mood example application is comprised of three components: `mood.web.MoodServlet`, `mood.web.TimeOfDayFilter`, and `mood.web.SimpleServletListener`.

`MoodServlet`, the presentation layer of the application, displays Duke's mood in a graphic, based on the time of day. The `@WebServlet` annotation specifies the URL pattern:

```

@WebServlet("/report")
public class MoodServlet extends HttpServlet {
    ...
}

```

`TimeOfDayFilter` sets an initialization parameter indicating that Duke is awake:

```

@WebFilter(filterName = "TimeOfDayFilter",
urlPatterns = {"/"},
initParams = {
    @WebInitParam(name = "mood", value = "awake")})
public class TimeOfDayFilter implements Filter {
    ...
}

```

The filter calls the `doFilter` method, which contains a switch statement that sets Duke's mood based on the current time.

`SimpleServletListener` logs changes in the servlet's lifecycle. The log entries appear in the server log.

17.15.2 Running the mood Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the mood example.

17.15.2.1 To Run the mood Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/servlet/`
3. Select the `mood` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `mood` project and select **Build**.
6. Right-click the project and select **Run**.

This opens the URL `http://localhost:8080/mood/report` in a web browser window.

The URL specifies the context root, followed by the URL pattern specified for the servlet.

A web page appears with the title "Servlet MoodServlet at /mood", a text string describing Duke's mood, and an illustrative graphic.

17.15.2.2 To Run the mood Example Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/servlet/mood/
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

4. In a web browser, open the URL `http://localhost:8080/mood/report`.

The URL specifies the context root, followed by the URL pattern.

A web page appears with the title "Servlet MoodServlet at /mood" a text string describing Duke's mood, and an illustrative graphic.

17.16 The fileupload Example Application

The `fileupload` example illustrates how to implement and use the file upload feature.

The Duke's Forest case study provides a more complex example that uploads an image file and stores its content in a database.

17.16.1 Architecture of the fileupload Example Application

The `fileupload` example application consists of a single servlet and an HTML form that makes a file upload request to the servlet.

This example includes a very simple HTML form with two fields, `File` and `Destination`. The input type, `file`, enables a user to browse the local file system to select the file. When the file is selected, it is sent to the server as a part of a POST request. During this process two mandatory restrictions are applied to the form with input type `file`:

- The `enctype` attribute must be set to a value of `multipart/form-data`.
- Its method must be `POST`.

When the form is specified in this manner, the entire request is sent to the server in encoded form. The servlet then uses its own means to handle the request to process the incoming file data and extract a file from the stream. The destination is the path to the location where the file will be saved on your computer. Pressing the Upload button at the bottom of the form posts the data to the servlet, which saves the file in the specified destination.

The HTML form in *tut-install/examples/web/fileupload/web/index.html* is as follows:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
  <head>
    <title>File Upload</title>
    <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=UTF-8">
  </head>
  <body>
    <form method="POST" action="upload" enctype="multipart/form-data" >
      File:
      <input type="file" name="file" id="file" /> <br/>
      Destination:
      <input type="text" value="/tmp" name="destination"/>
      <br/>
      <input type="submit" value="Upload" name="upload" id="upload" />
    </form>
  </body>
</html>
```

A POST request method is used when the client needs to send data to the server as part of the request, such as when uploading a file or submitting a completed form. In contrast, a GET request method sends a URL and headers only to the server, whereas POST requests also include a message body. This allows arbitrary length data of any type to be sent to the server. A header field in the POST request usually indicates the message body's Internet media type.

When submitting a form, the browser streams the content in, combining all parts, with each part representing a field of a form. Parts are named after the input elements and are separated from each other with string delimiters named *boundary*.

This is what submitted data from the `fileupload` form looks like, after selecting `sample.txt` as the file that will be uploaded to the `tmp` directory on the local file system:

```
POST /fileupload/upload HTTP/1.1
Host: localhost:8080
Content-Type: multipart/form-data;
boundary=-----263081694432439
Content-Length: 441
-----263081694432439
Content-Disposition: form-data; name="file"; filename="sample.txt"
Content-Type: text/plain

Data from sample file
-----263081694432439
Content-Disposition: form-data; name="destination"

/tmp
-----263081694432439
Content-Disposition: form-data; name="upload"

Upload
```

-----263081694432439--

The servlet `FileUploadServlet.java` can be found in the `tut-install/examples/web/fileupload/src/java/fileupload/` directory. The servlet begins as follows:

```
@WebServlet(name = "FileUploadServlet", urlPatterns = {"/upload"})
@MultipartConfig
public class FileUploadServlet extends HttpServlet {
    private final static Logger LOGGER =
        Logger.getLogger(FileUploadServlet.class.getCanonicalName());
```

The `@WebServlet` annotation uses the `urlPatterns` property to define servlet mappings.

The `@MultipartConfig` annotation indicates that the servlet expects requests to made using the `multipart/form-data` MIME type.

The `processRequest` method retrieves the destination and file part from the request, then calls the `getFileName` method to retrieve the file name from the file part. The method then creates a `FileOutputStream` and copies the file to the specified destination. The error-handling section of the method catches and handles some of the most common reasons why a file would not be found. The `processRequest` and `getFileName` methods look like this:

```
protected void processRequest(HttpServletRequest request,
    HttpServletResponse response)
    throws ServletException, IOException {
    response.setContentType("text/html;charset=UTF-8");

    // Create path components to save the file
    final String path = request.getParameter("destination");
    final Part filePart = request.getPart("file");
    final String fileName = getFileName(filePart);

    OutputStream out = null;
    InputStream filecontent = null;
    final PrintWriter writer = response.getWriter();

    try {
        out = new FileOutputStream(new File(path + File.separator
            + fileName));
        filecontent = filePart.getInputStream();

        int read = 0;
        final byte[] bytes = new byte[1024];

        while ((read = filecontent.read(bytes)) != -1) {
            out.write(bytes, 0, read);
        }
        writer.println("New file " + fileName + " created at " + path);
        LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "File{0}being uploaded to {1}",
            new Object[]{fileName, path});
    } catch (FileNotFoundException fne) {
        writer.println("You either did not specify a file to upload or are "
            + "trying to upload a file to a protected or nonexistent "
            + "location.");
        writer.println("<br/> ERROR: " + fne.getMessage());

        LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Problems during file upload. Error: {0}",
            new Object[]{fne.getMessage()});
```

```

    } finally {
        if (out != null) {
            out.close();
        }
        if (filecontent != null) {
            filecontent.close();
        }
        if (writer != null) {
            writer.close();
        }
    }
}

private String getFileName(final Part part) {
    final String partHeader = part.getHeader("content-disposition");
    LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Part Header = {0}", partHeader);
    for (String content : part.getHeader("content-disposition").split(";")) {
        if (content.trim().startsWith("filename=")) {
            return content.substring(
                content.indexOf('=') + 1).trim().replace("\"", "");
        }
    }
    return null;
}
}

```

17.16.2 Running the fileupload Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the fileupload example.

17.16.2.1 To Build, Package, and Run the fileupload Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, choose **Open Project**.
2. In the **Open Project** dialog, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/web/servlet/
```
3. Select the `fileupload` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click `fileupload` and select **Run**.

17.16.2.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the fileupload Example Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:


```
tut-install/examples/web/servlet/fileupload/
```
3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:


```
mvn install
```

17.16.2.3 To Run the fileupload Example

1. In a web browser, type the following URL:


```
http://localhost:8080/fileupload/
```

2. On the File Upload page, click **Browse** to display a file browser window.
3. Select a file to upload and click **Open**.

The name of the file you selected is displayed in the File field. If you do not select a file, an exception will be thrown.
4. In the **Destination** field, type a directory name.

The directory must have already been created and must also be writable. If you do not enter a directory name, or if you enter the name of a nonexistent or protected directory, an exception will be thrown.
5. Click **Upload** to upload the file that you selected to the directory that you specified in the **Destination** field.

A message reports that the file was created in the directory that you specified.
6. Go to the directory that you specified in the **Destination** field and verify that the uploaded file is present.

17.17 The dukeetf Example Application

The `dukeetf` example application, located in the `tut-install/examples/web/dukeetf/` directory, demonstrates how to use asynchronous processing in a servlet to provide data updates to web clients. The example resembles a service that provides periodic updates on the price and trading volume of an electronically traded fund (ETF).

17.17.1 Architecture of the dukeetf Example Application

The `dukeetf` example application consists of a servlet, an enterprise bean, and an HTML page:

- The servlet puts requests in asynchronous mode, stores them in a queue, and writes the responses when new data for price and trading volume becomes available.
- The enterprise bean updates the price and volume information once every second.
- The HTML page uses JavaScript code to make requests to the servlet for new data, parse the response from the servlet and update the price and volume information without reloading the page.

The `dukeetf` example application uses a programming model known as **long polling**. In the traditional HTTP request and response model, the user must make an explicit request (like clicking on a link or submitting a form) to get any new information from the server, and the page has to be reloaded. Long polling provides a mechanism for web applications to push updates to clients using HTTP without the user making an explicit request. The server handles connections asynchronously and the client uses JavaScript to make new connections. In this model, clients make a new request immediately after receiving new data and the server keeps the connection open until new data becomes available.

17.17.1.1 The Servlet

The `DukeETFServlet` class uses asynchronous processing:

```
@WebServlet(urlPatterns={"/dukeetf"}, asyncSupported=true)
public class DukeETFServlet extends HttpServlet {
    ...
}
```

In the following code example, the `init` method initializes a queue to hold client requests and starts a new thread. The thread updates the price and trading volume information every second with random increments and sends the new values as plain text to all connected clients:

```
@Override
public void init(ServletConfig config) {
    /* Queue for requests */
    requestQueue = new ConcurrentLinkedQueue<AsyncContext>();
    /* Set the price and volume periodically,
    Send the information to all connected clients. */
    Executors.newSingleThreadExecutor().execute(new Runnable() {
        public void run() {
            Random random = new Random();
            while (true) {
                /* Set price and volume */
                price += 1.0*(random.nextInt(100)-50)/100.0;
                volume += random.nextInt(5000) - 2500;
                /* Send information to all clients */
                for (AsyncContext acontext : requestQueue) {
                    try {
                        PrintWriter writer = acontext.getResponse()
                            .getWriter();
                        writer.printf("%.2f, %d", price, volume);
                        acontext.complete();
                    } catch (IOException ex) {}
                }
                /* Wait */
                try { Thread.sleep(DELAY_MS); } catch (Exception e) {}
            }
        }
    });
}
```

The code above does not require an enterprise bean for this example, but it contains several bad practices:

- The servlet contains business logic (updating the price and volume information). You should normally use enterprise beans to implement business logic.
- The servlet creates a new thread. You should use threads provided by the container whenever possible, instead of manually creating new threads.
- The servlet calls `Thread.sleep` inside a while loop to simulate periodic events. You should use the timer service from the enterprise Java beans (EJB) container to schedule periodic notifications.

The following code replaces the previous `init` method and adds the `send` method:

```
@Override
public void init(ServletConfig config) {
    /* Queue for requests */
    requestQueue = new ConcurrentLinkedQueue<>();
    /* Register with the enterprise bean that provides
    * price/volume updates */
    pvbean.registerServlet(this);
}

/* PriceVolumeBean calls this method every second to send updates */
public void send(double price, int volume) {
    /* Send update to all connected clients */
    for (AsyncContext acontext : requestQueue) {
```

```
    try {
        String msg = String.format("%.2f, %d", price, volume);
        PrintWriter writer = acontext.getResponse().getWriter();
        writer.write(msg);
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "Sent: {0}", msg);
        /* Close the connection
         * The client (JavaScript) makes a new one instantly */
        acontext.complete();
    } catch (IOException ex) {
        logger.log(Level.INFO, ex.toString());
    }
}
```

The service method puts client requests in asynchronous mode and adds a listener to each request. The listener is implemented as an anonymous class that removes the request from the queue when the servlet finishes writing a response or when there is an error. Finally, the service method adds the request to the request queue created in the init method. The service method is the following:

```
@Override
public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request,
                 HttpServletResponse response) {
    response.setContentType("text/html");
    /* Put request in async mode */
    final AsyncContext acontext = request.startAsync();
    /* Remove from the queue when done */
    acontext.addListener(new AsyncListener() {
        public void onComplete(AsyncEvent ae) throws IOException {
            requestQueue.remove(acontext);
        }
        public void onTimeout(AsyncEvent ae) throws IOException {
            requestQueue.remove(acontext);
        }
        public void onError(AsyncEvent ae) throws IOException {
            requestQueue.remove(acontext);
        }
        public void onStartAsync(AsyncEvent ae) throws IOException {}
    });
    /* Add to the queue */
    requestQueue.add(acontext);
}
```

17.17.1.2 The Enterprise Bean

The PriceVolumeBean class is an enterprise bean that uses the timer service from the container to update the price and volume information and call the servlet's send method once every second:

```
@Startup
@Singleton
public class PriceVolumeBean {
    /* Use the container's timer service */
    @Resource TimerService tservice;
    private DukeETFServlet servlet;
    ...

    @PostConstruct
    public void init() {
        /* Intialize the EJB and create a timer */
        random = new Random();
    }
}
```

```

        servlet = null;
        tservice.createIntervalTimer(1000, 1000, new TimerConfig());
    }

    public void registerServlet(DukeETFServlet servlet) {
        /* Associate a servlet to send updates to */
        this.servlet = servlet;
    }

    @Timeout
    public void timeout() {
        /* Adjust price and volume and send updates */
        price += 1.0*(random.nextInt(100)-50)/100.0;
        volume += random.nextInt(5000) - 2500;
        if (servlet != null)
            servlet.send(price, volume);
    }
}

```

See [Using the Timer Service in Chapter 28, "Running the Enterprise Bean Examples"](#) for more information on the timer service.

17.17.1.3 The HTML Page

The HTML page consists of a table and some JavaScript code. The table contains two fields referenced from JavaScript code:

```

<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>...</head>
<body onload="makeAjaxRequest();" >
    ...
    <table>
        ...
        <td id="price">---</td>
        ...
        <td id="volume">--</td>
        ...
    </table>
</body>
</html>

```

The JavaScript code uses the XMLHttpRequest API, which provides functionality for transferring data between a client and a server. The script makes an asynchronous request to the servlet and designates a callback method. When the server provides a response, the callback method updates the fields in the table and makes a new request. The JavaScript code is the following:

```

var ajaxRequest;
function updatePage() {
    if (ajaxRequest.readyState === 4) {
        var arraypv = ajaxRequest.responseText.split(",");
        document.getElementById("price").innerHTML = arraypv[0];
        document.getElementById("volume").innerHTML = arraypv[1];
        makeAjaxRequest();
    }
}
function makeAjaxRequest() {
    ajaxRequest = new XMLHttpRequest();
    ajaxRequest.onreadystatechange = updatePage;
    ajaxRequest.open("GET", "http://localhost:8080/dukeetf/dukeetf",
        true);
}

```

```
    ajaxRequest.send(null);  
}
```

The XMLHttpRequest API is supported by most modern browsers, and it is widely used in AJAX web client development (Asynchronous JavaScript and XML).

See [The dukeetf2 Example Application](#) in [Chapter 18, "Java API for WebSocket"](#) for an equivalent version of this example implemented using a WebSocket endpoint.

17.17.2 Running the dukeetf Example Application

This section describes how to run the dukeetf example application using NetBeans IDE and from the command line.

17.17.2.1 To Run the dukeetf Example Application Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/servlet/`
3. Select the dukeetf folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the dukeetf project and select **Run**.

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file (dukeetf.war) located in the `target/` directory, deploys it to the server, and launches a web browser window with the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/dukeetf/
```

Open the same URL on a different web browser to see how both pages get price and volume updates simultaneously.

17.17.2.2 To Run the dukeetf Example Application Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/servlet/dukeetf
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

4. Open a web browser window and type the following address:

```
http://localhost:8080/dukeetf/
```

Open the same URL on a different web browser to see how both pages get price and volume updates simultaneously.

17.18 Further Information about Java Servlet Technology

For more information on Java Servlet technology, see

- Java Servlet 3.1 specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=340>

- Java Servlet web site:

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/index-jsp-135475.html>

Java API for WebSocket

This chapter describes the Java API for WebSocket (JSR-356), which provides support for creating WebSocket applications. WebSocket is an application protocol that provides full-duplex communications between two peers over the TCP protocol.

In the traditional request-response model used in HTTP, the client requests resources and the server provides responses. The exchange is always initiated by the client; the server cannot send any data without the client requesting it first. This model worked well for the World Wide Web when clients made occasional requests for documents that changed infrequently, but the limitations of this approach are increasingly relevant as content changes quickly and users expect a more interactive experience on the web. The WebSocket protocol addresses these limitations by providing a full-duplex communication channel between the client and the server. Combined with other client technologies, such as JavaScript and HTML5, WebSocket enables web applications to deliver a richer user experience.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Introduction to WebSocket](#)
- [Creating WebSocket Applications in Java EE](#)
- [Programmatic Endpoints](#)
- [Annotated Endpoints](#)
- [Sending and Receiving Messages](#)
- [Maintaining Client State](#)
- [Using Encoders and Decoders](#)
- [Path Parameters](#)
- [Handling Errors](#)
- [The dukeetf2 Example Application](#)
- [The websocketbot Example Application](#)
- [Further Information about WebSocket](#)

18.1 Introduction to WebSocket

In a WebSocket application, the server publishes a WebSocket **endpoint** and the client uses the endpoint's URI to connect to the server. The WebSocket protocol is symmetrical after the connection has been established: the client and the server can send messages to each other at any time while the connection is open, and they can

close the connection at any time. Clients usually connect only to one server, and servers accept connections from multiple clients.

The WebSocket protocol has two parts: handshake and data transfer. The client initiates the handshake by sending a request to a WebSocket endpoint using its URI. The handshake is compatible with existing HTTP-based infrastructure: web servers interpret it as an HTTP connection upgrade request. An example handshake from a client looks like this:

```
GET /path/to/websocket/endpoint HTTP/1.1
Host: localhost
Upgrade: websocket
Connection: Upgrade
Sec-WebSocket-Key: xqBt3ImNzJbYqRINxEFlkg==
Origin: http://localhost
Sec-WebSocket-Version: 13
```

An example handshake from the server in response to the client looks like this:

```
HTTP/1.1 101 Switching Protocols
Upgrade: websocket
Connection: Upgrade
Sec-WebSocket-Accept: K7DJLdLooIwIG/MOpvWFB3y3FE8=
```

The server applies a known operation to the value of the `Sec-WebSocket-Key` header to generate the value of the `Sec-WebSocket-Accept` header. The client applies the same operation to the value of the `Sec-WebSocket-Key` header, and the connection is established successfully if the result matches the value received from the server. The client and the server can send messages to each other after a successful handshake.

WebSocket supports text messages (encoded as UTF-8) and binary messages. The control frames in WebSocket are *close*, *ping*, and *pong* (a response to a *ping* frame). Ping and pong frames may also contain application data.

WebSocket endpoints are represented by URIs that have the following form:

```
ws://host:port/path?query
wss://host:port/path?query
```

The `ws` scheme represents an unencrypted WebSocket connection, and the `wss` scheme represents an encrypted connection. The `port` component is optional; the default port number is 80 for unencrypted connections and 443 for encrypted connections. The `path` component indicates the location of an endpoint within a server. The `query` component is optional.

Modern web browsers implement the WebSocket protocol and provide a JavaScript API to connect to endpoints, send messages, and assign callback methods for WebSocket events (such as opened connections, received messages, and closed connections).

18.2 Creating WebSocket Applications in Java EE

The Java EE platform includes the Java API for WebSocket (JSR-356), which enables you to create, configure, and deploy WebSocket endpoints in web applications. The WebSocket client API specified in JSR-356 also enables you to access remote WebSocket endpoints from any Java application.

The Java API for WebSocket consists of the following packages:

- The `javax.websocket.server` package contains annotations, classes, and interfaces to create and configure server endpoints.

- The `javax.websocket` package contains annotations, classes, interfaces, and exceptions that are common to client and server endpoints.

WebSocket endpoints are instances of the `javax.websocket.Endpoint` class. The Java API for WebSocket enables you to create two kinds of endpoints: programmatic endpoints and annotated endpoints. To create a **programmatic endpoint**, you extend the `Endpoint` class and override its lifecycle methods. To create an **annotated endpoint**, you decorate a Java class and some of its methods with the annotations provided by the packages above. After you have created an endpoint, you deploy it to an specific URI in the application so remote clients can connect to it.

Note: In most cases, it is easier to create and deploy an annotated endpoint than a programmatic endpoint. This chapter provides a simple example of a programmatic endpoint, but it focuses on annotated endpoints.

The process for creating and deploying a WebSocket endpoint is the following:

1. Create an endpoint class.
2. Implement the lifecycle methods of the endpoint.
3. Add your business logic to the endpoint.
4. Deploy the endpoint inside a web application.

The process is slightly different for programmatic endpoints and annotated endpoints, and it is covered in detail in the following sections.

Note: As opposed to servlets, WebSocket endpoints are instantiated multiple times. The container creates an instance of an endpoint per connection to its deployment URI. Each instance is associated with one and only one connection. This facilitates keeping user state for each connection and makes development easier since there is only one thread executing the code of an endpoint instance at any given time.

18.3 Programmatic Endpoints

The following example shows how to create an endpoint by extending the `Endpoint` class:

```
public class EchoEndpoint extends Endpoint {
    @Override
    public void onOpen(final Session session, EndpointConfig config) {
        session.addMessageHandler(new MessageHandler.Whole<String>() {
            @Override
            public void onMessage(String msg) {
                try {
                    session.getBasicRemote().sendText(msg);
                } catch (IOException e) { ... }
            }
        });
    }
}
```

This endpoint echoes every message received. The `Endpoint` class defines three lifecycle methods: `onOpen`, `onClose`, and `onError`. The `EchoEndpoint` class implements the `onOpen` method, which is the only abstract method in the `Endpoint` class.

The `Session` parameter represents a conversation between this endpoint and the remote endpoint. The `addMessageHandler` method registers message handlers, and the `getBasicRemote` method returns an object that represents the remote endpoint. The `Session` interface is covered in detail in the rest of this chapter.

The message handler is implemented as an anonymous inner class. The `onMessage` method of the message handler is invoked when the endpoint receives a text message.

To deploy this programmatic endpoint, use the following code in your Java EE application:

```
ServerEndpointConfig.Builder.create(EchoEndpoint.class, "/echo").build();
```

When you deploy your application, the endpoint is available at

`ws://<host>:<port>/<application>/echo`; for example,

`ws://localhost:8080/echoapp/echo`.

18.4 Annotated Endpoints

The following example shows how to create the same endpoint from [Programmatic Endpoints](#) using annotations instead:

```
@ServerEndpoint("/echo")
public class EchoEndpoint {
    @OnMessage
    public void onMessage(Session session, String msg) {
        try {
            session.getBasicRemote().sendText(msg);
        } catch (IOException e) { ... }
    }
}
```

The annotated endpoint is simpler than the equivalent programmatic endpoint, and it is deployed automatically with the application to the relative path defined in the `ServerEndpoint` annotation. Instead of having to create an additional class for the message handler, this example uses the `OnMessage` annotation to designate the method invoked to handle messages.

[Table 18–1](#) lists the annotations available in the `javax.websocket` package to designate the methods that handle lifecycle events. The examples in the table show the most common parameters for these methods. See the API reference for details on what combinations of parameters are allowed in each case.

Table 18–1 *WebSocket Endpoint Lifecycle Annotations*

Annotation	Event	Example
<code>OnOpen</code>	Connection opened.	<code>@OnOpen</code> <pre>public void open(Session session, EndpointConfig conf) { }</pre>
<code>OnMessage</code>	Message received.	<code>@OnMessage</code> <pre>public void message (Session session, String msg) { }</pre>
<code>OnError</code>	Connection error.	<code>@OnError</code> <pre>public void error(Session session, Throwable error) { }</pre>
<code>OnClose</code>	Connection closed.	<code>@OnClose</code> <pre>public void close(Session session, CloseReason reason) { }</pre>

18.5 Sending and Receiving Messages

WebSocket endpoints can send and receive text and binary messages. In addition, they can also send ping frames and receive pong frames. This section describes how to use the `Session` and `RemoteEndpoint` interfaces to send messages to the connected peer and how to use the `OnMessage` annotation to receive messages from it.

18.5.1 Sending Messages

Follow these steps to send messages in an endpoint:

1. Obtain the `Session` object from the connection.

The `Session` object is available as a parameter in the annotated lifecycle methods of the endpoint, like those in [Table 18-1](#). When your message is a response to a message from the peer, you have the `Session` object available inside the method that received the message (the method annotated with `@OnMessage`). If you have to send messages that are not responses, store the `Session` object as an instance variable of the endpoint class in the method annotated with `@OnOpen`, so you can access it from other methods.

2. Use the `Session` object to obtain a `RemoteEndpoint` object.

The `Session.getBasicRemote()` method and the `Session.getAsyncRemote()` method return `RemoteEndpoint.Basic` and `RemoteEndpoint.Async` objects respectively. The `RemoteEndpoint.Basic` interface provides blocking methods to send messages; the `RemoteEndpoint.Async` interface provides non-blocking methods.

3. Use the `RemoteEndpoint` object to send messages to the peer.

The following list shows some of the methods you can use to send messages to the peer:

- `void RemoteEndpoint.Basic.sendText(String text)`
Send a text message to the peer. This method blocks until the whole message has been transmitted.
- `void RemoteEndpoint.Basic.sendBinary(ByteBuffer data)`
Send a binary message to the peer. This method blocks until the whole message has been transmitted.
- `void RemoteEndpoint.sendPing(ByteBuffer appData)`
Send a ping frame to the peer.
- `void RemoteEndpoint.sendPong(ByteBuffer appData)`
Send a pong frame to the peer.

The example in [Annotated Endpoints](#) demonstrates how to use this procedure to reply to every incoming text message.

18.5.1.1 Sending Messages to All Peers Connected to an Endpoint

Each instance of an endpoint class is associated with one and only one connection and peer; however, there are cases when an endpoint instance needs to send messages to all connected peers. Examples include chat applications and online auctions. The `Session` interface provides the `getOpenSessions` method for this purpose. The following example demonstrates how to use this method to forward incoming text messages to all connected peers:

```
@ServerEndpoint("/echoall")
public class EchoAllEndpoint {
    @OnMessage
    public void onMessage(Session session, String msg) {
        try {
            for (Session sess : session.getOpenSessions()) {
                if (sess.isOpen())
                    sess.getBasicRemote().sendText(msg);
            }
        } catch (IOException e) { ... }
    }
}
```

18.5.2 Receiving Messages

The `OnMessage` annotation designates methods that handle incoming messages. You can have at most three methods annotated with `OnMessage` in an endpoint, one for each message type: text, binary, and pong. The following example demonstrates how to designate methods to receive all three types of messages:

```
@ServerEndpoint("/receive")
public class ReceiveEndpoint {
    @OnMessage
    public void textMessage(Session session, String msg) {
        System.out.println("Text message: " + msg);
    }
    @OnMessage
    public void binaryMessage(Session session, ByteBuffer msg) {
        System.out.println("Binary message: " + msg.toString());
    }
    @OnMessage
    public void pongMessage(Session session, PongMessage msg) {
        System.out.println("Pong message: " +
            msg.getApplicationData().toString());
    }
}
```

18.6 Maintaining Client State

Since the container creates an instance of the endpoint class for every connection, you can define and use instance variables to store client state information. In addition, the `Session.getUserProperties` method provides a modifiable map to store user properties. For example, the following endpoint replies to incoming text messages with the contents of the previous message from each client:

```
@ServerEndpoint("/delayedecho")
public class DelayedEchoEndpoint {
    @OnOpen
    public void open(Session session) {
        session.getUserProperties().put("previousMsg", " ");
    }
    @OnMessage
    public void message(Session session, String msg) {
        String prev = (String) session.getUserProperties()
            .get("previousMsg");
        session.getUserProperties().put("previousMsg", msg);
        try {
```

```

        session.getBasicRemote().sendText(prev);
    } catch (IOException e) { ... }
}
}

```

To store information common to all connected clients, you can use class (static) variables; however, you are responsible for ensuring thread-safe access to them.

18.7 Using Encoders and Decoders

The Java API for WebSocket provides support for converting between WebSocket messages and custom Java types using encoders and decoders. An encoder takes a Java object and produces a representation that can be transmitted as a WebSocket message; for example, encoders typically produce JSON, XML, or binary representations. A decoder performs the reverse function: it reads a WebSocket message and creates a Java object.

This mechanism simplifies WebSocket applications, because it decouples the business logic from the serialization and deserialization of objects.

18.7.1 Implementing Encoders to Convert Java Objects into WebSocket Messages

The procedure to implement and use encoders in endpoints is the following:

1. Implement one of the following interfaces:

- `Encoder.Text<T>` for text messages
- `Encoder.Binary<T>` for binary messages

These interfaces specify the `encode` method. Implement an encoder class for each custom Java type that you want to send as a WebSocket message.

2. Add the names of your encoder implementations to the `encoders` optional parameter of the `ServerEndpoint` annotation.

3. Use the `sendObject(Object data)` method of the `RemoteEndpoint.Basic` or `RemoteEndpoint.Async` interfaces to send your objects as messages. The container looks for an encoder that matches your type and uses it to convert the object to a WebSocket message.

For example, if you have two Java types (`MessageA` and `MessageB`) that you want to send as text messages, implement the `Encoder.Text<MessageA>` and `Encoder.Text<MessageB>` interfaces as follows:

```

public class MessageATextEncoder implements Encoder.Text<MessageA> {
    @Override
    public void init(EndpointConfig ec) { }
    @Override
    public void destroy() { }
    @Override
    public String encode(MessageA msgA) throws EncodeException {
        // Access msgA's properties and convert to JSON text...
        return msgAJsonString;
    }
}

```

And similarly for `Encoder.Text<MessageB>`. Then, add the `encoders` parameter to the `ServerEndpoint` annotation as follows:

```
@ServerEndpoint (
```

```
        value = "/myendpoint",
        encoders = { MessageATextEncoder.class, MessageBTextEncoder.class }
    )
    public class EncEndpoint { ... }
```

Now you can send `MessageA` and `MessageB` objects as WebSocket messages using the `sendObject` method as follows:

```
MessageA msgA = new MessageA(...);
MessageB msgB = new MessageB(...);
session.getBasicRemote.sendObject(msgA);
session.getBasicRemote.sendObject(msgB);
```

As in this example, you can have more than one encoder for text messages and more than one encoder for binary messages. Like endpoints, encoder instances are associated with one and only one WebSocket connection and peer, so there is only one thread executing the code of an encoder instance at any given time.

18.7.2 Implementing Decoders to Convert WebSocket Messages into Java Objects

The procedure to implement and use decoders in endpoints is the following:

1. Implement one of the following interfaces:
 - `Decoder.Text<T>` for text messages
 - `Decoder.Binary<T>` for binary messages

These interfaces specify the `willDecode` and `decode` methods.

Note: Unlike with encoders, you can specify at most **one** decoder for binary messages and **one** decoder for text messages.

2. Add the names of your decoder implementations to the `decoders` optional parameter of the `ServerEndpoint` annotation.
3. Use the `OnMessage` annotation in the endpoint to designate a method that takes your custom Java type as a parameter. When the endpoint receives a message that can be decoded by one of the decoders you specified, the container calls the method annotated with `@OnMessage` that takes your custom Java type as a parameter if this method exists.

For example; if you have two Java types (`MessageA` and `MessageB`) that you want to send and receive as text messages, define them so that they extend a common class (`Message`). Since you can only define one decoder for text messages, implement a decoder for the `Message` class as follows:

```
public class MessageTextDecoder implements Decoder.Text<Message> {
    @Override
    public void init(EndpointConfig ec) { }
    @Override
    public void destroy() { }
    @Override
    public Message decode(String string) throws DecodeException {
        // Read message...
        if ( /* message is an A message */ )
            return new MessageA(...);
        else if ( /* message is a B message */ )
            return new MessageB(...);
    }
}
```

```

@Override
public boolean willDecode(String string) {
    // Determine if the message can be converted into either a
    // MessageA object or a MessageB object...
    return canDecode;
}
}

```

Then, add the decoder parameter to the `ServerEndpoint` annotation as follows:

```

@ServerEndpoint(
    value = "/myendpoint",
    encoders = { MessageATextEncoder.class, MessageBTextEncoder.class },
    decoders = { MessageTextDecoder.class }
)
public class EncDecEndpoint { ... }

```

Now define a method in the endpoint class that receives `MessageA` and `MessageB` objects as follows:

```

@OnMessage
public void message(Session session, Message msg) {
    if (msg instanceof MessageA) {
        // We received a MessageA object...
    } else if (msg instanceof MessageB) {
        // We received a MessageB object...
    }
}
}

```

Like endpoints, decoder instances are associated with one and only one `WebSocket` connection and peer, so there is only one thread executing the code of a decoder instance at any given time.

18.8 Path Parameters

The `ServerEndpoint` annotation enables you to use URI templates to specify parts of an endpoint deployment URI as application parameters. For example, consider this endpoint:

```

@ServerEndpoint("/chatrooms/{room-name}")
public class ChatEndpoint {
    ...
}

```

If the endpoint is deployed inside a web application called `chatapp` at a local Java EE server in port 8080, clients can connect to the endpoint using any of the following URIs:

```

http://localhost:8080/chatapp/chatrooms/currentnews
http://localhost:8080/chatapp/chatrooms/music
http://localhost:8080/chatapp/chatrooms/cars
http://localhost:8080/chatapp/chatrooms/technology

```

Annotated endpoints can receive path parameters as arguments in methods annotated with `@OnOpen`, `@OnMessage`, and `@OnClose`. In this example, the endpoint uses the parameter in the `@OnOpen` method to determine which chat room the client wants to join:

```

@ServerEndpoint("/chatrooms/{room-name}")
public class ChatEndpoint {

```

```
@OnOpen
public void open(Session session,
                 EndpointConfig c,
                 @PathParam("room-name") String roomName) {
    // Add the client to the chat room of their choice ...
}
}
```

The path parameters used as arguments in these methods can be strings, primitive types, or boxed versions of them.

18.9 Handling Errors

To designate a method that handles errors in an annotated WebSocket endpoint, decorate it with `@OnError`:

```
@ServerEndpoint("/testendpoint")
public class TestEndpoint {
    ...
    @OnError
    public void error(Session session, Throwable t) {
        t.printStackTrace();
        ...
    }
}
```

This method is invoked when there are connection problems, runtime errors from message handlers, or conversion errors decoding messages.

18.10 The `dukeetf2` Example Application

The `dukeetf2` example application, located in the `tut-install/examples/web/dukeetf2/` directory, demonstrates how to use a WebSocket endpoint to provide data updates to web clients. The example resembles a service that provides periodic updates on the price and trading volume of an electronically traded fund (ETF).

18.10.1 Architecture of the `dukeetf2` Sample Application

The `dukeetf2` example application consists of a WebSocket endpoint, an enterprise bean, and an HTML page:

- The endpoint accepts connections from clients and sends them updates when new data for price and trading volume becomes available.
- The enterprise bean updates the price and volume information once every second.
- The HTML page uses JavaScript code to connect to the WebSocket endpoint, parse incoming messages, and update the price and volume information without reloading the page.

18.10.1.1 The Endpoint

The WebSocket endpoint is implemented in the `ETFEndpoint` class, which stores all connected sessions in a queue and provides a method that the enterprise bean calls when there is new information available to send:

```
@ServerEndpoint("/dukeetf")
public class ETFEndpoint {
    private static final Logger logger = Logger.getLogger("ETFEndpoint");
```

```

/* Queue for all open WebSocket sessions */
static Queue<Session> queue = new ConcurrentLinkedQueue<>();

/* PriceVolumeBean calls this method to send updates */
public static void send(double price, int volume) {
    String msg = String.format("%.2f, %d", price, volume);
    try {
        /* Send updates to all open WebSocket sessions */
        for (Session session : queue) {
            session.getBasicRemote().sendText(msg);
            logger.log(Level.INFO, "Sent: {0}", msg);
        }
    } catch (IOException e) {
        logger.log(Level.INFO, e.toString());
    }
}
...
}

```

The lifecycle methods of the endpoint add and remove sessions to and from the queue:

```

@ServerEndpoint("/dukeetf")
public class ETFEndpoint {
    ...
    @OnOpen
    public void openConnection(Session session) {
        /* Register this connection in the queue */
        queue.add(session);
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "Connection opened.");
    }

    @OnClose
    public void closedConnection(Session session) {
        /* Remove this connection from the queue */
        queue.remove(session);
    }

    @OnError
    public void error(Session session, Throwable t) {
        /* Remove this connection from the queue */
        queue.remove(session);
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "Connection error.");
    }
}

```

18.10.1.2 The Enterprise Bean

The enterprise bean uses the timer service to generate new price and volume information every second:

```

@Startup
@Singleton
public class PriceVolumeBean {
    /* Use the container's timer service */
    @Resource TimerService tservice;
    private Random random;
    private volatile double price = 100.0;
    private volatile int volume = 300000;
    private static final Logger logger =
        Logger.getLogger("PriceVolumeBean");
}

```

```
@PostConstruct
public void init() {
    /* Intialize the EJB and create a timer */
    logger.log(Level.INFO, "Initializing EJB.");
    random = new Random();
    tservice.createIntervalTimer(1000, 1000, new TimerConfig());
}

@Timeout
public void timeout() {
    /* Adjust price and volume and send updates */
    price += 1.0*(random.nextInt(100)-50)/100.0;
    volume += random.nextInt(5000) - 2500;
    ETFEndpoint.send(price, volume);
}
}
```

The enterprise bean calls the `send` method of the `ETFEndpoint` class in the `timeout` method. See [Using the Timer Service in Chapter 28, "Running the Enterprise Bean Examples"](#) for more information on the timer service.

18.10.1.3 The HTML Page

The HTML page consists of a table and some JavaScript code. The table contains two fields referenced from JavaScript code:

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>...</head>
<body onload="makeAjaxRequest();">
    ...
    <table>
        ...
        <td id="price">--.--</td>
        ...
        <td id="volume">--</td>
        ...
    </table>
</body>
</html>
```

The JavaScript code uses the `WebSocket` API to connect to the server endpoint and to designate a callback method for incoming messages. The callback method updates the page with the new information.

```
var wsocket;
function connect() {
    wsocket = new WebSocket("ws://localhost:8080/dukeetf2/dukeetf");
    wsocket.onmessage = onMessage;
}
function onMessage(evt) {
    var arraypv = evt.data.split(",");
    document.getElementById("price").innerHTML = arraypv[0];
    document.getElementById("volume").innerHTML = arraypv[1];
}
window.addEventListener("load", connect, false);
```

The `WebSocket` API is supported by most modern browsers, and it is widely used in HTML5 web client development.

18.10.2 Running the dukeetf2 Example Application

This section describes how to run the `dukeetf2` example application using NetBeans IDE and from the command line.

18.10.2.1 To Run the dukeetf2 Example Application Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/websocket`
3. Select the `dukeetf2` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `dukeetf2` project and select **Run**.

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file (`dukeetf2.war`) located in the `target/` directory, deploys it to the server, and launches a web browser window with the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/dukeetf2/
```

Open the same URL on a different web browser tab or window to see how both pages get price and volume updates simultaneously.

18.10.2.2 To Run the dukeetf2 Example Application Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/websocket/dukeetf2
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

4. Open a web browser window and type the following address:

```
http://localhost:8080/dukeetf2/
```

Open the same URL on a different web browser tab or window to see how both pages get price and volume updates simultaneously.

18.11 The websocketbot Example Application

The `websocketbot` example application, located in the `tut-install/examples/web/websocketbot/` directory, demonstrates how to use a WebSocket endpoint to implement a chat. The example resembles a chat room where many users can join and have a conversation. Users can ask for bogus stock recommendations to a bot agent that is always available in the chat room.

18.11.1 Architecture of the websocketbot Example Application

The `websocketbot` example application consists of the following elements:

- A CDI bean (`BotStockBean`) that contains the logic for the bot agent to reply to messages and make the bogus stock recommendations.
- A WebSocket endpoint (`BotEndpoint`) that implements the chat room.

- A set of classes (`Message`, `ChatMessage`, `InfoMessage`, `JoinMessage`, and `UsersMessage`) that represent application messages.
- A set of classes (`ChatMessageEncoder`, `InfoMessageEncoder`, `JoinMessageEncoder`, and `UsersMessageEncoder`) that encode application messages into WebSocket text messages as JSON data.
- A class (`MessageDecoder`) that parses WebSocket text messages as JSON data and decodes them into `JoinMessage` or `ChatMessage` objects.
- An HTML page (`index.html`) that uses JavaScript code to implement the client for the chat room.

18.11.1.1 The CDI Bean

The CDI bean (`BotStockBean`) is a Java class with two methods: `get6mChange` and `respond`. The `get6mChange` method takes a stock ticker symbol as an argument and downloads data from Yahoo Finance to determine its change in price in the last six months. The `respond` method parses messages to obtain the stock ticker symbol and uses the `get6mChange` method to determine whether to recommend the stock. The bot recommends a stock if its price has increased in the last six months.

```
@Named
public class BotStockBean {
    public String respond(String msg) { ... }

    private double get6mChange(String ticker) throws IOException,
                                                MalformedURLException,
                                                FileNotFoundException
        { ... }

    ...
}
```

18.11.1.2 The WebSocket Endpoint

The WebSocket endpoint (`BotEndpoint`) is an annotated endpoint that performs the following functions:

- Receive messages from clients
- Forward messages to clients
- Maintain a list of connected clients
- Invoke the bot agent functionality

The endpoint specifies its deployment URI and the message encoders and decoders using the `ServerEndpoint` annotation. The endpoint obtains an instance of the `BotStockBean` class and a managed executor service resource through dependency injection:

```
@ServerEndpoint(
    value = "/websocketbot",
    decoders = { MessageDecoder.class },
    encoders = { JoinMessageEncoder.class, ChatMessageEncoder.class,
                InfoMessageEncoder.class, UsersMessageEncoder.class }
)
/* There is a BotEndpoint instance per connection */
public class BotEndpoint {
    private static final Logger logger = Logger.getLogger("BotEndpoint");
    /* Bot functionality bean */
    @Inject private BotStockBean botstockbean;
```

```

/* Executor service for asynchronous processing */
@Resource(name="comp/DefaultManagedExecutorService")
private ManagedExecutorService mes;

@OnOpen
public void openConnection(Session session) {
    logger.log(Level.INFO, "Connection opened.");
}
...
}

```

The message method processes incoming messages from clients. The decoder converts incoming text messages into either `JoinMessage` or `ChatMessage` objects, which inherit from the `Message` class. The message method receives a `Message` object as a parameter:

```

@OnMessage
public void message(Session session, Message msg) {
    logger.log(Level.INFO, "Received: {0}", msg.toString());

    if (msg instanceof JoinMessage) {
        /* Add the new user and notify everybody */
        JoinMessage jmsg = (JoinMessage) msg;
        session.getUserProperties().put("name", jmsg.getName());
        session.getUserProperties().put("active", true);
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "Received: {0}", jmsg.toString());
        sendAll(session, new InfoMessage(jmsg.getName() +
            " has joined the chat"));
        sendAll(session, new ChatMessage("Duke", jmsg.getName(),
            "Hi there!!"));
        sendAll(session, new UsersMessage(this.getUserList(session)));
    } else if (msg instanceof ChatMessage) {
        /* Forward the message to everybody */
        ChatMessage cmsg = (ChatMessage) msg;
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "Received: {0}", cmsg.toString());
        sendAll(session, cmsg);
        if (cmsg.getTarget().compareTo("Duke") == 0) {
            /* The bot replies to the message */
            mes.submit(new Runnable() {
                public void run() {
                    String resp = botstockbean.respond(cmsg.getMessage());
                    sendAll(session, new ChatMessage("Duke", cmsg.getName(),
                        resp));
                }
            });
        }
    }
}

```

If the message is a join message, the endpoint adds the new user to the list and notifies all connected clients. If the message is a chat message, the endpoint forwards it to all connected clients.

If a chat message is for the bot agent, the endpoint obtains a response using the `BotStockBean` instance and sends it to all connected clients. The `sendAll` method is similar to the example in [Sending Messages to All Peers Connected to an Endpoint](#).

Asynchronous Processing and Concurrency Considerations

Obtaining a response from the bot involves downloading data from Yahoo Finance, which is a potentially blocking operation. If this operation blocks, the user that sent the

associated message will not be able to send or receive other chat messages until the operation completes. To avoid this problem, the endpoint obtains an executor service from the container and executes this operation in a different thread using the `ManagedExecutorService.submit` method from *Concurrency Utilities for Java EE*.

The Java API for WebSocket specification requires that Java EE implementations instantiate endpoint classes once per connection. This facilitates the development of WebSocket endpoints, since you are guaranteed that only one thread is executing the code in a WebSocket endpoint class at any given time. When you introduce a new thread in an endpoint, like in this example, you must ensure that variables and methods accessed by more than one thread are thread safe. In this example, the code in `BotStockBean` is thread safe, and the `BotEndpoint.sendAll` method has been declared synchronized.

For more information on the managed executor service and concurrency in Java EE, see [Chapter 54, "Concurrency Utilities"](#).

18.11.1.3 The Application Messages

The classes that represent application messages (`Message`, `ChatMessage`, `InfoMessage`, `JoinMessage`, and `UsersMessage`) only contain some properties and getter and setter methods. For example, the `ChatMessage` class looks like this:

```
public class ChatMessage extends Message {
    private String name;
    private String target;
    private String message;
    /* ... Constructor, getters and setters ... */
}
```

18.11.1.4 The Encoder Classes

The encoder classes convert application message objects into JSON text using the Java API for JSON Processing. For example, the `ChatMessageEncoder` class is implemented as follows:

```
/* Encode a ChatMessage as JSON.
 * For example, (new ChatMessage("Peter","Duke","How are you?"))
 * is encoded as follows:
 * {"type":"chat","target":"Duke","message":"How are you?"}
 */
public class ChatMessageEncoder implements Encoder.Text<ChatMessage> {
    @Override
    public void init(EndpointConfig ec) { }
    @Override
    public void destroy() { }
    @Override
    public String encode(ChatMessage chatMessage) throws EncodeException {
        // Access properties in chatMessage and write JSON text...
    }
}
```

See [Chapter 19, JSON Processing](#) for more information on the Java API for JSON Processing.

18.11.1.5 The Message Decoder

The message decoder (`MessageDecoder`) class converts WebSocket text messages into application messages by parsing JSON text. It is implemented as follows:

```

/* Decode a JSON message into a JoinMessage or a ChatMessage.
 * For example, the incoming message:
 * {"type":"chat","name":"Peter","target":"Duke","message":"How are you?"}
 * is decoded as (new ChatMessage("Peter", "Duke", "How are you?"))
 */
public class MessageDecoder implements Decoder.Text<Message> {
    /* Stores the name-value pairs from a JSON message as a Map */
    private Map<String,String> messageMap;

    @Override
    public void init(EndpointConfig ec) { }
    @Override
    public void destroy() { }

    /* Create a new Message object if the message can be decoded */
    @Override
    public Message decode(String string) throws DecodeException {
        Message msg = null;
        if (willDecode(string)) {
            switch (messageMap.get("type")) {
                case "join":
                    msg = new JoinMessage(messageMap.get("name"));
                    break;
                case "chat":
                    msg = new ChatMessage(messageMap.get("name"),
                                           messageMap.get("target"),
                                           messageMap.get("message"));
            }
        } else {
            throw new DecodeException(string, "[Message] Can't decode.");
        }
        return msg;
    }

    /* Decode a JSON message into a Map and check if it contains
     * all the required fields according to its type. */
    @Override
    public boolean willDecode(String string) {
        // Convert JSON data from the message into a name-value map...
        // Check if the message has all the fields for its message type...
    }
}

```

18.11.1.6 The HTML Page

The HTML page (`index.html`) contains a field for the user name. After the user types a name and clicks on **Join**, there are three text areas available: one to type and send messages, one for the chat room, and one with the list of users. The page also contains a WebSocket console that shows the messages sent and received as JSON text.

The JavaScript code on the page uses the WebSocket API to connect to the endpoint, to send messages, and to designate callback methods. The WebSocket API is supported by most modern browsers, and it is widely used for web client development with HTML5.

18.11.2 Running the websocketbot Example Application

This section describes how to run the `websocketbot` example application using NetBeans IDE and from the command line.

18.11.2.1 To Configure a Proxy Server in the GlassFish Server

The `websocketbot` example application connects to Yahoo Finance to download historic stock price data. Depending on your network configuration, you may have to specify a proxy server for the GlassFish Server to connect to the Internet. Follow these steps to configure a proxy server:

1. Start the GlassFish Server if it is not running.
2. Open the GlassFish Server Administration Console by typing the following URI on a web browser: `http://localhost:4848`
3. Click on **server (Admin Server)** on the left pane of the page.
4. Click on the **Properties** tab on the right pane of the page.
5. Click on **Add Property**.
6. Write `http.proxyHost` on the **Instance Variable Name** field and type the host name of your proxy server in the **Override Value** field.
7. Write `http.proxyPort` on the **Instance Variable Name** field and type the port of your proxy server in the **Override Value** field.
8. Click on **Save**.

18.11.2.2 To Run the websocketbot Example Application Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/websocket`
3. Select the `websocketbot` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `websocketbot` project and select **Run**.

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `websocketbot.war`, located in the `target/` directory; deploys it to the server, and launches a web browser window with the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/websocketbot/
```

See [To Test the websocketbot Example Application](#) for more information.

18.11.2.3 To Run the websocketbot Example Application Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/web/websocket/websocketbot`
3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```
4. Open a web browser window and type the following address:

```
http://localhost:8080/websocketbot/
```

See [To Test the websocketbot Example Application](#) for more information.

18.11.2.4 To Test the websocketbot Example Application

1. On the main page, type your name on the first text field and press enter.

The list of connected users appears on the text area on the right. The text area on the left is the chat room.

2. Type a message on the text area below the login button. For example, type the messages in bold and press enter to obtain an output similar to the following:

```
[--Peter has joined the chat--]
Duke: @Peter Hi there!!
Peter: @Duke how are you?
Duke: @Peter I'm doing great, thank you!
Peter: @Duke do you recommend YHOO?
Duke: @Peter YHOO is doing well. I recommend it.
```

3. Join the chat from another browser window by copying and pasting the URI on the address bar and joining with a different name.

The new user name appears in the list of users in both browser windows. You can send messages from either window and see how they appear in the other.

4. Click **Show WebSocket Console**.

The console shows the messages sent and received as JSON text.

18.12 Further Information about WebSocket

For more information on WebSocket in Java EE, see the Java API for WebSocket specification:

<http://www.jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=356>

JSON Processing

This chapter describes the Java API for JSON Processing (JSR-353). JSON is a data exchange format widely used in web services and other connected applications. JSR-353 provides an API to parse, transform, and query JSON data using the object model or the streaming model.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Introduction to JSON](#)
- [JSON Processing in Java EE](#)
- [Using the Object Model API](#)
- [Using the Streaming API](#)
- [JSON in Java EE RESTful Web Services](#)
- [The jsonmodel Example Application](#)
- [The jsonstreaming Example Application](#)
- [Further Information about the Java API for JSON Processing](#)

19.1 Introduction to JSON

JSON is a text-based data exchange format derived from JavaScript that is used in web services and other connected applications. The following sections provide an introduction to JSON syntax, an overview of JSON uses, and a description of the most common approaches to generate and parse JSON.

19.1.1 JSON Syntax

JSON defines only two data structures: objects and arrays. An object is a set of name-value pairs, and an array is a list of values. JSON defines six data types: *string*, *number*, *object*, *array*, *true*, *false* and *null*.

The following example shows JSON data for a sample object that contains name-value pairs. The value for the name "phoneNumbers" is an array whose elements are two objects.

```
{
  "firstName": "Duke",
  "lastName": "Java",
  "age": 18,
  "streetAddress": "100 Internet Dr",
  "city": "JavaTown",
  "state": "JA",
```

```
"postalCode": "12345",
"phoneNumbers": [
  { "Mobile": "111-111-1111" },
  { "Home": "222-222-2222" }
]
```

JSON has the following syntax:

- Objects are enclosed in braces (`{}`), their name-value pairs are separated by a comma (`,`), and the name and value in a pair are separated by a colon (`:`). Names in an object are strings, whereas values may be of any of the six data types, including another object or an array.
- Arrays are enclosed in brackets (`[]`), and their values are separated by a comma (`,`). Each value in an array may be of a different type, including another array or an object.
- When objects and arrays contain other objects or arrays, the data has a tree-like structure.

19.1.2 Uses of JSON

JSON is often used as a common format to serialize and de-serialize data in applications that communicate with each other over the Internet. These applications are created using different programming languages and run in very different environments. JSON is suited to this scenario because it is an open standard, it is easy to read and write, and it is more compact than other representations.

RESTful web services use JSON extensively as the format for the data inside requests and responses. The HTTP header used to indicate that the content of a request or a response is JSON data is the following:

```
Content-Type: application/json
```

JSON representations are usually more compact than XML representations because JSON does not have closing tags. Unlike XML, JSON does not have a widely accepted schema for defining and validating the structure of JSON data.

19.1.3 Generating and Parsing JSON Data

There are two programming models for generating and parsing JSON data: the object model and the streaming model, which are similar to those used for XML documents.

The object model creates a tree that represents the JSON data in memory. The tree can then be navigated, analyzed, or modified. This approach is the most flexible and allows for processing that requires access to the complete contents of the tree. However, it is often slower than the streaming model and requires more memory. The object model generates JSON output by navigating the entire tree at once.

The streaming model uses an event-based parser that reads JSON data one element at a time. The parser generates events and stops for processing when an object or an array begins or ends, when it finds a key, or when it finds a value. Each element can be processed or discarded by the application code, then the parser proceeds to the next event. This approach is adequate for local processing, where the processing of an element does not require information from the rest of the data. The streaming model generates JSON output to a given stream by making a function call with one element at a time.

There are many JSON generators and parsers available for different programming languages and environments. [JSON Processing in Java EE](#) describes the functionality provided by the Java API for JSON Processing (JSR-353).

19.2 JSON Processing in Java EE

Java EE includes support for JSR-353, which provides an API to parse, transform, and query JSON data using the object model or the streaming model described in [Generating and Parsing JSON Data](#). The Java API for JSON Processing contains the following packages:

- The `javax.json` package contains a reader interface, a writer interface, and a model builder interface for the object model. This package also contains other utility classes and Java types for JSON elements.
- The `javax.json.stream` package contains a parser interface and a generator interface for the streaming model.

Table 19–1 Main classes and interfaces in `javax.json`

Class or Interface	Description
<code>Json</code>	Contains static methods to create instances of JSON parsers, builders, generators. This class also contains methods to create parser, builder, and generator factory objects.
<code>JsonReader</code>	Reads JSON data from a stream and creates an object model in memory.
<code>JsonObjectBuilder</code> <code>JsonArrayBuilder</code>	Create an object model or an array model in memory by adding elements from application code.
<code>JsonWriter</code>	Writes an object model from memory to a stream.
<code>JsonValue</code>	Represent data types for elements in JSON data.
<code>JsonStructure</code> <code>JsonObject</code> <code>JsonArray</code>	<code>JsonStructure</code> , <code>JsonObject</code> , <code>JsonArray</code> , <code>JsonString</code> and <code>JsonNumber</code> are subtypes of <code>JsonValue</code> . <code>JsonObject</code> and <code>JsonArray</code> are subtypes of <code>JsonStructure</code> .
<code>JsonString</code> <code>JsonNumber</code>	
<code>JsonException</code>	Indicates that a problem occurred during JSON processing.

Table 19–2 Main classes and interfaces in `javax.json.stream`

Class or Interface	Description
<code>JsonParser</code>	Represents an event-based parser that can read JSON data from a stream or from an object model.
<code>JsonGenerator</code>	Writes JSON data to a stream one element at a time.

19.3 Using the Object Model API

This section describes four use cases of the object model API: creating an object model from JSON data, creating an object model from application code, navigating an object model, and writing an object model to a stream.

19.3.1 Creating an Object Model from JSON Data

The following code demonstrates how to create an object model from JSON data in a text file:

```
import java.io.FileReader;
import javax.json.Json;
import javax.json.JsonReader;
import javax.json.JsonStructure;
...
JsonReader reader = Json.createReader(new FileReader("jsondata.txt"));
JsonStructure jsonst = reader.read();
```

The object reference `jsonst` can either be of type `JsonObject` or `JsonArray` depending on the contents of the file. `JsonObject` and `JsonArray` are subtypes of `JsonStructure`. This reference represents the top of the tree and can be used to navigate the tree or to write it to a stream as JSON data.

19.3.2 Creating an Object Model from Application Code

The following code demonstrates how to create an object model from application code:

```
import javax.json.Json;
import javax.json.JsonObject;
...
JsonObject model = Json.createObjectBuilder()
    .add("firstName", "Duke")
    .add("lastName", "Java")
    .add("age", 18)
    .add("streetAddress", "100 Internet Dr")
    .add("city", "JavaTown")
    .add("state", "JA")
    .add("postalCode", "12345")
    .add("phoneNumbers", Json.createArrayBuilder()
        .add(Json.createObjectBuilder()
            .add("type", "mobile")
            .add("number", "111-111-1111"))
        .add(Json.createObjectBuilder()
            .add("type", "home")
            .add("number", "222-222-2222")))
    .build();
```

The object reference `model` represents the top of the tree, which is created by nesting calls to the `add` methods and built by calling the `build` method. The `JsonObjectBuilder` class contains the following `add` methods:

```
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, BigDecimal value)
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, BigInteger value)
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, boolean value)
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, double value)
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, int value)
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, JsonArrayBuilder builder)
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, JsonObjectBuilder builder)
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, JsonValue value)
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, long value)
JsonObjectBuilder add(String name, String value)
JsonObjectBuilder addNull(String name)
```

The `JsonArrayBuilder` class contains similar `add` methods that do not have a `name` (key) parameter. You can nest arrays and objects by passing a new `JsonArrayBuilder`

object or a new `JsonObjectBuilder` object to the corresponding add method as shown in this example.

The resulting tree represents the JSON data from [JSON Syntax](#).

19.3.3 Navigating an Object Model

The following code demonstrates a simple approach to navigating an object model:

```
import javax.json.JsonValue;
import javax.json.JsonObject;
import javax.json.JsonArray;
import javax.json.JsonNumber;
import javax.json.JsonString;
...
public static void navigateTree(JsonValue tree, String key) {
    if (key != null)
        System.out.print("Key " + key + ": ");
    switch(tree.getValueType()) {
        case OBJECT:
            System.out.println("OBJECT");
            JsonObject object = (JsonObject) tree;
            for (String name : object.keySet())
                navigateTree(object.get(name), name);
            break;
        case ARRAY:
            System.out.println("ARRAY");
            JsonArray array = (JsonArray) tree;
            for (JsonValue val : array)
                navigateTree(val, null);
            break;
        case STRING:
            JsonString st = (JsonString) tree;
            System.out.println("STRING " + st.getString());
            break;
        case NUMBER:
            JsonNumber num = (JsonNumber) tree;
            System.out.println("NUMBER " + num.toString());
            break;
        case TRUE:
        case FALSE:
        case NULL:
            System.out.println(tree.getValueType().toString());
            break;
    }
}
```

The method `navigateTree` can be used with the models built in [Creating an Object Model from JSON Data](#) and [Creating an Object Model from Application Code](#) as follows:

```
navigateTree(model, null);
```

The `navigateTree` method takes two arguments: a JSON element and a key. The key is only used to help print the key-value pairs inside objects. Elements in a tree are represented by the `JsonValue` type. If the element is an object or an array, a new call to this method is made for every element contained in the object or array. If the element is a value, it is printed to the standard output.

The `JsonValue.getValueType()` method identifies the element as an object, an array, or a value. For objects, the `JsonObject.keySet()` method returns a set of strings that

contains the keys in the object, and the `JsonObject.get(String name)` method returns the value of the element whose key is `name`. For arrays, `JsonArray` implements the `List<JsonValue>` interface. You can use enhanced for loops with the `Set<String>` instance returned by `JsonObject.keySet()` and with instances of `JsonArray` as shown in this example.

The output of the `navigateTree` method for the model built in [Creating an Object Model from Application Code](#) is the following:

```
OBJECT
Key firstName: STRING Duke
Key lastName: STRING Java
Key age: NUMBER 18
Key streetAddress: STRING 100 Internet Dr
Key city: STRING JavaTown
Key state: STRING JA
Key postalCode: STRING 12345
Key phoneNumbers: ARRAY
OBJECT
Key type: STRING mobile
Key number: STRING 111-111-1111
OBJECT
Key type: STRING home
Key number: STRING 222-222-2222
```

19.3.4 Writing an Object Model to a Stream

The object models created in [Creating an Object Model from JSON Data](#) and [Creating an Object Model from Application Code](#) can be written to a stream using the `JsonWriter` class as follows:

```
import java.io.StringWriter;
import javax.json.JsonWriter;
...
StringWriter stWriter = new StringWriter();
JsonWriter jsonWriter = Json.createWriter(stWriter);
jsonWriter.writeObject(model);
jsonWriter.close();

String jsonData = stWriter.toString();
System.out.println(jsonData);
```

The `Json.createWriter` method takes an output stream as a parameter. The `JsonWriter.writeObject` method writes the object to the stream. The `JsonWriter.close` method closes the underlying output stream.

The following example uses `try-with-resources` to close the JSON writer automatically:

```
StringWriter stWriter = new StringWriter();
try (JsonWriter jsonWriter = Json.createWriter(stWriter)) {
    jsonWriter.writeObject(model);
}

String jsonData = stWriter.toString();
System.out.println(jsonData);
```

19.4 Using the Streaming API

This section describes two use cases of the streaming API: reading JSON data using a parser and writing JSON data using a generator.

19.4.1 Reading JSON Data Using a Parser

The streaming API is the most efficient approach for parsing JSON text. The following code demonstrates how to create a `JsonParser` object and how to parse JSON data using events:

```
import javax.json.Json;
import javax.json.stream.JsonParser;
...
JsonParser parser = Json.createParser(new StringReader(jsonData));
while (parser.hasNext()) {
    JsonParser.Event event = parser.next();
    switch(event) {
        case START_ARRAY:
        case END_ARRAY:
        case START_OBJECT:
        case END_OBJECT:
        case VALUE_FALSE:
        case VALUE_NULL:
        case VALUE_TRUE:
            System.out.println(event.toString());
            break;
        case KEY_NAME:
            System.out.print(event.toString() + " " +
                parser.getString() + " - ");
            break;
        case VALUE_STRING:
        case VALUE_NUMBER:
            System.out.println(event.toString() + " " +
                parser.getString());
            break;
    }
}
```

This example consists of three steps:

1. Obtain a parser instance by calling the `Json.createParser` static method.
2. Iterate over the parser events with the `JsonParser.hasNext()` and the `JsonParser.next()` methods.
3. Perform local processing for each element.

The example shows the ten possible event types from the parser. The parser's `next()` method advances it to the next event. For the event types `KEY_NAME`, `VALUE_STRING`, and `VALUE_NUMBER`, you can obtain the content of the element by calling the method `JsonParser.getString()`. For `VALUE_NUMBER` events, you can also use the methods `JsonParser.getNumberType()`, `JsonParser.getIntValue()`, `JsonParser.getLongValue()`, and `JsonParser.getBigDecimalValue()`. See the JSR-353 API reference for more information.

The output of this example is the following:

```
START_OBJECT
KEY_NAME firstName - VALUE_STRING Duke
KEY_NAME lastName - VALUE_STRING Java
KEY_NAME age - VALUE_NUMBER 18
```

```
KEY_NAME streetAddress - VALUE_STRING 100 Internet Dr
KEY_NAME city - VALUE_STRING JavaTown
KEY_NAME state - VALUE_STRING JA
KEY_NAME postalCode - VALUE_STRING 12345
KEY_NAME phoneNumbers - START_ARRAY
START_OBJECT
KEY_NAME type - VALUE_STRING mobile
KEY_NAME number - VALUE_STRING 111-111-1111
END_OBJECT
START_OBJECT
KEY_NAME type - VALUE_STRING home
KEY_NAME number - VALUE_STRING 222-222-2222
END_OBJECT
END_ARRAY
END_OBJECT
```

19.4.2 Writing JSON Data Using a Generator

The following code demonstrates how to write JSON data to a file using the streaming API:

```
FileWriter writer = new FileWriter("test.txt");
JsonGenerator gen = Json.createGenerator(writer);
gen.writeStartObject()
    .write("firstName", "Duke")
    .write("lastName", "Java")
    .write("age", 18)
    .write("streetAddress", "100 Internet Dr")
    .write("city", "JavaTown")
    .write("state", "JA")
    .write("postalCode", "12345")
    .writeStartArray("phoneNumbers")
        .writeStartObject()
            .write("type", "mobile")
            .write("number", "111-111-1111")
        .writeEnd()
        .writeStartObject()
            .write("type", "home")
            .write("number", "222-222-2222")
        .writeEnd()
    .writeEnd()
.gen.writeEnd();
gen.close();
```

This example obtains a JSON generator by calling the `Json.createGenerator` static method, which takes a writer or an output stream as a parameter. The example writes JSON data to the `test.txt` file by nesting calls to the `write`, `writeStartArray`, `writeStartObject`, and `writeEnd` methods. The `JsonGenerator.close` method closes the underlying writer or output stream.

19.5 JSON in Java EE RESTful Web Services

This section explains how the Java API for JSON Processing is related to other Java EE packages that provide JSON support for RESTful web services. See [Chapter 23, "Building RESTful Web Services with JAX-RS,"](#) for more information on RESTful web services.

Jersey, the reference implementation for JAX-RS (JSR-311) included in GlassFish Server, provides support for binding JSON data from RESTful resource methods to Java objects using JAXB, as described in [Using JAX-RS With JAXB in Chapter 25, "JAX-RS: Advanced Topics and Example"](#). However, JSON support is not part of JAX-RS (JSR-311) or JAX-B (JSR-222), so that procedure may not work for Java EE implementations other than GlassFish Server.

The Java API for JSON Processing (JSR-353) does not explicitly support JSON binding in Java. A future JSR (JSON Binding) that is similar to JAXB for XML is under consideration for a future release of Java EE.

You can still use the Java API for JSON Processing with JAX-RS resource methods. For more information, see the sample code for JSON Processing included with the Java EE 7 SDK.

19.6 The jsonpmodel Example Application

This section describes how to build and run the `jsonpmodel` example application. This example is a web application that demonstrates how to create an object model from form data, how to parse JSON data, and how write JSON data using the object model API.

The `jsonpmodel` example application is in the `tut-install/examples/web/jsonp/jsonpmodel` directory. See [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples,"](#) for basic information on building and running sample applications.

19.6.1 Components of the jsonpmodel Example Application

The `jsonpmodel` example application contains the following files:

- Three Java Server Faces pages:
 - The `index.xhtml` page contains a form to collect information.
 - The `modelcreated.xhtml` page contains a text area that displays JSON data.
 - The `parsejson.xhtml` page contains a table that shows the elements of the object model.
- The `ObjectModelBean.java` managed bean, which is a session bean that stores the data from the form and directs the navigation between the JSF pages. This file also contains code that uses the JSON object model API.

The code used in `ObjectModelBean.java` to create an object model from the data in the form is similar to the example in [Creating an Object Model from Application Code](#). The code to write JSON output from the model is similar to the example in [Writing an Object Model to a Stream](#). The code to navigate the object model tree is similar to the example in [Navigating an Object Model](#).

19.6.2 Running the jsonpmodel Example Application

This section describes how to run the `jsonpmodel` example application using NetBeans IDE and from the command line.

19.6.2.1 To Run the jsonpmodel Example Application Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsonp/
```

3. Select the `jsonpmodel` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `jsonpmodel` project and select **Run**.

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file (`jsonpmodel.war`) located in the `target/` directory, deploys it to the server, and opens a web browser window with the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/jsonpmodel/faces/index.xhtml
```

19.6.2.2 To Run the jsonpmodel Example Application using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsonp/jsonpmodel
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

4. Open a web browser window and type the following address:

```
http://localhost:8080/jsonpmodel/faces/index.xhtml
```

19.7 The jsonpstreaming Example Application

This section describes how to build and run the `jsonpstreaming` example application. This example is a web application that demonstrates how to create JSON data from form data, how to parse JSON data, and how write JSON output using the streaming API.

The `jsonpstreaming` example application is in the `tut-install/examples/web/jsonp/jsonpstreaming` directory. See [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples,"](#) for basic information on building and running sample applications.

19.7.1 Components of the jsonpstreaming Example Application

The `jsonpstreaming` example application contains the following files:

- Three Java Server Faces pages:
 - The `index.xhtml` page contains a form to collect information.
 - The `filewritten.xhtml` page contains a text area that displays JSON data.
 - The `parsed.xhtml` page contains a table that lists the events from the parser.
- The `StreamingBean.java` managed bean, which is a session bean that manages the data from the form and the navigation between the JSF pages. This file also contains code that uses the JSON streaming API.

The code used in `StreamingBean.java` to write JSON data to a file is similar to the example in [Writing JSON Data Using a Generator](#). The code to parse JSON data from a file is similar to the example in [Reading JSON Data Using a Parser](#).

19.7.2 Running the jsonpstreaming Example Application

This section describes how to run the `jsonpstreaming` example application using NetBeans IDE and from the command line.

19.7.2.1 To Run the jsonpstreaming Example Application Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/web/jsonp/`
3. Select the `jsonpstreaming` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `jsonpstreaming` project and select **Run**.

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file (`jsonpstreaming.war`) located in the `target/` directory, deploys it to the server, and opens a web browser window with the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/jsonpstreaming/faces/index.xhtml
```

19.7.2.2 To Run the jsonpstreaming Example Application Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/web/jsonp/jsonpstreaming
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

4. Open a web browser window and type the following address:

```
http://localhost:8080/jsonpstreaming/faces/index.xhtml
```

19.8 Further Information about the Java API for JSON Processing

For more information on JSON processing in Java EE, see the Java API for JSON Processing specification:

```
http://www.jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=353
```

Internationalizing and Localizing Web Applications

The process of preparing an application to support more than one language and data format is called **internationalization**. **Localization** is the process of adapting an internationalized application to support a specific region or locale. Examples of locale-dependent information include messages and user interface labels, character sets and encoding, and date and currency formats. Although all client user interfaces should be internationalized and localized, it is particularly important for web applications because of the global nature of the web.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Java Platform Localization Classes](#)
- [Providing Localized Messages and Labels](#)
- [Date and Number Formatting](#)
- [Character Sets and Encodings](#)

20.1 Java Platform Localization Classes

In the Java platform, `java.util.Locale` (<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api/java/util/Locale.html>) represents a specific geographical, political, or cultural region. The string representation of a locale consists of the international standard two-character abbreviation for language and country and an optional variant, all separated by underscore (`_`) characters. Examples of locale strings include `fr` (French), `de_CH` (Swiss German), and `en_US_POSIX` (English on a POSIX-compliant platform).

Locale-sensitive data is stored in a `java.util.ResourceBundle` (<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api/java/util/ResourceBundle.html>). A resource bundle contains key-value pairs, where the keys uniquely identify a locale-specific object in the bundle. A resource bundle can be backed by a text file (properties resource bundle) or a class (list resource bundle) containing the pairs. You construct resource bundle instance by appending a locale string representation to a base name.

The Duke's Bookstore application contains resource bundles with the base name `messages.properties` for the locales `de` (German), `es` (Spanish), and `fr` (French). The default locale, `en` (English), which is specified in the `faces-config.xml` file, uses the resource bundle with the base name, `messages.properties`.

For more details on internationalization and localization in the Java platform, see (<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/i18n/index.html>).

20.2 Providing Localized Messages and Labels

Messages and labels should be tailored according to the conventions of a user's language and region. There are two approaches to providing localized messages and labels in a web application:

- Provide a version of the web page in each of the target locales and have a controller servlet dispatch the request to the appropriate page depending on the requested locale. This approach is useful if large amounts of data on a page or an entire web application need to be internationalized.
- Isolate any locale-sensitive data on a page into resource bundles, and access the data so that the corresponding translated message is fetched automatically and inserted into the page. Thus, instead of creating strings directly in your code, you create a resource bundle that contains translations and read the translations from that bundle using the corresponding key.

The Duke's Bookstore application follows the second approach. Here are a few lines from the default resource bundle `messages.properties`:

```
TitleShoppingCart=Shopping Cart
TitleReceipt=Receipt
TitleBookCatalog=Book Catalog
TitleCashier=Cashier
TitleBookDescription=Book Description
Visitor=You are visitor number
What=What We're Reading
```

20.2.1 Establishing the Locale

To get the correct strings for a given user, a web application either retrieves the locale (set by a browser language preference) from the request using the `getLocale` method, or allows the user to explicitly select the locale.

A component can explicitly set the locale by using the `fmt:setLocale` tag.

The `locale-config` element in the configuration file registers the default locale and also registers other supported locales. This element in Duke's Bookstore registers English as the default locale and indicates that German, French, and Spanish are supported locales.

```
<locale-config>
  <default-locale>en</default-locale>
  <supported-locale>de</supported-locale>
  <supported-locale>fr</supported-locale>
  <supported-locale>es</supported-locale>
</locale-config>
```

The `LocaleBean` in the Duke's Bookstore application uses the `getLocale` method to retrieve the locale.

```
public class LocaleBean {
    ...
    private FacesContext ctx = FacesContext.getCurrentInstance();
    private Locale locale = ctx.getViewRoot().getLocale();
    ...
}
```

20.2.2 Setting the Resource Bundle

The resource bundle is set with the `resource-bundle` element in the configuration file. The setting for Duke's Bookstore looks like this:

```
<resource-bundle>
  <base-name>javaeetutorial.dukesbookstore.web.messages.Messages</base-name>
  <var>bundle</var>
</resource-bundle>
```

After the locale is set, the controller of a web application could retrieve the resource bundle for that locale and save it as a session attribute (see [Associating Objects with a Session](#)) for use by other components or simply be used to return a text string appropriate for the selected locale:

```
public String toString(Locale locale) {
    ResourceBundle res =
        ResourceBundle.getBundle(
            "javaeetutorial.dukesbookstore.web.messages.Messages", locale);
    return res.getString(name() + ".string");
}
```

Alternatively, an application could use the `f:loadBundle` tag to set the resource bundle. This tag loads the correct resource bundle according to the locale stored in `FacesContext`.

```
<f:loadBundle basename="javaeetutorial.dukesbookstore.web.messages.Messages"
  var="bundle" />
```

Resource bundles containing messages that are explicitly referenced from a JavaServer Faces tag attribute using a value expression must be registered using the `resource-bundle` element of the configuration file.

For more information on using this element, see [Registering Application Messages](#).

20.2.3 Retrieving Localized Messages

A web component written in the Java programming language retrieves the resource bundle from the session:

```
ResourceBundle messages = (ResourceBundle)session.getAttribute("messages");
```

Then it looks up the string associated with the key `person.lastName` as follows:

```
messages.getString("person.lastName");
```

You can only use a `message` or `messages` tag to display messages that are queued onto a component as a result of a converter or validator being registered on the component. The following example shows a `message` tag that displays the error message queued on the `userNo` input component if the validator registered on the component fails to validate the value the user enters into the component.

```
<h:inputText id="userNo" value="#{UserNumberBean.userNumber}">
  <f:validateLongRange minimum="0" maximum="10" />
  ...
</h:inputText>
<h:message
  style="color: red;
  text-decoration: overline" id="errors1" for="userNo"/>
```

For more information on using the `message` or `messages` tags, see [Displaying Error Messages with the `h:message` and `h:messages` Tags](#).

Messages that are not queued on a component and are therefore not loaded automatically are referenced using a value expression. You can reference a localized message from almost any JavaServer Faces tag attribute.

The value expression that references a message has the same notation whether you loaded the resource bundle with the `loadBundle` tag or registered it with the `resource-bundle` element in the configuration file.

The value expression notation is `var.message`, in which `var` matches the `var` attribute of the `loadBundle` tag or the `var` element defined in the `resource-bundle` element of the configuration file, and `message` matches the key of the message contained in the resource bundle, referred to by the `var` attribute.

Here is an example from `bookcashier.xhtml` in Duke's Bookstore:

```
<h:outputLabel for="name" value="#{bundle.Name}" />
```

Notice that `bundle` matches the `var` element from the configuration file and that `Name` matches the key in the resource bundle.

20.3 Date and Number Formatting

Java programs use the `DateFormat.getDateInstance(int, locale)` to parse and format dates in a locale-sensitive manner. Java programs use the `NumberFormat.getXXXInstance(locale)` method, where `XXX` can be `Currency`, `Number`, or `Percent`, to parse and format numerical values in a locale-sensitive manner.

An application can use date/time and number converters to format dates and numbers in a locale-sensitive manner. For example, a shipping date could be converted as follows:

```
<h:outputText value="#{cashier.shipDate}">  
  <f:convertDateTime dateStyle="full"/>  
</h:outputText>
```

For information on JavaServer Faces converters, see [Using the Standard Converters](#).

20.4 Character Sets and Encodings

The following sections describe character sets and character encodings.

20.4.1 Character Sets

A **character set** is a set of textual and graphic symbols, each of which is mapped to a set of nonnegative integers.

The first character set used in computing was US-ASCII. It is limited in that it can represent only American English. US-ASCII contains uppercase and lowercase Latin alphabets, numerals, punctuation, a set of control codes, and a few miscellaneous symbols.

Unicode defines a standardized, universal character set that can be extended to accommodate additions. When the Java program source file encoding doesn't support Unicode, you can represent Unicode characters as escape sequences by using the notation `\uXXXX`, where `XXXX` is the character's 16-bit representation in hexadecimal. For example, the Spanish version of a message file could use Unicode for non-ASCII characters, as follows:

```
admin.nav.main=P\u00e9gina principal de administraci\u00f3n
```

20.4.2 Character Encoding

A **character encoding** maps a character set to units of a specific width and defines byte serialization and ordering rules. Many character sets have more than one encoding. For example, Java programs can represent Japanese character sets using the `EUC-JP` or `Shift-JIS` encodings, among others. Each encoding has rules for representing and serializing a character set.

The ISO 8859 series defines 13 character encodings that can represent texts in dozens of languages. Each ISO 8859 character encoding can have up to 256 characters. ISO-8859-1 (Latin-1) comprises the ASCII character set, characters with diacritics (accents, diaereses, cedillas, circumflexes, and so on), and additional symbols.

UTF-8 (Unicode Transformation Format, 8-bit form) is a variable-width character encoding that encodes 16-bit Unicode characters as one to four bytes. A byte in UTF-8 is equivalent to 7-bit ASCII if its high-order bit is zero; otherwise, the character comprises a variable number of bytes.

UTF-8 is compatible with the majority of existing web content and provides access to the Unicode character set. Current versions of browsers and email clients support UTF-8. In addition, many new web standards specify UTF-8 as their character encoding. For example, UTF-8 is one of the two required encodings for XML documents (the other is UTF-16).

Web components usually use `PrintWriter` to produce responses; `PrintWriter` automatically encodes using ISO-8859-1. Servlets can also output binary data using `OutputStream` classes, which perform no encoding. An application that uses a character set that cannot use the default encoding must explicitly set a different encoding.

Part IV

Web Services

Part IV explores web services. This part contains the following chapters:

- [Chapter 21, "Introduction to Web Services"](#)
- [Chapter 22, "Building Web Services with JAX-WS"](#)
- [Chapter 23, "Building RESTful Web Services with JAX-RS"](#)
- [Chapter 24, "Accessing REST Resources with the JAX-RS Client API,"](#)
- [Chapter 25, "JAX-RS: Advanced Topics and Example"](#)

Introduction to Web Services

This part of the tutorial discusses Java EE 7 web services technologies. These technologies include Java API for XML Web Services (JAX-WS) and Java API for RESTful Web Services (JAX-RS).

The following topics are addressed here:

- [What Are Web Services?](#)
- [Types of Web Services](#)
- [Deciding Which Type of Web Service to Use](#)

21.1 What Are Web Services?

Web services are client and server applications that communicate over the World Wide Web's (WWW) HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP). As described by the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), web services provide a standard means of interoperating between software applications running on a variety of platforms and frameworks. Web services are characterized by their great interoperability and extensibility, as well as their machine-processable descriptions, thanks to the use of XML. Web services can be combined in a loosely coupled way to achieve complex operations. Programs providing simple services can interact with each other to deliver sophisticated added-value services.

21.2 Types of Web Services

On the conceptual level, a service is a software component provided through a network-accessible endpoint. The service consumer and provider use messages to exchange invocation request and response information in the form of self-containing documents that make very few assumptions about the technological capabilities of the receiver.

On a technical level, web services can be implemented in various ways. The two types of web services discussed in this section can be distinguished as "big" web services and "RESTful" web services.

21.2.1 "Big" Web Services

In Java EE 7, JAX-WS provides the functionality for "big" web services, which are described in [Chapter 22, "Building Web Services with JAX-WS"](#). Big web services use XML messages that follow the Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) standard, an XML language defining a message architecture and message formats. Such systems often contain a machine-readable description of the operations offered by the service,

written in the Web Services Description Language (WSDL), an XML language for defining interfaces syntactically.

The SOAP message format and the WSDL interface definition language have gained widespread adoption. Many development tools, such as NetBeans IDE, can reduce the complexity of developing web service applications.

A SOAP-based design must include the following elements.

- A formal contract must be established to describe the interface that the web service offers. WSDL can be used to describe the details of the contract, which may include messages, operations, bindings, and the location of the web service. You may also process SOAP messages in a JAX-WS service without publishing a WSDL.
- The architecture must address complex nonfunctional requirements. Many web service specifications address such requirements and establish a common vocabulary for them. Examples include transactions, security, addressing, trust, coordination, and so on.
- The architecture needs to handle asynchronous processing and invocation. In such cases, the infrastructure provided by standards, such as Web Services Reliable Messaging (WSRM), and APIs, such as JAX-WS, with their client-side asynchronous invocation support, can be leveraged out of the box.

21.2.2 RESTful Web Services

In Java EE 7, JAX-RS provides the functionality for Representational State Transfer (RESTful) web services. REST is well suited for basic, ad hoc integration scenarios. RESTful web services, often better integrated with HTTP than SOAP-based services are, do not require XML messages or WSDL service-API definitions.

Project Jersey is the production-ready reference implementation for the JAX-RS specification. Jersey implements support for the annotations defined in the JAX-RS specification, making it easy for developers to build RESTful web services with Java and the Java Virtual Machine (JVM).

Because RESTful web services use existing well-known W3C and Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standards (HTTP, XML, URI, MIME) and have a lightweight infrastructure that allows services to be built with minimal tooling, developing RESTful web services is inexpensive and thus has a very low barrier for adoption. You can use a development tool such as NetBeans IDE to further reduce the complexity of developing RESTful web services.

A RESTful design may be appropriate when the following conditions are met.

- The web services are completely stateless. A good test is to consider whether the interaction can survive a restart of the server.
- A caching infrastructure can be leveraged for performance. If the data that the web service returns is not dynamically generated and can be cached, the caching infrastructure that web servers and other intermediaries inherently provide can be leveraged to improve performance. However, the developer must take care because such caches are limited to the HTTP GET method for most servers.
- The service producer and service consumer have a mutual understanding of the context and content being passed along. Because there is no formal way to describe the web services interface, both parties must agree out of band on the schemas that describe the data being exchanged and on ways to process it meaningfully. In the real world, most commercial applications that expose services

as RESTful implementations also distribute so-called value-added toolkits that describe the interfaces to developers in popular programming languages.

- Bandwidth is particularly important and needs to be limited. REST is particularly useful for limited-profile devices, such as PDAs and mobile phones, for which the overhead of headers and additional layers of SOAP elements on the XML payload must be restricted.
- Web service delivery or aggregation into existing web sites can be enabled easily with a RESTful style. Developers can use such technologies as JAX-RS and Asynchronous JavaScript with XML (AJAX) and such toolkits as Direct Web Remoting (DWR) to consume the services in their web applications. Rather than starting from scratch, services can be exposed with XML and consumed by HTML pages without significantly refactoring the existing web site architecture. Existing developers will be more productive because they are adding to something they are already familiar with rather than having to start from scratch with new technology.

RESTful web services are discussed in [Chapter 23, "Building RESTful Web Services with JAX-RS"](#). This chapter contains information about generating the skeleton of a RESTful web service using both NetBeans IDE and the Maven project management tool.

21.3 Deciding Which Type of Web Service to Use

Basically, you would want to use RESTful web services for integration over the web and use big web services in enterprise application integration scenarios that have advanced quality of service (QoS) requirements.

- **JAX-WS:** addresses advanced QoS requirements commonly occurring in enterprise computing. When compared to JAX-RS, JAX-WS makes it easier to support the WS-* set of protocols, which provide standards for security and reliability, among other things, and interoperate with other WS-* conforming clients and servers.
- **JAX-RS:** makes it easier to write web applications that apply some or all of the constraints of the REST style to induce desirable properties in the application, such as loose coupling (evolving the server is easier without breaking existing clients), scalability (start small and grow), and architectural simplicity (use off-the-shelf components, such as proxies or HTTP routers). You would choose to use JAX-RS for your web application because it is easier for many types of clients to consume RESTful web services while enabling the server side to evolve and scale. Clients can choose to consume some or all aspects of the service and mash it up with other web-based services.

Note: For an article that provides more in-depth analysis of this issue, see "RESTful Web Services vs. "Big" Web Services: Making the Right Architectural Decision," by Cesare Pautasso, Olaf Zimmermann, and Frank Leymann from WWW '08: Proceedings of the 17th International Conference on the World Wide Web (2008), pp. 805-814 (<http://www2008.org/papers/pdf/p805-pautassoA.pdf>).

Building Web Services with JAX-WS

Java API for XML Web Services (JAX-WS) is a technology for building web services and clients that communicate using XML. JAX-WS allows developers to write message-oriented as well as Remote Procedure Call-oriented (RPC-oriented) web services.

In JAX-WS, a web service operation invocation is represented by an XML-based protocol, such as SOAP. The SOAP specification defines the envelope structure, encoding rules, and conventions for representing web service invocations and responses. These calls and responses are transmitted as SOAP messages (XML files) over HTTP.

Although SOAP messages are complex, the JAX-WS API hides this complexity from the application developer. On the server side, the developer specifies the web service operations by defining methods in an interface written in the Java programming language. The developer also codes one or more classes that implement those methods. Client programs are also easy to code. A client creates a proxy (a local object representing the service) and then simply invokes methods on the proxy. With JAX-WS, the developer does not generate or parse SOAP messages. It is the JAX-WS runtime system that converts the API calls and responses to and from SOAP messages.

With JAX-WS, clients and web services have a big advantage: the platform independence of the Java programming language. In addition, JAX-WS is not restrictive: A JAX-WS client can access a web service that is not running on the Java platform, and vice versa. This flexibility is possible because JAX-WS uses technologies defined by the W3C: HTTP, SOAP, and WSDL. WSDL specifies an XML format for describing a service as a set of endpoints operating on messages.

Note: Several files in the JAX-WS examples depend on the port that you specified when you installed the GlassFish Server. These tutorial examples assume that the server runs on the default port, 8080. They do not run with a nondefault port setting.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Creating a Simple Web Service and Clients with JAX-WS](#)
- [Types Supported by JAX-WS](#)
- [Web Services Interoperability and JAX-WS](#)
- [Further Information about JAX-WS](#)

22.1 Creating a Simple Web Service and Clients with JAX-WS

This section shows how to build and deploy a simple web service and two clients: an application client and a web client. The source code for the service is in the `tut-install/examples/jaxws/hello-service-war/` directory, and the clients are in the `tut-install/examples/jaxws/hello-appclient/` and `tut-install/examples/jaxws/hello-webclient/` directories.

Figure 22–1 illustrates how JAX-WS technology manages communication between a web service and a client.

Figure 22–1 Communication between a JAX-WS Web Service and a Client



The starting point for developing a JAX-WS web service is a Java class annotated with the `javax.jws.WebService` annotation. The `@WebService` annotation defines the class as a web service endpoint.

A **service endpoint interface** or **service endpoint implementation** (SEI) is a Java interface or class, respectively, that declares the methods that a client can invoke on the service. An interface is not required when building a JAX-WS endpoint. The web service implementation class implicitly defines an SEI.

You may specify an explicit interface by adding the `endpointInterface` element to the `@WebService` annotation in the implementation class. You must then provide an interface that defines the public methods made available in the endpoint implementation class.

The basic steps for creating a web service and client are as follows:

1. Code the implementation class.
2. Compile the implementation class.
3. Package the files into a WAR file.
4. Deploy the WAR file. The web service artifacts, which are used to communicate with clients, are generated by the GlassFish Server during deployment.
5. Code the client class.
6. Use the `wsimport` Maven goal to generate and compile the web service artifacts needed to connect to the service.
7. Compile the client class.
8. Run the client.

If you use NetBeans IDE to create a service and client, the IDE performs the `wsimport` task for you.

The sections that follow cover these steps in greater detail.

22.1.1 Requirements of a JAX-WS Endpoint

JAX-WS endpoints must follow these requirements.

- The implementing class must be annotated with either the `javax.jws.WebService` or the `javax.jws.WebServiceProvider` annotation.
- The implementing class may explicitly reference an SEI through the `endpointInterface` element of the `@WebService` annotation but is not required to do so. If no `endpointInterface` is specified in `@WebService`, an SEI is implicitly defined for the implementing class.
- The business methods of the implementing class must be public and must not be declared `static` or `final`.
- Business methods that are exposed to web service clients must be annotated with `javax.jws.WebMethod`.
- Business methods that are exposed to web service clients must have JAXB-compatible parameters and return types. See the list of JAXB default data type bindings at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/5/tutorial/doc/bnazq.html#bnazs>.
- The implementing class must not be declared `final` and must not be abstract.
- The implementing class must have a default public constructor.
- The implementing class must not define the `finalize` method.
- The implementing class may use the `javax.annotation.PostConstruct` or the `javax.annotation.PreDestroy` annotations on its methods for lifecycle event callbacks.

The `@PostConstruct` method is called by the container before the implementing class begins responding to web service clients.

The `@PreDestroy` method is called by the container before the endpoint is removed from operation.

22.1.2 Coding the Service Endpoint Implementation Class

In this example, the implementation class, `Hello`, is annotated as a web service endpoint using the `@WebService` annotation. `Hello` declares a single method named `sayHello`, annotated with the `@WebMethod` annotation, which exposes the annotated method to web service clients. The `sayHello` method returns a greeting to the client, using the name passed to it to compose the greeting. The implementation class also must define a default, public, no-argument constructor.

```
package helloservice.endpoint;

import javax.jws.WebService;
import javax.jws.WebMethod;

@WebService
public class Hello {
    private String message = new String("Hello, ");

    public void Hello() {
    }

    @WebMethod
    public String sayHello(String name) {
        return message + name + ".";
    }
}
```

22.1.3 Building, Packaging, and Deploying the Service

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, and deploy the `helloservice-war` application.

22.1.3.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the Service Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/jaxws/`
3. Select the `helloservice-war` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `helloservice-war` project and select **Run**.

This command builds and packages the application into `helloservice.war`, located in `tut-install/examples/jaxws/helloservice-war/target/`, and deploys this WAR file to the GlassFish Server.

Next Steps

You can view the WSDL file of the deployed service by requesting the URL `http://localhost:8080/helloservice-war/HelloService?wsdl` in a web browser. Now you are ready to create a client that accesses this service.

22.1.3.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the Service Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/jaxws/helloservice-war/`
2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `helloservice-war.war`, located in the `target` directory, and then deploys the WAR to your GlassFish Server instance.

Next Steps

You can view the WSDL file of the deployed service by requesting the URL `http://localhost:8080/helloservice-war/HelloService?wsdl` in a web browser. Now you are ready to create a client that accesses this service.

22.1.4 Testing the Methods of a Web Service Endpoint

GlassFish Server allows you to test the methods of a web service endpoint.

22.1.4.1 To Test the Service without a Client

To test the `sayHello` method of `HelloService`, follow these steps.

1. Open the web service test interface by entering the following URL in a web browser:

```
http://localhost:8080/helloservice-war/HelloService?Tester
```

2. Under **Methods**, enter a name as the parameter to the `sayHello` method.
3. Click **sayHello**.

This takes you to the `sayHello` Method invocation page.

Under **Method returned**, you'll see the response from the endpoint.

22.1.5 A Simple JAX-WS Application Client

The `HelloAppClient` class is a stand-alone application client that accesses the `sayHello` method of `HelloService`. This call is made through a port, a local object that acts as a proxy for the remote service. The port is created at development time by the `wsimport` Maven goal, which generates JAX-WS portable artifacts based on a WSDL file.

22.1.5.1 Coding the Application Client

When invoking the remote methods on the port, the client performs these steps:

1. Uses the generated `helloservice.endpoint>HelloService` class, which represents the service at the URI of the deployed service's WSDL file:

```
import helloservice.endpoint>HelloService;
import javax.xml.ws.WebServiceRef;

public class HelloAppClient {
    @WebServiceRef(wsdlLocation =
        "META-INF/wsdl/localhost_8080/helloservice/HelloService.wsdl")
    private static HelloService service;
```

2. Retrieves a proxy to the service, also known as a port, by invoking `getHelloPort` on the service:

```
helloservice.endpoint>Hello port = service.getHelloPort();
```

The port implements the SEI defined by the service.

3. Invokes the port's `sayHello` method, passing a string to the service:

```
return port.sayHello(arg0);
```

Here is the full source of `HelloAppClient`, which is located in the `tut-install/examples/jaxws/hello-appclient/src/main/java/appclient/` directory :

```
package appclient;

import helloservice.endpoint>HelloService;
import javax.xml.ws.WebServiceRef;

public class HelloAppClient {
    @WebServiceRef(wsdlLocation =
        "META-INF/wsdl/localhost_8080/helloservice/HelloService.wsdl")
    private static HelloService service;

    /**
     * @param args the command line arguments
     */
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println(sayHello("world"));
    }

    private static String sayHello(java.lang.String arg0) {
```

```
        helloservice.endpoint.Hello port = service.getHelloPort();
        return port.sayHello(arg0);
    }
}
```

22.1.5.2 Running the Application Client

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the `hello-appclient` application. To build the client, you must first have deployed `helloservice-war`, as described in [Building, Packaging, and Deploying the Service](#).

To Run the Application Client Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/jaxws/`
3. Select the `hello-appclient` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `hello-appclient` project and select **Run**.
You will see the output of the application client in the **Output** tab.

To Run the Application Client Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/jaxws/hello-appclient/`
2. Enter the following command:
`mvn install`

This command runs the `wsimport` goal then builds, packages, and runs the client.

22.1.6 A Simple JAX-WS Web Client

`HelloServlet` is a servlet that, like the Java client, calls the `sayHello` method of the web service. Like the application client, it makes this call through a port.

22.1.6.1 Coding the Servlet

To invoke the method on the port, the client performs these steps:

1. Imports the `HelloService` endpoint and the `WebServiceRef` annotation:

```
import helloservice.endpoint.HelloService;
...
import javax.xml.ws.WebServiceRef;
```
2. Defines a reference to the web service by specifying the WSDL location:

```
@WebServiceRef(wsdlLocation =
    "WEB-INF/wsdl/localhost_8080/helloservice/HelloService.wsdl")
```
3. Declares the web service, then defines a private method that calls the `sayHello` method on the port:

```
private HelloService service;
...
```

```

private String sayHello(java.lang.String arg0) {
    helloservice.endpoint.Hello port = service.getHelloPort();
    return port.sayHello(arg0);
}

```

4. In the servlet, calls this private method:

```
out.println("<p>" + sayHello("world") + "</p>");
```

The significant parts of the `HelloServlet` code follow. The code is located in the *tut-install/examples/jaxws/src/java/hello-webclient/* directory.

```

package webclient;

import helloservice.endpoint.HelloService;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.PrintWriter;
import javax.servlet.ServletException;
import javax.servlet.annotation.WebServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse;
import javax.xml.ws.WebServiceRef;

@WebServlet(name="HelloServlet", urlPatterns={"/HelloServlet"})
public class HelloServlet extends HttpServlet {
    @WebServiceRef(wsdlLocation =
        "WEB-INF/wsdl/localhost_8080/helloservice/HelloService.wsdl")
    private HelloService service;

    /**
     * Processes requests for both HTTP <code>GET</code>
     * and <code>POST</code> methods.
     * @param request servlet request
     * @param response servlet response
     * @throws ServletException if a servlet-specific error occurs
     * @throws IOException if an I/O error occurs
     */
    protected void processRequest(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response)
        throws ServletException, IOException {
        response.setContentType("text/html;charset=UTF-8");
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();
        try {

            out.println("<html lang=\"en\">");
            out.println("<head>");
            out.println("<title>Servlet HelloServlet</title>");
            out.println("</head>");
            out.println("<body>");
            out.println("<h1>Servlet HelloServlet at " +
                request.getContextPath () + "</h1>");
            out.println("<p>" + sayHello("world") + "</p>");
            out.println("</body>");
            out.println("</html>");

        } finally {
            out.close();
        }
    }
}

```

```
// doGet and doPost methods, which call processRequest, and
//   getServletInfo method

private String sayHello(java.lang.String arg0) {
    helloservice.endpoint.Hello port = service.getHelloPort();
    return port.sayHello(arg0);
}
}
```

22.1.6.2 Running the Web Client

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the `hello-webclient` application. To build the client, you must first have deployed `helloservice-war`, as described in [Building, Packaging, and Deploying the Service](#).

To Run the Web Client Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/jaxws/
```

3. Select the `hello-webclient` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `hello-webclient` project and select **Run**.

This task runs the `wsimport` goal, builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `hello-webclient.war`, located in the target directory, and deploys it to GlassFish Server.

6. In a web browser, navigate to the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/hello-webclient/HelloServlet
```

The output of the `sayHello` method appears in the window.

To Run the Web Client Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/jaxws/hello-webclient/
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command runs the `wsimport` goal, then build and packages the application into a WAR file, `hello-webclient.war`, located in the target directory. The WAR file is then deployed to GlassFish Server.

3. In a web browser, navigate to the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/hello-webclient/HelloServlet
```

The output of the `sayHello` method appears in the window.

22.2 Types Supported by JAX-WS

JAX-WS delegates the mapping of Java programming language types to and from XML definitions to JAXB. Application developers don't need to know the details of

these mappings but should be aware that not every class in the Java language can be used as a method parameter or return type in JAX-WS.

The following sections explain the default schema-to-Java and Java-to-schema data type bindings.

22.2.1 Schema-to-Java Mapping

The Java language provides a richer set of data type than XML schema. [Table 22–1](#) lists the mapping of XML data types to Java data types in JAXB.

Table 22–1 *JAXB Mapping of XML Schema Built-in Data Types*

XML Schema Type	Java Data Type
xsd:string	java.lang.String
xsd:integer	java.math.BigInteger
xsd:int	int
xsd:long	long
xsd:short	short
xsd:decimal	java.math.BigDecimal
xsd:float	float
xsd:double	double
xsd:boolean	boolean
xsd:byte	byte
xsd:QName	javax.xml.namespace.QName
xsd:dateTime	javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar
xsd:base64Binary	byte[]
xsd:hexBinary	byte[]
xsd:unsignedInt	long
xsd:unsignedShort	int
xsd:unsignedByte	short
xsd:time	javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar
xsd:date	javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar
xsd:g	javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar
xsd:anySimpleType	java.lang.Object
xsd:anySimpleType	java.lang.String
xsd:duration	javax.xml.datatype.Duration
xsd:NOTATION	javax.xml.namespace.QName

22.2.2 Java-to-Schema Mapping

[Table 22–2](#) shows the default mapping of Java classes to XML data types.

Table 22–2 JAXB Mapping of XML Data Types to Java Classes

Java Class	XML Data Type
<code>java.lang.String</code>	<code>xs:string</code>
<code>java.math.BigInteger</code>	<code>xs:integer</code>
<code>java.math.BigDecimal</code>	<code>xs:decimal</code>
<code>java.util.Calendar</code>	<code>xs:dateTime</code>
<code>java.util.Date</code>	<code>xs:dateTime</code>
<code>javax.xml.namespace.QName</code>	<code>xs:QName</code>
<code>java.net.URI</code>	<code>xs:string</code>
<code>javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar</code>	<code>xs:anySimpleType</code>
<code>javax.xml.datatype.Duration</code>	<code>xs:duration</code>
<code>java.lang.Object</code>	<code>xs:anyType</code>
<code>java.awt.Image</code>	<code>xs:base64Binary</code>
<code>javax.activation.DataHandler</code>	<code>xs:base64Binary</code>
<code>javax.xml.transform.Source</code>	<code>xs:base64Binary</code>
<code>java.util.UUID</code>	<code>xs:string</code>

22.3 Web Services Interoperability and JAX-WS

JAX-WS supports the Web Services Interoperability (WS-I) Basic Profile Version 1.1. The WS-I Basic Profile is a document that clarifies the SOAP 1.1 and WSDL 1.1 specifications to promote SOAP interoperability. For links related to WS-I, see [Further Information about JAX-WS](#).

To support WS-I Basic Profile Version 1.1, the JAX-WS runtime supports doc/literal and rpc/literal encodings for services, static ports, dynamic proxies, and the Dynamic Invocation Interface (DII).

22.4 Further Information about JAX-WS

For more information about JAX-WS and related technologies, see

- Java API for XML Web Services 2.2 specification:
<http://jcp.org/aboutJava/communityprocess/mrel/jsr224/index4.html>
- JAX-WS home:
<https://jax-ws.java.net/>
- Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.2 W3C Note:
<http://www.w3.org/TR/soap/>
- Web Services Description Language (WSDL) 1.1 W3C Note:
<http://www.w3.org/TR/wsdl>
- WS-I Basic Profile 1.1:
<http://www.ws-i.org>

Building RESTful Web Services with JAX-RS

This chapter describes the REST architecture, RESTful web services, and the Java API for RESTful Web Services (JAX-RS, defined in JSR 339).

JAX-RS makes it easy for developers to build RESTful web services using the Java programming language.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [What Are RESTful Web Services?](#)
- [Creating a RESTful Root Resource Class](#)
- [Example Applications for JAX-RS](#)
- [Further Information about JAX-RS](#)

23.1 What Are RESTful Web Services?

RESTful web services are loosely coupled, lightweight web services that are particularly well suited for creating APIs for clients spread out across the internet. Representational State Transfer (REST) is an architectural style of client-server application centered around the **transfer of representations of resources** through requests and responses. In the REST architectural style, data and functionality are considered resources and are accessed using **Uniform Resource Identifiers (URIs)**, typically links on the Web. The resources are represented by documents, and are acted upon by using a set of simple, well-defined operations.

For example, a REST resource might be the current weather conditions for a city. The representation of that resource might be an XML document, or an image file, or an HTML page. A client might retrieve a particular representation, modify the resource by updating its data, or delete the resource entirely.

The REST architectural style is designed to use a stateless communication protocol, typically HTTP. In the REST architecture style, clients and servers exchange representations of resources by using a standardized interface and protocol.

The following principles encourage RESTful applications to be simple, lightweight, and fast:

- **Resource identification through URI:** A RESTful web service exposes a set of resources that identify the targets of the interaction with its clients. Resources are identified by URIs, which provide a global addressing space for resource and service discovery. See [The @Path Annotation and URI Path Templates](#) for more information.
- **Uniform interface:** Resources are manipulated using a fixed set of four create, read, update, delete operations: PUT, GET, POST, and DELETE. PUT creates a new

resource, which can be then deleted by using `DELETE`. `GET` retrieves the current state of a resource in some representation. `POST` transfers a new state onto a resource. See [Responding to HTTP Methods and Requests](#) for more information.

- Self-descriptive messages:** Resources are decoupled from their representation so that their content can be accessed in a variety of formats, such as HTML, XML, plain text, PDF, JPEG, JSON, and other document formats. Metadata about the resource is available and used, for example, to control caching, detect transmission errors, negotiate the appropriate representation format, and perform authentication or access control. See [Responding to HTTP Methods and Requests](#) and [Using Entity Providers to Map HTTP Response and Request Entity Bodies](#) for more information.
- Stateful interactions through links:** Every interaction with a resource is stateless; that is, request messages are self-contained. Stateful interactions are based on the concept of explicit state transfer. Several techniques exist to exchange state, such as URI rewriting, cookies, and hidden form fields. State can be embedded in response messages to point to valid future states of the interaction. See [Using Entity Providers to Map HTTP Response and Request Entity Bodies](#) and "Building URIs" in the JAX-RS Overview document for more information.

23.2 Creating a RESTful Root Resource Class

Root resource classes are "plain old Java objects" (POJOs) that are either annotated with `@Path` or have at least one method annotated with `@Path` or a **request method designator**, such as `@GET`, `@PUT`, `@POST`, or `@DELETE`. **Resource methods** are methods of a resource class annotated with a request method designator. This section explains how to use JAX-RS to annotate Java classes to create RESTful web services.

23.2.1 Developing RESTful Web Services with JAX-RS

JAX-RS is a Java programming language API designed to make it easy to develop applications that use the REST architecture.

The JAX-RS API uses Java programming language annotations to simplify the development of RESTful web services. Developers decorate Java programming language class files with JAX-RS annotations to define resources and the actions that can be performed on those resources. JAX-RS annotations are runtime annotations; therefore, runtime reflection will generate the helper classes and artifacts for the resource. A Java EE application archive containing JAX-RS resource classes will have the resources configured, the helper classes and artifacts generated, and the resource exposed to clients by deploying the archive to a Java EE server.

[Table 23–1](#) lists some of the Java programming annotations that are defined by JAX-RS, with a brief description of how each is used. Further information on the JAX-RS APIs can be viewed at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/api/>.

Table 23–1 Summary of JAX-RS Annotations

Annotation	Description
<code>@Path</code>	The <code>@Path</code> annotation's value is a relative URI path indicating where the Java class will be hosted: for example, <code>/helloWorld</code> . You can also embed variables in the URIs to make a URI path template. For example, you could ask for the name of a user and pass it to the application as a variable in the URI: <code>/helloWorld/{username}</code> .

Table 23–1 (Cont.) Summary of JAX-RS Annotations

Annotation	Description
@GET	The @GET annotation is a request method designator and corresponds to the similarly named HTTP method. The Java method annotated with this request method designator will process HTTP GET requests. The behavior of a resource is determined by the HTTP method to which the resource is responding.
@POST	The @POST annotation is a request method designator and corresponds to the similarly named HTTP method. The Java method annotated with this request method designator will process HTTP POST requests. The behavior of a resource is determined by the HTTP method to which the resource is responding.
@PUT	The @PUT annotation is a request method designator and corresponds to the similarly named HTTP method. The Java method annotated with this request method designator will process HTTP PUT requests. The behavior of a resource is determined by the HTTP method to which the resource is responding.
@DELETE	The @DELETE annotation is a request method designator and corresponds to the similarly named HTTP method. The Java method annotated with this request method designator will process HTTP DELETE requests. The behavior of a resource is determined by the HTTP method to which the resource is responding.
@HEAD	The @HEAD annotation is a request method designator and corresponds to the similarly named HTTP method. The Java method annotated with this request method designator will process HTTP HEAD requests. The behavior of a resource is determined by the HTTP method to which the resource is responding.
@PathParam	The @PathParam annotation is a type of parameter that you can extract for use in your resource class. URI path parameters are extracted from the request URI, and the parameter names correspond to the URI path template variable names specified in the @Path class-level annotation.
@QueryParam	The @QueryParam annotation is a type of parameter that you can extract for use in your resource class. Query parameters are extracted from the request URI query parameters.
@Consumes	The @Consumes annotation is used to specify the MIME media types of representations a resource can consume that were sent by the client.
@Produces	The @Produces annotation is used to specify the MIME media types of representations a resource can produce and send back to the client: for example, "text/plain".
@Provider	The @Provider annotation is used for anything that is of interest to the JAX-RS runtime, such as <code>MessageBodyReader</code> and <code>MessageBodyWriter</code> . For HTTP requests, the <code>MessageBodyReader</code> is used to map an HTTP request entity body to method parameters. On the response side, a return value is mapped to an HTTP response entity body by using a <code>MessageBodyWriter</code> . If the application needs to supply additional metadata, such as HTTP headers or a different status code, a method can return a <code>Response</code> that wraps the entity and that can be built using <code>Response.ResponseBuilder</code> .

23.2.2 Overview of a JAX-RS Application

The following code sample is a very simple example of a root resource class that uses JAX-RS annotations:

```
package javaeetutorial.hello;

import javax.ws.rs.Consumes;
import javax.ws.rs.GET;
```

```
import javax.ws.rs.PUT;
import javax.ws.rs.Path;
import javax.ws.rs.Produces;
import javax.ws.rs.core.Context;
import javax.ws.rs.core.UriInfo;

/**
 * Root resource (exposed at "helloworld" path)
 */
@Path("helloworld")
public class HelloWorld {
    @Context
    private UriInfo context;

    /** Creates a new instance of HelloWorld */
    public HelloWorld() {
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves representation of an instance of helloworld.HelloWorld
     * @return an instance of java.lang.String
     */
    @GET
    @Produces("text/html")
    public String getHtml() {
        return "<html lang=\"en\"><body><h1>Hello, World!!</h1></body></html>";
    }
}
```

The following sections describe the annotations used in this example.

- The `@Path` annotation's value is a relative URI path. In the preceding example, the Java class will be hosted at the URI path `/helloworld`. This is an extremely simple use of the `@Path` annotation, with a static URI path. Variables can be embedded in the URIs. **URI path templates** are URIs with variables embedded within the URI syntax.
- The `@GET` annotation is a request method designator, along with `@POST`, `@PUT`, `@DELETE`, and `@HEAD`, defined by JAX-RS and corresponding to the similarly named HTTP methods. In the example, the annotated Java method will process HTTP `GET` requests. The behavior of a resource is determined by the HTTP method to which the resource is responding.
- The `@Produces` annotation is used to specify the MIME media types a resource can produce and send back to the client. In this example, the Java method will produce representations identified by the MIME media type `"text/plain"`.
- The `@Consumes` annotation is used to specify the MIME media types a resource can consume that were sent by the client. The example could be modified to set the message returned by the `getClichedMessage` method, as shown in this code example:

```
@POST
@Consumes("text/plain")
public void postClichedMessage(String message) {
    // Store the message
}
```

23.2.3 The @Path Annotation and URI Path Templates

The @Path annotation identifies the URI path template to which the resource responds and is specified at the class or method level of a resource. The @Path annotation's value is a partial URI path template relative to the base URI of the server on which the resource is deployed, the context root of the application, and the URL pattern to which the JAX-RS runtime responds.

URI path templates are URIs with variables embedded within the URI syntax. These variables are substituted at runtime in order for a resource to respond to a request based on the substituted URI. Variables are denoted by braces ({ and }). For example, look at the following @Path annotation:

```
@Path("/users/{username}")
```

In this kind of example, a user is prompted to type his or her name, and then a JAX-RS web service configured to respond to requests to this URI path template responds. For example, if the user types the user name "Galileo," the web service responds to the following URL:

```
http://example.com/users/Galileo
```

To obtain the value of the user name, the @PathParam annotation may be used on the method parameter of a request method, as shown in the following code example:

```
@Path("/users/{username}")
public class UserResource {

    @GET
    @Produces("text/xml")
    public String getUser(@PathParam("username") String userName) {
        ...
    }
}
```

By default, the URI variable must match the regular expression "[^/]+?". This variable may be customized by specifying a different regular expression after the variable name. For example, if a user name must consist only of lowercase and uppercase alphanumeric characters, override the default regular expression in the variable definition:

```
@Path("users/{username: [a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z_0-9]*}")
```

In this example the username variable will match only user names that begin with one uppercase or lowercase letter and zero or more alphanumeric characters and the underscore character. If a user name does not match that template, a 404 (Not Found) response will be sent to the client.

A @Path value isn't required to have leading or trailing slashes (/). The JAX-RS runtime parses URI path templates the same whether or not they have leading or trailing slashes.

A URI path template has one or more variables, with each variable name surrounded by braces: { to begin the variable name and } to end it. In the preceding example, username is the variable name. At runtime, a resource configured to respond to the preceding URI path template will attempt to process the URI data that corresponds to the location of {username} in the URI as the variable data for username.

For example, if you want to deploy a resource that responds to the URI path template `http://example.com/myContextRoot/resources/{name1}/{name2}/`, you must deploy the application to a Java EE server that responds to requests to the

http://example.com/myContextRoot URI and then decorate your resource with the following `@Path` annotation:

```
@Path("/{name1}/{name2}/")
public class SomeResource {
    ...
}
```

In this example, the URL pattern for the JAX-RS helper servlet, specified in `web.xml`, is the default:

```
<servlet-mapping>
    <servlet-name>javax.ws.rs.core.Application</servlet-name>
    <url-pattern>/resources/*</url-pattern>
</servlet-mapping>
```

A variable name can be used more than once in the URI path template.

If a character in the value of a variable would conflict with the reserved characters of a URI, the conflicting character should be substituted with percent encoding. For example, spaces in the value of a variable should be substituted with `%20`.

When defining URI path templates, be careful that the resulting URI after substitution is valid.

Table 23–2 lists some examples of URI path template variables and how the URIs are resolved after substitution. The following variable names and values are used in the examples:

- name1: james
- name2: gatz
- name3:
- location: Main%20Street
- question: why

Note: The value of the `name3` variable is an empty string.

Table 23–2 Examples of URI Path Templates

URI Path Template	URI After Substitution
http://example.com/{name1}/{name2}/	http://example.com/james/gatz/
http://example.com/{question}/linebreak{question}/{question}/	http://example.com/why/why/why/
http://example.com/maps/{location}	http://example.com/maps/Main%20Street
http://example.com/{name3}/home/	http://example.com//home/

23.2.4 Responding to HTTP Methods and Requests

The behavior of a resource is determined by the HTTP methods (typically, `GET`, `POST`, `PUT`, `DELETE`) to which the resource is responding.

23.2.4.1 The Request Method Designator Annotations

Request method designator annotations are runtime annotations, defined by JAX-RS, that correspond to the similarly named HTTP methods. Within a resource class file,

HTTP methods are mapped to Java programming language methods by using the request method designator annotations. The behavior of a resource is determined by which HTTP method the resource is responding to. JAX-RS defines a set of request method designators for the common HTTP methods `@GET`, `@POST`, `@PUT`, `@DELETE`, and `@HEAD`; you can also create your own custom request method designators. Creating custom request method designators is outside the scope of this document.

The following example, an extract from the storage service sample, shows the use of the `PUT` method to create or update a storage container:

```
@PUT
public Response putContainer() {
    System.out.println("PUT CONTAINER " + container);

    URI uri = uriInfo.getAbsolutePath();
    Container c = new Container(container, uri.toString());

    Response r;
    if (!MemoryStore.MS.hasContainer(c)) {
        r = Response.created(uri).build();
    } else {
        r = Response.noContent().build();
    }

    MemoryStore.MS.createContainer(c);
    return r;
}
```

By default, the JAX-RS runtime will automatically support the methods `HEAD` and `OPTIONS` if not explicitly implemented. For `HEAD`, the runtime will invoke the implemented `GET` method, if present, and ignore the response entity, if set. For `OPTIONS`, the `Allow` response header will be set to the set of HTTP methods supported by the resource. In addition, the JAX-RS runtime will return a Web Application Definition Language (WADL) document describing the resource; see <http://www.w3.org/Submission/wadl/> for more information.

Methods decorated with request method designators must return `void`, a Java programming language type, or a `javax.ws.rs.core.Response` object. Multiple parameters may be extracted from the URI by using the `@PathParam` or `@QueryParam` annotations as described in [Extracting Request Parameters](#). Conversion between Java types and an entity body is the responsibility of an entity provider, such as `MessageBodyReader` or `MessageBodyWriter`. Methods that need to provide additional metadata with a response should return an instance of the `Response` class. The `ResponseBuilder` class provides a convenient way to create a `Response` instance using a builder pattern. The HTTP `PUT` and `POST` methods expect an HTTP request body, so you should use a `MessageBodyReader` for methods that respond to `PUT` and `POST` requests.

Both `@PUT` and `@POST` can be used to create or update a resource. `POST` can mean anything, so when using `POST`, it is up to the application to define the semantics. `PUT` has well-defined semantics. When using `PUT` for creation, the client declares the URI for the newly created resource.

`PUT` has very clear semantics for creating and updating a resource. The representation the client sends must be the same representation that is received using a `GET`, given the same media type. `PUT` does not allow a resource to be partially updated, a common mistake when attempting to use the `PUT` method. A common application pattern is to use `POST` to create a resource and return a `201` response with a location header whose

value is the URI to the newly created resource. In this pattern, the web service declares the URI for the newly created resource.

23.2.4.2 Using Entity Providers to Map HTTP Response and Request Entity Bodies

Entity providers supply mapping services between representations and their associated Java types. The two types of entity providers are `MessageBodyReader` and `MessageBodyWriter`. For HTTP requests, the `MessageBodyReader` is used to map an HTTP request entity body to method parameters. On the response side, a return value is mapped to an HTTP response entity body by using a `MessageBodyWriter`. If the application needs to supply additional metadata, such as HTTP headers or a different status code, a method can return a `Response` that wraps the entity and that can be built by using `Response.ResponseBuilder`.

[Table 23–3](#) shows the standard types that are supported automatically for HTTP request and response entity bodies. You need to write an entity provider only if you are not choosing one of these standard types.

Table 23–3 *Types Supported for HTTP Request and Response Entity Bodies*

Java Type	Supported Media Types
<code>byte[]</code>	All media types (<code>*/*</code>)
<code>java.lang.String</code>	All text media types (<code>text/*</code>)
<code>java.io.InputStream</code>	All media types (<code>*/*</code>)
<code>java.io.Reader</code>	All media types (<code>*/*</code>)
<code>java.io.File</code>	All media types (<code>*/*</code>)
<code>javax.activation.DataSource</code>	All media types (<code>*/*</code>)
<code>javax.xml.transform.Source</code>	XML media types (<code>text/xml</code> , <code>application/xml</code> , and <code>application/*+xml</code>)
<code>javax.xml.bind.JAXBElement</code> and application-supplied JAXB classes	XML media types (<code>text/xml</code> , <code>application/xml</code> , and <code>application/*+xml</code>)
<code>MultivaluedMap<String, String></code>	Form content (<code>application/x-www-form-urlencoded</code>)
<code>StreamOutput</code>	All media types (<code>*/*</code>), <code>MessageBodyWriter</code> only

The following example shows how to use `MessageBodyReader` with the `@Consumes` and `@Provider` annotations:

```
@Consumes("application/x-www-form-urlencoded")
@Provider
public class FormReader implements MessageBodyReader<NameValuePair> {
```

The following example shows how to use `MessageBodyWriter` with the `@Produces` and `@Provider` annotations:

```
@Produces("text/html")
@Provider
public class FormWriter implements
    MessageBodyWriter<Hashtable<String, String>> {
```

The following example shows how to use `ResponseBuilder`:

```
@GET
public Response getItem() {
```

```

System.out.println("GET ITEM " + container + " " + item);

Item i = MemoryStore.MS.getItem(container, item);
if (i == null)
    throw new NotFoundException("Item not found");
Date lastModified = i.getLastModified().getTime();
EntityTag et = new EntityTag(i.getDigest());
ResponseBuilder rb = request.evaluatePreconditions(lastModified, et);
if (rb != null)
    return rb.build();

byte[] b = MemoryStore.MS.getItemData(container, item);
return Response.ok(b, i.getMimeType()).
    lastModified(lastModified).tag(et).build();
}

```

23.2.5 Using @Consumes and @Produces to Customize Requests and Responses

The information sent to a resource and then passed back to the client is specified as a MIME media type in the headers of an HTTP request or response. You can specify which MIME media types of representations a resource can respond to or produce by using the following annotations:

- `javax.ws.rs.Consumes`
- `javax.ws.rs.Produces`

By default, a resource class can respond to and produce all MIME media types of representations specified in the HTTP request and response headers.

23.2.5.1 The @Produces Annotation

The `@Produces` annotation is used to specify the MIME media types or representations a resource can produce and send back to the client. If `@Produces` is applied at the class level, all the methods in a resource can produce the specified MIME types by default. If applied at the method level, the annotation overrides any `@Produces` annotations applied at the class level.

If no methods in a resource are able to produce the MIME type in a client request, the JAX-RS runtime sends back an HTTP "406 Not Acceptable" error.

The value of `@Produces` is an array of `String` of MIME types, or a comma-separated list of `MediaType` constants. For example:

```
@Produces({"image/jpeg, image/png"})
```

The following example shows how to apply `@Produces` at both the class and method levels:

```

@Path("/myResource")
@Produces("text/plain")
public class SomeResource {
    @GET
    public String doGetAsPlainText() {
        ...
    }

    @GET
    @Produces("text/html")
    public String doGetAsHtml() {
        ...
    }
}

```

```
    }
}
```

The `doGetAsPlainText` method defaults to the MIME media type of the `@Produces` annotation at the class level. The `doGetAsHtml` method's `@Produces` annotation overrides the class-level `@Produces` setting and specifies that the method can produce HTML rather than plain text.

`@Produces` can also use the constants defined in the `javax.ws.rs.core.MediaType` class to specify the media type. For example, specifying `MediaType.APPLICATION_XML` is equivalent to specifying `"application/xml"`.

```
@Produces(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
@GET
public Customer getCustomer() { ... }
```

If a resource class is capable of producing more than one MIME media type, the resource method chosen will correspond to the most acceptable media type as declared by the client. More specifically, the `Accept` header of the HTTP request declares what is most acceptable. For example, if the `Accept` header is `Accept: text/plain`, the `doGetAsPlainText` method will be invoked. Alternatively, if the `Accept` header is `Accept: text/plain;q=0.9, text/html`, which declares that the client can accept media types of `text/plain` and `text/html` but prefers the latter, the `doGetAsHtml` method will be invoked.

More than one media type may be declared in the same `@Produces` declaration. The following code example shows how this is done:

```
@Produces({"application/xml", "application/json"})
public String doGetAsXmlOrJson() {
    ...
}
```

The `doGetAsXmlOrJson` method will get invoked if either of the media types `application/xml` and `application/json` is acceptable. If both are equally acceptable, the former will be chosen because it occurs first. The preceding examples refer explicitly to MIME media types for clarity. It is possible to refer to constant values, which may reduce typographical errors. For more information, see the API documentation for the constant field values of `javax.ws.rs.core.MediaType`.

23.2.5.2 The `@Consumes` Annotation

The `@Consumes` annotation is used to specify which MIME media types of representations a resource can accept, or consume, from the client. If `@Consumes` is applied at the class level, all the response methods accept the specified MIME types by default. If applied at the method level, `@Consumes` overrides any `@Consumes` annotations applied at the class level.

If a resource is unable to consume the MIME type of a client request, the JAX-RS runtime sends back an HTTP 415 ("Unsupported Media Type") error.

The value of `@Consumes` is an array of `String` of acceptable MIME types, or a comma-separated list of `MediaType` constants. For example:

```
@Consumes({"text/plain, text/html"})
```

This is the equivalent of:

```
@Consumes({MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN, MediaType.TEXT_HTML})
```

The following example shows how to apply `@Consumes` at both the class and method levels:

```
@Path("/myResource")
@Consumes("multipart/related")
public class SomeResource {
    @POST
    public String doPost(MimeMultipart mimeMultipartData) {
        ...
    }

    @POST
    @Consumes("application/x-www-form-urlencoded")
    public String doPost2(FormURLEncodedProperties formData) {
        ...
    }
}
```

The `doPost` method defaults to the MIME media type of the `@Consumes` annotation at the class level. The `doPost2` method overrides the class level `@Consumes` annotation to specify that it can accept URL-encoded form data.

If no resource methods can respond to the requested MIME type, an HTTP 415 ("Unsupported Media Type") error is returned to the client.

The `HelloWorld` example discussed previously in this section can be modified to set the message by using `@Consumes`, as shown in the following code example:

```
@POST
@Consumes("text/plain")
public void postClichedMessage(String message) {
    // Store the message
}
```

In this example, the Java method will consume representations identified by the MIME media type `text/plain`. Note that the resource method returns `void`. This means that no representation is returned and that a response with a status code of HTTP 204 ("No Content") will be returned.

23.2.6 Extracting Request Parameters

Parameters of a resource method may be annotated with parameter-based annotations to extract information from a request. A previous example presented the use of the `@PathParam` parameter to extract a path parameter from the path component of the request URL that matched the path declared in `@Path`.

You can extract the following types of parameters for use in your resource class:

- Query
- URI path
- Form
- Cookie
- Header
- Matrix

Query parameters are extracted from the request URI query parameters and are specified by using the `javax.ws.rs.QueryParam` annotation in the method parameter arguments. The following example, from the `sparklines` sample application,

demonstrates using `@QueryParam` to extract query parameters from the Query component of the request URL:

```
@Path("smooth")
@GET
public Response smooth(
    @DefaultValue("2") @QueryParam("step") int step,
    @DefaultValue("true") @QueryParam("min-m") boolean hasMin,
    @DefaultValue("true") @QueryParam("max-m") boolean hasMax,
    @DefaultValue("true") @QueryParam("last-m") boolean hasLast,
    @DefaultValue("blue") @QueryParam("min-color") ColorParam minColor,
    @DefaultValue("green") @QueryParam("max-color") ColorParam maxColor,
    @DefaultValue("red") @QueryParam("last-color") ColorParam lastColor
) { ... }
```

If the query parameter `step` exists in the query component of the request URI, the value of `step` will be extracted and parsed as a 32-bit signed integer and assigned to the `step` method parameter. If `step` does not exist, a default value of 2, as declared in the `@DefaultValue` annotation, will be assigned to the `step` method parameter. If the `step` value cannot be parsed as a 32-bit signed integer, an HTTP 400 ("Client Error") response is returned.

User-defined Java programming language types may be used as query parameters. The following code example shows the `ColorParam` class used in the preceding query parameter example:

```
public class ColorParam extends Color {
    public ColorParam(String s) {
        super(getRGB(s));
    }

    private static int getRGB(String s) {
        if (s.charAt(0) == '#') {
            try {
                Color c = Color.decode("0x" + s.substring(1));
                return c.getRGB();
            } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
                throw new WebApplicationException(400);
            }
        } else {
            try {
                Field f = Color.class.getField(s);
                return ((Color)f.get(null)).getRGB();
            } catch (Exception e) {
                throw new WebApplicationException(400);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

The constructor for `ColorParam` takes a single `String` parameter.

Both `@QueryParam` and `@PathParam` can be used only on the following Java types:

- All primitive types except `char`
- All wrapper classes of primitive types except `Character`
- Any class with a constructor that accepts a single `String` argument
- Any class with the static method named `valueOf(String)` that accepts a single `String` argument

- `List<T>`, `Set<T>`, or `SortedSet<T>`, where `T` matches the already listed criteria. Sometimes, parameters may contain more than one value for the same name. If this is the case, these types may be used to obtain all values

If `@DefaultValue` is not used in conjunction with `@QueryParam`, and the query parameter is not present in the request, the value will be an empty collection for `List`, `Set`, or `SortedSet`; null for other object types; and the default for primitive types.

URI path parameters are extracted from the request URI, and the parameter names correspond to the URI path template variable names specified in the `@Path` class-level annotation. URI parameters are specified using the `javax.ws.rs.PathParam` annotation in the method parameter arguments. The following example shows how to use `@Path` variables and the `@PathParam` annotation in a method:

```
@Path("/{username}")
public class MyResourceBean {
    ...
    @GET
    public String printUsername(@PathParam("username") String userId) {
        ...
    }
}
```

In the preceding snippet, the URI path template variable name `username` is specified as a parameter to the `printUsername` method. The `@PathParam` annotation is set to the variable name `username`. At runtime, before `printUsername` is called, the value of `username` is extracted from the URI and cast to a `String`. The resulting `String` is then available to the method as the `userId` variable.

If the URI path template variable cannot be cast to the specified type, the JAX-RS runtime returns an HTTP 400 ("Bad Request") error to the client. If the `@PathParam` annotation cannot be cast to the specified type, the JAX-RS runtime returns an HTTP 404 ("Not Found") error to the client.

The `@PathParam` parameter and the other parameter-based annotations (`@MatrixParam`, `@HeaderParam`, `@CookieParam`, and `@FormParam`) obey the same rules as `@QueryParam`.

Cookie parameters, indicated by decorating the parameter with `javax.ws.rs.CookieParam`, extract information from the cookies declared in cookie-related HTTP headers. **Header parameters**, indicated by decorating the parameter with `javax.ws.rs.HeaderParam`, extract information from the HTTP headers. **Matrix parameters**, indicated by decorating the parameter with `javax.ws.rs.MatrixParam`, extract information from URL path segments.

Form parameters, indicated by decorating the parameter with `javax.ws.rs.FormParam`, extract information from a request representation that is of the MIME media type `application/x-www-form-urlencoded` and conforms to the encoding specified by HTML forms, as described in <http://www.w3.org/TR/html401/interact/forms.html#h-17.13.4.1>. This parameter is very useful for extracting information sent by POST in HTML forms.

The following example extracts the name form parameter from the POST form data:

```
@POST
@Consumes("application/x-www-form-urlencoded")
public void post(@FormParam("name") String name) {
    // Store the message
}
```

To obtain a general map of parameter names and values for query and path parameters, use the following code:

```
@GET
public String get(@Context UriInfo ui) {
    MultivaluedMap<String, String> queryParams = ui.getQueryParameters();
    MultivaluedMap<String, String> pathParams = ui.getPathParameters();
}
```

The following method extracts header and cookie parameter names and values into a map:

```
@GET
public String get(@Context HttpHeaders hh) {
    MultivaluedMap<String, String> headerParams = hh.getRequestHeaders();
    Map<String, Cookie> pathParams = hh.getCookies();
}
```

In general, `@Context` can be used to obtain contextual Java types related to the request or response.

For form parameters, it is possible to do the following:

```
@POST
@Consumes("application/x-www-form-urlencoded")
public void post(MultivaluedMap<String, String> formParams) {
    // Store the message
}
```

23.3 Example Applications for JAX-RS

This section provides an introduction to creating, deploying, and running your own JAX-RS applications. This section demonstrates the steps that are needed to create, build, deploy, and test a very simple web application that uses JAX-RS annotations.

23.3.1 Creating A Simple RESTful Web Service

This section explains how to use NetBeans IDE to create a RESTful web service using a Maven archetype. The archetype generates a skeleton for the application, and you simply need to implement the appropriate method.

You can find a version of this application at *tut-install/examples/jaxrs/hello/*.

23.3.1.1 To Create a RESTful Web Service Using NetBeans IDE

1. In NetBeans IDE, create a simple web application using the `jaxrs-service-archetype` Maven archetype. This archetype creates a very simple "Hello, World" web application.
 - a. From the **File** menu, select **New Project**.
 - b. From **Categories**, select **Maven**. From **Projects**, select **Project From Archetype**. Click **Next**.
 - c. Under **Search** enter `jaxrs-service`, select the `jaxrs-service-archetype`, and click **Next**.
 - d. Under **Project Name** enter `HelloWorldApplication`, set the **Project Location**, and set the **Package** name to `javaeetutorial.hello`, and click **Next**.
 - e. Click **Finish**.

The project is created.

2. In `HelloWorld.java`, find the `getHtml()` method. Replace the `//TODO` comment and the exception with the following text, so that the finished product resembles the following method.

Note: Because the MIME type produced is HTML, you can use HTML tags in your return statement.

```
@GET
@Produces("text/html")
public String getHtml() {
    return "<html lang=\"en\"><body><h1>Hello, World!!</body></h1></html>";
}
```

3. Right-click on the `hello` project in the **Projects** pane and select **Run**.
This will build and deploy the application to GlassFish Server.
4. In a browser, open `http://localhost:8080/hello`.
A browser window opens and displays the return value of `Hello, World!!`

See Also

For other sample applications that demonstrate deploying and running JAX-RS applications using NetBeans IDE, see [The `rsvp` Example Application](#) and *Your First Cup: An Introduction to the Java EE Platform* at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/firstcup/doc/>. You may also look at the tutorials on the NetBeans IDE tutorial site, such as the one titled "Getting Started with RESTful Web Services" at <https://www.netbeans.org/kb/docs/websvc/rest.html>. This tutorial includes a section on creating a CRUD application from a database. Create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) are the four basic functions of persistent storage and relational databases.

23.3.2 The `rsvp` Example Application

The `rsvp` example application, located in the `tut-install/examples/jaxrs/rsvp/` directory, allows invitees to an event to indicate whether they will attend. The events, people invited to the event, and the responses to the invite are stored in a Java DB database using the Java Persistence API. The JAX-RS resources in `rsvp` are exposed in a stateless session enterprise bean.

23.3.2.1 Components of the `rsvp` Example Application

The three enterprise beans in the `rsvp` example application are `rsvp.ejb.ConfigBean`, `rsvp.ejb.StatusBean`, and `rsvp.ejb.ResponseBean`.

`ConfigBean` is a singleton session bean that initializes the data in the database.

`StatusBean` exposes a JAX-RS resource for displaying the current status of all invitees to an event. The URI path template is declared as follows:

```
@Path("/{eventId}/")
```

The URI path variable `eventId` is a `@PathParam` variable in the `getResponse` method, which responds to HTTP GET requests and has been annotated with `@GET`. The `eventId` variable is used to look up all the current responses in the database for that particular event.

ResponseBean exposes a JAX-RS resource for setting an invitee's response to a particular event. The URI path template for ResponseBean is declared as follows:

```
@Path("/{eventId}/{inviteId}")
```

Two URI path variables are declared in the path template: `eventId` and `inviteId`. As in `StatusBean`, `eventId` is the unique ID for a particular event. Each invitee to that event has a unique ID for the invitation, and that is the `inviteId`. Both of these path variables are used in two JAX-RS methods in `ResponseBean`: `getResponse` and `putResponse`. The `getResponse` method responds to HTTP GET requests and displays the invitee's current response and a form to change the response.

The `javaeetutorial.rsvp.rest.RsvpApplication` class defines the root application path for the resources by applying the `javax.ws.rs.ApplicationPath` annotation at the class level and adding `StatusBean` and `ResponseBean` to the resource classes.

```
@ApplicationPath("/webapi")
public class RsvpApplication extends Application {
    @Override
    public Set<Class<?>> getClasses() {
        final Set<Class<?>> classes = new HashSet<>();
        // register root resource
        classes.add(StatusBean.class);
        classes.add(ResponseBean.class);
        return classes;
    }
}
```

An invitee who wants to change his or her response selects the new response and submits the form data, which is processed as an HTTP POST request by the `putResponse` method. The new response is extracted from the HTTP POST request and stored as the `userResponse` string. The `putResponse` method uses `userResponse`, `eventId`, and `inviteId` to update the invitee's response in the database.

The events, people, and responses in `rsvp` are encapsulated in Java Persistence API entities. The `rsvp.entity.Event`, `rsvp.entity.Person`, and `rsvp.entity.Response` entities respectively represent events, invitees, and responses to an event.

The `rsvp.util.ResponseEnum` class declares an enumerated type that represents all the possible response statuses an invitee may have.

The web application also includes two CDI backing beans, `StatusManager` and `EventManager`, which use the JAX-RS Client API to call the resources exposed in `StatusBean` and `ResponseBean`. For information on how the Client API is used in `rsvp`, see "[The Client API in the rsvp Example Application](#)" on page 24-4.

23.3.2.2 Running the rsvp Example Application

Both NetBeans IDE and Ant can be used to deploy and run the `rsvp` example application.

To Run the rsvp Example Application in NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/jaxrs/
```

3. Select the `rsvp` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.

5. Right-click the `rsvp` project in the **Projects** tab and select **Run**.

The project will be compiled, assembled, and deployed to GlassFish Server. A web browser window will open to `http://localhost:8080/rsvp/faces/index.xhtml`.

6. In the web browser window, click the **Event status** link for the Duke's Birthday event.

You'll see the current invitees and their responses.

7. Click the current response of one of the invitees in the Status column of the table, select a new response, and click **Update your status**.

The invitee's new status should now be displayed in the table of invitees and their response statuses.

To Run the `rsvp` Example Application Using Maven

You must have started the Java DB database before running `rsvp`.

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/jaxrs/rsvp/
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds, assembles, and deploys `rsvp` to GlassFish Server.

3. Open a web browser window to `http://localhost:8080/rsvp/faces/index.xhtml`.
4. In the web browser window, click the **Event status** link for the Duke's Birthday event.

You'll see the current invitees and their responses.

5. Click the current response of one of the invitees in the Status column of the table, select a new response, and click **Update your status**.

The invitee's new status should now be displayed in the table of invitees and their response statuses.

23.3.3 Real-World Examples

Most blog sites use RESTful web services. These sites involve downloading XML files, in RSS or Atom format, that contain lists of links to other resources. Other web sites and web applications that use REST-like developer interfaces to data include Twitter and Amazon S3 (Simple Storage Service). With Amazon S3, buckets and objects can be created, listed, and retrieved using either a REST-style HTTP interface or a SOAP interface. The examples that ship with Jersey include a storage service example with a RESTful interface. The tutorial at

<https://netbeans.org/kb/docs/websvc/twitter-swing.html> uses NetBeans IDE to create a simple, graphical, REST-based client that displays Twitter public timeline messages and lets you view and update your Twitter status.

23.4 Further Information about JAX-RS

For more information about RESTful web services and JAX-RS, see

- [RESTful Web Services vs. 'Big' Web Services: Making the Right Architectural Decision"](#):

<http://www2008.org/papers/pdf/p805-pautassoA.pdf>

- "Fielding Dissertation: Chapter 5: Representational State Transfer (REST)":
http://www.ics.uci.edu/~fielding/pubs/dissertation/rest_arch_style.htm
- *RESTful Web Services*, by Leonard Richardson and Sam Ruby, available from O'Reilly Media at
<http://shop.oreilly.com/product/9780596529260.do>
- JSR 339: JAX-RS: The Java API for RESTful Web Services:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=339>
- Jersey project:
<https://jersey.java.net/>

Accessing REST Resources with the JAX-RS Client API

This chapter describes the JAX-RS Client API, with examples of how to access REST resources using the Java programming language.

JAX-RS provides a client API for accessing REST resources from other Java applications.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of the Client API](#)
- [Using the Client API in the JAX-RS Example Applications](#)
- [Advanced Features of the Client API](#)

24.1 Overview of the Client API

The JAX-RS Client API provides a high-level API for accessing any REST resources, not just JAX-RS services. The Client API is defined in the `javax.ws.rs.client` package.

24.1.1 Creating a Basic Client Request using the Client API

There are four steps needed to access a REST resource using the Client API:

1. Obtain an instance of the `javax.ws.rs.client.Client` interface.
2. Configure the `Client` instance with a target.
3. Create a request based on the target.
4. Invoke the request.

The Client API is designed to be fluent, where method invocations are chained together to configure and submit a request to a REST resource in only a few lines of code.

Example 24–1 A Simple Client Request

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
String name = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/hello")
    .request(MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN)
    .get(String.class);
```

In this example, the client instance is first created by calling the `javax.ws.rs.client.ClientBuilder.newClient` method. Then the request is

configured and invoked by chaining method calls together in one line of code. The `Client.target` method sets the target based on a URI. The `javax.ws.rs.client.WebTarget.request` method sets the media type for the returned entity. The `javax.ws.rs.client.Invocation.Builder.get` method invokes the service using an HTTP GET request, setting the type of the returned entity to `String`.

24.1.1.1 Obtaining the Client Instance

The `Client` interface defines the actions and infrastructure a REST client requires to consume a RESTful web service. Instances of `Client` are obtained by calling the `ClientBuilder.newClient` method.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
```

`Client` instances should be closed after all the invocations for the target resource have been performed. `Client` instances are closed using the `close` method.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();  
...  
client.close();
```

`Client` instances are heavyweight objects. For performance reasons, limit the number of `Client` instances in your application, as the initialization and destruction of these instances may be expensive in your runtime environment.

24.1.1.2 Setting the Client Target

The target of a client is the REST resource at a particular URI, and is represented by an instance of the `javax.ws.rs.client.WebTarget` interface. `WebTarget` instances are obtained by calling the `Client.target` method and passing in the URI of the target REST resource.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();  
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi");
```

For complex REST resources, it may be beneficial to create several instances of `WebTarget`. In the following example, a base target is used to construct several other targets that represent different services provided by a REST resource.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();  
WebTarget base = client.target("http://example.com/webapi");  
// WebTarget at http://example.com/webapi/read  
WebTarget read = base.path("read");  
// WebTarget at http://example.com/webapi/write  
WebTarget write = base.path("write");
```

The `WebTarget.path` method creates a new `WebTarget` instance by appending the current target URI with the passed in path.

24.1.1.3 Setting Path Parameters in Targets

Path parameters in client requests can be specified as URI template parameters, similar to the template parameters used when defining a resource URI in a JAX-RS service. Template parameters are specified by surrounding the template variable with curly brackets (`{}`). Call the `WebTarget.queryParam` method on the target to set the parameters by passing in the template parameter name and value or values.

```
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read")  
    .path("{userName}");  
Response response = myResource.queryParam("userName", "janedoe")  
    .request(...)
```

```
.get();
```

24.1.1.4 Invoking the Request

After setting and applying any configuration options to target, call one of the `WebTarget.request` methods to begin creating the request. This is usually accomplished by passing to `WebTarget.request` the accepted media response type for the request either as a string of the MIME type or using one of the constants in `javax.ws.rs.core.MediaType`. `WebTarget.request` returns an instance of `javax.ws.rs.client.Invocation.Builder`, a helper object that provides methods for preparing the client request.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read");
Invocation.Builder builder = myResource.request(MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN);
```

Using a `MediaType` constant is equivalent to calling the string defining the MIME type.

```
Invocation.Builder builder = myResource.request("text/plain");
```

After setting the media type, invoke the request by calling one of the methods of the `Invocation.Builder` instance that corresponds to the type of HTTP request the target REST resource expects. These methods are:

- `get()`
- `post()`
- `delete()`
- `put()`
- `head()`
- `options()`

For example, if the target REST resource is for an HTTP GET request, call the `Invocation.Builder.get` method. The return type should correspond to the entity returned by the target REST resource.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read");
String response = myResource.request(MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN)
    .get(String.class);
```

If the target REST resource is expecting an HTTP POST request, call the `Invocation.Builder.post` method.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
StoreOrder order = new StoreOrder(...);
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/write");
TrackingNumber trackingNumber = myResource.request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
    .post(Entity.xml(order), TrackingNumber.class);
```

In the above example, the return type is a custom class, and is retrieved by setting the type in the `Invocation.Builder.post(Entity<?> entity, Class<T> responseType)` method as a parameter.

If the return type is a collection, use `javax.ws.rs.core.GenericType<T>` as the response type parameter, where `T` is the collection type:

```
List<StoreOrder> orders = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read")
    .path("allOrders")
```

```
.request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
.get(new GenericType<List<StoreOrder>>() {});
```

This previous example shows how methods are chained together in the Client API to simplify how requests are configured and invoked.

24.2 Using the Client API in the JAX-RS Example Applications

The `rsvp` and `customer` examples use the Client API to call JAX-RS services. This section describes how each example application uses the Client API.

24.2.1 The Client API in the `rsvp` Example Application

The `rsvp` application allows users to respond to event invites using JAX-RS resources, as explained in [Chapter 23.3.2, "The `rsvp` Example Application"](#). The web application uses the Client API in CDI backing beans to interact with the service resources, and the Facelets web interface displays the results.

The `StatusManager` CDI backing bean retrieves all the current events in the system. The client instance used in the backing bean is obtained in the constructor:

```
public StatusManager() {
    this.client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
}
```

Example 24–2 *The `StatusManager.getEvents` Method*

The `StatusManager.getEvents` method returns a collection of all the current events in the system by calling the resource at `http://localhost:8080/rsvp/webapi/status/all`, which returns an XML document with entries for each event. The Client API automatically unmarshalls the XML and creates a `List<Event>` instance.

```
public List<Event> getEvents() {
    List<Event> returnedEvents = null;
    try {
        returnedEvents = client.target(baseUrl)
            .path("all")
            .request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
            .get(new GenericType<List<Event>>() {
            });
        if (returnedEvents == null) {
            logger.log(Level.SEVERE, "Returned events null.");
        } else {
            logger.log(Level.INFO, "Events have been returned.");
        }
    } catch (WebApplicationException ex) {
        throw new WebApplicationException(Response.Status.NOT_FOUND);
    }
    ...
    return returnedEvents;
}
```

Example 24–3 The `StatusManager.changeStatus` Method

The `StatusManager.changeStatus` method is used to update the attendee's response. It creates an HTTP POST request to the service with the new response. The body of the request is an XML document.

```
public String changeStatus(ResponseEnum userResponse,
    Person person, Event event) {
    String navigation;
    try {
        logger.log(Level.INFO,
            "changing status to {0} for {1} {2} for event ID {3}.",
            new Object[]{userResponse,
                person.getFirstName(),
                person.getLastName(),
                event.getId().toString()});
        client.target(baseUrl)
            .path(event.getId().toString())
            .path(person.getId().toString())
            .request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
            .post(Entity.xml(userResponse.getLabel()));
        navigation = "changedStatus";
    } catch (ResponseProcessingException ex) {
        logger.log(Level.WARNING, "couldn't change status for {0} {1}",
            new Object[]{person.getFirstName(),
                person.getLastName()});
        logger.log(Level.WARNING, ex.getMessage());
        navigation = "error";
    }
    return navigation;
}
```

24.2.2 The Client API in the customer Example Application

The customer example application stores customer data in a database and exposes the resource as XML, as explained in [Chapter 25.8, "The customer Example Application"](#). The service resource exposes methods that create customers and retrieve all the customers. A Facelets web application acts as a client for the service resource, with a form for creating customers and displaying the list of customers in a table.

Example 24–4 The `CustomerBean.createCustomer` Method

The `CustomerBean` stateless session bean uses the JAX-RS Client API to interface with the service resource. The `CustomerBean.createCustomer` method takes the `Customer` entity instance created by the Facelets form and makes a POST call to the service URI.

```
public String createCustomer(Customer customer) {
    if (customer == null) {
        logger.log(Level.WARNING, "customer is null.");
        return "customerError";
    }
    String navigation;
    Response response =
        client.target("http://localhost:8080/customer/webapi/Customer")
            .request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
            .post(Entity.entity(customer, MediaType.APPLICATION_XML),
                Response.class);
    if (response.getStatus() == Status.CREATED.getStatusCode()) {
        navigation = "customerCreated";
    } else {
        logger.log(Level.WARNING,
```

```
        "couldn't create customer with id {0}. Status returned was {1}",
        new Object[]{customer.getId(), response.getStatus()});
FacesContext context = FacesContext.getCurrentInstance();
context.addMessage(null,
    new FacesMessage("Could not create customer."));
navigation = "customerError";
    }
    return navigation;
}
```

The XML request entity is created by calling the `Invocation.Builder.post` method and passing in a new `Entity` instance from the `Customer` instance and specifying the media type as `MediaType.APPLICATION_XML`.

Example 24–5 The `CustomerBean.retrieveCustomer` Method

The `CustomerBean.retrieveCustomer` method retrieves a `Customer` entity instance from the service by appending the customer's ID to the service URI.

```
public String retrieveCustomer(String id) {
    String navigation;
    Customer customer =
        client.target("http://localhost:8080/customer/webapi/Customer")
            .path(id)
            .request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
            .get(Customer.class);
    if (customer == null) {
        navigation = "customerError";
    } else {
        navigation = "customerRetrieved";
    }
    return navigation;
}
```

Example 24–6 The `CustomerBean.retrieveAllCustomers` Method

The `CustomerBean.retrieveAllCustomers` method retrieves a collection of customers as a `List<Customer>` instance. This list is then displayed as a table in the Facelets web application.

```
public List<Customer> retrieveAllCustomers() {
    List<Customer> customers =
        client.target("http://localhost:8080/customer/webapi/Customer")
            .path("all")
            .request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
            .get(new GenericType<List<Customer>>() {
    });
    return customers;
}
```

Because the response type is a collection, the `Invocation.Builder.get` method is called by passing in a new instance of `GenericType<List<Customer>>`.

24.3 Advanced Features of the Client API

This section describes some of the advanced features of the JAX-RS Client API.

24.3.1 Configuring the Client Request

There are additional configuration options that may be added to the client request after it is created but before it is invoked.

24.3.1.1 Setting Message Headers in the Client Request

HTTP headers may be set on the request by calling the `Invocation.Builder.header` method.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read");
String response = myResource.request(MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN)
    .header("myHeader", "The header value")
    .get(String.class);
```

If you need to set multiple headers on the request, call the `Invocation.Builder.headers` method and pass in a `javax.ws.rs.core.MultivaluedMap` instance with the name-value pairs of the HTTP headers. Calling the `headers` method replaces all the existing headers with the headers supplied in the `MultivaluedMap` instance.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read");
MultivaluedMap<String, Object> myHeaders =
    new MultivaluedMap<>("myHeader", "The header value");
myHeaders.add(...);
String response = myResource.request(MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN)
    .headers(myHeaders)
    .get(String.class);
```

The `MultivaluedMap` interface allows you to specify multiple values for a given key.

```
MultivaluedMap<String, Object> myHeaders =
    new MultivaluedMap<String, Object>();
List<String> values = new ArrayList<>();
values.add(...)
myHeaders.add("myHeader", values)
```

24.3.1.2 Setting Cookies in the Client Request

HTTP cookies may be added to the request by calling the `Invocation.Builder.cookie` method, which takes a name-value pair as parameters.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read");
String response = myResource.request(MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN)
    .cookie("myCookie", "The cookie value")
    .get(String.class);
```

The `javax.ws.rs.core.Cookie` class encapsulates the attributes of an HTTP cookie, including the name, value, path, domain, and RFC specification version of the cookie. In the following example, the `Cookie` object is configured with a name-value pair, a path, and a domain.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read");
Cookie myCookie = new Cookie("myCookie", "The cookie value",
    "/webapi/read", "example.com");
String response = myResource.request(MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN)
    .cookie(myCookie)
```

```
.get(String.class);
```

24.3.1.3 Adding Filters to the Client

Custom filters may be registered with the client request or the response received from the target resource. Filter classes may be registered when the `Client` instance is created by calling `Client.register`.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient().register(MyLoggingFilter.class);
```

In the example above, all invocations that use this `Client` instance have the `MyLoggingFilter` filter registered with them.

The filter classes may also be registered on the target by calling `WebTarget.register`.

```
Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient().register(MyLoggingFilter.class);
WebTarget target = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/secure")
    .register(MyAuthenticationFilter.class);
```

In the above example, both the `MyLoggingFilter` and `MyAuthenticationFilter` filters are attached to the invocation.

Request and response filter classes implement the `javax.ws.rs.client.ClientRequestFilter` and `javax.ws.rs.client.ClientResponseFilter` interfaces, respectively. Both of these interfaces define a single method, `filter`. All filters must be annotated with `javax.ws.rs.ext.Provider`.

Example 24–7 A Custom Client Filter

The following class is a logging filter for both client requests and responses.

```
@Provider
public class MyLoggingFilter implements ClientRequestFilter,
    ClientResponseFilter {
    static final Logger logger = Logger.getLogger(...);

    // implement the ClientRequestFilter.filter method
    @Override
    public void filter(ClientRequestContext requestContext) throws IOException {
        logger.log(...);
        ...
    }

    // implement the ClientResponseFilter.filter method
    @Override
    public void filter(ClientRequestContext requestContext,
        ClientResponseContext responseContext) throws IOException {
        logger.log(...);
        ...
    }
}
```

If the invocation must be stopped while the filter is active call the context object's `abortWith` method and pass in a `javax.ws.rs.core.Response` instance from within the filter.

```
@Override
public void filter(ClientRequestContext requestContext) throws IOException {
    ...
    Response response = new Response();
```

```

response.status(500);
requestContext.abortWith(response);
}

```

24.3.2 Asynchronous Invocations in the Client API

In networked applications, network issues can affect the perceived performance of the application, particularly in long-running or complicated network calls. Asynchronous processing helps prevent blocking and makes better use of an application's resources.

In the JAX-RS Client API, the `Invocation.Builder.async` method is used when constructing a client request to indicate that the call to the service should be performed asynchronously. An asynchronous invocation returns control to the caller immediately, with a return type of `java.util.concurrent.Future<T>` (part of the Java SE concurrency API), with the type set to the return type of the service call. `Future<T>` objects have methods to check if the asynchronous call has been completed, to retrieve the final result, to cancel the invocation, and to check if the invocation has been cancelled.

Example 24–8 *Creating and Executing an Asynchronous Invocation*

The following example shows how to invoke an asynchronous request on a resource.

```

Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read");
Future<String> response = myResource.request(MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN)
    .async()
    .get(String.class);

```

24.3.2.1 Using Custom Callbacks in Asynchronous Invocations

The `InvocationCallback` interface defines two methods, `completed` and `failed`, that are called when an asynchronous invocation either completes successfully or fails, respectively. You may register an `InvocationCallback` instance on your request by creating a new instance when specifying the request method.

Example 24–9 *Registering a Callback Object on an Asynchronous Invocation*

The following example shows how to register a callback object on an asynchronous invocation.

```

Client client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
WebTarget myResource = client.target("http://example.com/webapi/read");
Future<Customer> fCustomer = myResource.request(MediaType.TEXT_PLAIN)
    .async()
    .get(new InvocationCallback<Customer>() {
        @Override
        public void completed(Customer customer) {
            // Do something with the customer object
        }
        @Override
        public void failed(Throwable throwable) {
            // handle the error
        }
    });

```

JAX-RS: Advanced Topics and Example

The Java API for RESTful Web Services (JAX-RS, defined in JSR 339) is designed to make it easy to develop applications that use the REST architecture. This chapter describes advanced features of JAX-RS. If you are new to JAX-RS, see [Chapter 23, "Building RESTful Web Services with JAX-RS"](#) before you proceed with this chapter.

JAX-RS is integrated with Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI), Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) technology, and Java Servlet technology.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Annotations for Field and Bean Properties of Resource Classes](#)
- [Validating Resource Data with Bean Validation](#)
- [Subresources and Runtime Resource Resolution](#)
- [Integrating JAX-RS with EJB Technology and CDI](#)
- [Conditional HTTP Requests](#)
- [Runtime Content Negotiation](#)
- [Using JAX-RS With JAXB](#)
- [The customer Example Application](#)

25.1 Annotations for Field and Bean Properties of Resource Classes

JAX-RS annotations for resource classes let you extract specific parts or values from a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) or request header.

JAX-RS provides the annotations listed in [Table 25-1](#).

Table 25-1 *Advanced JAX-RS Annotations*

Annotation	Description
@Context	Injects information into a class field, bean property, or method parameter
@CookieParam	Extracts information from cookies declared in the cookie request header
@FormParam	Extracts information from a request representation whose content type is application/x-www-form-urlencoded
@HeaderParam	Extracts the value of a header
@MatrixParam	Extracts the value of a URI matrix parameter

Table 25–1 (Cont.) Advanced JAX-RS Annotations

Annotation	Description
@PathParam	Extracts the value of a URI template parameter
@QueryParam	Extracts the value of a URI query parameter

25.1.1 Extracting Path Parameters

URI path templates are URIs with variables embedded within the URI syntax. The @PathParam annotation lets you use variable URI path fragments when you call a method.

The following code snippet shows how to extract the last name of an employee when the employee's email address is provided:

```
@Path("/employees/{firstname}.{lastname}@{domain}.com")
public class EmpResource {

    @GET
    @Produces("text/xml")
    public String getEmployeelastName(@PathParam("lastname") String lastName) {
        ...
    }
}
```

In this example, the @Path annotation defines the URI variables (or path parameters) {firstname}, {lastname}, and {domain}. The @PathParam in the method parameter of the request method extracts the last name from the email address.

If your HTTP request is GET /employees/john.doe@example.com, the value "doe" is injected into {lastname}.

You can specify several path parameters in one URI.

You can declare a regular expression with a URI variable. For example, if it is required that the last name must consist only of lower and upper case characters, you can declare the following regular expression:

```
@Path("/employees/{firstname}.{lastname[a-zA-Z]*}@{domain}.com")
```

If the last name does not match the regular expression, a 404 response is returned.

25.1.2 Extracting Query Parameters

Use the @QueryParam annotation to extract query parameters from the query component of the request URI.

For instance, to query all employees who have joined within a specific range of years, use a method signature like the following:

```
@Path("/employees/")
@GET
public Response getEmployees(
    @DefaultValue("2002") @QueryParam("minyear") int minyear,
    @DefaultValue("2010") @QueryParam("maxyear") int maxyear)
{ ... }
```

This code snippet defines two query parameters, minyear and maxyear. The following HTTP request would query for all employees who have joined between 1999 and 2009:

```
GET /employees?maxyear=2009&minyear=1999
```

The `@DefaultValue` annotation defines a default value, which is to be used if no values are provided for the query parameters. By default, JAX-RS assigns a null value for Object values and zero for primitive data types. You can use the `@DefaultValue` annotation to eliminate null or zero values and define your own default values for a parameter.

25.1.3 Extracting Form Data

Use the `@FormParam` annotation to extract form parameters from HTML forms. For example, the following form accepts the name, address, and manager's name of an employee:

```
<FORM action="http://example.com/employees/" method="post">
<p>
<fieldset>
Employee name: <INPUT type="text" name="empname" tabindex="1">
Employee address: <INPUT type="text" name="empaddress" tabindex="2">
Manager name: <INPUT type="text" name="managername" tabindex="3">
</fieldset>
</p>
</FORM>
```

Use the following code snippet to extract the manager name from this HTML form:

```
@POST
@Consumes("application/x-www-form-urlencoded")
public void post(@FormParam("managername") String managername) {
    // Store the value
    ...
}
```

To obtain a map of form parameter names to values, use a code snippet like the following:

```
@POST
@Consumes("application/x-www-form-urlencoded")
public void post(MultivaluedMap<String, String> formParams) {
    // Store the message
}
```

25.1.4 Extracting the Java Type of a Request or Response

The `javax.ws.rs.core.Context` annotation retrieves the Java types related to a request or response.

The `javax.ws.rs.core.UriInfo` interface provides information about the components of a request URI. The following code snippet shows how to obtain a map of query and path parameter names to values:

```
@GET
public String getParams(@Context UriInfo ui) {
    MultivaluedMap<String, String> queryParams = ui.getQueryParameters();
    MultivaluedMap<String, String> pathParams = ui.getPathParameters();
}
```

The `javax.ws.rs.core.HttpHeaders` interface provides information about request headers and cookies. The following code snippet shows how to obtain a map of header and cookie parameter names to values:

```
@GET
public String getHeaders(@Context HttpHeaders hh) {
    MultivaluedMap<String, String> headerParams = hh.getRequestHeaders();
    MultivaluedMap<String, Cookie> pathParams = hh.getCookies();
}
```

25.2 Validating Resource Data with Bean Validation

JAX-RS supports the Bean Validation to verify JAX-RS resource classes. This support consists of:

- Adding constraint annotations to resource method parameters.
- Ensuring entity data is valid when the entity is passed in as a parameter.

25.2.1 Using Constraint Annotations on Resource Methods

Bean Validation constraint annotations may be applied to parameters for a resource. The server will validate the parameters and either pass or throw a `javax.validation.ValidationException`.

```
@POST
@Path("/createUser")
@Consumes(MediaType.APPLICATION_FORM_URLENCODED)
public void createUser(@NotNull @FormParam("username") String username,
    @NotNull @FormParam("firstName") String firstName,
    @NotNull @FormParam("lastName") String lastName,
    @Email @FormParam("email") String email) {
    ...
}
```

In the above example, the built-in constraint `@NotNull` is applied to the `username`, `firstName`, and `lastName` form fields. The user-defined `@Email` constraint validates that the email address supplied by the `email` form field is correctly formatted.

The constraints may also be applied to fields within a resource class.

```
@Path("/createUser")
public class CreateUserResource {
    @NotNull
    @FormParam("username")
    private String username;

    @NotNull
    @FormParam("firstName")
    private String firstName;

    @NotNull
    @FormParam("lastName")
    private String lastName;

    @Email
    @FormParam("email")
    private String email;

    ...
}
```

```
}

```

In the above example, the same constraints that were applied to the method parameters in the previous example are applied to the class fields. The behavior is the same in both examples.

Constraints may also be applied to a resource class's JavaBeans properties by adding the constraint annotations to the getter method.

```
@Path("/createuser")
public class CreateUserResource {
    private String username;

    @FormParam("username")
    public void setUsername(String username) {
        this.username = username;
    }

    @NotNull
    public String getUsername() {
        return username;
    }
    ...
}
```

Constraints may also be applied at the resource class level. In the following example, `@PhoneRequired` is a user-defined constraint that ensures that a user enters at least one phone number. That is, either `homePhone` or `mobilePhone` can be null, but not both.

```
@Path("/createUser")
@PhoneRequired
public class CreateUserResource {
    @FormParam("homePhone")
    private Phone homePhone;

    @FormParam("mobilePhone")
    private Phone mobilePhone;
    ...
}
```

25.2.2 Validating Entity Data

Classes that contain validation constraint annotations may be used in method parameters in a resource class. To validate these entity classes, use the `@Valid` annotation on the method parameter. For example, the following class is a user-defined class containing both standard and user-defined validation constraints.

```
@PhoneRequired
public class User {
    @NotNull
    private String username;

    private Phone homePhone;

    private Phone mobilePhone;
    ...
}
```

This entity class is used as a parameter to a resource method.

```
@Path("/createUser")
public class CreateUserResource {
```

```

...
    @POST
    @Consumers(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
    public void createUser(@Valid User user) {
        ...
    }
...
}

```

The `@Valid` annotation ensures that the entity class is validated at runtime. Additional user-defined constraints can also trigger validation of an entity.

```

@Path("/createUser")
public class CreateUserResource {
    ...
    @POST
    @Consumers(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
    public void createUser(@ActiveUser User user) {
        ...
    }
    ...
}

```

In the above example, the user-defined `@ActiveUser` constraint is applied to the `User` class, in addition to the `@PhoneRequired` and `@NotNull` constraints defined within the entity class.

If a resource method returns an entity class, validation may be triggered by applying the `@Valid` or any other user-defined constraint annotation to the resource method.

```

@Path("/getUser")
public class GetUserResource {
    ...
    @GET
    @Path("/{username}")
    @Produces(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
    @ActiveUser
    @Valid
    public User getUser(@PathParam("username") String username) {
        // find the User
        return user;
    }
    ...
}

```

As in the previous example, the `@ActiveUser` constraint is applied the returned entity class as well as the `@PhoneRequired` and `@NotNull` constraints defined within the entity class.

25.2.3 Validation Exception Handling and Response Codes

If a `javax.validation.ValidationException` or any subclasses of `ValidationException` except `ConstraintValidationException` is thrown, the JAX-RS runtime will respond to the client request with a 500 (Internal Server Error) HTTP status code.

If a `ConstraintValidationException` is thrown, the JAX-RS runtime will respond to the client with one of the following HTTP status codes:

- A 500 (Internal Server Error) if the exception was thrown while validating a method return type.

- A 400 (Bad Request) in all other cases.

25.3 Subresources and Runtime Resource Resolution

You can use a resource class to process only a part of the URI request. A root resource can then implement subresources that can process the remainder of the URI path.

A resource class method that is annotated with `@Path` is either a subresource method or a subresource locator:

- A subresource method is used to handle requests on a subresource of the corresponding resource.
- A subresource locator is used to locate subresources of the corresponding resource.

25.3.1 Subresource Methods

A **subresource method** handles an HTTP request directly. The method must be annotated with a request method designator such as `@GET` or `@POST`, in addition to `@Path`. The method is invoked for request URIs that match a URI template created by concatenating the URI template of the resource class with the URI template of the method.

The following code snippet shows how a subresource method can be used to extract the last name of an employee when the employee's email address is provided:

```
@Path("/employeeinfo")
Public class EmployeeInfo {

    public employeeinfo() {}

    @GET
    @Path("/employees/{firstname}.{lastname}@{domain}.com")
    @Produces("text/xml")
    public String getEmployeeLastName(@PathParam("lastname") String lastName) {
        ...
    }
}
```

The `getEmployeeLastName` method returns `doe` for the following GET request:

```
GET /employeeinfo/employees/john.doe@example.com
```

25.3.2 Subresource Locators

A **subresource locator** returns an object that will handle an HTTP request. The method must not be annotated with a request method designator. You must declare a subresource locator within a subresource class, and only subresource locators are used for runtime resource resolution.

The following code snippet shows a subresource locator:

```
// Root resource class
@Path("/employeeinfo")
public class EmployeeInfo {

    // Subresource locator: obtains the subresource Employee
    // from the path /employeeinfo/employees/{empid}
    @Path("/employees/{empid}")
    public Employee getEmployee(@PathParam("empid") String id) {
```

```
        // Find the Employee based on the id path parameter
        Employee emp = ...;
        ...
        return emp;
    }
}

// Subresource class
public class Employee {

    // Subresource method: returns the employee's last name
    @GET
    @Path("/lastname")
    public String getEmployeeLastName() {
        ...
        return lastName
    }
}
```

In this code snippet, the `getEmployee` method is the subresource locator that provides the `Employee` object, which services requests for `lastname`.

If your HTTP request is `GET /employeeinfo/employees/as209/`, the `getEmployee` method returns an `Employee` object whose `id` is `as209`. At runtime, JAX-RS sends a `GET /employeeinfo/employees/as209/lastname` request to the `getEmployeeLastName` method. The `getEmployeeLastName` method retrieves and returns the last name of the employee whose `id` is `as209`.

25.4 Integrating JAX-RS with EJB Technology and CDI

JAX-RS works with Enterprise JavaBeans technology (enterprise beans) and Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI).

In general, for JAX-RS to work with enterprise beans, you need to annotate the class of a bean with `@Path` to convert it to a root resource class. You can use the `@Path` annotation with stateless session beans and singleton POJO beans.

The following code snippet shows a stateless session bean and a singleton bean that have been converted to JAX-RS root resource classes.

```
@Stateless
@Path("stateless-bean")
public class StatelessResource {...}

@Singleton
@Path("singleton-bean")
public class SingletonResource {...}
```

Session beans can also be used for subresources.

JAX-RS and CDI have slightly different component models. By default, JAX-RS root resource classes are managed in the request scope, and no annotations are required for specifying the scope. CDI managed beans annotated with `@RequestScoped` or `@ApplicationScoped` can be converted to JAX-RS resource classes.

The following code snippet shows a JAX-RS resource class.

```
@Path("/employee/{id}")
public class Employee {
    public Employee(@PathParam("id") String id) {...}
}
```

```
@Path("{lastname}")
public final class EmpDetails {...}
```

The following code snippet shows this JAX-RS resource class converted to a CDI bean. The beans must be proxyable, so the `Employee` class requires a non-private constructor with no parameters, and the `EmpDetails` class must not be final.

```
@Path("/employee/{id}")
@RequestScoped
public class Employee {
    public Employee() {...}

    @Inject
    public Employee(@PathParam("id") String id) {...}
}

@Path("{lastname}")
@RequestScoped
public class EmpDetails {...}
```

25.5 Conditional HTTP Requests

JAX-RS provides support for conditional GET and PUT HTTP requests. Conditional GET requests help save bandwidth by improving the efficiency of client processing.

A GET request can return a Not Modified (304) response if the representation has not changed since the previous request. For example, a web site can return 304 responses for all its static images that have not changed since the previous request.

A PUT request can return a Precondition Failed (412) response if the representation has been modified since the last request. The conditional PUT can help avoid the lost update problem.

Conditional HTTP requests can be used with the Last-Modified and ETag headers. The Last-Modified header can represent dates with granularity of one second.

```
@Path("/employee/{joiningdate}")
public class Employee {

    Date joiningdate;

    @GET
    @Produces("application/xml")
    public Employee(@PathParam("joiningdate") Date joiningdate,
        @Context Request req,
        @Context UriInfo ui) {

        this.joiningdate = joiningdate;
        ...
        this.tag = computeEntityTag(ui.getRequestUri());
        if (req.getMethod().equals("GET")) {
            Response.ResponseBuilder rb = req.evaluatePreconditions(tag);
            if (rb != null) {
                throw new WebApplicationException(rb.build());
            }
        }
    }
}
```

In this code snippet, the constructor of the `Employee` class computes the entity tag from the request URI and calls the `request.evaluatePreconditions` method with that tag. If a client request returns an `If-none-match` header with a value that has the same entity tag that was computed, `evaluate.Preconditions` returns a pre-filled-out response with a 304 status code and an entity tag set that may be built and returned.

25.6 Runtime Content Negotiation

The `@Produces` and `@Consumes` annotations handle static content negotiation in JAX-RS. These annotations specify the content preferences of the server. HTTP headers such as `Accept`, `Content-Type`, and `Accept-Language` define the content negotiation preferences of the client.

For more details on the HTTP headers for content negotiation, see HTTP /1.1 - Content Negotiation (<http://www.w3.org/Protocols/rfc2616/rfc2616-sec12.html>).

The following code snippet shows the server content preferences:

```
@Produces("text/plain")
@Path("/employee")
public class Employee {

    @GET
    public String getEmployeeAddressText(String address) { ... }

    @Produces("text/xml")
    @GET
    public String getEmployeeAddressXml(Address address) { ... }
}
```

The `getEmployeeAddressText` method is called for an HTTP request that looks as follows:

```
GET /employee
Accept: text/plain
```

This will produce the following response:

```
500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood Shores, CA
```

The `getEmployeeAddressXml` method is called for an HTTP request that looks as follows:

```
GET /employee
Accept: text/xml
```

This will produce the following response:

```
<address street="500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood Shores, CA" country="USA"/>
```

With static content negotiation, you can also define multiple content and media types for the client and server.

```
@Produces("text/plain", "text/xml")
```

In addition to supporting static content negotiation, JAX-RS also supports runtime content negotiation using the `javax.ws.rs.core.Variant` class and `Request` objects. The `Variant` class specifies the resource representation of content negotiation. Each instance of the `Variant` class may contain a media type, a language, and an encoding. The `Variant` object defines the resource representation that is supported by the server.

The `Variant.VariantListBuilder` class is used to build a list of representation variants.

The following code snippet shows how to create a list of resource representation variants:

```
List<Variant> vs =
    Variant.mediatypes("application/xml", "application/json")
        .languages("en", "fr").build();
```

This code snippet calls the `build` method of the `VariantListBuilder` class. The `VariantListBuilder` class is invoked when you call the `mediatypes`, `languages`, or `encodings` methods. The `build` method builds a series of resource representations. The `Variant` list created by the `build` method has all possible combinations of items specified in the `mediatypes`, `languages`, and `encodings` methods.

In this example, the size of the `vs` object as defined in this code snippet is 4, and the contents are as follows:

```
[["application/xml", "en"], ["application/json", "en"],
  ["application/xml", "fr"], ["application/json", "fr"]]
```

The `javax.ws.rs.core.Request.selectVariant` method accepts a list of `Variant` objects and chooses the `Variant` object that matches the HTTP request. This method compares its list of `Variant` objects with the `Accept`, `Accept-Encoding`, `Accept-Language`, and `Accept-Charset` headers of the HTTP request.

The following code snippet shows how to use the `selectVariant` method to select the most acceptable `Variant` from the values in the client request.

```
@GET
public Response get(@Context Request r) {
    List<Variant> vs = ...;
    Variant v = r.selectVariant(vs);
    if (v == null) {
        return Response.notAcceptable(vs).build();
    } else {
        Object rep = selectRepresentation(v);
        return Response.ok(rep, v);
    }
}
```

The `selectVariant` method returns the `Variant` object that matches the request, or null if no matches are found. In this code snippet, if the method returns null, a `Response` object for a non-acceptable response is built. Otherwise, a `Response` object with an OK status and containing a representation in the form of an `Object` entity and a `Variant` is returned.

25.7 Using JAX-RS With JAXB

Java Architecture for XML Binding (JAXB) is an XML-to-Java binding technology that simplifies the development of web services by enabling transformations between schema and Java objects and between XML instance documents and Java object instances. An XML schema defines the data elements and structure of an XML document. You can use JAXB APIs and tools to establish mappings between Java classes and XML schema. JAXB technology provides the tools that enable you to convert your XML documents to and from Java objects.

By using JAXB, you can manipulate data objects in the following ways:

- You can start with an XML schema definition (XSD) and use `xjc`, the JAXB schema compiler tool, to create a set of JAXB-annotated Java classes that map to the elements and types defined in the XSD schema.
- You can start with a set of Java classes and use `schemagen`, the JAXB schema generator tool, to generate an XML schema.
- Once a mapping between the XML schema and the Java classes exists, you can use the JAXB binding runtime to marshal and unmarshal your XML documents to and from Java objects and use the resulting Java classes to assemble a web services application.

XML is a common media format that RESTful services consume and produce. To deserialize and serialize XML, you can represent requests and responses by JAXB annotated objects. Your JAX-RS application can use the JAXB objects to manipulate XML data. JAXB objects can be used as request entity parameters and response entities. The JAX-RS runtime environment includes standard `MessageBodyReader` and `MessageBodyWriter` provider interfaces for reading and writing JAXB objects as entities.

With JAX-RS, you enable access to your services by publishing resources. Resources are just simple Java classes with some additional JAX-RS annotations. These annotations express the following:

- The path of the resource (the URL you use to access it)
- The HTTP method you use to call a certain method (for example, the GET or POST method)
- The MIME type with which a method accepts or responds

As you define the resources for your application, consider the type of data you want to expose. You may already have a relational database that contains information you want to expose to users, or you may have static content that does not reside in a database but does need to be distributed as resources. Using JAX-RS, you can distribute content from multiple sources. RESTful web services can use various types of input/output formats for request and response. The `customer` example, described in [The customer Example Application](#), uses XML.

Resources have representations. A resource representation is the content in the HTTP message that is sent to, or returned from, the resource using the URI. Each representation a resource supports has a corresponding media type. For example, if a resource is going to return content formatted as XML, you can use `application/xml` as the associated media type in the HTTP message. Depending on the requirements of your application, resources can return representations in a preferred single format or in multiple formats. JAX-RS provides `@Consumes` and `@Produces` annotations to declare the media types that are acceptable for a resource method to read and write.

JAX-RS also maps Java types to and from resource representations using entity providers. A `MessageBodyReader` entity provider reads a request entity and deserializes the request entity into a Java type. A `MessageBodyWriter` entity provider serializes from a Java type into a response entity. For example, if a `String` value is used as the request entity parameter, the `MessageBodyReader` entity provider deserializes the request body into a new `String`. If a JAXB type is used as the return type on a resource method, the `MessageBodyWriter` serializes the JAXB object into a response body.

By default, the JAX-RS runtime environment attempts to create and use a default `JAXBContext` class for JAXB classes. However, if the default `JAXBContext` class is not suitable, then you can supply a `JAXBContext` class for the application using a `JAX-RS ContextResolver` provider interface.

The following sections explain how to use JAXB with JAX-RS resource methods.

25.7.1 Using Java Objects to Model Your Data

If you do not have an XML schema definition for the data you want to expose, you can model your data as Java classes, add JAXB annotations to these classes, and use JAXB to generate an XML schema for your data. For example, if the data you want to expose is a collection of products and each product has an ID, a name, a description, and a price, you can model it as a Java class as follows:

```
@XmlElement(name="product")
@XmlAccessorType(XmlAccessType.FIELD)
public class Product {

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected int id;
    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String name;
    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String description;
    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected int price;

    public Product() {}

    // Getter and setter methods
    // ...
}
```

Run the JAXB schema generator on the command line to generate the corresponding XML schema definition:

```
schemagen Product.java
```

This command produces the XML schema as an `.xsd` file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<xs:schema version="1.0" xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

    <xs:element name="product" type="product"/>

    <xs:complexType name="product">
        <xs:sequence>
            <xs:element name="id" type="xs:int"/>
            <xs:element name="name" type="xs:string"/>
            <xs:element name="description" type="xs:string"/>
            <xs:element name="price" type="xs:int"/>
        </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:schema>
```

Once you have this mapping, you can create `Product` objects in your application, return them, and use them as parameters in JAX-RS resource methods. The JAX-RS runtime uses JAXB to convert the XML data from the request into a `Product` object and to convert a `Product` object into XML data for the response. The following resource class provides a simple example:

```
@Path("/product")
public class ProductService {
    @GET
    @Path("/get")
```

```
@Produces("application/xml")
public Product getProduct() {
    Product prod = new Product();
    prod.setId(1);
    prod.setName("Mattress");
    prod.setDescription("Queen size mattress");
    prod.setPrice(500);
    return prod;
}

@POST
@Path("/create")
@Consumes("application/xml")
public Response createProduct(Product prod) {
    // Process or store the product and return a response
    // ...
}
}
```

Some IDEs, such as NetBeans IDE, will run the schema generator tool automatically during the build process if you add Java classes that have JAXB annotations to your project. For a detailed example, see [The customer Example Application](#). The customer example contains a more complex relationship between the Java classes that model the data, which results in a more hierarchical XML representation.

25.7.2 Starting from an Existing XML Schema Definition

If you already have an XML schema definition in an `.xsd` file for the data you want to expose, use the JAXB schema compiler tool. Consider this simple example of an `.xsd` file:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<xs:schema targetNamespace="http://xml.product"
           xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
           elementFormDefault="qualified"
           xmlns:myco="http://xml.product">

    <xs:element name="product" type="myco:Product"/>

    <xs:complexType name="Product">
        <xs:sequence>
            <xs:element name="id" type="xs:int"/>
            <xs:element name="name" type="xs:string"/>
            <xs:element name="description" type="xs:string"/>
            <xs:element name="price" type="xs:int"/>
        </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:schema>
```

Run the schema compiler tool on the command line as follows:

```
xjc Product.xsd
```

This command generates the source code for Java classes that correspond to the types defined in the `.xsd` file. The schema compiler tool generates a Java class for each `complexType` defined in the `.xsd` file. The fields of each generated Java class are the same as the elements inside the corresponding `complexType`, and the class contains getter and setter methods for these fields.

In this case the schema compiler tool generates the classes `product.xml.Product` and `product.xml.ObjectFactory`. The `Product` class contains JAXB annotations, and its fields correspond to those in the `.xsd` definition:

```
@XmlAccessorType(XmlAccessType.FIELD)
@XmlType(name = "Product", propOrder = {
    "id",
    "name",
    "description",
    "price"
})
public class Product {
    protected int id;
    @XmlElement(required = true)
    protected String name;
    @XmlElement(required = true)
    protected String description;
    protected int price;

    // Setter and getter methods
    // ...
}
```

You can create instances of the `Product` class from your application (for example, from a database). The generated class `product.xml.ObjectFactory` contains a method that allows you to convert these objects to JAXB elements that can be returned as XML inside JAX-RS resource methods:

```
@XmlElementDecl(namespace = "http://xml.product", name = "product")
public JAXBElement<Product> createProduct(Product value) {
    return new JAXBElement<Product>(_Product_QNAME, Product.class, null, value);
}
```

The following code shows how to use the generated classes to return a JAXB element as XML in a JAX-RS resource method:

```
@Path("/product")
public class ProductService {
    @GET
    @Path("/get")
    @Produces("application/xml")
    public JAXBElement<Product> getProduct() {
        Product prod = new Product();
        prod.setId(1);
        prod.setName("Mattress");
        prod.setDescription("Queen size mattress");
        prod.setPrice(500);
        return new ObjectFactory().createProduct(prod);
    }
}
```

For `@POST` and `@PUT` resource methods, you can use a `Product` object directly as a parameter. JAX-RS maps the XML data from the request into a `Product` object.

```
@Path("/product")
public class ProductService {
    @GET
    // ...

    @POST
    @Path("/create")
```

```
@Consumes("application/xml")
public Response createProduct(Product prod) {
    // Process or store the product and return a response
    // ...
}
}
```

25.7.3 Using JSON with JAX-RS and JAXB

JAX-RS can automatically read and write XML using JAXB, but it can also work with JSON data. JSON is a simple text-based format for data exchange derived from JavaScript. For the examples above, the XML representation of a product is:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<product>
  <id>1</id>
  <name>Mattress</name>
  <description>Queen size mattress</description>
  <price>500</price>
</product>
```

The equivalent JSON representation is:

```
{
  "id": "1",
  "name": "Mattress",
  "description": "Queen size mattress",
  "price": 500
}
```

You can add the format `application/json` or `MediaType.APPLICATION_JSON` to the `@Produces` annotation in resource methods to produce responses with JSON data:

```
@GET
@Path("/get")
@Produces({"application/xml", "application/json"})
public Product getProduct() { ... }
```

In this example the default response is XML, but the response is a JSON object if the client makes a GET request that includes this header:

```
Accept: application/json
```

The resource methods can also accept JSON data for JAXB annotated classes:

```
@POST
@Path("/create")
@Consumes({"application/xml", "application/json"})
public Response createProduct(Product prod) { ... }
```

The client should include the following header when submitting JSON data with a POST request:

```
Content-Type: application/json
```

25.8 The customer Example Application

This section describes how to build and run the customer example application. This application is a RESTful web service that uses JAXB to perform the Create, Read, Update, Delete (CRUD) operations for a specific entity.

The customer sample application is in the *tut-install/examples/jaxrs/customer/* directory. See [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples,"](#) for basic information on building and running sample applications.

25.8.1 Overview of the customer Example Application

The source files of this application are at *tut-install/examples/jaxrs/customer/src/main/java/*. The application has three parts:

- The Customer and Address entity classes. These classes model the data of the application and contain JAXB annotations.
- The CustomerService resource class. This class contains JAX-RS resource methods that perform operations on Customer instances represented as XML or JSON data using JAXB. See [The CustomerService Class](#) for details.
- The CustomerBean session bean that acts as a backing bean for the web client. CustomerBean uses the JAX-RS client API to call the methods of CustomerService.

The customer example application shows you how to model your data entities as Java classes with JAXB annotations.

25.8.2 The Customer and Address Entity Classes

The following class represents a customer's address:

```
@Entity
@Table(name="CUSTOMER_ADDRESS")
@XmlRootElement(name="address")
@XmlAccessorType(XmlAccessType.FIELD)
public class Address {

    @Id
    @GeneratedValue(strategy = GenerationType.AUTO)
    private Long id;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected int number;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String street;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String city;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String state;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String zip;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String country;
```

```
public Address() { }

// Getter and setter methods
// ...
}
```

The `@XmlElement(name="address")` annotation maps this class to the address XML element. The `@XmlElement(accessorType=XmlAccessType.FIELD)` annotation specifies that all the fields of this class are bound to XML by default. The `@XmlElement(required=true)` annotation specifies that an element must be present in the XML representation.

The following class represents a customer:

```
@Entity
@Table(name="CUSTOMER_CUSTOMER")
@NamedQuery(
    name="findAllCustomers",
    query="SELECT c FROM Customer c " +
        "ORDER BY c.id"
)
@XmlRootElement(name="customer")
@XmlAccessorType(XmlAccessType.FIELD)
public class Customer {
    @Id
    @GeneratedValue(strategy = GenerationType.AUTO)
    @XmlAttribute(required=true)
    protected int id;

    @XmlAttribute(required=true)
    protected int id;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String firstname;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String lastname;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected Address address;

    @XmlElement(required=true)
    protected String email;

    @XmlElement (required=true)
    protected String phone;

    public Customer() { }

    // Getter and setter methods
    // ...
}
```

The `Customer` class contains the same JAXB annotations as the previous class, except for the `@XmlAttribute(required=true)` annotation, which maps a property to an attribute of the XML element representing the class.

The `Customer` class contains a property whose type is another entity, the `Address` class. This mechanism allows you to define in Java code the hierarchical relationships between entities without having to write an `.xsd` file yourself.

JAXB generates the following XML schema definition for the two classes above:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<xs:schema version="1.0" xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

  <xs:element name="address" type="address"/>
  <xs:element name="customer" type="customer"/>

  <xs:complexType name="address">
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name="number" type="xs:int"/>
      <xs:element name="street" type="xs:string"/>
      <xs:element name="city" type="xs:string"/>
      <xs:element name="state" type="xs:string"/>
      <xs:element name="zip" type="xs:string"/>
      <xs:element name="country" type="xs:string"/>
    </xs:sequence>
  </xs:complexType>

  <xs:complexType name="customer">
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name="firstname" type="xs:string"/>
      <xs:element name="lastname" type="xs:string"/>
      <xs:element ref="address"/>
      <xs:element name="email" type="xs:string"/>
      <xs:element name="phone" type="xs:string"/>
    </xs:sequence>
    <xs:attribute name="id" type="xs:int" use="required"/>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:schema>
```

25.8.3 The CustomerService Class

The `CustomerService` class has a `createCustomer` method that creates a customer resource based on the `Customer` class and returns a URI for the new resource.

```
@Stateless
@Path("/Customer")
public class CustomerService {
    public static final Logger logger =
        Logger.getLogger(CustomerService.class.getCanonicalName());
    @PersistenceContext
    private EntityManager em;
    private CriteriaBuilder cb;

    @PostConstruct
    private void init() {
        cb = em.getCriteriaBuilder();
    }
    ...
    @POST
    @Consumes({MediaType.APPLICATION_XML, MediaType.APPLICATION_JSON})
    public Response createCustomer(Customer customer) {

        try {
            long customerId = persist(customer);
            return Response.created(URI.create("/") + customerId).build();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            logger.log(Level.SEVERE,
                "Error creating customer for customerId {0}. {1}",
```

```
        new Object[]{customer.getId(), e.getMessage()});
        throw new WebApplicationException(e,
            Response.Status.INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR);
    }
}
...
private long persist(Customer customer) {
    try {
        Address address = customer.getAddress();
        em.persist(address);
        em.persist(customer);
    } catch (Exception ex) {
        logger.warning("Something went wrong when persisting the customer");
    }

    return customer.getId();
}
```

The response returned to the client has a URI to the newly created resource. The return type is an entity body mapped from the property of the response with the status code specified by the status property of the response. The `WebApplicationException` is a `RuntimeException` that is used to wrap the appropriate HTTP error status code, such as 404, 406, 415, or 500.

The `@Consumes({MediaType.APPLICATION_XML, MediaType.APPLICATION_JSON})` and `@Produces({MediaType.APPLICATION_XML, MediaType.APPLICATION_JSON})` annotations set the request and response media types to use the appropriate MIME client. These annotations can be applied to a resource method, a resource class, or even an entity provider. If you do not use these annotations, JAX-RS allows the use of any media type (`"*/*"`).

The following code snippet shows the implementation of the `getCustomer` and `findById` methods. The `getCustomer` method uses the `@Produces` annotation and returns a `Customer` object, which is converted to an XML or JSON representation depending on the `Accept:` header specified by the client..

```
@GET
@Path("/{id}")
@Produces({MediaType.APPLICATION_XML, MediaType.APPLICATION_JSON})
public Customer getCustomer(@PathParam("id") String customerId) {
    Customer customer = null;

    try {
        customer = findById(customerId);
    } catch (Exception ex) {
        logger.log(Level.SEVERE,
            "Error calling findCustomer() for customerId {0}. {1}",
            new Object[]{customerId, ex.getMessage()});
    }

    return customer;
}

private Customer findById(String customerId) {
    Customer customer = null;
    try {
        customer = em.find(Customer.class, customerId);
        return customer;
    } catch (Exception ex) {
        logger.log(Level.WARNING, "Couldn't find customer with ID of {0}",
            customerId);
    }
}
```

```

    }
    return customer;
}

```

25.8.4 Using the JAX-RS Client in the CustomerBean Classes

Use the JAX-RS Client API to write a client for the customer example application.

The CustomerBean enterprise bean class calls the JAX-RS Client API to test the CustomerService web service:

```

@Named
@Stateless
public class CustomerBean {
    protected Client client;
    private static final Logger logger =
Logger.getLogger(CustomerBean.class.getName());

    @PostConstruct
    private void init () {
        client = ClientBuilder.newClient();
    }

    public String createCustomer(Customer customer) {
        if (customer == null) {
            logger.log(Level.WARNING, "customer is null.");
            return "customerError";
        }
        String navigation;
        Response response =
client.target("http://localhost:8080/customer/webapi/Customer")
        .request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
        .post(Entity.entity(customer, MediaType.APPLICATION_XML),
Response.class);
        if (response.getStatus() == Status.CREATED.getStatusCode()) {
            navigation = "customerCreated";
        } else {
            logger.log(Level.WARNING, "couldn't create customer with id {0}.
Status returned was {1}",
                new Object[]{customer.getId(), response.getStatus()});
            navigation = "customerError";
        }
        return navigation;
    }

    public String retrieveCustomer(String id) {
        String navigation;
        Customer customer =
client.target("http://localhost:8080/customer/webapi/Customer")
        .path(id)
        .request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
        .get(Customer.class);
        if (customer == null) {
            navigation = "customerError";
        } else {
            navigation = "customerRetrieved";
        }
        return navigation;
    }
}

```

```
public List<Customer> retrieveAllCustomers() {
    List<Customer> customers =
client.target("http://localhost:8080/customer/webapi/Customer")
    .path("all")
    .request(MediaType.APPLICATION_XML)
    .get(new GenericType<List<Customer>>() {});
    return customers;
}
}
```

This client uses the POST and GET methods.

All of these HTTP status codes indicate success: 201 for POST, 200 for GET, and 204 for DELETE. For details about the meanings of HTTP status codes, see <http://www.w3.org/Protocols/rfc2616/rfc2616-sec10.html>.

25.8.5 Running the customer Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the customer application.

25.8.5.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the customer Example Using NetBeans IDE

This procedure builds the application into the *tut-install/examples/jax-rs/customer/target/* directory. The contents of this directory are deployed to the GlassFish Server.

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
tut-install/examples/jaxrs/
3. Select the *customer* folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the *customer* project and select **Run**.

25.8.5.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the customer Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/jaxrs/customer/
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, *customer.war*, located in the *target* directory. Then the WAR file is deployed to GlassFish Server.

3. Open the web client in a browser at the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/customer/
```

The web client allows you to create and view customers.

Part V

Enterprise Beans

Part V explores Enterprise JavaBeans components. This part contains the following chapters:

- [Chapter 26, "Enterprise Beans"](#)
- [Chapter 27, "Getting Started with Enterprise Beans"](#)
- [Chapter 28, "Running the Enterprise Bean Examples"](#)
- [Chapter 29, "Using the Embedded Enterprise Bean Container"](#)
- [Chapter 30, "Using Asynchronous Method Invocation in Session Beans"](#)

Enterprise Beans

Enterprise beans are Java EE components that implement Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) technology. Enterprise beans run in the EJB container, a runtime environment within the GlassFish Server (see [Container Types](#)). Although transparent to the application developer, the EJB container provides system-level services, such as transactions and security, to its enterprise beans. These services enable you to quickly build and deploy enterprise beans, which form the core of transactional Java EE applications.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [What Is an Enterprise Bean?](#)
- [What Is a Session Bean?](#)
- [What Is a Message-Driven Bean?](#)
- [Accessing Enterprise Beans](#)
- [The Contents of an Enterprise Bean](#)
- [Naming Conventions for Enterprise Beans](#)
- [The Lifecycles of Enterprise Beans](#)
- [Further Information about Enterprise Beans](#)

26.1 What Is an Enterprise Bean?

Written in the Java programming language, an enterprise bean is a server-side component that encapsulates the business logic of an application. The **business logic** is the code that fulfills the purpose of the application. In an inventory control application, for example, the enterprise beans might implement the business logic in methods called `checkInventoryLevel` and `orderProduct`. By invoking these methods, clients can access the inventory services provided by the application.

26.1.1 Benefits of Enterprise Beans

For several reasons, enterprise beans simplify the development of large, distributed applications. First, because the EJB container provides system-level services to enterprise beans, the bean developer can concentrate on solving business problems. The EJB container, rather than the bean developer, is responsible for system-level services, such as transaction management and security authorization.

Second, because the beans rather than the clients contain the application's business logic, the client developer can focus on the presentation of the client. The client developer does not have to code the routines that implement business rules or access

databases. As a result, the clients are thinner, a benefit that is particularly important for clients that run on small devices.

Third, because enterprise beans are portable components, the application assembler can build new applications from existing beans. Provided that they use the standard APIs, these applications can run on any compliant Java EE server.

26.1.2 When to Use Enterprise Beans

You should consider using enterprise beans if your application has any of the following requirements.

- The application must be scalable. To accommodate a growing number of users, you may need to distribute an application's components across multiple machines. Not only can the enterprise beans of an application run on different machines, but also their location will remain transparent to the clients.
- Transactions must ensure data integrity. Enterprise beans support transactions, the mechanisms that manage the concurrent access of shared objects.
- The application will have a variety of clients. With only a few lines of code, remote clients can easily locate enterprise beans. These clients can be thin, various, and numerous.

26.1.3 Types of Enterprise Beans

Table 26–1 summarizes the two types of enterprise beans. The following sections discuss each type in more detail.

Table 26–1 Enterprise Bean Types

Enterprise Bean Type	Purpose
Session	Performs a task for a client; optionally, may implement a web service
Message-driven	Acts as a listener for a particular messaging type, such as the Java Message Service API

26.2 What Is a Session Bean?

A **session bean** encapsulates business logic that can be invoked programmatically by a client over local, remote, or web service client views. To access an application that is deployed on the server, the client invokes the session bean's methods. The session bean performs work for its client, shielding it from complexity by executing business tasks inside the server.

A session bean is not persistent. (That is, its data is not saved to a database.)

For code samples, see [Chapter 28, "Running the Enterprise Bean Examples"](#).

26.2.1 Types of Session Beans

Session beans are of three types: stateful, stateless, and singleton.

26.2.1.1 Stateful Session Beans

The state of an object consists of the values of its instance variables. In a **stateful session bean**, the instance variables represent the state of a unique client/bean session. Because the client interacts ("talks") with its bean, this state is often called the **conversational state**.

As its name suggests, a session bean is similar to an interactive session. A session bean is not shared; it can have only one client, in the same way that an interactive session can have only one user. When the client terminates, its session bean appears to terminate and is no longer associated with the client.

The state is retained for the duration of the client/bean session. If the client removes the bean, the session ends and the state disappears. This transient nature of the state is not a problem, however, because when the conversation between the client and the bean ends, there is no need to retain the state.

26.2.1.2 Stateless Session Beans

A **stateless session bean** does not maintain a conversational state with the client. When a client invokes the methods of a stateless bean, the bean's instance variables may contain a state specific to that client but only for the duration of the invocation. When the method is finished, the client-specific state should not be retained. Clients may, however, change the state of instance variables in pooled stateless beans, and this state is held over to the next invocation of the pooled stateless bean. Except during method invocation, all instances of a stateless bean are equivalent, allowing the EJB container to assign an instance to any client. That is, the state of a stateless session bean should apply across all clients.

Because they can support multiple clients, stateless session beans can offer better scalability for applications that require large numbers of clients. Typically, an application requires fewer stateless session beans than stateful session beans to support the same number of clients.

A stateless session bean can implement a web service, but a stateful session bean cannot.

26.2.1.3 Singleton Session Beans

A **singleton session bean** is instantiated once per application and exists for the lifecycle of the application. Singleton session beans are designed for circumstances in which a single enterprise bean instance is shared across and concurrently accessed by clients.

Singleton session beans offer similar functionality to stateless session beans but differ from them in that there is only one singleton session bean per application, as opposed to a pool of stateless session beans, any of which may respond to a client request. Like stateless session beans, singleton session beans can implement web service endpoints.

Singleton session beans maintain their state between client invocations but are not required to maintain their state across server crashes or shutdowns.

Applications that use a singleton session bean may specify that the singleton should be instantiated upon application startup, which allows the singleton to perform initialization tasks for the application. The singleton may perform cleanup tasks on application shutdown as well, because the singleton will operate throughout the lifecycle of the application.

26.2.2 When to Use Session Beans

Stateful session beans are appropriate if any of the following conditions are true.

- The bean's state represents the interaction between the bean and a specific client.
- The bean needs to hold information about the client across method invocations.
- The bean mediates between the client and the other components of the application, presenting a simplified view to the client.

- Behind the scenes, the bean manages the work flow of several enterprise beans.

To improve performance, you might choose a stateless session bean if it has any of these traits.

- The bean's state has no data for a specific client.
- In a single method invocation, the bean performs a generic task for all clients. For example, you might use a stateless session bean to send an email that confirms an online order.
- The bean implements a web service.

Singleton session beans are appropriate in the following circumstances.

- State needs to be shared across the application.
- A single enterprise bean needs to be accessed by multiple threads concurrently.
- The application needs an enterprise bean to perform tasks upon application startup and shutdown.
- The bean implements a web service.

26.3 What Is a Message-Driven Bean?

A **message-driven bean** is an enterprise bean that allows Java EE applications to process messages asynchronously. This type of bean normally acts as a JMS message listener, which is similar to an event listener but receives JMS messages instead of events. The messages can be sent by any Java EE component (an application client, another enterprise bean, or a web component) or by a JMS application or system that does not use Java EE technology. Message-driven beans can process JMS messages or other kinds of messages.

26.3.1 What Makes Message-Driven Beans Different from Session Beans?

The most visible difference between message-driven beans and session beans is that clients do not access message-driven beans through interfaces. Interfaces are described in the section [Accessing Enterprise Beans](#). Unlike a session bean, a message-driven bean has only a bean class.

In several respects, a message-driven bean resembles a stateless session bean.

- A message-driven bean's instances retain no data or conversational state for a specific client.
- All instances of a message-driven bean are equivalent, allowing the EJB container to assign a message to any message-driven bean instance. The container can pool these instances to allow streams of messages to be processed concurrently.
- A single message-driven bean can process messages from multiple clients.

The instance variables of the message-driven bean instance can contain some state across the handling of client messages, such as a JMS API connection, an open database connection, or an object reference to an enterprise bean object.

Client components do not locate message-driven beans and invoke methods directly on them. Instead, a client accesses a message-driven bean through, for example, JMS by sending messages to the message destination for which the message-driven bean class is the `MessageListener`. You assign a message-driven bean's destination during deployment by using GlassFish Server resources.

Message-driven beans have the following characteristics.

- They execute upon receipt of a single client message.
- They are invoked asynchronously.
- They are relatively short-lived.
- They do not represent directly shared data in the database, but they can access and update this data.
- They can be transaction-aware.
- They are stateless.

When a message arrives, the container calls the message-driven bean's `onMessage` method to process the message. The `onMessage` method normally casts the message to one of the five JMS message types and handles it in accordance with the application's business logic. The `onMessage` method can call helper methods or can invoke a session bean to process the information in the message or to store it in a database.

A message can be delivered to a message-driven bean within a transaction context, so all operations within the `onMessage` method are part of a single transaction. If message processing is rolled back, the message will be redelivered. For more information, see [Receiving Messages Asynchronously using a Message-Driven Bean](#) and [Chapter 48, "Transactions"](#).

26.3.2 When to Use Message-Driven Beans

Session beans allow you to send JMS messages and to receive them synchronously but not asynchronously. To avoid tying up server resources, do not use blocking synchronous receives in a server-side component; in general, JMS messages should not be sent or received synchronously. To receive messages asynchronously, use a message-driven bean.

26.4 Accessing Enterprise Beans

Note: The material in this section applies only to session beans and not to message-driven beans. Because they have a different programming model, message-driven beans do not have interfaces or no-interface views that define client access.

Clients access enterprise beans either through a no-interface view or through a business interface. A **no-interface view** of an enterprise bean exposes the public methods of the enterprise bean implementation class to clients. Clients using the no-interface view of an enterprise bean may invoke any public methods in the enterprise bean implementation class or any superclasses of the implementation class. A **business interface** is a standard Java programming language interface that contains the business methods of the enterprise bean.

A client can access a session bean only through the methods defined in the bean's business interface or through the public methods of an enterprise bean that has a no-interface view. The business interface or no-interface view defines the client's view of an enterprise bean. All other aspects of the enterprise bean (method implementations and deployment settings) are hidden from the client.

Well-designed interfaces and no-interface views simplify the development and maintenance of Java EE applications. Not only do clean interfaces and no-interface views shield the clients from any complexities in the EJB tier, but they also allow the

enterprise beans to change internally without affecting the clients. For example, if you change the implementation of a session bean business method, you won't have to alter the client code. But if you were to change the method definitions in the interfaces, you might have to modify the client code as well. Therefore, it is important that you design the interfaces and no-interface views carefully to isolate your clients from possible changes in the enterprise beans.

Session beans can have more than one business interface. Session beans should, but are not required to, implement their business interface or interfaces.

26.4.1 Using Enterprise Beans in Clients

The client of an enterprise bean obtains a reference to an instance of an enterprise bean through either **dependency injection**, using Java programming language annotations, or **JNDI lookup**, using the Java Naming and Directory Interface syntax to find the enterprise bean instance.

Dependency injection is the simplest way of obtaining an enterprise bean reference. Clients that run within a Java EE server-managed environment, JavaServer Faces web applications, JAX-RS web services, other enterprise beans, or Java EE application clients, support dependency injection using the `javax.ejb.EJB` annotation.

Applications that run outside a Java EE server-managed environment, such as Java SE applications, must perform an explicit lookup. JNDI supports a global syntax for identifying Java EE components to simplify this explicit lookup.

26.4.1.1 Portable JNDI Syntax

Three JNDI namespaces are used for portable JNDI lookups: `java:global`, `java:module`, and `java:app`.

- The `java:global` JNDI namespace is the portable way of finding remote enterprise beans using JNDI lookups. JNDI addresses are of the following form:

```
java:global[/application name]/module name /enterprise bean name[/interface name ]
```

Application name and module name default to the name of the application and module minus the file extension. Application names are required only if the application is packaged within an EAR. The interface name is required only if the enterprise bean implements more than one business interface.

- The `java:module` namespace is used to look up local enterprise beans within the same module. JNDI addresses using the `java:module` namespace are of the following form:

```
java:module/enterprise bean name/[interface name]
```

The interface name is required only if the enterprise bean implements more than one business interface.

- The `java:app` namespace is used to look up local enterprise beans packaged within the same application. That is, the enterprise bean is packaged within an EAR file containing multiple Java EE modules. JNDI addresses using the `java:app` namespace are of the following form:

```
java:app[/module name]/enterprise bean name [/interface name]
```

The module name is optional. The interface name is required only if the enterprise bean implements more than one business interface.

For example, if an enterprise bean, `MyBean`, is packaged within the web application archive `myApp.war`, the module name is `myApp`. The portable JNDI name is `java:module/MyBean`. An equivalent JNDI name using the `java:global` namespace is `java:global/myApp/MyBean`.

26.4.2 Deciding on Remote or Local Access

When you design a Java EE application, one of the first decisions you make is the type of client access allowed by the enterprise beans: remote, local, or web service.

Whether to allow local or remote access depends on the following factors.

- **Tight or loose coupling of related beans:** Tightly coupled beans depend on one another. For example, if a session bean that processes sales orders calls a session bean that emails a confirmation message to the customer, these beans are tightly coupled. Tightly coupled beans are good candidates for local access. Because they fit together as a logical unit, they typically call each other often and would benefit from the increased performance that is possible with local access.
- **Type of client:** If an enterprise bean is accessed by application clients, it should allow remote access. In a production environment, these clients almost always run on machines other than those on which the GlassFish Server is running. If an enterprise bean's clients are web components or other enterprise beans, the type of access depends on how you want to distribute your components.
- **Component distribution:** Java EE applications are scalable because their server-side components can be distributed across multiple machines. In a distributed application, for example, the server that the web components run on may not be the one on which the enterprise beans they access are deployed. In this distributed scenario, the enterprise beans should allow remote access.
- **Performance:** Owing to such factors as network latency, remote calls may be slower than local calls. On the other hand, if you distribute components among different servers, you may improve the application's overall performance. Both of these statements are generalizations; performance can vary in different operational environments. Nevertheless, you should keep in mind how your application design might affect performance.

If you aren't sure which type of access an enterprise bean should have, choose remote access. This decision gives you more flexibility. In the future, you can distribute your components to accommodate the growing demands on your application.

Although it is uncommon, it is possible for an enterprise bean to allow both remote and local access. If this is the case, either the business interface of the bean must be explicitly designated as a business interface by being decorated with the `@Remote` or `@Local` annotations, or the bean class must explicitly designate the business interfaces by using the `@Remote` and `@Local` annotations. The same business interface cannot be both a local and a remote business interface.

26.4.3 Local Clients

A local client has these characteristics.

- It must run in the same application as the enterprise bean it accesses.
- It can be a web component or another enterprise bean.
- To the local client, the location of the enterprise bean it accesses is not transparent.

The no-interface view of an enterprise bean is a local view. The public methods of the enterprise bean implementation class are exposed to local clients that access the

no-interface view of the enterprise bean. Enterprise beans that use the no-interface view do not implement a business interface.

The **local business interface** defines the bean's business and lifecycle methods. If the bean's business interface is not decorated with `@Local` or `@Remote`, and if the bean class does not specify the interface using `@Local` or `@Remote`, the business interface is by default a local interface.

To build an enterprise bean that allows only local access, you may, but are not required to, do one of the following:

- Create an enterprise bean implementation class that does not implement a business interface, indicating that the bean exposes a no-interface view to clients. For example:

```
@Session
public class MyBean { ... }
```

- Annotate the business interface of the enterprise bean as a `@Local` interface. For example:

```
@Local
public interface InterfaceName { ... }
```

- Specify the interface by decorating the bean class with `@Local` and specify the interface name. For example:

```
@Local(InterfaceName.class)
public class BeanName implements InterfaceName { ... }
```

26.4.3.1 Accessing Local Enterprise Beans Using the No-Interface View

Client access to an enterprise bean that exposes a local, no-interface view is accomplished through either dependency injection or JNDI lookup.

- To obtain a reference to the no-interface view of an enterprise bean through dependency injection, use the `javax.ejb.EJB` annotation and specify the enterprise bean's implementation class:

```
@EJB
ExampleBean exampleBean;
```

- To obtain a reference to the no-interface view of an enterprise bean through JNDI lookup, use the `javax.naming.InitialContext` interface's `lookup` method:

```
ExampleBean exampleBean = (ExampleBean)
    InitialContext.lookup("java:module/ExampleBean");
```

Clients *do not* use the `new` operator to obtain a new instance of an enterprise bean that uses a no-interface view.

26.4.3.2 Accessing Local Enterprise Beans That Implement Business Interfaces

Client access to enterprise beans that implement local business interfaces is accomplished through either dependency injection or JNDI lookup.

- To obtain a reference to the local business interface of an enterprise bean through dependency injection, use the `javax.ejb.EJB` annotation and specify the enterprise bean's local business interface name:

```
@EJB
Example example;
```

- To obtain a reference to a local business interface of an enterprise bean through JNDI lookup, use the `javax.naming.InitialContext` interface's `lookup` method:

```
ExampleLocal example = (ExampleLocal)
    InitialContext.lookup("java:module/ExampleLocal");
```

26.4.4 Remote Clients

A remote client of an enterprise bean has the following traits.

- It can run on a different machine and a different JVM from the enterprise bean it accesses. (It is not required to run on a different JVM.)
- It can be a web component, an application client, or another enterprise bean.
- To a remote client, the location of the enterprise bean is transparent.
- The enterprise bean must implement a business interface. That is, remote clients *may not* access an enterprise bean through a no-interface view.

To create an enterprise bean that allows remote access, you must either

- Decorate the business interface of the enterprise bean with the `@Remote` annotation:

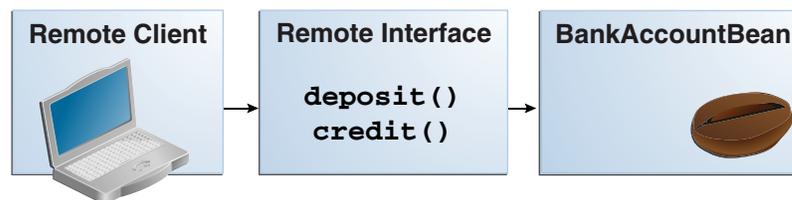
```
@Remote
public interface InterfaceName { ... }
```

- Decorate the bean class with `@Remote`, specifying the business interface or interfaces:

```
@Remote(InterfaceName.class)
public class BeanName implements InterfaceName { ... }
```

The **remote interface** defines the business and lifecycle methods that are specific to the bean. For example, the remote interface of a bean named `BankAccountBean` might have business methods named `deposit` and `credit`. [Figure 26–1](#) shows how the interface controls the client's view of an enterprise bean.

Figure 26–1 Interfaces for an Enterprise Bean with Remote Access



Client access to an enterprise bean that implements a remote business interface is accomplished through either dependency injection or JNDI lookup.

- To obtain a reference to the remote business interface of an enterprise bean through dependency injection, use the `javax.ejb.EJB` annotation and specify the enterprise bean's remote business interface name:

```
@EJB
Example example;
```

- To obtain a reference to a remote business interface of an enterprise bean through JNDI lookup, use the `javax.naming.InitialContext` interface's `lookup` method:

```
ExampleRemote example = (ExampleRemote)
    InitialContext.lookup("java:global/myApp/ExampleRemote");
```

26.4.5 Web Service Clients

A web service client can access a Java EE application in two ways. First, the client can access a web service created with JAX-WS. (For more information on JAX-WS, see [Chapter 22, "Building Web Services with JAX-WS"](#).) Second, a web service client can invoke the business methods of a stateless session bean. Message beans cannot be accessed by web service clients.

Provided that it uses the correct protocols (SOAP, HTTP, WSDL), any web service client can access a stateless session bean, whether or not the client is written in the Java programming language. The client doesn't even "know" what technology implements the service: stateless session bean, JAX-WS, or some other technology. In addition, enterprise beans and web components can be clients of web services. This flexibility enables you to integrate Java EE applications with web services.

A web service client accesses a stateless session bean through the bean's web service endpoint implementation class. By default, all public methods in the bean class are accessible to web service clients. The `@WebMethod` annotation may be used to customize the behavior of web service methods. If the `@WebMethod` annotation is used to decorate the bean class's methods, only those methods decorated with `@WebMethod` are exposed to web service clients.

For a code sample, see [A Web Service Example: helloservice](#).

26.4.6 Method Parameters and Access

The type of access affects the parameters of the bean methods that are called by clients. The following sections apply not only to method parameters but also to method return values.

26.4.6.1 Isolation

The parameters of remote calls are more isolated than those of local calls. With remote calls, the client and the bean operate on different copies of a parameter object. If the client changes the value of the object, the value of the copy in the bean does not change. This layer of isolation can help protect the bean if the client accidentally modifies the data.

In a local call, both the client and the bean can modify the same parameter object. In general, you should not rely on this side effect of local calls. Perhaps someday you will want to distribute your components, replacing the local calls with remote ones.

As with remote clients, web service clients operate on different copies of parameters than does the bean that implements the web service.

26.4.6.2 Granularity of Accessed Data

Because remote calls are likely to be slower than local calls, the parameters in remote methods should be relatively coarse-grained. A coarse-grained object contains more data than a fine-grained one, so fewer access calls are required. For the same reason, the parameters of the methods called by web service clients should also be coarse-grained.

26.5 The Contents of an Enterprise Bean

To develop an enterprise bean, you must provide the following files:

- **Enterprise bean class:** Implements the business methods of the enterprise bean and any lifecycle callback methods.
- **Business interfaces:** Define the business methods implemented by the enterprise bean class. A business interface is not required if the enterprise bean exposes a local, no-interface view.
- **Helper classes:** Other classes needed by the enterprise bean class, such as exception and utility classes.

Package the programming artifacts in the preceding list either into an EJB JAR file (a stand-alone module that stores the enterprise bean) or within a web application archive (WAR) module. See [Packaging Enterprise Beans in EJB JAR Modules](#) and [Packaging Enterprise Beans in WAR Modules](#) for more information.

26.6 Naming Conventions for Enterprise Beans

Because enterprise beans are composed of multiple parts, it's useful to follow a naming convention for your applications. [Table 26–2](#) summarizes the conventions for the example beans in this tutorial.

Table 26–2 Naming Conventions for Enterprise Beans

Item	Syntax	Example
Enterprise bean name	<i>name</i> Bean	AccountBean
Enterprise bean class	<i>name</i> Bean	AccountBean
Business interface	<i>name</i>	Account

26.7 The Lifecycles of Enterprise Beans

An enterprise bean goes through various stages during its lifetime, or lifecycle. Each type of enterprise bean (stateful session, stateless session, singleton session, or message-driven) has a different lifecycle.

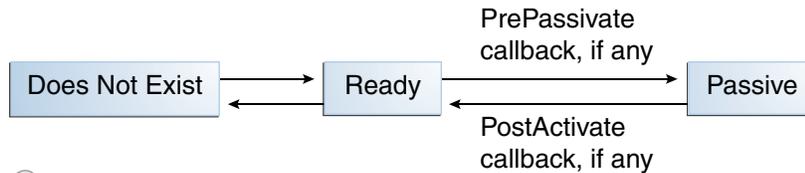
The descriptions that follow refer to methods that are explained along with the code examples in the next two chapters. If you are new to enterprise beans, you should skip this section and run the code examples first.

26.7.1 The Lifecycle of a Stateful Session Bean

[Figure 26–2](#) illustrates the stages that a session bean passes through during its lifetime. The client initiates the lifecycle by obtaining a reference to a stateful session bean. The container performs any dependency injection and then invokes the method annotated with `@PostConstruct`, if any. The bean is now ready to have its business methods invoked by the client.

Figure 26–2 Lifecycle of a Stateful Session Bean

- ① Create
- ② Dependency injection, if any
- ③ PostConstruct callback, if any
- ④ Init method, or ejbCreate<METHOD>, if any



- ① Remove
- ② PreDestroy callback, if any

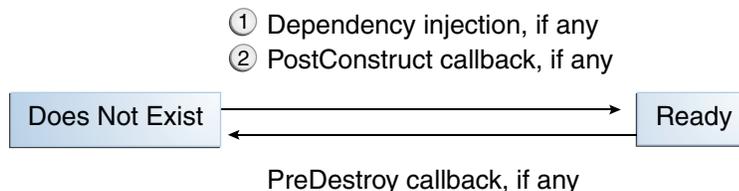
While in the ready stage, the EJB container may decide to deactivate, or **passivate**, the bean by moving it from memory to secondary storage. (Typically, the EJB container uses a least-recently-used algorithm to select a bean for passivation.) The EJB container invokes the method annotated `@PrePassivate`, if any, immediately before passivating it. If a client invokes a business method on the bean while it is in the passive stage, the EJB container activates the bean, calls the method annotated `@PostActivate`, if any, and then moves it to the ready stage.

At the end of the lifecycle, the client invokes a method annotated `@Remove`, and the EJB container calls the method annotated `@PreDestroy`, if any. The bean's instance is then ready for garbage collection.

Your code controls the invocation of only one lifecycle method: the method annotated `@Remove`. All other methods in [Figure 26–2](#) are invoked by the EJB container. See [Chapter 49, "Resource Adapters and Contracts"](#) for more information.

26.7.2 The Lifecycle of a Stateless Session Bean

Because a stateless session bean is never passivated, its lifecycle has only two stages: nonexistent and ready for the invocation of business methods. [Figure 26–3](#) illustrates the stages of a stateless session bean.

Figure 26–3 Lifecycle of a Stateless Session Bean

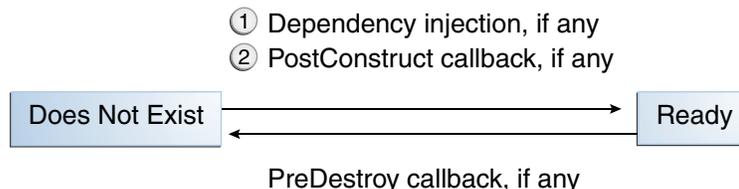
The EJB container typically creates and maintains a pool of stateless session beans, beginning the stateless session bean's lifecycle. The container performs any dependency injection and then invokes the method annotated `@PostConstruct`, if it exists. The bean is now ready to have its business methods invoked by a client.

At the end of the lifecycle, the EJB container calls the method annotated `@PreDestroy`, if it exists. The bean's instance is then ready for garbage collection.

26.7.3 The Lifecycle of a Singleton Session Bean

Like a stateless session bean, a singleton session bean is never passivated and has only two stages, nonexistent and ready for the invocation of business methods, as shown in Figure 26-4.

Figure 26-4 Lifecycle of a Singleton Session Bean



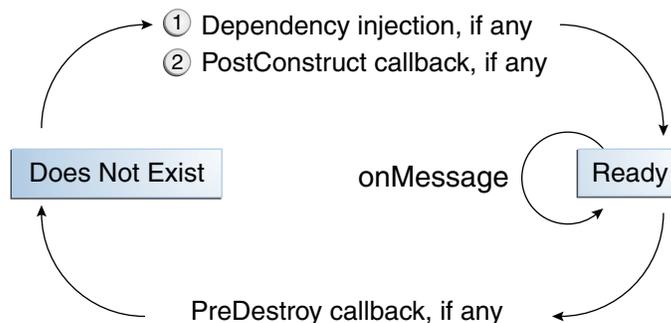
The EJB container initiates the singleton session bean lifecycle by creating the singleton instance. This occurs upon application deployment if the singleton is annotated with the `@Startup` annotation. The container performs any dependency injection and then invokes the method annotated `@PostConstruct`, if it exists. The singleton session bean is now ready to have its business methods invoked by the client.

At the end of the lifecycle, the EJB container calls the method annotated `@PreDestroy`, if it exists. The singleton session bean is now ready for garbage collection.

26.7.4 The Lifecycle of a Message-Driven Bean

Figure 26-5 illustrates the stages in the lifecycle of a message-driven bean.

Figure 26-5 Lifecycle of a Message-Driven Bean



The EJB container usually creates a pool of message-driven bean instances. For each instance, the EJB container performs these tasks.

1. If the message-driven bean uses dependency injection, the container injects these references before instantiating the instance.
2. The container calls the method annotated `@PostConstruct`, if any.

Like a stateless session bean, a message-driven bean is never passivated and has only two states: nonexistent and ready to receive messages.

At the end of the lifecycle, the container calls the method annotated `@PreDestroy`, if any. The bean's instance is then ready for garbage collection.

26.8 Further Information about Enterprise Beans

For more information on Enterprise JavaBeans technology, see

- Enterprise JavaBeans 3.2 specification:
<http://www.jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=345>
- Enterprise JavaBeans web site:
<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/ejb-141389.html>
- Enterprise JavaBeans 3.2 specification project:
<https://java.net/projects/ejb-spec/>

Getting Started with Enterprise Beans

This chapter shows how to develop, deploy, and run a simple Java EE application named `converter` that uses an EJB for its business logic. The purpose of `converter` is to calculate currency conversions between Japanese yen and Eurodollars. The `converter` application consists of an enterprise bean, which performs the calculations, and a web client.

Here's an overview of the steps you'll follow in this chapter:

1. Create the enterprise bean: `ConverterBean`.
2. Create the web client.
3. Deploy `converter` onto the server.
4. Using a browser, run the web client.

Before proceeding, make sure that you've done the following:

- Read [Chapter 1, "Overview"](#)
- Become familiar with enterprise beans (see [Chapter 26, "Enterprise Beans"](#))
- Started the server (see [Starting and Stopping the GlassFish Server](#))

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Creating the Enterprise Bean](#)
- [Modifying the Java EE Application](#)

27.1 Creating the Enterprise Bean

The enterprise bean in our example is a stateless session bean called `ConverterBean`. The source code for `ConverterBean` is in the `tut-install/examples/ejb/converter/src/main/java/` directory.

Creating `ConverterBean` requires these steps:

1. Coding the bean's implementation class (the source code is provided)
2. Compiling the source code

27.1.1 Coding the Enterprise Bean Class

The enterprise bean class for this example is called `ConverterBean`. This class implements two business methods: `dollarToYen` and `yenToEuro`. Because the enterprise bean class doesn't implement a business interface, the enterprise bean exposes a local, no-interface view. The public methods in the enterprise bean class are

available to clients that obtain a reference to ConverterBean. The source code for the ConverterBean class is as follows:

```
package converter.ejb;

import java.math.BigDecimal;
import javax.ejb.*;

@Stateless
public class ConverterBean {
    private BigDecimal yenRate = new BigDecimal("83.0602");
    private BigDecimal euroRate = new BigDecimal("0.0093016");

    public BigDecimal dollarToYen(BigDecimal dollars) {
        BigDecimal result = dollars.multiply(yenRate);
        return result.setScale(2, BigDecimal.ROUND_UP);
    }

    public BigDecimal yenToEuro(BigDecimal yen) {
        BigDecimal result = yen.multiply(euroRate);
        return result.setScale(2, BigDecimal.ROUND_UP);
    }
}
```

Note the `@Stateless` annotation decorating the enterprise bean class. This annotation lets the container know that ConverterBean is a stateless session bean.

27.1.2 Creating the converter Web Client

The web client is contained in the following servlet class:

```
tut-install/examples/ejb/converter/src/main/java/converter/web/ConverterServlet.java
```

A Java servlet is a web component that responds to HTTP requests.

The ConverterServlet class uses dependency injection to obtain a reference to ConverterBean. The `javax.ejb.EJB` annotation is added to the declaration of the private member variable `converter`, which is of type ConverterBean. ConverterBean exposes a local, no-interface view, so the enterprise bean implementation class is the variable type:

```
@WebServlet
public class ConverterServlet extends HttpServlet {
    @EJB
    ConverterBean converter;
    ...
}
```

When the user enters an amount to be converted to yen and euro, the amount is retrieved from the request parameters; then the ConverterBean.dollarToYen and the ConverterBean.yenToEuro methods are called:

```
...
try {
    String amount = request.getParameter("amount");
    if (amount != null && amount.length() > 0) {
        // convert the amount to a BigDecimal from the request parameter
        BigDecimal d = new BigDecimal(amount);
        // call the ConverterBean.dollarToYen() method to get the amount
        // in Yen
    }
}
```

```

        BigDecimal yenAmount = converter.dollarToYen(d);

        // call the ConverterBean.yenToEuro() method to get the amount
        // in Euros
        BigDecimal euroAmount = converter.yenToEuro(yenAmount);
        ...
    }
    ...
}

```

The results are displayed to the user.

27.1.3 Running the converter Example

Now you are ready to compile the enterprise bean class (`ConverterBean.java`) and the servlet class (`ConverterServlet.java`) and to package the compiled classes into a WAR file. You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the converter example.

27.1.3.1 To Run the converter Example in NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/ejb/
```
3. Select the `converter` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `converter` project and select **Run**.
6. Open a web browser to the following URL:


```
http://localhost:8080/converter
```
7. On the Servlet `ConverterServlet` page, enter 100 in the field and click **Submit**.
A second page opens, showing the converted values.

27.1.3.2 To Run the converter Example Using Maven

1. Make sure that GlassFish Server is running.
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/ejb/converter/
```

3. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command compiles the source files for the enterprise bean and the servlet, packages the project into a WAR module: `converter.war`, and deploys the WAR to the server. For more information about Maven, see [Building the Examples](#).

4. Open a web browser to the following URL:


```
http://localhost:8080/converter
```
5. On the Servlet `ConverterServlet` page, enter 100 in the field and click **Submit**.
A second page opens, showing the converted values.

27.2 Modifying the Java EE Application

The GlassFish Server supports iterative development. Whenever you make a change to a Java EE application, you must redeploy the application.

27.2.1 To Modify a Class File

To modify a class file in an enterprise bean, you change the source code, recompile it, and redeploy the application. For example, to update the exchange rate in the `dollarToYen` business method of the `ConverterBean` class, you would follow these steps.

To modify `ConverterServlet`, the procedure is the same.

1. Edit `ConverterBean.java` and save the file.
2. Recompile the source file.
 - To recompile `ConverterBean.java` in NetBeans IDE, right-click the `converter` project and select **Run**.

This recompiles the `ConverterBean.java` file, replaces the old class file in the build directory, and redeploys the application to GlassFish Server.

- Recompile `ConverterBean.java` using Maven:
 - a. In a terminal window, go to the `tut-install/examples/ejb/converter/` directory.
 - b. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command repackages and deploys the application.

Running the Enterprise Bean Examples

This chapter describes the EJB examples. Session beans provide a simple but powerful way to encapsulate business logic within an application. They can be accessed from remote Java clients, web service clients, and components running in the same server.

In [Chapter 27, "Getting Started with Enterprise Beans"](#), you built a stateless session bean named `ConverterBean`. This chapter examines the source code of four more session beans:

- `CartBean`: a stateful session bean that is accessed by a remote client
- `CounterBean`: a singleton session bean
- `HelloServiceBean`: a stateless session bean that implements a web service
- `TimerSessionBean`: a stateless session bean that sets a timer

The following topics are addressed here:

- [The cart Example](#)
- [A Singleton Session Bean Example: counter](#)
- [A Web Service Example: helloservice](#)
- [Using the Timer Service](#)
- [Handling Exceptions](#)

28.1 The cart Example

The cart example represents a shopping cart in an online bookstore and uses a stateful session bean to manage the operations of the shopping cart. The bean's client can add a book to the cart, remove a book, or retrieve the cart's contents. To assemble `cart`, you need the following code:

- Session bean class (`CartBean`)
- Remote business interface (`Cart`)

All session beans require a session bean class. All enterprise beans that permit remote access must have a remote business interface. To meet the needs of a specific application, an enterprise bean may also need some helper classes. The `CartBean` session bean uses two helper classes, `BookException` and `IdVerifier`, which are discussed in the section [Helper Classes](#).

The source code for this example is in the `tut-install/examples/ejb/cart/` directory.

28.1.1 The Business Interface

The Cart business interface is a plain Java interface that defines all the business methods implemented in the bean class. If the bean class implements a single interface, that interface is assumed to be the business interface. The business interface is a local interface unless it is annotated with the `javax.ejb.Remote` annotation; the `javax.ejb.Local` annotation is optional in this case.

The bean class may implement more than one interface. In that case, the business interfaces must either be explicitly annotated `@Local` or `@Remote` or be specified by decorating the bean class with `@Local` or `@Remote`. However, the following interfaces are excluded when determining whether the bean class implements more than one interface:

- `java.io.Serializable`
- `java.io.Externalizable`
- Any of the interfaces defined by the `javax.ejb` package

The source code for the Cart business interface follows:

```
package cart.ejb;

import cart.util.BookException;
import java.util.List;
import javax.ejb.Remote;

@Remote
public interface Cart {
    public void initialize(String person) throws BookException;
    public void initialize(String person, String id)
        throws BookException;
    public void addBook(String title);
    public void removeBook(String title) throws BookException;
    public List<String> getContents();
    public void remove();
}
```

28.1.2 Session Bean Class

The session bean class for this example is called `CartBean`. Like any stateful session bean, the `CartBean` class must meet the following requirements.

- The class is annotated `@Stateful`.
- The class implements the business methods defined in the business interface.

Stateful session beans also may

- Implement the business interface, a plain Java interface. It is good practice to implement the bean's business interface.
- Implement any optional lifecycle callback methods, annotated `@PostConstruct`, `@PreDestroy`, `@PostActivate`, and `@PrePassivate`.
- Implement any optional business methods annotated `@Remove`.

The source code for the `CartBean` class follows:

```
package cart.ejb;

import cart.util.BookException;
```

```
import cart.util.IdVerifier;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import javax.ejb.Remove;
import javax.ejb.Stateful;

@Stateful
public class CartBean implements Cart {
    String customerName;
    String customerId;
    List<String> contents;

    public void initialize(String person) throws BookException {
        if (person == null) {
            throw new BookException("Null person not allowed.");
        } else {
            customerName = person;
        }

        customerId = "0";
        contents = new ArrayList<String>();
    }

    public void initialize(String person, String id)
        throws BookException {
        if (person == null) {
            throw new BookException("Null person not allowed.");
        } else {

            customerName = person;
        }

        IdVerifier idChecker = new IdVerifier();

        if (idChecker.validate(id)) {
            customerId = id;
        } else {
            throw new BookException("Invalid id: " + id);
        }

        contents = new ArrayList<String>();
    }

    public void addBook(String title) {
        contents.add(title);
    }

    public void removeBook(String title) throws BookException {
        boolean result = contents.remove(title);
        if (result == false) {
            throw new BookException(title + " not in cart.");
        }
    }

    public List<String> getContents() {
        return contents;
    }

    @Remove
    public void remove() {
```

```
        contents = null;
    }
}
```

28.1.2.1 Lifecycle Callback Methods

A method in the bean class may be declared as a lifecycle callback method by annotating the method with the following annotations:

- `javax.annotation.PostConstruct`: Methods annotated with `@PostConstruct` are invoked by the container on newly constructed bean instances after all dependency injection has completed and before the first business method is invoked on the enterprise bean.
- `javax.annotation.PreDestroy`: Methods annotated with `@PreDestroy` are invoked after any method annotated `@Remove` has completed and before the container removes the enterprise bean instance.
- `javax.ejb.PostActivate`: Methods annotated with `@PostActivate` are invoked by the container after the container moves the bean from secondary storage to active status.
- `javax.ejb.PrePassivate`: Methods annotated with `@PrePassivate` are invoked by the container before it passivates the enterprise bean, meaning that the container temporarily removes the bean from the environment and saves it to secondary storage.

Lifecycle callback methods must return `void` and have no parameters.

28.1.2.2 Business Methods

The primary purpose of a session bean is to run business tasks for the client. The client invokes business methods on the object reference it gets from dependency injection or JNDI lookup. From the client's perspective, the business methods appear to run locally, although they run remotely in the session bean. The following code snippet shows how the `CartClient` program invokes the business methods:

```
cart.create("Duke DeEarl", "123");
...
cart.addBook("Bel Canto");
...
List<String> bookList = cart.getContents();
...
cart.removeBook("Gravity's Rainbow");
```

The `CartBean` class implements the business methods in the following code:

```
public void addBook(String title) {
    contents.addElement(title);
}

public void removeBook(String title) throws BookException {
    boolean result = contents.remove(title);
    if (result == false) {
        throw new BookException(title + "not in cart.");
    }
}

public List<String> getContents() {
    return contents;
}
```

The signature of a business method must conform to these rules.

- The method name must not begin with `ejb`, to avoid conflicts with callback methods defined by the EJB architecture. For example, you cannot call a business method `ejbCreate` or `ejbActivate`.
- The access control modifier must be `public`.
- If the bean allows remote access through a remote business interface, the arguments and return types must be legal types for the Java Remote Method Invocation (RMI) API.
- If the bean is a JAX-WS web service endpoint, the arguments and return types for the methods annotated `@WebMethod` must be legal types for JAX-WS.
- If the bean is a JAX-RS resource, the arguments and return types for the resource methods must be legal types for JAX-RS.
- The modifier must not be `static` or `final`.

The `throws` clause can include exceptions that you define for your application. The `removeBook` method, for example, throws a `BookException` if the book is not in the cart.

To indicate a system-level problem, such as the inability to connect to a database, a business method should throw a `javax.ejb.EJBException`. The container will not wrap application exceptions, such as `BookException`. Because `EJBException` is a subclass of `RuntimeException`, you do not need to include it in the `throws` clause of the business method.

28.1.3 The `@Remove` Method

Business methods annotated with `javax.ejb.Remove` in the stateful session bean class can be invoked by enterprise bean clients to remove the bean instance. The container will remove the enterprise bean after a `@Remove` method completes, either normally or abnormally.

In `CartBean`, the `remove` method is a `@Remove` method:

```
@Remove
public void remove() {
    contents = null;
}
```

28.1.4 Helper Classes

The `CartBean` session bean has two helper classes: `BookException` and `IdVerifier`. The `BookException` is thrown by the `removeBook` method, and the `IdVerifier` validates the `customerId` in one of the `create` methods. Helper classes may reside in an EJB JAR file that contains the enterprise bean class; a WAR file if the enterprise bean is packaged within a WAR; or an EAR file that contains an EJB JAR, a WAR file, or a separate library JAR file. In `cart`, the helper classes are included in a library JAR used by the application client and the EJB JAR.

28.1.5 Running the cart Example

Now you are ready to compile the remote interface (`Cart.java`), the enterprise bean class (`CartBean.java`), the client class (`CartClient.java`), and the helper classes (`BookException.java` and `IdVerifier.java`). Follow these steps.

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the cart application.

28.1.5.1 To Run the cart Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/ejb/`
3. Select the cart folder.
4. Select the **Open Required Projects** check box.
5. Click **Open Project**.
6. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the cart-ear project and select **Build**.

This builds and packages the application into `cart.ear`, located in `tut-install/examples/ejb/cart/cart-ear/target/`, and deploys this EAR file to your GlassFish Server instance.

You will see the output of the cart-app-client application client in the **Output** tab:

```
...
Retrieving book title from cart: Infinite Jest
Retrieving book title from cart: Bel Canto
Retrieving book title from cart: Kafka on the Shore
Removing "Gravity's Rainbow" from cart.
Caught a BookException: "Gravity's Rainbow" not in cart.
```

28.1.5.2 To Run the cart Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/ejb/cart/`
2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command compiles and packages the application into an EAR file, `cart.ear`, located in the `target` directory, and deploys the EAR to your GlassFish Server instance.

Then, the client stubs are retrieved and run. This is equivalent to running the following command:

```
appclient -client cart-earClient.jar
```

The client JAR, `cart-earClient.jar`, contains the application client class, the helper class `BookException`, and the `Cart` business interface.

When you run the client, the application client container injects any component references declared in the application client class, in this case the reference to the `Cart` enterprise bean.

You will see the output of the cart-app-client application client in the **Output** tab:

```
...
Retrieving book title from cart: Infinite Jest
```

```

Retrieving book title from cart: Bel Canto
Retrieving book title from cart: Kafka on the Shore
Removing "Gravity's Rainbow" from cart.
Caught a BookException: "Gravity's Rainbow" not in cart.

```

28.2 A Singleton Session Bean Example: counter

The `counter` example demonstrates how to create a singleton session bean.

28.2.1 Creating a Singleton Session Bean

The `javax.ejb.Singleton` annotation is used to specify that the enterprise bean implementation class is a singleton session bean:

```

@Singleton
public class SingletonBean { ... }

```

28.2.1.1 Initializing Singleton Session Beans

The EJB container is responsible for determining when to initialize a singleton session bean instance unless the singleton session bean implementation class is annotated with the `javax.ejb.Startup` annotation. In this case, sometimes called **eager initialization**, the EJB container must initialize the singleton session bean upon application startup. The singleton session bean is initialized before the EJB container delivers client requests to any enterprise beans in the application. This allows the singleton session bean to perform, for example, application startup tasks.

The following singleton session bean stores the status of an application and is eagerly initialized:

```

@Startup
@Singleton
public class StatusBean {
    private String status;

    @PostConstruct
    void init {
        status = "Ready";
    }
    ...
}

```

Sometimes multiple singleton session beans are used to initialize data for an application and therefore must be initialized in a specific order. In these cases, use the `javax.ejb.DependsOn` annotation to declare the startup dependencies of the singleton session bean. The `@DependsOn` annotation's `value` attribute is one or more strings that specify the name of the target singleton session bean. If more than one dependent singleton bean is specified in `@DependsOn`, the order in which they are listed is not necessarily the order in which the EJB container will initialize the target singleton session beans.

The following singleton session bean, `PrimaryBean`, should be started up first:

```

@Singleton
public class PrimaryBean { ... }

```

`SecondaryBean` depends on `PrimaryBean`:

```
@Singleton
@DependsOn("PrimaryBean")
public class SecondaryBean { ... }
```

This guarantees that the EJB container will initialize `PrimaryBean` before `SecondaryBean`.

The following singleton session bean, `TertiaryBean`, depends on `PrimaryBean` and `SecondaryBean`:

```
@Singleton
@DependsOn({"PrimaryBean", "SecondaryBean"})
public class TertiaryBean { ... }
```

`SecondaryBean` explicitly requires `PrimaryBean` to be initialized before it is initialized, through its own `@DependsOn` annotation. In this case, the EJB container will first initialize `PrimaryBean`, then `SecondaryBean`, and finally `TertiaryBean`.

If, however, `SecondaryBean` did not explicitly depend on `PrimaryBean`, the EJB container may initialize either `PrimaryBean` or `SecondaryBean` first. That is, the EJB container could initialize the singletons in the following order: `SecondaryBean`, `PrimaryBean`, `TertiaryBean`.

28.2.1.2 Managing Concurrent Access in a Singleton Session Bean

Singleton session beans are designed for **concurrent access**, situations in which many clients need to access a single instance of a session bean at the same time. A singleton's client needs only a reference to a singleton in order to invoke any business methods exposed by the singleton and doesn't need to worry about any other clients that may be simultaneously invoking business methods on the same singleton.

When creating a singleton session bean, concurrent access to the singleton's business methods can be controlled in two ways: container-managed concurrency and bean-managed concurrency.

The `javax.ejb.ConcurrencyManagement` annotation is used to specify container-managed or bean-managed concurrency for the singleton. With `@ConcurrencyManagement`, a `type` attribute must be set to either `javax.ejb.ConcurrencyManagementType.CONTAINER` or `javax.ejb.ConcurrencyManagementType.BEAN`. If no `@ConcurrencyManagement` annotation is present on the singleton implementation class, the EJB container default of container-managed concurrency is used.

Container-Managed Concurrency

If a singleton uses **container-managed concurrency**, the EJB container controls client access to the business methods of the singleton. The `javax.ejb.Lock` annotation and a `javax.ejb.LockType` type are used to specify the access level of the singleton's business methods or `@Timeout` methods. The `LockType` enumerated types are `READ` and `WRITE`.

Annotate a singleton's business or timeout method with `@Lock(LockType.READ)` if the method can be concurrently accessed, or shared, with many clients. Annotate the business or timeout method with `@Lock(LockType.WRITE)` if the singleton session bean should be locked to other clients while a client is calling that method. Typically, the `@Lock(LockType.WRITE)` annotation is used when clients are modifying the state of the singleton.

Annotating a singleton class with `@Lock` specifies that all the business methods and any timeout methods of the singleton will use the specified lock type unless they explicitly set the lock type with a method-level `@Lock` annotation. If no `@Lock`

annotation is present on the singleton class, the default lock type, `@Lock(LockType.WRITE)`, is applied to all business and timeout methods.

The following example shows how to use the `@ConcurrencyManagement`, `@Lock(LockType.READ)`, and `@Lock(LockType.WRITE)` annotations for a singleton that uses container-managed concurrency.

Although by default, singletons use container-managed concurrency, the `@ConcurrencyManagement(CONTAINER)` annotation may be added at the class level of the singleton to explicitly set the concurrency management type:

```
@ConcurrencyManagement(ConcurrencyManagementType.CONTAINER)
@Singleton
public class ExampleSingletonBean {
    private String state;

    @Lock(LockType.READ)
    public String getState() {
        return state;
    }

    @Lock(LockType.WRITE)
    public void setState(String newState) {
        state = newState;
    }
}
```

The `getState` method can be accessed by many clients at the same time because it is annotated with `@Lock(LockType.READ)`. When the `setState` method is called, however, all the methods in `ExampleSingletonBean` will be locked to other clients because `setState` is annotated with `@Lock(LockType.WRITE)`. This prevents two clients from attempting to simultaneously change the state variable of `ExampleSingletonBean`.

The `getData` and `getStatus` methods in the following singleton are of type `READ`, and the `setStatus` method is of type `WRITE`:

```
@Singleton
@Lock(LockType.READ)
public class SharedSingletonBean {
    private String data;
    private String status;

    public String getData() {
        return data;
    }

    public String getStatus() {
        return status;
    }

    @Lock(LockType.WRITE)
    public void setStatus(String newStatus) {
        status = newStatus;
    }
}
```

If a method is of locking type `WRITE`, client access to all the singleton's methods is blocked until the current client finishes its method call or an access timeout occurs. When an access timeout occurs, the EJB container throws a `javax.ejb.ConcurrentAccessTimeoutException`. The `javax.ejb.AccessTimeout`

annotation is used to specify the number of milliseconds before an access timeout occurs. If added at the class level of a singleton, `@AccessTimeout` specifies the access timeout value for all methods in the singleton unless a method explicitly overrides the default with its own `@AccessTimeout` annotation.

The `@AccessTimeout` annotation can be applied to both `@Lock(LockType.READ)` and `@Lock(LockType.WRITE)` methods. The `@AccessTimeout` annotation has one required element, `value`, and one optional element, `unit`. By default, the value is specified in milliseconds. To change the value unit, set `unit` to one of the `java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit` constants: `NANOSECONDS`, `MICROSECONDS`, `MILLISECONDS`, or `SECONDS`.

The following singleton has a default access timeout value of 120,000 milliseconds, or 2 minutes. The `doTediousOperation` method overrides the default access timeout and sets the value to 360,000 milliseconds, or 6 minutes.

```
@Singleton
@AccessTimeout(value=120000)
public class StatusSingletonBean {
    private String status;

    @Lock(LockType.WRITE)
    public void setStatus(String new Status) {
        status = newStatus;
    }

    @Lock(LockType.WRITE)
    @AccessTimeout(value=360000)
    public void doTediousOperation {
        ...
    }
}
```

The following singleton has a default access timeout value of 60 seconds, specified using the `TimeUnit.SECONDS` constant:

```
@Singleton
@AccessTimeout(value=60, unit=TimeUnit.SECONDS)
public class StatusSingletonBean { ... }
```

Bean-Managed Concurrency

Singletons that use **bean-managed concurrency** allow full concurrent access to all the business and timeout methods in the singleton. The developer of the singleton is responsible for ensuring that the state of the singleton is synchronized across all clients. Developers who create singletons with bean-managed concurrency are allowed to use the Java programming language synchronization primitives, such as `synchronization` and `volatile`, to prevent errors during concurrent access.

Add a `@ConcurrencyManagement` annotation with the type set to `ConcurrencyManagementType.BEAN` at the class level of the singleton to specify bean-managed concurrency:

```
@ConcurrencyManagement(ConcurrencyManagementType.BEAN)
@Singleton
public class AnotherSingletonBean { ... }
```

28.2.1.3 Handling Errors in a Singleton Session Bean

If a singleton session bean encounters an error when initialized by the EJB container, that singleton instance will be destroyed.

Unlike other enterprise beans, once a singleton session bean instance is initialized, it is not destroyed if the singleton's business or lifecycle methods cause system exceptions. This ensures that the same singleton instance is used throughout the application lifecycle.

28.2.2 The Architecture of the counter Example

The counter example consists of a singleton session bean, CounterBean, and a JavaServer Faces Facelets web front end.

CounterBean is a simple singleton with one method, `getHits`, that returns an integer representing the number of times a web page has been accessed. Here is the code of CounterBean:

```
package counter.ejb;

import javax.ejb.Singleton;

/**
 * CounterBean is a simple singleton session bean that records the number
 * of hits to a web page.
 */
@Singleton
public class CounterBean {
    private int hits = 1;

    // Increment and return the number of hits
    public int getHits() {
        return hits++;
    }
}
```

The `@Singleton` annotation marks CounterBean as a singleton session bean. CounterBean uses a local, no-interface view.

CounterBean uses the EJB container's default metadata values for singletons to simplify the coding of the singleton implementation class. There is no `@ConcurrencyManagement` annotation on the class, so the default of container-managed concurrency access is applied. There is no `@Lock` annotation on the class or business method, so the default of `@Lock(WRITE)` is applied to the only business method, `getHits`.

The following version of CounterBean is functionally equivalent to the preceding version:

```
package counter.ejb;

import javax.ejb.Singleton;
import javax.ejb.ConcurrencyManagement;
import static javax.ejb.ConcurrencyManagementType.CONTAINER;
import javax.ejb.Lock;
import javax.ejb.LockType.WRITE;

/**
 * CounterBean is a simple singleton session bean that records the number
 * of hits to a web page.
 */
```

```
*/
@Singleton
@ConcurrencyManagement(CONTAINER)
public class CounterBean {
    private int hits = 1;

    // Increment and return the number of hits
    @Lock(WRITE)
    public int getHits() {
        return hits++;
    }
}
```

The web front end of counter consists of a JavaServer Faces managed bean, `Count.java`, that is used by the Facelets XHTML files `template.xhtml` and `template-client.xhtml`. The `Count` JavaServer Faces managed bean obtains a reference to `CounterBean` through dependency injection. `Count` defines a `hitCount` JavaBeans property. When the `getHitCount` getter method is called from the XHTML files, `CounterBean`'s `getHits` method is called to return the current number of page hits.

Here's the `Count` managed bean class:

```
@Named
@ConversationScoped
public class Count implements Serializable {
    @EJB
    private CounterBean counterBean;

    private int hitCount;

    public Count() {
        this.hitCount = 0;
    }

    public int getHitCount() {
        hitCount = counterBean.getHits();
        return hitCount;
    }

    public void setHitCount(int newHits) {
        this.hitCount = newHits;
    }
}
```

The `template.xhtml` and `template-client.xhtml` files are used to render a Facelets view that displays the number of hits to that view. The `template-client.xhtml` file uses an expression language statement, `#{count.hitCount}`, to access the `hitCount` property of the `Count` managed bean. Here is the content of `template-client.xhtml`:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html lang="en"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:ui="http://java.sun.com/jsf/facelets"
    xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
<body>
```

This text above will not be displayed.

```

<ui:composition template="/template.xhtml">

    This text will not be displayed.

    <ui:define name="title">
        This page has been accessed #{count.hitCount} time(s).
    </ui:define>

    This text will also not be displayed.

    <ui:define name="body">
        Hooray!
    </ui:define>

    This text will not be displayed.

</ui:composition>

    This text below will also not be displayed.

</body>
</html>

```

28.2.3 Running the counter Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the counter example.

28.2.3.1 To Run the counter Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/ejb/
```
3. Select the counter folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the counter project and select **Run**.

A web browser will open the URL `http://localhost:8080/counter`, which displays the number of hits.
6. Click the browser's **Refresh** button to see the hit count increment.

28.2.3.2 To Run the counter Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:


```
tut-install/examples/ejb/counter/
```
2. Enter the following command:


```
mvn install
```

This will build and deploy counter to your GlassFish Server instance.

3. In a web browser, enter the following URL:


```
http://localhost:8080/counter
```

4. Click the browser's **Refresh** button to see the hit count increment.

28.3 A Web Service Example: helloservice

This example demonstrates a simple web service that generates a response based on information received from the client. `HelloServiceBean` is a stateless session bean that implements a single method: `sayHello`. This method matches the `sayHello` method invoked by the client described in [A Simple JAX-WS Application Client](#).

28.3.1 The Web Service Endpoint Implementation Class

`HelloServiceBean` is the endpoint implementation class, typically the primary programming artifact for enterprise bean web service endpoints. The web service endpoint implementation class has the following requirements.

- The class must be annotated with either the `javax.jws.WebService` or the `javax.jws.WebServiceProvider` annotation.
- The implementing class may explicitly reference an SEI through the `endpointInterface` element of the `@WebService` annotation but is not required to do so. If no `endpointInterface` is specified in `@WebService`, an SEI is implicitly defined for the implementing class.
- The business methods of the implementing class must be public and must not be declared `static` or `final`.
- Business methods that are exposed to web service clients must be annotated with `javax.jws.WebMethod`.
- Business methods that are exposed to web service clients must have JAXB-compatible parameters and return types. See the list of JAXB default data type bindings at [Types Supported by JAX-WS](#).
- The implementing class must not be declared `final` and must not be abstract.
- The implementing class must have a default public constructor.
- The endpoint class must be annotated `@Stateless`.
- The implementing class must not define the `finalize` method.
- The implementing class may use the `javax.annotation.PostConstruct` or `javax.annotation.PreDestroy` annotations on its methods for lifecycle event callbacks.

The `@PostConstruct` method is called by the container before the implementing class begins responding to web service clients.

The `@PreDestroy` method is called by the container before the endpoint is removed from operation.

28.3.2 Stateless Session Bean Implementation Class

The `HelloServiceBean` class implements the `sayHello` method, which is annotated `@WebMethod`. The source code for the `HelloServiceBean` class follows:

```
package com.sun.tutorial.javaee.ejb;

import javax.ejb.Stateless;
import javax.jws.WebMethod;
import javax.jws.WebService;
```

```
@Stateless
@WebService
public class HelloServiceBean {
    private String message = "Hello, ";

    public void HelloServiceBean() {}

    @WebMethod
    public String sayHello(String name) {
        return message + name + ".";
    }
}
```

28.3.3 Running the helloservice Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, and deploy the helloservice example. You can then use the Administration Console to test the web service endpoint methods.

28.3.3.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the helloservice Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
tut-install/examples/ejb/
3. Select the helloservice folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the helloservice project and select **Deploy**.

This builds and packages the application into `helloservice.ear`, located in *tut-install/examples/ejb/helloservice/target/*, and deploys this EAR file to the GlassFish Server.

28.3.3.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the helloservice Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:
tut-install/examples/ejb/helloservice/
2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This compiles the source files and packages the application into an EJB JAR file located at *tut-install/examples/ejb/helloservice/target/helloservice.jar*. Then the EJB JAR file is deployed to GlassFish Server.

Upon deployment, the GlassFish Server generates additional artifacts required for web service invocation, including the WSDL file.

28.3.3.3 To Test the Service without a Client

The GlassFish Server Administration Console allows you to test the methods of a web service endpoint. To test the `sayHello` method of `HelloServiceBean`, follow these steps.

1. Open the Administration Console by opening the following URL in a web browser:
`http://localhost:4848/`
2. In the navigation tree, select the **Applications** node.
3. In the **Applications** table, click the `helloService` link.
4. In the **Modules and Components** table, click the **View Endpoint** link.
5. On the Web Service Endpoint Information page, click the **Tester** link:
`/HelloServiceBeanService/HelloServiceBean?Tester`
6. On the Web Service Test Links page, click the non-secure link (the one that specifies port 8080).
7. On the `HelloServiceBeanService` Web Service Tester page, under **Methods**, enter a name as the parameter to the `sayHello` method.
8. Click **sayHello**.

The `sayHello` Method invocation page opens. Under **Method returned**, you'll see the response from the endpoint.

28.4 Using the Timer Service

Applications that model business work flows often rely on timed notifications. The timer service of the enterprise bean container enables you to schedule timed notifications for all types of enterprise beans except for stateful session beans. You can schedule a timed notification to occur according to a calendar schedule, at a specific time, after a duration of time, or at timed intervals. For example, you could set timers to go off at 10:30 a.m. on May 23, in 30 days, or every 12 hours.

Enterprise bean timers are either programmatic timers or automatic timers. **Programmatic timers** are set by explicitly calling one of the timer creation methods of the `TimerService` interface. **Automatic timers** are created upon the successful deployment of an enterprise bean that contains a method annotated with the `javax.ejb.Schedule` or `javax.ejb.Schedules` annotations.

28.4.1 Creating Calendar-Based Timer Expressions

Timers can be set according to a calendar-based schedule, expressed using a syntax similar to the UNIX `cron` utility. Both programmatic and automatic timers can use calendar-based timer expressions. [Table 28-1](#) shows the calendar-based timer attributes.

Table 28-1 *Calendar-Based Timer Attributes*

Attribute	Description	Default Value	Allowable Values and Examples
<code>second</code>	One or more seconds within a minute	0	0 to 59. For example: <code>second="30"</code> .
<code>minute</code>	One or more minutes within an hour	0	0 to 59. For example: <code>minute="15"</code> .
<code>hour</code>	One or more hours within a day	0	0 to 23. For example: <code>hour="13"</code> .

Table 28-1 (Cont.) Calendar-Based Timer Attributes

Attribute	Description	Default Value	Allowable Values and Examples
dayOfWeek	One or more days within a week	*	0 to 7 (both 0 and 7 refer to Sunday). For example: dayOfWeek="3". Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat. For example: dayOfWeek="Mon".
dayOfMonth	One or more days within a month	*	1 to 31. For example: dayOfMonth="15". -7 to -1 (a negative number means the <i>n</i> th day or days before the end of the month). For example: dayOfMonth="-3". Last. For example: dayOfMonth="Last". [1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, Last] [Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat]. For example: dayOfMonth="2nd Fri".
month	One or more months within a year	*	1 to 12. For example: month="7". Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec. For example: month="July".
year	A particular calendar year	*	A four-digit calendar year. For example: year="2011".

28.4.1.1 Specifying Multiple Values in Calendar Expressions

You can specify multiple values in calendar expressions, as described in the following sections.

Using Wildcards in Calendar Expressions

Setting an attribute to an asterisk symbol (*) represents all allowable values for the attribute.

The following expression represents every minute:

```
minute="*"
```

The following expression represents every day of the week:

```
dayOfWeek="*"
```

Specifying a List of Values

To specify two or more values for an attribute, use a comma (,) to separate the values. A range of values is allowed as part of a list. Wildcards and intervals, however, are not allowed.

Duplicates within a list are ignored.

The following expression sets the day of the week to Tuesday and Thursday:

```
dayOfWeek="Tue, Thu"
```

The following expression represents 4:00 a.m., every hour from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. using a range, and 10:00 p.m.:

```
hour="4,9-17,22"
```

Specifying a Range of Values

Use a dash character (-) to specify an inclusive range of values for an attribute. Members of a range cannot be wildcards, lists, or intervals. A range of the form *x-x*, is

equivalent to the single-valued expression x . A range of the form $x-y$ where x is greater than y is equivalent to the expression x -*maximumvalue*, *minimumvalue*- y . That is, the expression begins at x , rolls over to the beginning of the allowable values, and continues up to y .

The following expression represents 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.:

```
hour="9-17"
```

The following expression represents Friday through Monday:

```
dayOfWeek="5-1"
```

The following expression represents the twenty-fifth day of the month to the end of the month, and the beginning of the month to the fifth day of the month:

```
dayOfMonth="25-5"
```

It is equivalent to the following expression:

```
dayOfMonth="25-Last,1-5"
```

Specifying Intervals

The forward slash (/) constrains an attribute to a starting point and an interval and is used to specify every N seconds, minutes, or hours within the minute, hour, or day. For an expression of the form x/y , x represents the starting point and y represents the interval. The wildcard character may be used in the x position of an interval and is equivalent to setting x to 0.

Intervals may be set only for `second`, `minute`, and `hour` attributes.

The following expression represents every 10 minutes within the hour:

```
minute="*/10"
```

It is equivalent to:

```
minute="0,10,20,30,40,50"
```

The following expression represents every 2 hours starting at noon:

```
hour="12/2"
```

28.4.2 Programmatic Timers

When a programmatic timer expires (goes off), the container calls the method annotated `@Timeout` in the bean's implementation class. The `@Timeout` method contains the business logic that handles the timed event.

28.4.2.1 The `@Timeout` Method

Methods annotated `@Timeout` in the enterprise bean class must return `void` and optionally take a `javax.ejb.Timer` object as the only parameter. They may not throw application exceptions.

```
@Timeout
public void timeout(Timer timer) {
    System.out.println("TimerBean: timeout occurred");
}
```

28.4.2.2 Creating Programmatic Timers

To create a timer, the bean invokes one of the `create` methods of the `TimerService` interface. These methods allow single-action, interval, or calendar-based timers to be created.

For single-action or interval timers, the expiration of the timer can be expressed as either a duration or an absolute time. The duration is expressed as a the number of milliseconds before a timeout event is triggered. To specify an absolute time, create a `java.util.Date` object and pass it to the `TimerService.createSingleActionTimer` or the `TimerService.createTimer` method.

The following code sets a programmatic timer that will expire in 1 minute (60,000 milliseconds):

```
long duration = 60000;
Timer timer =
    timerService.createSingleActionTimer(duration, new TimerConfig());
```

The following code sets a programmatic timer that will expire at 12:05 p.m. on May 1, 2010, specified as a `java.util.Date`:

```
SimpleDateFormat formatter =
    new SimpleDateFormat("MM/dd/yyyy 'at' HH:mm");
Date date = formatter.parse("05/01/2010 at 12:05");
Timer timer = timerService.createSingleActionTimer(date, new TimerConfig());
```

For calendar-based timers, the expiration of the timer is expressed as a `javax.ejb.ScheduleExpression` object, passed as a parameter to the `TimerService.createCalendarTimer` method. The `ScheduleExpression` class represents calendar-based timer expressions and has methods that correspond to the attributes described in [Creating Calendar-Based Timer Expressions](#).

The following code creates a programmatic timer using the `ScheduleExpression` helper class:

```
ScheduleExpression schedule = new ScheduleExpression();
schedule.dayOfWeek("Mon");
schedule.hour("12-17, 23");
Timer timer = timerService.createCalendarTimer(schedule);
```

For details on the method signatures, see the `TimerService` API documentation at <http://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/api/javax/ejb/TimerService.html>.

The bean described in [The timersession Example](#) creates a timer as follows:

```
Timer timer = timerService.createTimer(intervalDuration,
    "Created new programmatic timer");
```

In the `timersession` example, `createTimer` is invoked in a business method, which is called by a client.

Timers are persistent by default. If the server is shut down or crashes, persistent timers are saved and will become active again when the server is restarted. If a persistent timer expires while the server is down, the container will call the `@Timeout` method when the server is restarted.

Nonpersistent programmatic timers are created by calling `TimerConfig.setPersistent(false)` and passing the `TimerConfig` object to one of the timer-creation methods.

The `Date` and `long` parameters of the `createTimer` methods represent time with the resolution of milliseconds. However, because the timer service is not intended for

real-time applications, a callback to the `@Timeout` method might not occur with millisecond precision. The timer service is for business applications, which typically measure time in hours, days, or longer durations.

28.4.3 Automatic Timers

Automatic timers are created by the EJB container when an enterprise bean that contains methods annotated with the `@Schedule` or `@Schedules` annotations is deployed. An enterprise bean can have multiple automatic timeout methods, unlike a programmatic timer, which allows only one method annotated with the `@Timeout` annotation in the enterprise bean class.

Automatic timers can be configured through annotations or through the `ejb-jar.xml` deployment descriptor.

Adding a `@Schedule` annotation on an enterprise bean marks that method as a timeout method according to the calendar schedule specified in the attributes of `@Schedule`.

The `@Schedule` annotation has elements that correspond to the calendar expressions detailed in [Creating Calendar-Based Timer Expressions](#) and the `persistent`, `info`, and `timezone` elements.

The optional `persistent` element takes a Boolean value and is used to specify whether the automatic timer should survive a server restart or crash. By default, all automatic timers are persistent.

The optional `timezone` element is used to specify that the automatic timer is associated with a particular time zone. If set, this element will evaluate all timer expressions in relation to the specified time zone, regardless of the time zone in which the EJB container is running. By default, all automatic timers set are in relation to the default time zone of the server.

The optional `info` element is used to set an informational description of the timer. A timer's information can be retrieved later by using `Timer.getInfo`.

The following timeout method uses `@Schedule` to set a timer that will expire every Sunday at midnight:

```
@Schedule(dayOfWeek="Sun", hour="0")
public void cleanupWeekData() { ... }
```

The `@Schedules` annotation is used to specify multiple calendar-based timer expressions for a given timeout method.

The following timeout method uses the `@Schedules` annotation to set multiple calendar-based timer expressions. The first expression sets a timer to expire on the last day of every month. The second expression sets a timer to expire every Friday at 11:00 p.m.

```
@Schedules ({
    @Schedule(dayOfMonth="Last"),
    @Schedule(dayOfWeek="Fri", hour="23")
})
public void doPeriodicCleanup() { ... }
```

28.4.4 Canceling and Saving Timers

Timers can be cancelled by the following events.

- When a single-event timer expires, the EJB container calls the associated timeout method and then cancels the timer.

- When the bean invokes the `cancel` method of the `Timer` interface, the container cancels the timer.

If a method is invoked on a cancelled timer, the container throws the `javax.ejb.NoSuchObjectLocalException`.

To save a `Timer` object for future reference, invoke its `getHandle` method and store the `TimerHandle` object in a database. (A `TimerHandle` object is serializable.) To reinstantiate the `Timer` object, retrieve the handle from the database and invoke `getTimer` on the handle. A `TimerHandle` object cannot be passed as an argument of a method defined in a remote or web service interface. In other words, remote clients and web service clients cannot access a bean's `TimerHandle` object. Local clients, however, do not have this restriction.

28.4.5 Getting Timer Information

In addition to defining the `cancel` and `getHandle` methods, the `Timer` interface defines methods for obtaining information about timers:

```
public long getTimeRemaining();
public java.util.Date getNextTimeout();
public java.io.Serializable getInfo();
```

The `getInfo` method returns the object that was the last parameter of the `createTimer` invocation. For example, in the `createTimer` code snippet of the preceding section, this information parameter is a `String` object with the value `created timer`.

To retrieve all of a bean's active timers, call the `getTimers` method of the `TimerService` interface. The `getTimers` method returns a collection of `Timer` objects.

28.4.6 Transactions and Timers

An enterprise bean usually creates a timer within a transaction. If this transaction is rolled back, the timer creation also is rolled back. Similarly, if a bean cancels a timer within a transaction that gets rolled back, the timer cancellation is rolled back. In this case, the timer's duration is reset as if the cancellation had never occurred.

In beans that use container-managed transactions, the `@Timeout` method usually has the `Required` or `RequiresNew` transaction attribute to preserve transaction integrity. With these attributes, the EJB container begins the new transaction before calling the `@Timeout` method. If the transaction is rolled back, the container will call the `@Timeout` method at least one more time.

28.4.7 The `timersession` Example

The source code for this example is in the `tut-install/examples/ejb/timersession/src/main/java/` directory.

`TimerSessionBean` is a singleton session bean that shows how to set both an automatic timer and a programmatic timer. In the source code listing of `TimerSessionBean` that follows, the `setTimer` and `@Timeout` methods are used to set a programmatic timer. A `TimerService` instance is injected by the container when the bean is created. Because it's a business method, `setTimer` is exposed to the local, no-interface view of `TimerSessionBean` and can be invoked by the client. In this example, the client invokes `setTimer` with an interval duration of 8,000 milliseconds, or 8 seconds. The `setTimer` method creates a new timer by invoking the `createTimer` method of `TimerService`. Now that the timer is set, the EJB container will invoke the `programmaticTimeout` method of `TimerSessionBean` when the timer expires, in about 8 seconds.

```
...
    public void setTimer(long intervalDuration) {
        logger.info("Setting a programmatic timeout for " +
            intervalDuration + " milliseconds from now.");
        Timer timer = timerService.createTimer(intervalDuration,
            "Created new programmatic timer");
    }

    @Timeout
    public void programmaticTimeout(Timer timer) {
        this.setLastProgrammaticTimeout(new Date());
        logger.info("Programmatic timeout occurred.");
    }
...

```

`TimerSessionBean` also has an automatic timer and timeout method, `automaticTimeout`. The automatic timer is set to expire every 1 minute and is set by using a calendar-based timer expression in the `@Schedule` annotation:

```
...
    @Schedule(minute="*/1", hour="*")
    public void automaticTimeout() {
        this.setLastAutomaticTimeout(new Date());
        logger.info("Automatic timeout occurred");
    }
...

```

`TimerSessionBean` also has two business methods: `getLastProgrammaticTimeout` and `getLastAutomaticTimeout`. Clients call these methods to get the date and time of the last timeout for the programmatic timer and automatic timer, respectively.

Here's the source code for the `TimerSessionBean` class:

```
package timersession.ejb;

import java.util.Date;
import java.util.logging.Logger;
import javax.annotation.Resource;
import javax.ejb.Schedule;
import javax.ejb.Stateless;
import javax.ejb.Timeout;
import javax.ejb.Timer;
import javax.ejb.TimerService;

@Singleton
public class TimerSessionBean {
    @Resource
    TimerService timerService;

    private Date lastProgrammaticTimeout;
    private Date lastAutomaticTimeout;

    private Logger logger = Logger.getLogger(
        "com.sun.tutorial.javaee.ejb.timersession.TimerSessionBean");

    public void setTimer(long intervalDuration) {
        logger.info("Setting a programmatic timeout for "
            + intervalDuration + " milliseconds from now.");
        Timer timer = timerService.createTimer(intervalDuration,
            "Created new programmatic timer");
    }
}

```

```

@Timeout
public void programmaticTimeout(Timer timer) {
    this.setLastProgrammaticTimeout(new Date());
    logger.info("Programmatic timeout occurred.");
}

@Schedule(minute="*/1", hour="*")
public void automaticTimeout() {
    this.setLastAutomaticTimeout(new Date());
    logger.info("Automatic timeout occurred");
}

public String getLastProgrammaticTimeout() {
    if (lastProgrammaticTimeout != null) {
        return lastProgrammaticTimeout.toString();
    } else {
        return "never";
    }
}

public void setLastProgrammaticTimeout(Date lastTimeout) {
    this.lastProgrammaticTimeout = lastTimeout;
}

public String getLastAutomaticTimeout() {
    if (lastAutomaticTimeout != null) {
        return lastAutomaticTimeout.toString();
    } else {
        return "never";
    }
}

public void setLastAutomaticTimeout(Date lastAutomaticTimeout) {
    this.lastAutomaticTimeout = lastAutomaticTimeout;
}
}

```

Note: GlassFish Server has a default minimum timeout value of 1,000 milliseconds, or 1 second. If you need to set the timeout value lower than 1,000 milliseconds, change the value of the Minimum Delivery Interval setting in the Administration Console. To modify the minimum timeout value, in the Administration Console expand Configurations, then expand server-config, select EJB Container, and click the EJB Timer Service tab. Enter a new timeout value under Minimum Delivery Interval and click Save. The lowest practical value for minimum-delivery-interval-in-millis is around 10 milliseconds, owing to virtual machine constraints.

28.4.8 Running the timersession Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the timersession example.

28.4.8.1 To Run the timersession Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/ejb/`
3. Select the `timersession` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. From the **Run** menu, select **Run Project**.

This builds and packages the application into `timersession.war`, located in `tut-install/examples/ejb/timersession/target/`, deploys this WAR file to your GlassFish Server instance, and then runs the web client.

28.4.8.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the timersession Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/ejb/timersession/`
2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This runs compiles the source files and packages the application into a WAR file located at `tut-install/examples/ejb/timersession/target/timersession.war`, and deploys it to your GlassFish Server instance.

28.4.8.3 To Run the Web Client

1. Open a web browser to `http://localhost:8080/timersession`.
2. Click **Set Timer** to set a programmatic timer.
3. Wait for a while and click the browser's **Refresh** button.

You will see the date and time of the last programmatic and automatic timeouts.

To see the messages that are logged when a timeout occurs, open the `server.log` file located in `domain-dir/server/logs/`.

28.5 Handling Exceptions

The exceptions thrown by enterprise beans fall into two categories: system and application.

A **system exception** indicates a problem with the services that support an application. For example, a connection to an external resource cannot be obtained, or an injected resource cannot be found. If it encounters a system-level problem, your enterprise bean should throw a `javax.ejb.EJBException`. Because the `EJBException` is a subclass of the `RuntimeException`, you do not have to specify it in the `throws` clause of the method declaration. If a system exception is thrown, the EJB container might destroy the bean instance. Therefore, a system exception cannot be handled by the bean's client program, but instead requires intervention by a system administrator.

An **application exception** signals an error in the business logic of an enterprise bean. Application exceptions are typically exceptions that you've coded yourself, such as the `BookException` thrown by the business methods of the `CartBean` example. When an enterprise bean throws an application exception, the container does not wrap it in

another exception. The client should be able to handle any application exception it receives.

If a system exception occurs within a transaction, the EJB container rolls back the transaction. However, if an application exception is thrown within a transaction, the container does not roll back the transaction.

Using the Embedded Enterprise Bean Container

This chapter demonstrates how to use the embedded enterprise bean container to run enterprise bean applications in the Java SE environment, outside of a Java EE server.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of the Embedded Enterprise Bean Container](#)
- [Developing Embeddable Enterprise Bean Applications](#)
- [The standalone Example Application](#)

29.1 Overview of the Embedded Enterprise Bean Container

The embedded enterprise bean container is used to access enterprise bean components from client code executed in a Java SE environment. The container and the client code are executed within the same virtual machine. The embedded enterprise bean container is typically used for testing enterprise beans without having to deploy them to a server.

Most of the services present in the enterprise bean container in a Java EE server are available in the embedded enterprise bean container, including injection, container-managed transactions, and security. Enterprise bean components execute similarly in both embedded and Java EE environments, and therefore the same enterprise bean can be easily reused in both standalone and networked applications.

29.2 Developing Embeddable Enterprise Bean Applications

All embeddable enterprise bean containers support the features listed in [Table 29–1](#).

Table 29–1 *Required Enterprise Bean Features in the Embeddable Container*

Enterprise Bean Feature	Description
Local session beans	Local and no-interface view stateless, stateful, and singleton session beans. All method access is synchronous. Session beans must not be web service endpoints.
Transactions	Container-managed and bean-managed transactions.
Security	Declarative and programmatic security.
Interceptors	Class-level and method-level interceptors for session beans.

Table 29–1 (Cont.) Required Enterprise Bean Features in the Embeddable Container

Enterprise Bean Feature	Description
Deployment descriptor	The optional <code>ejb-jar.xml</code> deployment descriptor, with the same overriding rules for the enterprise bean container in Java EE servers.

Container providers are allowed to support the full set of features in enterprise beans, but applications that use the embedded container will not be portable if they use enterprise bean features not listed in Table 29–1, such as the timer service, session beans as web service endpoints, or remote business interfaces.

29.2.1 Running Embedded Applications

The embedded container, the enterprise bean components, and the client all are executed in the same virtual machine using the same classpath. As a result, developers can run an application that uses the embedded container just like a typical Java SE application as follows:

```
java -classpath mySessionBean.jar:containerProviderRuntime.jar:myClient.jar
com.example.ejb.client.Main
```

In the above example, `mySessionBean.jar` is an EJB JAR containing a local stateless session bean, `containerProviderRuntime.jar` is a JAR file supplied by the enterprise bean provider that contains the needed runtime classes for the embedded container, and `myClient.jar` is a JAR file containing a Java SE application that calls the business methods in the session bean through the embedded container.

In GlassFish Server, the runtime JAR that includes the classes for the embedded container is `glassfish-embedded-all.jar`.

29.2.2 Creating the Enterprise Bean Container

The `javax.ejb.embedded.EJBContainer` abstract class represents an instance of the enterprise bean container and includes factory methods for creating a container instance. The `EJBContainer.createEJBContainer` method is used to create and initialize an embedded container instance.

The following code snippet shows how to create an embedded container that is initialized with the container provider's default settings:

```
EJBContainer ec = EJBContainer.createEJBContainer();
```

By default, the embedded container will search the virtual machine classpath for enterprise bean modules: directories containing a `META-INF/ejb-jar.xml` deployment descriptor, directories containing a class file with one of the enterprise bean component annotations (such as `@Stateless`), or JAR files containing an `ejb-jar.xml` deployment descriptor or class file with an enterprise bean annotation. Any matching entries are considered enterprise bean modules within the same application. Once all the valid enterprise bean modules have been found in the classpath, the container will begin initializing the modules. When the `createEJBContainer` method successfully returns, the client application can obtain references to the client view of any enterprise bean module found by the embedded container.

An alternate version of the `EJBContainer.createEJBContainer` method takes a `Map` of properties and settings for customizing the embeddable container instance:

```
Properties props = new Properties();
```

```

props.setProperty(...);
...
EJBContainer ec = EJBContainer.createEJBContainer(props);

```

29.2.2.1 Explicitly Specifying Enterprise Bean Modules to be Initialized

Developers can specify exactly which enterprise bean modules the embedded container will initialize. To explicitly specify the enterprise bean modules initialized by the embedded container, set the `EJBContainer.MODULES` property.

The modules may be located either in the virtual machine classpath in which the embedded container and client code run, or alternately outside the virtual machine classpath.

To specify modules in the virtual machine classpath, set `EJBContainer.MODULES` to a `String` to specify a single module name, or a `String` array containing the module names. The embedded container searches the virtual machine classpath for enterprise bean modules matching the specified names.

```

Properties props = new Properties();
props.setProperty(EJBContainer.MODULES, "mySessionBean");
EJBContainer ec = EJBContainer.createEJBContainer(props);

```

To specify enterprise bean modules outside the virtual machine classpath, set `EJBContainer.MODULES` to a `java.io.File` object or an array of `File` objects. Each `File` object refers to an EJB JAR file, or a directory containing an expanded EJB JAR.

```

Properties props = new Properties();
File ejbJarFile = new File(...);
props.setProperty(EJBContainer.MODULES, ejbJarFile);
EJBContainer ec = EJBContainer.createEJBContainer(props);

```

29.2.3 Looking Up Session Bean References

To look up session bean references in an application using the embedded container, use an instance of `EJBContainer` to retrieve a `javax.naming.Context` object. Call the `EJBContainer.getContext` method to retrieve the `Context` object.

```

EJBContainer ec = EJBContainer.createEJBContainer();
Context ctx = ec.getContext();

```

References to session beans can then be obtained using the portable JNDI syntax detailed in [Portable JNDI Syntax](#). For example, to obtain a reference to `MySessionBean`, a local session bean with a no-interface view, use the following code:

```

MySessionBean msb = (MySessionBean)
    ctx.lookup("java:global/mySessionBean/MySessionBean");

```

29.2.4 Shutting Down the Enterprise Bean Container

From the client, call the `close` method of the instance of `EJBContainer` to shut down the embedded container:

```

EJBContainer ec = EJBContainer.createEJBContainer();
...
ec.close();

```

While clients are not required to shut down `EJBContainer` instances, doing so frees resources consumed by the embedded container. This is particularly important when the virtual machine under which the client application is running has a longer lifetime than the client application.

29.3 The standalone Example Application

The standalone example application demonstrates how to create an instance of the embedded enterprise bean container in a JUnit test class and call a session bean business method. Testing the business methods of an enterprise bean in a unit test allows developers to exercise the business logic of an application separately from the other application layers, such as the presentation layer, and without having to deploy the application to a Java EE server.

The standalone example has two main components: `StandaloneBean`, a stateless session bean, and `StandaloneBeanTest`, a JUnit test class that acts as a client to `StandaloneBean` using the embedded container.

`StandaloneBean` is a simple session bean exposing a local, no-interface view with a single business method, `returnMessage`, which returns "Greetings!" as a `String`.

```
@Stateless
public class StandaloneBean {

    private static final String message = "Greetings!";

    public String returnMessage() {
        return message;
    }

}
```

`StandaloneBeanTest` calls `StandaloneBean.returnMessage` and tests that the returned message is correct. First, an embedded container instance and initial context are created within the `setUp` method, which is annotated with `org.junit.Before` to indicate that the method should be executed before the test methods.

```
@Before
public void setUp() {
    ec = EJBContainer.createEJBContainer();
    ctx = ec.getContext();
}
}
```

The `testReturnMessage` method, annotated with `org.junit.Test` to indicate that the method includes a unit test, obtains a reference to `StandaloneBean` through the `Context` instance, and calls `StandaloneBean.returnMessage`. The result is compared with the expected result using a JUnit assertion, `assertEquals`. If the string returned from `StandaloneBean.returnMessage` is equal to "Greetings!" the test passes.

```
@Test
public void testReturnMessage() throws Exception {
    logger.info("Testing standalone.ejb.StandaloneBean.returnMessage()");
    StandaloneBean instance = (StandaloneBean)
        ctx.lookup("java:global/classes/StandaloneBean");
    String expectedResult = "Greetings!";
    String result = instance.returnMessage();
    assertEquals(expectedResult, result);
}
}
```

Finally, the `tearDown` method, annotated with `org.junit.After` to indicate that the method should be executed after all the unit tests have run, closes the embedded container instance.

```
@After
public void tearDown() {
    if (ec != null) {
        ec.close();
    }
}
```

29.3.1 Running the standalone Example Application in NetBeans IDE

Follow these steps to run the `standalone` example application within NetBeans IDE.

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/ejb/`
3. Select the `standalone` folder and click **Open Project**.
4. In the **Projects** tab, right-click `standalone` and select **Test**.

This will execute the JUnit test class `StandaloneBeanTest`. The **Output** tab shows the progress of the test and the output log.

29.3.2 Running the standalone Example Application using Maven

Follow these steps to run the `standalone` example application on the command line using Maven.

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/ejb/standalone/`
2. Enter the following command:
`mvn install`

This command compiles and packages the application into an JAR file, and executes the JUnit test class `StandaloneBeanTest`.

Using Asynchronous Method Invocation in Session Beans

This chapter discusses how to implement asynchronous business methods in session beans and call them from enterprise bean clients.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Asynchronous Method Invocation](#)
- [The async Example Application](#)

30.1 Asynchronous Method Invocation

Session beans can implement **asynchronous methods**, business methods where control is returned to the client by the enterprise bean container before the method is invoked on the session bean instance. Clients may then use the Java SE concurrency API to retrieve the result, cancel the invocation, and check for exceptions. Asynchronous methods are typically used for long-running operations, for processor-intensive tasks, for background tasks, to increase application throughput, or to improve application response time if the method invocation result isn't required immediately.

When a session bean client invokes a typical non-asynchronous business method, control is not returned to the client until the method has completed. Clients calling asynchronous methods, however, immediately have control returned to them by the enterprise bean container. This allows the client to perform other tasks while the method invocation completes. If the method returns a result, the result is an implementation of the `java.util.concurrent.Future<V>` interface, where "V" is the result value type. The `Future<V>` interface defines methods the client may use to check whether the computation is completed, wait for the invocation to complete, retrieve the final result, and cancel the invocation.

30.1.1 Creating an Asynchronous Business Method

Annotate a business method with `javax.ejb.Asynchronous` to mark that method as an asynchronous method, or apply `@Asynchronous` at the class level to mark all the business methods of the session bean as asynchronous methods. Session bean methods that expose web services can't be asynchronous.

Asynchronous methods must return either `void` or an implementation of the `Future<V>` interface. Asynchronous methods that return `void` can't declare application exceptions, but if they return `Future<V>`, they may declare application exceptions. For example:

```
@Asynchronous
public Future<String> processPayment(Order order) throws PaymentException { ... }
```

This method will attempt to process the payment of an order, and return the status as a `String`. Even if the payment processor takes a long time, the client can continue working, and display the result when the processing finally completes.

The `javax.ejb.AsyncResult<V>` class is a concrete implementation of the `Future<V>` interface provided as a helper class for returning asynchronous results. `AsyncResult` has a constructor with the result as a parameter, making it easy to create `Future<V>` implementations. For example, the `processPayment` method would use `AsyncResult` to return the status as a `String`:

```
@Asynchronous
public Future<String> processPayment(Order order) throws PaymentException {
    ...
    String status = ...;
    return new AsyncResult<String>(status);
}
```

The result is returned to the enterprise bean container, not directly to the client, and the enterprise bean container makes the result available to the client. The session bean can check whether the client requested that the invocation be cancelled by calling the `javax.ejb.SessionContext.wasCancelled` method. For example:

```
@Asynchronous
public Future<String> processPayment(Order order) throws PaymentException {
    ...
    if (SessionContext.wasCancelled()) {
        // clean up
    } else {
        // process the payment
    }
    ...
}
```

30.1.2 Calling Asynchronous Methods from Enterprise Bean Clients

Session bean clients call asynchronous methods just like non-asynchronous business methods. If the asynchronous method returns a result, the client receives a `Future<V>` instance as soon as the method is invoked. This instance can be used to retrieve the final result, cancel the invocation, check whether the invocation has completed, check whether any exceptions were thrown during processing, and check whether the invocation was cancelled.

30.1.2.1 Retrieving the Final Result from an Asynchronous Method Invocation

The client may retrieve the result using one of the `Future<V>.get` methods. If processing hasn't been completed by the session bean handling the invocation, calling one of the `get` methods will result in the client halting execution until the invocation completes. Use the `Future<V>.isDone` method to determine whether processing has completed before calling one of the `get` methods.

The `get()` method returns the result as the type specified in the type value of the `Future<V>` instance. For example, calling `Future<String>.get()` will return a `String` object. If the method invocation was cancelled, calls to `get()` result in a `java.util.concurrent.CancellationException` being thrown. If the invocation resulted in an exception during processing by the session bean, calls to `get()` result in a `java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException` being thrown. The cause of the

`ExecutionException` may be retrieved by calling the `ExecutionException.getCause` method.

The `get(long timeout, java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit unit)` method is similar to the `get()` method, but allows the client to set a timeout value. If the timeout value is exceeded, a `java.util.concurrent.TimeoutException` is thrown. See the Javadoc for the `TimeUnit` class for the available units of time to specify the timeout value.

30.1.2.2 Cancelling an Asynchronous Method Invocation

Call the `cancel(boolean mayInterruptIfRunning)` method on the `Future<V>` instance to attempt to cancel the method invocation. The `cancel` method returns `true` if the cancellation was successful, and `false` if the method invocation cannot be cancelled.

When the invocation cannot be cancelled, the `mayInterruptIfRunning` parameter is used to alert the session bean instance on which the method invocation is running that the client attempted to cancel the invocation. If `mayInterruptIfRunning` is set to `true`, calls to `SessionContext.wasCancelled` by the session bean instance will return `true`. If `mayInterruptIfRunning` is set to `false`, calls to `SessionContext.wasCancelled` by the session bean instance will return `false`.

The `Future<V>.isCancelled` method is used to check whether the method invocation was cancelled before the asynchronous method invocation completed by calling `Future<V>.cancel`. The `isCancelled` method returns `true` if the invocation was cancelled.

30.1.2.3 Checking the Status of an Asynchronous Method Invocation

The `Future<V>.isDone` method returns `true` if the session bean instance completed processing the method invocation. The `isDone` method returns `true` if the asynchronous method invocation completed normally, was cancelled, or resulted in an exception. That is, `isDone` indicates only whether the session bean has completed processing the invocation.

30.2 The async Example Application

The `async` example demonstrates how to define an asynchronous business method on a session bean and call it from a web client. The `MailerBean` stateless session bean defines an asynchronous method, `sendMessage`, which uses the JavaMail API to send an email to a specified email address.

Note: This example needs to be configured for your environment before it runs correctly, and requires access to an SMTPS server.

30.2.1 Architecture of the async Example Application

The `async` application consists of a single stateless session bean, `MailerBean`, and a JavaServer Faces web application front end that uses Facelets tags in XHTML files to display a form for users to enter the email address for the recipient of an email. The status of the email is updated when the email is finally sent.

The `MailerBean` session bean injects a JavaMail resource used to send an email message to an address specified by the user. The message is created, modified, and sent using the JavaMail API. The injected JavaMail resource is configured through the GlassFish Server Administration Console, or through a resource configuration file packaged with the application. The resource configuration can be modified at runtime

by the GlassFish Server administrator to use a different mail server or transport protocol.

```
@Asynchronous
public Future<String> sendMessage(String email) {
    String status;
    try {
        Message message = new MimeMessage(session);
        message.setFrom();
        message.setRecipients(Message.RecipientType.TO,
            InetAddress.parse(email, false));
        message.setSubject("Test message from async example");
        message.setHeader("X-Mailer", "JavaMail");
        DateFormat dateFormatter = DateFormat
            .getDateInstance(DateFormat.LONG, DateFormat.SHORT);
        Date timeStamp = new Date();
        String messageBody = "This is a test message from the async example "
            + "of the Java EE Tutorial. It was sent on "
            + dateFormatter.format(timeStamp)
            + ".";
        message.setText(messageBody);
        message.setSentDate(timeStamp);
        Transport.send(message);
        status = "Sent";
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "Mail sent to {0}", email);
    } catch (MessagingException ex) {
        logger.severe("Error in sending message.");
        status = "Encountered an error";
        logger.severe(ex.getMessage() + ex.getNextException().getMessage());
        logger.severe(ex.getCause().getMessage());
    }
    return new AsyncResult<String>(status);
}
```

The web client consists of a Facelets template, `template.xhtml`, two Facelets clients, `index.xhtml` and `response.xhtml`, and a JavaServer Faces managed bean, `MailerManagedBean`. The `index.xhtml` file contains a form for the target email address. When the user submits the form, the `MailerManagedBean.send` method is called. This method uses an injected instance of the `MailerBean` session bean to call `MailerBean.sendMessage`. The result is sent to the `response.xhtml` Facelets view.

30.2.2 Running the async Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the async example. First, however, you must configure the keystore and truststore.

30.2.2.1 To Configure the Keystore and Truststore in GlassFish Server

The GlassFish Server domain needs to be configured with the server's master password to access the keystore and truststore used to initiate secure communications using the SMTPS transport protocol.

1. Open the GlassFish Server Administration Console in a web browser at `http://localhost:4848`.
2. Expand **Configurations**, then expand **server-config**, then click **JVM Settings**.
3. Click the **JVM Options** tab, then click **Add JVM Option** and enter `-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=master-password`, replacing *master-password* with the keystore master password. The default master password is `changeit`.

4. Click **Add JVM Option** and enter
`-Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=master-password`, replacing *master-password* with the truststore master password. The default master password is `changeit`.
5. Click **Save**, then restart GlassFish Server.

30.2.2.2 To Run the async Example Application Using NetBeans IDE

Before You Begin

Before running this example, you must configure your GlassFish Server instance to access the keystore and truststore used by GlassFish Server to create a secure connection to the target SMTPS server.

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/ejb/`
3. Select the `async` folder and click **Open Project**.
4. Under `async` in the **Projects** tab, expand the **Server Resources** node and double-click `glassfish-resources.xml`.
5. Enter the configuration settings for your SMTPS server in `glassfish-resources.xml`.

The SMTPS server host name is set in the `host` attribute; the email address from which you want the message sent is set in the `from` attribute; and the SMTPS user name is set in the `user` attribute. Set the `mail-smtps-password` property value to the password for the SMTPS server user. The following code snippet shows an example resource configuration. Lines in bold need to be modified.

```
<resources>
  <mail-resource debug="false"
    enabled="true"
    from="user@example.com"
    host="smtp.example.com"
    jndi-name="mail/myExampleSession"
    object-type="user" store-protocol="imap"
    store-protocol-class="com.sun.mail.imap.IMAPStore"
    transport-protocol="smtps"
    transport-protocol-class="com.sun.mail.smtp.SMTPSSLTransport"
    user="user@example.com">
    <description/>
    <property name="mail-smtps-auth" value="true"/>
    <property name="mail-smtps-password" value="mypassword"/>
  </mail-resource>
</resources>
```

6. Right-click `async` in the **Projects** tab and select **Run**.
 This will compile, assemble, and deploy the application, and start a web browser at the following URL: `http://localhost:8080/async`.
7. In the web browser window, enter the email to which you want the test message sent and click **Send email**.

If your configuration settings are correct, a test email will be sent, and the status message will read `Sent` in the web client. The test message should appear momentarily in the inbox of the recipient.

If an error occurs, the status will read `Encountered an error`. Check the `server.log` file for your domain to find the cause of the error.

30.2.2.3 To Run the async Example Application Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, navigate to `tut-install/examples/ejb/async/`.
2. In a text editor, open `src/main/setup/glassfish-resources.xml` and enter the configuration settings for your SMTPS server.

The SMTPS server host name is set in the `host` attribute; the email address from which you want the message sent is set in the `from` attribute; the SMTPS user name is set in the `user` attribute. Set the `mail-smtps-password` property value to the password for the SMTPS server user. The following code snippet shows an example resource configuration. Lines in bold need to be modified.

```
<resources>
  <mail-resource debug="false"
    enabled="true"
    from="user@example.com"
    host="smtp.example.com"
    jndi-name="mail/myExampleSession"
    object-type="user" store-protocol="imap"
    store-protocol-class="com.sun.mail.imap.IMAPStore"
    transport-protocol="smtps"
    transport-protocol-class="com.sun.mail.smtp.SMTPSSLTransport"
    user="user@example.com">
    <description/>
    <property name="mail-smtps-auth" value="true"/>
    <property name="mail-smtps-password" value="mypassword"/>
  </mail-resource>
</resources>
```

3. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This will compile, assemble, and deploy the application, and start a web browser at the following URL: `http://localhost:8080/async`.

4. In the web browser window, enter the email to which you want the test message sent and click **Send email**.

If your configuration settings are correct, a test email will be sent, and the status message will read `Sent` in the web client. The test message should appear momentarily in the inbox of the recipient.

If an error occurs, the status will read `Encountered an error`. Check the `server.log` file for your domain to find the cause of the error.

Part VI

Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE

Part VI explores Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI). This part contains the following chapters:

- [Chapter 31, "Introduction to Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE"](#)
- [Chapter 32, "Running the Basic Contexts and Dependency Injection Examples"](#)
- [Chapter 33, "Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE: Advanced Topics"](#)
- [Chapter 34, "Running the Advanced Contexts and Dependency Injection Examples"](#)

Introduction to Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE

Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI) is one of several Java EE 7 features that help to knit together the web tier and the transactional tier of the Java EE platform. CDI is a set of services that, used together, make it easy for developers to use enterprise beans along with JavaServer Faces technology in web applications. Designed for use with stateful objects, CDI also has many broader uses, allowing developers a great deal of flexibility to integrate various kinds of components in a loosely coupled but typesafe way.

CDI 1.1 is specified by JSR 346. Related specifications that CDI uses include the following:

- JSR 330, Dependency Injection for Java
- The Managed Beans specification, which is an offshoot of the Java EE 7 platform specification (JSR 342)

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Getting Started](#)
- [Overview of CDI](#)
- [About Beans](#)
- [About CDI Managed Beans](#)
- [Beans as Injectable Objects](#)
- [Using Qualifiers](#)
- [Injecting Beans](#)
- [Using Scopes](#)
- [Giving Beans EL Names](#)
- [Adding Setter and Getter Methods](#)
- [Using a Managed Bean in a Facelets Page](#)
- [Injecting Objects by Using Producer Methods](#)
- [Configuring a CDI Application](#)
- [Using the @PostConstruct and @PreDestroy Annotations With CDI Managed Bean Classes](#)
- [Further Information about CDI](#)

31.1 Getting Started

Contexts and Dependency Injection (CDI) enables your objects to have their dependencies provided to them automatically, instead of creating them or receiving them as parameters. CDI also manages the lifecycle of those dependencies for you.

For example, consider the following servlet:

```
@WebServlet("/cdiservlet")
public class NewServlet extends HttpServlet {
    private Message message;

    @Override
    public void init() {
        message = new MessageB();
    }

    @Override
    public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request, HttpServletResponse response)
        throws IOException {
        response.getWriter().write(message.get());
    }
}
```

This servlet needs an instance of an object that implements the `Message` interface:

```
public interface Message {
    public String get();
}
```

The servlet creates itself an instance of the following object:

```
public class MessageB implements Message {
    public MessageB() { }

    @Override
    public String get() {
        return "message B";
    }
}
```

Using CDI, this servlet can declare its dependency on a `Message` instance and have it injected automatically by the CDI runtime. The new servlet code is the following:

```
@WebServlet("/cdiservlet")
public class NewServlet extends HttpServlet {
    @Inject private Message message;

    @Override
    public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request, HttpServletResponse response)
        throws IOException {
        response.getWriter().write(message.get());
    }
}
```

The CDI runtime looks for classes that implement the `Message` interface, finds the `MessageB` class, creates a new instance of it, and injects it into the servlet at run time. To manage the lifecycle of the new instance, the CDI runtime needs to know what the scope of the instance should be. In this example, the servlet only needs the instance to process an HTTP request; the instance can be then garbage collected. This is specified using the `javax.enterprise.context.RequestScoped` annotation:

```
@RequestScoped
public class MessageB implements Message { ... }
```

For more information on scopes, see [Using Scopes](#).

The `MessageB` class is a **CDI bean**. CDI beans are classes that CDI can instantiate, manage, and inject automatically to satisfy the dependencies of other objects. Almost any Java class can be managed and injected by CDI. For more information on beans, see [About Beans](#). A JAR or WAR file that contains a CDI bean is a **bean archive**. For more information on packaging bean archives, see [Configuring a CDI Application](#) in this chapter and [Packaging CDI Applications](#) in [Chapter 33, "Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE: Advanced Topics"](#).

In this example, `MessageB` is the only class that implements the `Message` interface. If an application has more than one implementation of an interface, CDI provides mechanisms that you can use to select which implementation to inject. For more information, see [Using Qualifiers](#) in this chapter and [Using Alternatives in CDI Applications](#) in [Chapter 33, "Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE: Advanced Topics"](#).

31.2 Overview of CDI

The most fundamental services provided by CDI are as follows:

- **Contexts:** This service enables you to bind the lifecycle and interactions of stateful components to well-defined but extensible lifecycle contexts.
- **Dependency injection:** This service enables you to inject components into an application in a type-safe way and to choose at deployment time which implementation of a particular interface to inject.

In addition, CDI provides the following services:

- Integration with the Expression Language (EL), which allows any component to be used directly within a JavaServer Faces page or a JavaServer Pages page
- The ability to decorate injected components
- The ability to associate interceptors with components using typesafe interceptor bindings
- An event-notification model
- A web conversation scope in addition to the three standard scopes (request, session, and application) defined by the Java Servlet specification
- A complete Service Provider Interface (SPI) that allows third-party frameworks to integrate cleanly in the Java EE 7 environment

A major theme of CDI is loose coupling. CDI does the following:

- Decouples the server and the client by means of well-defined types and qualifiers, so that the server implementation may vary
- Decouples the lifecycles of collaborating components by doing the following:
 - Making components contextual, with automatic lifecycle management
 - Allowing stateful components to interact like services, purely by message passing
- Completely decouples message producers from consumers, by means of events
- Decouples orthogonal concerns by means of Java EE interceptors

Along with loose coupling, CDI provides strong typing by

- Eliminating lookup using string-based names for wiring and correlations, so that the compiler will detect typing errors
- Allowing the use of declarative Java annotations to specify everything, largely eliminating the need for XML deployment descriptors, and making it easy to provide tools that introspect the code and understand the dependency structure at development time

31.3 About Beans

CDI redefines the concept of a **bean** beyond its use in other Java technologies, such as the JavaBeans and Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) technologies. In CDI, a bean is a source of contextual objects that define application state and/or logic. A Java EE component is a bean if the lifecycle of its instances may be managed by the container according to the lifecycle context model defined in the CDI specification.

More specifically, a bean has the following attributes:

- A (nonempty) set of bean types
- A (nonempty) set of qualifiers (see [Using Qualifiers](#))
- A scope (see [Using Scopes](#))
- Optionally, a bean EL name (see [Giving Beans EL Names](#))
- A set of interceptor bindings
- A bean implementation

A bean type defines a client-visible type of the bean. Almost any Java type may be a bean type of a bean.

- A bean type may be an interface, a concrete class, or an abstract class and may be declared final or have final methods.
- A bean type may be a parameterized type with type parameters and type variables.
- A bean type may be an array type. Two array types are considered identical only if the element type is identical.
- A bean type may be a primitive type. Primitive types are considered to be identical to their corresponding wrapper types in `java.lang`.
- A bean type may be a raw type.

31.4 About CDI Managed Beans

A managed bean is implemented by a Java class, which is called its bean class. A top-level Java class is a managed bean if it is defined to be a managed bean by any other Java EE technology specification, such as the JavaServer Faces technology specification, or if it meets all the following conditions:

- It is not a nonstatic inner class.
- It is a concrete class or is annotated `@Decorator`.
- It is not annotated with an EJB component-defining annotation or declared as an EJB bean class in `ejb-jar.xml`.
- It has an appropriate constructor. That is, one of the following is the case:

- The class has a constructor with no parameters.
- The class declares a constructor annotated `@Inject`.

No special declaration, such as an annotation, is required to define a managed bean.

31.5 Beans as Injectable Objects

The concept of injection has been part of Java technology for some time. Since the Java EE 5 platform was introduced, annotations have made it possible to inject resources and some other kinds of objects into container-managed objects. CDI makes it possible to inject more kinds of objects and to inject them into objects that are not container-managed.

The following kinds of objects can be injected:

- (Almost) any Java class
- Session beans
- Java EE resources: data sources, Java Message Service topics, queues, connection factories, and the like
- Persistence contexts (JPA `EntityManager` objects)
- Producer fields
- Objects returned by producer methods
- Web service references
- Remote enterprise bean references

For example, suppose that you create a simple Java class with a method that returns a string:

```
package greetings;

public class Greeting {
    public String greet(String name) {
        return "Hello, " + name + ".";
    }
}
```

This class becomes a bean that you can then inject into another class. This bean is not exposed to the EL in this form. [Giving Beans EL Names](#) explains how you can make a bean accessible to the EL.

31.6 Using Qualifiers

You can use qualifiers to provide various implementations of a particular bean type. A qualifier is an annotation that you apply to a bean. A qualifier type is a Java annotation defined as `@Target({METHOD, FIELD, PARAMETER, TYPE})` and `@Retention(RUNTIME)`.

For example, you could declare an `@Informal` qualifier type and apply it to another class that extends the `Greeting` class. To declare this qualifier type, you would use the following code:

```
package greetings;

import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.FIELD;
import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.METHOD;
```

```
import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.PARAMETER;
import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.TYPE;
import static java.lang.annotation.RetentionPolicy.RUNTIME;

import java.lang.annotation.Retention;
import java.lang.annotation.Target;

import javax.inject.Qualifier;

@Qualifier
@Retention(RUNTIME)
@Target({TYPE, METHOD, FIELD, PARAMETER})
public @interface Informal {}
```

You can then define a bean class that extends the `Greeting` class and uses this qualifier:

```
package greetings;

@Informal
public class InformalGreeting extends Greeting {
    public String greet(String name) {
        return "Hi, " + name + "!";
    }
}
```

Both implementations of the bean can now be used in the application.

If you define a bean with no qualifier, the bean automatically has the qualifier `@Default`. The unannotated `Greeting` class could be declared as follows:

```
package greetings;

import javax.enterprise.inject.Default;

@Default
public class Greeting {
    public String greet(String name) {
        return "Hello, " + name + ".";
    }
}
```

31.7 Injecting Beans

In order to use the beans you create, you inject them into yet another bean that can then be used by an application, such as a JavaServer Faces application. For example, you might create a bean called `Printer` into which you would inject one of the `Greeting` beans:

```
import javax.inject.Inject;

public class Printer {

    @Inject Greeting greeting;
    ...
}
```

This code injects the `@Default` `Greeting` implementation into the bean. The following code injects the `@Informal` implementation:

```
import javax.inject.Inject;
```

```
public class Printer {

    @Inject @Informal Greeting greeting;
    ...
}
```

More is needed for the complete picture of this bean. Its use of scope needs to be understood. In addition, for a JavaServer Faces application, the bean needs to be accessible through the EL.

31.8 Using Scopes

For a web application to use a bean that injects another bean class, the bean needs to be able to hold state over the duration of the user's interaction with the application. The way to define this state is to give the bean a scope. You can give an object any of the scopes described in [Table 31–1](#), depending on how you are using it.

Table 31–1 *Scopes*

Scope	Annotation	Duration
Request	@RequestScoped	A user's interaction with a web application in a single HTTP request.
Session	@SessionScoped	A user's interaction with a web application across multiple HTTP requests.
Application	@ApplicationScoped	Shared state across all users' interactions with a web application.
Dependent	@Dependent	The default scope if none is specified; it means that an object exists to serve exactly one client (bean) and has the same lifecycle as that client (bean).
Conversation	@ConversationScoped	A user's interaction with a servlet, including JavaServer Faces applications. The conversation scope exists within developer-controlled boundaries that extend it across multiple requests for long-running conversations. All long-running conversations are scoped to a particular HTTP servlet session and may not cross session boundaries.

The first three scopes are defined by both JSR 346 and the JavaServer Faces API. The last two are defined by JSR 346.

All predefined scopes except @Dependent are contextual scopes. CDI places beans of contextual scope in the context whose lifecycle is defined by the Java EE specifications. For example, a session context and its beans exist during the lifetime of an HTTP session. Injected references to the beans are contextually aware. The references always apply to the bean that is associated with the context for the thread that is making the reference. The CDI container ensures that the objects are created and injected at the correct time as determined by the scope that is specified for these objects.

You can also define and implement custom scopes, but that is an advanced topic. Custom scopes are likely to be used by those who implement and extend the CDI specification.

A scope gives an object a well-defined lifecycle context. A scoped object can be automatically created when it is needed and automatically destroyed when the context

in which it was created ends. Moreover, its state is automatically shared by any clients that execute in the same context.

Java EE components, such as servlets and enterprise beans, and JavaBeans components do not by definition have a well-defined scope. These components are one of the following:

- Singletons, such as Enterprise JavaBeans singleton beans, whose state is shared among all clients
- Stateless objects, such as servlets and stateless session beans, which do not contain client-visible state
- Objects that must be explicitly created and destroyed by their client, such as JavaBeans components and stateful session beans, whose state is shared by explicit reference passing between clients

If, however, you create a Java EE component that is a managed bean, it becomes a scoped object, which exists in a well-defined lifecycle context.

The web application for the `Printer` bean will use a simple request and response mechanism, so the managed bean can be annotated as follows:

```
import javax.inject.Inject;
import javax.enterprise.context.RequestScoped;

@RequestScoped
public class Printer {

    @Inject @Informal Greeting greeting;
    ...
}
```

Beans that use session, application, or conversation scope must be serializable, but beans that use request scope do not have to be serializable.

31.9 Giving Beans EL Names

To make a bean accessible through the EL, use the `@Named` built-in qualifier:

```
import javax.inject.Inject;
import javax.enterprise.context.RequestScoped;
import javax.inject.Named;

@Named
@RequestScoped
public class Printer {

    @Inject @Informal Greeting greeting;
    ...
}
```

The `@Named` qualifier allows you to access the bean by using the bean name, with the first letter in lowercase. For example, a Facelets page would refer to the bean as `printer`.

You can specify an argument to the `@Named` qualifier to use a nondefault name:

```
@Named("MyPrinter")
```

With this annotation, the Facelets page would refer to the bean as `MyPrinter`.

31.10 Adding Setter and Getter Methods

To make the state of the managed bean accessible, you need to add setter and getter methods for that state. The `createSalutation` method calls the bean's `greet` method, and the `getSalutation` method retrieves the result.

Once the setter and getter methods have been added, the bean is complete. The final code looks like this:

```
package greetings;

import javax.inject.Inject;
import javax.enterprise.context.RequestScoped;
import javax.inject.Named;

@Named
@RequestScoped
public class Printer {

    @Inject @Informal Greeting greeting;

    private String name;
    private String salutation;

    public void createSalutation() {
        this.salutation = greeting.greet(name);
    }

    public String getSalutation() {
        return salutation;
    }

    public void setName(String name) {
        this.name = name;
    }

    public String getName() {
        return name;
    }
}
```

31.11 Using a Managed Bean in a Facelets Page

To use the managed bean in a Facelets page, you typically create a form that uses user interface elements to call its methods and display their results. This example provides a button that asks the user to type a name, retrieves the salutation, and then displays the text in a paragraph below the button:

```
<h:form id="greetme">
  <p><h:outputLabel value="Enter your name: " for="name"/>
    <h:inputText id="name" value="#{printer.name}"/></p>
  <p><h:commandButton value="Say Hello"
    action="#{printer.createSalutation}"/></p>
  <p><h:outputText value="#{printer.salutation}"/></p>
</h:form>
```

31.12 Injecting Objects by Using Producer Methods

Producer methods provide a way to inject objects that are not beans, objects whose values may vary at runtime, and objects that require custom initialization. For example, if you want to initialize a numeric value defined by a qualifier named `@MaxNumber`, you can define the value in a managed bean and then define a producer method, `getMaxNumber`, for it:

```
private int maxNumber = 100;
...
@Produces @MaxNumber int getMaxNumber() {
    return maxNumber;
}
```

When you inject the object in another managed bean, the container automatically invokes the producer method, initializing the value to 100:

```
@Inject @MaxNumber private int maxNumber;
```

If the value can vary at runtime, the process is slightly different. For example, the following code defines a producer method that generates a random number defined by a qualifier called `@Random`:

```
private java.util.Random random =
    new java.util.Random( System.currentTimeMillis() );

java.util.Random getRandom() {
    return random;
}

@Produces @Random int next() {
    return getRandom().nextInt(maxNumber);
}
```

When you inject this object in another managed bean, you declare a contextual instance of the object:

```
@Inject @Random Instance<Integer> randomInt;
```

You then call the `get` method of the `Instance`:

```
this.number = randomInt.get();
```

31.13 Configuring a CDI Application

When your beans are annotated with a scope type, the server recognizes the application as a bean archive and no additional configuration is required. The possible scope types for CDI beans are listed in [Using Scopes](#).

CDI uses an optional deployment descriptor named `beans.xml`. Like other Java EE deployment descriptors, the configuration settings in `beans.xml` are used in addition to annotation settings in CDI classes. The settings in `beans.xml` override the annotation settings if there is a conflict. An archive must contain the `beans.xml` deployment descriptor only in certain limited situations, described in [Chapter 33, "Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE: Advanced Topics"](#).

For a web application, the `beans.xml` deployment descriptor, if present, must be in the `WEB-INF` directory. For EJB modules or JAR files, the `beans.xml` deployment descriptor, if present, must be in the `META-INF` directory.

31.14 Using the @PostConstruct and @PreDestroy Annotations With CDI Managed Bean Classes

CDI managed bean classes and their superclasses support the annotations for initializing and for preparing for the destruction of a bean. These annotations are defined in JSR 250: Common Annotations for the Java platform (<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=250>).

31.14.1 To Initialize a Managed Bean Using the @PostConstruct Annotation

Initializing a managed bean specifies the lifecycle callback method that the CDI framework should call after dependency injection but before the class is put into service.

1. In the managed bean class or any of its superclasses, define a method that performs the initialization that you require.
2. Annotate the declaration of the method with the `javax.annotation.PostConstruct` annotation.

When the managed bean is injected into a component, CDI calls the method after all injection has occurred and after all initializers have been called.

Note: As mandated in JSR 250, if the annotated method is declared in a superclass, the method is called unless a subclass of the declaring class overrides the method.

The `UserNumberBean` managed bean in [The guessnumber-cdi CDI Example](#) uses `@PostConstruct` to annotate a method that resets all bean fields:

```
@PostConstruct
public void reset () {
    this.minimum = 0;
    this.userNumber = 0;
    this.remainingGuesses = 0;
    this.maximum = maxNumber;
    this.number = randomInt.get();
}
```

31.14.2 To Prepare for the Destruction of a Managed Bean Using the @PreDestroy Annotation

Preparing for the destruction of a managed bean specifies the lifecycle call back method that signals that an application component is about to be destroyed by the container.

1. In the managed bean class or any of its superclasses, prepare for the destruction of the managed bean.
In this method, perform any cleanup that is required before the bean is destroyed, such as releasing a resource that the bean has been holding.
2. Annotate the declaration of the method with the `javax.annotation.PreDestroy` annotation.

CDI calls this method before starting to destroy the bean.

31.15 Further Information about CDI

For more information about CDI for the Java EE platform, see

- Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=346>
- An introduction to Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE:
<http://docs.jboss.org/weld/reference/latest/en-US/html/>
- Dependency Injection for Java specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=330>
- Managed Beans specification, which is part of the Java Platform, Enterprise Edition 7 (Java EE 7) Specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=342>

Running the Basic Contexts and Dependency Injection Examples

This chapter describes in detail how to build and run simple examples that use CDI. The examples are in the *tut-install/examples/cdi/* directory.

To build and run the examples, you will do the following:

1. Use NetBeans IDE or the Maven tool to compile and package the example.
2. Use NetBeans IDE or the Maven tool to deploy the example.
3. Run the example in a web browser.

See [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#), for basic information on installing, building, and running the examples.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [The simplegreeting CDI Example](#)
- [The guessnumber-cdi CDI Example](#)

32.1 The simplegreeting CDI Example

The `simplegreeting` example illustrates some of the most basic features of CDI: scopes, qualifiers, bean injection, and accessing a managed bean in a JavaServer Faces application. When you run the example, you click a button that presents either a formal or an informal greeting, depending on how you edited one of the classes. The example includes four source files, a Facelets page and template, and configuration files.

32.1.1 The simplegreeting Source Files

The four source files for the `simplegreeting` example are

- The default `Greeting` class, shown in [Beans as Injectable Objects](#)
- The `@Informal` qualifier interface definition and the `InformalGreeting` class that implements the interface, both shown in [Using Qualifiers](#)
- The `Printer` managed bean class, which injects one of the two interfaces, shown in full in [Adding Setter and Getter Methods](#)

The source files are located in the *tut-install/examples/cdi/simplegreeting/src/main/java/javaeetutorial/simplegreeting* directory.

32.1.2 The Facelets Template and Page

To use the managed bean in a simple Facelets application, you can use a very simple template file and `index.xhtml` page. The template page, `template.xhtml`, looks like this:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html lang="en"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html"
    xmlns:ui="http://java.sun.com/jsf/facelets">
  <h:head>
    <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=UTF-8"/>
    <h:outputStylesheet library="css" name="default.css"/>
    <title>
      <ui:insert name="title">Default Title</ui:insert>
    </title>
  </h:head>

  <body>
    <div id="container">
      <div id="header">
        <h2><ui:insert name="head">Head</ui:insert></h2>
      </div>

      <div id="space">
        <p></p>
      </div>

      <div id="content">
        <ui:insert name="content"/>
      </div>
    </div>
  </body>
</html>
```

To create the Facelets page, you can redefine the title and head, then add a small form to the content:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html lang="en"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:ui="http://java.sun.com/jsf/facelets"
    xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
  <ui:composition template="/template.xhtml">

    <ui:define name="title">Simple Greeting</ui:define>
    <ui:define name="head">Simple Greeting</ui:define>
    <ui:define name="content">
      <h:form id="greetme">
        <p><h:outputLabel value="Enter your name: " for="name"/>
          <h:inputText id="name" value="#{printer.name}"/></p>
        <p><h:commandButton value="Say Hello"
          action="#{printer.createSalutation}"/></p>
        <p><h:outputText value="#{printer.salutation}"/> </p>
      </h:form>
    </ui:define>
```

```
</ui:composition>
</html>
```

The form asks the user to enter a name. The button is labeled **Say Hello**, and the action defined for it is to call the `createSalutation` method of the `Printer` managed bean. This method in turn calls the `greet` method of the defined `Greeting` class.

The output text for the form is the value of the greeting returned by the setter method. Depending on whether the default or the `@Informal` version of the greeting is injected, this is one of the following, where *name* is the name entered by the user:

```
Hello, name.
```

```
Hi, name!
```

The Facelets page and template are located in the `tut-install/examples/cdi/simplegreeting/src/main/webapp/` directory.

The simple CSS file that is used by the Facelets page is in the following location:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/simplegreeting/src/main/webapp/resources/css/default.css
```

32.1.3 Running the simplegreeting Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the simplegreeting application.

32.1.3.1 To Build, Package, and Run the simplegreeting Example Using NetBeans IDE

This procedure builds the application and deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/cdi/
```
3. Select the simplegreeting folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. To modify the `Printer.java` file, perform these steps:
 - a. Expand the **Source Packages** node.
 - b. Expand the `greetings` node.
 - c. Double-click the `Printer.java` file.
 - d. In the editor, comment out the `@Informal` annotation:

```
@Inject
//@Informal
Greeting greeting;
```

- e. Save the file.
6. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the simplegreeting project and select **Run**. This command deploys the application and opens it in the default browser.

32.1.3.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the simplegreeting Example Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).

2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/simplegreeting/
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `simplegreeting.war`, located in the target directory, and then deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

32.1.3.3 To Run the simplegreeting Example

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/simplegreeting
```

The Simple Greeting page opens.

2. Enter a name in the field.

For example, suppose that you enter Duke.

3. Click **Say Hello**.

If you did not modify the `Printer.java` file, the following text string appears below the button:

```
Hi, Duke!
```

If you commented out the `@Informal` annotation in the `Printer.java` file, the following text string appears below the button:

```
Hello, Duke.
```

32.2 The guessnumber-cdi CDI Example

The `guessnumber-cdi` example, somewhat more complex than the `simplegreeting` example, illustrates the use of producer methods and of session and application scope. The example is a game in which you try to guess a number in fewer than ten attempts. It is similar to the `guessnumber` example described in [Chapter 8, "Introduction to Facelets"](#), except that you can keep guessing until you get the right answer or until you use up your ten attempts.

The example includes four source files, a Facelets page and template, and configuration files. The configuration files and the template are the same as those used for the `simplegreeting` example.

32.2.1 The guessnumber-cdi Source Files

The four source files for the `guessnumber-cdi` example are

- The `@MaxNumber` qualifier interface
- The `@Random` qualifier interface
- The `Generator` managed bean, which defines producer methods

- The UserNumberBean managed bean

The source files are located in the

tut-install/examples/cdi/guessnumber-cdi/src/main/java/javaeetutorial/guessnumber directory.

32.2.1.1 The @MaxNumber and @Random Qualifier Interfaces

The @MaxNumber qualifier interface is defined as follows:

```
package guessnumber;

import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.FIELD;
import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.METHOD;
import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.PARAMETER;
import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.TYPE;
import static java.lang.annotation.RetentionPolicy.RUNTIME;

import java.lang.annotation.Documented;
import java.lang.annotation.Retention;
import java.lang.annotation.Target;

import javax.inject.Qualifier;

@Target( { TYPE, METHOD, PARAMETER, FIELD })
@Retention(RUNTIME)
@Documented
@Qualifier
public @interface MaxNumber {

}
```

The @Random qualifier interface is defined as follows:

```
package guessnumber;

import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.FIELD;
import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.METHOD;
import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.PARAMETER;
import static java.lang.annotation.ElementType.TYPE;
import static java.lang.annotation.RetentionPolicy.RUNTIME;

import java.lang.annotation.Documented;
import java.lang.annotation.Retention;
import java.lang.annotation.Target;

import javax.inject.Qualifier;

@Target( { TYPE, METHOD, PARAMETER, FIELD })
@Retention(RUNTIME)
@Documented
@Qualifier
public @interface Random {

}
```

32.2.1.2 The Generator Managed Bean

The Generator managed bean contains the two producer methods for the application. The bean has the `@ApplicationScoped` annotation to specify that its context extends for the duration of the user's interaction with the application:

```
package guessnumber;

import java.io.Serializable;

import javax.enterprise.context.ApplicationScoped;
import javax.enterprise.inject.Produces;

@ApplicationScoped
public class Generator implements Serializable {

    private static final long serialVersionUID = -7213673465118041882L;

    private java.util.Random random =
        new java.util.Random( System.currentTimeMillis() );

    private int maxNumber = 100;

    java.util.Random getRandom() {
        return random;
    }

    @Produces @Random int next() {
        return getRandom().nextInt(maxNumber);
    }

    @Produces @MaxNumber int getMaxNumber() {
        return maxNumber;
    }
}
```

32.2.1.3 The UserNumberBean Managed Bean

The `UserNumberBean` managed bean, the managed bean for the JavaServer Faces application, provides the basic logic for the game. This bean does the following:

- Implements setter and getter methods for the bean fields
- Injects the two qualifier objects
- Provides a `reset` method that allows you to begin a new game after you complete one
- Provides a `check` method that determines whether the user has guessed the number
- Provides a `validateNumberRange` method that determines whether the user's input is correct

The bean is defined as follows:

```
package guessnumber;

import java.io.Serializable;
import javax.annotation.PostConstruct;
import javax.enterprise.context.SessionScoped;
```

```
import javax.enterprise.inject.Instance;
import javax.inject.Inject;
import javax.inject.Named;
import javax.faces.application.FacesMessage;
import javax.faces.component.UIComponent;
import javax.faces.component.UIInput;
import javax.faces.context.FacesContext;

@Named
@SessionScoped
public class UserNumberBean implements Serializable {

    private static final long serialVersionUID = -7698506329160109476L;
    private int number;
    private Integer userNumber;
    private int minimum;
    private int remainingGuesses;

    @MaxNumber
    @Inject
    private int maxNumber;

    private int maximum;

    @Random
    @Inject
    Instance<Integer> randomInt;

    public UserNumberBean() {
    }

    public int getNumber() {
        return number;
    }

    public void setUserNumber(Integer user_number) {
        userNumber = user_number;
    }

    public Integer getUserNumber() {
        return userNumber;
    }

    public int getMaximum() {
        return (this.maximum);
    }

    public void setMaximum(int maximum) {
        this.maximum = maximum;
    }

    public int getMinimum() {
        return (this.minimum);
    }

    public void setMinimum(int minimum) {
        this.minimum = minimum;
    }

    public int getRemainingGuesses() {
```

```

        return remainingGuesses;
    }

    public String check() throws InterruptedException {
        if (userNumber > number) {
            maximum = userNumber - 1;
        }
        if (userNumber < number) {
            minimum = userNumber + 1;
        }
        if (userNumber == number) {
            FacesContext.getCurrentInstance().addMessage(null,
                new FacesMessage("Correct!"));
        }
        remainingGuesses--;
        return null;
    }

    @PostConstruct
    public void reset() {
        this.minimum = 0;
        this.userNumber = 0;
        this.remainingGuesses = 10;
        this.maximum = maxNumber;
        this.number = randomInt.get();
    }

    public void validateNumberRange(FacesContext context,
        UIComponent toValidate,
        Object value) {
        if (remainingGuesses <= 0) {
            FacesMessage message = new FacesMessage("No guesses left!");
            context.addMessage(toValidate.getClientId(context), message);
            ((UIInput) toValidate).setValid(false);
            return;
        }
        int input = (Integer) value;

        if (input < minimum || input > maximum) {
            ((UIInput) toValidate).setValid(false);

            FacesMessage message = new FacesMessage("Invalid guess");
            context.addMessage(toValidate.getClientId(context), message);
        }
    }
}

```

32.2.2 The Facelets Page

This example uses the same template that the `simplegreeting` example uses. The `index.xhtml` file, however, is more complex.

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html lang="en"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:ui="http://java.sun.com/jsf/facelets"
    xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">

```

```

<ui:composition template="/template.xhtml">

    <ui:define name="title">Guess My Number</ui:define>
    <ui:define name="head">Guess My Number</ui:define>
    <ui:define name="content">
        <h:form id="GuessMain">
            <div style="color: black; font-size: 24px;">
                <p>I'm thinking of a number from
                <span style="color: blue">#{userNumberBean.minimum}</span>
                to
                <span style="color: blue">#{userNumberBean.maximum}</span>.
                You have
                <span style="color:
blue">#{userNumberBean.remainingGuesses}</span>
                guesses.</p>
            </div>
            <h:panelGrid border="0" columns="5" style="font-size: 18px;">
                <h:outputLabel for="inputGuess">Number:</h:outputLabel>
                <h:inputText id="inputGuess"
                    value="#{userNumberBean.userNumber}"
                    required="true" size="3"
                    disabled="#{userNumberBean.number eq
userNumberBean.userNumber}"
                    validator="#{userNumberBean.validateNumberRange}">
                </h:inputText>
                <h:commandButton id="GuessButton" value="Guess"
                    action="#{userNumberBean.check}"
                    disabled="#{userNumberBean.number eq
userNumberBean.userNumber}"/>
                <h:commandButton id="RestartButton" value="Reset"
                    action="#{userNumberBean.reset}"
                    immediate="true" />
                <h:outputText id="Higher" value="Higher!"
                    rendered="#{userNumberBean.number gt userNumberBean.userNumber and
userNumberBean.userNumber ne 0}"
                    style="color: #d20005"/>
                <h:outputText id="Lower" value="Lower!"
                    rendered="#{userNumberBean.number lt userNumberBean.userNumber and
userNumberBean.userNumber ne 0}"
                    style="color: #d20005"/>
            </h:panelGrid>
            <div style="color: #d20005; font-size: 14px;">
                <h:messages id="messages" globalOnly="false"/>
            </div>
        </h:form>
    </ui:define>

</ui:composition>
</html>

```

The Facelets page presents the user with the minimum and maximum values and the number of guesses remaining. The user's interaction with the game takes place within the `panelGrid` table, which contains an input field, **Guess** and **Reset** buttons, and a field that appears if the guess is higher or lower than the correct number. Every time the user clicks the **Guess** button, the `userNumberBean.check` method is called to reset the maximum or minimum value or, if the guess is correct, to generate a `FacesMessage` to that effect. The method that determines whether each guess is valid is `userNumberBean.validateNumberRange`.

32.2.3 Running the guessnumber-cdi Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the `guessnumber-cdi` application.

32.2.3.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the guessnumber-cdi Example Using NetBeans IDE

This procedure builds the application and deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/cdi/`
3. Select the `guessnumber-cdi` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `guessnumber-cdi` project and select **Run**.
This command deploys the application and opens it in the default browser.

32.2.3.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the guessnumber-cdi Example Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/cdi/guessnumber-cdi/`
3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `guessnumber-cdi.war`, located in the `target` directory, and then deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

32.2.3.3 To Run the guessnumber Example

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:
`http://localhost:8080/guessnumber-cdi`
The Guess My Number page opens.
2. On the Guess My Number page, enter a number in the **Number** field and click **Guess**.
The minimum and maximum values are modified, along with the remaining number of guesses.
3. Keep guessing numbers until you get the right answer or run out of guesses.
If you get the right answer, the input field and **Guess** button are grayed out.
4. Click **Reset** to play the game again with a new random number.

Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE: Advanced Topics

This chapter describes more advanced features of Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI). Specifically, it covers additional features CDI provides to enable loose coupling of components with strong typing, in addition to those described in [Overview of CDI](#).

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Packaging CDI Applications](#)
- [Using Alternatives in CDI Applications](#)
- [Using Producer Methods, Producer Fields, and Disposer Methods in CDI Applications](#)
- [Using Predefined Beans in CDI Applications](#)
- [Using Events in CDI Applications](#)
- [Using Interceptors in CDI Applications](#)
- [Using Decorators in CDI Applications](#)
- [Using Stereotypes in CDI Applications](#)

33.1 Packaging CDI Applications

When you deploy a Java EE application, CDI looks for beans inside bean archives. A **bean archive** is any module that contains beans that the CDI runtime can manage and inject. There are two kinds of bean archives: explicit bean archives and implicit bean archives.

An **explicit bean archive** is an archive that contains a `beans.xml` deployment descriptor, which can be an empty file, contain no version number, or contain the version number 1.1 with the `bean-discovery-mode` attribute set to `all`. For example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<beans xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
       xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
       xsi:schemaLocation="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee
                           http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee/beans_1_1.xsd"
       version="1.1" bean-discovery-mode="all">
  ...
</beans>
```

CDI can manage and inject any bean in an explicit archive, except those annotated with `@Vetoed`.

An **implicit bean archive** is an archive that contains some beans annotated with a scope type, contains no `beans.xml` deployment descriptor, or contains a `beans.xml` deployment descriptor with the `bean-discovery-mode` attribute set to `annotated`.

CDI can only manage and inject beans annotated with a scope type in an implicit archive.

For a web application, the `beans.xml` deployment descriptor, if present, must be in the `WEB-INF` directory. For EJB modules or JAR files, the `beans.xml` deployment descriptor, if present, must be in the `META-INF` directory.

33.2 Using Alternatives in CDI Applications

When you have more than one version of a bean you use for different purposes, you can choose between them during the development phase by injecting one qualifier or another, as shown in [The simplegreeting CDI Example](#).

Instead of having to change the source code of your application, however, you can make the choice at deployment time by using **alternatives**.

Alternatives are commonly used for purposes like the following:

- To handle client-specific business logic that is determined at runtime
- To specify beans that are valid for a particular deployment scenario (for example, when country-specific sales tax laws require country-specific sales tax business logic)
- To create dummy (mock) versions of beans to be used for testing

To make a bean available for lookup, injection, or EL resolution using this mechanism, give it a `javax.enterprise.inject.Alternative` annotation and then use the `alternatives` element to specify it in the `beans.xml` file.

For example, you might want to create a full version of a bean and also a simpler version that you use only for certain kinds of testing. The example described in [The encoder Example: Using Alternatives](#) contains two such beans, `CoderImpl` and `TestCoderImpl`. The test bean is annotated as follows:

```
@Alternative
public class TestCoderImpl implements Coder { ... }
```

The full version is not annotated:

```
public class CoderImpl implements Coder { ... }
```

The managed bean injects an instance of the `Coder` interface:

```
@Inject
Coder coder;
```

The alternative version of the bean is used by the application only if that version is declared as follows in the `beans.xml` file:

```
<beans ...>
  <alternatives>
    <class>encoder.TestCoderImpl</class>
  </alternatives>
</beans>
```

If the `alternatives` element is commented out in the `beans.xml` file, the `CoderImpl` class is used.

You can also have several beans that implement the same interface, all annotated `@Alternative`. In this case, you must specify in the `beans.xml` file which of these alternative beans you want to use. If `CoderImpl` were also annotated `@Alternative`, one of the two beans would always have to be specified in the `beans.xml` file.

The alternatives that you specify in the `beans.xml` file apply only to classes in the same archive. Use the `@Priority` annotation to specify alternatives globally for an application that consists of multiple modules, as in the following example:

```
@Alternative
@Priority(Interceptor.Priority.APPLICATION+10)
public class TestCoderImpl implements Coder { ... }
```

The alternative with higher priority value is selected if several alternative beans that implement the same interface are annotated with `@Priority`. You do not need to specify the alternative in the `beans.xml` file when you use the `@Priority` annotation.

33.2.1 Using Specialization

Specialization has a function similar to that of alternatives, in that it allows you to substitute one bean for another. However, you might want to make one bean override the other in all cases. Suppose you defined the following two beans:

```
@Default @Asynchronous
public class AsynchronousService implements Service { ... }

@Alternative
public class MockAsynchronousService extends AsynchronousService { ... }
```

If you then declared `MockAsynchronousService` as an alternative in your `beans.xml` file, the following injection point would resolve to `MockAsynchronousService`:

```
@Inject Service service;
```

The following, however, would resolve to `AsynchronousService` rather than `MockAsynchronousService`, because `MockAsynchronousService` does not have the `@Asynchronous` qualifier:

```
@Inject @Asynchronous Service service;
```

To make sure `MockAsynchronousService` was always injected, you would have to implement all bean types and bean qualifiers of `AsynchronousService`. However, if `AsynchronousService` declared a producer method or observer method, even this cumbersome mechanism would not ensure that the other bean was never invoked. Specialization provides a simpler mechanism.

Specialization happens at development time as well as at runtime. If you declare that one bean specializes another, it extends the other bean class, and at runtime the specialized bean completely replaces the other bean. If the first bean is produced by means of a producer method, you must also override the producer method.

You specialize a bean by giving it the `javax.enterprise.inject.Specializes` annotation. For example, you might declare a bean as follows:

```
@Specializes
public class MockAsynchronousService extends AsynchronousService { ... }
```

In this case, the `MockAsynchronousService` class will always be invoked instead of the `AsynchronousService` class.

Usually, a bean marked with the `@Specializes` annotation is also an alternative and is declared as an alternative in the `beans.xml` file. Such a bean is meant to stand in as a replacement for the default implementation, and the alternative implementation automatically inherits all qualifiers of the default implementation as well as its EL name, if it has one.

33.3 Using Producer Methods, Producer Fields, and Disposer Methods in CDI Applications

A **producer method** generates an object that can then be injected. Typically, you use producer methods in the following situations:

- When you want to inject an object that is not itself a bean
- When the concrete type of the object to be injected may vary at runtime
- When the object requires some custom initialization that the bean constructor does not perform

For more information on producer methods, see [Injecting Objects by Using Producer Methods](#).

A **producer field** is a simpler alternative to a producer method; it is a field of a bean that generates an object. It can be used instead of a simple getter method. Producer fields are particularly useful for declaring Java EE resources such as data sources, JMS resources, and web service references.

A producer method or field is annotated with the `javax.enterprise.inject.Produces` annotation.

33.3.1 Using Producer Methods

A producer method can allow you to select a bean implementation at runtime, instead of at development time or deployment time. For example, in the example described in [The producermethods Example: Using a Producer Method To Choose a Bean Implementation](#), the managed bean defines the following producer method:

```
@Produces
@Chosen
@RequestScoped
public Coder getCoder() {

    switch (coderType) {
        case TEST:
            return new TestCoderImpl();
        case SHIFT:
            return new CoderImpl();
        default:
            return null;
    }
}
```

Here, `getCoder` becomes in effect a getter method, and when the `coder` property is injected with the same qualifier and other annotations as the method, the selected version of the interface is used.

```
@Inject
@Chosen
@RequestScoped
Coder coder;
```

Specifying the qualifier is essential: It tells CDI which `Coder` to inject. Without it, the CDI implementation would not be able to choose between `CoderImpl`, `TestCoderImpl`, and the one returned by `getCoder`, and would cancel deployment, informing the user of the ambiguous dependency.

33.3.2 Using Producer Fields to Generate Resources

A common use of a producer field is to generate an object such as a JDBC `DataSource` or a Java Persistence API `EntityManager`. The object can then be managed by the container. For example, you could create a `@UserDatabase` qualifier and then declare a producer field for an entity manager as follows:

```
@Produces
@UserDatabase
@PersistenceContext
private EntityManager em;
```

The `@UserDatabase` qualifier can be used when you inject the object into another bean, `RequestBean`, elsewhere in the application:

```
@Inject
@UserDatabase
EntityManager em;
...
```

The [producerfields Example: Using Producer Fields to Generate Resources](#) shows how to use producer fields to generate an entity manager. You can use a similar mechanism to inject `@Resource`, `@EJB`, or `@WebServiceRef` objects.

To minimize the reliance on resource injection, specify the producer field for the resource in one place in the application, then inject the object wherever in the application you need it.

33.3.3 Using a Disposer Method

You can use a producer method or a producer field to generate an object that needs to be removed when its work is completed. If you do, you need a corresponding **disposer method**, annotated with a `@Disposes` annotation. For example, you can close the entity manager as follows:

```
public void close(@Disposes @UserDatabase EntityManager em) {
    em.close();
}
```

The disposer method is called automatically when the context ends (in this case, at the end of the conversation, because `RequestBean` has conversation scope), and the parameter in the `close` method receives the object produced by the producer field.

33.4 Using Predefined Beans in CDI Applications

Java EE provides predefined beans that implement the following interfaces:

javax.transaction.UserTransaction

A Java Transaction API (JTA) user transaction.

java.security.Principal

The abstract notion of a principal, which represents any entity, such as an individual, a corporation, or a login ID. Whenever the injected principal is accessed, it always

represents the identity of the current caller. For example, a principal is injected into a field at initialization. Later, a method that uses the injected principal is called on the object into which the principal was injected. In this situation, the injected principal represents the identity of the current caller when the method is run.

javax.validation.Validator

A validator for bean instances. The bean that implements this interface enables a Validator object for the default bean validation object ValidatorFactory to be injected.

javax.validation.ValidatorFactory

A factory class for returning initialized Validator instances. The bean that implements this interface enables the default bean validation ValidatorFactory object to be injected.

javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest

An HTTP request from a client. The bean that implements this interface enables a servlet to obtain all the details of a request.

javax.servlet.http.HttpSession

An HTTP session between a client and a server. The bean that implements this interface enables a servlet to access information about a session and to bind objects to a session.

javax.servlet.ServletContext

A context object that servlets can use to communicate with the servlet container.

To inject a predefined bean, create an injection point to obtain an instance of the bean by using the javax.annotation.Resource annotation for resources or the javax.inject.Inject annotation for CDI beans. For the bean type, specify the class name of the interface the bean implements.

Table 33–1 Injection of predefined beans

Predefined bean	Resource or CDI bean	Injection example
UserTransaction	Resource	@Resource UserTransaction transaction;
Principal	Resource	@Resource Principal principal;
Validator	Resource	@Resource Validator validator;
ValidatorFactory	Resource	@Resource ValidatorFactory factory;
HttpServletRequest	CDI bean	@Inject HttpServletRequest req;
HttpSession	CDI bean	@Inject HttpSession session;
ServletContext	CDI bean	@Inject ServletContext context;

Predefined beans are injected with dependent scope and the predefined default qualifier @Default.

For more information about injecting resources, see [Resource Injection](#).

The following code snippet shows how to use the @Resource and @Inject annotations to inject predefined beans. This code snippet injects a user transaction and a context object into the servlet class TransactionServlet. The user transaction is an instance of the predefined bean that implements the javax.transaction.UserTransaction interface. The context object is an instance of the predefined bean that implements the javax.servlet.ServletContext interface.

```

import javax.annotation.Resource;
import javax.inject.Inject
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;
import javax.transaction.UserTransaction;
...
public class TransactionServlet extends HttpServlet {
    @Resource UserTransaction transaction;
    @Inject ServletContext context;
    ...
}

```

33.5 Using Events in CDI Applications

Events allow beans to communicate without any compile-time dependency. One bean can define an event, another bean can fire the event, and yet another bean can handle the event. The beans can be in separate packages and even in separate tiers of the application.

33.5.1 Defining Events

An event consists of the following:

- The event object, a Java object
- Zero or more qualifier types, the event qualifiers

For example, in the `billpayment` example described in [The billpayment Example: Using Events and Interceptors](#), a `PaymentEvent` bean defines an event using three properties, which have setter and getter methods:

```

public String paymentType;
public BigDecimal value;
public Date datetime;

public PaymentEvent() {
}

```

The example also defines qualifiers that distinguish between two kinds of `PaymentEvent`. Every event also has the default qualifier `@Any`.

33.5.2 Using Observer Methods to Handle Events

An event handler uses an **observer method** to consume events.

Each observer method takes as a parameter an event of a specific event type that is annotated with the `@Observes` annotation and with any qualifiers for that event type. The observer method is notified of an event if the event object matches the event type and if all the qualifiers of the event match the observer method event qualifiers.

The observer method can take other parameters in addition to the event parameter. The additional parameters are injection points and can declare qualifiers.

The event handler for the `billpayment` example, `PaymentHandler`, defines two observer methods, one for each type of `PaymentEvent`:

```

public void creditPayment(@Observes @Credit PaymentEvent event) {
    ...
}

public void debitPayment(@Observes @Debit PaymentEvent event) {

```

```
    ...  
}
```

Observer methods can also be conditional or transactional:

- A conditional observer method is notified of an event only if an instance of the bean that defines the observer method already exists in the current context. To declare a conditional observer method, specify `notifyObserver=IF_EXISTS` as an argument to `@Observes`:

```
@Observes(notifyObserver=IF_EXISTS)
```

To obtain the default unconditional behavior, you can specify

```
@Observes(notifyObserver=ALWAYS).
```

- A transactional observer method is notified of an event during the before-completion or after-completion phase of the transaction in which the event was fired. You can also specify that the notification is to occur only after the transaction has completed successfully or unsuccessfully. To specify a transactional observer method, use any of the following arguments to `@Observes`:

```
@Observes(during=BEFORE_COMPLETION)
```

```
@Observes(during=AFTER_COMPLETION)
```

```
@Observes(during=AFTER_SUCCESS)
```

```
@Observes(during=AFTER_FAILURE)
```

To obtain the default non-transactional behavior, specify `@Observes(during=IN_PROGRESS)`.

An observer method that is called before completion of a transaction may call the `setRollbackOnly` method on the transaction instance to force a transaction rollback.

Observer methods may throw exceptions. If a transactional observer method throws an exception, the exception is caught by the container. If the observer method is non-transactional, the exception terminates processing of the event, and no other observer methods for the event are called.

33.5.3 Firing Events

To activate an event, call the `javax.enterprise.event.Event.fire` method. This method fires an event and notifies any observer methods.

In the `billpayment` example, a managed bean called `PaymentBean` fires the appropriate event by using information it receives from the user interface. There are actually four event beans, two for the event object and two for the payload. The managed bean injects the two event beans. The `pay` method uses a `switch` statement to choose which event to fire, using `new` to create the payload.

```
@Inject  
@Credit  
Event<PaymentEvent> creditEvent;  
  
@Inject  
@Debit  
Event<PaymentEvent> debitEvent;  
  
private static final int DEBIT = 1;
```

```

private static final int CREDIT = 2;
private int paymentOption = DEBIT;
...

@Logged
public String pay() {
    ...
    switch (paymentOption) {
        case DEBIT:
            PaymentEvent debitPayload = new PaymentEvent();
            // populate payload ...
            debitEvent.fire(debitPayload);
            break;
        case CREDIT:
            PaymentEvent creditPayload = new PaymentEvent();
            // populate payload ...
            creditEvent.fire(creditPayload);
            break;
        default:
            logger.severe("Invalid payment option!");
    }
    ...
}

```

The argument to the fire method is a `PaymentEvent` that contains the payload. The fired event is then consumed by the observer methods.

33.6 Using Interceptors in CDI Applications

An **interceptor** is a class used to interpose in method invocations or lifecycle events that occur in an associated target class. The interceptor performs tasks, such as logging or auditing, that are separate from the business logic of the application and are repeated often within an application. Such tasks are often called **cross-cutting** tasks. Interceptors allow you to specify the code for these tasks in one place for easy maintenance. When interceptors were first introduced to the Java EE platform, they were specific to enterprise beans. On the Java EE 7 platform you can use them with Java EE managed objects of all kinds, including managed beans.

For information on Java EE interceptors, see [Chapter 52, "Using Java EE Interceptors"](#).

An interceptor class often contains a method annotated `@AroundInvoke`, which specifies the tasks the interceptor will perform when intercepted methods are invoked. It can also contain a method annotated `@PostConstruct`, `@PreDestroy`, `@PrePassivate`, or `@PostActivate`, to specify lifecycle callback interceptors, and a method annotated `@AroundTimeout`, to specify EJB timeout interceptors. An interceptor class can contain more than one interceptor method, but it must have no more than one method of each type.

Along with an interceptor, an application defines one or more **interceptor binding types**, which are annotations that associate an interceptor with target beans or methods. For example, the `billpayment` example contains an interceptor binding type named `@Logged` and an interceptor named `LoggedInterceptor`. The interceptor binding type declaration looks something like a qualifier declaration, but it is annotated with `javax.interceptor.InterceptorBinding`:

```

@Inherited
@InterceptorBinding
@Retention(RUNTIME)
@Target({METHOD, TYPE})

```

```
public @interface Logged {  
}
```

An interceptor binding also has the `java.lang.annotation.Inherited` annotation, to specify that the annotation can be inherited from superclasses. The `@Inherited` annotation also applies to custom scopes (not discussed in this tutorial), but does not apply to qualifiers.

An interceptor binding type may declare other interceptor bindings.

The interceptor class is annotated with the interceptor binding as well as with the `@Interceptor` annotation. For an example, see [The LoggedInterceptor Interceptor Class](#).

Every `@AroundInvoke` method takes a `javax.interceptor.InvocationContext` argument, returns a `java.lang.Object`, and throws an `Exception`. It can call `InvocationContext` methods. The `@AroundInvoke` method must call the `proceed` method, which causes the target class method to be invoked.

Once an interceptor and binding type are defined, you can annotate beans and individual methods with the binding type to specify that the interceptor is to be invoked either on all methods of the bean or on specific methods. For example, in the `billpayment` example, the `PaymentHandler` bean is annotated `@Logged`, which means that any invocation of its business methods will cause the interceptor's `@AroundInvoke` method to be invoked:

```
@Logged  
@SessionScoped  
public class PaymentHandler implements Serializable {...}
```

However, in the `PaymentBean` bean, only the `pay` and `reset` methods have the `@Logged` annotation, so the interceptor is invoked only when these methods are invoked:

```
@Logged  
public String pay() {...}  
  
@Logged  
public void reset() {...}
```

In order for an interceptor to be invoked in a CDI application, it must, like an alternative, be specified in the `beans.xml` file. For example, the `LoggedInterceptor` class is specified as follows:

```
<interceptors>  
  <class>billpayment.interceptors.LoggedInterceptor</class>  
</interceptors>
```

If an application uses more than one interceptor, the interceptors are invoked in the order specified in the `beans.xml` file.

The interceptors that you specify in the `beans.xml` file apply only to classes in the same archive. Use the `@Priority` annotation to specify interceptors globally for an application that consists of multiple modules, as in the following example:

```
@Logged  
@Interceptor  
@Priority(Interceptor.Priority.APPLICATION)  
public class LoggedInterceptor implements Serializable { ... }
```

Interceptors with smaller priority values are called first. You do not need to specify the interceptor in the `beans.xml` file when you use the `@Priority` annotation.

33.7 Using Decorators in CDI Applications

A **decorator** is a Java class that is annotated `javax.decorator.Decorator` and that has a corresponding `decorators` element in the `beans.xml` file.

A decorator bean class must also have a delegate injection point, which is annotated `javax.decorator.Delegate`. This injection point can be a field, a constructor parameter, or an initializer method parameter of the decorator class.

Decorators are outwardly similar to interceptors. However, they actually perform tasks complementary to those performed by interceptors. Interceptors perform cross-cutting tasks associated with method invocation and with the lifecycles of beans, but cannot perform any business logic. Decorators, on the other hand, do perform business logic by intercepting business methods of beans. This means that instead of being reusable for different kinds of applications as are interceptors, their logic is specific to a particular application.

For example, instead of using an alternative `TestCoderImpl` class for the encoder example, you could create a decorator as follows:

```
@Decorator
public abstract class CoderDecorator implements Coder {

    @Inject
    @Delegate
    @Any
    Coder coder;

    public String codeString(String s, int tval) {
        int len = s.length();

        return "\"" + s + "\"" becomes " + "\"" + coder.codeString(s, tval)
            + "\", " + len + " characters in length";
    }
}
```

See [The decorators Example: Decorating a Bean](#) for an example that uses this decorator.

This simple decorator returns more detailed output than the encoded string returned by the `CoderImpl.codeString` method. A more complex decorator could store information in a database or perform some other business logic.

A decorator can be declared as an abstract class, so that it does not have to implement all the business methods of the interface.

In order for a decorator to be invoked in a CDI application, it must, like an interceptor or an alternative, be specified in the `beans.xml` file. For example, the `CoderDecorator` class is specified as follows:

```
<decorators>
  <class>decorators.CoderDecorator</class>
</decorators>
```

If an application uses more than one decorator, the decorators are invoked in the order in which they are specified in the `beans.xml` file.

If an application has both interceptors and decorators, the interceptors are invoked first. This means, in effect, that you cannot intercept a decorator.

The decorators that you specify in the `beans.xml` file apply only to classes in the same archive. Use the `@Priority` annotation to specify decorators globally for an application that consists of multiple modules, as in the following example:

```
@Decorator
@Priority(Interceptor.Priority.APPLICATION)
public abstract class CoderDecorator implements Coder { ... }
```

Decorators with smaller priority values are called first. You do not need to specify the decorator in the `beans.xml` when you use the `@Priority` annotation.

33.8 Using Stereotypes in CDI Applications

A **stereotype** is a kind of annotation, applied to a bean, that incorporates other annotations. Stereotypes can be particularly useful in large applications where you have a number of beans that perform similar functions. A stereotype is a kind of annotation that specifies the following:

- A default scope
- Zero or more interceptor bindings
- Optionally, a `@Named` annotation, guaranteeing default EL naming
- Optionally, an `@Alternative` annotation, specifying that all beans with this stereotype are alternatives

A bean annotated with a particular stereotype will always use the specified annotations, so you do not have to apply the same annotations to many beans.

For example, you might create a stereotype named `Action`, using the `javax.enterprise.inject.Stereotype` annotation:

```
@RequestScoped
@Secure
@Transactional
@Named
@Stereotype
@Target(TYPE)
@Retention(RUNTIME)
public @interface Action {}
```

All beans annotated `@Action` will have request scope, use default EL naming, and have the interceptor bindings `@Transactional` and `@Secure`.

You could also create a stereotype named `Mock`:

```
@Alternative
@Stereotype
@Target(TYPE)
@Retention(RUNTIME)
public @interface Mock {}
```

All beans with this annotation are alternatives.

It is possible to apply multiple stereotypes to the same bean, so you can annotate a bean as follows:

```
@Action
@Mock
public class MockLoginAction extends LoginAction { ... }
```

It is also possible to override the scope specified by a stereotype, simply by specifying a different scope for the bean. The following declaration gives the `MockLoginAction` bean session scope instead of request scope:

```
@SessionScoped
@Action
@Mock
public class MockLoginAction extends LoginAction { ... }
```

CDI makes available a built-in stereotype called `Model`, which is intended for use with beans that define the model layer of a model-view-controller application architecture. This stereotype specifies that a bean is both `@Named` and `@RequestScoped`:

```
@Named
@RequestScoped
@Stereotype
@Target({TYPE, METHOD, FIELD})
@Retention(RUNTIME)
public @interface Model {}
```

Running the Advanced Contexts and Dependency Injection Examples

This chapter describes in detail how to build and run several advanced examples that use CDI. The examples are in the `tut-install/examples/cdi/` directory.

To build and run the examples, you will do the following:

1. Use NetBeans IDE or the Maven tool to compile, package, and deploy the example.
2. Run the example in a web browser.

See [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#), for basic information on installing, building, and running the examples.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [The encoder Example: Using Alternatives](#)
- [The producermethods Example: Using a Producer Method To Choose a Bean Implementation](#)
- [The producerfields Example: Using Producer Fields to Generate Resources](#)
- [The billpayment Example: Using Events and Interceptors](#)
- [The decorators Example: Decorating a Bean](#)

34.1 The encoder Example: Using Alternatives

The `encoder` example shows how to use alternatives to choose between two beans at deployment time, as described in [Using Alternatives in CDI Applications](#). The example includes an interface and two implementations of it, a managed bean, a Facelets page, and configuration files.

34.1.1 The Coder Interface and Implementations

The `Coder` interface contains just one method, `codeString`, that takes two arguments: a string, and an integer value that specifies how the letters in the string should be transposed.

```
public interface Coder {  
  
    public String codeString(String s, int tval);  
}
```

The interface has two implementation classes, `CoderImpl` and `TestCoderImpl`. The implementation of `codeString` in `CoderImpl` shifts the string argument forward in the alphabet by the number of letters specified in the second argument; any characters that are not letters are left unchanged. (This simple shift code is known as a Caesar cipher, for Julius Caesar, who reportedly used it to communicate with his generals.) The implementation in `TestCoderImpl` merely displays the values of the arguments. The `TestCoderImpl` implementation is annotated `@Alternative`:

```
import javax.enterprise.inject.Alternative;

@Alternative
public class TestCoderImpl implements Coder {

    public String codeString(String s, int tval) {
        return ("input string is " + s + ", shift value is " + tval);
    }
}
```

The `beans.xml` file for the encoder example contains an `alternatives` element for the `TestCoderImpl` class, but by default the element is commented out:

```
<beans ...>
    <!--<alternatives>
        <class>encoder.TestCoderImpl</class>
    </alternatives>-->
</beans>
```

This means that by default, the `TestCoderImpl` class, annotated `@Alternative`, will not be used. Instead, the `CoderImpl` class will be used.

34.1.2 The encoder Facelets Page and Managed Bean

The simple Facelets page for the encoder example, `index.xhtml`, asks the user to enter the string and integer values and passes them to the managed bean, `CoderBean`, as `coderBean.inputString` and `coderBean.transVal`:

```
<html lang="en"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
    xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
<h:head>
    <h:outputStylesheet library="css" name="default.css"/>
    <title>String Encoder</title>
</h:head>
<h:body>
    <h2>String Encoder</h2>
    <p>Type a string and an integer, then click Encode.</p>
    <p>Depending on which alternative is enabled, the coder bean
        will either display the argument values or return a string that
        shifts the letters in the original string by the value you specify.
        The value must be between 0 and 26.</p>
    <h:form id="encodeit">
        <p><h:outputLabel value="Type a string: " for="inputString"/>
            <h:inputText id="inputString"
                value="#{coderBean.inputString}"/>
            <h:outputLabel value="Type the number of letters to shift by: "
                for="transVal"/>
            <h:inputText id="transVal" value="#{coderBean.transVal}"/></p>
        <p><h:commandButton value="Encode"
            action="#{coderBean.encodeString()}" /></p>
        <p><h:outputLabel value="Result: " for="outputString"/>
```

```

        <h:outputText id="outputString" value="#{coderBean.codedString}"
                    style="color:blue"/> </p>
        <p><h:commandButton value="Reset" action="#{coderBean.reset}"/></p>
    </h:form>
    ...
</h:body>
</html>

```

When the user clicks the **Encode** button, the page invokes the managed bean's `encodeString` method and displays the result, `coderBean.codedString`, in blue. The page also has a **Reset** button that clears the fields.

The managed bean, `CoderBean`, is a `@RequestScoped` bean that declares its input and output properties. The `transVal` property has three Bean Validation constraints that enforce limits on the integer value, so that if the user types an invalid value, a default error message appears on the Facelets page. The bean also injects an instance of the `Coder` interface:

```

@Named
@RequestScoped
public class CoderBean {

    private String inputString;
    private String codedString;
    @Max(26)
    @Min(0)
    @NotNull
    private int transVal;

    @Inject
    Coder coder;
    ...
}

```

In addition to simple getter and setter methods for the three properties, the bean defines the `encodeString` action method called by the Facelets page. This method sets the `codedString` property to the value returned by a call to the `codeString` method of the `Coder` implementation:

```

public void encodeString() {
    setCodedString(coder.codeString(inputString, transVal));
}

```

Finally, the bean defines the `reset` method to empty the fields of the Facelets page:

```

public void reset() {
    setInputString("");
    setTransVal(0);
}

```

34.1.3 Running the encoder Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the encoder application.

34.1.3.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the encoder Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/
```

3. Select the `encoder` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `encoder` project and select **Run**.

This command deploys the application and opens it in the default browser.

34.1.3.2 To Run the encoder Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/encoder
```

2. On the String Encoder page, enter a string and the number of letters to shift by, then click **Encode**.

The encoded string appears in blue on the **Result** line. For example, if you enter `Java` and `4`, the result is `Neze`.

3. Now, edit the `beans.xml` file to enable the alternative implementation of `Coder`.
 - a. In the **Projects** tab, under the `encoder` project, expand the **Web Pages** node, then expand the **WEB-INF** node.
 - b. Double-click the `beans.xml` file to open it.
 - c. Remove the comment characters that surround the `alternatives` element, so that it looks like this:

```
<alternatives>
  <class>encoder.TestCoderImpl</class>
</alternatives>
```

- d. Save the file.
4. Right-click the `encoder` project and select **Deploy**.
 5. In the web browser, reenter the URL to show the String Encoder page for the redeployed project:

```
http://localhost:8080/encoder/
```

6. Enter a string and the number of letters to shift by, then click **Encode**.

This time, the **Result** line displays your arguments. For example, if you enter `Java` and `4`, the result is:

```
Result: input string is Java, shift value is 4
```

34.1.3.3 To Build, Package, and Deploy the encoder Example Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/encoder/
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `encoder.war`, located in the `target` directory, and then deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

34.1.3.4 To Run the encoder Example Using Maven

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/encoder/
```

The String Encoder page opens.

2. Enter a string and the number of letters to shift by, then click **Encode**.

The encoded string appears in blue on the **Result** line. For example, if you enter Java and 4, the result is Neze.

3. Now, edit the `beans.xml` file to enable the alternative implementation of `Coder`.

- a. In a text editor, open the following file:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/encoder/web/WEB-INF/beans.xml
```

- b. Remove the comment characters that surround the `alternatives` element, so that it looks like this:

```
<alternatives>
  <class>encoder.TestCoderImpl</class>
</alternatives>
```

- c. Save and close the file.

4. Enter the following command:

```
mvn clean install
```

5. In the web browser, reenter the URL to show the String Encoder page for the redeployed project:

```
http://localhost:8080/encoder
```

6. Enter a string and the number of letters to shift by, then click **Encode**.

This time, the **Result** line displays your arguments. For example, if you enter Java and 4, the result is:

```
Result: input string is Java, shift value is 4
```

34.2 The producermethods Example: Using a Producer Method To Choose a Bean Implementation

The `producermethods` example shows how to use a producer method to choose between two beans at runtime, as described in [Using Producer Methods, Producer Fields, and Disposer Methods in CDI Applications](#). It is very similar to the `encoder` example described in [The encoder Example: Using Alternatives](#). The example includes the same interface and two implementations of it, a managed bean, a Facelets page, and configuration files. It also contains a qualifier type. When you run it, you do not need to edit the `beans.xml` file and redeploy the application to change its behavior.

34.2.1 Components of the producermethods Example

The components of `producermethods` are very much like those for `encoder`, with some significant differences.

Neither implementation of the `Coder` bean is annotated `@Alternative`, and there is no `beans.xml` file, since it is not needed.

The Facelets page and the managed bean, `CoderBean`, have an additional property, `coderType`, that allows the user to specify at runtime which implementation to use. In addition, the managed bean has a producer method that selects the implementation using a qualifier type, `@Chosen`.

The bean declares two constants that specify whether the coder type is the test implementation or the implementation that actually shifts letters:

```
private final static int TEST = 1;
private final static int SHIFT = 2;
private int coderType = SHIFT; // default value
```

The producer method, annotated with `@Produces` and `@Chosen` as well as `@RequestScoped` (so that it lasts only for the duration of a single request and response), returns one of the two implementations based on the `coderType` supplied by the user.

```
@Produces
@Chosen
@RequestScoped
public Coder getCoder() {

    switch (coderType) {
        case TEST:
            return new TestCoderImpl();
        case SHIFT:
            return new CoderImpl();
        default:
            return null;
    }
}
```

Finally, the managed bean injects the chosen implementation, specifying the same qualifier as that returned by the producer method to resolve ambiguities:

```
@Inject
@Chosen
@RequestScoped
Coder coder;
```

The Facelets page contains modified instructions and a pair of options whose selected value is assigned to the property `coderBean.coderType`:

```
<h2>String Encoder</h2>
<p>Select Test or Shift, type a string and an integer, then click
Encode.</p>
<p>If you select Test, the TestCoderImpl bean will display the
argument values.</p>
<p>If you select Shift, the CoderImpl bean will return a string that
shifts the letters in the original string by the value you specify.
The value must be between 0 and 26.</p>
<h:form id="encodeit">
    <h:selectOneRadio id="coderType"
        required="true"
        value="#{coderBean.coderType}">
```

```
<f:selectItem
  itemValue="1"
  itemLabel="Test" />
<f:selectItem
  itemValue="2"
  itemLabel="Shift Letters" />
</h:selectOneRadio>
...
```

34.2.2 Running the producermethods Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the producermethods application.

34.2.2.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the producermethods Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/cdi/`
3. Select the producermethods folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the producermethods project and select **Run**.

This command deploys the application and opens it in the default browser.

34.2.2.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the producermethods Example Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/cdi/producermethods/`
3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, producermethods.war, located in the target directory, and then deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

34.2.2.3 To Run the producermethods Example

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:
`http://localhost:8080/producermethods`
2. On the String Encoder page, select either the **Test** or **Shift Letters** option, enter a string and the number of letters to shift by, then click **Encode**.

Depending on your selection, the **Result** line displays either the encoded string or the input values you specified.

34.3 The producerfields Example: Using Producer Fields to Generate Resources

The `producerfields` example, which allows you to create a to-do list, shows how to use a producer field to generate objects that can then be managed by the container. This example generates an `EntityManager` object, but resources such as JDBC connections and datasources can also be generated this way.

The `producerfields` example is the simplest possible entity example. It also contains a qualifier and a class that generates the entity manager. It also contains a single entity, a stateful session bean, a Facelets page, and a managed bean.

34.3.1 The Producer Field for the producerfields Example

The most important component of the `producerfields` example is the smallest, the `db.UserDatabaseEntityManager` class, which isolates the generation of the `EntityManager` object so it can easily be used by other components in the application. The class uses a producer field to inject an `EntityManager` annotated with the `@UserDatabase` qualifier, also defined in the `db` package:

```
@Singleton
public class UserDatabaseEntityManager {

    @Produces
    @PersistenceContext
    @UserDatabase
    private EntityManager em;
    ...
}
```

The class does not explicitly produce a persistence unit field, but the application has a `persistence.xml` file that specifies a persistence unit. The class is annotated `javax.inject.Singleton` to specify that the injector should instantiate it only once.

The `db.UserDatabaseEntityManager` class also contains commented-out code that uses `create` and `close` methods to generate and remove the producer field:

```
/* @PersistenceContext
private EntityManager em;

@Produces
@UserDatabase
public EntityManager create() {
    return em;
} */

public void close(@Disposes @UserDatabase EntityManager em) {
    em.close();
}
```

You can remove the comment indicators from this code and place them around the field declaration to test how the methods work. The behavior of the application is the same with either mechanism.

The advantage of producing the `EntityManager` in a separate class rather than simply injecting it into an enterprise bean is that the object can easily be reused in a typesafe way. Also, a more complex application can create multiple entity managers using multiple persistence units, and this mechanism isolates this code for easy maintenance, as in the following example:

```

@Singleton
public class JPAResourceProducer {
    @Produces
    @PersistenceUnit(unitName="pu3")
    @TestDatabase
    EntityManagerFactory customerDatabasePersistenceUnit;

    @Produces
    @PersistenceContext(unitName="pu3")
    @TestDatabase
    EntityManager customerDatabasePersistenceContext;

    @Produces
    @PersistenceUnit(unitName="pu4")
    @Documents
    EntityManagerFactory customerDatabasePersistenceUnit;

    @Produces
    @PersistenceContext(unitName="pu4")
    @Documents
    EntityManager docDatabaseEntityManager;"
}

```

The `EntityManagerFactory` declarations also allow applications to use an application-managed entity manager.

34.3.2 The producerfields Entity and Session Bean

The `producerfields` example contains a simple entity class, `entity.ToDo`, and a stateful session bean, `ejb.RequestBean`, that uses it.

The entity class contains three fields: an autogenerated id field, a string specifying the task, and a timestamp. The timestamp field, `timeCreated`, is annotated with `@Temporal`, which is required for persistent Date fields.

```

@Entity
public class ToDo implements Serializable {

    ...
    @Id
    @GeneratedValue(strategy = GenerationType.AUTO)
    private Long id;
    protected String taskText;
    @Temporal(TIMESTAMP)
    protected Date timeCreated;

    public ToDo() {
    }

    public ToDo(Long id, String taskText, Date timeCreated) {
        this.id = id;
        this.taskText = taskText;
        this.timeCreated = timeCreated;
    }
    ...
}

```

The remainder of the `ToDo` class contains the usual getters, setters, and other entity methods.

The RequestBean class injects the EntityManager generated by the producer method, annotated with the @UserDatabase qualifier:

```
@ConversationScoped
@Stateful
public class RequestBean {

    @Inject
    @UserDatabase
    EntityManager em;
```

It then defines two methods, one that creates and persists a single ToDo list item, and another that retrieves all the ToDo items created so far by creating a query:

```
public ToDo createToDo(String inputString) {
    ToDo todo = null;
    Date currentTime = Calendar.getInstance().getTime();

    try {
        todo = new ToDo();
        todo.setTaskText(inputString);
        todo.setTimeCreated(currentTime);
        em.persist(todo);
        return todo;
    } catch (Exception e) {
        throw new EJBException(e.getMessage());
    }
}

public List<ToDo> getTodos() {
    try {
        List<ToDo> todos =
            (List<ToDo>) em.createQuery(
                "SELECT t FROM ToDo t ORDER BY
t.timeCreated").getResultList();
        return todos;
    } catch (Exception e) {
        throw new EJBException(e.getMessage());
    }
}
```

34.3.3 The producerfields Facelets Pages and Managed Bean

The producerfields example has two Facelets pages, index.xhtml and todolist.xhtml. The simple form on the index.xhtml page asks the user only for the task. When the user clicks the **Submit** button, the listBean.createTask method is called. When the user clicks the **Show Items** button, the action specifies that the todolist.xhtml file should be displayed:

```
<h:body>
    <h2>To Do List</h2>
    <p>Type a task to be completed.</p>
    <h:form id="todolist">
        <p><h:outputLabel value="Type a string: " for="inputString"/>
            <h:inputText id="inputString"
                value="#{listBean.inputString}"/></p>
        <p><h:commandButton value="Submit"
            action="#{listBean.createTask()}" /></p>
        <p><h:commandButton value="Show Items"
```

```

        action="todolist"/></p>
    </h:form>
    ...
</h:body>

```

The managed bean, `web.ListBean`, injects the `ejb.RequestBean` session bean. It declares the `entity.ToDo` entity and a list of the entity, along with the input string that it passes to the session bean. The `inputString` is annotated with the `@NotNull` Bean Validation constraint, so an attempt to submit an empty string results in an error.

```

@Named
@ConversationScoped
public class ListBean implements Serializable {

    ...
    @EJB
    private RequestBean request;
    @NotNull
    private String inputString;
    private ToDo todo;
    private List<ToDo> todos;

```

The `createTask` method called by the **Submit** button calls the `createToDo` method of `RequestBean`:

```

public void createTask() {
    this.todo = request.createToDo(inputString);
}

```

The `getTodos` method, which is called by the `todolist.xhtml` page, calls the `getTodos` method of `RequestBean`:

```

public List<ToDo> getTodos() {
    return request.getTodos();
}

```

To force the Facelets page to recognize an empty string as a null value and return an error, the `web.xml` file sets the context parameter `javax.faces.INTERPRET_EMPTY_STRING_SUBMITTED_VALUES_AS_NULL` to `true`:

```

<context-param>
    <param-name>javax.faces.INTERPRET_EMPTY_STRING_SUBMITTED_VALUES_AS_
NULL</param-name>
    <param-value>>true</param-value>
</context-param>

```

The `todolist.xhtml` page is a little more complicated than the `index.html` page. It contains a `dataTable` element that displays the contents of the `ToDo` list. The body of the page looks like this:

```

<body>
    <h2>To Do List</h2>
    <h:form id="showlist">
        <h:dataTable var="todo"
            value="#{listBean.todos}"
            rules="all"
            border="1"
            cellpadding="5">
            <h:column>
                <f:facet name="header">
                    <h:outputText value="Time Stamp" />

```

```
        </f:facet>
        <h:outputText value="#{todo.timeCreated}" />
    </h:column>
    <h:column>
        <f:facet name="header">
            <h:outputText value="Task" />
        </f:facet>
        <h:outputText value="#{todo.taskText}" />
    </h:column>
</h:dataTable>
<p><h:commandButton id="back" value="Back" action="index" /></p>
</h:form>
</body>
```

The value of the `dataTable` is `listBean.todos`, the list returned by the managed bean's `getTodos` method, which in turn calls the session bean's `getTodos` method. Each row of the table displays the `timeCreated` and `taskText` fields of the individual task. Finally, a **Back** button returns the user to the `index.xhtml` page.

34.3.4 Running the producerfields Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the `producerfields` application.

34.3.4.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the producerfields Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. If the database server is not already running, start it by following the instructions in [Starting and Stopping the Java DB Server](#).
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
3. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/
```

4. Select the `producerfields` folder.
5. Click **Open Project**.
6. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `producerfields` project and select **Run**.

This command deploys the application and opens it in the default browser.

34.3.4.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the producerfields Example Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server and the Java DB server are running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/producerfields/
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `producerfields.war`, located in the `target` directory, and then deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

34.3.4.3 To Run the producerfields Example

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/producerfields
```

2. On the Create To Do List page, enter a string in the field and click **Submit**.

You can enter additional strings and click **Submit** to create a task list with multiple items.

3. Click **Show Items**.

The To Do List page opens, showing the timestamp and text for each item you created.

4. Click **Back** to return to the Create To Do List page.

On this page, you can enter more items in the list.

34.4 The billpayment Example: Using Events and Interceptors

The `billpayment` example shows how to use both events and interceptors.

The example simulates paying an amount using a debit card or credit card. When the user chooses a payment method, the managed bean creates an appropriate event, supplies its payload, and fires it. A simple event listener handles the event using observer methods.

The example also defines an interceptor that is set on a class and on two methods of another class.

34.4.1 The PaymentEvent Event Class

The event class, `event.PaymentEvent`, is a simple bean class that contains a no-argument constructor. It also has a `toString` method and getter and setter methods for the payload components: a `String` for the payment type, a `BigDecimal` for the payment amount, and a `Date` for the timestamp.

```
public class PaymentEvent implements Serializable {

    ...

    public String paymentType;
    public BigDecimal value;
    public Date datetime;

    public PaymentEvent() {
    }
    @Override
    public String toString() {
        return this.paymentType
            + " = $" + this.value.toString()
            + " at " + this.datetime.toString();
    }
    ...
}
```

The event class is a simple bean that is instantiated by the managed bean using `new` and then populated. For this reason, the CDI container cannot intercept the creation of the bean, and hence it cannot allow interception of its getter and setter methods.

34.4.2 The PaymentHandler Event Listener

The event listener, `listener.PaymentHandler`, contains two observer methods, one for each of the two event types:

```
@Logged
@SessionScoped
public class PaymentHandler implements Serializable {

    ...
    public void creditPayment(@Observes @Credit PaymentEvent event) {
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "PaymentHandler - Credit Handler: {0}",
            event.toString());

        // call a specific Credit handler class...
    }

    public void debitPayment(@Observes @Debit PaymentEvent event) {
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "PaymentHandler - Debit Handler: {0}",
            event.toString());

        // call a specific Debit handler class...
    }
}
```

Each observer method takes as an argument the event, annotated with `@Observes` and with the qualifier for the type of payment. In a real application, the observer methods would pass the event information on to another component that would perform business logic on the payment.

The qualifiers are defined in the `payment` package, described in [The billpayment Facelets Pages and Managed Bean](#).

Like `PaymentEvent`, the `PaymentHandler` bean is annotated `@Logged`, so that all its methods can be intercepted.

34.4.3 The billpayment Facelets Pages and Managed Bean

The `billpayment` example contains two Facelets pages, `index.xhtml` and the very simple `response.xhtml`. The body of `index.xhtml` looks like this:

```
<h:body>
  <h3>Bill Payment Options</h3>
  <p>Type an amount, select Debit Card or Credit Card, then click Pay.</p>
  <h:form>
    <p>
      <h:outputLabel value="Amount: $" for="amt" />
      <h:inputText id="amt" value="#{paymentBean.value}" required="true"
        requiredMessage="An amount is required."
        maxLength="15" />
    </p>
    <h:outputLabel value="Options:" for="opt" />
    <h:selectOneRadio id="opt" value="#{paymentBean.paymentOption}">
      <f:selectItem id="debit" itemLabel="Debit Card" itemValue="1" />
      <f:selectItem id="credit" itemLabel="Credit Card" itemValue="2" />
    </h:selectOneRadio>
    <p><h:commandButton id="submit" value="Pay"
      action="#{paymentBean.pay}" /></p>
    <p><h:commandButton value="Reset" action="#{paymentBean.reset}" /></p>
  </h:form>
  ...
```

```
</h:body>
```

The input field takes a payment amount, passed to `paymentBean.value`. Two options ask the user to select a Debit Card or Credit Card payment, passing the integer value to `paymentBean.paymentOption`. Finally, the **Pay** command button's action is set to the method `paymentBean.pay`, while the **Reset** button's action is set to the `paymentBean.reset` method.

The `payment.PaymentBean` managed bean uses qualifiers to differentiate between the two kinds of payment event:

```
@Named
@SessionScoped
public class PaymentBean implements Serializable {

    ...
    @Inject
    @Credit
    Event<PaymentEvent> creditEvent;

    @Inject
    @Debit
    Event<PaymentEvent> debitEvent;
```

The qualifiers, `@Credit` and `@Debit`, are defined in the `payment` package along with `PaymentBean`.

Next, the `PaymentBean` defines the properties it obtains from the Facelets page and will pass on to the event:

```
public static final int DEBIT = 1;
public static final int CREDIT = 2;
private int paymentOption = DEBIT;

@Digits(integer = 10, fraction = 2, message = "Invalid value")
private BigDecimal value;

private Date datetime;
```

The `paymentOption` value is an integer passed in from the option component; the default value is `DEBIT`. The value is a `BigDecimal` with a Bean Validation constraint that enforces a currency value with a maximum number of digits. The timestamp for the event, `datetime`, is a `Date` object initialized when the `pay` method is called.

The `pay` method of the bean first sets the timestamp for this payment event. It then creates and populates the event payload, using the constructor for the `PaymentEvent` and calling the event's setter methods using the bean properties as arguments. It then fires the event.

```
@Logged
public String pay() {
    this.setDatetime(Calendar.getInstance().getTime());
    switch (paymentOption) {
        case DEBIT:
            PaymentEvent debitPayload = new PaymentEvent();
            debitPayload.setPaymentType("Debit");
            debitPayload.setValue(value);
            debitPayload.setDatetime(datetime);
            debitEvent.fire(debitPayload);
            break;
        case CREDIT:
```

```

        PaymentEvent creditPayload = new PaymentEvent();
        creditPayload.setPaymentType("Credit");
        creditPayload.setValue(value);
        creditPayload.setDatetime(datetime);
        creditEvent.fire(creditPayload);
        break;
    default:
        logger.severe("Invalid payment option!");
    }
    return "/response.xhtml";
}

```

The `pay` method returns the page to which the action is redirected, `response.xhtml`.

The `PaymentBean` class also contains a `reset` method that empties the value field on the `index.xhtml` page and sets the payment option to the default:

```

@Logged
public void reset() {
    setPaymentOption(DEBIT);
    setValue(BigDecimal.ZERO);
}

```

In this bean, only the `pay` and `reset` methods are intercepted.

The `response.xhtml` page displays the amount paid. It uses a rendered expression to display the payment method:

```

<h:body>
  <h:form>
    <h2>Bill Payment: Result</h2>
    <h3>Amount Paid with
      <h:outputText id="debit" value="Debit Card: "
        rendered="#{paymentBean.paymentOption eq 1}" />
      <h:outputText id="credit" value="Credit Card: "
        rendered="#{paymentBean.paymentOption eq 2}" />
      <h:outputText id="result" value="#{paymentBean.value}">
        <f:convertNumber type="currency"/>
      </h:outputText>
    </h3>
    <p><h:commandButton id="back" value="Back" action="index" /></p>
  </h:form>
</h:body>

```

34.4.4 The LoggedInterceptor Interceptor Class

The interceptor class, `LoggedInterceptor`, and its interceptor binding, `Logged`, are both defined in the `interceptor` package. The `Logged` interceptor binding is defined as follows:

```

@Inherited
@InterceptorBinding
@Retention(RUNTIME)
@Target({METHOD, TYPE})
public @interface Logged {
}

```

The `LoggedInterceptor` class looks like this:

```

@Logged
@Interceptor

```

```

public class LoggedInterceptor implements Serializable {

    ...

    public LoggedInterceptor() {
    }

    @AroundInvoke
    public Object logMethodEntry(InvocationContext invocationContext)
        throws Exception {
        System.out.println("Entering method: "
            + invocationContext.getMethod().getName() + " in class "
            + invocationContext.getMethod().getDeclaringClass().getName());

        return invocationContext.proceed();
    }
}

```

The class is annotated with both the `@Logged` and the `@Interceptor` annotations. The `@AroundInvoke` method, `logMethodEntry`, takes the required `InvocationContext` argument, and calls the required `proceed` method. When a method is intercepted, `logMethodEntry` displays the name of the method being invoked as well as its class.

To enable the interceptor, the `beans.xml` file defines it as follows:

```

<interceptors>
  <class>billpayment.interceptor.LoggedInterceptor</class>
</interceptors>

```

In this application, the `PaymentEvent` and `PaymentHandler` classes are annotated `@Logged`, so all their methods are intercepted. In `PaymentBean`, only the `pay` and `reset` methods are annotated `@Logged`, so only those methods are intercepted.

34.4.5 Running the billpayment Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the billpayment application.

34.4.5.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the billpayment Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/cdi/
```
3. Select the billpayment folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the billpayment project and select **Run**.

This command deploys the application and opens it in the default browser.

34.4.5.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the billpayment Example Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/billpayment/
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `billpayment.war`, located in the `target` directory, and then deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

34.4.5.3 To Run the billpayment Example

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/billpayment
```

2. On the Bill Payment Options page, enter a value in the **Amount** field.

The amount can contain up to 10 digits and include up to 2 decimal places. For example:

```
9876.54
```

3. Select **Debit Card** or **Credit Card** and click **Pay**.

The Bill Payment: Result page opens, displaying the amount paid and the method of payment:

```
Amount Paid with Credit Card: $9,876.34
```

4. Click **Back** to return to the Bill Payment Options page.

You can also click **Reset** to return to the initial page values.

5. Examine the server log output.

In NetBeans IDE, the output is visible in the GlassFish Server **Output** tab. Otherwise, view `domain-dir/logs/server.log`.

The output from each interceptor appears in the log, followed by the additional logger output defined by the constructor and methods:

```
INFO: Entering method: pay in class billpayment.payment.PaymentBean
INFO: PaymentHandler created.
INFO: PaymentHandler created.
INFO: PaymentHandler created.
INFO: Entering method: debitPayment in class
billpayment.listener.PaymentHandler
INFO: PaymentHandler - Debit Handler: Debit = $1234.56 at Tue Dec 14 14:50:28
EST 2010
```

34.5 The decorators Example: Decorating a Bean

The decorators example, which is yet another variation on the encoder example, shows how to use a decorator to implement additional business logic for a bean. Instead of having the user choose between two alternative implementations of an interface at deployment time or runtime, a decorator adds some additional logic to a single implementation of the interface.

The example includes an interface, an implementation of it, a decorator, an interceptor, a managed bean, a Facelets page, and configuration files.

34.5.1 Components of the decorators Example

The decorators example is very similar to the encoder example described in [The encoder Example: Using Alternatives](#). Instead of providing two implementations of the Coder interface, however, this example provides only the CoderImpl class. The decorator class, CoderDecorator, rather than simply return the coded string, displays the input and output strings' values and length.

The CoderDecorator class, like CoderImpl, implements the business method of the Coder interface, codeString:

```
@Decorator
public abstract class CoderDecorator implements Coder {

    @Inject
    @Delegate
    @Any
    Coder coder;

    public String codeString(String s, int tval) {
        int len = s.length();

        return "\"" + s + "\" becomes " + "\"" + coder.codeString(s, tval)
            + "\", " + len + " characters in length";
    }
}
```

The decorator's codeString method calls the delegate object's codeString method to perform the actual encoding.

The decorators example includes the Logged interceptor binding and LoggedInterceptor class from the billpayment example. For this example, the interceptor is set on the CoderBean.encodeString method and the CoderImpl.codeString method. The interceptor code is unchanged; interceptors are usually reusable for different applications.

Except for the interceptor annotations, the CoderBean and CoderImpl classes are identical to the versions in the encoder example.

The beans.xml file specifies both the decorator and the interceptor:

```
<decorators>
  <class>decorators.CoderDecorator</class>
</decorators>
<interceptors>
  <class>decorators.LoggedInterceptor</class>
</interceptors>
```

34.5.2 Running the decorators Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the decorators application.

34.5.2.1 To Build, Package, and Deploy the decorators Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/
```

3. Select the `decorators` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `decorators` project and select **Run**.

This command deploys the application and opens it in the default browser.

34.5.2.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the decorators Example Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).

2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/cdi/decorators/
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `decorators.war`, located in the `target` directory, and then deploys it to the GlassFish Server.

34.5.2.3 To Run the decorators Example

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/decorators
```

2. On the Decorated String Encoder page, enter a string and the number of letters to shift by, then click **Encode**.

The output from the decorator method appears in blue on the **Result** line. For example, if you entered `Java` and `4`, you would see the following:

```
"Java" becomes "Neze", 4 characters in length
```

3. Examine the server log output.

In NetBeans IDE, the output is visible in the GlassFish Server **Output** tab. Otherwise, view `domain-dir/logs/server.log`.

The output from the interceptors appears:

```
INFO: Entering method: encodeString in class decorators.CoderBean  
INFO: Entering method: codeString in class decorators.CoderImpl
```

Part VII

Persistence

Part VII explores the Java Persistence API. This part contains the following chapters:

- [Chapter 35, "Introduction to the Java Persistence API"](#)
- [Chapter 36, "Running the Persistence Examples"](#)
- [Chapter 37, "The Java Persistence Query Language"](#)
- [Chapter 38, "Using the Criteria API to Create Queries"](#)
- [Chapter 39, "Creating and Using String-Based Criteria Queries"](#)
- [Chapter 40, "Controlling Concurrent Access to Entity Data with Locking"](#)
- [Chapter 41, "Using a Second-Level Cache with Java Persistence API Applications"](#)

Introduction to the Java Persistence API

The Java Persistence API provides Java developers with an object/relational mapping facility for managing relational data in Java applications. Java Persistence consists of four areas:

- The Java Persistence API
- The query language
- The Java Persistence Criteria API
- Object/relational mapping metadata

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Entities](#)
- [Entity Inheritance](#)
- [Managing Entities](#)
- [Querying Entities](#)
- [Further Information about Persistence](#)

35.1 Entities

An entity is a lightweight persistence domain object. Typically, an entity represents a table in a relational database, and each entity instance corresponds to a row in that table. The primary programming artifact of an entity is the entity class, although entities can use helper classes.

The persistent state of an entity is represented through either persistent fields or persistent properties. These fields or properties use object/relational mapping annotations to map the entities and entity relationships to the relational data in the underlying data store.

35.1.1 Requirements for Entity Classes

An entity class must follow these requirements.

- The class must be annotated with the `javax.persistence.Entity` annotation.
- The class must have a public or protected, no-argument constructor. The class may have other constructors.
- The class must not be declared `final`. No methods or persistent instance variables must be declared `final`.

- If an entity instance is passed by value as a detached object, such as through a session bean's remote business interface, the class must implement the `Serializable` interface.
- Entities may extend both entity and non-entity classes, and non-entity classes may extend entity classes.
- Persistent instance variables must be declared private, protected, or package-private and can be accessed directly only by the entity class's methods. Clients must access the entity's state through accessor or business methods.

35.1.2 Persistent Fields and Properties in Entity Classes

The persistent state of an entity can be accessed through either the entity's instance variables or properties. The fields or properties must be of the following Java language types:

- Java primitive types
- `java.lang.String`
- Other serializable types, including:
 - Wrappers of Java primitive types
 - `java.math.BigInteger`
 - `java.math.BigDecimal`
 - `java.util.Date`
 - `java.util.Calendar`
 - `java.sql.Date`
 - `java.sql.Time`
 - `java.sql.Timestamp`
 - User-defined serializable types
 - `byte[]`
 - `Byte[]`
 - `char[]`
 - `Character[]`
- Enumerated types
- Other entities and/or collections of entities
- Embeddable classes

Entities may use persistent fields, persistent properties, or a combination of both. If the mapping annotations are applied to the entity's instance variables, the entity uses persistent fields. If the mapping annotations are applied to the entity's getter methods for JavaBeans-style properties, the entity uses persistent properties.

35.1.2.1 Persistent Fields

If the entity class uses persistent fields, the Persistence runtime accesses entity-class instance variables directly. All fields not annotated `javax.persistence.Transient` or not marked as `Java transient` will be persisted to the data store. The object/relational mapping annotations must be applied to the instance variables.

35.1.2.2 Persistent Properties

If the entity uses persistent properties, the entity must follow the method conventions of JavaBeans components. JavaBeans-style properties use getter and setter methods that are typically named after the entity class's instance variable names. For every persistent property *property* of type *Type* of the entity, there is a getter method *getProperty* and setter method *setProperty*. If the property is a Boolean, you may use *isProperty* instead of *getProperty*. For example, if a `Customer` entity uses persistent properties and has a private instance variable called `firstName`, the class defines a `getFirstName` and `setFirstName` method for retrieving and setting the state of the `firstName` instance variable.

The method signature for single-valued persistent properties are as follows:

```
Type getProperty()
void setProperty(Type type)
```

The object/relational mapping annotations for persistent properties must be applied to the getter methods. Mapping annotations cannot be applied to fields or properties annotated `@Transient` or marked `transient`.

35.1.2.3 Using Collections in Entity Fields and Properties

Collection-valued persistent fields and properties must use the supported Java collection interfaces regardless of whether the entity uses persistent fields or properties. The following collection interfaces may be used:

- `java.util.Collection`
- `java.util.Set`
- `java.util.List`
- `java.util.Map`

If the entity class uses persistent fields, the type in the preceding method signatures must be one of these collection types. Generic variants of these collection types may also be used. For example, if it has a persistent property that contains a set of phone numbers, the `Customer` entity would have the following methods:

```
Set<PhoneNumber> getPhoneNumbers() { ... }
void setPhoneNumbers(Set<PhoneNumber>) { ... }
```

If a field or property of an entity consists of a collection of basic types or embeddable classes, use the `javax.persistence.ElementCollection` annotation on the field or property.

The two attributes of `@ElementCollection` are `targetClass` and `fetch`. The `targetClass` attribute specifies the class name of the basic or embeddable class and is optional if the field or property is defined using Java programming language generics. The optional `fetch` attribute is used to specify whether the collection should be retrieved lazily or eagerly, using the `javax.persistence.FetchType` constants of either `LAZY` or `EAGER`, respectively. By default, the collection will be fetched lazily.

The following entity, `Person`, has a persistent field, `nicknames`, which is a collection of `String` classes that will be fetched eagerly. The `targetClass` element is not required, because it uses generics to define the field.

```
@Entity
public class Person {
    ...
    @ElementCollection(fetch=EAGER)
    protected Set<String> nickname = new HashSet();
}
```

```
    ...
}
```

Collections of entity elements and relationships may be represented by `java.util.Map` collections. A `Map` consists of a key and a value.

When using `Map` elements or relationships, the following rules apply.

- The `Map` key or value may be a basic Java programming language type, an embeddable class, or an entity.
- When the `Map` value is an embeddable class or basic type, use the `@ElementCollection` annotation.
- When the `Map` value is an entity, use the `@OneToMany` or `@ManyToMany` annotation.
- Use the `Map` type on only one side of a bidirectional relationship.

If the key type of a `Map` is a Java programming language basic type, use the annotation `javax.persistence.MapKeyColumn` to set the column mapping for the key. By default, the name attribute of `@MapKeyColumn` is of the form `RELATIONSHIP-FIELD/PROPERTY-NAME_KEY`. For example, if the referencing relationship field name is `image`, the default name attribute is `IMAGE_KEY`.

If the key type of a `Map` is an entity, use the `javax.persistence.MapKeyJoinColumn` annotation. If the multiple columns are needed to set the mapping, use the annotation `javax.persistence.MapKeyJoinColumns` to include multiple `@MapKeyJoinColumn` annotations. If no `@MapKeyJoinColumn` is present, the mapping column name is by default set to `RELATIONSHIP-FIELD/PROPERTY-NAME_KEY`. For example, if the relationship field name is `employee`, the default name attribute is `EMPLOYEE_KEY`.

If Java programming language generic types are not used in the relationship field or property, the key class must be explicitly set using the `javax.persistence.MapKeyClass` annotation.

If the `Map` key is the primary key or a persistent field or property of the entity that is the `Map` value, use the `javax.persistence.MapKey` annotation. The `@MapKeyClass` and `@MapKey` annotations cannot be used on the same field or property.

If the `Map` value is a Java programming language basic type or an embeddable class, it will be mapped as a collection table in the underlying database. If generic types are not used, the `@ElementCollection` annotation's `targetClass` attribute must be set to the type of the `Map` value.

If the `Map` value is an entity and part of a many-to-many or one-to-many unidirectional relationship, it will be mapped as a join table in the underlying database. A unidirectional one-to-many relationship that uses a `Map` may also be mapped using the `@JoinColumn` annotation.

If the entity is part of a one-to-many/many-to-one bidirectional relationship, it will be mapped in the table of the entity that represents the value of the `Map`. If generic types are not used, the `targetEntity` attribute of the `@OneToMany` and `@ManyToMany` annotations must be set to the type of the `Map` value.

35.1.2.4 Validating Persistent Fields and Properties

The Java API for JavaBeans Validation (Bean Validation) provides a mechanism for validating application data. Bean Validation is integrated into the Java EE containers, allowing the same validation logic to be used in any of the tiers of an enterprise application.

Bean Validation constraints may be applied to persistent entity classes, embeddable classes, and mapped superclasses. By default, the Persistence provider will automatically perform validation on entities with persistent fields or properties annotated with Bean Validation constraints immediately after the `PrePersist`, `PreUpdate`, and `PreRemove` lifecycle events.

Bean Validation constraints are annotations applied to the fields or properties of Java programming language classes. Bean Validation provides a set of constraints as well as an API for defining custom constraints. Custom constraints can be specific combinations of the default constraints, or new constraints that don't use the default constraints. Each constraint is associated with at least one validator class that validates the value of the constrained field or property. Custom constraint developers must also provide a validator class for the constraint.

Bean Validation constraints are applied to the persistent fields or properties of persistent classes. When adding Bean Validation constraints, use the same access strategy as the persistent class. That is, if the persistent class uses field access, apply the Bean Validation constraint annotations on the class's fields. If the class uses property access, apply the constraints on the getter methods.

[Table 12-2](#) lists Bean Validation's built-in constraints, defined in the `javax.validation.constraints` package.

All the built-in constraints listed in [Table 12-2](#) have a corresponding annotation, `ConstraintName.List`, for grouping multiple constraints of the same type on the same field or property. For example, the following persistent field has two `@Pattern` constraints:

```
@Pattern.List({
    @Pattern(regexp="..."),
    @Pattern(regexp="...")
})
```

The following entity class, `Contact`, has Bean Validation constraints applied to its persistent fields.

```
@Entity
public class Contact implements Serializable {
    ...
    @Id
    @GeneratedValue(strategy = GenerationType.AUTO)
    private Long id;
    @NotNull
    protected String firstName;
    @NotNull
    protected String lastName;
    @Pattern(regexp="[a-z0-9!#$%&'*/+=?^_`{|}~-]+(?:\\.|"
        +"[a-z0-9!#$%&'*/+=?^_`{|}~-]+)*@"
        +"(?:[a-z0-9](?:[a-z0-9-]*[a-z0-9])?\\.)+[a-z0-9](?:[a-z0-9-]*[a-z0-9])?",
        message="{invalid.email}")
    protected String email;
    @Pattern(regexp="^\((?(\d{3}))\)?[- ]?(?(\d{3})[- ]?(?(\d{4}))$)",
        message="{invalid.phonenumber}")
    protected String mobilePhone;
    @Pattern(regexp="^\((?(\d{3}))\)?[- ]?(?(\d{3})[- ]?(?(\d{4}))$)",
        message="{invalid.phonenumber}")
    protected String homePhone;
    @Temporal(javax.persistence.TemporalType.DATE)
    @Past
    protected Date birthday;
    ...
}
```

```
}
```

The `@NotNull` annotation on the `firstName` and `lastName` fields specifies that those fields are now required. If a new `Contact` instance is created where `firstName` or `lastName` have not been initialized, Bean Validation will throw a validation error. Similarly, if a previously created instance of `Contact` has been modified so that `firstName` or `lastName` are null, a validation error will be thrown.

The `email` field has a `@Pattern` constraint applied to it, with a complicated regular expression that matches most valid email addresses. If the value of `email` doesn't match this regular expression, a validation error will be thrown.

The `homePhone` and `mobilePhone` fields have the same `@Pattern` constraints. The regular expression matches 10 digit telephone numbers in the United States and Canada of the form `(xxx) xxx-xxxx`.

The `birthday` field is annotated with the `@Past` constraint, which ensures that the value of `birthday` must be in the past.

35.1.3 Primary Keys in Entities

Each entity has a unique object identifier. A customer entity, for example, might be identified by a customer number. The unique identifier, or **primary key**, enables clients to locate a particular entity instance. Every entity must have a primary key. An entity may have either a simple or a composite primary key.

Simple primary keys use the `javax.persistence.Id` annotation to denote the primary key property or field.

Composite primary keys are used when a primary key consists of more than one attribute, which corresponds to a set of single persistent properties or fields. Composite primary keys must be defined in a primary key class. Composite primary keys are denoted using the `javax.persistence.EmbeddedId` and `javax.persistence.IdClass` annotations.

The primary key, or the property or field of a composite primary key, must be one of the following Java language types:

- Java primitive types
- Java primitive wrapper types
- `java.lang.String`
- `java.util.Date` (the temporal type should be `DATE`)
- `java.sql.Date`
- `java.math.BigDecimal`
- `java.math.BigInteger`

Floating-point types should never be used in primary keys. If you use a generated primary key, only integral types will be portable.

A primary key class must meet these requirements.

- The access control modifier of the class must be `public`.
- The properties of the primary key class must be `public` or `protected` if property-based access is used.
- The class must have a public default constructor.
- The class must implement the `hashCode()` and `equals(Object other)` methods.

- The class must be serializable.
- A composite primary key must be represented and mapped to multiple fields or properties of the entity class or must be represented and mapped as an embeddable class.
- If the class is mapped to multiple fields or properties of the entity class, the names and types of the primary key fields or properties in the primary key class must match those of the entity class.

The following primary key class is a composite key, and the `orderId` and `itemId` fields together uniquely identify an entity:

```
public final class LineItemKey implements Serializable {
    public Integer orderId;
    public int itemId;

    public LineItemKey() {}

    public LineItemKey(Integer orderId, int itemId) {
        this.orderId = orderId;
        this.itemId = itemId;
    }

    public boolean equals(Object otherObj) {
        if (this == otherObj) {
            return true;
        }
        if (!(otherObj instanceof LineItemKey)) {
            return false;
        }
        LineItemKey other = (LineItemKey) otherObj;
        return (
            (orderId==null?other.orderId==null:orderId.equals(
                other.orderId)
            )
            &&
            (itemId == other.itemId)
        );
    }

    public int hashCode() {
        return (
            (orderId==null?0:orderId.hashCode())
            ^
            ((int) itemId)
        );
    }

    public String toString() {
        return "" + orderId + "-" + itemId;
    }
}
```

35.1.4 Multiplicity in Entity Relationships

Multiplicities are of the following types: one-to-one, one-to-many, many-to-one, and many-to-many:

- **One-to-one:** Each entity instance is related to a single instance of another entity. For example, to model a physical warehouse in which each storage bin contains a single widget, `StorageBin` and `Widget` would have a one-to-one relationship. One-to-one relationships use the `javax.persistence.OneToOne` annotation on the corresponding persistent property or field.
- **One-to-many:** An entity instance can be related to multiple instances of the other entities. A sales order, for example, can have multiple line items. In the order application, `Order` would have a one-to-many relationship with `LineItem`. One-to-many relationships use the `javax.persistence.OneToMany` annotation on the corresponding persistent property or field.
- **Many-to-one:** Multiple instances of an entity can be related to a single instance of the other entity. This multiplicity is the opposite of a one-to-many relationship. In the example just mentioned, the relationship to `Order` from the perspective of `LineItem` is many-to-one. Many-to-one relationships use the `javax.persistence.ManyToOne` annotation on the corresponding persistent property or field.
- **Many-to-many:** The entity instances can be related to multiple instances of each other. For example, each college course has many students, and every student may take several courses. Therefore, in an enrollment application, `Course` and `Student` would have a many-to-many relationship. Many-to-many relationships use the `javax.persistence.ManyToMany` annotation on the corresponding persistent property or field.

35.1.5 Direction in Entity Relationships

The direction of a relationship can be either bidirectional or unidirectional. A bidirectional relationship has both an owning side and an inverse side. A unidirectional relationship has only an owning side. The owning side of a relationship determines how the Persistence runtime makes updates to the relationship in the database.

35.1.5.1 Bidirectional Relationships

In a **bidirectional** relationship, each entity has a relationship field or property that refers to the other entity. Through the relationship field or property, an entity class's code can access its related object. If an entity has a related field, the entity is said to "know" about its related object. For example, if `Order` knows what `LineItem` instances it has and if `LineItem` knows what `Order` it belongs to, they have a bidirectional relationship.

Bidirectional relationships must follow these rules.

- The inverse side of a bidirectional relationship must refer to its owning side by using the `mappedBy` element of the `@OneToOne`, `@OneToMany`, or `@ManyToMany` annotation. The `mappedBy` element designates the property or field in the entity that is the owner of the relationship.
- The many side of many-to-one bidirectional relationships must not define the `mappedBy` element. The many side is always the owning side of the relationship.
- For one-to-one bidirectional relationships, the owning side corresponds to the side that contains the corresponding foreign key.
- For many-to-many bidirectional relationships, either side may be the owning side.

35.1.5.2 Unidirectional Relationships

In a **unidirectional** relationship, only one entity has a relationship field or property that refers to the other. For example, `LineItem` would have a relationship field that identifies `Product`, but `Product` would not have a relationship field or property for `LineItem`. In other words, `LineItem` knows about `Product`, but `Product` doesn't know which `LineItem` instances refer to it.

35.1.5.3 Queries and Relationship Direction

Java Persistence query language and Criteria API queries often navigate across relationships. The direction of a relationship determines whether a query can navigate from one entity to another. For example, a query can navigate from `LineItem` to `Product` but cannot navigate in the opposite direction. For `Order` and `LineItem`, a query could navigate in both directions because these two entities have a bidirectional relationship.

35.1.5.4 Cascade Operations and Relationships

Entities that use relationships often have dependencies on the existence of the other entity in the relationship. For example, a line item is part of an order; if the order is deleted, the line item also should be deleted. This is called a cascade delete relationship.

The `javax.persistence.CascadeType` enumerated type defines the cascade operations that are applied in the `cascade` element of the relationship annotations. [Table 35–1](#) lists the cascade operations for entities.

Table 35–1 Cascade Operations for Entities

Cascade Operation	Description
ALL	All cascade operations will be applied to the parent entity's related entity. All is equivalent to specifying <code>cascade={DETACH, MERGE, PERSIST, REFRESH, REMOVE}</code>
DETACH	If the parent entity is detached from the persistence context, the related entity will also be detached.
MERGE	If the parent entity is merged into the persistence context, the related entity will also be merged.
PERSIST	If the parent entity is persisted into the persistence context, the related entity will also be persisted.
REFRESH	If the parent entity is refreshed in the current persistence context, the related entity will also be refreshed.
REMOVE	If the parent entity is removed from the current persistence context, the related entity will also be removed.

Cascade delete relationships are specified using the `cascade=REMOVE` element specification for `@OneToOne` and `@OneToMany` relationships. For example:

```
@OneToMany(cascade=REMOVE, mappedBy="customer")
public Set<Order> getOrders() { return orders; }
```

35.1.5.5 Orphan Removal in Relationships

When a target entity in one-to-one or one-to-many relationship is removed from the relationship, it is often desirable to cascade the remove operation to the target entity. Such target entities are considered "orphans," and the `orphanRemoval` attribute can be

used to specify that orphaned entities should be removed. For example, if an order has many line items and one of them is removed from the order, the removed line item is considered an orphan. If `orphanRemoval` is set to `true`, the line item entity will be deleted when the line item is removed from the order.

The `orphanRemoval` attribute in `@OneToMany` and `@OneToOne` takes a Boolean value and is by default `false`.

The following example will cascade the remove operation to the orphaned order entity when the customer entity is deleted:

```
@OneToMany(mappedBy="customer", orphanRemoval="true")
public List<Order> getOrders() { ... }
```

35.1.6 Embeddable Classes in Entities

Embeddable classes are used to represent the state of an entity but don't have a persistent identity of their own, unlike entity classes. Instances of an embeddable class share the identity of the entity that owns it. Embeddable classes exist only as the state of another entity. An entity may have single-valued or collection-valued embeddable class attributes.

Embeddable classes have the same rules as entity classes but are annotated with the `javax.persistence.Embeddable` annotation instead of `@Entity`.

The following embeddable class, `ZipCode`, has the fields `zip` and `plusFour`:

```
@Embeddable
public class ZipCode {
    String zip;
    String plusFour;
    ...
}
```

This embeddable class is used by the `Address` entity:

```
@Entity
public class Address {
    @Id
    protected long id
    String street1;
    String street2;
    String city;
    String province;
    @Embedded
    ZipCode zipCode;
    String country;
    ...
}
```

Entities that own embeddable classes as part of their persistent state may annotate the field or property with the `javax.persistence.Embedded` annotation but are not required to do so.

Embeddable classes may themselves use other embeddable classes to represent their state. They may also contain collections of basic Java programming language types or other embeddable classes. Embeddable classes may also contain relationships to other entities or collections of entities. If the embeddable class has such a relationship, the relationship is from the target entity or collection of entities to the entity that owns the embeddable class.

35.2 Entity Inheritance

Entities support class inheritance, polymorphic associations, and polymorphic queries. Entity classes can extend non-entity classes, and non-entity classes can extend entity classes. Entity classes can be both abstract and concrete.

The `roster` example application demonstrates entity inheritance, as described in [Entity Inheritance in the roster Application](#).

35.2.1 Abstract Entities

An abstract class may be declared an entity by decorating the class with `@Entity`. Abstract entities are like concrete entities but cannot be instantiated.

Abstract entities can be queried just like concrete entities. If an abstract entity is the target of a query, the query operates on all the concrete subclasses of the abstract entity:

```
@Entity
public abstract class Employee {
    @Id
    protected Integer employeeId;
    ...
}
@Entity
public class FullTimeEmployee extends Employee {
    protected Integer salary;
    ...
}
@Entity
public class PartTimeEmployee extends Employee {
    protected Float hourlyWage;
}
```

35.2.2 Mapped Superclasses

Entities may inherit from superclasses that contain persistent state and mapping information but are not entities. That is, the superclass is not decorated with the `@Entity` annotation and is not mapped as an entity by the Java Persistence provider. These superclasses are most often used when you have state and mapping information common to multiple entity classes.

Mapped superclasses are specified by decorating the class with the annotation `javax.persistence.MappedSuperclass`:

```
@MappedSuperclass
public class Employee {
    @Id
    protected Integer employeeId;
    ...
}
@Entity
public class FullTimeEmployee extends Employee {
    protected Integer salary;
    ...
}
@Entity
public class PartTimeEmployee extends Employee {
    protected Float hourlyWage;
    ...
}
```

```
}
```

Mapped superclasses cannot be queried and can't be used in `EntityManager` or `Query` operations. You must use entity subclasses of the mapped superclass in `EntityManager` or `Query` operations. Mapped superclasses can't be targets of entity relationships. Mapped superclasses can be abstract or concrete.

Mapped superclasses do not have any corresponding tables in the underlying datastore. Entities that inherit from the mapped superclass define the table mappings. For instance, in the preceding code sample, the underlying tables would be `FULLTIMEEMPLOYEE` and `PARTTIMEEMPLOYEE`, but there is no `EMPLOYEE` table.

35.2.3 Non-Entity Superclasses

Entities may have non-entity superclasses, and these superclasses can be either abstract or concrete. The state of non-entity superclasses is nonpersistent, and any state inherited from the non-entity superclass by an entity class is nonpersistent. Non-entity superclasses may not be used in `EntityManager` or `Query` operations. Any mapping or relationship annotations in non-entity superclasses are ignored.

35.2.4 Entity Inheritance Mapping Strategies

You can configure how the Java Persistence provider maps inherited entities to the underlying datastore by decorating the root class of the hierarchy with the annotation `javax.persistence.Inheritance`. The following mapping strategies are used to map the entity data to the underlying database:

- A single table per class hierarchy
- A table per concrete entity class
- A "join" strategy, whereby fields or properties that are specific to a subclass are mapped to a different table than the fields or properties that are common to the parent class

The strategy is configured by setting the `strategy` element of `@Inheritance` to one of the options defined in the `javax.persistence.InheritanceType` enumerated type:

```
public enum InheritanceType {  
    SINGLE_TABLE,  
    JOINED,  
    TABLE_PER_CLASS  
};
```

The default strategy, `InheritanceType.SINGLE_TABLE`, is used if the `@Inheritance` annotation is not specified on the root class of the entity hierarchy.

35.2.4.1 The Single Table per Class Hierarchy Strategy

With this strategy, which corresponds to the default `InheritanceType.SINGLE_TABLE`, all classes in the hierarchy are mapped to a single table in the database. This table has a **discriminator column** containing a value that identifies the subclass to which the instance represented by the row belongs.

The discriminator column, whose elements are shown in [Table 35–2](#), can be specified by using the `javax.persistence.DiscriminatorColumn` annotation on the root of the entity class hierarchy.

Table 35–2 *@DiscriminatorColumn Elements*

Type	Name	Description
String	name	The name of the column to be used as the discriminator column. The default is <code>DTYPE</code> . This element is optional.
DiscriminatorType	discriminatorType	The type of the column to be used as a discriminator column. The default is <code>DiscriminatorType.STRING</code> . This element is optional.
String	columnDefinition	The SQL fragment to use when creating the discriminator column. The default is generated by the Persistence provider and is implementation-specific. This element is optional.
String	length	The column length for String-based discriminator types. This element is ignored for non-String discriminator types. The default is 31. This element is optional.

The `javax.persistence.DiscriminatorType` enumerated type is used to set the type of the discriminator column in the database by setting the `discriminatorType` element of `@DiscriminatorColumn` to one of the defined types. `DiscriminatorType` is defined as:

```
public enum DiscriminatorType {
    STRING,
    CHAR,
    INTEGER
};
```

If `@DiscriminatorColumn` is not specified on the root of the entity hierarchy and a discriminator column is required, the Persistence provider assumes a default column name of `DTYPE` and column type of `DiscriminatorType.STRING`.

The `javax.persistence.DiscriminatorValue` annotation may be used to set the value entered into the discriminator column for each entity in a class hierarchy. You may decorate only concrete entity classes with `@DiscriminatorValue`.

If `@DiscriminatorValue` is not specified on an entity in a class hierarchy that uses a discriminator column, the Persistence provider will provide a default, implementation-specific value. If the `discriminatorType` element of `@DiscriminatorColumn` is `DiscriminatorType.STRING`, the default value is the name of the entity.

This strategy provides good support for polymorphic relationships between entities and queries that cover the entire entity class hierarchy. However, this strategy requires the columns that contain the state of subclasses to be nullable.

35.2.4.2 The Table per Concrete Class Strategy

In this strategy, which corresponds to `InheritanceType.TABLE_PER_CLASS`, each concrete class is mapped to a separate table in the database. All fields or properties in the class, including inherited fields or properties, are mapped to columns in the class's table in the database.

This strategy provides poor support for polymorphic relationships and usually requires either SQL `UNION` queries or separate SQL queries for each subclass for queries that cover the entire entity class hierarchy.

Support for this strategy is optional and may not be supported by all Java Persistence API providers. The default Java Persistence API provider in the GlassFish Server does not support this strategy.

35.2.4.3 The Joined Subclass Strategy

In this strategy, which corresponds to `InheritanceType.JOINED`, the root of the class hierarchy is represented by a single table, and each subclass has a separate table that contains only those fields specific to that subclass. That is, the subclass table does not contain columns for inherited fields or properties. The subclass table also has a column or columns that represent its primary key, which is a foreign key to the primary key of the superclass table.

This strategy provides good support for polymorphic relationships but requires one or more join operations to be performed when instantiating entity subclasses. This may result in poor performance for extensive class hierarchies. Similarly, queries that cover the entire class hierarchy require join operations between the subclass tables, resulting in decreased performance.

Some Java Persistence API providers, including the default provider in the GlassFish Server, require a discriminator column that corresponds to the root entity when using the joined subclass strategy. If you are not using automatic table creation in your application, make sure that the database table is set up correctly for the discriminator column defaults, or use the `@DiscriminatorColumn` annotation to match your database schema. For information on discriminator columns, see [The Single Table per Class Hierarchy Strategy](#).

35.3 Managing Entities

Entities are managed by the entity manager, which is represented by `javax.persistence.EntityManager` instances. Each `EntityManager` instance is associated with a persistence context: a set of managed entity instances that exist in a particular data store. A persistence context defines the scope under which particular entity instances are created, persisted, and removed. The `EntityManager` interface defines the methods that are used to interact with the persistence context.

35.3.1 The EntityManager Interface

The `EntityManager` API creates and removes persistent entity instances, finds entities by the entity's primary key, and allows queries to be run on entities.

35.3.1.1 Container-Managed Entity Managers

With a **container-managed entity manager**, an `EntityManager` instance's persistence context is automatically propagated by the container to all application components that use the `EntityManager` instance within a single Java Transaction API (JTA) transaction.

JTA transactions usually involve calls across application components. To complete a JTA transaction, these components usually need access to a single persistence context. This occurs when an `EntityManager` is injected into the application components by means of the `javax.persistence.PersistenceContext` annotation. The persistence context is automatically propagated with the current JTA transaction, and `EntityManager` references that are mapped to the same persistence unit provide access to the persistence context within that transaction. By automatically propagating the persistence context, application components don't need to pass references to `EntityManager` instances to each other in order to make changes within a single

transaction. The Java EE container manages the lifecycle of container-managed entity managers.

To obtain an `EntityManager` instance, inject the entity manager into the application component:

```
@PersistenceContext
EntityManager em;
```

35.3.1.2 Application-Managed Entity Managers

With an **application-managed entity manager**, on the other hand, the persistence context is not propagated to application components, and the lifecycle of `EntityManager` instances is managed by the application.

Application-managed entity managers are used when applications need to access a persistence context that is not propagated with the JTA transaction across `EntityManager` instances in a particular persistence unit. In this case, each `EntityManager` creates a new, isolated persistence context. The `EntityManager` and its associated persistence context are created and destroyed explicitly by the application. They are also used when directly injecting `EntityManager` instances can't be done because `EntityManager` instances are not thread-safe. `EntityManagerFactory` instances are thread-safe.

Applications create `EntityManager` instances in this case by using the `createEntityManager` method of `javax.persistence.EntityManagerFactory`.

To obtain an `EntityManager` instance, you first must obtain an `EntityManagerFactory` instance by injecting it into the application component by means of the `javax.persistence.PersistenceUnit` annotation:

```
@PersistenceUnit
EntityManagerFactory emf;
```

Then obtain an `EntityManager` from the `EntityManagerFactory` instance:

```
EntityManager em = emf.createEntityManager();
```

Application-managed entity managers don't automatically propagate the JTA transaction context. Such applications need to manually gain access to the JTA transaction manager and add transaction demarcation information when performing entity operations. The `javax.transaction.UserTransaction` interface defines methods to begin, commit, and roll back transactions. Inject an instance of `UserTransaction` by creating an instance variable annotated with `@Resource`:

```
@Resource
UserTransaction utx;
```

To begin a transaction, call the `UserTransaction.begin` method. When all the entity operations are complete, call the `UserTransaction.commit` method to commit the transaction. The `UserTransaction.rollback` method is used to roll back the current transaction.

The following example shows how to manage transactions in an application that uses an application-managed entity manager:

```
@PersistenceUnit
EntityManagerFactory emf;
EntityManager em;
@Resource
UserTransaction utx;
```

```
...
em = emf.createEntityManager();
try {
    utx.begin();
    em.persist(SomeEntity);
    em.merge(AnotherEntity);
    em.remove(ThirdEntity);
    utx.commit();
} catch (Exception e) {
    utx.rollback();
}
```

35.3.1.3 Finding Entities Using the EntityManager

The `EntityManager.find` method is used to look up entities in the data store by the entity's primary key:

```
@PersistenceContext
EntityManager em;
public void enterOrder(int custID, Order newOrder) {
    Customer cust = em.find(Customer.class, custID);
    cust.getOrders().add(newOrder);
    newOrder.setCustomer(cust);
}
```

35.3.1.4 Managing an Entity Instance's Lifecycle

You manage entity instances by invoking operations on the entity by means of an `EntityManager` instance. Entity instances are in one of four states: new, managed, detached, or removed.

- New entity instances have no persistent identity and are not yet associated with a persistence context.
- Managed entity instances have a persistent identity and are associated with a persistence context.
- Detached entity instances have a persistent identity and are not currently associated with a persistence context.
- Removed entity instances have a persistent identity, are associated with a persistent context, and are scheduled for removal from the data store.

35.3.1.5 Persisting Entity Instances

New entity instances become managed and persistent either by invoking the `persist` method or by a cascading `persist` operation invoked from related entities that have the `cascade=PERSIST` or `cascade=ALL` elements set in the relationship annotation. This means that the entity's data is stored to the database when the transaction associated with the `persist` operation is completed. If the entity is already managed, the `persist` operation is ignored, although the `persist` operation will cascade to related entities that have the `cascade` element set to `PERSIST` or `ALL` in the relationship annotation. If `persist` is called on a removed entity instance, the entity becomes managed. If the entity is detached, either `persist` will throw an `IllegalArgumentException`, or the transaction commit will fail.

```
@PersistenceContext
EntityManager em;
...
public LineItem createLineItem(Order order, Product product,
```

```

        int quantity) {
    LineItem li = new LineItem(order, product, quantity);
    order.getLineItems().add(li);
    em.persist(li);
    return li;
}

```

The `persist` operation is propagated to all entities related to the calling entity that have the `cascade` element set to `ALL` or `PERSIST` in the relationship annotation:

```

@OneToMany(cascade=ALL, mappedBy="order")
public Collection<LineItem> getLineItems() {
    return lineItems;
}

```

35.3.1.6 Removing Entity Instances

Managed entity instances are removed by invoking the `remove` method or by a cascading `remove` operation invoked from related entities that have the `cascade=REMOVE` or `cascade=ALL` elements set in the relationship annotation. If the `remove` method is invoked on a new entity, the `remove` operation is ignored, although `remove` will cascade to related entities that have the `cascade` element set to `REMOVE` or `ALL` in the relationship annotation. If `remove` is invoked on a detached entity, either `remove` will throw an `IllegalArgumentException`, or the transaction commit will fail. If invoked on an already removed entity, `remove` will be ignored. The entity's data will be removed from the data store when the transaction is completed or as a result of the flush operation.

```

public void removeOrder(Integer orderId) {
    try {
        Order order = em.find(Order.class, orderId);
        em.remove(order);
    }...
}

```

In this example, all `LineItem` entities associated with the order are also removed, as `Order.getLineItems` has `cascade=ALL` set in the relationship annotation.

35.3.1.7 Synchronizing Entity Data to the Database

The state of persistent entities is synchronized to the database when the transaction with which the entity is associated commits. If a managed entity is in a bidirectional relationship with another managed entity, the data will be persisted, based on the owning side of the relationship.

To force synchronization of the managed entity to the data store, invoke the `flush` method of the `EntityManager` instance. If the entity is related to another entity and the relationship annotation has the `cascade` element set to `PERSIST` or `ALL`, the related entity's data will be synchronized with the data store when `flush` is called.

If the entity is removed, calling `flush` will remove the entity data from the data store.

35.3.2 Persistence Units

A persistence unit defines a set of all entity classes that are managed by `EntityManager` instances in an application. This set of entity classes represents the data contained within a single data store.

Persistence units are defined by the `persistence.xml` configuration file. The following is an example `persistence.xml` file:

```
<persistence>
  <persistence-unit name="OrderManagement">
    <description>This unit manages orders and customers.
      It does not rely on any vendor-specific features and can
      therefore be deployed to any persistence provider.
    </description>
    <jta-data-source>jdbc/MyOrderDB</jta-data-source>
    <jar-file>MyOrderApp.jar</jar-file>
    <class>com.widgets.Order</class>
    <class>com.widgets.Customer</class>
  </persistence-unit>
</persistence>
```

This file defines a persistence unit named `OrderManagement`, which uses a JTA-aware data source: `jdbc/MyOrderDB`. The `jar-file` and `class` elements specify managed persistence classes: entity classes, embeddable classes, and mapped superclasses. The `jar-file` element specifies JAR files that are visible to the packaged persistence unit that contain managed persistence classes, whereas the `class` element explicitly names managed persistence classes.

The `jta-data-source` (for JTA-aware data sources) and `non-jta-data-source` (for non-JTA-aware data sources) elements specify the global JNDI name of the data source to be used by the container.

The JAR file or directory whose `META-INF` directory contains `persistence.xml` is called the root of the persistence unit. The scope of the persistence unit is determined by the persistence unit's root. Each persistence unit must be identified with a name that is unique to the persistence unit's scope.

Persistent units can be packaged as part of a WAR or EJB JAR file or can be packaged as a JAR file that can then be included in an WAR or EAR file.

- If you package the persistent unit as a set of classes in an EJB JAR file, `persistence.xml` should be put in the EJB JAR's `META-INF` directory.
- If you package the persistence unit as a set of classes in a WAR file, `persistence.xml` should be located in the WAR file's `WEB-INF/classes/META-INF` directory.
- If you package the persistence unit in a JAR file that will be included in a WAR or EAR file, the JAR file should be located in either
 - The `WEB-INF/lib` directory of a WAR
 - The EAR file's library directory

Note: In the Java Persistence API 1.0, JAR files could be located at the root of an EAR file as the root of the persistence unit. This is no longer supported. Portable applications should use the EAR file's library directory as the root of the persistence unit.

35.4 Querying Entities

The Java Persistence API provides the following methods for querying entities.

- The Java Persistence query language (JPQL) is a simple, string-based language similar to SQL used to query entities and their relationships. See [Chapter 37, "The Java Persistence Query Language"](#) for more information.

- The Criteria API is used to create typesafe queries using Java programming language APIs to query for entities and their relationships. See [Chapter 38, "Using the Criteria API to Create Queries"](#) for more information.

Both JPQL and the Criteria API have advantages and disadvantages.

Just a few lines long, JPQL queries are typically more concise and more readable than Criteria queries. Developers familiar with SQL will find it easy to learn the syntax of JPQL. JPQL named queries can be defined in the entity class using a Java programming language annotation or in the application's deployment descriptor. JPQL queries are not typesafe, however, and require a cast when retrieving the query result from the entity manager. This means that type-casting errors may not be caught at compile time. JPQL queries don't support open-ended parameters.

Criteria queries allow you to define the query in the business tier of the application. Although this is also possible using JPQL dynamic queries, Criteria queries provide better performance because JPQL dynamic queries must be parsed each time they are called. Criteria queries are typesafe and therefore don't require casting, as JPQL queries do. The Criteria API is just another Java programming language API and doesn't require developers to learn the syntax of another query language. Criteria queries are typically more verbose than JPQL queries and require the developer to create several objects and perform operations on those objects before submitting the query to the entity manager.

35.5 Further Information about Persistence

For more information about the Java Persistence API, see

- Java Persistence 2.1 API specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=338>
- EclipseLink, the Java Persistence API implementation in the GlassFish Server:
<http://www.eclipse.org/eclipselink/jpa.php>
- EclipseLink team blog:
<http://eclipselink.blogspot.com/>
- EclipseLink wiki documentation:
<http://wiki.eclipse.org/EclipseLink>

Running the Persistence Examples

This chapter explains how to use the Java Persistence API. The material here focuses on the source code and settings of three examples. The first example, *order*, is an application that uses a stateful session bean to manage entities related to an ordering system. The second example, *roster*, is an application that manages a community sports system. The third example, *address-book*, is a web application that stores contact data. This chapter assumes that you are familiar with the concepts detailed in [Chapter 35, "Introduction to the Java Persistence API"](#).

The following topics are addressed here:

- [The order Application](#)
- [The roster Application](#)
- [The address-book Application](#)

36.1 The order Application

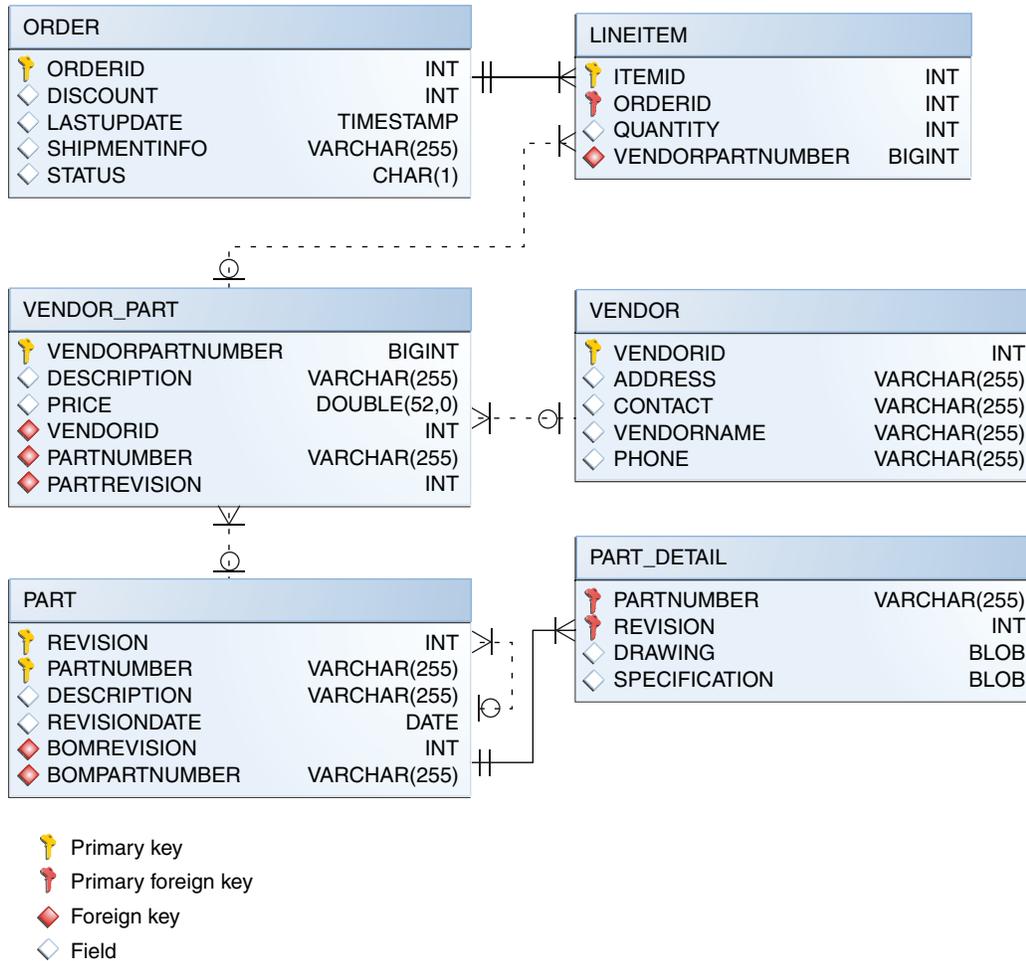
The *order* application is a simple inventory and ordering application for maintaining a catalog of parts and placing an itemized order of those parts. The application has entities that represent parts, vendors, orders, and line items. These entities are accessed using a stateful session bean that holds the business logic of the application. A simple singleton session bean creates the initial entities on application deployment. A Facelets web application manipulates the data and displays data from the catalog.

The information contained in an order can be divided into elements. What is the order number? What parts are included in the order? What parts make up that part? Who makes the part? What are the specifications for the part? Are there any schematics for the part? The *order* application is a simplified version of an ordering system that has all these elements.

The *order* application consists of a single WAR module that includes the enterprise bean classes, the entities, the support classes, and the Facelets XHTML and class files.

The database schema in the Java DB database for *order* is shown in [Figure 36-1](#).

Figure 36-1 Database Schema for the order Application



Note: In this diagram, for simplicity, the PERSISTENCE_ORDER_ prefix is omitted from the table names.

36.1.1 Entity Relationships in the order Application

The order application demonstrates several types of entity relationships: self-referential, one-to-one, one-to-many, many-to-one, and unidirectional relationships.

36.1.1.1 Self-Referential Relationships

A **self-referential** relationship occurs between relationship fields in the same entity. Part has a field, bomPart, which has a one-to-many relationship with the field parts, which is also in Part. That is, a part can be made up of many parts, and each of those parts has exactly one bill-of-material part.

The primary key for Part is a compound primary key, a combination of the partNumber and revision fields. This key is mapped to the PARTNUMBER and REVISION columns in the EJB_ORDER_PART table:

```
...
@ManyToOne
```

```

@JoinColumns({
    @JoinColumn(name="BOMPARTNUMBER",
        referencedColumnName="PARTNUMBER"),
    @JoinColumn(name="BOMREVISION",
        referencedColumnName="REVISION")
})
public Part getBomPart() {
    return bomPart;
}
...
@OneToMany(mappedBy="bomPart")
public Collection<Part> getParts() {
    return parts;
}
...

```

36.1.1.2 One-to-One Relationships

Part has a field, `vendorPart`, that has a one-to-one relationship with `VendorPart`'s `part` field. That is, each part has exactly one vendor part, and vice versa.

Here is the relationship mapping in `Part`:

```

@OneToOne(mappedBy="part")
public VendorPart getVendorPart() {
    return vendorPart;
}

```

Here is the relationship mapping in `VendorPart`:

```

@OneToOne
@JoinColumns({
    @JoinColumn(name="PARTNUMBER",
        referencedColumnName="PARTNUMBER"),
    @JoinColumn(name="PARTREVISION",
        referencedColumnName="REVISION")
})
public Part getPart() {
    return part;
}

```

Note that, because `Part` uses a compound primary key, the `@JoinColumns` annotation is used to map the columns in the `PERSISTENCE_ORDER_VENDOR_PART` table to the columns in `PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART`. The `PERSISTENCE_ORDER_VENDOR_PART` table's `PARTREVISION` column refers to `PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART`'s `REVISION` column.

36.1.1.3 One-to-Many Relationship Mapped to Overlapping Primary and Foreign Keys

`Order` has a field, `lineItems`, that has a one-to-many relationship with `LineItem`'s field `order`. That is, each order has one or more line item.

`LineItem` uses a compound primary key that is made up of the `orderId` and `itemId` fields. This compound primary key maps to the `ORDERID` and `ITEMID` columns in the `PERSISTENCE_ORDER_LINEITEM` table. `ORDERID` is a foreign key to the `ORDERID` column in the `PERSISTENCE_ORDER_ORDER` table. This means that the `ORDERID` column is mapped twice: once as a primary key field, `orderId`; and again as a relationship field, `order`.

Here is the relationship mapping in `Order`:

```

@OneToMany(cascade=ALL, mappedBy="order")

```

```
    public Collection<LineItem> getLineItems() {  
        return lineItems;  
    }  
}
```

Here is the relationship mapping in `LineItem`:

```
@ManyToOne  
    public Order getOrder() {  
        return order;  
    }  
}
```

36.1.1.4 Unidirectional Relationships

`LineItem` has a field, `vendorPart`, that has a unidirectional many-to-one relationship with `VendorPart`. That is, there is no field in the target entity in this relationship:

```
@ManyToOne  
    public VendorPart getVendorPart() {  
        return vendorPart;  
    }  
}
```

36.1.2 Primary Keys in the order Application

The order application uses several types of primary keys: single-valued primary keys, compound primary keys, and generated primary keys.

36.1.2.1 Generated Primary Keys

`VendorPart` uses a generated primary key value. That is, the application does not assign primary key values for the entities but instead relies on the persistence provider to generate the primary key values. The `@GeneratedValue` annotation is used to specify that an entity will use a generated primary key.

In `VendorPart`, the following code specifies the settings for generating primary key values:

```
@TableGenerator(  
    name="vendorPartGen",  
    table="PERSISTENCE_ORDER_SEQUENCE_GENERATOR",  
    pkColumnName="GEN_KEY",  
    valueColumnName="GEN_VALUE",  
    pkColumnValue="VENDOR_PART_ID",  
    allocationSize=10)  
@Id  
@GeneratedValue(strategy=GenerationType.TABLE,  
    generator="vendorPartGen")  
public Long getVendorPartNumber() {  
    return vendorPartNumber;  
}
```

The `@TableGenerator` annotation is used in conjunction with `@GeneratedValue`'s `strategy=TABLE` element. That is, the strategy used to generate the primary keys is to use a table in the database. The `@TableGenerator` annotation is used to configure the settings for the generator table. The `name` element sets the name of the generator, which is `vendorPartGen` in `VendorPart`.

The `EJB_ORDER_SEQUENCE_GENERATOR` table, whose two columns are `GEN_KEY` and `GEN_VALUE`, will store the generated primary key values. This table could be used to generate other entity's primary keys, so the `pkColumnValue` element is set to `VENDOR_`

PART_ID to distinguish this entity's generated primary keys from other entity's generated primary keys. The `allocationSize` element specifies the amount to increment when allocating primary key values. In this case, each `VendorPart`'s primary key will increment by 10.

The primary key field `vendorPartNumber` is of type `Long`, as the generated primary key's field must be an integral type.

36.1.2.2 Compound Primary Keys

A compound primary key is made up of multiple fields and follows the requirements described in [Primary Keys in Entities](#). To use a compound primary key, you must create a wrapper class.

In order, two entities use compound primary keys: `Part` and `LineItem`.

- `Part` uses the `PartKey` wrapper class. `Part`'s primary key is a combination of the part number and the revision number. `PartKey` encapsulates this primary key.
- `LineItem` uses the `LineItemKey` class. `LineItem`'s primary key is a combination of the order number and the item number. `LineItemKey` encapsulates this primary key.

This is the `LineItemKey` compound primary key wrapper class:

```
package order.entity;

public final class LineItemKey implements
    java.io.Serializable {

    private Integer orderId;
    private int itemId;

    public int hashCode() {
        return ((this.getOrderId()==null
            ?0:this.getOrderId().hashCode())
            ^ ((int) this.getItemId()));
    }

    public boolean equals(Object otherOb) {
        if (this == otherOb) {
            return true;
        }
        if (!(otherOb instanceof LineItemKey)) {
            return false;
        }
        LineItemKey other = (LineItemKey) otherOb;
        return ((this.getOrderId()==null
            ?other.orderId==null:this.getOrderId().equals
            (other.orderId)) && (this.getItemId ==
            other.itemId));
    }

    public String toString() {
        return "" + orderId + "-" + itemId;
    }
}
```

The `@IdClass` annotation is used to specify the primary key class in the entity class. In `LineItem`, `@IdClass` is used as follows:

```
@IdClass(order.entity.LineItemKey.class)
```

```
@Entity
...
public class LineItem {
...
}
```

The two fields in `LineItem` are tagged with the `@Id` annotation to mark those fields as part of the compound primary key:

```
@Id
public int getItemId() {
    return itemId;
}
...
@Id
@Column(name="ORDERID", nullable=false,
        insertable=false, updatable=false)
public Integer getOrderId() {
    return orderId;
}
```

For `orderId`, you also use the `@Column` annotation to specify the column name in the table and that this column should not be inserted or updated, as it is an overlapping foreign key pointing at the `PERSISTENCE_ORDER_ORDER` table's `ORDERID` column (see [One-to-Many Relationship Mapped to Overlapping Primary and Foreign Keys](#)). That is, `orderId` will be set by the `Order` entity.

In `LineItem`'s constructor, the line item number (`LineItem.itemId`) is set using the `Order.getNextId` method:

```
public LineItem(Order order, int quantity, VendorPart
    vendorPart) {
    this.order = order;
    this.itemId = order.getNextId();
    this.orderId = order.getOrderId();
    this.quantity = quantity;
    this.vendorPart = vendorPart;
}
```

`Order.getNextId` counts the number of current line items, adds 1, and returns that number:

```
public int getNextId() {
    return this.lineItems.size() + 1;
}
```

`Part` doesn't require the `@Column` annotation on the two fields that comprise `Part`'s compound primary key, because `Part`'s compound primary key is not an overlapping primary key/foreign key:

```
@IdClass(order.entity.PartKey.class)
@Entity
...
public class Part {
...
    @Id
    public String getPartNumber() {
        return partNumber;
    }
...
    @Id
```

```

    public int getRevision() {
        return revision;
    }
    ...
}

```

36.1.3 Entity Mapped to More Than One Database Table

Part's fields map to more than one database table: PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART and PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART_DETAIL. The PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART_DETAIL table holds the specification and schematics for the part. The @SecondaryTable annotation is used to specify the secondary table.

```

...
@Entity
@Table(name="PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART")
@SecondaryTable(name="PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART_DETAIL", pkJoinColumns={
    @PrimaryKeyJoinColumn(name="PARTNUMBER",
        referencedColumnName="PARTNUMBER"),
    @PrimaryKeyJoinColumn(name="REVISION",
        referencedColumnName="REVISION")
})
public class Part {
    ...
}

```

PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART_DETAIL and PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART share the same primary key values. The pkJoinColumns element of @SecondaryTable is used to specify that PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART_DETAIL's primary key columns are foreign keys to PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART. The @PrimaryKeyJoinColumn annotation sets the primary key column names and specifies which column in the primary table the column refers to. In this case, the primary key column names for both PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART_DETAIL and PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART are the same: PARTNUMBER and REVISION, respectively.

36.1.4 Cascade Operations in the order Application

Entities that have relationships to other entities often have dependencies on the existence of the other entity in the relationship. For example, a line item is part of an order; if the order is deleted, then the line item also should be deleted. This is called a cascade delete relationship.

In order, there are two cascade delete dependencies in the entity relationships. If the Order to which a LineItem is related is deleted, the LineItem also should be deleted. If the Vendor to which a VendorPart is related is deleted, the VendorPart also should be deleted.

You specify the cascade operations for entity relationships by setting the cascade element in the inverse (nonowning) side of the relationship. The cascade element is set to ALL in the case of Order.lineItems. This means that all persistence operations (deletes, updates, and so on) are cascaded from orders to line items.

Here is the relationship mapping in Order:

```

@OneToMany(cascade=ALL, mappedBy="order")
public Collection<LineItem> getLineItems() {
    return lineItems;
}

```

Here is the relationship mapping in `LineItem`:

```
@ManyToOne
public Order getOrder() {
    return order;
}
```

36.1.5 BLOB and CLOB Database Types in the order Application

The `PARTDETAIL` table in the database has a column, `DRAWING`, of type `BLOB`. `BLOB` stands for binary large objects, which are used for storing binary data, such as an image. The `DRAWING` column is mapped to the field `Part.drawing` of type `java.io.Serializable`. The `@Lob` annotation is used to denote that the field is large object.

```
@Column(table="PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART_DETAIL")
@Lob
public Serializable getDrawing() {
    return drawing;
}
```

`PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART_DETAIL` also has a column, `SPECIFICATION`, of type `CLOB`. `CLOB` stands for character large objects, which are used to store string data too large to be stored in a `VARCHAR` column. `SPECIFICATION` is mapped to the field `Part.specification` of type `java.lang.String`. The `@Lob` annotation is also used here to denote that the field is a large object.

```
@Column(table="PERSISTENCE_ORDER_PART_DETAIL")
@Lob
public String getSpecification() {
    return specification;
}
```

Both of these fields use the `@Column` annotation and set the `table` element to the secondary table.

36.1.6 Temporal Types in the order Application

The `Order.lastUpdate` persistent property, which is of type `java.util.Date`, is mapped to the `PERSISTENCE_ORDER_ORDER.LASTUPDATE` database field, which is of the SQL type `TIMESTAMP`. To ensure the proper mapping between these types, you must use the `@Temporal` annotation with the proper temporal type specified in `@Temporal`'s element. `@Temporal`'s elements are of type `javax.persistence.TemporalType`. The possible values are

- `DATE`, which maps to `java.sql.Date`
- `TIME`, which maps to `java.sql.Time`
- `TIMESTAMP`, which maps to `java.sql.Timestamp`

Here is the relevant section of `Order`:

```
@Temporal(TIMESTAMP)
public Date getLastUpdate() {
    return lastUpdate;
}
```

36.1.7 Managing the order Application's Entities

The `RequestBean` stateful session bean contains the business logic and manages the entities of order. `RequestBean` uses the `@PersistenceContext` annotation to retrieve an entity manager instance, which is used to manage order's entities in `RequestBean`'s business methods:

```
@PersistenceContext
private EntityManager em;
```

This `EntityManager` instance is a container-managed entity manager, so the container takes care of all the transactions involved in the managing order's entities.

36.1.7.1 Creating Entities

The `RequestBean.createPart` business method creates a new `Part` entity. The `EntityManager.persist` method is used to persist the newly created entity to the database.

```
Part part = new Part(partNumber,
    revision,
    description,
    revisionDate,
    specification,
    drawing);
em.persist(part);
```

The `ConfigBean` singleton session bean is used to initialize the data in order. `ConfigBean` is annotated with `@Startup`, which indicates that the EJB container should create `ConfigBean` when order is deployed. The `createData` method is annotated with `@PostConstruct` and creates the initial entities used by order by calling `RequestBean`'s business methods.

36.1.7.2 Finding Entities

The `RequestBean.getOrderPrice` business method returns the price of a given order, based on the `orderId`. The `EntityManager.find` method is used to retrieve the entity from the database.

```
Order order = em.find(Order.class, orderId);
```

The first argument of `EntityManager.find` is the entity class, and the second is the primary key.

36.1.7.3 Setting Entity Relationships

The `RequestBean.createVendorPart` business method creates a `VendorPart` associated with a particular `Vendor`. The `EntityManager.persist` method is used to persist the newly created `VendorPart` entity to the database, and the `VendorPart.setVendor` and `Vendor.setVendorPart` methods are used to associate the `VendorPart` with the `Vendor`.

```
PartKey pkey = new PartKey();
pkey.partNumber = partNumber;
pkey.revision = revision;

Part part = em.find(Part.class, pkey);
VendorPart vendorPart = new VendorPart(description, price,
    part);
em.persist(vendorPart);

Vendor vendor = em.find(Vendor.class, vendorId);
```

```
vendor.addVendorPart (vendorPart);  
vendorPart.setVendor (vendor);
```

36.1.7.4 Using Queries

The `RequestBean.adjustOrderDiscount` business method updates the discount applied to all orders. This method uses the `findAllOrders` named query, defined in `Order`:

```
@NamedQuery(  
    name="findAllOrders",  
    query="SELECT o FROM Order o"  
)
```

The `EntityManager.createNamedQuery` method is used to run the query. Because the query returns a `List` of all the orders, the `Query.getResultList` method is used.

```
List orders = em.createNamedQuery(  
    "findAllOrders")  
    .getResultList();
```

The `RequestBean.getTotalPricePerVendor` business method returns the total price of all the parts for a particular vendor. This method uses a named parameter, `id`, defined in the named query `findTotalVendorPartPricePerVendor` defined in `VendorPart`.

```
@NamedQuery(  
    name="findTotalVendorPartPricePerVendor",  
    query="SELECT SUM(vp.price) " +  
    "FROM VendorPart vp " +  
    "WHERE vp.vendor.vendorId = :id"  
)
```

When running the query, the `Query.setParameter` method is used to set the named parameter `id` to the value of `vendorId`, the parameter to `RequestBean.getTotalPricePerVendor`:

```
return (Double) em.createNamedQuery(  
    "findTotalVendorPartPricePerVendor")  
    .setParameter("id", vendorId)  
    .getSingleResult();
```

The `Query.getSingleResult` method is used for this query because the query returns a single value.

36.1.7.5 Removing Entities

The `RequestBean.removeOrder` business method deletes a given order from the database. This method uses the `EntityManager.remove` method to delete the entity from the database.

```
Order order = em.find(Order.class, orderId);  
em.remove(order);
```

36.1.8 Running the order Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the order application. First, you will create the database tables in the Java DB server.

36.1.8.1 To Run the order Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/persistence/`
3. Select the order folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the order project and select **Run**.
NetBeans IDE opens a web browser to `http://localhost:8080/order/`.

36.1.8.2 To Run the order Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/persistence/order/`

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This compiles the source files and packages the application into a WAR file located at `tut-install/examples/persistence/order/target/order.war`. Then the WAR file is deployed to your GlassFish Server instance.

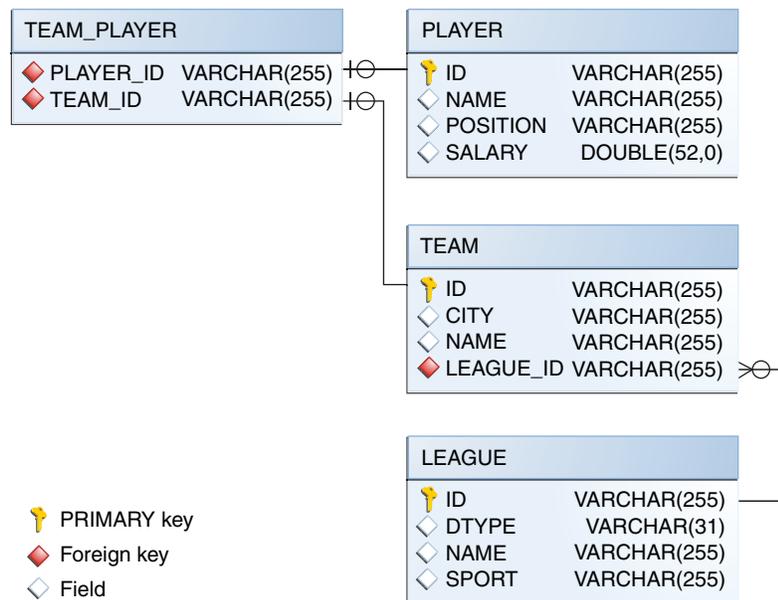
3. Open a web browser to `http://localhost:8080/order/` to create and update the order data.

36.2 The roster Application

The roster application maintains the team rosters for players in recreational sports leagues. The application has four components: Java Persistence API entities (`Player`, `Team`, and `League`), a stateful session bean (`RequestBean`), an application client (`RosterClient`), and three helper classes (`PlayerDetails`, `TeamDetails`, and `LeagueDetails`).

Functionally, `roster` is similar to the `order` application, with three new features that `order` does not have: many-to-many relationships, entity inheritance, and automatic table creation at deployment time.

The database schema in the Java DB database for the roster application is shown in [Figure 36-2](#).

Figure 36–2 Database Schema for the roster Application

Note: In this diagram, for simplicity, the PERSISTENCE_ROSTER_ prefix is omitted from the table names.

36.2.1 Relationships in the roster Application

A recreational sports system has the following relationships:

- A player can be on many teams.
- A team can have many players.
- A team is in exactly one league.
- A league has many teams.

In roster this system is reflected by the following relationships between the Player, Team, and League entities.

- There is a many-to-many relationship between Player and Team.
- There is a many-to-one relationship between Team and League.

36.2.1.1 The Many-To-Many Relationship in roster

The many-to-many relationship between Player and Team is specified by using the @ManyToMany annotation. In Team.java, the @ManyToMany annotation decorates the getPlayers method:

```
@ManyToMany
@JoinTable(
    name="EJB_ROSTER_TEAM_PLAYER",
    joinColumns=
        @JoinColumn(name="TEAM_ID", referencedColumnName="ID"),
    inverseJoinColumns=
        @JoinColumn(name="PLAYER_ID", referencedColumnName="ID")
)
```

```
public Collection<Player> getPlayers() {
    return players;
}
```

The `@JoinTable` annotation is used to specify a database table that will associate player IDs with team IDs. The entity that specifies the `@JoinTable` is the owner of the relationship, so the `Team` entity is the owner of the relationship with the `Player` entity. Because `roster` uses automatic table creation at deployment time, the container will create a join table named `EJB_ROSTER_TEAM_PLAYER`.

`Player` is the inverse, or nonowning, side of the relationship with `Team`. As one-to-one and many-to-one relationships, the nonowning side is marked by the `mappedBy` element in the relationship annotation. Because the relationship between `Player` and `Team` is bidirectional, the choice of which entity is the owner of the relationship is arbitrary.

In `Player.java`, the `@ManyToMany` annotation decorates the `getTeams` method:

```
@ManyToMany(mappedBy="players")
public Collection<Team> getTeams() {
    return teams;
}
```

36.2.2 Entity Inheritance in the roster Application

The `roster` application shows how to use entity inheritance, as described in [Entity Inheritance](#).

The `League` entity in `roster` is an abstract entity with two concrete subclasses: `SummerLeague` and `WinterLeague`. Because `League` is an abstract class, it cannot be instantiated:

```
...
@Entity
@Table(name = "EJB_ROSTER_LEAGUE")
public abstract class League implements java.io.Serializable {
    ...
}
```

Instead, when creating a league, clients use `SummerLeague` or `WinterLeague`. `SummerLeague` and `WinterLeague` inherit the persistent properties defined in `League` and add only a constructor that verifies that the sport parameter matches the type of sport allowed in that seasonal league. For example, here is the `SummerLeague` entity:

```
...
@Entity
public class SummerLeague extends League
    implements java.io.Serializable {

    /** Creates a new instance of SummerLeague */
    public SummerLeague() {
    }

    public SummerLeague(String id, String name,
        String sport) throws IncorrectSportException {
        this.id = id;
        this.name = name;
        if (sport.equalsIgnoreCase("swimming") ||
            sport.equalsIgnoreCase("soccer") ||
            sport.equalsIgnoreCase("basketball") ||
```

```
        sport.equalsIgnoreCase("baseball")) {
            this.sport = sport;
        } else {
            throw new IncorrectSportException(
                "Sport is not a summer sport.");
        }
    }
}
```

The roster application uses the default mapping strategy of `InheritanceType.SINGLE_TABLE`, so the `@Inheritance` annotation is not required. If you want to use a different mapping strategy, decorate `League` with `@Inheritance` and specify the mapping strategy in the strategy element:

```
@Entity
@Inheritance(strategy=JOINED)
@Table(name="EJB_ROSTER_LEAGUE")
public abstract class League implements java.io.Serializable {
    ...
}
```

The roster application uses the default discriminator column name, so the `@DiscriminatorColumn` annotation is not required. Because you are using automatic table generation in roster, the Persistence provider will create a discriminator column called `DTYPE` in the `EJB_ROSTER_LEAGUE` table, which will store the name of the inherited entity used to create the league. If you want to use a different name for the discriminator column, decorate `League` with `@DiscriminatorColumn` and set the name element:

```
@Entity
@DiscriminatorColumn(name="DISCRIMINATOR")
@Table(name="EJB_ROSTER_LEAGUE")
public abstract class League implements java.io.Serializable {
    ...
}
```

36.2.3 Criteria Queries in the roster Application

The roster application uses Criteria API queries, as opposed to the JPQL queries used in order. Criteria queries are Java programming language, typesafe queries defined in the business tier of roster, in the `RequestBean` stateful session bean.

36.2.3.1 Metamodel Classes in the roster Application

Metamodel classes model an entity's attributes and are used by Criteria queries to navigate to an entity's attributes. Each entity class in roster has a corresponding metamodel class, generated at compile time, with the same package name as the entity and appended with an underscore character (`_`). For example, the `roster.entity.Player` entity has a corresponding metamodel class, `roster.entity.Player_`.

Each persistent field or property in the entity class has a corresponding attribute in the entity's metamodel class. For the `Player` entity, the corresponding metamodel class is:

```
@StaticMetamodel(Player.class)
public class Player_ {
    public static volatile SingularAttribute<Player, String> id;
    public static volatile SingularAttribute<Player, String> name;
    public static volatile SingularAttribute<Player, String> position;
}
```

```

    public static volatile SingularAttribute<Player, Double> salary;
    public static volatile CollectionAttribute<Player, Team> teams;
}

```

36.2.3.2 Obtaining a CriteriaBuilder Instance in RequestBean

The `CriteriaBuilder` interface defines methods to create criteria query objects and create expressions for modifying those query objects. `RequestBean` creates an instance of `CriteriaBuilder` by using a `@PostConstruct` method, `init`:

```

@PersistenceContext
private EntityManager em;
private CriteriaBuilder cb;

@PostConstruct
private void init() {
    cb = em.getCriteriaBuilder();
}

```

The `EntityManager` instance is injected at runtime, and then that `EntityManager` object is used to create the `CriteriaBuilder` instance by calling `getCriteriaBuilder`. The `CriteriaBuilder` instance is created in a `@PostConstruct` method to ensure that the `EntityManager` instance has been injected by the enterprise bean container.

36.2.3.3 Creating Criteria Queries in RequestBean's Business Methods

Many of the business methods in `RequestBean` define Criteria queries. One business method, `getPlayersByPosition`, returns a list of players who play a particular position on a team:

```

public List<PlayerDetails> getPlayersByPosition(String position) {
    logger.info("getPlayersByPosition");
    List<Player> players = null;

    try {
        CriteriaQuery<Player> cq = cb.createQuery(Player.class);
        if (cq != null) {
            Root<Player> player = cq.from(Player.class);

            // set the where clause
            cq.where(cb.equal(player.get(Player_.position), position));
            cq.select(player);
            TypedQuery<Player> q = em.createQuery(cq);
            players = q.getResultList();
        }

        return copyPlayersToDetails(players);
    } catch (Exception ex) {
        throw new EJBException(ex);
    }
}

```

A query object is created by calling the `CriteriaBuilder` object's `createQuery` method, with the type set to `Player` because the query will return a list of players.

The query root, the base entity from which the query will navigate to find the entity's attributes and related entities, is created by calling the `from` method of the query object. This sets the FROM clause of the query.

The WHERE clause, set by calling the `where` method on the query object, restricts the results of the query according to the conditions of an expression. The `CriteriaBuilder.equal` method compares the two expressions. In `getPlayersByPosition`, the `position` attribute of the `Player_` metamodel class, accessed by calling the `get` method of the query root, is compared to the `position` parameter passed to `getPlayersByPosition`.

The SELECT clause of the query is set by calling the `select` method of the query object. The query will return `Player` entities, so the query root object is passed as a parameter to `select`.

The query object is prepared for execution by calling `EntityManager.createQuery`, which returns a `TypedQuery<T>` object with the type of the query, in this case `Player`. This typed query object is used to execute the query, which occurs when the `getResultList` method is called, and a `List<Player>` collection is returned.

36.2.4 Automatic Table Generation in the roster Application

At deployment time, GlassFish Server will automatically drop and create the database tables used by roster. This is done by setting the `eclipselink.ddl-generation` property to `drop-and-create-tables` in `persistence.xml`:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<persistence version="2.0"
  xmlns="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/persistence"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/persistence
    http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/persistence/persistence_2_0.xsd">
  <persistence-unit name="em" transaction-type="JTA">
    <jta-data-source>java:comp/DefaultDataSource</jta-data-source>
    <properties>
      <property name="eclipselink.ddl-generation"
        value="drop-and-create-tables" />
    </properties>
  </persistence-unit>
</persistence>
```

This feature is specific to the Java Persistence API provider used by GlassFish Server and is not portable across Java EE servers. Automatic table creation is useful for development purposes, however, and the `eclipselink.ddl-generation` property may be removed from `persistence.xml` when preparing the application for production use, when deploying to other Java EE servers, or when using other persistence providers.

36.2.5 Running the roster Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the roster application.

36.2.5.1 To Run the roster Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/persistence/`
3. Select the `roster` folder.
4. Select the **Open Required Projects** check box.

5. Click **Open Project**.
6. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the roster-ear project and select **Run**.

This will compile, package, and deploy the EAR to GlassFish Server.

You will see the following partial output from the application client in the **Output** tab:

```
List all players in team T2:
P6 Ian Carlyle goalkeeper 555.0
P7 Rebecca Struthers midfielder 777.0
P8 Anne Anderson forward 65.0
P9 Jan Wesley defender 100.0
P10 Terry Smithson midfielder 100.0
```

```
List all teams in league L1:
T1 Honey Bees Visalia
T2 Gophers Manteca
T5 Crows Orland
```

```
List all defenders:
P2 Alice Smith defender 505.0
P5 Barney Bold defender 100.0
P9 Jan Wesley defender 100.0
P22 Janice Walker defender 857.0
P25 Frank Fletcher defender 399.0
...
```

36.2.5.2 To Run the roster Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/persistence/roster/roster-ear
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This compiles the source files and packages the application into an EAR file located at *tut-install/examples/persistence/roster/target/roster.ear*. The EAR file is then deployed to GlassFish Server. GlassFish Server will then drop and create the database tables during deployment, as specified in *persistence.xml*.

After successfully deploying the EAR, the client stubs are retrieved and the application client is run using the appclient application included with GlassFish Server.

You will see the output, which begins:

```
[echo] running application client container.
[exec] List all players in team T2:
[exec] P6 Ian Carlyle goalkeeper 555.0
[exec] P7 Rebecca Struthers midfielder 777.0
[exec] P8 Anne Anderson forward 65.0
[exec] P9 Jan Wesley defender 100.0
[exec] P10 Terry Smithson midfielder 100.0

[exec] List all teams in league L1:
[exec] T1 Honey Bees Visalia
[exec] T2 Gophers Manteca
[exec] T5 Crows Orland
```

```
[exec] List all defenders:
[exec] P2 Alice Smith defender 505.0
[exec] P5 Barney Bold defender 100.0
[exec] P9 Jan Wesley defender 100.0
[exec] P22 Janice Walker defender 857.0
[exec] P25 Frank Fletcher defender 399.0
...
```

36.3 The address-book Application

The address-book example application is a simple web application that stores contact data. It uses a single entity class, `Contact`, that uses the Java API for JavaBeans Validation (Bean Validation) to validate the data stored in the persistent attributes of the entity, as described in [Validating Persistent Fields and Properties](#).

36.3.1 Bean Validation Constraints in address-book

The `Contact` entity uses the `@NotNull`, `@Pattern`, and `@Past` constraints on the persistent attributes.

The `@NotNull` constraint marks the attribute as a required field. The attribute must be set to a non-null value before the entity can be persisted or modified. Bean Validation will throw a validation error if the attribute is null when the entity is persisted or modified.

The `@Pattern` constraint defines a regular expression that the value of the attribute must match before the entity can be persisted or modified. This constraint has two different uses in address-book.

- The regular expression declared in the `@Pattern` annotation on the `email` field matches email addresses of the form *name@domain.name.top level domain*, allowing only valid characters for email addresses. For example, `username@example.com` will pass validation, as will `firstname.lastname@mail.example.com`. However, `firstname,lastname@example.com`, which contains an illegal comma character in the local name, will fail validation.
- The `mobilePhone` and `homePhone` fields are annotated with a `@Pattern` constraint that defines a regular expression to match phone numbers of the form *(xxx)xxx-xxxx*.

The `@Past` constraint is applied to the `birthday` field, which must be a `java.util.Date` in the past.

Here are the relevant parts of the `Contact` entity class:

```
@Entity
public class Contact implements Serializable {
    private static final long serialVersionUID = 1L;
    @Id
    @GeneratedValue(strategy = GenerationType.AUTO)
    private Long id;
    @NotNull
    protected String firstName;
    @NotNull
    protected String lastName;
    @Pattern(regexp="[a-z0-9!#$%&'*/=?^_`{|}~-]+(?:\\.|"
        + "[a-z0-9!#$%&'*/=?^_`{|}~-]+)*")
```

```

+"@(?:[a-z0-9](?:[a-z0-9-]*[a-z0-9])?\.\.)+[a-z0-9](?:[a-z0-9-]*[a-z0-9])?",
    message="{invalid.email}")
protected String email;
@Pattern(regexp="^\\(?:\\d{3})\\)?[- ]?\\d{3}[- ]?\\d{4}$",
    message="{invalid.phonenumber}")
protected String mobilePhone;
@Pattern(regexp="^\\(?:\\d{3})\\)?[- ]?\\d{3}[- ]?\\d{4}$",
    message="{invalid.phonenumber}")
protected String homePhone;
@Temporal(javax.persistence.TemporalType.DATE)
@Past
protected Date birthday;
...
}

```

36.3.2 Specifying Error Messages for Constraints in address-book

Some of the constraints in the `Contact` entity specify an optional message:

```

@Pattern(regexp="^\\(?:\\d{3})\\)?[- ]?\\d{3}[- ]?\\d{4}$",
    message="{invalid.phonenumber}")
protected String homePhone;

```

The optional message element in the `@Pattern` constraint overrides the default validation message. The message can be specified directly:

```

@Pattern(regexp="^\\(?:\\d{3})\\)?[- ]?\\d{3}[- ]?\\d{4}$",
    message="Invalid phone number!")
protected String homePhone;

```

The constraints in `Contact`, however, are strings in the resource bundle `tut-install/examples/persistence/address-book/src/java/linebreakValidationMessages.properties`. This allows the validation messages to be located in one single properties file and the messages to be easily localized. Overridden Bean Validation messages must be placed in a resource bundle properties file named `ValidationMessages.properties` in the default package, with localized resource bundles taking the form `ValidationMessages_locale-prefix.properties`. For example, `ValidationMessages_es.properties` is the resource bundle used in Spanish speaking locales.

36.3.3 Validating Contact Input from a JavaServer Faces Application

The address-book application uses a JavaServer Faces web front end to allow users to enter contacts. While JavaServer Faces has a form input validation mechanism using tags in Facelets XHTML files, address-book doesn't use these validation tags. Bean Validation constraints in JavaServer Faces managed beans, in this case in the `Contact` entity, automatically trigger validation when the forms are submitted.

The following code snippet from the `Create.xhtml` Facelets file shows some of the input form for creating new `Contact` instances:

```

<h:form>
  <table columns="3" role="presentation">
    <tr>
      <td><h:outputLabel value="#{bundle.CreateContactLabel_firstName}"
        for="firstName" /></td>
      <td><h:inputText id="firstName"
        value="#{contactController.selected.firstName}"
        title="#{bundle.CreateContactTitle_firstName}" />

```

```
        </td>
        <td><h:message for="firstName" /></td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td><h:outputLabel value="#{bundle.CreateContactLabel_lastName}"
            for="lastName" /></td>
        <td><h:inputText id="lastName"
            value="#{contactController.selected.lastName}"
            title="#{bundle.CreateContactTitle_lastName}" />
        </td>
        <td><h:message for="lastName" /></td>
    </tr>
    ...
</table>
</h:form>
```

The `<h:inputText>` tags `firstName` and `lastName` are bound to the attributes in the `Contact` entity instance selected in the `ContactController` stateless session bean. Each `<h:inputText>` tag has an associated `<h:message>` tag that will display validation error messages. The form doesn't require any JavaServer Faces validation tags, however.

36.3.4 Running the address-book Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the address-book application.

36.3.4.1 To Run the address-book Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/persistence/`
3. Select the address-book folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the address-book project and select **Run**.

After the application has been deployed, a web browser window appears at the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/address-book/
```

6. Click **Show All Contact Items**, then **Create New Contact**. Enter values in the fields; then click **Save**.

If any of the values entered violate the constraints in `Contact`, an error message will appear in red beside the field with the incorrect values.

36.3.4.2 To Run the address-book Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/persistence/address-book/
```

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This will compile and assemble the address-book application into a WAR. The WAR file is then deployed to GlassFish Server.

3. Open a web browser window and enter the following URL:

`http://localhost:8080/address-book/`

4. Click **Show All Contact Items**, then **Create New Contact**. Enter values in the fields; then click **Save**.

If any of the values entered violate the constraints in `Contact`, an error message will appear in red beside the field with the incorrect values.

The Java Persistence Query Language

The Java Persistence query language defines queries for entities and their persistent state. The query language allows you to write portable queries that work regardless of the underlying data store.

The query language uses the abstract persistence schemas of entities, including their relationships, for its data model and defines operators and expressions based on this data model. The scope of a query spans the abstract schemas of related entities that are packaged in the same persistence unit. The query language uses an SQL-like syntax to select objects or values based on entity abstract schema types and relationships among them.

This chapter relies on the material presented in earlier chapters. For conceptual information, see [Chapter 35, "Introduction to the Java Persistence API"](#). For code examples, see [Chapter 36, "Running the Persistence Examples."](#)

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Query Language Terminology](#)
- [Creating Queries Using the Java Persistence Query Language](#)
- [Simplified Query Language Syntax](#)
- [Example Queries](#)
- [Full Query Language Syntax](#)

37.1 Query Language Terminology

The following list defines some of the terms referred to in this chapter:

- **Abstract schema:** The persistent schema abstraction (persistent entities, their state, and their relationships) over which queries operate. The query language translates queries over this persistent schema abstraction into queries that are executed over the database schema to which entities are mapped.
- **Abstract schema type:** The type to which the persistent property of an entity evaluates in the abstract schema. That is, each persistent field or property in an entity has a corresponding state field of the same type in the abstract schema. The abstract schema type of an entity is derived from the entity class and the metadata information provided by Java language annotations.
- **Backus-Naur Form (BNF):** A notation that describes the syntax of high-level languages. The syntax diagrams in this chapter are in BNF notation.
- **Navigation:** The traversal of relationships in a query language expression. The navigation operator is a period.

- **Path expression:** An expression that navigates to an entity's state or relationship field.
- **State field:** A persistent field of an entity.
- **Relationship field:** A persistent field of an entity whose type is the abstract schema type of the related entity.

37.2 Creating Queries Using the Java Persistence Query Language

The `EntityManager.createQuery` and `EntityManager.createNamedQuery` methods are used to query the datastore by using Java Persistence query language queries.

The `createQuery` method is used to create **dynamic queries**, which are queries defined directly within an application's business logic:

```
public List findWithName(String name) {
    return em.createQuery(
        "SELECT c FROM Customer c WHERE c.name LIKE :custName")
        .setParameter("custName", name)
        .setMaxResults(10)
        .getResultList();
}
```

The `createNamedQuery` method is used to create **static queries**, or queries that are defined in metadata by using the `javax.persistence.NamedQuery` annotation. The `name` element of `@NamedQuery` specifies the name of the query that will be used with the `createNamedQuery` method. The `query` element of `@NamedQuery` is the query:

```
@NamedQuery(
    name="findAllCustomersWithName",
    query="SELECT c FROM Customer c WHERE c.name LIKE :custName"
)
```

Here's an example of `createNamedQuery`, which uses the `@NamedQuery`:

```
@PersistenceContext
public EntityManager em;
...
customers = em.createNamedQuery("findAllCustomersWithName")
    .setParameter("custName", "Smith")
    .getResultList();
```

37.2.1 Named Parameters in Queries

Named parameters are query parameters that are prefixed with a colon (:). Named parameters in a query are bound to an argument by the following method:

```
javax.persistence.Query.setParameter(String name, Object value)
```

In the following example, the `name` argument to the `findWithName` business method is bound to the `:custName` named parameter in the query by calling `Query.setParameter`:

```
public List findWithName(String name) {
    return em.createQuery(
        "SELECT c FROM Customer c WHERE c.name LIKE :custName")
        .setParameter("custName", name)
        .getResultList();
}
```

Named parameters are case-sensitive and may be used by both dynamic and static queries.

37.2.2 Positional Parameters in Queries

You may use positional parameters instead of named parameters in queries. Positional parameters are prefixed with a question mark (?) followed the numeric position of the parameter in the query. The `Query.setParameter(integer position, Object value)` method is used to set the parameter values.

In the following example, the `findWithName` business method is rewritten to use input parameters:

```
public List findWithName(String name) {
    return em.createQuery(
        "SELECT c FROM Customer c WHERE c.name LIKE ?1")
        .setParameter(1, name)
        .getResultList();
}
```

Input parameters are numbered starting from 1. Input parameters are case-sensitive, and may be used by both dynamic and static queries.

37.3 Simplified Query Language Syntax

This section briefly describes the syntax of the query language so that you can quickly move on to [Example Queries](#). When you are ready to learn about the syntax in more detail, see [Full Query Language Syntax](#).

37.3.1 Select Statements

A select query has six clauses: `SELECT`, `FROM`, `WHERE`, `GROUP BY`, `HAVING`, and `ORDER BY`. The `SELECT` and `FROM` clauses are required, but the `WHERE`, `GROUP BY`, `HAVING`, and `ORDER BY` clauses are optional. Here is the high-level BNF syntax of a query language select query:

```
QL_statement ::= select_clause from_clause
               [where_clause] [groupby_clause] [having_clause] [orderby_clause]
```

- The `SELECT` clause defines the types of the objects or values returned by the query.
- The `FROM` clause defines the scope of the query by declaring one or more **identification variables**, which can be referenced in the `SELECT` and `WHERE` clauses. An identification variable represents one of the following elements:
 - The abstract schema name of an entity
 - An element of a collection relationship
 - An element of a single-valued relationship
 - A member of a collection that is the multiple side of a one-to-many relationship
- The `WHERE` clause is a conditional expression that restricts the objects or values retrieved by the query. Although the clause is optional, most queries have a `WHERE` clause.
- The `GROUP BY` clause groups query results according to a set of properties.

- The `HAVING` clause is used with the `GROUP BY` clause to further restrict the query results according to a conditional expression.
- The `ORDER BY` clause sorts the objects or values returned by the query into a specified order.

37.3.2 Update and Delete Statements

Update and delete statements provide bulk operations over sets of entities. These statements have the following syntax:

```
update_statement ::= update_clause [where_clause]
delete_statement ::= delete_clause [where_clause]
```

The update and delete clauses determine the type of the entities to be updated or deleted. The `WHERE` clause may be used to restrict the scope of the update or delete operation.

37.4 Example Queries

The following queries are from the `Player` entity of the roster application, which is documented in [The roster Application](#).

37.4.1 Simple Queries

If you are unfamiliar with the query language, these simple queries are a good place to start.

37.4.1.1 A Basic Select Query

```
SELECT p
FROM Player p
```

- **Data retrieved:** All players.
- **Description:** The `FROM` clause declares an identification variable named `p`, omitting the optional keyword `AS`. If the `AS` keyword were included, the clause would be written as follows:

```
FROM Player AS p
```

The `Player` element is the abstract schema name of the `Player` entity.

- **See also:** [Identification Variables](#).

37.4.1.2 Eliminating Duplicate Values

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p
WHERE p.position = ?1
```

- **Data retrieved:** The players with the position specified by the query's parameter.
- **Description:** The `DISTINCT` keyword eliminates duplicate values.
The `WHERE` clause restricts the players retrieved by checking their `position`, a persistent field of the `Player` entity. The `?1` element denotes the input parameter of the query.
- **See also:** [Input Parameters](#) and [The DISTINCT Keyword](#).

37.4.1.3 Using Named Parameters

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p
WHERE p.position = :position AND p.name = :name
```

- **Data retrieved:** The players having the specified positions and names.
- **Description:** The `position` and `name` elements are persistent fields of the `Player` entity. The `WHERE` clause compares the values of these fields with the named parameters of the query, set using the `Query.setNamedParameter` method. The query language denotes a named input parameter using a colon (`:`) followed by an identifier. The first input parameter is `:position`, the second is `:name`.

37.4.2 Queries That Navigate to Related Entities

In the query language, an expression can traverse, or navigate, to related entities. These expressions are the primary difference between the Java Persistence query language and SQL. Queries navigates to related entities, whereas SQL joins tables.

37.4.2.1 A Simple Query with Relationships

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p, IN(p.teams) t
```

- **Data retrieved:** All players who belong to a team.
- **Description:** The `FROM` clause declares two identification variables: `p` and `t`. The `p` variable represents the `Player` entity, and the `t` variable represents the related `Team` entity. The declaration for `t` references the previously declared `p` variable. The `IN` keyword signifies that `teams` is a collection of related entities. The `p.teams` expression navigates from a `Player` to its related `Team`. The period in the `p.teams` expression is the navigation operator.

You may also use the `JOIN` statement to write the same query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p JOIN p.teams t
```

This query could also be rewritten as:

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p
WHERE p.team IS NOT EMPTY
```

37.4.2.2 Navigating to Single-Valued Relationship Fields

Use the `JOIN` clause statement to navigate to a single-valued relationship field:

```
SELECT t
FROM Team t JOIN t.league l
WHERE l.sport = 'soccer' OR l.sport = 'football'
```

In this example, the query will return all teams that are in either soccer or football leagues.

37.4.2.3 Traversing Relationships with an Input Parameter

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p, IN (p.teams) AS t
WHERE t.city = :city
```

- **Data retrieved:** The players whose teams belong to the specified city.
- **Description:** This query is similar to the previous example but adds an input parameter. The `AS` keyword in the `FROM` clause is optional. In the `WHERE` clause, the period preceding the persistent variable `city` is a delimiter, not a navigation operator. Strictly speaking, expressions can navigate to relationship fields (related entities) but not to persistent fields. To access a persistent field, an expression uses the period as a delimiter.

Expressions cannot navigate beyond (or further qualify) relationship fields that are collections. In the syntax of an expression, a collection-valued field is a terminal symbol. Because the `teams` field is a collection, the `WHERE` clause cannot specify `p.teams.city` (an illegal expression).

- **See also:** [Path Expressions](#).

37.4.2.4 Traversing Multiple Relationships

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p, IN (p.teams) t
WHERE t.league = :league
```

- **Data retrieved:** The players who belong to the specified league.
- **Description:** The expressions in this query navigate over two relationships. The `p.teams` expression navigates the Player-Team relationship, and the `t.league` expression navigates the Team-League relationship.

In the other examples, the input parameters are `String` objects; in this example, the parameter is an object whose type is a `League`. This type matches the `league` relationship field in the comparison expression of the `WHERE` clause.

37.4.2.5 Navigating According to Related Fields

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p, IN (p.teams) t
WHERE t.league.sport = :sport
```

- **Data retrieved:** The players who participate in the specified sport.
- **Description:** The `sport` persistent field belongs to the `League` entity. To reach the `sport` field, the query must first navigate from the `Player` entity to `Team` (`p.teams`) and then from `Team` to the `League` entity (`t.league`). Because it is not a collection, the `league` relationship field can be followed by the `sport` persistent field.

37.4.3 Queries with Other Conditional Expressions

Every `WHERE` clause must specify a conditional expression, of which there are several kinds. In the previous examples, the conditional expressions are comparison expressions that test for equality. The following examples demonstrate some of the other kinds of conditional expressions. For descriptions of all conditional expressions, see [WHERE Clause](#).

37.4.3.1 The LIKE Expression

```
SELECT p
FROM Player p
WHERE p.name LIKE 'Mich%'
```

- **Data retrieved:** All players whose names begin with "Mich."

- **Description:** The `LIKE` expression uses wildcard characters to search for strings that match the wildcard pattern. In this case, the query uses the `LIKE` expression and the `%` wildcard to find all players whose names begin with the string "Mich." For example, "Michael" and "Michelle" both match the wildcard pattern.
- **See also:** [LIKE Expressions](#).

37.4.3.2 The IS NULL Expression

```
SELECT t
FROM Team t
WHERE t.league IS NULL
```

- **Data retrieved:** All teams not associated with a league.
- **Description:** The `IS NULL` expression can be used to check whether a relationship has been set between two entities. In this case, the query checks whether the teams are associated with any leagues and returns the teams that do not have a league.
- **See also:** [NULL Comparison Expressions](#) and [NULL Values](#).

37.4.3.3 The IS EMPTY Expression

```
SELECT p
FROM Player p
WHERE p.teams IS EMPTY
```

- **Data retrieved:** All players who do not belong to a team.
- **Description:** The `teams` relationship field of the `Player` entity is a collection. If a player does not belong to a team, the `teams` collection is empty, and the conditional expression is `TRUE`.
- **See also:** [Empty Collection Comparison Expressions](#).

37.4.3.4 The BETWEEN Expression

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p
WHERE p.salary BETWEEN :lowerSalary AND :higherSalary
```

- **Data retrieved:** The players whose salaries fall within the range of the specified salaries.
- **Description:** This `BETWEEN` expression has three arithmetic expressions: a persistent field (`p.salary`) and the two input parameters (`:lowerSalary` and `:higherSalary`). The following expression is equivalent to the `BETWEEN` expression:
`p.salary >= :lowerSalary AND p.salary <= :higherSalary`
- **See also:** [BETWEEN Expressions](#).

37.4.3.5 Comparison Operators

```
SELECT DISTINCT p1
FROM Player p1, Player p2
WHERE p1.salary > p2.salary AND p2.name = :name
```

- **Data retrieved:** All players whose salaries are higher than the salary of the player with the specified name.

- **Description:** The FROM clause declares two identification variables (p1 and p2) of the same type (Player). Two identification variables are needed because the WHERE clause compares the salary of one player (p2) with that of the other players (p1).
- **See also:** [Identification Variables](#).

37.4.4 Bulk Updates and Deletes

The following examples show how to use the UPDATE and DELETE expressions in queries. UPDATE and DELETE operate on multiple entities according to the condition or conditions set in the WHERE clause. The WHERE clause in UPDATE and DELETE queries follows the same rules as SELECT queries.

37.4.4.1 Update Queries

```
UPDATE Player p
SET p.status = 'inactive'
WHERE p.lastPlayed < :inactiveThresholdDate
```

- **Description:** This query sets the status of a set of players to inactive if the player's last game was longer than the date specified in inactiveThresholdDate.

37.4.4.2 Delete Queries

```
DELETE
FROM Player p
WHERE p.status = 'inactive'
AND p.teams IS EMPTY
```

- **Description:** This query deletes all inactive players who are not on a team.

37.5 Full Query Language Syntax

This section discusses the query language syntax, as defined in the Java Persistence API 2.0 specification available at <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=317>. Much of the following material paraphrases or directly quotes the specification.

37.5.1 BNF Symbols

[Table 37–1](#) describes the BNF symbols used in this chapter.

Table 37–1 BNF Symbol Summary

Symbol	Description
::=	The element to the left of the symbol is defined by the constructs on the right.
*	The preceding construct may occur zero or more times.
{...}	The constructs within the braces are grouped together.
[...]	The constructs within the brackets are optional.
	An exclusive OR.
BOLDFACE	A keyword; although capitalized in the BNF diagram, keywords are not case-sensitive.
White space	A whitespace character can be a space, a horizontal tab, or a line feed.

37.5.2 BNF Grammar of the Java Persistence Query Language

Here is the entire BNF diagram for the query language:

```

QL_statement ::= select_statement | update_statement | delete_statement
select_statement ::= select_clause from_clause [where_clause] [groupby_clause]
                  [having_clause] [orderby_clause]
update_statement ::= update_clause [where_clause]
delete_statement ::= delete_clause [where_clause]
from_clause ::=
    FROM identification_variable_declaration
        {, {identification_variable_declaration |
            collection_member_declaration}}*
identification_variable_declaration ::=
    range_variable_declaration { join | fetch_join }*
range_variable_declaration ::= abstract_schema_name [AS]
    identification_variable
join ::= join_spec join_association_path_expression [AS]
    identification_variable
fetch_join ::= join_specFETCH join_association_path_expression
association_path_expression ::=
    collection_valued_path_expression |
    single_valued_association_path_expression
join_spec ::= [LEFT [OUTER] |INNER] JOIN
join_association_path_expression ::=
    join_collection_valued_path_expression |
    join_single_valued_association_path_expression
join_collection_valued_path_expression ::=
    identification_variable.collection_valued_association_field
join_single_valued_association_path_expression ::=
    identification_variable.single_valued_association_field
collection_member_declaration ::=
    IN (collection_valued_path_expression) [AS]
    identification_variable
single_valued_path_expression ::=
    state_field_path_expression |
    single_valued_association_path_expression
state_field_path_expression ::=
    {identification_variable |
    single_valued_association_path_expression}.state_field
single_valued_association_path_expression ::=
    identification_variable.{single_valued_association_field.}*
    single_valued_association_field
collection_valued_path_expression ::=
    identification_variable.{single_valued_association_field.}*
    collection_valued_association_field
state_field ::=
    {embedded_class_state_field.}*simple_state_field
update_clause ::= UPDATE abstract_schema_name [[AS]
    identification_variable] SET update_item {, update_item}*
update_item ::= [identification_variable.]{state_field |
    single_valued_association_field} = new_value
new_value ::=
    simple_arithmetic_expression |
    string_primary |
    datetime_primary |
    boolean_primary |
    enum_primary simple_entity_expression |
    NULL
delete_clause ::= DELETE FROM abstract_schema_name [[AS]
    identification_variable]

```

```
select_clause ::= SELECT [DISTINCT] select_expression {,  
    select_expression}*  
select_expression ::=  
    single_valued_path_expression |  
    aggregate_expression |  
    identification_variable |  
    OBJECT(identification_variable) |  
    constructor_expression  
constructor_expression ::=  
    NEW constructor_name(constructor_item {,  
    constructor_item}*)  
constructor_item ::= single_valued_path_expression |  
    aggregate_expression  
aggregate_expression ::=  
    {AVG |MAX |MIN |SUM} ([DISTINCT]  
    state_field_path_expression) |  
    COUNT ([DISTINCT] identification_variable |  
    state_field_path_expression |  
    single_valued_association_path_expression)  
where_clause ::= WHERE conditional_expression  
groupby_clause ::= GROUP BY groupby_item {, groupby_item}*  
groupby_item ::= single_valued_path_expression  
having_clause ::= HAVING conditional_expression  
orderby_clause ::= ORDER BY orderby_item {, orderby_item}*  
orderby_item ::= state_field_path_expression [ASC |DESC]  
subquery ::= simple_select_clause subquery_from_clause  
    [where_clause] [groupby_clause] [having_clause]  
subquery_from_clause ::=  
    FROM subselect_identification_variable_declaration  
    {, subselect_identification_variable_declaration}*  
subselect_identification_variable_declaration ::=  
    identification_variable_declaration |  
    association_path_expression [AS] identification_variable |  
    collection_member_declaration  
simple_select_clause ::= SELECT [DISTINCT]  
    simple_select_expression  
simple_select_expression ::=  
    single_valued_path_expression |  
    aggregate_expression |  
    identification_variable  
conditional_expression ::= conditional_term |  
    conditional_expression OR conditional_term  
conditional_term ::= conditional_factor | conditional_term AND  
    conditional_factor  
conditional_factor ::= [NOT] conditional_primary  
conditional_primary ::= simple_cond_expression | (  
    conditional_expression)  
simple_cond_expression ::=  
    comparison_expression |  
    between_expression |  
    like_expression |  
    in_expression |  
    null_comparison_expression |  
    empty_collection_comparison_expression |  
    collection_member_expression |  
    exists_expression  
between_expression ::=  
    arithmetic_expression [NOT] BETWEEN  
        arithmetic_expression AND arithmetic_expression |  
    string_expression [NOT] BETWEEN string_expression AND
```

```

        string_expression |
        datetime_expression [NOT] BETWEEN
            datetime_expression AND datetime_expression
in_expression ::=
    state_field_path_expression [NOT] IN (in_item {, in_item}*
    | subquery)
in_item ::= literal | input_parameter
like_expression ::=
    string_expression [NOT] LIKE pattern_value [ESCAPE
        escape_character]
null_comparison_expression ::=
    {single_valued_path_expression | input_parameter} IS [NOT]
        NULL
empty_collection_comparison_expression ::=
    collection_valued_path_expression IS [NOT] EMPTY
collection_member_expression ::= entity_expression
    [NOT] MEMBER [OF] collection_valued_path_expression
exists_expression ::= [NOT] EXISTS (subquery)
all_or_any_expression ::= {ALL | ANY | SOME} (subquery)
comparison_expression ::=
    string_expression comparison_operator {string_expression |
    all_or_any_expression} |
    boolean_expression {= |<> } {boolean_expression |
    all_or_any_expression} |
    enum_expression {= |<> } {enum_expression |
    all_or_any_expression} |
    datetime_expression comparison_operator
        {datetime_expression | all_or_any_expression} |
    entity_expression {= |<> } {entity_expression |
    all_or_any_expression} |
    arithmetic_expression comparison_operator
        {arithmetic_expression | all_or_any_expression}
comparison_operator ::= = |> |>= |< |<= |<>
arithmetic_expression ::= simple_arithmetic_expression |
    (subquery)
simple_arithmetic_expression ::=
    arithmetic_term | simple_arithmetic_expression {+ |- }
        arithmetic_term
arithmetic_term ::= arithmetic_factor | arithmetic_term {* | / }
    arithmetic_factor
arithmetic_factor ::= [{+ |- }] arithmetic_primary
arithmetic_primary ::=
    state_field_path_expression |
    numeric_literal |
    (simple_arithmetic_expression) |
    input_parameter |
    functions_returning_numerics |
    aggregate_expression
string_expression ::= string_primary | (subquery)
string_primary ::=
    state_field_path_expression |
    string_literal |
    input_parameter |
    functions_returning_strings |
    aggregate_expression
datetime_expression ::= datetime_primary | (subquery)
datetime_primary ::=
    state_field_path_expression |
    input_parameter |
    functions_returning_datetime |

```

```
    aggregate_expression
boolean_expression ::= boolean_primary | (subquery)
boolean_primary ::=
    state_field_path_expression |
    boolean_literal |
    input_parameter
enum_expression ::= enum_primary | (subquery)
enum_primary ::=
    state_field_path_expression |
    enum_literal |
    input_parameter
entity_expression ::=
    single_valued_association_path_expression |
    simple_entity_expression
simple_entity_expression ::=
    identification_variable |
    input_parameter
functions_returning_numerics ::=
    LENGTH(string_primary) |
    LOCATE(string_primary, string_primary[,
        simple_arithmetic_expression]) |
    ABS(simple_arithmetic_expression) |
    SQRT(simple_arithmetic_expression) |
    MOD(simple_arithmetic_expression,
        simple_arithmetic_expression) |
    SIZE(collection_valued_path_expression)
functions_returning_datetime ::=
    CURRENT_DATE |
    CURRENT_TIME |
    CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
functions_returning_strings ::=
    CONCAT(string_primary, string_primary) |
    SUBSTRING(string_primary,
        simple_arithmetic_expression,
        simple_arithmetic_expression) |
    TRIM([[trim_specification] [trim_character] FROM]
        string_primary) |
    LOWER(string_primary) |
    UPPER(string_primary)
trim_specification ::= LEADING | TRAILING | BOTH
```

37.5.3 FROM Clause

The FROM clause defines the domain of the query by declaring identification variables.

37.5.3.1 Identifiers

An identifier is a sequence of one or more characters. The first character must be a valid first character (letter, \$, _) in an identifier of the Java programming language, hereafter in this chapter called simply "Java". Each subsequent character in the sequence must be a valid nonfirst character (letter, digit, \$, _) in a Java identifier. (For details, see the Java SE API documentation of the `isJavaIdentifierStart` and `isJavaIdentifierPart` methods of the `Character` class.) The question mark (?) is a reserved character in the query language and cannot be used in an identifier.

A query language identifier is case-sensitive, with two exceptions:

- Keywords
- Identification variables

An identifier cannot be the same as a query language keyword. Here is a list of query language keywords:

ABS
ALL
AND
ANY
AS
ASC
AVG
BETWEEN
BIT_LENGTH
BOTH
BY
CASE
CHAR_LENGTH
CHARACTER_LENGTH
CLASS
COALESCE
CONCAT
COUNT
CURRENT_DATE
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
DELETE
DESC
DISTINCT
ELSE
EMPTY
END
ENTRY
ESCAPE
EXISTS
FALSE
FETCH
FROM
GROUP
HAVING
IN
INDEX
INNER
IS
JOIN
KEY
LEADING
LEFT
LENGTH
LIKE
LOCATE
LOWER
MAX
MEMBER
MIN
MOD
NEW
NOT
NULL

NULLIF
OBJECT
OF
OR
ORDER
OUTER
POSITION
SELECT
SET
SIZE
SOME
SQRT
SUBSTRING
SUM
THEN
TRAILING
TRIM
TRUE
TYPE
UNKNOWN
UPDATE
UPPER
VALUE
WHEN
WHERE

It is not recommended that you use an SQL keyword as an identifier, because the list of keywords may expand to include other reserved SQL words in the future.

37.5.3.2 Identification Variables

An identification variable is an identifier declared in the `FROM` clause. Although they can reference identification variables, the `SELECT` and `WHERE` clauses cannot declare them. All identification variables must be declared in the `FROM` clause.

Because it is an identifier, an identification variable has the same naming conventions and restrictions as an identifier, with the exception that an identification variable is case-insensitive. For example, an identification variable cannot be the same as a query language keyword. (See the preceding section for more naming rules.) Also, within a given persistence unit, an identification variable name must not match the name of any entity or abstract schema.

The `FROM` clause can contain multiple declarations, separated by commas. A declaration can reference another identification variable that has been previously declared (to the left). In the following `FROM` clause, the variable `t` references the previously declared variable `p`:

```
FROM Player p, IN (p.teams) AS t
```

Even if it is not used in the `WHERE` clause, an identification variable's declaration can affect the results of the query. For example, compare the next two queries. The following query returns all players, whether or not they belong to a team:

```
SELECT p  
FROM Player p
```

In contrast, because it declares the `t` identification variable, the next query fetches all players who belong to a team:

```
SELECT p
```

```
FROM Player p, IN (p.teams) AS t
```

The following query returns the same results as the preceding query, but the `WHERE` clause makes it easier to read:

```
SELECT p
FROM Player p
WHERE p.teams IS NOT EMPTY
```

An identification variable always designates a reference to a single value whose type is that of the expression used in the declaration. There are two kinds of declarations: range variable and collection member.

37.5.3.3 Range Variable Declarations

To declare an identification variable as an abstract schema type, you specify a range variable declaration. In other words, an identification variable can range over the abstract schema type of an entity. In the following example, an identification variable named `p` represents the abstract schema named `Player`:

```
FROM Player p
```

A range variable declaration can include the optional `AS` operator:

```
FROM Player AS p
```

To obtain objects, a query usually uses path expressions to navigate through the relationships. But for those objects that cannot be obtained by navigation, you can use a range variable declaration to designate a starting point, or query root.

If the query compares multiple values of the same abstract schema type, the `FROM` clause must declare multiple identification variables for the abstract schema:

```
FROM Player p1, Player p2
```

For an example of such a query, see [Comparison Operators](#).

37.5.3.4 Collection Member Declarations

In a one-to-many relationship, the multiple side consists of a collection of entities. An identification variable can represent a member of this collection. To access a collection member, the path expression in the variable's declaration navigates through the relationships in the abstract schema. (For more information on path expressions, see [Path Expressions](#).) Because a path expression can be based on another path expression, the navigation can traverse several relationships. See [Traversing Multiple Relationships](#).

A collection member declaration must include the `IN` operator but can omit the optional `AS` operator.

In the following example, the entity represented by the abstract schema named `Player` has a relationship field called `teams`. The identification variable called `t` represents a single member of the `teams` collection.

```
FROM Player p, IN (p.teams) t
```

37.5.3.5 Joins

The `JOIN` operator is used to traverse over relationships between entities and is functionally similar to the `IN` operator.

In the following example, the query joins over the relationship between customers and orders:

```
SELECT c
FROM Customer c JOIN c.orders o
WHERE c.status = 1 AND o.totalPrice > 10000
```

The `INNER` keyword is optional:

```
SELECT c
FROM Customer c INNER JOIN c.orders o
WHERE c.status = 1 AND o.totalPrice > 10000
```

These examples are equivalent to the following query, which uses the `IN` operator:

```
SELECT c
FROM Customer c, IN(c.orders) o
WHERE c.status = 1 AND o.totalPrice > 10000
```

You can also join a single-valued relationship:

```
SELECT t
FROM Team t JOIN t.league l
WHERE l.sport = :sport
```

A `LEFT JOIN` or `LEFT OUTER JOIN` retrieves a set of entities where matching values in the join condition may be absent. The `OUTER` keyword is optional.

```
SELECT c.name, o.totalPrice
FROM Order o LEFT JOIN o.customer c
```

A `FETCH JOIN` is a join operation that returns associated entities as a side effect of running the query. In the following example, the query returns a set of departments and, as a side effect, the associated employees of the departments, even though the employees were not explicitly retrieved by the `SELECT` clause.

```
SELECT d
FROM Department d LEFT JOIN FETCH d.employees
WHERE d.deptno = 1
```

37.5.4 Path Expressions

Path expressions are important constructs in the syntax of the query language, for several reasons. First, path expressions define navigation paths through the relationships in the abstract schema. These path definitions affect both the scope and the results of a query. Second, path expressions can appear in any of the main clauses of a query (`SELECT`, `DELETE`, `HAVING`, `UPDATE`, `WHERE`, `FROM`, `GROUP BY`, `ORDER BY`). Finally, although much of the query language is a subset of SQL, path expressions are extensions not found in SQL.

37.5.4.1 Examples of Path Expressions

Here, the `WHERE` clause contains a `single_valued_path_expression`; the `p` is an identification variable, and `salary` is a persistent field of `Player`:

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p
WHERE p.salary BETWEEN :lowerSalary AND :higherSalary
```

Here, the `WHERE` clause also contains a `single_valued_path_expression`; `t` is an identification variable, `league` is a single-valued relationship field, and `sport` is a persistent field of `league`:

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p, IN (p.teams) t
WHERE t.league.sport = :sport
```

Here, the `WHERE` clause contains a `collection_valued_path_expression`; `p` is an identification variable, and `teams` designates a collection-valued relationship field:

```
SELECT DISTINCT p
FROM Player p
WHERE p.teams IS EMPTY
```

37.5.4.2 Expression Types

The type of a path expression is the type of the object represented by the ending element, which can be one of the following:

- Persistent field
- Single-valued relationship field
- Collection-valued relationship field

For example, the type of the expression `p.salary` is `double` because the terminating persistent field (`salary`) is a `double`.

In the expression `p.teams`, the terminating element is a collection-valued relationship field (`teams`). This expression's type is a collection of the abstract schema type named `Team`. Because `Team` is the abstract schema name for the `Team` entity, this type maps to the entity. For more information on the type mapping of abstract schemas, see [Return Types](#).

37.5.4.3 Navigation

A path expression enables the query to navigate to related entities. The terminating elements of an expression determine whether navigation is allowed. If an expression contains a single-valued relationship field, the navigation can continue to an object that is related to the field. However, an expression cannot navigate beyond a persistent field or a collection-valued relationship field. For example, the expression `p.teams.league.sport` is illegal because `teams` is a collection-valued relationship field. To reach the `sport` field, the `FROM` clause could define an identification variable named `t` for the `teams` field:

```
FROM Player AS p, IN (p.teams) t
WHERE t.league.sport = 'soccer'
```

37.5.5 WHERE Clause

The `WHERE` clause specifies a conditional expression that limits the values returned by the query. The query returns all corresponding values in the data store for which the conditional expression is `TRUE`. Although usually specified, the `WHERE` clause is optional. If the `WHERE` clause is omitted, the query returns all values. The high-level syntax for the `WHERE` clause follows:

```
where_clause ::= WHERE conditional_expression
```

37.5.5.1 Literals

There are four kinds of literals: string, numeric, Boolean, and enum.

- **String literals:** A string literal is enclosed in single quotes:

```
'Duke'
```

If a string literal contains a single quote, you indicate the quote by using two single quotes:

```
'Duke' 's'
```

Like a Java `String`, a string literal in the query language uses the Unicode character encoding.

- **Numeric literals:** There are two types of numeric literals: exact and approximate.

An exact numeric literal is a numeric value without a decimal point, such as 65, -233, and +12. Using the Java integer syntax, exact numeric literals support numbers in the range of a Java `long`.

An approximate numeric literal is a numeric value in scientific notation, such as 57., -85.7, and +2.1. Using the syntax of the Java floating-point literal, approximate numeric literals support numbers in the range of a Java `double`.

- **Boolean literals:** A Boolean literal is either `TRUE` or `FALSE`. These keywords are not case-sensitive.
- **Enum literals:** The Java Persistence query language supports the use of enum literals using the Java enum literal syntax. The enum class name must be specified as a fully qualified class name:

```
SELECT e
FROM Employee e
WHERE e.status = com.xyz.EmployeeStatus.FULL_TIME
```

37.5.5.2 Input Parameters

An input parameter can be either a named parameter or a positional parameter.

- A named input parameter is designated by a colon (`:`) followed by a string; for example, `:name`.
- A positional input parameter is designated by a question mark (`?`) followed by an integer. For example, the first input parameter is `?1`, the second is `?2`, and so forth.

The following rules apply to input parameters.

- They can be used only in a `WHERE` or `HAVING` clause.
- Positional parameters must be numbered, starting with the integer 1.
- Named parameters and positional parameters may not be mixed in a single query.
- Named parameters are case-sensitive.

37.5.5.3 Conditional Expressions

A `WHERE` clause consists of a conditional expression, which is evaluated from left to right within a precedence level. You can change the order of evaluation by using parentheses.

37.5.5.4 Operators and Their Precedence

Table 37–2 lists the query language operators in order of decreasing precedence.

Table 37–2 Query Language Order Precedence

Type	Precedence Order
Navigation	. (a period)
Arithmetic	+ - (unary) * / (multiplication and division) + - (addition and subtraction)
Comparison	= > >= < <= <> (not equal) [NOT] BETWEEN [NOT] LIKE [NOT] IN IS [NOT] NULL IS [NOT] EMPTY [NOT] MEMBER OF
Logical	NOT AND OR

37.5.5.5 BETWEEN Expressions

A BETWEEN expression determines whether an arithmetic expression falls within a range of values.

These two expressions are equivalent:

```
p.age BETWEEN 15 AND 19
p.age >= 15 AND p.age <= 19
```

The following two expressions also are equivalent:

```
p.age NOT BETWEEN 15 AND 19
p.age < 15 OR p.age > 19
```

If an arithmetic expression has a NULL value, the value of the BETWEEN expression is unknown.

37.5.5.6 IN Expressions

An IN expression determines whether a string belongs to a set of string literals or whether a number belongs to a set of number values.

The path expression must have a string or numeric value. If the path expression has a NULL value, the value of the IN expression is unknown.

In the following example, the expression is TRUE if the country is UK , but FALSE if the country is Peru.

```
o.country IN ('UK', 'US', 'France')
```

You may also use input parameters:

```
o.country IN ('UK', 'US', 'France', :country)
```

37.5.5.7 LIKE Expressions

A LIKE expression determines whether a wildcard pattern matches a string.

The path expression must have a string or numeric value. If this value is NULL, the value of the LIKE expression is unknown. The pattern value is a string literal that can contain wildcard characters. The underscore (_) wildcard character represents any single character. The percent (%) wildcard character represents zero or more characters. The ESCAPE clause specifies an escape character for the wildcard characters in the pattern value. [Table 37–3](#) shows some sample LIKE expressions.

Table 37–3 LIKE Expression Examples

Expression	TRUE	FALSE
address.phone LIKE '12%3'	'123' '12993'	'1234'
asentence.word LIKE 'l_se'	'lose'	'loose'
aword.underscored LIKE '_%' ESCAPE '\'	'_foo'	'bar'
address.phone NOT LIKE '12%3'	'1234'	'123' '12993'

37.5.5.8 NULL Comparison Expressions

A NULL comparison expression tests whether a single-valued path expression or an input parameter has a NULL value. Usually, the NULL comparison expression is used to test whether a single-valued relationship has been set:

```
SELECT t
FROM Team t
WHERE t.league IS NULL
```

This query selects all teams where the league relationship is not set. Note that the following query is *not* equivalent:

```
SELECT t
FROM Team t
WHERE t.league = NULL
```

The comparison with NULL using the equals operator (=) always returns an unknown value, even if the relationship is not set. The second query will always return an empty result.

37.5.5.9 Empty Collection Comparison Expressions

The IS [NOT] EMPTY comparison expression tests whether a collection-valued path expression has no elements. In other words, it tests whether a collection-valued relationship has been set.

If the collection-valued path expression is NULL, the empty collection comparison expression has a NULL value.

Here is an example that finds all orders that do not have any line items:

```
SELECT o
FROM Order o
WHERE o.lineItems IS EMPTY
```

37.5.5.10 Collection Member Expressions

The `[NOT] MEMBER [OF]` collection member expression determines whether a value is a member of a collection. The value and the collection members must have the same type.

If either the collection-valued or single-valued path expression is unknown, the collection member expression is unknown. If the collection-valued path expression designates an empty collection, the collection member expression is `FALSE`.

The `OF` keyword is optional.

The following example tests whether a line item is part of an order:

```
SELECT o
FROM Order o
WHERE :lineItem MEMBER OF o.lineItems
```

37.5.5.11 Subqueries

Subqueries may be used in the `WHERE` or `HAVING` clause of a query. Subqueries must be surrounded by parentheses.

The following example finds all customers who have placed more than ten orders:

```
SELECT c
FROM Customer c
WHERE (SELECT COUNT(o) FROM c.orders o) > 10
```

Subqueries may contain `EXISTS`, `ALL`, and `ANY` expressions.

- **EXISTS expressions:** The `[NOT] EXISTS` expression is used with a subquery and is true only if the result of the subquery consists of one or more values and is false otherwise.

The following example finds all employees whose spouses are also employees:

```
SELECT DISTINCT emp
FROM Employee emp
WHERE EXISTS (
    SELECT spouseEmp
    FROM Employee spouseEmp
    WHERE spouseEmp = emp.spouse)
```

- **ALL and ANY expressions:** The `ALL` expression is used with a subquery and is true if all the values returned by the subquery are true or if the subquery is empty.

The `ANY` expression is used with a subquery and is true if some of the values returned by the subquery are true. An `ANY` expression is false if the subquery result is empty or if all the values returned are false. The `SOME` keyword is synonymous with `ANY`.

The `ALL` and `ANY` expressions are used with the `=`, `<`, `<=`, `>`, `>=`, and `<>` comparison operators.

The following example finds all employees whose salaries are higher than the salaries of the managers in the employee's department:

```
SELECT emp
FROM Employee emp
WHERE emp.salary > ALL (
    SELECT m.salary
    FROM Manager m
    WHERE m.department = emp.department)
```

37.5.5.12 Functional Expressions

The query language includes several string, arithmetic, and date/time functions that may be used in the `SELECT`, `WHERE`, or `HAVING` clause of a query. The functions are listed in [Table 37-4](#), [Table 37-5](#), and [Table 37-6](#).

In [Table 37-4](#), the `start` and `length` arguments are of type `int` and designate positions in the `String` argument. The first position in a string is designated by 1.

Table 37-4 *String Expressions*

Function Syntax	Return Type
<code>CONCAT(String, String)</code>	<code>String</code>
<code>LENGTH(String)</code>	<code>int</code>
<code>LOCATE(String, String [, start])</code>	<code>int</code>
<code>SUBSTRING(String, start, length)</code>	<code>String</code>
<code>TRIM([[LEADING TRAILING BOTH] char] FROM] (String)</code>	<code>String</code>
<code>LOWER(String)</code>	<code>String</code>
<code>UPPER(String)</code>	<code>String</code>

The `CONCAT` function concatenates two strings into one string.

The `LENGTH` function returns the length of a string in characters as an integer.

The `LOCATE` function returns the position of a given string within a string. This function returns the first position at which the string was found as an integer. The first argument is the string to be located. The second argument is the string to be searched. The optional third argument is an integer that represents the starting string position. By default, `LOCATE` starts at the beginning of the string. The starting position of a string is 1. If the string cannot be located, `LOCATE` returns 0.

The `SUBSTRING` function returns a string that is a substring of the first argument based on the starting position and length.

The `TRIM` function trims the specified character from the beginning and/or end of a string. If no character is specified, `TRIM` removes spaces or blanks from the string. If the optional `LEADING` specification is used, `TRIM` removes only the leading characters from the string. If the optional `TRAILING` specification is used, `TRIM` removes only the trailing characters from the string. The default is `BOTH`, which removes the leading and trailing characters from the string.

The `LOWER` and `UPPER` functions convert a string to lowercase or uppercase, respectively.

In [Table 37-5](#), the `number` argument can be an `int`, a `float`, or a `double`.

Table 37–5 Arithmetic Expressions

Function Syntax	Return Type
ABS(number)	int, float, or double
MOD(int, int)	int
SQRT(double)	double
SIZE(Collection)	int

The ABS function takes a numeric expression and returns a number of the same type as the argument.

The MOD function returns the remainder of the first argument divided by the second.

The SQRT function returns the square root of a number.

The SIZE function returns an integer of the number of elements in the given collection.

In [Table 37–6](#), the date/time functions return the date, time, or timestamp on the database server.

Table 37–6 Date/Time Expressions

Function Syntax	Return Type
CURRENT_DATE	java.sql.Date
CURRENT_TIME	java.sql.Time
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP	java.sql.Timestamp

37.5.5.13 Case Expressions

Case expressions change based on a condition, similar to the case keyword of the Java programming language. The CASE keyword indicates the start of a case expression, and the expression is terminated by the END keyword. The WHEN and THEN keywords define individual conditions, and the ELSE keyword defines the default condition should none of the other conditions be satisfied.

The following query selects the name of a person and a conditional string, depending on the subtype of the Person entity. If the subtype is Student, the string kid is returned. If the subtype is Guardian or Staff, the string adult is returned. If the entity is some other subtype of Person, the string unknown is returned.

```
SELECT p.name
CASE TYPE(p)
  WHEN Student THEN 'kid'
  WHEN Guardian THEN 'adult'
  WHEN Staff THEN 'adult'
  ELSE 'unknown'
END
FROM Person p
```

The following query sets a discount for various types of customers. Gold-level customers get a 20% discount, silver-level customers get a 15% discount, bronze-level customers get a 10% discount, and everyone else gets a 5% discount.

```
UPDATE Customer c
SET c.discount =
CASE c.level
  WHEN 'Gold' THEN 20
  WHEN 'SILVER' THEN 15
```

```

    WHEN 'Bronze' THEN 10
    ELSE 5
END

```

37.5.5.14 NULL Values

If the target of a reference is not in the persistent store, the target is `NULL`. For conditional expressions containing `NULL`, the query language uses the semantics defined by SQL92. Briefly, these semantics are as follows.

- If a comparison or arithmetic operation has an unknown value, it yields a `NULL` value.
- Two `NULL` values are not equal. Comparing two `NULL` values yields an unknown value.
- The `IS NULL` test converts a `NULL` persistent field or a single-valued relationship field to `TRUE`. The `IS NOT NULL` test converts them to `FALSE`.
- Boolean operators and conditional tests use the three-valued logic defined by [Table 37-7](#) and [Table 37-8](#). (In these tables, T stands for `TRUE`, F for `FALSE`, and U for unknown.)

Table 37-7 AND Operator Logic

AND	T	F	U
T	T	F	U
F	F	F	F
U	U	F	U

Table 37-8 OR Operator Logic

OR	T	F	U
T	T	T	T
F	T	F	U
U	T	U	U

37.5.5.15 Equality Semantics

In the query language, only values of the same type can be compared. However, this rule has one exception: Exact and approximate numeric values can be compared. In such a comparison, the required type conversion adheres to the rules of Java numeric promotion.

The query language treats compared values as if they were Java types and not as if they represented types in the underlying data store. For example, a persistent field that could be either an integer or a `NULL` must be designated as an `Integer` object and not as an `int` primitive. This designation is required because a Java object can be `NULL`, but a primitive cannot.

Two strings are equal only if they contain the same sequence of characters. Trailing blanks are significant; for example, the strings `'abc'` and `'abc '` are not equal.

Two entities of the same abstract schema type are equal only if their primary keys have the same value. [Table 37-9](#) shows the operator logic of a negation, and [Table 37-10](#) shows the truth values of conditional tests.

Table 37–9 NOT Operator Logic

NOT Value	Value
T	F
F	T
U	U

Table 37–10 Conditional Test

Conditional Test	T	F	U
Expression IS TRUE	T	F	F
Expression IS FALSE	F	T	F
Expression is unknown	F	F	T

37.5.6 SELECT Clause

The `SELECT` clause defines the types of the objects or values returned by the query.

37.5.6.1 Return Types

The return type of the `SELECT` clause is defined by the result types of the select expressions contained within it. If multiple expressions are used, the result of the query is an `Object []`, and the elements in the array correspond to the order of the expressions in the `SELECT` clause and in type to the result types of each expression.

A `SELECT` clause cannot specify a collection-valued expression. For example, the `SELECT` clause `p.teams` is invalid because `teams` is a collection. However, the clause in the following query is valid because the `t` is a single element of the `teams` collection:

```
SELECT t
FROM Player p, IN (p.teams) t
```

The following query is an example of a query with multiple expressions in the `SELECT` clause:

```
SELECT c.name, c.country.name
FROM customer c
WHERE c.lastname = 'Coss' AND c.firstname = 'Roxane'
```

This query returns a list of `Object []` elements; the first array element is a string denoting the customer name, and the second array element is a string denoting the name of the customer's country.

The result of a query may be the result of an aggregate function, listed in [Table 37–11](#).

Table 37–11 Aggregate Functions in Select Statements

Name	Return Type	Description
AVG	Double	Returns the mean average of the fields
COUNT	Long	Returns the total number of results
MAX	The type of the field	Returns the highest value in the result set

Table 37–11 (Cont.) Aggregate Functions in Select Statements

Name	Return Type	Description
MIN	The type of the field	Returns the lowest value in the result set
SUM	Long (for integral fields) Double (for floating-point fields) BigInteger (for BigInteger fields) BigDecimal (for BigDecimal fields)	Returns the sum of all the values in the result set

For select method queries with an aggregate function (AVG, COUNT, MAX, MIN, or SUM) in the SELECT clause, the following rules apply:

- The AVG, MAX, MIN, and SUM functions return null if there are no values to which the function can be applied.
- The COUNT function returns 0 if there are no values to which the function can be applied.

The following example returns the average order quantity:

```
SELECT AVG(o.quantity)
FROM Order o
```

The following example returns the total cost of the items ordered by Roxane Coss:

```
SELECT SUM(l.price)
FROM Order o JOIN o.lineItems l JOIN o.customer c
WHERE c.lastname = 'Coss' AND c.firstname = 'Roxane'
```

The following example returns the total number of orders:

```
SELECT COUNT(o)
FROM Order o
```

The following example returns the total number of items that have prices in Hal Incandenza's order:

```
SELECT COUNT(l.price)
FROM Order o JOIN o.lineItems l JOIN o.customer c
WHERE c.lastname = 'Incandenza' AND c.firstname = 'Hal'
```

37.5.6.2 The DISTINCT Keyword

The DISTINCT keyword eliminates duplicate return values. If a query returns a `java.util.Collection`, which allows duplicates, you must specify the DISTINCT keyword to eliminate duplicates.

37.5.6.3 Constructor Expressions

Constructor expressions allow you to return Java instances that store a query result element instead of an `Object[]`.

The following query creates a `CustomerDetail` instance per `Customer` matching the WHERE clause. A `CustomerDetail` stores the customer name and customer's country name. So the query returns a List of `CustomerDetail` instances:

```
SELECT NEW com.xyz.CustomerDetail(c.name, c.country.name)
FROM customer c
WHERE c.lastname = 'Coss' AND c.firstname = 'Roxane'
```

37.5.7 ORDER BY Clause

As its name suggests, the `ORDER BY` clause orders the values or objects returned by the query.

If the `ORDER BY` clause contains multiple elements, the left-to-right sequence of the elements determines the high-to-low precedence.

The `ASC` keyword specifies ascending order, the default, and the `DESC` keyword indicates descending order.

When using the `ORDER BY` clause, the `SELECT` clause must return an orderable set of objects or values. You cannot order the values or objects for values or objects not returned by the `SELECT` clause. For example, the following query is valid because the `ORDER BY` clause uses the objects returned by the `SELECT` clause:

```
SELECT o
FROM Customer c JOIN c.orders o JOIN c.address a
WHERE a.state = 'CA'
ORDER BY o.quantity, o.totalcost
```

The following example is *not* valid, because the `ORDER BY` clause uses a value not returned by the `SELECT` clause:

```
SELECT p.product_name
FROM Order o, IN(o.lineItems) l JOIN o.customer c
WHERE c.lastname = 'Faehmel' AND c.firstname = 'Robert'
ORDER BY o.quantity
```

37.5.8 GROUP BY and HAVING Clauses

The `GROUP BY` clause allows you to group values according to a set of properties.

The following query groups the customers by their country and returns the number of customers per country:

```
SELECT c.country, COUNT(c)
FROM Customer c GROUP BY c.country
```

The `HAVING` clause is used with the `GROUP BY` clause to further restrict the returned result of a query.

The following query groups orders by the status of their customer and returns the customer status plus the average `totalPrice` for all orders where the corresponding customers has the same status. In addition, it considers only customers with status 1, 2, or 3, so orders of other customers are not taken into account:

```
SELECT c.status, AVG(o.totalPrice)
FROM Order o JOIN o.customer c
GROUP BY c.status HAVING c.status IN (1, 2, 3)
```

Using the Criteria API to Create Queries

The Criteria API is used to define queries for entities and their persistent state by creating query-defining objects. Criteria queries are written using Java programming language APIs, are typesafe, and are portable. Such queries work regardless of the underlying data store.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of the Criteria and Metamodel APIs](#)
- [Using the Metamodel API to Model Entity Classes](#)
- [Using the Criteria API and Metamodel API to Create Basic Typesafe Queries](#)

38.1 Overview of the Criteria and Metamodel APIs

Similar to JPQL, the Criteria API is based on the abstract schema of persistent entities, their relationships, and embedded objects. The Criteria API operates on this abstract schema to allow developers to find, modify, and delete persistent entities by invoking Java Persistence API entity operations. The Metamodel API works in concert with the Criteria API to model persistent entity classes for Criteria queries.

The Criteria API and JPQL are closely related and are designed to allow similar operations in their queries. Developers familiar with JPQL syntax will find equivalent object-level operations in the Criteria API.

The following simple Criteria query returns all instances of the `Pet` entity in the data source:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
CriteriaBuilder cb = em.getCriteriaBuilder();
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.select(pet);
TypedQuery<Pet> q = em.createQuery(cq);
List<Pet> allPets = q.getResultList();
```

The equivalent JPQL query is:

```
SELECT p
FROM Pet p
```

This query demonstrates the basic steps to create a Criteria query:

1. Use an `EntityManager` instance to create a `CriteriaBuilder` object.
2. Create a query object by creating an instance of the `CriteriaQuery` interface. This query object's attributes will be modified with the details of the query.

3. Set the query root by calling the `from` method on the `CriteriaQuery` object.
4. Specify what the type of the query result will be by calling the `select` method of the `CriteriaQuery` object.
5. Prepare the query for execution by creating a `TypedQuery<T>` instance, specifying the type of the query result.
6. Execute the query by calling the `getResultList` method on the `TypedQuery<T>` object. Because this query returns a collection of entities, the result is stored in a `List`.

The tasks associated with each step are discussed in detail in this chapter.

To create a `CriteriaBuilder` instance, call the `getCriteriaBuilder` method on the `EntityManager` instance:

```
CriteriaBuilder cb = em.getCriteriaBuilder();
```

The query object is created by using the `CriteriaBuilder` instance:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
```

The query will return instances of the `Pet` entity, so the type of the query is specified when the `CriteriaQuery` object is created to create a typesafe query.

The `FROM` clause of the query is set, and the root of the query specified, by calling the `from` method of the query object:

```
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
```

The `SELECT` clause of the query is set by calling the `select` method of the query object and passing in the query root:

```
cq.select(pet);
```

The query object is now used to create a `TypedQuery<T>` object that can be executed against the data source. The modifications to the query object are captured to create a ready-to-execute query:

```
TypedQuery<Pet> q = em.createQuery(cq);
```

This typed query object is executed by calling its `getResultList` method, because this query will return multiple entity instances. The results are stored in a `List<Pet>` collection-valued object.

```
List<Pet> allPets = q.getResultList();
```

38.2 Using the Metamodel API to Model Entity Classes

The Metamodel API is used to create a metamodel of the managed entities in a particular persistence unit. For each entity class in a particular package, a metamodel class is created with a trailing underscore and with attributes that correspond to the persistent fields or properties of the entity class.

The following entity class, `com.example.Pet`, has four persistent fields: `id`, `name`, `color`, and `owners`:

```
package com.example;
...
@Entity
public class Pet {
```

```

@Id
protected Long id;
protected String name;
protected String color;
@ManyToOne
protected Set<Person> owners;
...
}

```

The corresponding Metamodel class is:

```

package com.example;
...
@Static Metamodel(Pet.class)
public class Pet_ {

    public static volatile SingularAttribute<Pet, Long> id;
    public static volatile SingularAttribute<Pet, String> name;
    public static volatile SingularAttribute<Pet, String> color;
    public static volatile SetAttribute<Pet, Person> owners;
}

```

The metamodel class and its attributes are used in Criteria queries to refer to the managed entity classes and their persistent state and relationships.

38.2.1 Using Metamodel Classes

Metamodel classes that correspond to entity classes are of the following type:

```
javax.persistence.metamodel.EntityType<T>
```

Metamodel classes are typically generated by annotation processors either at development time or at runtime. Developers of applications that use Criteria queries may generate static metamodel classes by using the persistence provider's annotation processor or may obtain the metamodel class by either calling the `getModel` method on the query root object or first obtaining an instance of the `Metamodel` interface and then passing the entity type to the instance's `entity` method.

The following code snippet shows how to obtain the `Pet` entity's metamodel class by calling `Root<T>.getModel`:

```

EntityManager em = ...;
CriteriaBuilder cb = em.getCriteriaBuilder();
CriteriaQuery cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
EntityType<Pet> Pet_ = pet.getModel();

```

The following code snippet shows how to obtain the `Pet` entity's metamodel class by first obtaining a metamodel instance by using `EntityManager.getMetamodel` and then calling `entity` on the metamodel instance:

```

EntityManager em = ...;
Metamodel m = em.getMetamodel();
EntityType<Pet> Pet_ = m.entity(Pet.class);

```

Note: The most common use case is to generate type-safe static metamodel classes at development time. Obtaining the metamodel classes dynamically, by calling `Root<T>.getModel` or `EntityManager.getMetamodel` and then the `entity` method, doesn't allow for type-safety and doesn't allow the application to call persistent field or property names on the metamodel class.

38.3 Using the Criteria API and Metamodel API to Create Basic Typesafe Queries

The basic semantics of a Criteria query consists of a `SELECT` clause, a `FROM` clause, and an optional `WHERE` clause, similar to a JPQL query. Criteria queries set these clauses by using Java programming language objects, so the query can be created in a typesafe manner.

38.3.1 Creating a Criteria Query

The `javax.persistence.criteria.CriteriaBuilder` interface is used to construct

- Criteria queries
- Selections
- Expressions
- Predicates
- Ordering

To obtain an instance of the `CriteriaBuilder` interface, call the `getCriteriaBuilder` method on either an `EntityManager` or an `EntityManagerFactory` instance.

The following code shows how to obtain a `CriteriaBuilder` instance by using the `EntityManager.getCriteriaBuilder` method.

```
EntityManager em = ...;
CriteriaBuilder cb = em.getCriteriaBuilder();
```

Criteria queries are constructed by obtaining an instance of the following interface:

```
javax.persistence.criteria.CriteriaQuery
```

`CriteriaQuery` objects define a particular query that will navigate over one or more entities. Obtain `CriteriaQuery` instances by calling one of the `CriteriaBuilder.createQuery` methods. For creating typesafe queries, call the `CriteriaBuilder.createQuery` method as follows:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
```

The `CriteriaQuery` object's type should be set to the expected result type of the query. In the preceding code, the object's type is set to `CriteriaQuery<Pet>` for a query that will find instances of the `Pet` entity.

In the following code snippet, a `CriteriaQuery` object is created for a query that returns a `String`:

```
CriteriaQuery<String> cq = cb.createQuery(String.class);
```

38.3.2 Query Roots

For a particular `CriteriaQuery` object, the root entity of the query, from which all navigation originates, is called the **query root**. It is similar to the `FROM` clause in a JPQL query.

Create the query root by calling the `from` method on the `CriteriaQuery` instance. The argument to the `from` method is either the entity class or an `EntityType<T>` instance for the entity.

The following code sets the query root to the `Pet` entity:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
```

The following code sets the query root to the `Pet` class by using an `EntityType<T>` instance:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
Metamodel m = em.getMetamodel();
EntityType<Pet> Pet_ = m.entity(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet_);
```

Criteria queries may have more than one query root. This usually occurs when the query navigates from several entities.

The following code has two `Root` instances:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet1 = cq.from(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet2 = cq.from(Pet.class);
```

38.3.3 Querying Relationships Using Joins

For queries that navigate to related entity classes, the query must define a join to the related entity by calling one of the `From.join` methods on the query root object or another join object. The `join` methods are similar to the `JOIN` keyword in JPQL.

The target of the join uses the Metamodel class of type `EntityType<T>` to specify the persistent field or property of the joined entity.

The `join` methods return an object of type `Join<X, Y>`, where `X` is the source entity and `Y` is the target of the join. In the following code snippet, `Pet` is the source entity, `Owner` is the target, and `Pet_` is a statically generated metamodel class:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);

Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
Join<Pet, Owner> owner = pet.join(Pet_.owners);
```

Joins can be chained together to navigate to related entities of the target entity without having to create a `Join<X, Y>` instance for each join:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);

Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
Join<Owner, Address> address = cq.join(Pet_.owners).join(Owner_.addresses);
```

38.3.4 Path Navigation in Criteria Queries

Path objects are used in the `SELECT` and `WHERE` clauses of a Criteria query and can be query root entities, join entities, or other Path objects. The `Path.get` method is used to navigate to attributes of the entities of a query.

The argument to the `get` method is the corresponding attribute of the entity's Metamodel class. The attribute can either be a single-valued attribute, specified by `@SingularAttribute` in the Metamodel class, or a collection-valued attribute, specified by one of `@CollectionAttribute`, `@SetAttribute`, `@ListAttribute`, or `@MapAttribute`.

The following query returns the names of all the pets in the data store. The `get` method is called on the query root, `pet`, with the name attribute of the `Pet` entity's Metamodel class, `Pet_.name`, as the argument:

```
CriteriaQuery<String> cq = cb.createQuery(String.class);

Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.select(pet.get(Pet_.name));
```

38.3.5 Restricting Criteria Query Results

The results of a query can be restricted on the `CriteriaQuery` object according to conditions set by calling the `CriteriaQuery.where` method. Calling the `where` method is analogous to setting the `WHERE` clause in a JPQL query.

The `where` method evaluates instances of the `Expression` interface to restrict the results according to the conditions of the expressions. `Expression` instances are created by using methods defined in the `Expression` and `CriteriaBuilder` interfaces.

38.3.5.1 The Expression Interface Methods

An `Expression` object is used in a query's `SELECT`, `WHERE`, or `HAVING` clause. [Table 38–1](#) shows conditional methods you can use with `Expression` objects.

Table 38–1 Conditional Methods in the Expression Interface

Method	Description
<code>isNull</code>	Tests whether an expression is null
<code>isNotNull</code>	Tests whether an expression is not null
<code>in</code>	Tests whether an expression is within a list of values

The following query uses the `Expression.isNull` method to find all pets where the color attribute is null:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.where(pet.get(Pet_.color).isNull());
```

The following query uses the `Expression.in` method to find all brown and black pets:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.where(pet.get(Pet_.color).in("brown", "black"));
```

The `in` method also can check whether an attribute is a member of a collection.

38.3.5.2 Expression Methods in the CriteriaBuilder Interface

The `CriteriaBuilder` interface defines additional methods for creating expressions. These methods correspond to the arithmetic, string, date, time, and case operators and functions of JPQL. [Table 38–2](#) shows conditional methods you can use with `CriteriaBuilder` objects.

Table 38–2 Conditional Methods in the `CriteriaBuilder` Interface

Conditional Method	Description
<code>equal</code>	Tests whether two expressions are equal
<code>notEqual</code>	Tests whether two expressions are not equal
<code>gt</code>	Tests whether the first numeric expression is greater than the second numeric expression
<code>ge</code>	Tests whether the first numeric expression is greater than or equal to the second numeric expression
<code>lt</code>	Tests whether the first numeric expression is less than the second numeric expression
<code>le</code>	Tests whether the first numeric expression is less than or equal to the second numeric expression
<code>between</code>	Tests whether the first expression is between the second and third expression in value
<code>like</code>	Tests whether the expression matches a given pattern

The following code uses the `CriteriaBuilder.equal` method:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.where(cb.equal(pet.get(Pet_.name), "Fido"));
...
```

The following code uses the `CriteriaBuilder.gt` method:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
Date someDate = new Date(...);
cq.where(cb.gt(pet.get(Pet_.birthday), date));
```

The following code uses the `CriteriaBuilder.between` method:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
Date firstDate = new Date(...);
Date secondDate = new Date(...);
cq.where(cb.between(pet.get(Pet_.birthday), firstDate, secondDate));
```

The following code uses the `CriteriaBuilder.like` method:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.where(cb.like(pet.get(Pet_.name), "*do"));
```

Multiple conditional predicates can be specified by using the compound predicate methods of the `CriteriaBuilder` interface, as shown in [Table 38–3](#).

Table 38–3 Compound Predicate Methods in the CriteriaBuilder Interface

Method	Description
and	A logical conjunction of two Boolean expressions
or	A logical disjunction of two Boolean expressions
not	A logical negation of the given Boolean expression

The following code shows the use of compound predicates in queries:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.where(cb.equal(pet.get(Pet_.name), "Fido")
        .and(cb.equal(pet.get(Pet_.color), "brown")));
```

38.3.6 Managing Criteria Query Results

For queries that return more than one result, it's often helpful to organize those results. The `CriteriaQuery` interface defines the `orderBy` method to order query results according to attributes of an entity. The `CriteriaQuery` interface also defines the `groupBy` method to group the results of a query together according to attributes of an entity, and the `having` method to restrict those groups according to a condition.

38.3.6.1 Ordering Results

The order of the results of a query can be set by calling the `CriteriaQuery.orderBy` method and passing in an `Order` object. `Order` objects are created by calling either the `CriteriaBuilder.asc` or the `CriteriaBuilder.desc` method. The `asc` method is used to order the results by ascending value of the passed expression parameter. The `desc` method is used to order the results by descending value of the passed expression parameter. The following query shows the use of the `desc` method:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.select(pet);
cq.orderBy(cb.desc(pet.get(Pet_.birthday)));
```

In this query, the results will be ordered by the pet's birthday from highest to lowest. That is, pets born in December will appear before pets born in May.

The following query shows the use of the `asc` method:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
Join<Owner, Address> address = cq.join(Pet_.owners).join(Owner_.address);
cq.select(pet);
cq.orderBy(cb.asc(address.get(Address_.postalCode)));
```

In this query, the results will be ordered by the pet owner's postal code from lowest to highest. That is, pets whose owner lives in the 10001 zip code will appear before pets whose owner lives in the 91000 zip code.

If more than one `Order` object is passed to `orderBy`, the precedence is determined by the order in which they appear in the argument list of `orderBy`. The first `Order` object has precedence.

The following code orders results by multiple criteria:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
```

```

Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
Join<Pet, Owner> owner = cq.join(Pet_.owners);
cq.select(pet);
cq.orderBy(cb.asc(owner.get(Owner_.lastName)), owner.get(Owner_.firstName));

```

The results of this query will be ordered alphabetically by the pet owner's last name, then first name.

38.3.6.2 Grouping Results

The `CriteriaQuery.groupBy` method partitions the query results into groups. These groups are set by passing an expression to `groupBy`:

```

CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.groupBy(pet.get(Pet_.color));

```

This query returns all `Pet` entities and groups the results by the pet's color.

The `CriteriaQuery.having` method is used in conjunction with `groupBy` to filter over the groups. The `having` method takes a conditional expression as a parameter. By calling the `having` method, the query result is restricted according to the conditional expression:

```

CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.groupBy(pet.get(Pet_.color));
cq.having(cb.in(pet.get(Pet_.color)).value("brown").value("blonde"));

```

In this example, the query groups the returned `Pet` entities by color, as in the preceding example. However, the only returned groups will be `Pet` entities where the color attribute is set to brown or blonde. That is, no gray-colored pets will be returned in this query.

38.3.7 Executing Queries

To prepare a query for execution, create a `TypedQuery<T>` object with the type of the query result by passing the `CriteriaQuery` object to `EntityManager.createQuery`.

Queries are executed by calling either `getSingleResult` or `getResultList` on the `TypedQuery<T>` object.

38.3.7.1 Single-Valued Query Results

The `TypedQuery<T>.getSingleResult` method is used for executing queries that return a single result:

```

CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
...
TypedQuery<Pet> q = em.createQuery(cq);
Pet result = q.getSingleResult();

```

38.3.7.2 Collection-Valued Query Results

The `TypedQuery<T>.getResultList` method is used for executing queries that return a collection of objects:

```

CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
...
TypedQuery<Pet> q = em.createQuery(cq);
List<Pet> results = q.getResultList();

```

Creating and Using String-Based Criteria Queries

This chapter describes how to create weakly-typed string-based Criteria API queries.

39.1 Overview of String-Based Criteria API Queries

String-based Criteria API queries ("string-based queries") are Java programming language queries that use strings rather than strongly-typed metamodel objects to specify entity attributes when traversing a data hierarchy. String-based queries are constructed similarly to metamodel queries, can be static or dynamic, and can express the same kind of queries and operations as strongly-typed metamodel queries.

Strongly-typed metamodel queries are the preferred method of constructing Criteria API queries. The main advantage of string-based queries over metamodel queries is the ability to construct Criteria queries at development time without the need to generate static metamodel classes or otherwise access dynamically generated metamodel classes. The main disadvantage to string-based queries is their lack of type safety, which may lead to runtime errors due to type mismatches that would be caught at development time when using strongly-typed metamodel queries.

For information on constructing criteria queries, see [Chapter 38, "Using the Criteria API to Create Queries"](#).

39.1.1 Creating String-Based Queries

To create a string-based query, specify the attribute names of entity classes directly as strings, rather than the attributes of the metamodel class. For example, this query finds all `Pet` entities where the value of the `name` attribute is `Fido`:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.where(cb.equal(pet.get("name"), "Fido"));
...
```

The name of the attribute is specified as a string. This query is the equivalent of the following metamodel query:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Metamodel m = em.getMetamodel();
EntityType<Pet> Pet_ = m.entity(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.where(cb.equal(pet.get(Pet_.name), "Fido"));
```

Note: Type mismatch errors in string-based queries won't appear until the code is executed at runtime, unlike in the above metamodel query, where type mismatches will be caught at compile time.

Joins are specified in the same way:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
Join<Owner, Address> address = pet.join("owners").join("addresses");
...
```

All the conditional expressions, method expressions, path navigation methods, and result restriction methods used in metamodel queries can be used in string-based queries. In each case, the attributes are specified using strings. For example, here is a string-based query that uses the `in` expression:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.where(pet.get("color").in("brown", "black"));
```

Here is a string-based query that orders the results in descending order by date:

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.select(pet);
cq.orderBy(cb.desc(pet.get("birthday")));
```

39.1.2 Executing String-Based Queries

String-based queries are executed similarly to strongly-typed Criteria queries. First create a `javax.persistence.TypedQuery` object by passing the criteria query object to the `EntityManager.createQuery` method and then call either `getSingleResult` or `getResultList` on the query object to execute the query.

```
CriteriaQuery<Pet> cq = cb.createQuery(Pet.class);
Root<Pet> pet = cq.from(Pet.class);
cq.where(cb.equal(pet.get("name"), "Fido"));
TypedQuery<Pet> q = em.createQuery(cq);
List<Pet> results = q.getResultList();
```

Controlling Concurrent Access to Entity Data with Locking

This chapter details how to handle concurrent access to entity data, and the locking strategies available to Java Persistence API application developers.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of Entity Locking and Concurrency](#)
- [Lock Modes](#)

40.1 Overview of Entity Locking and Concurrency

Entity data is **concurrently accessed** if the data in a data source is accessed at the same time by multiple applications. Special care must be taken to ensure that the underlying data's integrity is preserved when accessed concurrently.

When data is updated in the database tables in a transaction, the persistence provider assumes the database management system will hold short-term read locks and long-term write locks to maintain data integrity. Most persistence providers will delay database writes until the end of the transaction, except when the application explicitly calls for a flush (that is, the application calls the `EntityManager.flush` method or executes queries with the flush mode set to `AUTO`).

By default, persistence providers use **optimistic locking**, where, before committing changes to the data, the persistence provider checks that no other transaction has modified or deleted the data since the data was read. This is accomplished by a version column in the database table, with a corresponding version attribute in the entity class. When a row is modified, the version value is incremented. The original transaction checks the version attribute, and if the data has been modified by another transaction, a `javax.persistence.OptimisticLockException` will be thrown, and the original transaction will be rolled back. When the application specifies optimistic lock modes, the persistence provider verifies that a particular entity has not changed since it was read from the database even if the entity data was not modified.

Pessimistic locking goes further than optimistic locking. With pessimistic locking, the persistence provider creates a transaction that obtains a long-term lock on the data until the transaction is completed, which prevents other transactions from modifying or deleting the data until the lock has ended. Pessimistic locking is a better strategy than optimistic locking when the underlying data is frequently accessed and modified by many transactions.

Note: Using pessimistic locks on entities that are not subject to frequent modification may result in decreased application performance.

40.1.1 Using Optimistic Locking

The `javax.persistence.Version` annotation is used to mark a persistent field or property as a version attribute of an entity. By adding a version attribute, the entity is enabled for optimistic concurrency control. The version attribute is read and updated by the persistence provider when an entity instance is modified during a transaction. The application may read the version attribute, but *must not* modify the value.

Note: Although some persistence providers may support optimistic locking for entities that do not have version attributes, portable applications should always use entities with version attributes when using optimistic locking. If the application attempts to lock an entity without a version attribute, and the persistence provider doesn't support optimistic locking for non-versioned entities, a `PersistenceException` will be thrown.

The `@Version` annotation has the following requirements:

- Only a single `@Version` attribute may be defined per entity.
- The `@Version` attribute must be in the primary table for an entity mapped to multiple tables.
- The type of the `@Version` attribute must be one of the following: `int`, `Integer`, `long`, `Long`, `short`, `Short`, or `java.sql.Timestamp`.

The following code snippet shows how to define a version attribute in an entity with persistent fields:

```
@Version
protected int version;
```

The following code snippet shows how to define a version attribute in an entity with persistent properties:

```
@Version
protected Short getVersion() { ... }
```

40.2 Lock Modes

The application may increase the level of locking for an entity by specifying the use of lock modes. Lock modes may be specified to increase the level of optimistic locking or to request the use of pessimistic locks.

The use of optimistic lock modes causes the persistence provider to check the version attributes for entities that were read (but not modified) during a transaction as well as for entities that were updated.

The use of pessimistic lock modes specifies that the persistence provider is to immediately acquire long-term read or write locks for the database data corresponding to entity state.

The lock mode for an entity operation may be set by specifying one of the lock modes defined in the `javax.persistence.LockModeType` enumerated type, listed in [Table 40-1](#).

Table 40-1 Lock Modes for Concurrent Entity Access

Lock Mode	Description
OPTIMISTIC	Obtain an optimistic read lock for all entities with version attributes.
OPTIMISTIC_FORCE_INCREMENT	Obtain an optimistic read lock for all entities with version attributes, and increment the version attribute value.
PESSIMISTIC_READ	Immediately obtain a long-term read lock on the data to prevent the data from being modified or deleted. Other transactions may read the data while the lock is maintained, but may not modify or delete the data. The persistence provider is permitted to obtain a database write lock when a read lock was requested, but not vice versa.
PESSIMISTIC_WRITE	Immediately obtain a long-term write lock on the data to prevent the data from being read, modified, or deleted.
PESSIMISTIC_FORCE_INCREMENT	Immediately obtain a long-term lock on the data to prevent the data from being modified or deleted, and increment the version attribute of versioned entities.
READ	A synonym for <code>OPTIMISTIC</code> . Use of <code>LockModeType.OPTIMISTIC</code> is to be preferred for new applications.
WRITE	A synonym for <code>OPTIMISTIC_FORCE_INCREMENT</code> . Use of <code>LockModeType.OPTIMISTIC_FORCE_INCREMENT</code> is to be preferred for new applications.
NONE	No additional locking will occur on the data in the database.

40.2.1 Setting the Lock Mode

The lock mode may be specified by one of the following techniques:

- Calling the `EntityManager.lock` and passing in one of the lock modes:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
Person person = ...;
em.lock(person, LockModeType.OPTIMISTIC);
```

- Calling one of the `EntityManager.find` methods that takes the lock mode as a parameter:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
String personPK = ...;
Person person = em.find(Person.class, personPK, LockModeType.PESSIMISTIC_WRITE);
```

- Calling one of the `EntityManager.refresh` methods that takes the lock mode as a parameter:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
String personPK = ...;
Person person = em.find(Person.class, personPK);
...
em.refresh(person, LockModeType.OPTIMISTIC_FORCE_INCREMENT);
```

- Calling the `Query.setLockMode` or `TypedQuery.setLockMode` method, passing the lock mode as the parameter:

```
Query q = em.createQuery(...);
q.setLockMode(LockModeType.PESSIMISTIC_FORCE_INCREMENT);
```

- Adding a lockMode element to the `@NamedQuery` annotation:

```
@NamedQuery(name="lockPersonQuery",
    query="SELECT p FROM Person p WHERE p.name LIKE :name",
    lockMode=PESSIMISTIC_READ)
```

40.2.2 Using Pessimistic Locking

Versioned entities as well as entities that do not have version attributes can be locked pessimistically.

To lock entities pessimistically, set the lock mode to `PESSIMISTIC_READ`, `PESSIMISTIC_WRITE`, or `PESSIMISTIC_FORCE_INCREMENT`.

If a pessimistic lock cannot be obtained on the database rows, and the failure to lock the data results in a transaction rollback, a `PessimisticLockException` is thrown. If a pessimistic lock cannot be obtained, but the locking failure doesn't result in a transaction rollback, a `LockTimeoutException` is thrown.

Pessimistically locking a version entity with `PESSIMISTIC_FORCE_INCREMENT` results in the version attribute being incremented even if the entity data is unmodified. When pessimistically locking a versioned entity, the persistence provider will perform the version checks that occur during optimistic locking, and if the version check fails, an `OptimisticLockException` will be thrown. Attempting to lock a non-versioned entity with `PESSIMISTIC_FORCE_INCREMENT` is not portable and may result in a `PersistenceException` if the persistence provider doesn't support optimistic locks for non-versioned entities. Locking a versioned entity with `PESSIMISTIC_WRITE` results in the version attribute being incremented if the transaction was successfully committed.

40.2.2.1 Pessimistic Locking Timeouts

The length of time in milliseconds the persistence provider should wait to obtain a lock on the database tables may be specified using the `javax.persistence.lock.timeout` property. If the time it takes to obtain a lock exceeds the value of this property, a `LockTimeoutException` will be thrown, but the current transaction will not be marked for rollback. If this property is set to 0, the persistence provider should throw a `LockTimeoutException` if it cannot immediately obtain a lock.

Note: Portable applications should not rely on the setting of `javax.persistence.lock.timeout`, as the locking strategy and underlying database may mean that the timeout value cannot be used. The value of `javax.persistence.lock.timeout` is a hint, not a contract.

This property may be set programmatically by passing it to the `EntityManager` methods that allow lock modes to be specified, the `Query.setLockMode` and `TypedQuery.setLockMode` methods, the `@NamedQuery` annotation, and as a property to the `Persistence.createEntityManagerFactory` method. It may also be set as a property in the `persistence.xml` deployment descriptor.

If `javax.persistence.lock.timeout` is set in multiple places, the value will be determined in the following order:

1. The argument to one of the `EntityManager` or `Query` methods.
2. The setting in the `@NamedQuery` annotation.
3. The argument to the `Persistence.createEntityManagerFactory` method.
4. The value in the `persistence.xml` deployment descriptor.

Using a Second-Level Cache with Java Persistence API Applications

This chapter explains how to modify the second-level cache mode settings to improve the performance of applications that use the Java Persistence API.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of the Second-Level Cache](#)
- [Specifying the Cache Mode Settings to Improve Performance](#)

41.1 Overview of the Second-Level Cache

A **second-level cache** is a local store of entity data managed by the persistence provider to improve application performance. A second-level cache helps improve performance by avoiding expensive database calls, keeping the entity data local to the application. A second-level cache is typically transparent to the application, as it is managed by the persistence provider and underlies the persistence context of an application. That is, the application reads and commits data through the normal entity manager operations without knowing about the cache.

Note: Persistence providers are not required to support a second-level cache. Portable applications should not rely on support by persistence providers for a second-level cache.

The second-level cache for a persistence unit may be configured to one of several second-level cache modes. The following cache mode settings are defined by the Java Persistence API.

Table 41–1 *Cache Mode Settings for the Second-Level Cache*

Cache Mode Setting	Description
ALL	All entity data is stored in the second-level cache for this persistence unit.
NONE	No data is cached in the persistence unit. The persistence provider must not cache any data.
ENABLE_SELECTIVE	Enable caching for entities that have been explicitly set with the <code>@Cacheable</code> annotation.
DISABLE_SELECTIVE	Enable caching for all entities except those that have been explicitly set with the <code>@Cacheable(false)</code> annotation.

Table 41–1 (Cont.) Cache Mode Settings for the Second-Level Cache

Cache Mode Setting	Description
UNSPECIFIED	The caching behavior for the persistence unit is undefined. The persistence provider's default caching behavior will be used.

One consequence of using a second-level cache in an application is that the underlying data may have changed in the database tables, while the value in the cache has not, a circumstance called a **stale read**. Stale reads may be avoided by changing the second-level cache to one of the cache mode settings, controlling which entities may be cached (described in [Controlling Whether Entities May Be Cached](#)), or changing the cache's retrieval or store modes (described in [Setting the Cache Retrieval and Store Modes](#)). Which strategies best avoid stale reads are application dependent.

41.1.1 Controlling Whether Entities May Be Cached

The `javax.persistence.Cacheable` annotation is used to specify that an entity class, and any subclasses, may be cached when using the `ENABLE_SELECTIVE` or `DISABLE_SELECTIVE` cache modes. Subclasses may override the `@Cacheable` setting by adding a `@Cacheable` annotation and changing the value.

To specify that an entity may be cached, add a `@Cacheable` annotation at the class level:

```
@Cacheable
@Entity
public class Person { ... }
```

By default, the `@Cacheable` annotation is `true`. The following example is equivalent:

```
@Cacheable(true)
@Entity
public class Person{ ... }
```

To specify that an entity must not be cached, add a `@Cacheable` annotation and set it to `false`:

```
@Cacheable(false)
@Entity
public class OrderStatus { ... }
```

When the `ENABLE_SELECTIVE` cache mode is set, the persistence provider will cache any entities that have the `@Cacheable(true)` annotation and any subclasses of that entity that have not been overridden. The persistence provider will not cache entities that have `@Cacheable(false)` or have no `@Cacheable` annotation. That is, the `ENABLE_SELECTIVE` mode will cache only entities that have been explicitly marked for the cache using the `@Cacheable` annotation.

When the `DISABLE_SELECTIVE` cache mode is set, the persistence provider will cache any entities that *do not* have the `@Cacheable(false)` annotation. Entities that do not have `@Cacheable` annotations, and entities with the `@Cacheable(true)` annotation will be cached. That is, the `DISABLE_SELECTIVE` mode will cache all entities that have not been explicitly prevented from being cached.

If the cache mode is set to `UNDEFINED`, or is left unset, the behavior of entities annotated with `@Cacheable` is undefined. If the cache mode is set to `ALL` or `NONE`, the value of the `@Cacheable` annotation is ignored by the persistence provider.

41.2 Specifying the Cache Mode Settings to Improve Performance

To adjust the cache mode settings for a persistence unit, specify one of the cache modes as the value of the `shared-cache-mode` element in the `persistence.xml` deployment descriptor (shown in **bold**):

```
<persistence-unit name="examplePU" transaction-type="JTA">
  <provider>org.eclipse.persistence.jpa.PersistenceProvider</provider>
  <jta-data-source>java:comp/DefaultDataSource</jta-data-source>
  <shared-cache-mode>DISABLE_SELECTIVE</shared-cache-mode>
</persistence-unit>
```

Note: Because support for a second-level cache is not required by the Java Persistence API specification, setting the second-level cache mode in `persistence.xml` will have no effect when using a persistence provider that does not implement a second-level cache.

Alternatively, the shared cache mode may be specified by setting the `javax.persistence.sharedCache.mode` property to one of the shared cache mode settings:

```
EntityManagerFactory emf =
    Persistence.createEntityManagerFactory(
        "myExamplePU", new Properties().add(
            "javax.persistence.sharedCache.mode", "ENABLE_SELECTIVE"));
```

41.2.1 Setting the Cache Retrieval and Store Modes

If the second-level cache has been enabled for a persistence unit by setting the shared cache mode, the behavior of the second-level cache can be further modified by setting the `javax.persistence.cache.retrieveMode` and `javax.persistence.cache.storeMode` properties. These properties may be set at the persistence context level by passing the property name and value to the `EntityManager.setProperty` method, or may be set on a per-`EntityManager` operation (`EntityManager.find` or `EntityManager.refresh`) or per-query level.

41.2.1.1 Cache Retrieval Mode

The cache retrieval mode, set by the `javax.persistence.retrieveMode` property, controls how data is read from the cache for calls to the `EntityManager.find` method and from queries.

The `retrieveMode` property can be set to one of the constants defined by the `javax.persistence.CacheRetrieveMode` enumerated type, either `USE` (the default) or `BYPASS`. When it is set to `USE`, data is retrieved from the second-level cache, if available. If the data is not in the cache, the persistence provider will read it from the database. When it is set to `BYPASS`, the second-level cache is bypassed and a call to the database is made to retrieve the data.

41.2.1.2 Cache Store Mode

The cache store mode, set by the `javax.persistence.storeMode` property, controls how data is stored in the cache.

The `storeMode` property can be set to one of the constants defined by the `javax.persistence.CacheStoreMode` enumerated type, either `USE` (the default),

`BYPASS`, or `REFRESH`. When set to `USE` the cache data is created or updated when data is read from or committed to the database. If data is already in the cache, setting the store mode to `USE` will not force a refresh when data is read from the database.

When the store mode is set to `BYPASS`, data read from or committed to the database is *not* inserted or updated in the cache. That is, the cache is unchanged.

When the store mode is set to `REFRESH`, the cache data is created or updated when data is read from or committed to the database, and a refresh is forced on data in the cache upon database reads.

41.2.1.3 Setting the Cache Retrieval or Store Mode

To set the cache retrieval or store mode for the persistence context, call the `EntityManager.setProperty` method with the property name and value pair:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
em.setProperty("javax.persistence.cache.storeMode", "BYPASS");
```

To set the cache retrieval or store mode when calling the `EntityManager.find` or `EntityManager.refresh` methods, first create a `Map<String, Object>` instance and add a name/value pair as follows:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
Map<String, Object> props = new HashMap<String, Object>();
props.put("javax.persistence.cache.retrieveMode", "BYPASS");
String personPK = ...;
Person person = em.find(Person.class, personPK, props);
```

Note: The cache retrieve mode is ignored when calling the `EntityManager.refresh` method, as calls to refresh always result in data being read from the database, not the cache.

To set the retrieval or store mode when using queries, call the `Query.setHint` or `TypedQuery.setHint` methods, depending on the type of query:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
CriteriaQuery<Person> cq = ...;
TypedQuery<Person> q = em.createQuery(cq);
q.setHint("javax.persistence.cache.storeMode", "REFRESH");
...
```

Setting the store or retrieve mode in a query or when calling the `EntityManager.find` or `EntityManager.refresh` method overrides the setting of the entity manager.

41.2.2 Controlling the Second-Level Cache Programmatically

The `javax.persistence.Cache` interface defines methods for interacting with the second-level cache programmatically. The `Cache` interface defines methods to check whether a particular entity has cached data, to remove a particular entity from the cache, to remove all instances (and instances of subclasses) of an entity class from the cache, and to clear the cache of all entity data.

Note: If the second-level cache has been disabled, calls to the `Cache` interface's methods have no effect, except for `contains`, which will always return `false`.

41.2.2.1 Checking Whether An Entity's Data is Cached

Call the `Cache.contains` method to find out whether a given entity is currently in the second-level cache. The `contains` method returns `true` if the entity's data is cached, and `false` if the data is not in the cache.

```
EntityManager em = ...;
Cache cache = em.getEntityManagerFactory().getCache();
String personPK = ...;
if (cache.contains(Person.class, personPK)) {
    // the data is cached
} else {
    // the data is NOT cached
}
```

41.2.2.2 Removing an Entity from the Cache

Call one of the `Cache.evict` methods to remove a particular entity or all entities of a given type from the second-level cache. To remove a particular entity from the cache, call the `evict` method and pass in the entity class and the primary key of the entity:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
Cache cache = em.getEntityManagerFactory().getCache();
String personPK = ...;
cache.evict(Person.class, personPK);
```

To remove all instances of a particular entity class, including subclasses, call the `evict` method and specify the entity class:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
Cache cache = em.getEntityManagerFactory().getCache();
cache.evict(Person.class);
```

All instances of the `Person` entity class will be removed from the cache. If the `Person` entity has a subclass, `Student`, calls to the above method will remove all instances of `Student` from the cache as well.

41.2.2.3 Removing All Data from the Cache

Call the `Cache.evictAll` method to completely clear the second-level cache:

```
EntityManager em = ...;
Cache cache = em.getEntityManagerFactory().getCache();
cache.evictAll();
```


Part VIII

Messaging

Part VIII introduces messaging. This part contains the following chapters:

- [Chapter 42, "Java Message Service Concepts"](#)
- [Chapter 43, "Java Message Service Examples"](#)

Java Message Service Concepts

This chapter provides an introduction to the Java Message Service (JMS) API, a Java API that allows applications to create, send, receive, and read messages using reliable, asynchronous, loosely coupled communication. It covers the following topics:

- [Overview of the JMS API](#)
- [Basic JMS API Concepts](#)
- [The JMS API Programming Model](#)
- [Using Advanced JMS Features](#)
- [Using the JMS API in Java EE Applications](#)
- [Further Information about JMS](#)

42.1 Overview of the JMS API

This overview defines the concept of messaging, describes the JMS API and where it can be used, and explains how the JMS API works within the Java EE platform.

42.1.1 What Is Messaging?

Messaging is a method of communication between software components or applications. A messaging system is a peer-to-peer facility: A messaging client can send messages to, and receive messages from, any other client. Each client connects to a messaging agent that provides facilities for creating, sending, receiving, and reading messages.

Messaging enables distributed communication that is **loosely coupled**. A component sends a message to a destination, and the recipient can retrieve the message from the destination. What makes the communication loosely coupled is that the destination is all that the sender and receiver have in common. The sender and the receiver do not have to be available at the same time in order to communicate. In fact, the sender does not need to know anything about the receiver; nor does the receiver need to know anything about the sender. The sender and the receiver need to know only which message format and which destination to use. In this respect, messaging differs from tightly coupled technologies, such as Remote Method Invocation (RMI), which require an application to know a remote application's methods.

Messaging also differs from electronic mail (email), which is a method of communication between people or between software applications and people. Messaging is used for communication between software applications or software components.

42.1.2 What Is the JMS API?

The Java Message Service is a Java API that allows applications to create, send, receive, and read messages. The JMS API defines a common set of interfaces and associated semantics that allow programs written in the Java programming language to communicate with other messaging implementations.

The JMS API minimizes the set of concepts a programmer must learn in order to use messaging products but provides enough features to support sophisticated messaging applications. It also strives to maximize the portability of JMS applications across JMS providers.

JMS enables communication that is not only loosely coupled but also:

- **Asynchronous:** A receiving client does not have to receive messages at the same time the sending client sends them. The sending client can send them and go on to other tasks; the receiving client can receive them much later.
- **Reliable:** A messaging provider that implements the JMS API can ensure that a message is delivered once and only once. Lower levels of reliability are available for applications that can afford to miss messages or to receive duplicate messages.

The current version of the JMS specification is Version 2.0. You can download a copy of the specification from the Java Community Process web site:

<http://www.jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=343>.

42.1.3 When Can You Use the JMS API?

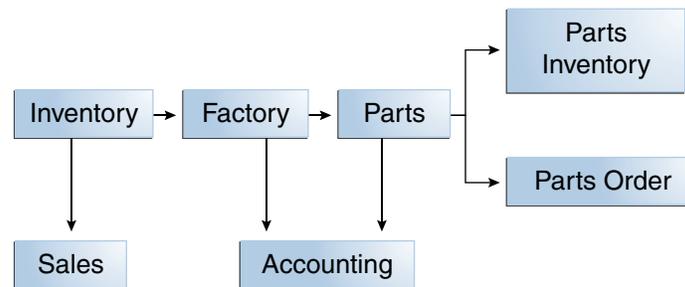
An enterprise application provider is likely to choose a messaging API over a tightly coupled API, such as a remote procedure call (RPC), under the following circumstances.

- The provider wants the components not to depend on information about other components' interfaces, so components can be easily replaced.
- The provider wants the application to run whether or not all components are up and running simultaneously.
- The application business model allows a component to send information to another and to continue to operate without receiving an immediate response.

For example, components of an enterprise application for an automobile manufacturer can use the JMS API in situations like these:

- The inventory component can send a message to the factory component when the inventory level for a product goes below a certain level so the factory can make more cars.
- The factory component can send a message to the parts components so the factory can assemble the parts it needs.
- The parts components in turn can send messages to their own inventory and order components to update their inventories and to order new parts from suppliers.
- Both the factory and the parts components can send messages to the accounting component to update budget numbers.
- The business can publish updated catalog items to its sales force.

Using messaging for these tasks allows the various components to interact with one another efficiently, without tying up network or other resources. [Figure 42–1](#) illustrates how this simple example might work.

Figure 42–1 Messaging in an Enterprise Application

Manufacturing is only one example of how an enterprise can use the JMS API. Retail applications, financial services applications, health services applications, and many others can make use of messaging.

42.1.4 How Does the JMS API Work with the Java EE Platform?

When the JMS API was first introduced, its most important purpose was to allow Java applications to access existing messaging-oriented middleware (MOM) systems. Since that time, many vendors have adopted and implemented the JMS API, so a JMS product can now provide a complete messaging capability for an enterprise.

The JMS API is an integral part of the Java EE platform, and application developers can use messaging with Java EE components. JMS 2.0 is part of the Java EE 7 release.

The JMS API in the Java EE platform has the following features.

- Application clients, Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) components, and web components can send or synchronously receive a JMS message. Application clients can in addition set a message listener that allows JMS messages to be delivered to it asynchronously by being notified when a message is available.
- Message-driven beans, which are a kind of enterprise bean, enable the asynchronous consumption of messages in the EJB container. An application server typically pools message-driven beans to implement concurrent processing of messages.
- Message send and receive operations can participate in Java Transaction API (JTA) transactions, which allow JMS operations and database accesses to take place within a single transaction.

The JMS API enhances the other parts of the Java EE platform by simplifying enterprise development, allowing loosely coupled, reliable, asynchronous interactions among Java EE components and legacy systems capable of messaging. A developer can easily add new behavior to a Java EE application that has existing business events by adding a new message-driven bean to operate on specific business events. The Java EE platform, moreover, enhances the JMS API by providing support for JTA transactions and allowing for the concurrent consumption of messages. For more information, see the Enterprise JavaBeans specification, v3.2.

The JMS provider can be integrated with the application server using the Java EE Connector architecture. You access the JMS provider through a resource adapter. This capability allows vendors to create JMS providers that can be plugged in to multiple application servers, and it allows application servers to support multiple JMS providers. For more information, see the Java EE Connector architecture specification, v1.7.

42.2 Basic JMS API Concepts

This section introduces the most basic JMS API concepts, the ones you must know to get started writing simple application clients that use the JMS API.

The next section introduces the JMS API programming model. Later sections cover more advanced concepts, including the ones you need in order to write applications that use message-driven beans.

42.2.1 JMS API Architecture

A JMS application is composed of the following parts.

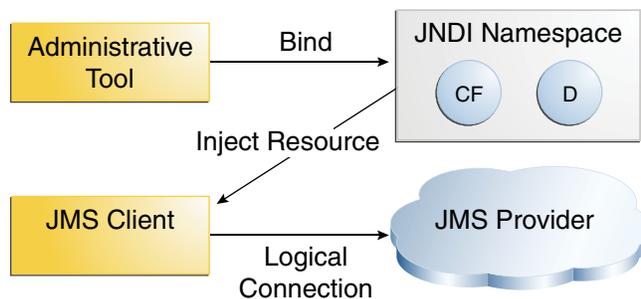
- A **JMS provider** is a messaging system that implements the JMS interfaces and provides administrative and control features. An implementation of the Java EE platform that supports the full profile includes a JMS provider.
- **JMS clients** are the programs or components, written in the Java programming language, that produce and consume messages. Any Java EE application component can act as a JMS client.

Java SE applications can also act as JMS clients; the *Message Queue Developer's Guide for Java Clients* in the GlassFish Server documentation (<https://glassfish.java.net/docs/>) explains how to make this work.

- **Messages** are the objects that communicate information between JMS clients.
- **Administered objects** are JMS objects configured for the use of clients. The two kinds of JMS administered objects are destinations and connection factories, described in [JMS Administered Objects](#). An administrator can create objects that are available to all applications that use a particular installation of the GlassFish Server; alternatively, a developer can use annotations to create objects that are specific to a particular application.

Figure 42–2 illustrates the way these parts interact. Administrative tools or annotations allow you to bind destinations and connection factories into a JNDI namespace. A JMS client can then use resource injection to access the administered objects in the namespace and then establish a logical connection to the same objects through the JMS provider.

Figure 42–2 JMS API Architecture



42.2.2 Messaging Styles

Before the JMS API existed, most messaging products supported either the point-to-point or the publish/subscribe style of messaging. The JMS specification defines compliance for each style. A JMS provider must implement both styles, and

the JMS API provides interfaces that are specific to each. The following subsections describe these messaging styles.

The JMS API, however, makes it unnecessary to use only one of the two styles. It allows you to use the same code to send and receive messages using either the PTP or the pub/sub style. The destinations you use remain specific to one style, and the behavior of the application will depend in part on whether you are using a queue or a topic. However, the code itself can be common to both styles, making your applications flexible and reusable. This tutorial describes and illustrates this coding approach, using the greatly simplified API provided by JMS 2.0.

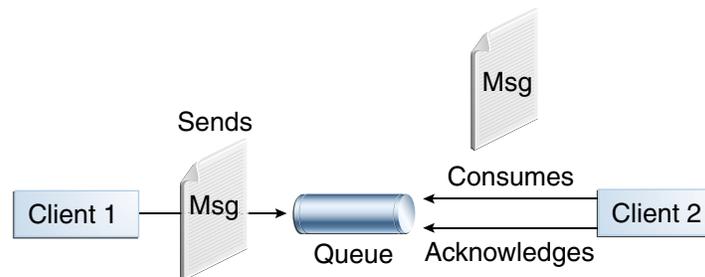
42.2.2.1 Point-to-Point Messaging Style

A **point-to-point** (PTP) product or application is built on the concept of message **queues**, senders, and receivers. Each message is addressed to a specific queue, and receiving clients extract messages from the queues established to hold their messages. Queues retain all messages sent to them until the messages are consumed or expire.

PTP messaging, illustrated in [Figure 42-3](#), has the following characteristics:

- Each message has only one consumer.
- The receiver can fetch the message whether or not it was running when the client sent the message.

Figure 42-3 *Point-to-Point Messaging*



Use PTP messaging when every message you send must be processed successfully by one consumer.

42.2.2.2 Publish/Subscribe Messaging Style

In a **publish/subscribe** (pub/sub) product or application, clients address messages to a **topic**, which functions somewhat like a bulletin board. Publishers and subscribers can dynamically publish or subscribe to the topic. The system takes care of distributing the messages arriving from a topic's multiple publishers to its multiple subscribers. Topics retain messages only as long as it takes to distribute them to subscribers.

With pub/sub messaging, it is important to distinguish between the consumer that subscribes to a topic (the subscriber) and the subscription that is created. The consumer is a JMS object within an application, while the subscription is an entity within the JMS provider. Normally, a topic can have many consumers, but a subscription has only one subscriber. It is possible, however, to create shared subscriptions; see [Creating Shared Subscriptions](#) for details. See [Consuming Messages from Topics](#) for details on the semantics of pub/sub messaging.

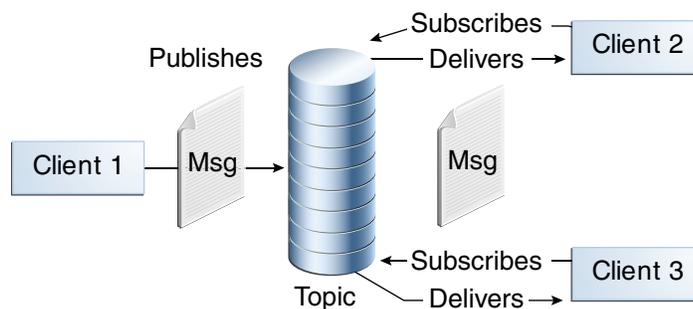
Pub/sub messaging has the following characteristics.

- Each message can have multiple consumers.
- A client that subscribes to a topic can consume only messages sent *after* the client has created a subscription, and the consumer must continue to be active in order for it to consume messages.

The JMS API relaxes this requirement to some extent by allowing applications to create **durable subscriptions**, which receive messages sent while the consumers are not active. Durable subscriptions provide the flexibility and reliability of queues but still allow clients to send messages to many recipients. For more information about durable subscriptions, see [Creating Durable Subscriptions](#).

Use pub/sub messaging when each message can be processed by any number of consumers (or none). [Figure 42-4](#) illustrates pub/sub messaging.

Figure 42-4 Publish/Subscribe Messaging



42.2.3 Message Consumption

Messaging products are inherently asynchronous: There is no fundamental timing dependency between the production and the consumption of a message. However, the JMS specification uses this term in a more precise sense. Messages can be consumed in either of two ways:

- **Synchronously:** A consumer explicitly fetches the message from the destination by calling the `receive` method. The `receive` method can block until a message arrives or can time out if a message does not arrive within a specified time limit.
- **Asynchronously:** An application client or a Java SE client can register a **message listener** with a consumer. A message listener is similar to an event listener. Whenever a message arrives at the destination, the JMS provider delivers the message by calling the listener's `onMessage` method, which acts on the contents of the message. In a Java EE application, a message-driven bean serves as a message listener (it too has an `onMessage` method), but a client does not need to register it with a consumer.

42.3 The JMS API Programming Model

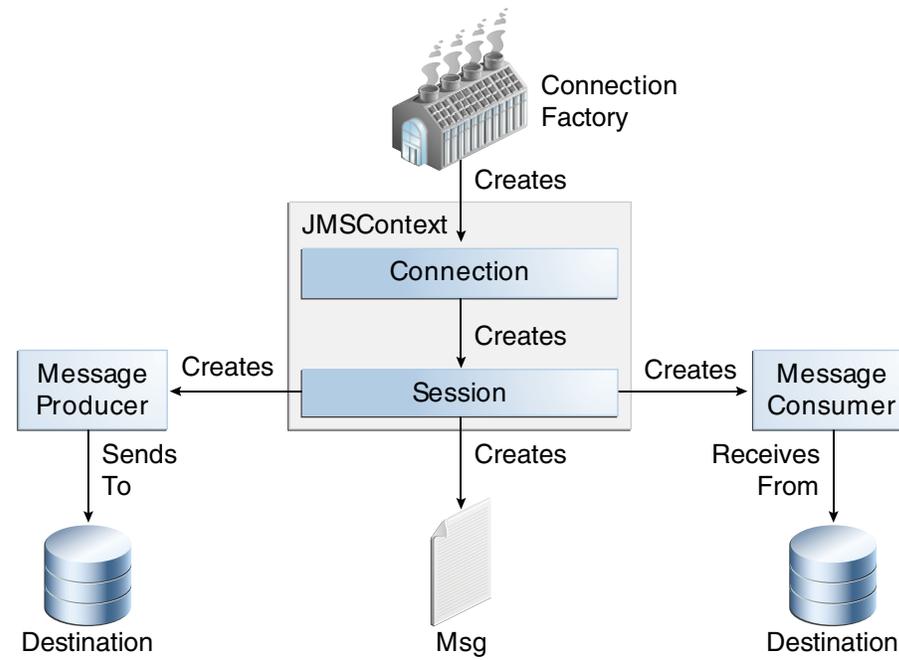
The basic building blocks of a JMS application are:

- Administered objects: connection factories and destinations
- Connections
- Sessions
- `JMSContext` objects, which combine a connection and a session in one object
- Message producers

- Message consumers
- Messages

Figure 42–5 shows how all these objects fit together in a JMS client application.

Figure 42–5 The JMS API Programming Model



This section describes all these objects briefly and provides sample commands and code snippets that show how to create and use the objects. The last subsection briefly describes JMS API exception handling.

Examples that show how to combine all these objects in applications appear in [Chapter 43, "Java Message Service Examples,"](#) beginning with [Writing Simple JMS Applications](#). For more detail, see the JMS API documentation, part of the Java EE API documentation.

42.3.1 JMS Administered Objects

Two parts of a JMS application, destinations and connection factories, are commonly maintained administratively rather than programmatically. The technology underlying these objects is likely to be very different from one implementation of the JMS API to another. Therefore, the management of these objects belongs with other administrative tasks that vary from provider to provider.

JMS clients access administered objects through interfaces that are portable, so a client application can run with little or no change on more than one implementation of the JMS API. Ordinarily, an administrator configures administered objects in a JNDI namespace, and JMS clients then access them by using resource injection.

With GlassFish Server, you can use the `asadmin create-jms-resource` command or the Administration Console to create JMS administered objects in the form of connector resources. You can also specify the resources in a file named `glassfish-resources.xml` that you can bundle with an application.

NetBeans IDE provides a wizard that allows you to create JMS resources for GlassFish Server. See [Creating JMS Administered Objects](#) for details.

The Java EE platform specification allows a developer to create administered objects using annotations or deployment descriptor elements. Objects created in this way are specific to the application for which they are created. See [Creating Resources for Java EE Applications](#) for details. Definitions in a deployment descriptor override those specified by annotations.

42.3.1.1 JMS Connection Factories

A **connection factory** is the object a client uses to create a connection to a provider. A connection factory encapsulates a set of connection configuration parameters that has been defined by an administrator. Each connection factory is an instance of the `ConnectionFactory`, `QueueConnectionFactory`, or `TopicConnectionFactory` interface. To learn how to create connection factories, see [Creating JMS Administered Objects](#).

At the beginning of a JMS client program, you usually inject a connection factory resource into a `ConnectionFactory` object. A Java EE server must provide a JMS connection factory with the logical JNDI name `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory`. The actual JNDI name will be implementation-specific.

For example, the following code fragment looks up the default JMS connection factory and assigns it to a `ConnectionFactory` object:

```
@Resource(lookup = "java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory")
private static ConnectionFactory connectionFactory;
```

42.3.1.2 JMS Destinations

A **destination** is the object a client uses to specify the target of messages it produces and the source of messages it consumes. In the PTP messaging style, destinations are called queues. In the pub/sub messaging style, destinations are called topics. A JMS application can use multiple queues or topics (or both). To learn how to create destination resources, see [Creating JMS Administered Objects](#).

To create a destination using the GlassFish Server, you create a JMS destination resource that specifies a JNDI name for the destination.

In the GlassFish Server implementation of JMS, each destination resource refers to a physical destination. You can create a physical destination explicitly, but if you do not, the Application Server creates it when it is needed and deletes it when you delete the destination resource.

In addition to injecting a connection factory resource into a client program, you usually inject a destination resource. Unlike connection factories, destinations are specific to either the PTP or pub/sub messaging style. To create an application that allows you to use the same code for both topics and queues, you assign the destination to a `Destination` object.

The following code specifies two resources, a queue and a topic. The resource names are mapped to destination resources created in the JNDI namespace.

```
@Resource(lookup = "jms/MyQueue")
private static Queue queue;

@Resource(lookup = "jms/MyTopic")
private static Topic topic;
```

In a Java EE application, JMS administered objects are normally placed in the `jms` naming subcontext.

With the common interfaces, you can mix or match connection factories and destinations. That is, in addition to using the `ConnectionFactory` interface, you can inject a `QueueConnectionFactory` resource and use it with a `Topic`, and you can inject a `TopicConnectionFactory` resource and use it with a `Queue`. The behavior of the application will depend on the kind of destination you use and not on the kind of connection factory you use.

42.3.2 Connections

A **connection** encapsulates a virtual connection with a JMS provider. For example, a connection could represent an open TCP/IP socket between a client and a provider service daemon. You use a connection to create one or more sessions.

Note: In the Java EE platform, the ability to create multiple sessions from a single connection is limited to application clients. In web and enterprise bean components, a connection can create no more than one session.

You normally create a connection by creating a `JMSContext` object. See [JMSContext Objects](#) for details.

42.3.3 Sessions

A **session** is a single-threaded context for producing and consuming messages.

You normally create a session (as well as a connection) by creating a `JMSContext` object. See [JMSContext Objects](#) for details. You use sessions to create message producers, message consumers, messages, queue browsers, and temporary destinations.

Sessions serialize the execution of message listeners; for details, see [JMS Message Listeners](#).

A session provides a transactional context with which to group a set of sends and receives into an atomic unit of work. For details, see [Using JMS Local Transactions](#).

42.3.4 JMSContext Objects

A `JMSContext` object combines a connection and a session in a single object. That is, it provides both an active connection to a JMS provider and a single-threaded context for sending and receiving messages.

You use the `JMSContext` to create the following objects:

- Message producers
- Message consumers
- Messages
- Queue browsers
- Temporary queues and topics (see [Creating Temporary Destinations](#))

You can create a `JMSContext` in a try-with-resources block.

To create a `JMSContext`, call the `createContext` method on the connection factory:

```
JMSContext context = connectionFactory.createContext();
```

When called with no arguments from an application client or a Java SE client, or from the Java EE web or EJB container when there is no active JTA transaction in progress, the `createContext` method creates a non-transacted session with an acknowledgment mode of `JMSContext.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE`. When called with no arguments from the web or EJB container when there is an active JTA transaction in progress, the `createContext` method creates a transacted session. For information about the way JMS transactions work in Java EE applications, see [Using the JMS API in Java EE Applications](#).

From an application client or a Java SE client, you can also call the `createContext` method with the argument `JMSContext.SESSION_TRANSACTED` to create a transacted session. The session uses local transactions; see [Using JMS Local Transactions](#) for details.

```
JMSContext context =  
    connectionFactory.createContext(JMSContext.SESSION_TRANSACTED);
```

Alternatively, you can specify a non-default acknowledgment mode; see [Controlling Message Acknowledgment](#) for more information.

When you use a `JMSContext`, message delivery normally begins as soon as you create a consumer. See [JMS Message Consumers](#) for more information.

If you create a `JMSContext` in a `try-with-resources` block, you do not need to close it explicitly. It will be closed when the `try` block comes to an end. Make sure that your application completes all its JMS activity within the `try-with-resources` block. If you do not use a `try-with-resources` block, you must call the `close` method on the `JMSContext` to close the connection when the application has finished its work.

42.3.5 JMS Message Producers

A **message producer** is an object that is created by a `JMSContext` or a session and used for sending messages to a destination. A message producer created by a `JMSContext` implements the `JMSProducer` interface. You could create it this way:

```
try (JMSContext context = connectionFactory.createContext();) {  
    JMSProducer producer = context.createProducer();  
    ...  
}
```

However, a `JMSProducer` is a lightweight object that does not consume significant resources. For this reason, you do not need to save the `JMSProducer` in a variable; you can create a new one each time you send a message. You send messages to a specific destination by using the `send` method. For example:

```
context.createProducer().send(dest, message);
```

You can create the message in a variable before sending it, as shown here, or you can create it within the `send` call. See [JMS Messages](#) for more information.

42.3.6 JMS Message Consumers

A **message consumer** is an object that is created by a `JMSContext` or a session and used for receiving messages sent to a destination. A message producer created by a `JMSContext` implements the `JMSConsumer` interface. The simplest way to create a message consumer is to use the `JMSContext.createConsumer` method:

```
try (JMSContext context = connectionFactory.createContext();) {  
    JMSConsumer consumer = context.createConsumer(dest);  
}
```

...

A message consumer allows a JMS client to register interest in a destination with a JMS provider. The JMS provider manages the delivery of messages from a destination to the registered consumers of the destination.

When you use a `JMSContext` to create a message consumer, message delivery begins as soon as you have created the consumer. You can disable this behavior by calling `setAutoStart(false)` when you create the `JMSContext` and then calling the `start` method explicitly to start message delivery. If you want to stop message delivery temporarily without closing the connection, you can call the `stop` method; to restart message delivery, call `start`.

You use the `receive` method to consume a message synchronously. You can use this method at any time after you create the consumer.

If you specify no arguments or an argument of 0, the method blocks indefinitely until a message arrives:

```
Message m = consumer.receive();
Message m = consumer.receive(0);
```

For a simple client, this may not matter. But if it is possible that a message might not be available, use a synchronous receive with a timeout: call the `receive` method with a timeout argument greater than 0. One second is a recommended timeout value:

```
Message m = consumer.receive(1000); // time out after a second
```

To enable asynchronous message delivery from an application client or a Java SE client, you use a message listener, as described in the next section.

You can use the `JMSContext.createDurableConsumer` method to create a durable topic subscription. This method is valid only if you are using a topic. For details, see [Creating Durable Subscriptions](#). For topics, you can also create shared consumers; see [Creating Shared Subscriptions](#).

42.3.6.1 JMS Message Listeners

A message listener is an object that acts as an asynchronous event handler for messages. This object implements the `MessageListener` interface, which contains one method, `onMessage`. In the `onMessage` method, you define the actions to be taken when a message arrives.

From an application client or a Java SE client, you register the message listener with a specific message consumer by using the `setMessageListener` method. For example, if you define a class named `Listener` that implements the `MessageListener` interface, you can register the message listener as follows:

```
Listener myListener = new Listener();
consumer.setMessageListener(myListener);
```

When message delivery begins, the JMS provider automatically calls the message listener's `onMessage` method whenever a message is delivered. The `onMessage` method takes one argument of type `Message`, which your implementation of the method can cast to another message subtype as needed (see [Message Bodies](#)).

In the Java EE web or EJB container, you use message-driven beans for asynchronous message delivery. A message-driven bean also implements the `MessageListener` interface and contains an `onMessage` method. For details, see [Using Message-Driven Beans to Receive Messages Asynchronously](#).

Your `onMessage` method should handle all exceptions. Throwing a `RuntimeException` is considered a programming error.

For a simple example of the use of a message listener, see [Using a Message Listener for Asynchronous Message Delivery](#). Chapter 43, "Java Message Service Examples," contains several more examples of message listeners and message-driven beans.

42.3.6.2 JMS Message Selectors

If your messaging application needs to filter the messages it receives, you can use a JMS message selector, which allows a message consumer for a destination to specify the messages that interest it. Message selectors assign the work of filtering messages to the JMS provider rather than to the application. For an example of an application that uses a message selector, see [Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB](#).

A message selector is a `String` that contains an expression. The syntax of the expression is based on a subset of the SQL92 conditional expression syntax. The message selector in the example selects any message that has a `NewsType` property that is set to the value 'Sports' or 'Opinion':

```
NewsType = 'Sports' OR NewsType = 'Opinion'
```

The `createConsumer` and `createDurableConsumer` methods, as well as the methods for creating shared consumers, allow you to specify a message selector as an argument when you create a message consumer.

The message consumer then receives only messages whose headers and properties match the selector. (See [Message Headers](#) and [Message Properties](#).) A message selector cannot select messages on the basis of the content of the message body.

42.3.6.3 Consuming Messages from Topics

The semantics of consuming messages from topics are more complex than the semantics of consuming messages from queues.

An application consumes messages from a topic by creating a subscription on that topic and creating a consumer on that subscription. Subscriptions may be durable or nondurable, and they may be shared or unshared.

A subscription may be thought of as an entity within the JMS provider itself, whereas a consumer is a JMS object within the application.

A subscription will receive a copy of every message that is sent to the topic after the subscription is created, unless a message selector is specified. If a message selector is specified, only those messages whose properties match the message selector will be added to the subscription.

Some subscriptions are restricted to a single consumer. In this case, all the messages in the subscription are delivered to that consumer. Some subscriptions allow multiple consumers. In this case, each message in the subscription is delivered to only one consumer. JMS does not define how messages are distributed between multiple consumers on the same subscription.

Subscriptions may be durable or nondurable.

A nondurable subscription exists only as long as there is an active consumer on the subscription. This means that any messages sent to the topic will be added to the subscription only while a consumer exists and is not closed.

A nondurable subscription may be either unshared or shared:

- An unshared nondurable subscription does not have a name and may have only a single consumer object associated with it. It is created automatically when the consumer object is created. It is not persisted and is deleted automatically when the consumer object is closed.

The `JMSContext.createConsumer` method creates an consumer on an unshared nondurable subscription if a topic is specified as the destination.

- A shared nondurable subscription is identified by name and an optional client identifier, and may have several consumer objects consuming messages from it. It is created automatically when the first consumer object is created. It is not persisted and is deleted automatically when the last consumer object is closed. See [Creating Shared Subscriptions](#) for more information.

At the cost of higher overhead, a subscription may be durable. A durable subscription is persisted and continues to accumulate messages until explicitly deleted, even if there are no consumer objects consuming messages from it. See [Creating Durable Subscriptions](#) for details.

42.3.6.4 Creating Durable Subscriptions

To ensure that a pub/sub application receives all sent messages, use durable subscriptions for the consumers on the topic.

Like a nondurable subscription, a durable subscription may be either unshared or shared.

- An unshared durable subscription is identified by name and client identifier (which must be set) and may have only a single consumer object associated with it.
- A shared durable subscription is identified by name and an optional client identifier, and may have several consumer objects consuming messages from it.

A durable subscription that exists but that does not currently have a non-closed consumer object associated with it is described as being inactive.

You can use the `JMSContext.createDurableConsumer` method to create a consumer on an unshared durable subscription. An unshared durable subscription can have only one active consumer at a time.

A consumer identifies the durable subscription from which it consumes messages by specifying a unique identity that is retained by the JMS provider. Subsequent consumer objects that have the same identity resume the subscription in the state in which it was left by the preceding consumer. If a durable subscription has no active consumer, the JMS provider retains the subscription's messages until they are received by the subscription or until they expire.

You establish the unique identity of an unshared durable subscription by setting the following:

- A client ID for the connection
- A topic and a subscription name for the subscription

You can set the client ID administratively for a client-specific connection factory using either the command line or the Administration Console. (In an application client or a Java SE client, you can instead call `JMSContext.setClientID`.)

After using this connection factory to create the `JMSContext`, you call the `createDurableConsumer` method with two arguments: the topic and a string that specifies the name of the subscription:

```
String subName = "MySub";
JMSConsumer consumer =
    context.createDurableConsumer(myTopic, subName);
```

The subscription becomes active after you create the consumer. Later, you might close the consumer:

```
consumer.close();
```

The JMS provider stores the messages sent to the topic, as it would store messages sent to a queue. If the program or another application calls `createDurableConsumer` using the same connection factory and its client ID, the same topic, and the same subscription name, then the subscription is reactivated and the JMS provider delivers the messages that were sent while the subscription was inactive.

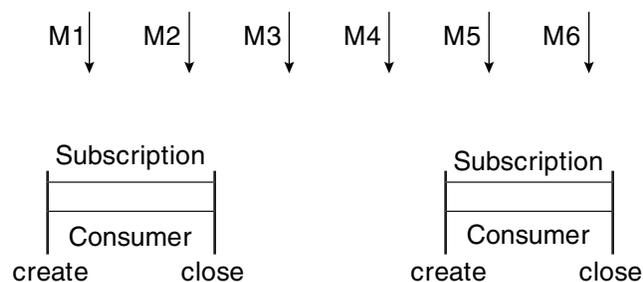
To delete a durable subscription, first close the consumer, then call the `unsubscribe` method with the subscription name as the argument:

```
consumer.close();
context.unsubscribe(subName);
```

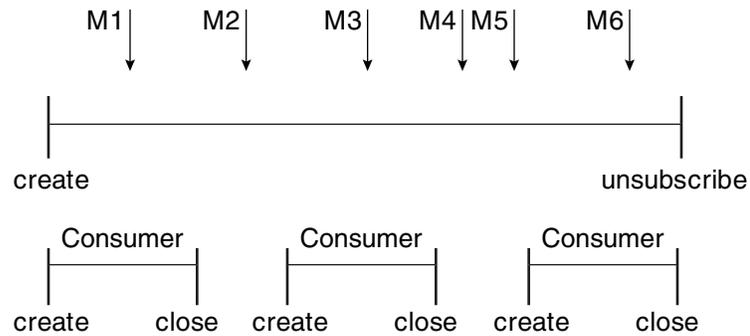
The `unsubscribe` method deletes the state the provider maintains for the subscription.

[Figure 42–6](#) and [Figure 42–7](#) show the difference between a nondurable and a durable subscription. With an ordinary, nondurable subscription, the consumer and the subscription begin and end at the same point and are, in effect, identical. When the consumer is closed, the subscription also ends. Here, `create` stands for a call to `JMSContext.createConsumer` with a `Topic` argument, and `close` stands for a call to `JMSConsumer.close`. Any messages sent to the topic between the time of the first `close` and the time of the second `create` are not added to either subscription. In [Figure 42–6](#), the consumers receive messages M1, M2, M5, and M6, but they do not receive messages M3 and M4.

Figure 42–6 Nondurable Subscriptions and Consumers



With a durable subscription, the consumer can be closed and re-created, but the subscription continues to exist and to hold messages until the application calls the `unsubscribe` method. In [Figure 42–7](#), `create` stands for a call to `JMSContext.createDurableConsumer`, `close` stands for a call to `JMSConsumer.close`, and `unsubscribe` stands for a call to `JMSContext.unsubscribe`. Messages sent after the first consumer is closed are received when the second consumer is created (on the same durable subscription), so even though messages M2, M4, and M5 arrive while there is no consumer, they are not lost.

Figure 42–7 Consumers on a Durable Subscription

A shared durable subscription allows you to use multiple consumers to receive messages from a durable subscription. If you use a shared durable subscription, the connection factory you use does not need to have a client identifier. To create a shared durable subscription, call the `JMSContext.createSharedDurableConsumer` method, specifying the topic and subscription name:

```
JMSConsumer consumer =
    context.createSharedDurableConsumer(topic, "MakeItLast");
```

See [Acknowledging Messages, Using Durable Subscriptions, Using Shared Durable Subscriptions](#), and [Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB](#) for examples of Java EE applications that use durable subscriptions.

42.3.6.5 Creating Shared Subscriptions

A topic subscription created by the `createConsumer` or `createDurableConsumer` method can have only one consumer (although a topic can have many). Multiple clients consuming from the same topic have, by definition, multiple subscriptions to the topic, and all the clients receive all the messages sent to the topic (unless they filter them with message selectors).

It is, however, possible to create a nondurable shared subscription to a topic by using the `createSharedConsumer` method and specifying not only a destination but a subscription name:

```
consumer = context.createSharedConsumer(topicName, "SubName");
```

With a shared subscription, messages will be distributed among multiple clients that use the same topic and subscription name. Each message sent to the topic will be added to every subscription (subject to any message selectors), but each message added to a subscription will be delivered to only one of the consumers on that subscription, so it will be received by only one of the clients. A shared subscription can be useful if you want to share the message load among several consumers on the subscription rather than having just one consumer on the subscription receive each message. This feature can improve the scalability of Java EE application client applications and Java SE applications. (Message-driven beans share the work of processing messages from a topic among multiple threads.)

See [Using Shared Nondurable Subscriptions](#) for a simple example of using shared nondurable consumers.

You can also create shared durable subscriptions by using the `JMSContext.createSharedDurableConsumer` method. For details, see [Creating Durable Subscriptions](#).

42.3.7 JMS Messages

The ultimate purpose of a JMS application is to produce and consume messages that can then be used by other software applications. JMS messages have a basic format that is simple but highly flexible, allowing you to create messages that match formats used by non-JMS applications on heterogeneous platforms.

A JMS message can have three parts: a header, properties, and a body. Only the header is required. The following sections describe these parts.

For complete documentation of message headers, properties, and bodies, see the documentation of the `Message` interface in the API documentation. For a list of possible message types, see [Message Bodies](#).

42.3.7.1 Message Headers

A JMS message header contains a number of predefined fields that contain values used by both clients and providers to identify and route messages. [Table 42–1](#) lists and describes the JMS message header fields and indicates how their values are set. For example, every message has a unique identifier, which is represented in the header field `JMSMessageID`. The value of another header field, `JMSDestination`, represents the queue or the topic to which the message is sent. Other fields include a timestamp and a priority level.

Each header field has associated setter and getter methods, which are documented in the description of the `Message` interface. Some header fields are intended to be set by a client, but many are set automatically by the `send` method, which overrides any client-set values.

Table 42–1 How JMS Message Header Field Values Are Set

Header Field	Description	Set By
<code>JMSDestination</code>	Destination to which the message is being sent	JMS provider <code>send</code> method
<code>JMSDeliveryMode</code>	Delivery mode specified when the message was sent (see Specifying Message Persistence)	JMS provider <code>send</code> method
<code>JMSDeliveryTime</code>	The time the message was sent plus the delivery delay specified when the message was sent (see Specifying a Delivery Delay)	JMS provider <code>send</code> method
<code>JMSExpiration</code>	Expiration time of the message (see Allowing Messages to Expire)	JMS provider <code>send</code> method
<code>JMSPriority</code>	The priority of the message (see Setting Message Priority Levels)	JMS provider <code>send</code> method
<code>JMSMessageID</code>	Value that uniquely identifies each message sent by a provider	JMS provider <code>send</code> method
<code>JMSTimestamp</code>	The time the message was handed off to a provider to be sent	JMS provider <code>send</code> method
<code>JMSCorrelationID</code>	Value that links one message to another; commonly the <code>JMSMessageID</code> value is used	Client application

Table 42–1 (Cont.) How JMS Message Header Field Values Are Set

Header Field	Description	Set By
JMSReplyTo	Destination where replies to the message should be sent	Client application
JMSType	Type identifier supplied by client application	Client application
JMSRedelivered	Whether the message is being redelivered	JMS provider prior to delivery

42.3.7.2 Message Properties

You can create and set properties for messages if you need values in addition to those provided by the header fields. You can use properties to provide compatibility with other messaging systems, or you can use them to create message selectors (see [JMS Message Selectors](#)). For an example of setting a property to be used as a message selector, see [Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB](#).

The JMS API provides some predefined property names that begin with `JMSX`. A JMS provider is required to implement only one of these, `JMSXDeliveryCount` (which specifies the number of times a message has been delivered); the rest are optional. The use of these predefined properties or of user-defined properties in applications is optional.

42.3.7.3 Message Bodies

The JMS API defines six different types of messages. Each message type corresponds to a different message body. These message types allow you to send and receive data in many different forms. [Table 42–2](#) describes these message types.

Table 42–2 JMS Message Types

Message Type	Body Contains
<code>TextMessage</code>	A <code>java.lang.String</code> object (for example, the contents of an XML file).
<code>MapMessage</code>	A set of name-value pairs, with names as <code>String</code> objects and values as primitive types in the Java programming language. The entries can be accessed sequentially by enumerator or randomly by name. The order of the entries is undefined.
<code>BytesMessage</code>	A stream of uninterpreted bytes. This message type is for literally encoding a body to match an existing message format.
<code>StreamMessage</code>	A stream of primitive values in the Java programming language, filled and read sequentially.
<code>ObjectMessage</code>	A <code>Serializable</code> object in the Java programming language.
<code>Message</code>	Nothing. Composed of header fields and properties only. This message type is useful when a message body is not required.

The JMS API provides methods for creating messages of each type and for filling in their contents. For example, to create and send a `TextMessage`, you might use the following statements:

```
TextMessage message = context.createTextMessage();
message.setText(msg_text);    // msg_text is a String
context.createProducer().send(message);
```

At the consuming end, a message arrives as a generic `Message` object. You can then cast the object to the appropriate message type and use more specific methods to access the

body and extract the message contents (and its headers and properties if needed). For example, you might use the stream-oriented read methods of `BytesMessage`. You must always cast to the appropriate message type to retrieve the body of a `StreamMessage`.

Instead of casting the message to a message type, you can call the `getBody` method on the `Message`, specifying the type of the message as an argument. For example, you can retrieve a `TextMessage` as a `String`. The following code fragment uses the `getBody` method:

```
Message m = consumer.receive();
if (m instanceof TextMessage) {
    String message = m.getBody(String.class);
    System.out.println("Reading message: " + message);
} else {
    // Handle error or process another message type
}
```

The JMS API provides shortcuts for creating and receiving a `TextMessage`, `BytesMessage`, `MapMessage`, or `ObjectMessage`. For example, you do not have to wrap a string in a `TextMessage`; instead, you can send and receive the string directly. For example, you can send a string as follows:

```
String message = "This is a message";
context.createProducer().send(dest, message);
```

You can receive the message by using the `receiveBody` method:

```
String message = receiver.receiveBody(String.class);
```

You can use the `receiveBody` method to receive any type of message except `StreamMessage` and `Message`, as long as the body of the message can be assigned to a particular type.

An empty `Message` can be useful if you want to send a message that is simply a signal to the application. Some of the examples in [Chapter 43, "Java Message Service Examples,"](#) send an empty message after sending a series of text messages.

```
context.createProducer().send(dest, context.createMessage());
```

The consumer code can then interpret a non-text message as a signal that all the messages sent have now been received.

The examples in [Chapter 43, "Java Message Service Examples,"](#) use messages of type `TextMessage`, `MapMessage`, and `Message`.

42.3.8 JMS Queue Browsers

Messages sent to a queue remain in the queue until the message consumer for that queue consumes them. The JMS API provides a `QueueBrowser` object that allows you to browse the messages in the queue and display the header values for each message. To create a `QueueBrowser` object, use the `JMSContext.createBrowser` method. For example:

```
QueueBrowser browser = context.createBrowser(queue);
```

See [Browsing Messages on a Queue](#) for an example of using a `QueueBrowser` object.

The `createBrowser` method allows you to specify a message selector as a second argument when you create a `QueueBrowser`. For information on message selectors, see [JMS Message Selectors](#).

The JMS API provides no mechanism for browsing a topic. Messages usually disappear from a topic as soon as they appear: If there are no message consumers to consume them, the JMS provider removes them. Although durable subscriptions allow messages to remain on a topic while the message consumer is not active, JMS does not define any facility for examining them.

42.3.9 JMS Exception Handling

The root class for all checked exceptions in the JMS API is `JMSEException`. The root cause for all unchecked exceptions in the JMS API is `JMSRuntimeException`.

Catching `JMSEException` and `JMSRuntimeException` provides a generic way of handling all exceptions related to the JMS API.

The `JMSEException` and `JMSRuntimeException` classes include the following subclasses, described in the API documentation:

- `IllegalStateException`, `IllegalStateExceptionRuntime`
- `InvalidClientIDException`, `InvalidClientIDRuntime`
- `InvalidDestinationException`, `InvalidDestinationRuntime`
- `InvalidSelectorException`, `InvalidSelectorRuntime`
- `JMSSecurityException`, `JMSSecurityRuntime`
- `MessageEOFException`
- `MessageFormatException`, `MessageFormatRuntime`
- `MessageNotReadableException`
- `MessageNotWriteableException`, `MessageNotWriteableRuntime`
- `ResourceAllocationException`, `ResourceAllocationRuntime`
- `TransactionInProgressException`, `TransactionInProgressRuntime`
- `TransactionRolledBackException`, `TransactionRolledBackRuntime`

All the examples in the tutorial catch and handle `JMSEException` or `JMSRuntimeException` when it is appropriate to do so.

42.4 Using Advanced JMS Features

This section explains how to use features of the JMS API to achieve the level of reliability and performance your application requires. Many people use JMS in their applications because they cannot tolerate dropped or duplicate messages and because they require that every message be received once and only once. The JMS API provides this functionality.

The most reliable way to produce a message is to send a `PERSISTENT` message, and to do so within a transaction.

JMS messages are `PERSISTENT` by default; `PERSISTENT` messages will not be lost in the event of JMS provider failure. For details, see [Specifying Message Persistence](#).

Transactions allow multiple messages to be sent or received in an atomic operation. In the Java EE platform they also allow message sends and receives to be combined with database reads and writes in an atomic transaction. A **transaction** is a unit of work into which you can group a series of operations, such as message sends and receives, so that the operations either all succeed or all fail. For details, see [Using JMS Local Transactions](#).

The most reliable way to consume a message is to do so within a transaction, either from a queue or from a durable subscription to a topic. For details, see [Creating Temporary Destinations](#), [Creating Durable Subscriptions](#), and [Using JMS Local Transactions](#).

Some features primarily allow an application to improve performance. For example, you can set messages to expire after a certain length of time (see [Allowing Messages to Expire](#)), so that consumers do not receive unnecessary outdated information. You can send messages asynchronously; see [Sending Messages Asynchronously](#).

You can also specify various levels of control over message acknowledgment; see [Controlling Message Acknowledgment](#).

Other features can provide useful capabilities unrelated to reliability. For example, you can create temporary destinations that last only for the duration of the connection in which they are created. See [Creating Temporary Destinations](#) for details.

The following sections describe these features as they apply to application clients or Java SE clients. Some of the features work differently in the Java EE web or EJB container; in these cases, the differences are noted here and are explained in detail in [Using the JMS API in Java EE Applications](#).

42.4.1 Controlling Message Acknowledgment

Until a JMS message has been acknowledged, it is not considered to be successfully consumed. The successful consumption of a message ordinarily takes place in three stages.

1. The client receives the message.
2. The client processes the message.
3. The message is acknowledged. Acknowledgment is initiated either by the JMS provider or by the client, depending on the session acknowledgment mode.

In locally transacted sessions (see [Using JMS Local Transactions](#)), a message is acknowledged when the session is committed. If a transaction is rolled back, all consumed messages are redelivered.

In a JTA transaction (in the Java EE web or EJB container) a message is acknowledged when the transaction is committed.

In nontransacted sessions, when and how a message is acknowledged depend on a value that may be specified as an argument of the `createContext` method. The possible argument values are as follows:

- `JMSContext.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE`: This setting is the default for application clients and Java SE clients. The `JMSContext` automatically acknowledges a client's receipt of a message either when the client has successfully returned from a call to `receive` or when the `MessageListener` it has called to process the message returns successfully.

A synchronous `receive` in a `JMSContext` that is configured to use auto-acknowledgment is the one exception to the rule that message consumption is a three-stage process as described earlier. In this case, the receipt and acknowledgment take place in one step, followed by the processing of the message.

- `JMSContext.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE`: A client acknowledges a message by calling the message's `acknowledge` method. In this mode, acknowledgment takes place on the session level: Acknowledging a consumed message automatically acknowledges the receipt of *all* messages that have been consumed by its session. For example, if

a message consumer consumes ten messages and then acknowledges the fifth message delivered, all ten messages are acknowledged.

Note: In the Java EE platform, the `JMSContext.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE` setting can be used only in an application client, not in a web component or enterprise bean.

- `JMSContext.DUPS_OK_ACKNOWLEDGE`: This option instructs the `JMSContext` to lazily acknowledge the delivery of messages. This is likely to result in the delivery of some duplicate messages if the JMS provider fails, so it should be used only by consumers that can tolerate duplicate messages. (If the JMS provider redelivers a message, it must set the value of the `JMSRedelivered` message header to `true`.) This option can reduce session overhead by minimizing the work the session does to prevent duplicates.

If messages have been received from a queue but not acknowledged when a `JMSContext` is closed, the JMS provider retains them and redelivers them when a consumer next accesses the queue. The provider also retains unacknowledged messages if an application closes a `JMSContext` that has been consuming messages from a durable subscription. (See [Creating Durable Subscriptions](#).) Unacknowledged messages that have been received from a nondurable subscription will be dropped when the `JMSContext` is closed.

If you use a queue or a durable subscription, you can use the `JMSContext.recover` method to stop a nontransacted `JMSContext` and restart it with its first unacknowledged message. In effect, the `JMSContext`'s series of delivered messages is reset to the point after its last acknowledged message. The messages it now delivers may be different from those that were originally delivered, if messages have expired or if higher-priority messages have arrived. For a consumer on a nondurable subscription, the provider may drop unacknowledged messages when the `JMSContext.recover` method is called.

The sample program in [Acknowledging Messages](#) demonstrates two ways to ensure that a message will not be acknowledged until processing of the message is complete.

42.4.2 Specifying Options for Sending Messages

You can set a number of options when you send a message. These options enable you to perform the following tasks:

- Specify that messages are persistent, meaning they must not be lost in the event of a provider failure ([Specifying Message Persistence](#))
- Set priority levels for messages, which can affect the order in which the messages are delivered ([Setting Message Priority Levels](#))
- Specify an expiration time for messages so they will not be delivered if they are obsolete ([Allowing Messages to Expire](#))
- Specify a delivery delay for messages so that they will not be delivered until a specified amount of time has expired ([Specifying a Delivery Delay](#))

Method chaining allows you to specify more than one of these options when you create a producer and call the `send` method; see [Using JMSProducer Method Chaining](#).

42.4.2.1 Specifying Message Persistence

The JMS API supports two delivery modes specifying whether messages are lost if the JMS provider fails. These delivery modes are fields of the `DeliveryMode` interface.

- The default delivery mode, `PERSISTENT`, instructs the JMS provider to take extra care to ensure that a message is not lost in transit in case of a JMS provider failure. A message sent with this delivery mode is logged to stable storage when it is sent.
- The `NON_PERSISTENT` delivery mode does not require the JMS provider to store the message or otherwise guarantee that it is not lost if the provider fails.

To specify the delivery mode, use the `setDeliveryMode` method of the `JMSProducer` interface to set the delivery mode for all messages sent by that producer.

You can use method chaining to set the delivery mode when you create a producer and send a message. The following call creates a producer with a `NON_PERSISTENT` delivery mode and uses it to send a message:

```
context.createProducer()  
        .setDeliveryMode(DeliveryMode.NON_PERSISTENT).send(dest, msg);
```

If you do not specify a delivery mode, the default is `PERSISTENT`. Using the `NON_PERSISTENT` delivery mode may improve performance and reduce storage overhead, but you should use it only if your application can afford to miss messages.

42.4.2.2 Setting Message Priority Levels

You can use message priority levels to instruct the JMS provider to deliver urgent messages first. Use the `setPriority` method of the `JMSProducer` interface to set the priority level for all messages sent by that producer.

You can use method chaining to set the priority level when you create a producer and send a message. For example, the following call sets a priority level of 7 for a producer and then sends a message:

```
context.createProducer().setPriority(7).send(dest, msg);
```

The ten levels of priority range from 0 (lowest) to 9 (highest). If you do not specify a priority level, the default level is 4. A JMS provider tries to deliver higher-priority messages before lower-priority ones, but does not have to deliver messages in exact order of priority.

42.4.2.3 Allowing Messages to Expire

By default, a message never expires. If a message will become obsolete after a certain period, however, you may want to set an expiration time. Use the `setTimeToLive` method of the `JMSProducer` interface to set a default expiration time for all messages sent by that producer.

For example, a message that contains rapidly changing data such as a stock price will become obsolete after a few minutes, so you might configure messages to expire after that time.

You can use method chaining to set the time to live when you create a producer and send a message. For example, the following call sets a time to live of five minutes for a producer and then sends a message:

```
context.createProducer().setTimeToLive(300000).send(dest, msg);
```

If the specified `timeToLive` value is 0, the message never expires.

When the message is sent, the specified `timeToLive` is added to the current time to give the expiration time. Any message not delivered before the specified expiration time is destroyed. The destruction of obsolete messages conserves storage and computing resources.

42.4.2.4 Specifying a Delivery Delay

You can specify a length of time that must elapse after a message is sent before the JMS provider delivers the message. Use the `setDeliveryDelay` method of the `JMSProducer` interface to set a delivery delay for all messages sent by that producer.

You can use method chaining to set the delivery delay when you create a producer and send a message. For example, the following call sets a delivery delay of 3 seconds for a producer and then sends a message:

```
context.createProducer().setDeliveryDelay(3000).send(dest, msg);
```

42.4.2.5 Using JMSProducer Method Chaining

The setter methods on the `JMSProducer` interface return `JMSProducer` objects, so you can use method chaining to create a producer, set multiple properties, and send a message. For example, the following chained method calls create a producer, set a user-defined property, set the expiration, delivery mode, and priority for the message, and then send a message to a queue.

```
context.createProducer().
    setProperty("MyProperty", "MyValue").
    setTimeToLive(10000).
    setDeliveryMode(NON_PERSISTENT).
    setPriority(2).
    send(queue, body);
```

You can also call the `JMSProducer` methods to set properties on a message and then send the message in a separate `send` method call. You can also set message properties directly on a message.

42.4.3 Creating Temporary Destinations

Normally, you create JMS destinations (queues and topics) administratively rather than programmatically. Your JMS provider includes a tool to create and remove destinations, and it is common for destinations to be long-lasting.

The JMS API also enables you to create destinations (`TemporaryQueue` and `TemporaryTopic` objects) that last only for the duration of the connection in which they are created. You create these destinations dynamically using the `JMSContext.createTemporaryQueue` and the `JMSContext.createTemporaryTopic` methods, as in the following example:

```
TemporaryTopic replyTopic = context.createTemporaryTopic();
```

The only message consumers that can consume from a temporary destination are those created by the same connection that created the destination. Any message producer can send to the temporary destination. If you close the connection to which a temporary destination belongs, the destination is closed and its contents are lost.

You can use temporary destinations to implement a simple request/reply mechanism. If you create a temporary destination and specify it as the value of the `JMSReplyTo` message header field when you send a message, then the consumer of the message can use the value of the `JMSReplyTo` field as the destination to which it sends a reply. The consumer can also reference the original request by setting the `JMSCorrelationID`

header field of the reply message to the value of the `JMSMessageID` header field of the request. For example, an `onMessage` method can create a `JMSContext` so that it can send a reply to the message it receives. It can use code such as the following:

```
replyMsg = context.createTextMessage("Consumer " +
    "processed message: " + msg.getText());
replyMsg.setJMSCorrelationID(msg.getJMSMessageID());
context.createProducer().send((Topic) msg.getJMSReplyTo(), replyMsg);
```

For an example, see [Using an Entity to Join Messages from Two MDBs](#).

42.4.4 Using JMS Local Transactions

A **transaction** groups a series of operations into an atomic unit of work. If any one of the operations fails, the transaction can be rolled back, and the operations can be attempted again from the beginning. If all the operations succeed, the transaction can be committed.

In an application client or a Java SE client, you can use local transactions to group message sends and receives. You use the `JMSContext.commit` method to commit a transaction. You can send multiple messages in a transaction, and the messages will not be added to the queue or topic until the transaction is committed. If you receive multiple messages in a transaction, they will not be acknowledged until the transaction is committed.

You can use the `JMSContext.rollback` method to roll back a transaction. A transaction rollback means that all produced messages are destroyed and all consumed messages are recovered and redelivered unless they have expired (see [Allowing Messages to Expire](#)).

A transacted session is always involved in a transaction. To create a transacted session, call the `createContext` method as follows:

```
JMSContext context =
    connectionFactory.createContext(JMSContext.SESSION_TRANSACTED);
```

As soon as the `commit` or the `rollback` method is called, one transaction ends and another transaction begins. Closing a transacted session rolls back its transaction in progress, including any pending sends and receives.

In an application running in the Java EE web or EJB container, you cannot use local transactions. Instead, you use JTA transactions, described in [Using the JMS API in Java EE Applications](#).

You can combine several sends and receives in a single JMS local transaction, so long as they are all performed using the same `JMSContext`.

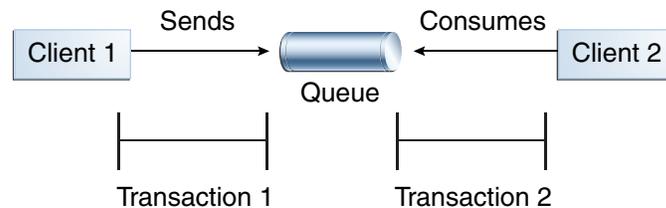
Do not use a single transaction if you use a request/reply mechanism, in which you send a message and then receive a reply to that message. If you try to use a single transaction, the program will hang, because the send cannot take place until the transaction is committed. The following code fragment illustrates the problem:

```
// Don't do this!
outMsg.setJMSReplyTo(replyQueue);
context.createProducer().send(outQueue, outMsg);
consumer = context.createConsumer(replyQueue);
inMsg = consumer.receive();
context.commit();
```

Because a message sent during a transaction is not actually sent until the transaction is committed, the transaction cannot contain any receives that depend on that message's having been sent.

The production and the consumption of a message cannot both be part of the same transaction. The reason is that the transactions take place between the clients and the JMS provider, which intervenes between the production and the consumption of the message. [Figure 42–8](#) illustrates this interaction.

Figure 42–8 Using JMS Local Transactions



The sending of one or more messages to one or more destinations by Client 1 can form a single transaction, because it forms a single set of interactions with the JMS provider using a single `JMSContext`. Similarly, the receiving of one or more messages from one or more destinations by Client 2 also forms a single transaction using a single `JMSContext`. But because the two clients have no direct interaction and are using two different `JMSContext` objects, no transactions can take place between them.

Another way of putting this is that a transaction is a contract between a client and a JMS provider that defines whether a message is sent to a destination or whether a message is received from the destination. It is not a contract between the sending client and the receiving client.

This is the fundamental difference between messaging and synchronized processing. Instead of tightly coupling the sender and the receiver of a message, JMS couples the sender of a message with the destination, and it separately couples the destination with the receiver of the message. Therefore, while the sends and receives each have a tight coupling with the JMS provider, they do not have any coupling with each other.

When you create a `JMSContext`, you can specify whether it is transacted by using the `JMSContext.SESSION_TRANSACTED` argument to the `createContext` method. For example:

```
try (JMSContext context = connectionFactory.createContext(
    JMSContext.SESSION_TRANSACTED);) {
    ...
}
```

The `commit` and the `rollback` methods for local transactions are associated with the session that underlies the `JMSContext`. You can combine operations on more than one queue or topic, or on a combination of queues and topics, in a single transaction if you use the same session to perform the operations. For example, you can use the same `JMSContext` to receive a message from a queue and send a message to a topic in the same transaction.

The example in [Using Local Transactions](#) shows how to use JMS local transactions

42.4.5 Sending Messages Asynchronously

Normally, when you send a persistent message, the `send` method blocks until the JMS provider confirms that the message was sent successfully. The asynchronous send

mechanism allows your application to send a message and continue work while waiting to learn whether the send completed.

This feature is currently available only in application clients and Java SE clients.

Sending a message asynchronously involves supplying a callback object. You specify a `CompletionListener` with an `onCompletion` method. For example, the following code instantiates a `CompletionListener` named `SendListener`. It then calls the `setAsync` method to specify that sends from this producer should be asynchronous and should use the specified listener.

```
CompletionListener listener = new SendListener();
context.createProducer().setAsync(listener).send(dest, message);
```

The `CompletionListener` class must implement two methods, `onCompletion` and `onException`. The `onCompletion` method is called if the send succeeds, and the `onException` method is called if it fails. A simple implementation of these methods might look like this:

```
@Override
public void onCompletion(Message message) {
    System.out.println("onCompletion method: Send has completed.");
}

@Override
public void onException(Message message, Exception e) {
    System.out.println("onException method: send failed: " + e.toString());
    System.out.println("Unsent message is: \n" + message);
}
```

42.5 Using the JMS API in Java EE Applications

This section describes how using the JMS API in enterprise bean applications or web applications differs from using it in application clients.

A general rule in the Java EE platform specification applies to all Java EE components that use the JMS API within EJB or web containers: Application components in the web and EJB containers must not attempt to create more than one active (not closed) `Session` object per connection. Multiple `JMSContext` objects are permitted, however, since they combine a single connection and a single session.

This rule does not apply to application clients. The application client container supports the creation of multiple sessions for each connection.

42.5.1 Creating Resources for Java EE Applications

You can use annotations to create application-specific connection factories and destinations for Java EE enterprise bean or web components. The resources you create in this way are visible only to the application for which you create them.

You can also use deployment descriptor elements to create these resources. Elements specified in the deployment descriptor override elements specified in annotations. See [Packaging Applications](#) for basic information about deployment descriptors. You must use a deployment descriptor to create application-specific resources for application clients.

To create a destination, use a `@JMSDestinationDefinition` annotation like the following on a class:

```
@JMSDestinationDefinition(
    name = "java:app/jms/myappTopic",
```

```

interfaceName = "javax.jms.Topic",
destinationName = "MyPhysicalAppTopic"
)

```

The name, `interfaceName`, and `destinationName` elements are required. You can optionally specify a `description` element. To create multiple destinations, enclose them in a `@JMSTDestinationDefinitions` annotation, separated by commas.

To create a connection factory, use a `@JMSTConnectionFactoryDefinition` annotation like the following on a class:

```

@JMSTConnectionFactoryDefinition(
    name="java:app/jms/MyConnectionFactory"
)

```

The name element is required. You can optionally specify a number of other elements, such as `clientId` if you want to use the connection factory for durable subscriptions, or `description`. If you do not specify the `interfaceName` element, the default interface is `javax.jms.ConnectionFactory`. To create multiple connection factories, enclose them in a `@JMSTConnectionFactoryDefinitions` annotation, separated by commas.

You need to specify the annotation only once for a given application, in any of the components.

Note: If your application contains one or more message-driven beans, you may want to place the annotation on one of the message-driven beans. If you place the annotation on a sending component such as an application client, you need to specify the `mappedName` element to look up the topic, instead of using the `destinationLookup` property of the activation configuration specification.

When you inject the resource into a component, use the value of the name element in the definition annotation as the value of the `lookup` element in the `@Resource` annotation:

```

@Resource(lookup = "java:app/jms/myappTopic")
private Topic topic;

```

The following portable JNDI namespaces are available. Which ones you can use depends on how your application is packaged.

- `java:global`: Makes the resource available to all deployed applications
- `java:app`: Makes the resource available to all components in all modules in a single application
- `java:module`: Makes the resource available to all components within a given module (for example, all enterprise beans within an EJB module)
- `java:comp`: Makes the resource available to a single component only (except in a web application, where it is equivalent to `java:module`)

See the API documentation for details on these annotations. The examples in [Sending and Receiving Messages Using a Simple Web Application](#), [Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB](#), and [Using an Entity to Join Messages from Two MDBs](#) all use the `@JMSTDestinationDefinition` annotation. The other JMS examples do not use these annotations. The examples that consist only of application clients are not deployed in

the application server and must therefore communicate with each other using administratively created resources that exist outside of individual applications.

42.5.2 Using Resource Injection in Enterprise Bean or Web Components

You may use resource injection to inject both administered objects and `JMSContext` objects in Java EE applications.

42.5.2.1 Injecting a `ConnectionFactory`, `Topic`, or `Queue`

Normally, you use the `@Resource` annotation to inject a `ConnectionFactory`, `Queue`, or `Topic` into your Java EE application. These objects must be created administratively before you deploy your application. You may want to use the default connection factory, whose JNDI name is `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory`.

When you use resource injection in an application client component, you normally declare the JMS resource static:

```
@Resource(lookup = "java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory")
private static ConnectionFactory connectionFactory;
```

```
@Resource(lookup = "jms/MyQueue")
private static Queue queue;
```

However, when you use this annotation in a session bean, a message-driven bean, or a web component, do *not* declare the resource static:

```
@Resource(lookup = "java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory")
private ConnectionFactory connectionFactory;
```

```
@Resource(lookup = "jms/MyTopic")
private Topic topic;
```

If you declare the resource static in these components, runtime errors will result.

42.5.2.2 Injecting a `JMSContext` Object

To access a `JMSContext` object in an enterprise bean or web component, instead of injecting the `ConnectionFactory` resource and then creating a `JMSContext`, you can use the `@Inject` and `@JMSConnectionFactory` annotations to inject a `JMSContext`. To use the default connection factory, use code like the following:

```
@Inject
private JMSContext context1;
```

To use your own connection factory, use code like the following:

```
@Inject
@JMSConnectionFactory("jms/MyConnectionFactory")
private JMSContext context2;
```

42.5.3 Using Java EE Components to Produce and to Synchronously Receive Messages

An application that produces messages or synchronously receives them can use a Java EE web or EJB component, such as a managed bean, a servlet, or a session bean, to perform these operations. The example in [Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB](#) uses a stateless session bean to send messages to a topic. The example in [Sending and Receiving Messages Using a Simple Web Application](#) uses managed beans to produce and to consume messages.

Because a synchronous receive with no specified timeout ties up server resources, this mechanism usually is not the best application design for a web or EJB component. Instead, use a synchronous receive that specifies a timeout value, or use a message-driven bean to receive messages asynchronously. For details about synchronous receives, see [JMS Message Consumers](#).

Using the JMS API in a Java EE component is in many ways similar to using it in an application client. The main differences are the areas of resource management and transactions.

42.5.3.1 Managing JMS Resources in Web and EJB Components

The JMS resources are a connection and a session, usually combined in a `JMSContext` object. In general, it is important to release JMS resources when they are no longer being used. Here are some useful practices to follow:

- If you wish to maintain a JMS resource only for the life span of a business method, use a `try-with-resources` statement to create the `JMSContext` so that it will be closed automatically at the end of the `try` block.
- To maintain a JMS resource for the duration of a transaction or request, inject the `JMSContext` as described in [Injecting a JMSContext Object](#). This will also cause the resource to be released when it is no longer needed.
- If you would like to maintain a JMS resource for the life span of an enterprise bean instance, you can use a `@PostConstruct` callback method to create the resource and a `@PreDestroy` callback method to close the resource. However, there is normally no need to do this, since application servers usually maintain a pool of connections. If you use a stateful session bean and you wish to maintain the JMS resource in a cached state, you must close the resource in a `@PrePassivate` callback method and set its value to `null`, and you must create it again in a `@PostActivate` callback method.

42.5.3.2 Managing Transactions in Session Beans

Instead of using local transactions, you use JTA transactions. You can use either container-managed transactions or bean-managed transactions. Normally, you use container-managed transactions for bean methods that perform sends or receives, allowing the EJB container to handle transaction demarcation. Because container-managed transactions are the default, you do not have to specify them.

You can use bean-managed transactions and the `javax.transaction.UserTransaction` interface's transaction demarcation methods, but you should do so only if your application has special requirements and you are an expert in using transactions. Usually, container-managed transactions produce the most efficient and correct behavior. This tutorial does not provide any examples of bean-managed transactions.

42.5.4 Using Message-Driven Beans to Receive Messages Asynchronously

The sections [What Is a Message-Driven Bean?](#) and [How Does the JMS API Work with the Java EE Platform?](#) describe how the Java EE platform supports a special kind of enterprise bean, the message-driven bean, which allows Java EE applications to process JMS messages asynchronously. Other Java EE web and EJB components allow you to send messages and to receive them synchronously but not asynchronously.

A message-driven bean is a message listener to which messages can be delivered from either a queue or a topic. The messages can be sent by any Java EE component (from

an application client, another enterprise bean, or a web component) or from an application or a system that does not use Java EE technology.

A message-driven bean class has the following requirements:

- It must be annotated with the `@MessageDriven` annotation if it does not use a deployment descriptor.
- The class must be defined as `public`, but not as `abstract` or `final`.
- It must contain a public constructor with no arguments.

It is recommended, but not required, that a message-driven bean class implement the message listener interface for the message type it supports. A bean that supports the JMS API implements the `javax.jms.MessageListener` interface, which means that it must provide an `onMessage` method with the following signature:

```
void onMessage(Message inMessage)
```

The `onMessage` method is called by the bean's container when a message has arrived for the bean to service. This method contains the business logic that handles the processing of the message. It is the message-driven bean's responsibility to parse the message and perform the necessary business logic.

A message-driven bean differs from an application client's message listener in the following ways:

- In an application client, you must create a `JMSContext`, then create a `JMSConsumer`, then call `setMessageListener` to activate the listener. For a message-driven bean, you need only define the class and annotate it, and the EJB container creates it for you.
- The bean class uses the `@MessageDriven` annotation, which typically contains an `activationConfig` element containing `@ActivationConfigProperty` annotations that specify properties used by the bean or the connection factory. These properties can include the connection factory, a destination type, a durable subscription, a message selector, or an acknowledgment mode. Some of the examples in [Chapter 43, "Java Message Service Examples"](#) set these properties. You can also set the properties in the deployment descriptor.
- The application client container has only one instance of a `MessageListener`, which is called on a single thread at a time. A message-driven bean, however, may have multiple instances, configured by the container, which may be called concurrently by multiple threads (although each instance is called by only one thread at a time). Message-driven beans may therefore allow much faster processing of messages than message listeners.
- You do not need to specify a message acknowledgment mode unless you use bean-managed transactions. The message is consumed in the transaction in which the `onMessage` method is invoked.

[Table 42–3](#) lists the activation configuration properties defined by the JMS specification.

Table 42–3 @ActivationConfigProperty Settings for Message-Driven Beans

Property Name	Description
<code>acknowledgeMode</code>	Acknowledgment mode, used only for bean-managed transactions; the default is <code>Auto-acknowledge</code> (<code>Dups-ok-acknowledge</code> is also permitted)

Table 42-3 (Cont.) @ActivationConfigProperty Settings for Message-Driven Beans

Property Name	Description
destinationLookup	The lookup name of the queue or topic from which the bean will receive messages
destinationType	Either <code>javax.jms.Queue</code> or <code>javax.jms.Topic</code>
subscriptionDurability	For durable subscriptions, set the value to <code>Durable</code> ; see Creating Durable Subscriptions for more information
clientId	For durable subscriptions, the client ID for the connection (optional)
subscriptionName	For durable subscriptions, the name of the subscription
messageSelector	A string that filters messages; see JMS Message Selectors for information
connectionFactoryLookup	The lookup name of the connection factory to be used to connect to the JMS provider from which the bean will receive messages

For example, here is the message-driven bean used in [Receiving Messages Asynchronously using a Message-Driven Bean](#):

```

@MessageDriven(activationConfig = {
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "destinationLookup",
        propertyValue = "jms/MyQueue"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "destinationType",
        propertyValue = "javax.jms.Queue")
})
public class SimpleMessageBean implements MessageListener {

    @Resource
    private MessageDrivenContext mdc;
    static final Logger logger = Logger.getLogger("SimpleMessageBean");

    public SimpleMessageBean() {
    }

    @Override
    public void onMessage(Message inMessage) {

        try {
            if (inMessage instanceof TextMessage) {
                logger.log(Level.INFO,
                    "MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: {0}",
                    inMessage.getBody(String.class));
            } else {
                logger.log(Level.WARNING,
                    "Message of wrong type: {0}",
                    inMessage.getClass().getName());
            }
        } catch (JMSEException e) {
            logger.log(Level.SEVERE,
                "SimpleMessageBean.onMessage: JMSEException: {0}",
                e.toString());
            mdc.setRollbackOnly();
        }
    }
}

```

If JMS is integrated with the application server using a resource adapter, the JMS resource adapter handles these tasks for the EJB container.

The bean class commonly injects a `MessageDrivenContext` resource, which provides some additional methods you can use for transaction management (`setRollbackOnly`, for example):

```
@Resource
private MessageDrivenContext mdc;
```

A message-driven bean never has a local or remote interface. Instead, it has only a bean class.

A message-driven bean is similar in some ways to a stateless session bean: Its instances are relatively short-lived and retain no state for a specific client. The instance variables of the message-driven bean instance can contain some state across the handling of client messages: for example, an open database connection, or an object reference to an enterprise bean object.

Like a stateless session bean, a message-driven bean can have many interchangeable instances running at the same time. The container can pool these instances to allow streams of messages to be processed concurrently. The container attempts to deliver messages in chronological order when that would not impair the concurrency of message processing, but no guarantees are made as to the exact order in which messages are delivered to the instances of the message-driven bean class. If message order is essential to your application, you may want to configure your application server to use just one instance of the message-driven bean.

For details on the lifecycle of a message-driven bean, see [The Lifecycle of a Message-Driven Bean](#).

42.5.5 Managing JTA Transactions

Java EE application clients and Java SE clients use JMS local transactions (described in [Using JMS Local Transactions](#)), which allow the grouping of sends and receives within a specific JMS session. Java EE applications that run in the web or EJB container commonly use JTA transactions to ensure the integrity of accesses to external resources. The key difference between a JTA transaction and a JMS local transaction is that a JTA transaction is controlled by the application server's transaction managers. JTA transactions may be **distributed**, which means that they can encompass multiple resources in the same transaction, such as a JMS provider and a database.

For example, distributed transactions allow multiple applications to perform atomic updates on the same database, and they allow a single application to perform atomic updates on multiple databases.

In a Java EE application that uses the JMS API, you can use transactions to combine message sends or receives with database updates and other resource manager operations. You can access resources from multiple application components within a single transaction. For example, a servlet can start a transaction, access multiple databases, invoke an enterprise bean that sends a JMS message, invoke another enterprise bean that modifies an EIS system using the Connector Architecture, and finally commit the transaction. Your application cannot, however, both send a JMS message and receive a reply to it within the same transaction.

JTA transactions within the EJB and web containers can be either of two kinds:

- **Container-managed transactions:** The container controls the integrity of your transactions without your having to call `commit` or `rollback`. Container-managed

transactions are easier to use than bean-managed transactions. You can specify appropriate transaction attributes for your enterprise bean methods.

Use the `Required` transaction attribute (the default) to ensure that a method is always part of a transaction. If a transaction is in progress when the method is called, the method will be part of that transaction; if not, a new transaction will be started before the method is called and will be committed when the method returns. See [Transaction Attributes](#) for more information.

- **Bean-managed transactions:** You can use these in conjunction with the `javax.transaction.UserTransaction` interface, which provides its own `commit` and `rollback` methods you can use to delimit transaction boundaries. Bean-managed transactions are recommended only for those who are experienced in programming transactions.

You can use either container-managed transactions or bean-managed transactions with message-driven beans. To ensure that all messages are received and handled within the context of a transaction, use container-managed transactions and use the `Required` transaction attribute (the default) for the `onMessage` method.

When you use container-managed transactions, you can call the following `MessageDrivenContext` methods:

- `setRollbackOnly`: Use this method for error handling. If an exception occurs, `setRollbackOnly` marks the current transaction so that the only possible outcome of the transaction is a rollback.
- `getRollbackOnly`: Use this method to test whether the current transaction has been marked for rollback.

If you use bean-managed transactions, the delivery of a message to the `onMessage` method takes place outside the JTA transaction context. The transaction begins when you call the `UserTransaction.begin` method within the `onMessage` method, and it ends when you call `UserTransaction.commit` or `UserTransaction.rollback`. Any call to the `Connection.createSession` method must take place within the transaction.

Using bean-managed transactions allows you to process the message by using more than one transaction or to have some parts of the message processing take place outside a transaction context. However, if you use container-managed transactions, the message is received by the MDB and processed by the `onMessage` method within the same transaction. It is not possible to achieve this behavior with bean-managed transactions.

When you create a `JMSContext` in a JTA transaction (in the web or EJB container), the container ignores any arguments you specify, because it manages all transactional properties. When you create a `JMSContext` in the web or EJB container and there is no JTA transaction, the value (if any) passed to the `createContext` method should be `JMSContext.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE` or `JMSContext.DUPS_OK_ACKNOWLEDGE`.

When you use container-managed transactions, you normally use the `Required` transaction attribute (the default) for your enterprise bean's business methods.

You do not specify the activation configuration property `acknowledgeMode` when you create a message-driven bean that uses container-managed transactions. The container acknowledges the message automatically when it commits the transaction.

If a message-driven bean uses bean-managed transactions, the message receipt cannot be part of the bean-managed transaction. You can set the activation configuration property `acknowledgeMode` to `Auto-acknowledge` or `Dups-ok-acknowledge` to specify how you want the message received by the message-driven bean to be acknowledged.

If the `onMessage` method throws a `RuntimeException`, the container does not acknowledge processing the message. In that case, the JMS provider will redeliver the unacknowledged message in the future.

42.6 Further Information about JMS

For more information about JMS, see:

- Java Message Service web site:
<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/index-jsp-142945.html>
- Java Message Service specification, version 2.0, available from:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=343>

Java Message Service Examples

This chapter provides examples that show how to use the JMS API in various kinds of Java EE applications. It covers the following topics:

- [Overview of the JMS Examples](#)
- [Writing Simple JMS Applications](#)
- [Writing More Advanced JMS Applications](#)
- [Writing High Performance and Scalable JMS Applications](#)
- [Sending and Receiving Messages Using a Simple Web Application](#)
- [Receiving Messages Asynchronously using a Message-Driven Bean](#)
- [Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB](#)
- [Using an Entity to Join Messages from Two MDBs](#)
- [Using NetBeans IDE to Create JMS Resources](#)

A final section covers [Using NetBeans IDE to Create JMS Resources](#).

The examples are in the *tut-install/examples/jms/* directory.

The steps to build and run each example are as follows:

1. Use NetBeans IDE or Maven to compile, package, and in some cases deploy the example.
2. Use NetBeans IDE, Maven, or the `appclient` command to run the application client, or use the browser to run the web application examples.

Before you deploy or run the examples, you need to create resources for them. Some examples have a `glassfish-resources.xml` file that is used to create resources for that example and others. You can use the `asadmin` command to create the resources.

To use the `asadmin` and `appclient` commands, you need to put the GlassFish Server `bin` directories in your command path, as described in [SDK Installation Tips](#).

43.1 Overview of the JMS Examples

The following tables list the examples used in this chapter, describe what they do, and link to the section that describes them fully. The example directory for each example is relative to the *tut-install/examples/jms/* directory.

Table 43–1 JMS Examples that Show the Use of Java EE Application Clients

Example Directory	Description
simple/producer	Using an application client to send messages; see Sending Messages
simple/synchconsumer	Using an application client to receive messages synchronously; see Receiving Messages Synchronously
simple/asynchconsumer	Using an application client to receive messages asynchronously; see Using a Message Listener for Asynchronous Message Delivery
simple/messagebrowser	Using an application client to use a <code>QueueBrowser</code> to browse a queue; see Browsing Messages on a Queue
simple/clientackconsumer	Using an application client to acknowledge messages received synchronously; see Acknowledging Messages
durablesubscriptionexample	Using an application client to create a durable subscription on a topic; see Using Durable Subscriptions
transactedexample	Using an application client to send and receive messages in local transactions (also uses request-reply messaging); see Using Local Transactions
shared/sharedconsumer	Using an application client to create shared nondurable topic subscriptions; see Using Shared Nondurable Subscriptions
shared/sharedurableconsumer	Using an application client to create shared durable topic subscriptions; see Using Shared Durable Subscriptions

Table 43–2 JMS Examples that Show the Use of Java EE Web and EJB Components

Example Directory	Description
websimplemessage	Using managed beans to send messages and to receive messages synchronously; see Sending and Receiving Messages Using a Simple Web Application
simplemessage	Using an application client to send messages, and using a message-driven bean to receive messages asynchronously; see Receiving Messages Asynchronously using a Message-Driven Bean
clientsessionmdb	Using a session bean to send messages, and using a message-driven bean to receive messages; see Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB
clientmdbentity	Using an application client, two message-driven beans, and JPA persistence to create a simple HR application; see Using an Entity to Join Messages from Two MDBs

43.2 Writing Simple JMS Applications

This section shows how to create, package, and run simple JMS clients that are packaged as application clients. The clients demonstrate the basic tasks a JMS application must perform:

- Creating a `JMSContext`
- Creating message producers and consumers
- Sending and receiving messages

Each example uses two clients: one that sends messages and one that receives them. You can run the clients in two terminal windows.

When you write a JMS client to run in an enterprise bean application, you use many of the same methods in much the same sequence as for an application client. However, there are some significant differences. [Using the JMS API in Java EE Applications](#) describes these differences, and this chapter provides examples that illustrate them.

The examples for this section are in the `tut-install/examples/jms/simple/` directory, under the following subdirectories:

```
producer
synchconsumer
asynchconsumer
messagebrowser
clientackconsumer
```

Before running the examples, you need to start the GlassFish Server and create administered objects.

43.2.1 Starting the JMS Provider

When you use the GlassFish Server, your JMS provider is the GlassFish Server. Start the server as described in [Starting and Stopping the GlassFish Server](#).

43.2.2 Creating JMS Administered Objects

This example uses the following JMS administered objects:

- A connection factory
- Two destination resources: a topic and a queue

Before you run the applications, you can use the `asadmin add-resources` command to create needed JMS resources, specifying as the argument a file named `glassfish-resources.xml`. This file can be created in any project using NetBeans IDE, although you can also create it by hand. A file for the needed resources is present in the `jms/simple/producer/src/main/setup` directory.

The JMS examples use a connection factory with the logical JNDI lookup name `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory`, which is preconfigured on the GlassFish Server.

You can also use the `asadmin create-jms-resource` command to create resources, the `asadmin list-jms-resources` command to display their names, and the `asadmin delete-jms-resource` command to remove them.

43.2.2.1 To Create Resources for the Simple Examples

A `glassfish-resources.xml` file in one of the Maven projects can create all the resources needed for the simple examples.

1. In a command window, go to the Producer example.

```
cd tut-install/jms/simple/producer
```

2. Create the resources using the `asadmin add-resources` command:

```
asadmin add-resources src/main/setup/glassfish-resources.xml
```

3. Verify the creation of the resources:

```
asadmin list-jms-resources
```

The command lists the two destinations and connection factory specified in the `glassfish-resources.xml` file in addition to the platform default connection factory:

```
jms/MyQueue
jms/MyTopic
jms/___defaultConnectionFactory
Command list-jms-resources executed successfully.
```

On the GlassFish Server, the Java EE `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory` resource is mapped to a connection factory named `jms/___defaultConnectionFactory`.

43.2.3 Building All the Simple Examples

To run the simple examples using the GlassFish Server, package each example in an application client JAR file. The application client JAR file requires a manifest file, located in the `src/main/java/META-INF` directory for each example, along with the `.class` file.

The `pom.xml` file for each example specifies a plugin that creates an application client JAR file. You can build the examples using either NetBeans IDE or Maven.

43.2.3.1 To Build All the Simple Examples Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/jms/`
3. Expand the `jms` node and select the `simple` folder.
4. Click **Open Project** to open all the simple examples.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `simple` project and select **Build** to build all the examples.

This command places the application client JAR files in the `target` directories for the examples.

43.2.3.2 To Build All the Simple Examples on the Command Line

1. In a terminal window, go to the `simple` directory:
`cd tut-install/jms/simple`
2. Enter the following command to build all the projects:
`mvn install`

This command places the application client JAR files in the `target` directories for the examples.

43.2.4 Sending Messages

This section describes how to use a client to send messages. The `Producer.java` client will send messages in all of these examples.

The general steps this example performs are as follows.

1. Inject resources for the administered objects used by the example.

2. Accept and verify command-line arguments. You can use this example to send any number of messages to either a queue or a topic, so you specify the destination type and the number of messages on the command line when you run the program.
3. Create a `JMSContext`, then send the specified number of text messages in the form of strings, as described in [Message Bodies](#).
4. Send a final message of type `Message` to indicate that the consumer should expect no more messages.
5. Catch any exceptions.

43.2.4.1 The `Producer.java` Client

The sending client, `Producer.java`, performs the following steps:

1. Injects resources for a connection factory, queue, and topic:

```
@Resource(lookup = "java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory")
private static ConnectionFactory connectionFactory;
@Resource(lookup = "jms/MyQueue")
private static Queue queue;
@Resource(lookup = "jms/MyTopic")
private static Topic topic;
```

2. Retrieves and verifies command-line arguments that specify the destination type and the number of arguments:

```
final int NUM_MSGS;
String destType = args[0];
System.out.println("Destination type is " + destType);
if ( ! ( destType.equals("queue") || destType.equals("topic") ) ) {
    System.err.println("Argument must be \"queue\" or \"topic\"");
    System.exit(1);
}
if (args.length == 2){
    NUM_MSGS = (new Integer(args[1])).intValue();
} else {
    NUM_MSGS = 1;
}
```

3. Assigns either the queue or the topic to a destination object, based on the specified destination type:

```
Destination dest = null;
try {
    if (destType.equals("queue")) {
        dest = (Destination) queue;
    } else {
        dest = (Destination) topic;
    }
} catch (Exception e) {
    System.err.println("Error setting destination: " + e.toString());
    System.exit(1);
}
```

4. Within a try-with-resources block, creates a `JMSContext`:

```
try (JMSContext context = connectionFactory.createContext()); {
```

5. Sets the message count to zero, then creates a `JMSProducer` and sends one or more messages to the destination and increments the count. Messages in the form of strings are of the `TextMessage` message type:

```
int count = 0;
for (int i = 0; i < NUM_MSGS; i++) {
    String message = "This is message " + (i + 1)
        + " from producer";
    // Comment out the following line to send many messages
    System.out.println("Sending message: " + message);
    context.createProducer().send(dest, message);
    count += 1;
}
System.out.println("Text messages sent: " + count);
```

6. Sends an empty control message to indicate the end of the message stream:

```
context.createProducer().send(dest, context.createMessage());
```

Sending an empty message of no specified type is a convenient way for an application to indicate to the consumer that the final message has arrived.

7. Catches and handles any exceptions. The end of the try-with-resources block automatically causes the `JMSContext` to be closed.

```
} catch (Exception e) {
    System.err.println("Exception occurred: " + e.toString());
    System.exit(1);
}
System.exit(0);
```

43.2.4.2 To Run the Producer Client

You can run the client using the `appliance` command. The `Producer` client takes one or two command-line arguments: a destination type and, optionally, a number of messages. If you do not specify a number of messages, the client sends one message.

You will use the client to send three messages to a queue.

1. Make sure that GlassFish Server is running (see [Starting the JMS Provider](#)) and that you create resources and build the simple JMS examples (see [Creating JMS Administered Objects](#) and [Building All the Simple Examples](#)).
2. In a terminal window, go to the `producer` directory:

```
cd producer
```

3. Run the `Producer` program, sending three messages to the queue:

```
appliance -client target/producer.jar queue 3
```

The output of the program looks like this (along with some additional output):

```
Destination type is queue
Sending message: This is message 1 from producer
Sending message: This is message 2 from producer
Sending message: This is message 3 from producer
Text messages sent: 3
```

The messages are now in the queue, waiting to be received.

Note: When you run an application client, the command may take a long time to complete.

43.2.5 Receiving Messages Synchronously

This section describes the receiving client, which uses the `receive` method to consume messages synchronously. This section then explains how to run the clients using the GlassFish Server.

43.2.5.1 The `SynchConsumer.java` Client

The receiving client, `SynchConsumer.java`, performs the following steps:

1. Injects resources for a connection factory, queue, and topic.
2. Assigns either the queue or the topic to a destination object, based on the specified destination type.
3. Within a try-with-resources block, creates a `JMSContext`.
4. Creates a `JMSConsumer`, starting message delivery:

```
consumer = context.createConsumer(dest);
```

5. Receives the messages sent to the destination until the end-of-message-stream control message is received:

```
int count = 0;
while (true) {
    Message m = consumer.receive(1000);
    if (m != null) {
        if (m instanceof TextMessage) {
            System.out.println(
                "Reading message: " + m.getBody(String.class));
            count += 1;
        } else {
            break;
        }
    }
}
System.out.println("Messages received: " + count);
```

Because the control message is not a `TextMessage`, the receiving client terminates the `while` loop and stops receiving messages after the control message arrives.

6. Catches and handles any exceptions. The end of the try-with-resources block automatically causes the `JMSContext` to be closed.

The `SynchConsumer` client uses an indefinite `while` loop to receive messages, calling `receive` with a timeout argument.

43.2.5.2 To Run the `SynchConsumer` and `Producer` Clients

You can run the client using the `appclient` command. The `SynchConsumer` client takes one command-line argument, the destination type.

These steps show how to receive and send messages synchronously using both a queue and a topic. The steps assume you already ran the `Producer` client and have three messages waiting in the queue.

1. In the same terminal window where you ran `Producer`, go to the `synchconsumer` directory:

```
cd ../synchconsumer
```

2. Run the `SynchConsumer` client, specifying the queue:

```
appclient -client target/synchconsumer.jar queue
```

The output of the client looks like this (along with some additional output):

```
Destination type is queue
Reading message: This is message 1 from producer
Reading message: This is message 2 from producer
Reading message: This is message 3 from producer
Messages received: 3
```

3. Now try running the clients in the opposite order. Run the `SynchConsumer` client:

```
appclient -client target/synchconsumer.jar queue
```

The client displays the destination type and then waits for messages.

4. Open a new terminal window and run the `Producer` client.

```
cd tut-install/jms/simple/producer
appclient -client target/producer.jar queue 3
```

When the messages have been sent, the `SynchConsumer` client receives them and exits.

5. Now run the `Producer` client using a topic instead of a queue:

```
appclient -client target/producer.jar topic 3
```

The output of the client looks like this (along with some additional output):

```
Destination type is topic
Sending message: This is message 1 from producer
Sending message: This is message 2 from producer
Sending message: This is message 3 from producer
Text messages sent: 3
```

6. Now, in the other terminal window, run the `SynchConsumer` client using the topic:

```
appclient -client target/synchconsumer.jar topic
```

The result, however, is different. Because you are using a subscription on a topic, messages that were sent before you created the subscription on the topic will not be added to the subscription and delivered to the consumer. (See [Publish/Subscribe Messaging Style](#) and [Consuming Messages from Topics](#) for details.) Instead of receiving the messages, the client waits for messages to arrive.

7. Leave the `SynchConsumer` client running and run the `Producer` client again.

```
appclient -client target/producer.jar topic 3
```

Now the `SynchConsumer` client receives the messages (along with some additional output):

```
Destination type is topic
Reading message: This is message 1 from producer
Reading message: This is message 2 from producer
Reading message: This is message 3 from producer
```

Messages received: 3

Because these messages were sent after the consumer was started, the client receives them.

43.2.6 Using a Message Listener for Asynchronous Message Delivery

This section describes the receiving clients in an example that uses a message listener for asynchronous message delivery. This section then explains how to compile and run the clients using the GlassFish Server.

Note: In the Java EE platform, message listeners can be used only in application clients, as in this example. To allow asynchronous message delivery in a web or enterprise bean application, you use a message-driven bean, shown in later examples in this chapter.

43.2.6.1 Writing the `AsynchConsumer.java` and `TextListener.java` Clients

The sending client is `Producer.java`, the same client used in [Sending Messages](#) and [Receiving Messages Synchronously](#).

An asynchronous consumer normally runs indefinitely. This one runs until the user types the character `q` or `Q` to stop the client.

The client, `AsynchConsumer.java`, performs the following steps:

1. Injects resources for a connection factory, queue, and topic.
2. Assigns either the queue or the topic to a destination object, based on the specified destination type.
3. In a try-with-resources block, creates a `JMSContext`.
4. Creates a `JMSConsumer`.
5. Creates an instance of the `TextListener` class and registers it as the message listener for the `JMSConsumer`:


```
listener = new TextListener();
consumer.setMessageListener(listener);
```
6. Listens for the messages sent to the destination, stopping when the user types the character `q` or `Q` (it uses a `java.io.InputStreamReader` to do this).
7. Catches and handles any exceptions. The end of the try-with-resources block automatically causes the `JMSContext` to be closed, thus stopping delivery of messages to the message listener.

The message listener, `TextListener.java`, follows these steps:

1. When a message arrives, the `onMessage` method is called automatically.
2. If the message is a `TextMessage`, the `onMessage` method displays its content as a string value. If the message is not a text message, it reports this fact:

```
public void onMessage(Message m) {
    try {
        if (m instanceof TextMessage) {
            System.out.println(
                "Reading message: " + m.getBody(String.class));
        } else {
            System.out.println("Message is not a TextMessage");
        }
    }
}
```

```
    }  
    } catch (JMSEException e) {  
        System.err.println(  
            "JMSEException in onMessage(): " + e.toString());  
    } catch (Throwable t) {  
        System.err.println(  
            "Exception in onMessage():" + t.getMessage());  
    }  
}
```

For this example, you will use the same connection factory and destinations you created in [To Create Resources for the Simple Examples](#).

The steps assume that you have already built and packaged all the examples using NetBeans IDE or Maven.

43.2.6.2 To Run the AsynchConsumer and Producer Clients

You will need two terminal windows, as you did in [Receiving Messages Synchronously](#).

1. In the terminal window where you ran the `SynchConsumer` client, go to the `asynchconsumer` example directory.

```
cd tut-install/jms/simple/asynchconsumer
```

2. Run the `AsynchConsumer` client, specifying the topic destination type.

```
apclient -client target/asynchconsumer.jar topic
```

The client displays the following lines (along with some additional output) and then waits for messages:

```
Destination type is topic  
To end program, enter Q or q, then <return>
```

3. In the terminal window where you ran the `Producer` client previously, run the client again, sending three messages.

```
apclient -client target/producer.jar topic 3
```

The output of the client looks like this (along with some additional output):

```
Destination type is topic  
Sending message: This is message 1 from producer  
Sending message: This is message 2 from producer  
Sending message: This is message 3 from producer  
Text messages sent: 3
```

In the other window, the `AsynchConsumer` client displays the following (along with some additional output):

```
Destination type is topic  
To end program, enter Q or q, then <return>  
Reading message: This is message 1 from producer  
Reading message: This is message 2 from producer  
Reading message: This is message 3 from producer  
Message is not a TextMessage
```

The last line appears because the client has received the non-text control message sent by the `Producer` client.

4. Enter `Q` or `q` and press **Return** to stop the `AsynchConsumer` client.

- Now run the clients using a queue.

In this case, as with the synchronous example, you can run the `Producer` client first, because there is no timing dependency between the sender and receiver:

```
appclient -client target/producer.jar queue 3
```

The output of the client looks like this:

```
Destination type is queue
Sending message: This is message 1 from producer
Sending message: This is message 2 from producer
Sending message: This is message 3 from producer
Text messages sent: 3
```

- In the other window, run the `AsynchConsumer` client:

```
appclient -client target/asynchconsumer.jar queue
```

The output of the client looks like this (along with some additional output):

```
Destination type is queue
To end program, enter Q or q, then <return>
Reading message: This is message 1 from producer
Reading message: This is message 2 from producer
Reading message: This is message 3 from producer
Message is not a TextMessage
```

- Enter `Q` or `q` and press **Return** to stop the client.

43.2.7 Browsing Messages on a Queue

This section describes an example that creates a `QueueBrowser` object to examine messages on a queue, as described in [JMS Queue Browsers](#). This section then explains how to compile, package, and run the example using the GlassFish Server.

43.2.7.1 The `MessageBrowser.java` Client

To create a `QueueBrowser` for a queue, you call the `JMSContext.createBrowser` method with the queue as the argument. You obtain the messages in the queue as an `Enumeration` object. You can then iterate through the `Enumeration` object and display the contents of each message.

The `MessageBrowser.java` client performs the following steps:

- Injects resources for a connection factory and a queue.
- In a try-with-resources block, creates a `JMSContext`.
- Creates a `QueueBrowser`:

```
QueueBrowser browser = context.createBrowser(queue);
```

- Retrieves the `Enumeration` that contains the messages:

```
Enumeration msgs = browser.getEnumeration();
```

- Verifies that the `Enumeration` contains messages, then displays the contents of the messages:

```
if ( !msgs.hasMoreElements() ) {
    System.out.println("No messages in queue");
} else {
    while (msgs.hasMoreElements()) {
```

```
        Message tempMsg = (Message)msgs.nextElement();
        System.out.println("Message: " + tempMsg);
    }
}
```

6. Catches and handles any exceptions. The end of the try-with-resources block automatically causes the `JMSContext` to be closed.

Dumping the message contents to standard output retrieves the message body and properties in a format that depends on the implementation of the `toString` method. In the GlassFish Server, the message format looks something like this:

```
Text: This is message 3 from producer
Class: com.sun.messaging.jmq.jmsclient.TextMessageImpl
getJMSMessageID(): ID:14-128.149.71.199(f9:86:a2:d5:46:9b)-40814-1255980521747
getJMSTimestamp(): 1129061034355
getJMSCorrelationID(): null
JMSReplyTo: null
JMSDestination: PhysicalQueue
getJMSDeliveryMode(): PERSISTENT
getJMSRedelivered(): false
getJMSType(): null
getJMSExpiration(): 0
getJMSPriority(): 4
Properties: {JMSXDeliveryCount=0}
```

Instead of displaying the message contents this way, you can call some of the `Message` interface's getter methods to retrieve the parts of the message you want to see.

For this example, you will use the connection factory and queue you created for [Receiving Messages Synchronously](#). It is assumed that you have already built and packaged all the examples.

43.2.7.2 To Run the QueueBrowser Client

To run the `MessageBrowser` example using the `appclient` command, follow these steps.

You also need the `Producer` example to send the message to the queue, and one of the consumer clients to consume the messages after you inspect them.

To run the clients, you need two terminal windows.

1. In a terminal window, go to the `producer` directory.

```
cd tut-install/examples/jms/simple/producer/
```

2. Run the `Producer` client, sending one message to the queue, along with the non-text control message:

```
appclient -client target/producer.jar queue
```

The output of the client looks like this (along with some additional output):

```
Destination type is queue
Sending message: This is message 1 from producer
Text messages sent: 1
```

3. In another terminal window, go to the `messagebrowser` directory.

```
cd tut-install/jms/simple/messagebrowser
```

4. Run the `MessageBrowser` client using the following command:

```
appclient -client target/messagebrowser.jar
```

The output of the client looks something like this (along with some additional output):

```
Message:
Text: This is message 1 from producer
Class: com.sun.messaging.jmq.jmsclient.TextMessageImpl
getJMSMessageID(): ID:9-10.152.23.26(bf:27:4:e:e7:ec)-55645-1363100335526
getJMSTimestamp(): 1363100335526
getJMSCorrelationID(): null
JMSReplyTo: null
JMSDestination: PhysicalQueue
getJMSDeliveryMode(): PERSISTENT
getJMSRedelivered(): false
getJMSType(): null
getJMSExpiration(): 0
getJMSPriority(): 4
Properties: {JMSXDeliveryCount=0}
```

```
Message:
Class: com.sun.messaging.jmq.jmsclient.MessageImpl
getJMSMessageID(): ID:10-10.152.23.26(bf:27:4:e:e7:ec)-55645-1363100335526
getJMSTimestamp(): 1363100335526
getJMSCorrelationID(): null
JMSReplyTo: null
JMSDestination: PhysicalQueue
getJMSDeliveryMode(): PERSISTENT
getJMSRedelivered(): false
getJMSType(): null
getJMSExpiration(): 0
getJMSPriority(): 4
Properties: {JMSXDeliveryCount=0}
```

The first message is the `TextMessage`, and the second is the non-text control message.

5. Go to the `synchconsumer` directory.
6. Run the `SynchConsumer` client to consume the messages:

```
appclient -client target/synchconsumer.jar queue
```

The output of the client looks like this (along with some additional output):

```
Destination type is queue
Reading message: This is message 1 from producer
Messages received: 1
```

43.2.8 Running Multiple Consumers on the Same Destination

To illustrate further the way point-to-point and publish/subscribe messaging works, you can use the `Producer` and `SynchConsumer` examples to send messages that are then consumed by two clients running simultaneously.

1. Open three command windows. In one, go to the `producer` directory. In the other two, go to the `synchconsumer` directory.
2. In each of the `synchconsumer` windows, start running the client, receiving messages from a queue:

```
appclient -client target/synchconsumer.jar queue
```

Wait until you see the "Destination type is queue" message in both windows.

3. In the producer window, run the client, sending 20 or so messages to the queue:

```
appclient -client target/producer.jar queue 20
```
4. Look at the output in the `synchconsumer` windows. In point-to-point messaging, each message can have only one consumer. Therefore, each of the clients receives some of the messages. One of the clients receives the non-text control message, reports the number of messages received, and exits.
5. In the window of the client that did not receive the non-text control message, enter Control-C to exit the program.
6. Next, run the `synchconsumer` clients using a topic. In each window, run the following command:

```
appclient -client target/synchconsumer.jar topic
```

Wait until you see the "Destination type is topic" message in both windows.

7. In the producer window, run the client, sending 20 or so messages to the topic:

```
appclient -client target/producer.jar topic 20
```
8. Again, look at the output in the `synchconsumer` windows. In publish/subscribe messaging, a copy of every message is sent to each subscription on the topic. Therefore, each of the clients receives all 20 text messages as well as the non-text control message.

43.2.9 Acknowledging Messages

JMS provides two alternative ways for a consuming client to ensure that a message is not acknowledged until the application has finished processing the message:

- Using a synchronous consumer in a `JMSContext` that has been configured to use the `CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE` setting
- Using a message listener for asynchronous message delivery in a `JMSContext` that has been configured to use the default `AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE` setting

Note: In the Java EE platform, `CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE` sessions can be used only in application clients, as in this example.

The `clientackconsumer` example demonstrates the first alternative, in which a synchronous consumer uses client acknowledgment. The `asynchconsumer` example described in [Using a Message Listener for Asynchronous Message Delivery](#) demonstrates the second alternative.

For information about message acknowledgment, see [Controlling Message Acknowledgment](#).

The following table describes four possible interactions between types of consumers and types of acknowledgment.

Table 43–3 Message Acknowledgment with Synchronous and Asynchronous Consumers

Consumer Type	Acknowledgment Type	Behavior
Synchronous	Client	Client acknowledges message after processing is complete
Asynchronous	Client	Client acknowledges message after processing is complete
Synchronous	Auto	Acknowledgment happens immediately after receive call; message cannot be redelivered if any subsequent processing steps fail
Asynchronous	Auto	Message is automatically acknowledged when onMessage method returns

The example is under the `tut-install/examples/jms/simple/clientackconsumer` directory.

The example client, `ClientAckConsumer.java`, creates a `JMSContext` that specifies client acknowledgment:

```
try (JMSContext context =
    connectionFactory.createContext(JMSContext.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);) {
    ...
}
```

The client uses a while loop almost identical to that used by `SynchConsumer.java`, with the exception that after processing each message, it calls the `acknowledge` method on the `JMSContext`:

```
context.acknowledge();
```

The example uses the following objects:

- The `jms/MyQueue` resource that you created for [Receiving Messages Synchronously](#).
- `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory`, the platform default connection factory preconfigured with GlassFish Server

43.2.9.1 To Run the ClientAckConsumer Client

1. In a terminal window, go to the following directory:

```
tut-install/examples/jms/simple/producer/
```

2. Run the Producer client, sending some messages to the queue:

```
appclient -client target/producer.jar queue 3
```

3. In another terminal window, go to the following directory:

```
tut-install/examples/jms/simple/clientackconsumer/
```

4. To run the client, use the following command:

```
appclient -client target/clientackconsumer.jar
```

The client output looks like this (along with some additional output):

```
Created client-acknowledge JMSContext
Reading message: This is message 1 from producer
Acknowledging TextMessage
```

```
Reading message: This is message 2 from producer
Acknowledging TextMessage
Reading message: This is message 3 from producer
Acknowledging TextMessage
Acknowledging non-text control message
```

The client acknowledges each message explicitly after processing it, just as a `JMSContext` configured to use `AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE` does automatically after a `MessageListener` returns successfully from processing a message received asynchronously.

43.3 Writing More Advanced JMS Applications

The following examples show how to use some of the more advanced features of the JMS API, durable subscriptions and transactions.

43.3.1 Using Durable Subscriptions

The `durablesubscriptionexample` example shows how unshared durable subscriptions work. It demonstrates that a durable subscription continues to exist and accumulate messages even when there is no active consumer on it.

The example consists of two modules, a `durableconsumer` application that creates a durable subscription and consumes messages, and an `unsubscriber` application that enables you to unsubscribe from the durable subscription after you have finished running the `durableconsumer` application.

For information on durable subscriptions, see [Creating Durable Subscriptions](#).

The main client, `DurableConsumer.java`, is under the `tut-install/examples/jms/durablesubscriptionexample/durableconsumer` directory.

The example uses a connection factory, `jms/DurableConnectionFactory`, that has a client ID.

The `DurableConsumer` client creates a `JMSContext` using the connection factory. It then stops the `JMSContext`, calls `createDurableConsumer` to create a durable subscription and a consumer on the topic by specifying a subscription name, registers a message listener, and starts the `JMSContext` again. The subscription is created only if it does not already exist, so the example can be run repeatedly.

```
try (JMSContext context = durableConnectionFactory.createContext();) {
    context.stop();
    consumer = context.createDurableConsumer(
        topic,
        "MakeItLast");
    listener = new TextListener();
    consumer.setMessageListener(listener);
    context.start();
    ...
}
```

To send messages to the topic, you run the producer client.

The `unsubscriber` example contains a very simple `Unsubscriber` client, which creates a `JMSContext` on the same connection factory and then calls the `unsubscribe` method, specifying the subscription name:

```
try (JMSContext context = durableConnectionFactory.createContext();) {
    System.out.println(
        "Unsubscribing from durable subscription");
    context.unsubscribe("MakeItLast");
}
```

```
} ...
```

43.3.1.1 To Create Resources for the Durable Subscription Example

1. In a command window, go to the durableconsumer example.

```
cd tut-install/jms/durablesubscriptionexample/durableconsumer
```

2. Create the resources using the `asadmin add-resources` command:

```
asadmin add-resources src/main/setup/glassfish-resources.xml
```

The command output reports the creation of a connector connection pool and a connector resource.

3. Verify the creation of the resources:

```
asadmin list-jms-resources
```

In addition to the resources you created for the simple examples, the command lists the new connection factory:

```
jms/MyQueue
jms/MyTopic
jms/___defaultConnectionFactory
jms/DurableConnectionFactory
Command list-jms-resources executed successfully.
```

43.3.1.2 To Run the Durable Subscription Example

1. In a terminal window, go to the following directory:

```
tut-install/examples/jms/durablesubscriptionexample/
```

2. Build the durableconsumer and unsubsubscriber examples:

```
mvn install
```

3. Go to the durableconsumer directory:

```
cd durableconsumer
```

4. To run the client, enter the following command:

```
appclient -client target/durableconsumer.jar
```

The client creates the durable consumer and then waits for messages:

```
Creating consumer for topic
Starting consumer
To end program, enter Q or q, then <return>
```

5. In another terminal window, run the Producer client, sending some messages to the topic:

```
cd tut-install/examples/jms/simple/producer
appclient -client target/producer.jar topic 3
```

6. After the DurableConsumer client receives the messages, enter `q` or `Q` to exit the program. At this point, the client has behaved like any other asynchronous consumer.

7. Now, while the DurableConsumer client is not running, use the Producer client to send more messages:

```
apclient -client target/producer.jar topic 2
```

If a durable subscription did not exist, these messages would be lost, because no consumer on the topic is currently running. However, the durable subscription is still active, and it retains the messages.

8. Run the `DurableConsumer` client again. It immediately receives the messages that were sent while it was inactive:

```
Creating consumer for topic
Starting consumer
To end program, enter Q or q, then <return>
Reading message: This is message 1 from producer
Reading message: This is message 2 from producer
Message is not a TextMessage
```

9. Enter `q` or `Q` to exit the program.

43.3.1.3 To Run the unsubscriber Example

After you have finished running the `DurableConsumer` client, run the unsubscriber example to unsubscribe from the durable subscription.

1. In a terminal window, go to the following directory:

```
tut-install/examples/jms/durablesubscriptionexample/unsubscriber
```

2. To run the Unsubscriber client, enter the following command:

```
apclient -client target/unsubscriber.jar
```

The client reports that it is unsubscribing from the durable subscription.

43.3.2 Using Local Transactions

The `transactedexample` example demonstrates the use of local transactions in a JMS client application. It also demonstrates the use of the request/reply messaging pattern described in [Creating Temporary Destinations](#), although it uses permanent rather than temporary destinations. The example consists of three modules, `genericsupplier`, `retailer`, and `vendor`, which can be found under the `tut-install/examples/jms/transactedexample/` directory. The source code can be found in the `src/main/java/javaeetutorial` trees for each module. The `genericsupplier` and `retailer` modules each contain a single class, `genericsupplier/GenericSupplier.java` and `retailer/Retailer.java` respectively. The `vendor` module is more complex, containing four classes: `vendor/Vendor.java`, `vendor/VendorMessageListener.java`, `vendor/Order.java`, and `vendor/SampleUtilities.java`.

The example shows how to use a queue and a topic in a single transaction as well as how to pass a `JMSContext` to a message listener's constructor function. The example represents a highly simplified e-commerce application in which the following actions occur.

1. A retailer (`retailer/src/main/java/javaeetutorial/retailer/Retailer.java`) sends a `MapMessage` to a vendor order queue, ordering a quantity of computers, and waits for the vendor's reply:

```
outMessage = context.createMapMessage();
outMessage.setString("Item", "Computer(s)");
outMessage.setInt("Quantity", quantity);
outMessage.setJMSReplyTo(retailerConfirmQueue);
```

```
context.createProducer().send(vendorOrderQueue, outMessage);
System.out.println("Retailer: ordered " + quantity + " computer(s)");
orderConfirmReceiver = context.createConsumer(retailerConfirmQueue);
```

2. The vendor (`vendor/src/main/java/javaeetutorial/retailer/Vendor.java`) receives the retailer's order message and sends an order message to the supplier order topic in one transaction. This JMS transaction uses a single session, so you can combine a receive from a queue with a send to a topic. Here is the code that uses the same session to create a consumer for a queue:

```
vendorOrderReceiver = session.createConsumer(vendorOrderQueue);
```

The following code receives the incoming message, sends an outgoing message, and commits the `JMSContext`. The message processing has been removed to keep the sequence simple:

```
inMessage = vendorOrderReceiver.receive();
// Process the incoming message and format the outgoing
// message
...
context.createProducer().send(supplierOrderTopic, orderMessage);
...
context.commit();
```

For simplicity, there are only two suppliers, one for CPUs and one for hard drives.

3. Each supplier

(`genericsupplier/src/main/java/javaeetutorial/retailer/GenericSupplier.java`) receives the order from the order topic, checks its inventory, and then sends the items ordered to the queue named in the order message's `JMSReplyTo` field. If it does not have enough of the item in stock, the supplier sends what it has. The synchronous receive from the topic and the send to the queue take place in one JMS transaction.

```
receiver = context.createConsumer(SupplierOrderTopic);
...
inMessage = receiver.receive();
if (inMessage instanceof MapMessage) {
    orderMessage = (MapMessage) inMessage;
} ...
// Process message
outMessage = context.createMapMessage();
// Add content to message
context.createProducer().send(
    (Queue) orderMessage.getJMSReplyTo(),
    outMessage);
// Display message contents
context.commit();
```

4. The vendor receives the suppliers' replies from its confirmation queue and updates the state of the order. Messages are processed by an asynchronous message listener, `VendorMessageListener`; this step shows the use of JMS transactions with a message listener.

```
MapMessage component = (MapMessage) message;
...
int orderNumber = component.getInt("VendorOrderNumber");
Order order = Order.getOrder(orderNumber).processSubOrder(component);
context.commit();
```

- When all outstanding replies are processed for a given order, the vendor message listener sends a message notifying the retailer whether it can fulfill the order.

```
Queue replyQueue = (Queue) order.getOrder().getJMSReplyTo();
MapMessage retailerConfirmMessage = context.createMapMessage();
// Format the message
context.createProducer().send(replyQueue, retailerConfirmMessage);
context.commit();
```

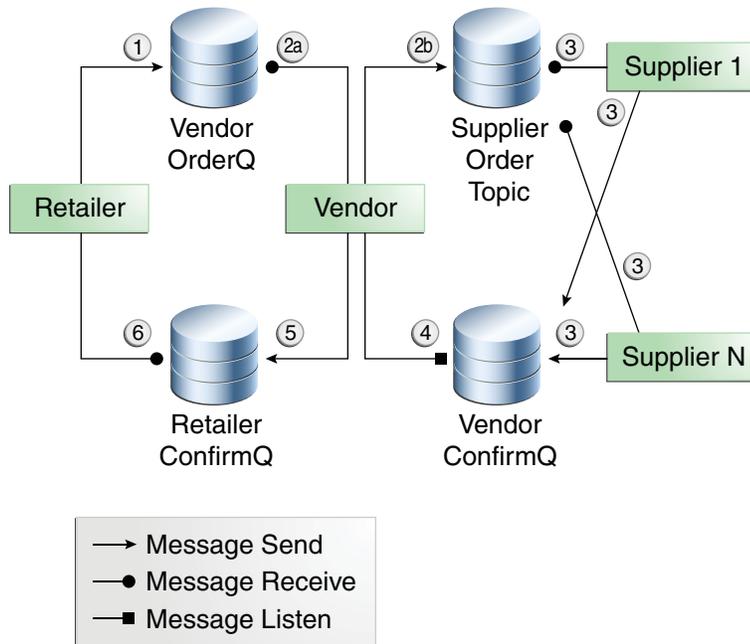
- The retailer receives the message from the vendor:

```
inMessage = (MapMessage) orderConfirmReceiver.receive();
```

The retailer then places a second order for twice as many computers as in the first order, so these steps are executed twice.

Figure 43–1 illustrates these steps.

Figure 43–1 Transactions: JMS Client Example



All the messages use the `MapMessage` message type. Synchronous receives are used for all message reception except when the vendor processes the replies of the suppliers. These replies are processed asynchronously and demonstrate how to use transactions within a message listener.

At random intervals, the Vendor client throws an exception to simulate a database problem and cause a rollback.

All clients except Retailer use transacted contexts.

The example uses three queues named `jms/AQueue`, `jms/BQueue`, and `jms/CQueue`, and one topic named `jms/OTopic`.

43.3.2.1 To Create Resources for the `transactedexample` Example

- In a command window, go to the `genericsupplier` example.

```
cd tut-install/jms/transactedexample/genericsupplier
```

2. Create the resources using the `asadmin add-resources` command:

```
asadmin add-resources src/main/setup/glassfish-resources.xml
```

3. Verify the creation of the resources:

```
asadmin list-jms-resources
```

In addition to the resources you created for the simple examples and the durable subscription example, the command lists the four new destinations:

```
jms/MyQueue
jms/MyTopic
jms/AQueue
jms/BQueue
jms/CQueue
jms/OTopic
jms/__defaultConnectionFactory
jms/DurableConnectionFactory
Command list-jms-resources executed successfully.
```

43.3.2.2 To Run the transactedexample Clients

You will need four terminal windows to run the clients. Make sure to start the clients in the correct order.

1. In a terminal window, go to the following directory:

```
tut-install/examples/jms/transactedexample/
```

2. To build and package all the modules, enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

3. Go to the `genericsupplier` directory:

```
cd genericsupplier
```

4. Use the following command to start the CPU supplier client:

```
appclient -client target\genericsupplier.jar CPU
```

After some initial output, the client reports the following:

```
Starting CPU supplier
```

5. In a second terminal window, go to the `genericsupplier` directory:

```
cd tut-install/examples/jms/transactedexample/genericsupplier
```

6. Use the following command to start the hard drive supplier client:

```
appclient -client target\genericsupplier.jar HD
```

After some initial output, the client reports the following:

```
Starting Hard Drive supplier
```

7. In a third terminal window, go to the `vendor` directory:

```
cd tut-install/examples/jms/transactedexample/vendor
```

8. Use the following command to start the Vendor client:

```
appclient -client target\vendor.jar
```

After some initial output, the client reports the following:

```
Starting vendor
```

9. In another terminal window, go to the retailer directory:

```
cd tut-install/examples/jms/transactedexample/retailer
```

10. Use a command like the following to run the Retailer client.

The argument specifies the number of computers to order.

```
appclient -client target/retailer.jar 4
```

After some initial output, the Retailer client reports something like the following. In this case, the first order is filled, but the second is not:

```
Retailer: Quantity to be ordered is 4
Retailer: Ordered 4 computer(s)
Retailer: Order filled
Retailer: Placing another order
Retailer: Ordered 8 computer(s)
Retailer: Order not filled
```

The Vendor client reports something like the following, stating in this case that it is able to send all the computers in the first order, but not in the second:

```
Vendor: Retailer ordered 4 Computer(s)
Vendor: Ordered 4 CPU(s) and hard drive(s)
  Vendor: Committed transaction 1
Vendor: Completed processing for order 1
Vendor: Sent 4 computer(s)
  Vendor: committed transaction 2
Vendor: Retailer ordered 8 Computer(s)
Vendor: Ordered 8 CPU(s) and hard drive(s)
  Vendor: Committed transaction 1
Vendor: Completed processing for order 2
Vendor: Unable to send 8 computer(s)
  Vendor: Committed transaction 2
```

The CPU supplier reports something like the following. In this case, it is able to send all the CPUs for both orders:

```
CPU Supplier: Vendor ordered 4 CPU(s)
CPU Supplier: Sent 4 CPU(s)
  CPU Supplier: Committed transaction
CPU Supplier: Vendor ordered 8 CPU(s)
CPU Supplier: Sent 8 CPU(s)
  CPU Supplier: Committed transaction
```

The hard drive supplier reports something like the following. In this case, it has a shortage of hard drives for the second order:

```
Hard Drive Supplier: Vendor ordered 4 Hard Drive(s)
Hard Drive Supplier: Sent 4 Hard Drive(s)
  Hard Drive Supplier: Committed transaction
Hard Drive Supplier: Vendor ordered 8 Hard Drive(s)
Hard Drive Supplier: Sent 1 Hard Drive(s)
  Hard Drive Supplier: Committed transaction
```

- Repeat steps 4 through 10 as many times as you wish. Occasionally, the vendor will report an exception that causes a rollback:

```
Vendor: JMSEException occurred: javax.jms.JMSEException: Simulated
database concurrent access exception
Vendor: Rolled back transaction 1
```

- After you finish running the clients, you can delete the destination resources by using the following commands:

```
asadmin delete-jms-resource jms/AQueue
asadmin delete-jms-resource jms/BQueue
asadmin delete-jms-resource jms/CQueue
asadmin delete-jms-resource jms/OTopic
```

43.4 Writing High Performance and Scalable JMS Applications

This section describes how to use the JMS API to write applications that can handle high volumes of messages robustly. These examples use both nondurable and durable shared consumers.

43.4.1 Using Shared Nondurable Subscriptions

This section describes the receiving clients in an example that shows how to use a shared consumer to distribute messages sent to a topic among different consumers. This section then explains how to compile and run the clients using the GlassFish Server.

You may wish to compare this example to the results of [Running Multiple Consumers on the Same Destination](#) using an unshared consumer. In that example, messages are distributed among the consumers on a queue, but each consumer on the topic receives all the messages because each consumer on the topic is using a separate topic subscription.

In this example, however, messages are distributed among multiple consumers on a topic, because all the consumers are sharing the same subscription. Each message added to the topic subscription is received by only one consumer, similarly to the way in which each message added to a queue is received by only one consumer.

A topic may have multiple subscriptions. Each message sent to the topic will be added to each topic subscription. However, if there are multiple consumers on a particular subscription, each message added to that subscription will be delivered to only one of those consumers.

43.4.1.1 Writing the Clients for the Shared Consumer Example

The sending client is `Producer.java`, the same client used in previous examples.

The receiving client is `SharedConsumer.java`. It is very similar to `AsynchConsumer.java`, except that it always uses a topic. It performs the following steps:

- Injects resources for a connection factory and topic.
- In a try-with-resources block, creates a `JMSContext`.
- Creates a consumer on a shared nondurable subscription, specifying a subscription name:

```
consumer = context.createSharedConsumer(topic, "SubName");
```

4. Creates an instance of the `TextListener` class and registers it as the message listener for the shared consumer.
5. Listens for the messages published to the destination, stopping when the user types the character `q` or `Q`.
6. Catches and handles any exceptions. The end of the try-with-resources block automatically causes the `JMSContext` to be closed.

The `TextListener.java` class is identical to the one for the `asynchconsumer` example.

For this example, you will use the default connection factory and the topic you created in [To Create Resources for the Simple Examples](#).

43.4.1.2 To Run the SharedConsumer and Producer Clients

1. Open three command windows. In the first, go to the `simple/producer` directory:

```
cd tut-install/examples/jms/simple/producer/
```

2. In the second and third command windows, go to the `shared/sharedconsumer` directory:

```
cd tut-install/examples/jms/shared/sharedconsumer/
```

3. In one of the `sharedconsumer` windows, build the example:

```
mvn install
```

4. In each of the two `sharedconsumer` windows, start running the client. You do not need to specify a topic argument:

```
appclient -client target/sharedconsumer.jar
```

Wait until you see the following output in both windows:

```
Waiting for messages on topic
To end program, enter Q or q, then <return>
```

5. In the `producer` window, run the client, specifying the topic and a number of messages:

```
appclient -client target/producer.jar topic 20
```

Each consumer client receives some of the messages. Only one of the clients receives the non-text message that signals the end of the message stream.

6. Enter `Q` or `q` and press **Return** to stop each client and see a report of the number of text messages received.

43.4.2 Using Shared Durable Subscriptions

The `shareddurableconsumer` client shows how to use shared durable subscriptions. It shows how shared durable subscriptions combine the advantages of durable subscriptions (the subscription remains active when the client is not) with those of shared consumers (the message load can be divided among multiple clients).

The example is much more similar to the `sharedconsumer` example than to the `DurableConsumer.java` client. It uses two classes, `SharedDurableConsumer.java` and `TextListener.java`, which can be found under the `tut-install/examples/jms/shared/shareddurableconsumer/` directory.

The client uses `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory`, the connection factory that does not have a client identifier, as is recommended for shared durable subscriptions. It uses the `createSharedDurableConsumer` method with a subscription name to establish the subscription:

```
consumer = context.createSharedDurableConsumer(topic, "MakeItLast");
```

You run the example in combination with the `Producer.java` client.

43.4.2.1 To Run the `ShareDurableSubscriberExample` and `Producer` Clients

1. In a terminal window, go to the following directory:

```
tut-install/examples/jms/shared/shreddurableconsumer
```

2. To compile and package the client, enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

3. Run the client first to establish the durable subscription:

```
apclient -client target/shreddurableconsumer.jar
```

4. The client displays the following and pauses:

```
Waiting for messages on topic
To end program, enter Q or q, then <return>
```

5. In the `shreddurableconsumer` window, enter `q` or `Q` to exit the program. The subscription remains active, although the client is not running.

6. Open another terminal window and go to the producer example directory:

```
cd tut-install/examples/jms/simple/producer
```

7. Run the producer example, sending a number of examples to the topic:

```
apclient -client target/producer.jar topic 6
```

8. After the producer has sent the messages, open a third terminal window and go to the `shreddurableconsumer` directory.

9. Run the client in both the first and third terminal windows. Whichever client starts first will receive all the messages that were sent when there was no active subscriber.

```
apclient -client target/shreddurableconsumer.jar
```

10. With both `shreddurableconsumer` clients still running, go to the producer window and send a larger number of messages to the topic:

```
apclient -client target/producer.jar topic 25
```

Now the messages will be shared by the two consumer clients. If you continue sending groups of messages to the topic, each client receives some of the messages. If you exit one of the clients and send more messages, the other client will receive all the messages.

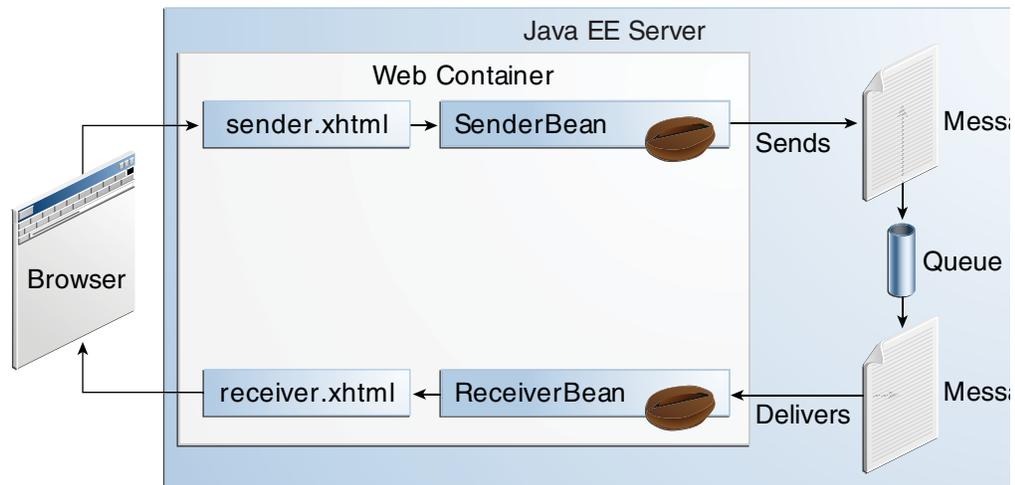
43.5 Sending and Receiving Messages Using a Simple Web Application

Web applications can use the JMS API to send and receive messages, as noted in [Using Java EE Components to Produce and to Synchronously Receive Messages](#). This section describes the components of a very simple web application that uses the JMS API.

This section assumes that you are familiar with the basics of JavaServer Faces technology, described in [Part III, "The Web Tier."](#)

The example, `websimplemessage`, is under the `tut-install/jms/examples` directory. It uses sending and receiving Facelets pages as well as corresponding backing beans. When a user types a message in the text field of the sending page and clicks a button, the backing bean for the page sends the message to a queue and displays it on the page. When the user goes to the receiving page and clicks another button, the backing bean for that page receives the message synchronously and displays it.

Figure 43–2 The `websimplemessage` Application



43.5.1 The `websimplemessage` Facelets Pages

The Facelets pages for the example are as follows:

- `sender.xhtml`, which provides a labeled `h:InputText` tag where the user types the message, along with two command buttons. When the user clicks the `Send Message` button, the `senderBean.sendMessage` method is called to send the message to the queue and display its contents. When the user clicks the `Go to Receive Page` button, the `receiver.xhtml` page appears.
- `receiver.xhtml`, which also provides two command buttons. When the user clicks the `Receive Message` button, the `receiverBean.getMessage` method is called to fetch the message from the queue and display its contents. When the user clicks the `Send Another Message` button, the `sender.xhtml` page appears again.

43.5.2 The `websimplemessage` Managed Beans

The two managed beans for the example are as follows:

- `SenderBean.java`, a CDI managed bean with one property, `messageText`, and one business method, `sendMessage`. The class is annotated with `@JMSDestinationDefinition` to create a component-private queue:

```

@JMSDestinationDefinition(
    name = "java:comp/jms/webappQueue",
    interfaceName = "javax.jms.Queue",
    destinationName = "PhysicalWebappQueue")
@Named
@RequestScoped
public class SenderBean {

```

The `sendMessage` method injects a `JMSContext` (using the default connection factory) and the queue, creates a producer, sends the message the user typed on the Facelets page, and creates a `FacesMessage` to display on the Facelets page.

```

@Inject
private JMSContext context;
@Resource(lookup = "java:comp/jms/webappQueue")
private Queue queue;
private String messageText;
...
public void sendMessage() {
    try {
        String text = "Message from producer: " + messageText;
        context.createProducer().send(queue, text);

        FacesMessage facesMessage =
            new FacesMessage("Sent message: " + text);
        FacesContext.getCurrentInstance()
            .addMessage(null, facesMessage);
    } catch (Throwable t) {
        logger.log(Level.SEVERE,
            "SenderBean.sendMessage: Exception: {0}",
            t.toString());
    }
}

```

- `ReceiverBean.java`, a CDI managed bean with one business method, `getMessage`. The method injects a `JMSContext` (using the default connection factory) and the queue that was defined in `SenderBean`, creates a consumer, receives the message, and creates a `FacesMessage` to display on the Facelets page.

```

@Inject
private JMSContext context;
@Resource(lookup = "java:comp/jms/webappQueue")
private Queue queue;
...
public void getMessage() {
    try {
        JMSConsumer receiver = context.createConsumer(queue);
        String text = receiver.receiveBody(String.class);

        if (text != null) {
            FacesMessage facesMessage =
                new FacesMessage("Reading message: " + text);
            FacesContext.getCurrentInstance()
                .addMessage(null, facesMessage);
        } else {
            FacesMessage facesMessage =
                new FacesMessage("No message received after 1 second");
            FacesContext.getCurrentInstance()
                .addMessage(null, facesMessage);
        }
    } catch (Throwable t) {

```

```
        logger.log(Level.SEVERE,
            "ReceiverBean.getMessage: Exception: {0}",
            t.toString());
    }
}
```

43.5.3 Running the websimplemessage Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the websimplemessage application.

43.5.3.1 Creating Resources for the websimplemessage Example

This example uses an annotation-defined queue and the preconfigured default connection factory `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory`.

43.5.3.2 To Package and Deploy websimplemessage Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/jms/`
3. Select the websimplemessage folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the websimplemessage project and select **Build**.

This command builds and deploys the project.

43.5.3.3 To Package and Deploy websimplemessage Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/jms/websimplemessage/`
2. To compile the source files and package and deploy the application, use the following command:

```
mvn install
```

43.5.3.4 To Run the websimplemessage Example

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:
`http://localhost:8080/websimplemessage`
2. Enter a message in the text field and click **Send Message**.
If, for example, you enter "Hello, Duke", the following appears below the buttons:

```
Sent message: Message from producer: Hello, Duke
```

3. Click **Go to Receive Page**.
4. Click **Receive Message**.
The following appears below the buttons:

```
Reading message: Message from producer: Hello, Duke
```
5. Click **Send Another Message** to return to the sending page.

- After you have finished running the application, undeploy it using either the Services tab of NetBeans IDE or the `mvn cargo:undeploy` command.

43.6 Receiving Messages Asynchronously using a Message-Driven Bean

If you are writing an application to run in the Java EE application client container or on the Java SE platform, and you want to receive messages asynchronously, you need to define a class that implements the `MessageListener` interface, create a `JMSConsumer`, and call the method `setMessageListener`.

If you're writing an application to run in the Java EE web or EJB container and want it to receive messages asynchronously, you also need to need to define a class that implements the `MessageListener` interface. However, instead of creating a `JMSConsumer` and calling the method `setMessageListener`, you must configure your message listener class to be a message-driven bean. The application server will then take care of the rest.

Message-driven beans can implement any messaging type. Most commonly, however, they implement the Java Message Service (JMS) technology.

This section describes a simple message-driven bean example. Before proceeding, you should read the basic conceptual information in the section [What Is a Message-Driven Bean?](#) as well as [Using Message-Driven Beans to Receive Messages Asynchronously](#).

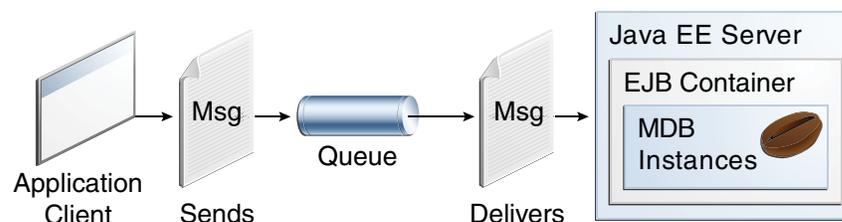
43.6.1 Overview of the `simplemessage` Example

The `simplemessage` application has the following components:

- `SimpleMessageClient`: An application client that sends several messages to a queue
- `SimpleMessageBean`: A message-driven bean that asynchronously processes the messages that are sent to the queue

[Figure 43–3](#) illustrates the structure of this application. The application client sends messages to the queue, which was created administratively using the Administration Console. The JMS provider (in this case, the GlassFish Server) delivers the messages to the instances of the message-driven bean, which then processes the messages.

Figure 43–3 The `simplemessage` Application



The source code for this application is in the `tut-install/examples/jms/simplemessage/` directory.

43.6.2 The `simplemessage` Application Client

The `SimpleMessageClient` sends messages to the queue that the `SimpleMessageBean` listens to. The client starts by injecting the connection factory and queue resources:

```
@Resource(lookup = "java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory")
```

```
private static ConnectionFactory connectionFactory;

@Resource(lookup = "jms/MyQueue")
private static Queue queue;
```

Next, the client creates the JMSContext in a try-with-resources block:

```
String text;
final int NUM_MSGS = 3;

try (JMSContext context = connectionFactory.createContext();) {
```

Finally, the client sends several text messages to the queue:

```
for (int i = 0; i < NUM_MSGS; i++) {
    text = "This is message " + (i + 1);
    System.out.println("Sending message: " + text);
    context.createProducer().send(queue, text);
}
```

43.6.3 The `SimpleMessage` Message-Driven Bean Class

The code for the `SimpleMessageBean` class illustrates the requirements of a message-driven bean class described in [Using Message-Driven Beans to Receive Messages Asynchronously](#).

The first few lines of the `SimpleMessageBean` class use the `@MessageDriven` annotation's `activationConfig` attribute to specify configuration properties:

```
@MessageDriven(activationConfig = {
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "destinationLookup",
        propertyValue = "jms/MyQueue"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "destinationType",
        propertyValue = "javax.jms.Queue")
})
```

See [Table 42-3](#) for a list of the available properties.

See [Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB](#) for examples of the `subscriptionDurability`, `clientId`, `subscriptionName`, and `messageSelector` properties.

43.6.3.1 The `onMessage` Method

When the queue receives a message, the EJB container invokes the message listener method or methods. For a bean that uses JMS, this is the `onMessage` method of the `MessageListener` interface.

In the `SimpleMessageBean` class, the `onMessage` method casts the incoming message to a `TextMessage` and displays the text:

```
public void onMessage(Message inMessage) {

    try {
        if (inMessage instanceof TextMessage) {
            logger.log(Level.INFO,
                "MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: {0}",
                inMessage.getBody(String.class));
        } else {
            logger.log(Level.WARNING,
                "Message of wrong type: {0}",
                inMessage.getClass().getName());
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }
} catch (JMSEException e) {
    logger.log(Level.SEVERE,
        "SimpleMessageBean.onMessage: JMSEException: {0}",
        e.toString());
    mdc.setRollbackOnly();
}
}
}

```

43.6.4 Running the simplemessage Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, deploy, and run the simplemessage example.

43.6.4.1 Creating Resources for the simplemessage Example

This example uses the queue named `jms/MyQueue` and the preconfigured default connection factory `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory`.

If you have run the simple JMS examples in [Writing Simple JMS Applications](#) and have not deleted the resources, you already have the queue. Otherwise, follow the instructions in [To Create Resources for the Simple Examples](#) to create it.

For more information on creating JMS resources, see [Creating JMS Administered Objects](#).

43.6.4.2 To Run the simplemessage Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/jms/simplemessage
```
3. Select the simplemessage folder.
4. Make sure that the **Open Required Projects** check box is selected, then click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the simplemessage project and select **Build**.

This command packages the application client and the message-driven bean, then creates a file named `simplemessage.ear` in the `simplemessage-ear/target` directory. It then deploys the `simplemessage-ear` module, retrieves the client stubs, and runs the application client.

The output in the output window looks like this (preceded by application client container output):

```

Sending message: This is message 1
Sending message: This is message 2
Sending message: This is message 3
To see if the bean received the messages,
check <install_dir>/domains/domain1/logs/server.log.

```

In the server log file, lines similar to the following appear:

```

MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 1
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 2
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 3

```

The received messages may appear in a different order from the order in which they were sent.

6. After you have finished running the application, undeploy it using the Services tab of NetBeans IDE.

43.6.4.3 To Run the `simplemessage` Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/jms/simplemessage/
```

2. To compile the source files and package the application, use the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This target packages the application client and the message-driven bean, then creates a file named `simplemessage.ear` in the `simplemessage-ear/target` directory. It then deploys the `simplemessage-ear` module, retrieves the client stubs, and runs the application client.

The output in the terminal window looks like this (preceded by application client container output):

```
Sending message: This is message 1
Sending message: This is message 2
Sending message: This is message 3
To see if the bean received the messages,
check <install_dir>/domains/domain1/logs/server.log.
```

In the server log file, lines similar to the following appear:

```
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 1
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 2
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 3
```

The received messages may appear in a different order from the order in which they were sent.

3. After you have finished running the application, undeploy it using the `mvn cargo:undeploy` command.

43.7 Sending Messages from a Session Bean to an MDB

This section explains how to write, compile, package, deploy, and run an application that uses the JMS API in conjunction with a session bean. The application contains the following components:

- An application client that invokes a session bean
- A session bean that publishes several messages to a topic
- A message-driven bean that receives and processes the messages using a durable topic subscription and a message selector

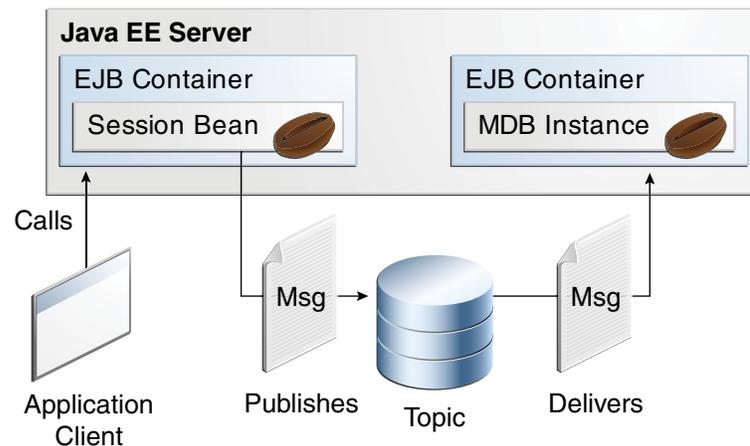
You will find the source files for this section in the `tut-install/examples/jms/clientsessionmdb/` directory. Path names in this section are relative to this directory.

43.7.1 Writing the Application Components for the `clientsessionmdb` Example

This application demonstrates how to send messages from an enterprise bean (in this case, a session bean) rather than from an application client, as in the example in [Receiving Messages Asynchronously using a Message-Driven Bean](#). [Figure 43-4](#)

illustrates the structure of this application. Sending messages from an enterprise bean is very similar to sending messages from a managed bean, which was shown in [Sending and Receiving Messages Using a Simple Web Application](#).

Figure 43–4 An Enterprise Bean Application: Client to Session Bean to Message-Driven Bean



The Publisher enterprise bean in this example is the enterprise-application equivalent of a wire-service news feed that categorizes news events into six news categories. The message-driven bean could represent a newsroom, where the sports desk, for example, would set up a subscription for all news events pertaining to sports.

The application client in the example injects the Publisher enterprise bean's remote home interface and then calls the bean's business method. The enterprise bean creates 18 text messages. For each message, it sets a `String` property randomly to one of six values representing the news categories and then publishes the message to a topic. The message-driven bean uses a message selector for the property to limit which of the published messages will be delivered to it.

43.7.1.1 Coding the Application Client: `MyAppClient.java`

The application client, `MyAppClient.java`, found under `clientsessionmdb-app-client`, performs no JMS API operations and so is simpler than the client in [Receiving Messages Asynchronously using a Message-Driven Bean](#). The client uses dependency injection to obtain the Publisher enterprise bean's business interface:

```
@EJB(name="PublisherRemote")
private static PublisherRemote publisher;
```

The client then calls the bean's business method twice.

43.7.1.2 Coding the Publisher Session Bean

The Publisher bean is a stateless session bean that has one business method. The Publisher bean uses a remote interface rather than a local interface because it is accessed from the application client.

The remote interface, `PublisherRemote.java`, found under `clientsessionmdb-ejb`, declares a single business method, `publishNews`.

The bean class, `PublisherBean.java`, also found under `clientsessionmdb-ejb`, implements the `publishNews` method and its helper method `chooseType`. The bean

class injects `SessionContext` and `Topic` resources (the topic is defined in the message-driven bean). It then injects a `JMSContext`, which uses the preconfigured default connection factory unless you specify otherwise. The bean class begins as follows:

```
@Stateless
@Remote({
    PublisherRemote.class
})
public class PublisherBean implements PublisherRemote {

    @Resource
    private SessionContext sc;
    @Resource(lookup = "java:module/jms/newsTopic")
    private Topic topic;
    @Inject
    private JMSContext context;
    ...
}
```

The business method `publishNews` creates a `JMSProducer` and publishes the messages.

43.7.1.3 Coding the Message-Driven Bean: `MessageBean.java`

The message-driven bean class, `MessageBean.java`, found under `clientsessionmdb-ejb`, is almost identical to the one in [Receiving Messages Asynchronously using a Message-Driven Bean](#). However, the `@MessageDriven` annotation is different, because instead of a queue, the bean is using a topic, a durable subscription, and a message selector. The bean defines a topic for the use of the application; the definition uses the `java:module` scope because both the session bean and the message-driven bean are in the same module. Because the destination is defined in the message-driven bean, the `@MessageDriven` annotation uses the `destinationLookup` activation config property. (See [Creating Resources for Java EE Applications](#) for more information.) The annotation also sets the activation config properties `messageSelector`, `subscriptionDurability`, `clientId`, and `subscriptionName`, as follows:

```
@JMSDestinationDefinition(
    name = "java:module/jms/newsTopic",
    interfaceName = "javax.jms.Topic",
    destinationName = "PhysicalNewsTopic")
@MessageDriven(activationConfig = {
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "destinationLookup",
        propertyValue = "java:module/jms/newsTopic"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "destinationType",
        propertyValue = "javax.jms.Topic"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "messageSelector",
        propertyValue = "NewsType = 'Sports' OR NewsType = 'Opinion'"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "subscriptionDurability",
        propertyValue = "Durable"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "clientId",
        propertyValue = "MyID"),
    @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "subscriptionName",
        propertyValue = "MySub")
})
```

The topic is the one defined in the `PublisherBean`. The message selector in this case represents both the sports and opinion desks, just to demonstrate the syntax of message selectors.

The JMS resource adapter uses these properties to create a connection factory for the message-driven bean that allows the bean to use a durable subscription.

43.7.2 Running the `clientsessionmdb` Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, deploy, and run the `simplemessage` example.

This example uses an annotation-defined topic and the preconfigured default connection factory `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory`, so you do not have to create resources for it.

43.7.2.1 To Run `clientsessionmdb` Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/jms/clientsessionmdb
```
3. Select the `clientsessionmdb` folder.
4. Make sure that the **Open Required Projects** check box is selected, then click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `clientsessionmdb` project and select **Build**.

This command creates the following:

- An application client JAR file that contains the client class file and the session bean's remote interface, along with a manifest file that specifies the main class and places the EJB JAR file in its classpath
- An EJB JAR file that contains both the session bean and the message-driven bean
- An application EAR file that contains the two JAR files

The `clientsessionmdb.ear` file is created in the `clientsessionmdb-ear/target` directory.

The command then deploys the EAR file, retrieves the client stubs, and runs the client.

The client displays these lines:

```
To view the bean output,
check <install_dir>/domains/domain1/logs/server.log.
```

The output from the enterprise beans appears in the server log file. The Publisher session bean sends two sets of 18 messages numbered 0 through 17. Because of the message selector, the message-driven bean receives only the messages whose `NewsType` property is `Sports` or `Opinion`.

6. Use the **Services** tab to undeploy the application after you have finished running it.

43.7.2.2 To Run `clientsessionmdb` Using Maven

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build the `clientsessionmdb` example. You will use the `asadmin` and `appclient` commands to deploy and run it.

1. Go to the following directory:

```
tut-install/examples/jms/clientsessionmdb/
```

2. To compile the source files and package, deploy, and run the application, enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command creates the following:

- An application client JAR file that contains the client class file and the session bean's remote interface, along with a manifest file that specifies the main class and places the EJB JAR file in its classpath
- An EJB JAR file that contains both the session bean and the message-driven bean
- An application EAR file that contains the two JAR files

The `clientsessionmdb.ear` file is created in the `clientsessionmdb-ear/target` directory.

The command then deploys the EAR file, retrieves the client stubs, and runs the client.

The client displays these lines:

```
To view the bean output,  
check <install_dir>/domains/domain1/logs/server.log.
```

The output from the enterprise beans appears in the server log file. The Publisher session bean sends two sets of 18 messages numbered 0 through 17. Because of the message selector, the message-driven bean receives only the messages whose `NewsType` property is `Sports` or `Opinion`.

3. Undeploy the application after you have finished running it:

```
mvn cargo:undeploy
```

43.8 Using an Entity to Join Messages from Two MDBs

This section explains how to write, compile, package, deploy, and run an application that uses the JMS API with an entity. The application uses the following components:

- An application client that both sends and receives messages
- Two message-driven beans
- An entity class

You will find the source files for this section in the `tut-install/examples/jms/clientmdbentity/` directory. Path names in this section are relative to this directory.

43.8.1 Overview of the `clientmdbentity` Example Application

This application simulates, in a simplified way, the work flow of a company's human resources (HR) department when it processes a new hire. This application also demonstrates how to use the Java EE platform to accomplish a task that many JMS applications need to perform.

A messaging client must often wait for several messages from various sources. It then uses the information in all these messages to assemble a message that it then sends to another destination. The common term for this design pattern (which is not specific to JMS) is **joining messages**. Such a task must be transactional, with all the receives and

the send as a single transaction. If not all the messages are received successfully, the transaction can be rolled back. For an application client example that illustrates this task, see [Using Local Transactions](#).

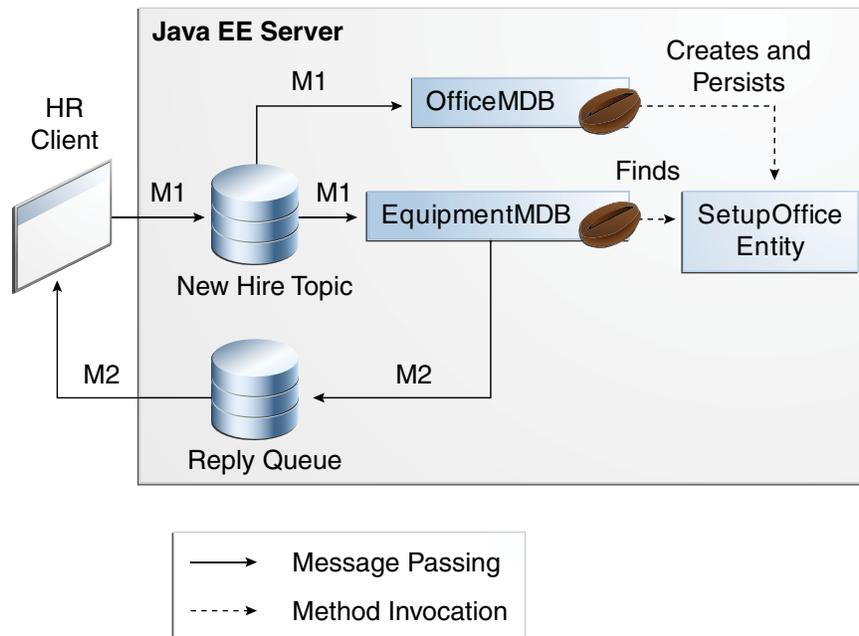
A message-driven bean can process only one message at a time in a transaction. To provide the ability to join messages, an application can have the message-driven bean store the interim information in a Java Persistence API entity. The entity can then determine whether all the information has been received; when it has, the entity can report this back to one of the message-driven beans, which then creates and sends the message to the other destination. After it has completed its task, the entity can be removed.

The basic steps of the application are as follows.

1. The HR department's application client generates an employee ID for each new hire and then publishes a message (M1) containing the new hire's name, employee ID, and position. It publishes the message to a topic because the message needs to be consumed by two message-driven beans. The client then creates a temporary queue, `ReplyQueue`, with a message listener that waits for a reply to the message. (See [Creating Temporary Destinations](#) for more information.)
2. Two message-driven beans process each message: One bean, `OfficeMDB`, assigns the new hire's office number, and the other bean, `EquipmentMDB`, assigns the new hire's equipment. The first bean to process the message creates and persists an entity named `SetupOffice`, then calls a business method of the entity to store the information it has generated. The second bean locates the existing entity and calls another business method to add its information.
3. When both the office and the equipment have been assigned, the entity business method returns a value of `true` to the message-driven bean that called the method. The message-driven bean then sends to the reply queue a message (M2) describing the assignments. Then it removes the entity. The application client's message listener retrieves the information.

[Figure 43-5](#) illustrates the structure of this application. Of course, an actual HR application would have more components; other beans could set up payroll and benefits records, schedule orientation, and so on.

[Figure 43-5](#) assumes that `OfficeMDB` is the first message-driven bean to consume the message from the client. `OfficeMDB` then creates and persists the `SetupOffice` entity and stores the office information. `EquipmentMDB` then finds the entity, stores the equipment information, and learns that the entity has completed its work. `EquipmentMDB` then sends the message to the reply queue and removes the entity.

Figure 43–5 An Enterprise Bean Application: Client to Message-Driven Beans to Entity

43.8.2 Writing the Application Components for the clientmdbentity Example

Writing the components of the application involves coding the application client, the message-driven beans, and the entity class.

43.8.2.1 Coding the Application Client: HumanResourceClient.java

The application client, `HumanResourceClient.java`, found under `clientmdbentity-app-client`, performs the following steps:

1. Defines a topic for the application, using the `java:app` namespace because the topic is used in both the application client and the EJB module
2. Injects `ConnectionFactory` and `Topic` resources
3. Creates a `TemporaryQueue` to receive notification of processing that occurs, based on new-hire events it has published
4. Creates a `JMSConsumer` for the `TemporaryQueue`, sets the `JMSConsumer`'s message listener, and starts the connection
5. Creates a `MapMessage`
6. Creates five new employees with randomly generated names, positions, and ID numbers (in sequence) and publishes five messages containing this information

The message listener, `HRLListener`, waits for messages that contain the assigned office and equipment for each employee. When a message arrives, the message listener displays the information received and determines whether all five messages have arrived. When they have, the message listener notifies the main method, which then exits.

43.8.2.2 Coding the Message-Driven Beans for the clientmdbentity Example

This example uses two message-driven beans, both under `clientmdbentity-ejb`:

- EquipmentMDB.java
- OfficeMDB.java

The beans take the following steps:

1. They inject a `MessageDrivenContext` resource, an `EntityManager`, and a `JMSContext`.
2. The `onMessage` method retrieves the information in the message. The `EquipmentMDB`'s `onMessage` method chooses equipment, based on the new hire's position; the `OfficeMDB`'s `onMessage` method randomly generates an office number.
3. After a slight delay to simulate real world processing hitches, the `onMessage` method calls a helper method, `compose`.
4. The `compose` method takes the following steps:
 - a. It either creates and persists the `SetupOffice` entity or finds it by primary key.
 - b. It uses the entity to store the equipment or the office information in the database, calling either the `doEquipmentList` or the `doOfficeNumber` business method.
 - c. If the business method returns `true`, meaning that all of the information has been stored, it retrieves the reply destination information from the message, creates a `JMSProducer`, and sends a reply message that contains the information stored in the entity.
 - d. It removes the entity.

43.8.2.3 Coding the Entity Class for the `clientmdbentity` Example

The `SetupOffice.java` class, also under `clientmdbentity-ejb`, is an entity class. The entity and the message-driven beans are packaged together in an EJB JAR file. The entity class is declared as follows:

```
@Entity
public class SetupOffice implements Serializable {
```

The class contains a no-argument constructor and a constructor that takes two arguments, the employee ID and name. It also contains getter and setter methods for the employee ID, name, office number, and equipment list. The getter method for the employee ID has the `@Id` annotation to indicate that this field is the primary key:

```
@Id
public String getEmployeeId() {
    return id;
}
```

The class also implements the two business methods, `doEquipmentList` and `doOfficeNumber`, and their helper method, `checkIfSetupComplete`.

The message-driven beans call the business methods and the getter methods.

The `persistence.xml` file for the entity specifies the most basic settings:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<persistence version="2.1"
    xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/persistence"
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xsi:schemaLocation="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/persistence
        http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/persistence/persistence_2_1.xsd">
    <persistence-unit name="clientmdbentity-ejbPU" transaction-type="JTA">
```

```
<provider>org.eclipse.persistence.jpa.PersistenceProvider</provider>
<jta-data-source>java:comp/DefaultDataSource</jta-data-source>
<properties>
  <property name="eclipselink.ddl-generation"
    value="drop-and-create-tables" />
</properties>
</persistence-unit>
</persistence>
```

43.8.3 Running the clientmdbentity Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, deploy, and run the `clientmdbentity` example.

Because the example defines its own application-private topic and uses the preconfigured default connection factory `java:comp/DefaultJMSConnectionFactory` and the preconfigured default JDBC resource `java:comp/DefaultDataSource`, you do not need to create resources for it.

43.8.3.1 To Run clientmdbentity Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/jms/clientmdbentity`
3. Select the `clientmdbentity` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `clientmdbentity` project and select **Build**.

This command creates the following:

- An application client JAR file that contains the client class and listener class files, along with a manifest file that specifies the main class
- An EJB JAR file that contains the message-driven beans and the entity class, along with the `persistence.xml` file
- An application EAR file that contains the two JAR files along with an `application.xml` file

The `clientmdbentity.ear` file is created in the `clientmdbentity-ear/target` directory.

The command then deploys the EAR file, retrieves the client stubs, and runs the client.

43.8.3.2 To Run clientmdbentity Using Maven

1. Go to the following directory:
`tut-install/examples/jms/clientmdbentity/`
2. To compile the source files and package, deploy, and run the application, enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command creates the following:

- An application client JAR file that contains the client class and listener class files, along with a manifest file that specifies the main class
- An EJB JAR file that contains the message-driven beans and the entity class, along with the `persistence.xml` file
- An application EAR file that contains the two JAR files along with an `application.xml` file

The command then deploys the application, retrieves the client stubs, and runs the application client.

43.8.3.3 Viewing the Application Output

The output in the NetBeans IDE output window or in the terminal window looks something like this (preceded by application client container output and Maven output):

```
SENDER: Setting hire ID to 50, name Bill Tudor, position Programmer
SENDER: Setting hire ID to 51, name Carol Jones, position Senior Programmer
SENDER: Setting hire ID to 52, name Mark Wilson, position Manager
SENDER: Setting hire ID to 53, name Polly Wren, position Senior Programmer
SENDER: Setting hire ID to 54, name Joe Lawrence, position Director
Waiting for 5 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 52
  Name: Mark Wilson
  Equipment: Tablet
  Office number: 294
Waiting for 4 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 53
  Name: Polly Wren
  Equipment: Laptop
  Office number: 186
Waiting for 3 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 54
  Name: Joe Lawrence
  Equipment: Mobile Phone
  Office number: 135
Waiting for 2 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 50
  Name: Bill Tudor
  Equipment: Desktop System
  Office number: 200
Waiting for 1 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 51
  Name: Carol Jones
  Equipment: Laptop
  Office number: 262
```

The output from the message-driven beans and the entity class appears in the server log.

For each employee, the application first creates the entity and then finds it. You may see runtime errors in the server log, and transaction rollbacks may occur. The errors occur if both of the message-driven beans discover at the same time that the entity does not yet exist, so they both try to create it. The first attempt succeeds, but the

second fails because the bean already exists. After the rollback, the second message-driven bean tries again and succeeds in finding the entity. Container-managed transactions allow the application to run correctly, in spite of these errors, with no special programming.

43.9 Using NetBeans IDE to Create JMS Resources

When you write your own JMS applications, you will need to create resources for them. This section explains how to use NetBeans IDE to create `src/main/setup/glassfish-resources.xml` files similar to those used in the examples in this chapter. It also explains how to use NetBeans IDE to delete the resources.

You can also create, list, and delete JMS resources using the Administration Console or the `asadmin create-jms-resource`, `asadmin list-jms-resources`, and `asadmin delete-jms-resources` commands. For information, consult the GlassFish Server documentation or enter `asadmin help command-name`.

43.9.1 To Create JMS Resources Using NetBeans IDE

Follow these steps to create a JMS resource in GlassFish Server using NetBeans IDE. Repeat these steps for each resource you need.

1. Right-click the project for which you want to create resources and select **New**, then select **Other**.
2. In the New File wizard, under **Categories**, select **GlassFish**.
3. Under **File Types**, select **JMS Resource**.
4. On the General Attributes - JMS Resource page, in the **JNDI Name** field, enter the name of the resource.

By convention, JMS resource names begin with `jms/`.

5. Select the option for the resource type.

Normally, this is either `javax.jms.Queue`, `javax.jms.Topic`, or `javax.jms.ConnectionFactory`.

6. Click **Next**.
7. On the JMS Properties page, for a queue or topic, enter a name for a physical queue in the **Value** field for the **Name** property.

You can enter any value for this required field.

Connection factories have no required properties. In a few situations, you may need to specify a property.

8. Click **Finish**.

A file named `glassfish-resources.xml` is created in your Maven project, in a directory named `src/main/setup`. In the **Projects** tab, you can find it under the **Other Sources** node. You will need to run the `asadmin add-resources` command to create the resources in GlassFish Server.

43.9.2 To Delete JMS Resources Using NetBeans IDE

1. In the **Services** tab, expand the **Servers** node, then expand the **GlassFish Server** node.
2. Expand the **Resources** node, then expand the **Connector Resources** node.

3. Expand the **Admin Object Resources** node.
4. Right-click any destination you want to remove and select **Unregister**.
5. Expand the **Connector Connection Pools** node.
6. Right-click the connection pool that corresponds to the connection factory you removed and select **Unregister**.

When you remove a connector connection pool, the associated connector resource is also deleted. This action removes the connection factory.

Part IX

Security

Part IX explores security concepts and examples. This part contains the following chapters:

- [Chapter 44, "Introduction to Security in the Java EE Platform"](#)
- [Chapter 45, "Getting Started Securing Web Applications"](#)
- [Chapter 46, "Getting Started Securing Enterprise Applications"](#)
- [Chapter 47, "Java EE Security: Advanced Topics"](#)

Introduction to Security in the Java EE Platform

This chapter introduces basic security concepts and security mechanisms. More information on these concepts and mechanisms can be found in the chapter on security in the Java EE 7 specification.

Other chapters in this Part discuss security requirements in web tier and enterprise tier applications:

- [Chapter 45, "Getting Started Securing Web Applications"](#) explains how to add security to web components, such as servlets.
- [Chapter 46, "Getting Started Securing Enterprise Applications"](#) explains how to add security to Java EE components, such as enterprise beans and application clients.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of Java EE Security](#)
- [Security Mechanisms](#)
- [Securing Containers](#)
- [Securing the GlassFish Server](#)
- [Working with Realms, Users, Groups, and Roles](#)
- [Establishing a Secure Connection Using SSL](#)
- [Further Information about Security](#)

44.1 Overview of Java EE Security

Every enterprise that has either sensitive resources that can be accessed by many users or resources that traverse unprotected, open, networks, such as the Internet, needs to be protected.

Enterprise tier and web tier applications are made up of components that are deployed into various containers. These components are combined to build a multitier enterprise application. Security for components is provided by their containers. A container provides two kinds of security: declarative and programmatic.

- **Declarative security** expresses an application component's security requirements by using either deployment descriptors or annotations.

A deployment descriptor is an XML file that is external to the application and that expresses an application's security structure, including security roles, access

control, and authentication requirements. For more information about deployment descriptors, read [Using Deployment Descriptors for Declarative Security](#).

Annotations, also called metadata, are used to specify information about security within a class file. When the application is deployed, this information can be either used by or overridden by the application deployment descriptor. Annotations save you from having to write declarative information inside XML descriptors. Instead, you simply put annotations on the code, and the required information gets generated. For this tutorial, annotations are used for securing applications wherever possible. For more information about annotations, see [Using Annotations to Specify Security Information](#).

- **Programmatic security** is embedded in an application and is used to make security decisions. Programmatic security is useful when declarative security alone is not sufficient to express the security model of an application. For more information about programmatic security, read [Using Programmatic Security](#).

44.1.1 A Simple Application Security Walkthrough

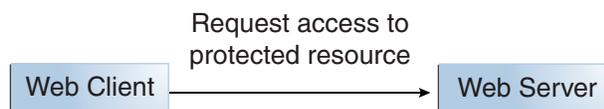
The security behavior of a Java EE environment may be better understood by examining what happens in a simple application with a web client, a user interface, and enterprise bean business logic.

In the following example, which is taken from the Java EE 7 Specification, the web client relies on the web server to act as its authentication proxy by collecting user authentication data from the client and using it to establish an authenticated session.

44.1.1.1 Step 1: Initial Request

In the first step of this example, the web client requests the main application URL. This action is shown in [Figure 44-1](#).

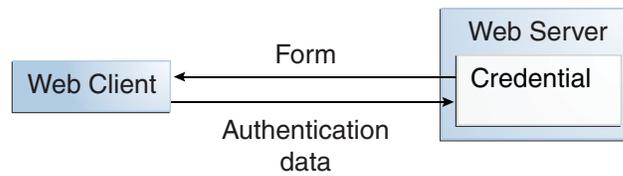
Figure 44-1 Initial Request



Since the client has not yet authenticated itself to the application environment, the server responsible for delivering the web portion of the application, hereafter referred to as the *web server*, detects this and invokes the appropriate authentication mechanism for this resource. For more information on these mechanisms, see [Security Mechanisms](#).

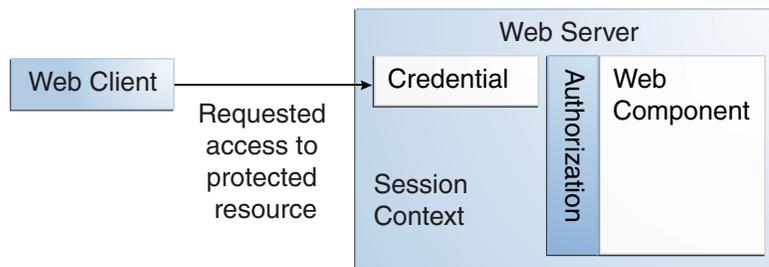
44.1.1.2 Step 2: Initial Authentication

The web server returns a form that the web client uses to collect authentication data, such as user name and password, from the user. The web client forwards the authentication data to the web server, where it is validated by the web server, as shown in [Figure 44-2](#). The validation mechanism may be local to a server or may leverage the underlying security services. On the basis of the validation, the web server sets a credential for the user.

Figure 44–2 Initial Authentication

44.1.1.3 Step 3: URL Authorization

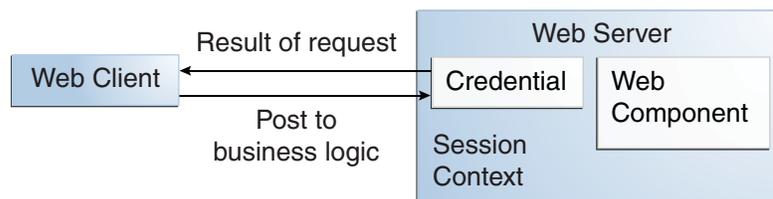
The credential is used for future determinations of whether the user is authorized to access restricted resources it may request. The web server consults the security policy associated with the web resource to determine the security roles that are permitted access to the resource. The security policy is derived from annotations or from the deployment descriptor. The web container then tests the user's credential against each role to determine whether it can map the user to the role. [Figure 44–3](#) shows this process.

Figure 44–3 URL Authorization

The web server's evaluation stops with an "is authorized" outcome when the web server is able to map the user to a role. A "not authorized" outcome is reached if the web server is unable to map the user to any of the permitted roles.

44.1.1.4 Step 4: Fulfilling the Original Request

If the user is authorized, the web server returns the result of the original URL request, as shown in [Figure 44–4](#).

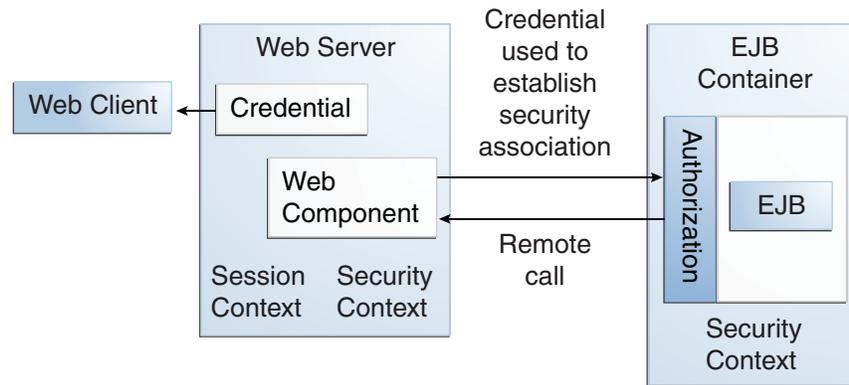
Figure 44–4 Fulfilling the Original Request

In our example, the response URL of a web page is returned, enabling the user to post form data that needs to be handled by the business-logic component of the application. See [Chapter 45, "Getting Started Securing Web Applications"](#) for more information on protecting web applications.

44.1.1.5 Step 5: Invoking Enterprise Bean Business Methods

The web page performs the remote method call to the enterprise bean, using the user's credential to establish a secure association between the web page and the enterprise bean, as shown in Figure 44-5. The association is implemented as two related security contexts: one in the web server and one in the EJB container.

Figure 44-5 Invoking an Enterprise Bean Business Method



The EJB container is responsible for enforcing access control on the enterprise bean method. The container consults the security policy associated with the enterprise bean to determine the security roles that are permitted access to the method. The security policy is derived from annotations or from the deployment descriptor. For each role, the EJB container determines whether it can map the caller to the role by using the security context associated with the call.

The container's evaluation stops with an "is authorized" outcome when the container is able to map the caller's credential to a role. A "not authorized" outcome is reached if the container is unable to map the caller to any of the permitted roles. A "not authorized" result causes an exception to be thrown by the container and propagated back to the calling web page.

If the call is authorized, the container dispatches control to the enterprise bean method. The result of the bean's execution of the call is returned to the web page and ultimately to the user by the web server and the web client.

44.1.2 Features of a Security Mechanism

A properly implemented security mechanism will provide the following functionality:

- Prevent unauthorized access to application functions and business or personal data (authentication)
- Hold system users accountable for operations they perform (non-repudiation)
- Protect a system from service interruptions and other breaches that affect quality of service

Ideally, properly implemented security mechanisms will also be

- Easy to administer
- Transparent to system users
- Interoperable across application and enterprise boundaries

44.1.3 Characteristics of Application Security

Java EE applications consist of components that can contain both protected and unprotected resources. Often, you need to protect resources to ensure that only authorized users have access. Authorization provides controlled access to protected resources. Authorization is based on identification and authentication. **Identification** is a process that enables recognition of an entity by a system, and authentication is a process that verifies the identity of a user, device, or other entity in a computer system, usually as a prerequisite to allowing access to resources in a system.

Authorization and authentication are not required for an entity to access unprotected resources. Accessing a resource without authentication is referred to as unauthenticated, or anonymous, access.

The characteristics of application security that, when properly addressed, help to minimize the security threats faced by an enterprise include the following:

- **Authentication:** The means by which communicating entities, such as client and server, prove to each other that they are acting on behalf of specific identities that are authorized for access. This ensures that users are who they say they are.
- **Authorization, or access control:** The means by which interactions with resources are limited to collections of users or programs for the purpose of enforcing integrity, confidentiality, or availability constraints. This ensures that users have permission to perform operations or access data.
- **Data integrity:** The means used to prove that information has not been modified by a third party, an entity other than the source of the information. For example, a recipient of data sent over an open network must be able to detect and discard messages that were modified after they were sent. This ensures that only authorized users can modify data.
- **Confidentiality, or data privacy:** The means used to ensure that information is made available only to users who are authorized to access it. This ensures that only authorized users can view sensitive data.
- **Non-repudiation:** The means used to prove that a user who performed some action cannot reasonably deny having done so. This ensures that transactions can be proved to have happened.
- **Quality of Service:** The means used to provide better service to selected network traffic over various technologies.
- **Auditing:** The means used to capture a tamper-resistant record of security-related events for the purpose of being able to evaluate the effectiveness of security policies and mechanisms. To enable this, the system maintains a record of transactions and security information.

44.2 Security Mechanisms

The characteristics of an application should be considered when deciding the layer and type of security to be provided for applications. The following sections discuss the characteristics of the common mechanisms that can be used to secure Java EE applications. Each of these mechanisms can be used individually or with others to provide protection layers based on the specific needs of your implementation.

44.2.1 Java SE Security Mechanisms

Java SE provides support for a variety of security features and mechanisms:

- **Java Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS):** JAAS is a set of APIs that enable services to authenticate and enforce access controls upon users. JAAS provides a pluggable and extensible framework for programmatic user authentication and authorization. JAAS is a core Java SE API and is an underlying technology for Java EE security mechanisms.
- **Java Generic Security Services (Java GSS-API):** Java GSS-API is a token-based API used to securely exchange messages between communicating applications. The GSS-API offers application programmers uniform access to security services atop a variety of underlying security mechanisms, including Kerberos.
- **Java Cryptography Extension (JCE):** JCE provides a framework and implementations for encryption, key generation and key agreement, and Message Authentication Code (MAC) algorithms. Support for encryption includes symmetric, asymmetric, block, and stream ciphers. Block ciphers operate on groups of bytes; stream ciphers operate on one byte at a time. The software also supports secure streams and sealed objects.
- **Java Secure Sockets Extension (JSSE):** JSSE provides a framework and an implementation for a Java version of the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocols and includes functionality for data encryption, server authentication, message integrity, and optional client authentication to enable secure Internet communications.
- **Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL):** SASL is an Internet standard (RFC 2222) that specifies a protocol for authentication and optional establishment of a security layer between client and server applications. SASL defines how authentication data is to be exchanged but does not itself specify the contents of that data. SASL is a framework into which specific authentication mechanisms that specify the contents and semantics of the authentication data can fit.

Java SE also provides a set of tools for managing keystores, certificates, and policy files; generating and verifying JAR signatures; and obtaining, listing, and managing Kerberos tickets.

For more information on Java SE security, visit

<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/guides/security/>.

44.2.2 Java EE Security Mechanisms

Java EE security services are provided by the component container and can be implemented by using declarative or programmatic techniques (see [Securing Containers](#)). Java EE security services provide a robust and easily configured security mechanism for authenticating users and authorizing access to application functions and associated data at many different layers. Java EE security services are separate from the security mechanisms of the operating system.

44.2.2.1 Application-Layer Security

In Java EE, component containers are responsible for providing application-layer security, security services for a specific application type tailored to the needs of the application. At the application layer, application firewalls can be used to enhance application protection by protecting the communication stream and all associated application resources from attacks.

Java EE security is easy to implement and configure and can offer fine-grained access control to application functions and data. However, as is inherent to security applied at the application layer, security properties are not transferable to applications running in other environments and protect data only while it is residing in the application

environment. In the context of a traditional enterprise application, this is not necessarily a problem, but when applied to a web services application, in which data often travels across several intermediaries, you would need to use the Java EE security mechanisms along with transport-layer security and message-layer security for a complete security solution.

The advantages of using application-layer security include the following.

- Security is uniquely suited to the needs of the application.
- Security is fine grained, with application-specific settings.

The disadvantages of using application-layer security include the following.

- The application is dependent on security attributes that are not transferable between application types.
- Support for multiple protocols makes this type of security vulnerable.
- Data is close to or contained within the point of vulnerability.

For more information on providing security at the application layer, see [Securing Containers](#).

44.2.2.2 Transport-Layer Security

Transport-layer security is provided by the transport mechanisms used to transmit information over the wire between clients and providers; thus, transport-layer security relies on secure HTTP transport (HTTPS) using Secure Sockets Layer (SSL). Transport security is a point-to-point security mechanism that can be used for authentication, message integrity, and confidentiality. When running over an SSL-protected session, the server and client can authenticate each other and negotiate an encryption algorithm and cryptographic keys before the application protocol transmits or receives its first byte of data. Security is active from the time the data leaves the client until it arrives at its destination, or vice versa, even across intermediaries. The problem is that the data is not protected once it gets to the destination. One solution is to encrypt the message before sending.

Transport-layer security is performed in a series of phases, as follows.

- The client and server agree on an appropriate algorithm.
- A key is exchanged using public-key encryption and certificate-based authentication.
- A symmetric cipher is used during the information exchange.

Digital certificates are necessary when running HTTPS using SSL. The HTTPS service of most web servers will not run unless a digital certificate has been installed. Digital certificates have already been created for the GlassFish Server.

The advantages of using transport-layer security include the following.

- It is relatively simple, well-understood, standard technology.
- It applies to both a message body and its attachments.

The disadvantages of using transport-layer security include the following.

- It is tightly coupled with the transport-layer protocol.
- It represents an all-or-nothing approach to security. This implies that the security mechanism is unaware of message contents, so that you cannot selectively apply security to portions of the message as you can with message-layer security.

- Protection is transient. The message is protected only while in transit. Protection is removed automatically by the endpoint when it receives the message.
- It is not an end-to-end solution, simply point-to-point.

For more information on transport-layer security, see [Establishing a Secure Connection Using SSL](#).

44.2.2.3 Message-Layer Security

In message-layer security, security information is contained within the SOAP message and/or SOAP message attachment, which allows security information to travel along with the message or attachment. For example, a portion of the message may be signed by a sender and encrypted for a particular receiver. When sent from the initial sender, the message may pass through intermediate nodes before reaching its intended receiver. In this scenario, the encrypted portions continue to be opaque to any intermediate nodes and can be decrypted only by the intended receiver. For this reason, message-layer security is also sometimes referred to as end-to-end security.

The advantages of message-layer security include the following.

- Security stays with the message over all hops and after the message arrives at its destination.
- Security can be selectively applied to different portions of a message and, if using XML Web Services Security, to attachments.
- Message security can be used with intermediaries over multiple hops.
- Message security is independent of the application environment or transport protocol.

The disadvantage of using message-layer security is that it is relatively complex and adds some overhead to processing.

The GlassFish Server supports message security using Metro, a web services stack that uses Web Services Security (WSS) to secure messages. Because this message security is specific to Metro and is not a part of the Java EE platform, this tutorial does not discuss using WSS to secure messages. See the *Metro User's Guide* at <https://metro.java.net/guide/>.

44.3 Securing Containers

In Java EE, the component containers are responsible for providing application security. A container provides two types of security: declarative and programmatic.

44.3.1 Using Annotations to Specify Security Information

Annotations enable a declarative style of programming and so encompass both the declarative and programmatic security concepts. Users can specify information about security within a class file by using annotations. The GlassFish Server uses this information when the application is deployed. Not all security information can be specified by using annotations, however. Some information must be specified in the application deployment descriptors.

Specific annotations that can be used to specify security information within an enterprise bean class file are described in [Securing an Enterprise Bean Using Declarative Security](#). Chapter 45, "Getting Started Securing Web Applications", describes how to use annotations to secure web applications where possible. Deployment descriptors are described only where necessary.

For more information on annotations, see [Further Information about Security](#).

44.3.2 Using Deployment Descriptors for Declarative Security

Declarative security can express an application component's security requirements by using deployment descriptors. Because deployment descriptor information is declarative, it can be changed without the need to modify the source code. At runtime, the Java EE server reads the deployment descriptor and acts upon the corresponding application, module, or component accordingly. Deployment descriptors must provide certain structural information for each component if this information has not been provided in annotations or is not to be defaulted.

This part of the tutorial does not document how to create deployment descriptors; it describes only the elements of the deployment descriptor relevant to security. NetBeans IDE provides tools for creating and modifying deployment descriptors.

Different types of components use different formats, or schemas, for their deployment descriptors. The security elements of deployment descriptors discussed in this tutorial include the following.

- Web components may use a web application deployment descriptor named `web.xml`.

The schema for web component deployment descriptors is provided in Chapter 14 of the Java Servlet 3.1 specification (JSR 340), which can be downloaded from <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=340>.

- Enterprise JavaBeans components may use an EJB deployment descriptor named `META-INF/ejb-jar.xml`, contained in the EJB JAR file.

The schema for enterprise bean deployment descriptors is provided in Chapter 14 of the EJB 3.2 Core Contracts and Requirements Specification (JSR 345), which can be downloaded from <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=345>.

44.3.3 Using Programmatic Security

Programmatic security is embedded in an application and is used to make security decisions. Programmatic security is useful when declarative security alone is not sufficient to express the security model of an application. The API for programmatic security consists of methods of the `EJBContext` interface and the `HttpServletRequest` interface. These methods allow components to make business-logic decisions based on the security role of the caller or remote user.

Programmatic security is discussed in more detail in the following sections:

- [Using Programmatic Security with Web Applications](#)
- [Securing an Enterprise Bean Programmatically](#)

44.4 Securing the GlassFish Server

This tutorial describes deployment to the GlassFish Server, which provides highly secure, interoperable, and distributed component computing based on the Java EE security model. GlassFish Server supports the Java EE 7 security model. You can configure GlassFish Server for the following purposes:

- Adding, deleting, or modifying authorized users. For more information on this topic, see [Working with Realms, Users, Groups, and Roles](#).
- Configuring secure HTTP and Internet Inter-Orb Protocol (IIOP) listeners.

- Configuring secure Java Management Extensions (JMX) connectors.
- Adding, deleting, or modifying existing or custom realms.
- Defining an interface for pluggable authorization providers using Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC). JACC defines security contracts between the GlassFish Server and authorization policy modules. These contracts specify how the authorization providers are installed, configured, and used in access decisions.
- Using pluggable audit modules.
- Customizing authentication mechanisms. All implementations of Java EE 7 compatible web containers are required to support the Servlet Profile of JSR 196, which offers an avenue for customizing the authentication mechanism applied by the web container on behalf of one or more applications.
- Setting and changing policy permissions for an application.

44.5 Working with Realms, Users, Groups, and Roles

You often need to protect resources to ensure that only authorized users have access. See [Characteristics of Application Security](#) for an introduction to the concepts of authentication, identification, and authorization.

This section discusses setting up users so that they can be correctly identified and either given access to protected resources or denied access if they are not authorized to access the protected resources. To authenticate a user, you need to follow these basic steps.

1. The application developer writes code to prompt for a user name and password. The various methods of authentication are discussed in [Specifying Authentication Mechanisms](#).
2. The application developer communicates how to set up security for the deployed application by use of a metadata annotation or deployment descriptor. This step is discussed in [Setting Up Security Roles](#).
3. The server administrator sets up authorized users and groups on the GlassFish Server. This is discussed in [Managing Users and Groups on the GlassFish Server](#).
4. The application deployer maps the application's security roles to users, groups, and principals defined on the GlassFish Server. This topic is discussed in [Mapping Roles to Users and Groups](#).

44.5.1 What Are Realms, Users, Groups, and Roles?

A **realm** is a security policy domain defined for a web or application server. A realm contains a collection of users, who may or may not be assigned to a group. Managing users on the GlassFish Server is discussed in [Managing Users and Groups on the GlassFish Server](#).

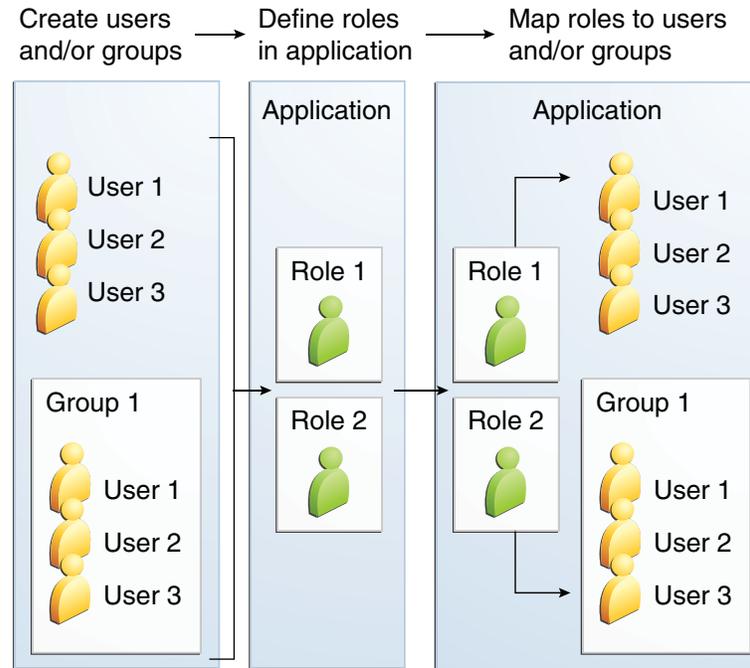
An application will often prompt for a user name and password before allowing access to a protected resource. After the user name and password have been entered, that information is passed to the server, which either authenticates the user and sends the protected resource or does not authenticate the user, in which case access to the protected resource is denied. This type of user authentication is discussed in [Specifying an Authentication Mechanism in the Deployment Descriptor](#).

In some applications, authorized users are assigned to roles. In this situation, the role assigned to the user in the application must be mapped to a principal or group defined

on the application server. [Figure 44–6](#) shows this. More information on mapping roles to users and groups can be found in [Setting Up Security Roles](#).

The following sections provide more information on realms, users, groups, and roles.

Figure 44–6 Mapping Roles to Users and Groups



44.5.1.1 What Is a Realm?

The protected resources on a server can be partitioned into a set of protection spaces, each with its own authentication scheme and/or authorization database containing a collection of users and groups. A realm is a complete database of users and groups identified as valid users of one or more applications and controlled by the same authentication policy.

The Java EE server authentication service can govern users in multiple realms. The `file`, `admin-realm`, and `certificate` realms come preconfigured for the GlassFish Server.

In the `file` realm, the server stores user credentials locally in a file named `keyfile`. You can use the Administration Console to manage users in the `file` realm. When using the `file` realm, the server authentication service verifies user identity by checking the `file` realm. This realm is used for the authentication of all clients except for web browser clients that use HTTPS and certificates.

In the `certificate` realm, the server stores user credentials in a certificate database. When using the `certificate` realm, the server uses certificates with HTTPS to authenticate web clients. To verify the identity of a user in the `certificate` realm, the authentication service verifies an X.509 certificate. For step-by-step instructions for creating this type of certificate, see [Working with Digital Certificates](#). The common name field of the X.509 certificate is used as the principal name.

The `admin-realm` is also a file realm and stores administrator user credentials locally in a file named `admin-keyfile`. You can use the Administration Console to manage

users in this realm in the same way you manage users in the `file` realm. For more information, see [Managing Users and Groups on the GlassFish Server](#).

44.5.1.2 What Is a User?

A **user** is an individual or application program identity that has been defined in the GlassFish Server. In a web application, a user can have associated with that identity a set of roles that entitle the user to access all resources protected by those roles. Users can be associated with a group.

A Java EE user is similar to an operating system user. Typically, both types of users represent people. However, these two types of users are not the same. The Java EE server authentication service has no knowledge of the user name and password you provide when you log in to the operating system. The Java EE server authentication service is not connected to the security mechanism of the operating system. The two security services manage users that belong to different realms.

44.5.1.3 What Is a Group?

A **group** is a set of authenticated users, classified by common traits, defined in the GlassFish Server. A Java EE user of the `file` realm can belong to a group on the GlassFish Server. (A user in the `certificate` realm cannot.) A group on the GlassFish Server is a category of users classified by common traits, such as job title or customer profile. For example, most customers of an e-commerce application might belong to the `CUSTOMER` group, but the big spenders would belong to the `PREFERRED` group. Categorizing users into groups makes it easier to control the access of large numbers of users.

A group on the GlassFish Server has a different scope from a role. A group is designated for the entire GlassFish Server, whereas a role is associated only with a specific application in the GlassFish Server.

44.5.1.4 What Is a Role?

A **role** is an abstract name for the permission to access a particular set of resources in an application. A role can be compared to a key that can open a lock. Many people might have a copy of the key. The lock doesn't care who you are, only that you have the right key.

44.5.1.5 Some Other Terminology

The following terminology is also used to describe the security requirements of the Java EE platform:

- **Principal:** An entity that can be authenticated by an authentication protocol in a security service that is deployed in an enterprise. A principal is identified by using a principal name and authenticated by using authentication data.
- **Security policy domain**, also known as **security domain** or **realm:** A scope over which a common security policy is defined and enforced by the security administrator of the security service.
- **Security attributes:** A set of attributes associated with every principal. The security attributes have many uses: for example, access to protected resources and auditing of users. Security attributes can be associated with a principal by an authentication protocol.
- **Credential:** An object that contains or references security attributes used to authenticate a principal for Java EE services. A principal acquires a credential upon authentication or from another principal that allows its credential to be used.

44.5.2 Managing Users and Groups on the GlassFish Server

Follow these steps for managing users before you run the tutorial examples.

44.5.2.1 To Add Users to the GlassFish Server

1. Start the GlassFish Server, if you haven't already done so.

Information on starting the GlassFish Server is available in [Starting and Stopping the GlassFish Server](#).

2. Start the Administration Console, if you haven't already done so.

To start the Administration Console, open a web browser and specify the URL `http://localhost:4848/`. If you changed the default Admin port during installation, enter the correct port number in place of 4848.

3. In the navigation tree, expand the **Configurations** node, then expand the **server-config** node.

4. Expand the **Security** node.

5. Expand the **Realms** node.

6. Select the realm to which you are adding users.

- Select the `file` realm to add users you want to access applications running in this realm.

For the example security applications, select the `file` realm.

- Select the `admin-realm` to add users you want to enable as system administrators of the GlassFish Server.

You cannot add users to the `certificate` realm by using the Administration Console. In the `certificate` realm, you can add only certificates. For information on adding (importing) certificates to the `certificate` realm, see [Adding Users to the Certificate Realm](#).

7. On the Edit Realm page, click **Manage Users**.

8. On the File Users or Admin Users page, click **New** to add a new user to the realm.

9. On the New File Realm User page, enter values in the **User ID**, **Group List**, **New Password**, and **Confirm New Password** fields.

For the Admin Realm, the **Group List** field is read-only, and the group name is `asadmin`. Restart the GlassFish Server and Administration Console after you add a user to the Admin Realm.

For more information on these properties, see [Working with Realms, Users, Groups, and Roles](#).

For the example security applications, specify a user with any name and password you like, but make sure that the user is assigned to the group `TutorialUser`. The user name and password are case-sensitive. Keep a record of the user name and password for working with the examples later in this tutorial.

10. Click **OK** to add this user to the realm, or click **Cancel** to quit without saving.

44.5.3 Setting Up Security Roles

When you design an enterprise bean or web component, you should always think about the kinds of users who will access the component. For example, a web application for a human resources department might have a different request URL for

someone who has been assigned the role of `DEPT_ADMIN` than for someone who has been assigned the role of `DIRECTOR`. The `DEPT_ADMIN` role may let you view employee data, but the `DIRECTOR` role enables you to modify employee data, including salary data. Each of these security roles is an abstract logical grouping of users that is defined by the person who assembles the application. When an application is deployed, the deployer will map the roles to security identities in the operational environment, as shown in [Figure 44-6](#).

For Java EE components, you define security roles using the `@DeclareRoles` and `@RolesAllowed` metadata annotations.

The following is an example of an application in which the role of `DEPT-ADMIN` is authorized for methods that review employee payroll data, and the role of `DIRECTOR` is authorized for methods that change employee payroll data.

The enterprise bean would be annotated as shown in the following code:

```
import javax.annotation.security.DeclareRoles;
import javax.annotation.security.RolesAllowed;
...
@DeclareRoles({"DEPT-ADMIN", "DIRECTOR"})
@Stateless public class PayrollBean implements Payroll {
    @Resource SessionContext ctx;

    @RolesAllowed("DEPT-ADMIN")
    public void reviewEmployeeInfo(EmplInfo info) {

        oldInfo = ... read from database;

        // ...
    }

    @RolesAllowed("DIRECTOR")
    public void updateEmployeeInfo(EmplInfo info) {

        newInfo = ... update database;

        // ...
    }
    ...
}
```

For a servlet, you can use the `@HttpConstraint` annotation within the `@ServletSecurity` annotation to specify the roles that are allowed to access the servlet. For example, a servlet might be annotated as follows:

```
@WebServlet(name = "PayrollServlet", urlPatterns = {"/payroll"})
@ServletSecurity(
    @HttpConstraint(transportGuarantee = TransportGuarantee.CONFIDENTIAL,
        rolesAllowed = {"DEPT-ADMIN", "DIRECTOR"}))
public class GreetingServlet extends HttpServlet {
```

These annotations are discussed in more detail in [Specifying Security for Basic Authentication Using Annotations](#) and [Securing an Enterprise Bean Using Declarative Security](#).

After users have provided their login information and the application has declared what roles are authorized to access protected parts of an application, the next step is to map the security role to the name of a user, or principal.

44.5.4 Mapping Roles to Users and Groups

When you are developing a Java EE application, you don't need to know what categories of users have been defined for the realm in which the application will be run. In the Java EE platform, the security architecture provides a mechanism for mapping the roles defined in the application to the users or groups defined in the runtime realm.

The role names used in the application are often the same as the group names defined on the GlassFish Server. Under these circumstances, you can enable a default principal-to-role mapping on the GlassFish Server by using the Administration Console. The task [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#) explains how to do this. All the tutorial security examples use default principal-to-role mapping.

If the role names used in an application are not the same as the group names defined on the server, use the runtime deployment descriptor to specify the mapping. The following example demonstrates how to do this mapping in the `glassfish-web.xml` file, which is the file used for web applications:

```
<glassfish-web-app>
  ...
  <security-role-mapping>
    <role-name>Mascot</role-name>
    <principal-name>Duke</principal-name>
  </security-role-mapping>

  <security-role-mapping>
    <role-name>Admin</role-name>
    <group-name>Director</group-name>
  </security-role-mapping>
  ...
</glassfish-web-app>
```

A role can be mapped to specific principals, specific groups, or both. The principal or group names must be valid principals or groups in the current default realm or in the realm specified in the `login-config` element. In this example, the role of `Mascot` used in the application is mapped to a principal, named `Duke`, that exists on the application server. Mapping a role to a specific principal is useful when the person occupying that role may change. For this application, you would need to modify only the runtime deployment descriptor rather than search and replace throughout the application for references to this principal.

Also in this example, the role of `Admin` is mapped to a group of users assigned the group name of `Director`. This is useful because the group of people authorized to access director-level administrative data has to be maintained only on the GlassFish Server. The application developer does not need to know who these people are, but only needs to define the group of people who will be given access to the information.

The `role-name` must match the `role-name` in the `security-role` element of the corresponding deployment descriptor or the role name defined in a `@DeclareRoles` annotation.

44.6 Establishing a Secure Connection Using SSL

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) technology is security that is implemented at the transport layer (see [Transport-Layer Security](#) for more information about transport-layer security). SSL allows web browsers and web servers to communicate over a secure connection. In this secure connection, the data is encrypted before being sent and then is decrypted upon receipt and before processing. Both the browser and the server encrypt all traffic before sending any data.

SSL addresses the following important security considerations:

- **Authentication:** During your initial attempt to communicate with a web server over a secure connection, that server will present your web browser with a set of credentials in the form of a server certificate (also called a public key certificate). The purpose of the certificate is to verify that the site is who and what it claims to be. In some cases, the server may request a certificate proving that the client is who and what it claims to be; this mechanism is known as client authentication.
- **Confidentiality:** When data is being passed between the client and the server on a network, third parties can view and intercept this data. SSL responses are encrypted so that the data cannot be deciphered by the third party and the data remains confidential.
- **Integrity:** When data is being passed between the client and the server on a network, third parties can view and intercept this data. SSL helps guarantee that the data will not be modified in transit by that third party.

The SSL protocol is designed to be as efficient as securely possible. However, encryption and decryption are computationally expensive processes from a performance standpoint. It is not strictly necessary to run an entire web application over SSL, and it is customary for a developer to decide which pages require a secure connection and which do not. Pages that might require a secure connection include those for login, personal information, shopping cart checkouts, or credit card information transmittal. Any page within an application can be requested over a secure socket by simply prefixing the address with `https:` instead of `http:`. Any pages that absolutely require a secure connection should check the protocol type associated with the page request and take the appropriate action if `https:` is not specified.

Using name-based virtual hosts on a secured connection can be problematic. This is a design limitation of the SSL protocol itself. The **SSL handshake**, whereby the client browser accepts the server certificate, must occur before the HTTP request is accessed. As a result, the request information containing the virtual host name cannot be determined before authentication, and it is therefore not possible to assign multiple certificates to a single IP address. If all virtual hosts on a single IP address need to authenticate against the same certificate, the addition of multiple virtual hosts should not interfere with normal SSL operations on the server. Be aware, however, that most client browsers will compare the server's domain name against the domain name listed in the certificate, if any; this is applicable primarily to official certificates signed by a certificate authority (CA). If the domain names do not match, these browsers will display a warning to the client. In general, only address-based virtual hosts are commonly used with SSL in a production environment.

44.6.1 Verifying and Configuring SSL Support

As a general rule, you must address the following issues to enable SSL for a server:

- There must be a `Connector` element for an SSL connector in the server deployment descriptor.

- There must be valid keystore and certificate files.
- The location of the keystore file and its password must be specified in the server deployment descriptor.

An SSL HTTPS connector is already enabled in the GlassFish Server.

For testing purposes and to verify that SSL support has been correctly installed, load the default introduction page with a URL that connects to the port defined in the server deployment descriptor:

```
https://localhost:8181/
```

The `https` in this URL indicates that the browser should be using the SSL protocol. The `localhost` in this example assumes that you are running the example on your local machine as part of the development process. The `8181` in this example is the secure port that was specified where the SSL connector was created. If you are using a different server or port, modify this value accordingly.

The first time that you load this application, the New Site Certificate or Security Alert dialog box appears. Click **Next** to move through the series of dialog boxes, and click **Finish** when you reach the last dialog box. The certificates will appear only the first time. When you accept the certificates, subsequent hits to this site assume that you still trust the content.

44.7 Further Information about Security

For more information about security in Java EE applications, see

- Java EE 7 specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=342>
- Enterprise JavaBeans 3.2 specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=345>
- Implementing Enterprise Web Services 1.3 specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=109>
- Java SE security information:
<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/technotes/guides/security/>
- Java Servlet 3.1 specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=340>
- Java Authorization Contract for Containers 1.5 specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=115>

Getting Started Securing Web Applications

The ways to implement security for Java EE web applications are discussed in a general way in [Securing Containers](#). This chapter provides more detail and a few examples that explore these security services as they relate to web components.

A web application is accessed using a web browser over a network, such as the Internet or a company's intranet. As discussed in [Distributed Multitiered Applications](#), the Java EE platform uses a distributed multitiered application model, and web applications run in the web tier.

Web applications contain resources that can be accessed by many users. These resources often traverse unprotected, open networks, such as the Internet. In such an environment, a substantial number of web applications will require some type of security.

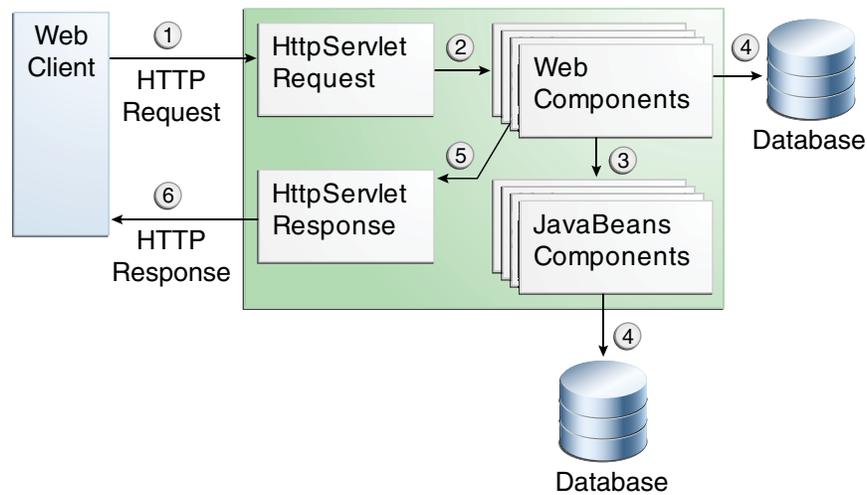
Securing applications and their clients in the business tier and the EIS tier is discussed in [Chapter 46, "Getting Started Securing Enterprise Applications"](#).

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of Web Application Security](#)
- [Securing Web Applications](#)
- [Using Programmatic Security with Web Applications](#)
- [Examples: Securing Web Applications](#)

45.1 Overview of Web Application Security

In the Java EE platform, web components provide the dynamic extension capabilities for a web server. Web components can be Java servlets or JavaServer Faces pages. The interaction between a web client and a web application is illustrated in [Figure 45-1](#).

Figure 45-1 Java Web Application Request Handling

Certain aspects of web application security can be configured when the application is installed, or deployed, to the web container. Annotations and/or deployment descriptors are used to relay information to the deployer about security and other aspects of the application. Specifying this information in annotations or in the deployment descriptor helps the deployer set up the appropriate security policy for the web application. Any values explicitly specified in the deployment descriptor override any values specified in annotations.

Security for Java EE web applications can be implemented in the following ways.

- **Declarative security:** Can be implemented using either metadata annotations or an application's deployment descriptor. See [Overview of Java EE Security](#) for more information.

Declarative security for web applications is described in [Securing Web Applications](#).

- **Programmatic security:** Is embedded in an application and can be used to make security decisions when declarative security alone is not sufficient to express the security model of an application. Declarative security alone may not be sufficient when conditional login in a particular work flow, instead of for all cases, is required in the middle of an application. See [Overview of Java EE Security](#) for more information.

Servlet 3.0 provides the `authenticate`, `login`, and `logout` methods of the `HttpServletRequest` interface. With the addition of the `authenticate`, `login`, and `logout` methods to the Servlet specification, an application deployment descriptor is no longer required for web applications but may still be used to further specify security requirements beyond the basic default values.

Programmatic security is discussed in [Using Programmatic Security with Web Applications](#)

- **Message Security:** Works with web services and incorporates security features, such as digital signatures and encryption, into the header of a SOAP message, working in the application layer, ensuring end-to-end security. Message security is not a component of Java EE 7 and is mentioned here for informational purposes only.

Some of the material in this chapter builds on material presented earlier in this tutorial. In particular, this chapter assumes that you are familiar with the information in the following chapters:

- [Chapter 6, "Getting Started with Web Applications"](#)
- [Chapter 7, "JavaServer Faces Technology"](#)
- [Chapter 17, "Java Servlet Technology"](#)
- [Chapter 44, "Introduction to Security in the Java EE Platform"](#)

45.2 Securing Web Applications

Web applications are created by application developers who give, sell, or otherwise transfer the application to an application deployer for installation into a runtime environment. Application developers communicate how to set up security for the deployed application by using annotations or deployment descriptors. This information is passed on to the deployer, who uses it to define method permissions for security roles, set up user authentication, and set up the appropriate transport mechanism. If the application developer doesn't define security requirements, the deployer will have to determine the security requirements independently.

Some elements necessary for security in a web application cannot be specified as annotations for all types of web applications. This chapter explains how to secure web applications using annotations wherever possible. It explains how to use deployment descriptors where annotations cannot be used.

45.2.1 Specifying Security Constraints

A **security constraint** is used to define the access privileges to a collection of resources using their URL mapping.

If your web application uses a servlet, you can express the security constraint information by using annotations. Specifically, you use the `@HttpConstraint` and, optionally, the `@HttpMethodConstraint` annotations within the `@ServletSecurity` annotation to specify a security constraint.

If your web application does not use a servlet, however, you must specify a `security-constraint` element in the deployment descriptor file. The authentication mechanism cannot be expressed using annotations, so if you use any authentication method other than `BASIC` (the default), a deployment descriptor is required.

The following subelements can be part of a `security-constraint`:

- **Web resource collection** (`web-resource-collection`): A list of URL patterns (the part of a URL *after* the host name and port you want to constrain) and HTTP operations (the methods within the files that match the URL pattern you want to constrain) that describe a set of resources to be protected. Web resource collections are discussed in [Specifying a Web Resource Collection](#).
- **Authorization constraint** (`auth-constraint`): Specifies whether authentication is to be used and names the roles authorized to perform the constrained requests. For more information about authorization constraints, see [Specifying an Authorization Constraint](#).
- **User data constraint** (`user-data-constraint`): Specifies how data is protected when transported between a client and a server. User data constraints are discussed in [Specifying a Secure Connection](#).

45.2.1.1 Specifying a Web Resource Collection

A web resource collection consists of the following subelements:

- `web-resource-name` is the name you use for this resource. Its use is optional.
- `url-pattern` is used to list the request URI to be protected. Many applications have both unprotected and protected resources. To provide unrestricted access to a resource, do not configure a security constraint for that particular request URI.

The request URI is the part of a URL *after* the host name and port. For example, let's say that you have an e-commerce site with a catalog that you would want anyone to be able to access and browse, and a shopping cart area for customers only. You could set up the paths for your web application so that the pattern `/cart/*` is protected but nothing else is protected. Assuming that the application is installed at context path `/myapp`, the following are true:

- `http://localhost:8080/myapp/index.xhtml` is *not* protected.
- `http://localhost:8080/myapp/cart/index.xhtml` is protected.

A user will be prompted to log in the first time he or she accesses a resource in the `cart/` subdirectory.

- `http-method` or `http-method-omission` is used to specify which methods should be protected or which methods should be omitted from protection. An HTTP method is protected by a `web-resource-collection` under any of the following circumstances:
 - If no HTTP methods are named in the collection (which means that all are protected)
 - If the collection specifically names the HTTP method in an `http-method` subelement
 - If the collection contains one or more `http-method-omission` elements, none of which names the HTTP method

45.2.1.2 Specifying an Authorization Constraint

An authorization constraint (`auth-constraint`) contains the `role-name` element. You can use as many `role-name` elements as needed here.

An authorization constraint establishes a requirement for authentication and names the roles authorized to access the URL patterns and HTTP methods declared by this security constraint. If there is no authorization constraint, the container must accept the request without requiring user authentication. If there is an authorization constraint but no roles are specified within it, the container will not allow access to constrained requests under any circumstances. Each role name specified here must either correspond to the role name of one of the `security-role` elements defined for this web application or be the specially reserved role name `*`, which indicates all roles in the web application. Role names are case sensitive. The roles defined for the application must be mapped to users and groups defined on the server, except when default principal-to-role mapping is used.

For more information about security roles, see [Declaring Security Roles](#). For information on mapping security roles, see [Mapping Roles to Users and Groups](#).

For a servlet, the `@HttpConstraint` and `@HttpMethodConstraint` annotations accept a `rolesAllowed` element that specifies the authorized roles.

45.2.1.3 Specifying a Secure Connection

A user data constraint (`user-data-constraint` in the deployment descriptor) contains the `transport-guarantee` subelement. A user data constraint can be used to require that a protected transport-layer connection, such as HTTPS, be used for all constrained URL patterns and HTTP methods specified in the security constraint. The choices for transport guarantee are `CONFIDENTIAL`, `INTEGRAL`, or `NONE`. If you specify `CONFIDENTIAL` or `INTEGRAL` as a security constraint, it generally means that the use of SSL is required and applies to all requests that match the URL patterns in the web resource collection, not just to the login dialog box.

The strength of the required protection is defined by the value of the `transport-guarantee`.

- Specify `CONFIDENTIAL` when the application requires that data be transmitted so as to prevent other entities from observing the contents of the transmission.
- Specify `INTEGRAL` when the application requires that the data be sent between client and server in such a way that it cannot be changed in transit.
- Specify `NONE` to indicate that the container must accept the constrained requests on any connection, including an unprotected one.

Note: In practice, Java EE servers treat the `CONFIDENTIAL` and `INTEGRAL` transport guarantee values identically.

The user data constraint is handy to use in conjunction with basic and form-based user authentication. When the login authentication method is set to `BASIC` or `FORM`, passwords are not protected, meaning that passwords sent between a client and a server on an unprotected session can be viewed and intercepted by third parties. Using a user data constraint with the user authentication mechanism can alleviate this concern. Configuring a user authentication mechanism is described in [Specifying an Authentication Mechanism in the Deployment Descriptor](#).

To guarantee that data is transported over a secure connection, ensure that SSL support is configured for your server. SSL support is already configured for the GlassFish Server.

Note: After you switch to SSL for a session, you should never accept any non-SSL requests for the rest of that session. For example, a shopping site might not use SSL until the checkout page, and then it might switch to using SSL to accept your card number. After switching to SSL, you should stop listening to non-SSL requests for this session. The reason for this practice is that the session ID itself was not encrypted on the earlier communications. This is not so bad when you're only doing your shopping, but after the credit card information is stored in the session, you don't want anyone to use that information to fake the purchase transaction against your credit card. This practice could be easily implemented by using a filter.

45.2.1.4 Specifying Security Constraints for Resources

You can create security constraints for resources within your application. For example, you could allow users with the role of `PARTNER` full access to all resources at the URL pattern `/acme/wholesale/*` and allow users with the role of `CLIENT` full access to all resources at the URL pattern `/acme/retail/*`. This is the recommended way to protect

resources if you do not want to protect some HTTP methods while leaving other HTTP methods unprotected. An example of a deployment descriptor that would demonstrate this functionality is the following:

```
<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT #1 -->
<security-constraint>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>wholesale</web-resource-name>
    <url-pattern>/acme/wholesale/*</url-pattern>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <role-name>PARTNER</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
  <user-data-constraint>
    <transport-guarantee>CONFIDENTIAL</transport-guarantee>
  </user-data-constraint>
</security-constraint>

<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT #2 -->
<security-constraint>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>retail</web-resource-name>
    <url-pattern>/acme/retail/*</url-pattern>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <role-name>CLIENT</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
  <user-data-constraint>
    <transport-guarantee>CONFIDENTIAL</transport-guarantee>
  </user-data-constraint>
</security-constraint>
```

45.2.2 Specifying Authentication Mechanisms

A user authentication mechanism specifies

- The way a user gains access to web content
- With basic authentication, the realm in which the user will be authenticated
- With form-based authentication, additional attributes

When an authentication mechanism is specified, the user must be authenticated before access is granted to any resource that is constrained by a security constraint. There can be multiple security constraints applying to multiple resources, but the same authentication method will apply to all constrained resources in an application.

Before you can authenticate a user, you must have a database of user names, passwords, and roles configured on your web or application server. For information on setting up the user database, see [Managing Users and Groups on the GlassFish Server](#).

The Java EE platform supports the following authentication mechanisms:

- Basic authentication
- Form-based authentication
- Digest authentication
- Client authentication
- Mutual authentication

Basic, form-based, and digest authentication are discussed in this section. Client and mutual authentication are discussed in [Chapter 47, "Java EE Security: Advanced Topics"](#).

HTTP basic authentication and form-based authentication are not very secure authentication mechanisms. Basic authentication sends user names and passwords over the Internet as Base64-encoded text. Form-based authentication sends this data as plain text. In both cases, the target server is not authenticated. Therefore, these forms of authentication leave user data exposed and vulnerable. If someone can intercept the transmission, the user name and password information can easily be decoded.

However, when a secure transport mechanism, such as SSL, or security at the network level, such as the Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) protocol or virtual private network (VPN) strategies, is used in conjunction with basic or form-based authentication, some of these concerns can be alleviated. To specify a secure transport mechanism, use the elements described in [Specifying a Secure Connection](#).

45.2.2.1 HTTP Basic Authentication

Specifying **HTTP basic authentication** requires that the server request a user name and password from the web client and verify that the user name and password are valid by comparing them against a database of authorized users in the specified or default realm.

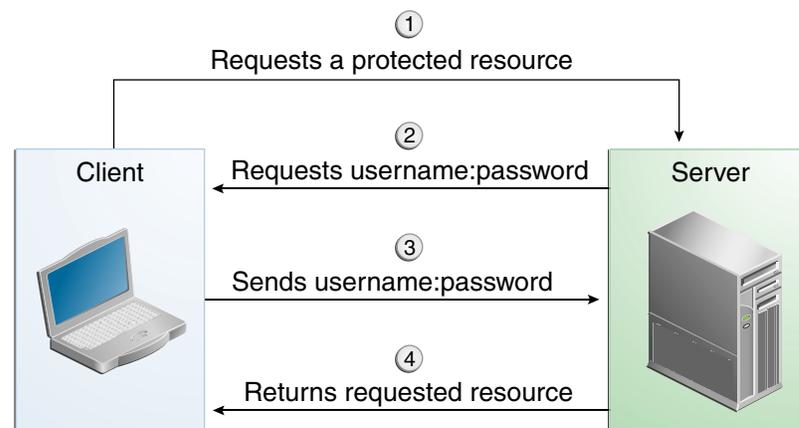
Basic authentication is the default when you do not specify an authentication mechanism.

When basic authentication is used, the following actions occur:

1. A client requests access to a protected resource.
2. The web server returns a dialog box that requests the user name and password.
3. The client submits the user name and password to the server.
4. The server authenticates the user in the specified realm and, if successful, returns the requested resource.

[Figure 45-2](#) shows what happens when you specify HTTP basic authentication.

Figure 45-2 HTTP Basic Authentication



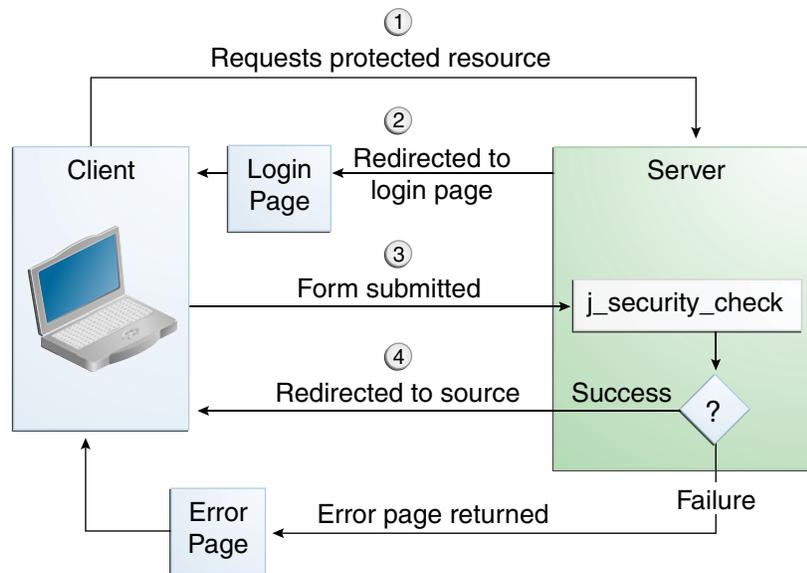
45.2.2.2 Form-Based Authentication

Form-based authentication allows the developer to control the look and feel of the login authentication screens by customizing the login screen and error pages that an HTTP browser presents to the end user. When form-based authentication is declared, the following actions occur.

1. A client requests access to a protected resource.
2. If the client is unauthenticated, the server redirects the client to a login page.
3. The client submits the login form to the server.
4. The server attempts to authenticate the user.
 - a. If authentication succeeds, the authenticated user's principal is checked to ensure that it is in a role that is authorized to access the resource. If the user is authorized, the server redirects the client to the resource by using the stored URL path.
 - b. If authentication fails, the client is forwarded or redirected to an error page.

Figure 45-3 shows what happens when you specify form-based authentication.

Figure 45-3 Form-Based Authentication



The section [The hello1-formauth Example: Form-Based Authentication with a JavaServer Faces Application](#) is an example application that uses form-based authentication.

When you create a form-based login, be sure to maintain sessions using cookies or SSL session information.

For authentication to proceed appropriately, the action of the login form must always be `j_security_check`. This restriction is made so that the login form will work no matter which resource it is for and to avoid requiring the server to specify the action field of the outbound form. The following code snippet shows how the form should be coded into the HTML page:

```
<form method="POST" action="j_security_check">
<input type="text" name="j_username">
```

```
<input type="password" name="j_password">
</form>
```

45.2.2.3 Digest Authentication

Like basic authentication, **digest authentication** authenticates a user based on a user name and a password. However, unlike basic authentication, digest authentication does not send user passwords over the network. Instead, the client sends a one-way cryptographic hash of the password and additional data. Although passwords are not sent on the wire, digest authentication requires that clear-text password equivalents be available to the authenticating container so that it can validate received authenticators by calculating the expected digest.

45.2.3 Specifying an Authentication Mechanism in the Deployment Descriptor

To specify an authentication mechanism, use the `login-config` element. It can contain the following subelements.

- The `auth-method` subelement configures the authentication mechanism for the web application. The element content must be either `NONE`, `BASIC`, `DIGEST`, `FORM`, or `CLIENT-CERT`.
- The `realm-name` subelement indicates the realm name to use when the basic authentication scheme is chosen for the web application.
- The `form-login-config` subelement specifies the login and error pages that should be used when form-based login is specified.

Note: Another way to specify form-based authentication is to use the `authenticate`, `login`, and `logout` methods of `HttpServletRequest`, as discussed in [Authenticating Users Programmatically](#).

When you try to access a web resource that is constrained by a `security-constraint` element, the web container activates the authentication mechanism that has been configured for that resource. The authentication mechanism specifies how the user will be prompted to log in. If the `login-config` element is present and the `auth-method` element contains a value other than `NONE`, the user must be authenticated to access the resource. If you do not specify an authentication mechanism, authentication of the user is not required.

The following example shows how to declare form-based authentication in your deployment descriptor:

```
<login-config>
  <auth-method>FORM</auth-method>
  <realm-name>file</realm-name>
  <form-login-config>
    <form-login-page>/login.xhtml</form-login-page>
    <form-error-page>/error.xhtml</form-error-page>
  </form-login-config>
</login-config>
```

The login and error page locations are specified relative to the location of the deployment descriptor. Examples of login and error pages are shown in [Creating the Login Form and the Error Page](#).

The following example shows how to declare digest authentication in your deployment descriptor:

```
<login-config>
  <auth-method>DIGEST</auth-method>
</login-config>
```

45.2.4 Declaring Security Roles

You can declare security role names used in web applications by using the `security-role` element of the deployment descriptor. Use this element to list all the security roles that you have referenced in your application.

The following snippet of a deployment descriptor declares the roles that will be used in an application using the `security-role` element and specifies which of these roles is authorized to access protected resources using the `auth-constraint` element:

```
<security-constraint>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>Protected Area</web-resource-name>
    <url-pattern>/security/protected/*</url-pattern>
    <http-method>PUT</http-method>
    <http-method>DELETE</http-method>
    <http-method>GET</http-method>
    <http-method>POST</http-method>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <role-name>manager</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
</security-constraint>

<!-- Security roles used by this web application -->
<security-role>
  <role-name>manager</role-name>
</security-role>
<security-role>
  <role-name>employee</role-name>
</security-role>
```

In this example, the `security-role` element lists all the security roles used in the application: `manager` and `employee`. This enables the deployer to map all the roles defined in the application to users and groups defined on the GlassFish Server.

The `auth-constraint` element specifies the role, `manager`, that can access the HTTP methods `PUT`, `DELETE`, `GET`, `POST` located in the directory specified by the `url-pattern` element (`/jsp/security/protected/*`).

The `@ServletSecurity` annotation cannot be used in this situation because its constraints apply to all URL patterns specified by the `@WebServlet` annotation.

45.3 Using Programmatic Security with Web Applications

Programmatic security is used by security-aware applications when declarative security alone is not sufficient to express the security model of the application.

45.3.1 Authenticating Users Programmatically

The following methods of the `HttpServletRequest` interface enable you to authenticate users for a web application programmatically:

- `authenticate`, which allows an application to instigate authentication of the request caller by the container from within an unconstrained request context. A login dialog box displays and collects the user name and password for authentication purposes.
- `login`, which allows an application to collect user name and password information as an alternative to specifying form-based authentication in an application deployment descriptor.
- `logout`, which allows an application to reset the caller identity of a request.

The following example code shows how to use the `login` and `logout` methods:

```
package test;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.PrintWriter;
import java.math.BigDecimal;
import javax.ejb.EJB;
import javax.servlet.ServletException;
import javax.servlet.annotation.WebServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse;

@WebServlet(name="TutorialServlet", urlPatterns={"/TutorialServlet"})
public class TutorialServlet extends HttpServlet {
    @EJB
    private ConverterBean converterBean;

    /**
     * Processes requests for both HTTP GET
     * and POST methods.
     * @param request servlet request
     * @param response servlet response
     * @throws ServletException if a servlet-specific error occurs
     * @throws IOException if an I/O error occurs
     */
    protected void processRequest(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response)
        throws ServletException, IOException {
        response.setContentType("text/html;charset=UTF-8");
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();
        try {

            out.println("<html>");
            out.println("<head>");
            out.println("<title>Servlet TutorialServlet</title>");
            out.println("</head>");
            out.println("<body>");
            request.login("TutorialUser", "TutorialUser");
            BigDecimal result =
                converterBean.dollarToYen(new BigDecimal("1.0"));
            out.println("<h1>Servlet TutorialServlet result of dollarToYen= "
                + result + "</h1>");
            out.println("</body>");
            out.println("</html>");
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new ServletException(e);
        } finally {
            request.logout();
        }
    }
}
```

```
        out.close();
    }
}
```

The following example code shows how to use the `authenticate` method:

```
package com.sam.test;

import java.io.*;
import javax.servlet.*;
import javax.servlet.http.*;

public class TestServlet extends HttpServlet {

    protected void processRequest(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response)
        throws ServletException, IOException {
        response.setContentType("text/html;charset=UTF-8");
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();
        try {
            request.authenticate(response);
            out.println("Authenticate Successful");
        } finally {
            out.close();
        }
    }
}
```

45.3.2 Checking Caller Identity Programmatically

In general, security management should be enforced by the container in a manner that is transparent to the web component. The security API described in this section should be used only in the less frequent situations in which the web component methods need to access the security context information.

Servlet 3.0 specifies the following methods that enable you to access security information about the component's caller:

- `getRemoteUser`, which determines the user name with which the client authenticated. The `getRemoteUser` method returns the name of the remote user (the caller) associated by the container with the request. If no user has been authenticated, this method returns `null`.
- `isUserInRole`, which determines whether a remote user is in a specific security role. If no user has been authenticated, this method returns `false`. This method expects a `String` `user` `role-name` parameter.

The `security-role-ref` element should be declared in the deployment descriptor with a `role-name` subelement containing the role name to be passed to the method. Using security role references is discussed in [Declaring and Linking Role References](#).

- `getUserPrincipal`, which determines the principal name of the current user and returns a `java.security.Principal` object. If no user has been authenticated, this method returns `null`. Calling the `getName` method on the `Principal` returned by `getUserPrincipal` returns the name of the remote user.

Your application can make business-logic decisions based on the information obtained using these APIs.

45.3.3 Example Code for Programmatic Security

The following code demonstrates the use of programmatic security for the purposes of programmatic login. This servlet does the following:

1. It displays information about the current user.
2. It prompts the user to log in.
3. It prints out the information again to demonstrate the effect of the login method.
4. It logs the user out.
5. It prints out the information again to demonstrate the effect of the logout method.

```
package enterprise.programmatic_login;

import java.io.*;
import java.net.*;
import javax.annotation.security.DeclareRoles;
import javax.servlet.*;
import javax.servlet.http.*;

@DeclareRoles("javaee6user")
public class LoginServlet extends HttpServlet {

    /**
     * Processes requests for both HTTP GET and POST methods.
     * @param request servlet request
     * @param response servlet response
     */
    protected void processRequest(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response)
        throws ServletException, IOException {
        response.setContentType("text/html;charset=UTF-8");
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();
        try {
            String userName = request.getParameter("txtUserName");
            String password = request.getParameter("txtPassword");

            out.println("Before Login" + "<br><br>");
            out.println("IsUserInRole?.."
                + request.isUserInRole("javaee6user")+"<br>");
            out.println("getRemoteUser?.." + request.getRemoteUser()+"<br>");
            out.println("getUserPrincipal?.."
                + request.getUserPrincipal()+"<br>");
            out.println("getAuthType?.." + request.getAuthType()+"<br><br>");

            try {
                request.login(userName, password);
            } catch(ServletException ex) {
                out.println("Login Failed with a ServletException.."
                    + ex.getMessage());
                return;
            }

            out.println("After Login..."+"<br><br>");
            out.println("IsUserInRole?.."
                + request.isUserInRole("javaee6user")+"<br>");
            out.println("getRemoteUser?.." + request.getRemoteUser()+"<br>");
            out.println("getUserPrincipal?.."
                + request.getUserPrincipal()+"<br>");
            out.println("getAuthType?.." + request.getAuthType()+"<br><br>");
        }
    }
}
```

```
request.logout();
out.println("After Logout..." + "<br><br>");
out.println("IsUserInRole?.."
    + request.isUserInRole("javaee6user") + "<br>");
out.println("getRemoteUser?.." + request.getRemoteUser() + "<br>");
out.println("getUserPrincipal?.."
    + request.getUserPrincipal() + "<br>");
out.println("getAuthType?.." + request.getAuthType() + "<br>");
} finally {
    out.close();
}
}
...
}
```

45.3.4 Declaring and Linking Role References

A **security role reference** is a mapping between the name of a role that is called from a web component using `isUserInRole(String role)` and the name of a security role that has been defined for the application. If no `security-role-ref` element is declared in a deployment descriptor and the `isUserInRole` method is called, the container defaults to checking the provided role name against the list of all security roles defined for the web application. Using the default method instead of using the `security-role-ref` element limits your flexibility to change role names in an application without also recompiling the servlet making the call.

The `security-role-ref` element is used when an application uses the `HttpServletRequest.isUserInRole(String role)`. The value passed to the `isUserInRole` method is a `String` representing the role name of the user. The value of the `role-name` element must be the `String` used as the parameter to the `HttpServletRequest.isUserInRole(String role)`. The `role-link` must contain the name of one of the security roles defined in the `security-role` elements. The container uses the mapping of `security-role-ref` to `security-role` when determining the return value of the call.

For example, to map the security role reference `cust` to the security role with role name `bankCustomer`, the syntax would be:

```
<servlet>
...
  <security-role-ref>
    <role-name>cust</role-name>
    <role-link>bankCustomer</role-link>
  </security-role-ref>
...
</servlet>
```

If the servlet method is called by a user in the `bankCustomer` security role, `isUserInRole("cust")` returns `true`.

The `role-link` element in the `security-role-ref` element must match a `role-name` defined in the `security-role` element of the same `web.xml` deployment descriptor, as shown here:

```
<security-role>
  <role-name>bankCustomer</role-name>
</security-role>
```

A security role reference, including the name defined by the reference, is scoped to the component whose deployment descriptor contains the `security-role-ref` deployment descriptor element.

45.4 Examples: Securing Web Applications

Some basic setup is required before any of the example applications will run correctly. The examples use annotations, programmatic security, and/or declarative security to demonstrate adding security to existing web applications.

Here are some other locations where you will find examples of securing various types of applications:

- [The cart-secure Example: Securing an Enterprise Bean with Declarative Security](#)
- [The converter-secure Example: Securing an Enterprise Bean with Programmatic Security](#)
- GlassFish samples: <https://glassfish-samples.java.net/>

45.4.1 To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples

To set up your system for running the security examples, you need to configure a user database that the application can use for authenticating users. Before continuing, follow these steps.

1. Add an authorized user to the GlassFish Server. For the examples in this chapter and in [Chapter 46, "Getting Started Securing Enterprise Applications"](#), add a user to the `file` realm of the GlassFish Server, and assign the user to the group `TutorialUser`:
 - a. From the Administration Console, expand the **Configurations** node, then expand the **server-config** node.
 - b. Expand the **Security** node.
 - c. Expand the **Realms** node.
 - d. Select the **File** node.
 - e. On the Edit Realm page, click **Manage Users**.
 - f. On the File Users page, click **New**.
 - g. In the **User ID** field, enter a user ID.
 - h. In the **Group List** field, enter `TutorialUser`.
 - i. In the **New Password** and **Confirm New Password** fields, enter a password.
 - j. Click **OK**.

Be sure to write down the user name and password for the user you create so that you can use it for testing the example applications. Authentication is case sensitive for both the user name and password, so write down the user name and password exactly. This topic is discussed more in [Managing Users and Groups on the GlassFish Server](#).

2. Set up Default Principal to Role Mapping on the GlassFish Server:
 - a. From the Administration Console, expand the **Configurations** node, then expand the **server-config** node.
 - b. Select the **Security** node.

- c. Select the **Default Principal to Role Mapping Enabled** check box.
- d. Click **Save**.

45.4.2 The hello2-basicauth Example: Basic Authentication with a Servlet

This example explains how to use basic authentication with a servlet. With basic authentication of a servlet, the web browser presents a standard login dialog box that is not customizable. When a user submits his or her name and password, the server determines whether the user name and password are those of an authorized user and sends the requested web resource if the user is authorized to view it.

In general, the following steps are necessary for adding basic authentication to an unsecured servlet, such as the ones described in [Chapter 6, "Getting Started with Web Applications"](#). In the example application included with this tutorial, many of these steps have been completed for you and are listed here simply to show what needs to be done should you wish to create a similar application. The completed version of this example application can be found in the `tut-install/examples/security/hello2-basicauth/` directory.

1. Follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).
2. Create a web module as described in [Chapter 6, "Getting Started with Web Applications"](#) for the servlet example, `hello2`.
3. Add the appropriate security annotations to the servlet. The security annotations are described in [Specifying Security for Basic Authentication Using Annotations](#).
4. Build, package, and deploy the web application by following the steps in [To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello2-basicauth Example Using NetBeans IDE](#) or [To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello2-basicauth Example Using Maven](#).
5. Run the web application by following the steps described in [To Run the hello2-basicauth Example](#).

45.4.2.1 Specifying Security for Basic Authentication Using Annotations

The default authentication mechanism used by the GlassFish Server is basic authentication. With basic authentication, the GlassFish Server spawns a standard login dialog box to collect user name and password data for a protected resource. Once the user is authenticated, access to the protected resource is permitted.

To specify security for a servlet, use the `@ServletSecurity` annotation. This annotation allows you to specify both specific constraints on HTTP methods and more general constraints that apply to all HTTP methods for which no specific constraint is specified. Within the `@ServletSecurity` annotation, you can specify the following annotations:

- The `@HttpMethodConstraint` annotation, which applies to a specific HTTP method
- The more general `@HttpConstraint` annotation, which applies to all HTTP methods for which there is no corresponding `@HttpMethodConstraint` annotation

Both the `@HttpMethodConstraint` and `@HttpConstraint` annotations within the `@ServletSecurity` annotation can specify the following:

- A `transportGuarantee` element that specifies the data protection requirements (that is, whether or not SSL/TLS is required) that must be satisfied by the connections on which requests arrive. Valid values for this element are `NONE` and `CONFIDENTIAL`.
- A `rolesAllowed` element that specifies the names of the authorized roles.

For the `hello2-basicauth` application, the `GreetingServlet` has the following annotations:

```
@WebServlet(name = "GreetingServlet", urlPatterns = {"/greeting"})
@WebServletSecurity(
    @HttpConstraint(transportGuarantee = TransportGuarantee.CONFIDENTIAL,
        rolesAllowed = {"TutorialUser"}))
```

These annotations specify that the request URI `/greeting` can be accessed only by users who have been authorized to access this URL because they have been verified to be in the role `TutorialUser`. The data will be sent over a protected transport in order to keep the user name and password data from being read in transit.

If you use the `@ServletSecurity` annotation, you do not need to specify security settings in the deployment descriptor. Use the deployment descriptor to specify settings for nondefault authentication mechanisms, for which you cannot use the `@ServletSecurity` annotation.

45.4.2.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the `hello2-basicauth` Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. Follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
3. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/security/
```
4. Select the `hello2-basicauth` folder.
5. Click **Open Project**.
6. Right-click `hello2-basicauth` in the **Projects** tab and select **Build**.

This command builds and deploys the example application to your GlassFish Server instance.

45.4.2.3 To Build, Package, and Deploy the `hello2-basicauth` Example Using Maven

1. Follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:


```
tut-install/examples/security/hello2-basicauth/
```
3. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `hello2-basicauth.war`, that is located in the `target` directory, then deploys the WAR file.

45.4.2.4 To Run the `hello2-basicauth` Example

1. In a web browser, navigate to the following URL:

```
https://localhost:8181/hello2-basicauth/greeting
```

You may be prompted to accept the security certificate for the server. If so, accept the security certificate. If the browser warns that the certificate is invalid because it is self-signed, add a security exception for the application.

An Authentication Required dialog box appears. Its appearance varies, depending on the browser you use.

2. Enter a user name and password combination that corresponds to a user who has already been created in the `file` realm of the GlassFish Server and has been assigned to the group of `TutorialUser`; then click **OK**.

Basic authentication is case sensitive for both the user name and password, so enter the user name and password exactly as defined for the GlassFish Server.

The server returns the requested resource if all the following conditions are met.

- A user with the user name you entered is defined for the GlassFish Server.
- The user with the user name you entered has the password you entered.
- The user name and password combination you entered is assigned to the group `TutorialUser` on the GlassFish Server.
- The role of `TutorialUser`, as defined for the application, is mapped to the group `TutorialUser`, as defined for the GlassFish Server.

3. Enter a name in the field and click **Submit**.

Because you have already been authorized, the name you enter in this step does not have any limitations. You have unlimited access to the application now.

The application responds by saying "Hello" to the name you entered.

45.4.3 The `hello1-formauth` Example: Form-Based Authentication with a JavaServer Faces Application

This example explains how to use form-based authentication with a JavaServer Faces application. With form-based authentication, you can customize the login screen and error pages that are presented to the web client for authentication of the user name and password. When a user submits his or her name and password, the server determines whether the user name and password are those of an authorized user and, if authorized, sends the requested web resource.

This example, `hello1-formauth`, adds security to the basic JavaServer Faces application shown in [A Web Module That Uses JavaServer Faces Technology: The `hello1` Example](#).

In general, the steps necessary for adding form-based authentication to an unsecured JavaServer Faces application are similar to those described in [The `hello2-basicauth` Example: Basic Authentication with a Servlet](#). The major difference is that you must use a deployment descriptor to specify the use of form-based authentication, as described in [Specifying Security for the Form-Based Authentication Example](#). In addition, you must create a login form page and a login error page, as described in [Creating the Login Form and the Error Page](#).

The completed version of this example application can be found in the `tut-install/examples/security/hello1-formauth/` directory.

45.4.3.1 Creating the Login Form and the Error Page

When using form-based login mechanisms, you must specify a page that contains the form you want to use to obtain the user name and password, as well as a page to display if login authentication fails. This section discusses the login form and the error page used in this example. [Specifying Security for the Form-Based Authentication Example](#) shows how you specify these pages in the deployment descriptor.

The login page can be an HTML page or a servlet, and it must return an HTML page containing a form that conforms to specific naming conventions (see the Java Servlet 3.1 specification for more information on these requirements). To do this, include the elements that accept user name and password information between `<form></form>` tags in your login page. The content of an HTML page or servlet for a login page should be coded as follows:

```
<form method="post" action="j_security_check">
  <input type="text" name="j_username">
  <input type="password" name="j_password">
</form>
```

The full code for the login page used in this example can be found at *tut-install/examples/security/hello1-formauth/src/main/webapp/login.html*. Here is the code for this page:

```
<html lang="en">
  <head>
    <title>Login Form</title>
  </head>
  <body>
    <h2>Hello, please log in:</h2>
    <form method="post" action="j_security_check">
      <table role="presentation">
        <tr>
          <td>Please type your user name: </td>
          <td><input type="text" name="j_username"
            size="20"/></td>
        </tr>
        <tr>
          <td>Please type your password: </td>
          <td><input type="password" name="j_password"
            size="20"/></td>
        </tr>
      </table>
      <p></p>
      <input type="submit" value="Submit"/>
      &nbsp;
      <input type="reset" value="Reset"/>
    </form>
  </body>
</html>
```

The login error page is displayed if the user enters a user name and password combination that is not authorized to access the protected URI. For this example, the login error page can be found at *tut-install/examples/security/hello1-formauth/src/main/webapp/error.html*. For this example, the login error page explains the reason for receiving the error page and provides a link that will allow the user to try again. Here is the code for this page:

```
<html lang="en">
  <head>
    <title>Login Error</title>
  </head>
  <body>
    <h2>Invalid user name or password.</h2>

    <p>Please enter a user name or password that is authorized to access this
      application. For this application, this means a user that has been
      created in the <code>file</code> realm and has been assigned to the
```

```
        <em>group</em> of <code>TutorialUser</code>.</p>
        <p><a href="login.html">Return to login page</a></p>
    </body>
</html>
```

45.4.3.2 Specifying Security for the Form-Based Authentication Example

This example takes a very simple servlet-based web application and adds form-based security. To specify form-based instead of basic authentication for a JavaServer Faces example, you must use the deployment descriptor.

The following sample code shows the security elements added to the deployment descriptor for this example, which can be found in *tut-install/examples/security/hello1-formauth/src/main/webapp/WEB-INF/web.xml*.

```
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>Constraint1</display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>wrcoll</web-resource-name>
    <description/>
    <url-pattern>/*</url-pattern>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <description/>
    <role-name>TutorialUser</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
</security-constraint>

<login-config>
  <auth-method>FORM</auth-method>
  <realm-name>file</realm-name>
  <form-login-config>
    <form-login-page>/login.xhtml</form-login-page>
    <form-error-page>/error.xhtml</form-error-page>
  </form-login-config>
</login-config>

<security-role>
  <description/>
  <role-name>TutorialUser</role-name>
</security-role>
```

45.4.3.3 To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello1-formauth Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. Follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
3. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
tut-install/examples/security/
4. Select the hello1-formauth folder.
5. Click **Open Project**.
6. Right-click hello1-formauth in the **Projects** tab and select **Run**.

This command builds and deploys the example application to your GlassFish Server instance, then opens it in a browser.

45.4.3.4 To Build, Package, and Deploy the hello1-formauth Example Using Maven and the asadmin Command

1. Follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).

2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/security/hello1-formauth/
```

3. Enter the following command at the terminal window or command prompt:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `hello1-formauth.war`, that is located in the target directory, then deploys the WAR file to the GlassFish Server.

45.4.3.5 To Run the hello1-formauth Example

To run the web client for `hello1-formauth`, follow these steps.

1. Open a web browser to the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/hello1-formauth/
```

2. In the login form, enter a user name and password combination that corresponds to a user who has already been created in the `file` realm of the GlassFish Server and has been assigned to the group of `TutorialUser`.

Form-based authentication is case sensitive for both the user name and password, so enter the user name and password exactly as defined for the GlassFish Server.

3. Click **Submit**.

If you entered `My_Name` as the name and `My_Pwd` for the password, the server returns the requested resource if all the following conditions are met.

- A user with the user name `My_Name` is defined for the GlassFish Server.
- The user with the user name `My_Name` has a password `My_Pwd` defined for the GlassFish Server.
- The user `My_Name` with the password `My_Pwd` is assigned to the group `TutorialUser` on the GlassFish Server.
- The role `TutorialUser`, as defined for the application, is mapped to the group `TutorialUser`, as defined for the GlassFish Server.

When these conditions are met and the server has authenticated the user, the application appears.

4. Enter your name and click **Submit**.

Because you have already been authorized, the name you enter in this step does not have any limitations. You have unlimited access to the application now.

The application responds by saying "Hello" to you.

Next Steps

For additional testing and to see the login error page generated, close and reopen your browser, enter the application URL, and enter a user name and password that are not authorized.

Getting Started Securing Enterprise Applications

This chapter describes how to administer security for enterprise applications.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Basic Security Tasks for Enterprise Applications](#)
- [Securing Enterprise Beans](#)
- [Examples: Securing Enterprise Beans](#)

46.1 Basic Security Tasks for Enterprise Applications

System administrators, application developers, bean providers, and deployers are responsible for administering security for enterprise applications:

The basic security tasks

- Setting up a database of users and assigning them to the proper group
- Setting up identity propagation
- Setting GlassFish Server properties that enable the applications to run properly, such as setting default principal-to-role mapping
- Annotating the classes and methods of an enterprise application to provide information about which methods need to have restricted access

The sections on the security examples in this chapter and the previous chapter explain how to perform these tasks.

46.2 Securing Enterprise Beans

Enterprise beans are Java EE components that implement EJB technology. Enterprise beans run in the EJB container, a runtime environment within the GlassFish Server. Although transparent to the application developer, the EJB container provides system-level services, such as transactions and security to its enterprise beans, which form the core of transactional Java EE applications.

Enterprise bean methods can be secured in either of the following ways:

- **Declarative security** (preferred): Expresses an application component's security requirements using either deployment descriptors or annotations. The presence of an annotation in the business method of an enterprise bean class that specifies method permissions is all that is needed for method protection and authentication

in some situations. This section discusses this simple and efficient method of securing enterprise beans.

Because of some limitations to the simplified method of securing enterprise beans, you would want to continue to use the deployment descriptor to specify security information in some instances. An authentication mechanism must be configured on the server for the simple solution to work. Basic authentication is the GlassFish Server's default authentication method.

This tutorial explains how to invoke user name/password authentication of authorized users by decorating the enterprise application's business methods with annotations that specify method permissions.

To make the deployer's task easier, the application developer can define security roles. A security role is a grouping of permissions that a given type of application users must have in order to successfully use the application. For example, in a payroll application, some users will want to view their own payroll information (employee), some will need to view others' payroll information (manager), and some will need to be able to change others' payroll information (payrollDept). The application developer would determine the potential users of the application and which methods would be accessible to which users. The application developer would then decorate classes or methods of the enterprise bean with annotations that specify the types of users authorized to access those methods. Using annotations to specify authorized users is described in [Specifying Authorized Users by Declaring Security Roles](#).

When one of the annotations is used to define method permissions, the deployment system will automatically require user name/password authentication. In this type of authentication, a user is prompted to enter a user name and password, which will be compared against a database of known users. If the user is found and the password matches, the roles that the user is assigned will be compared against the roles that are authorized to access the method. If the user is authenticated and found to have a role that is authorized to access that method, the data will be returned to the user.

Using declarative security is discussed in [Securing an Enterprise Bean Using Declarative Security](#).

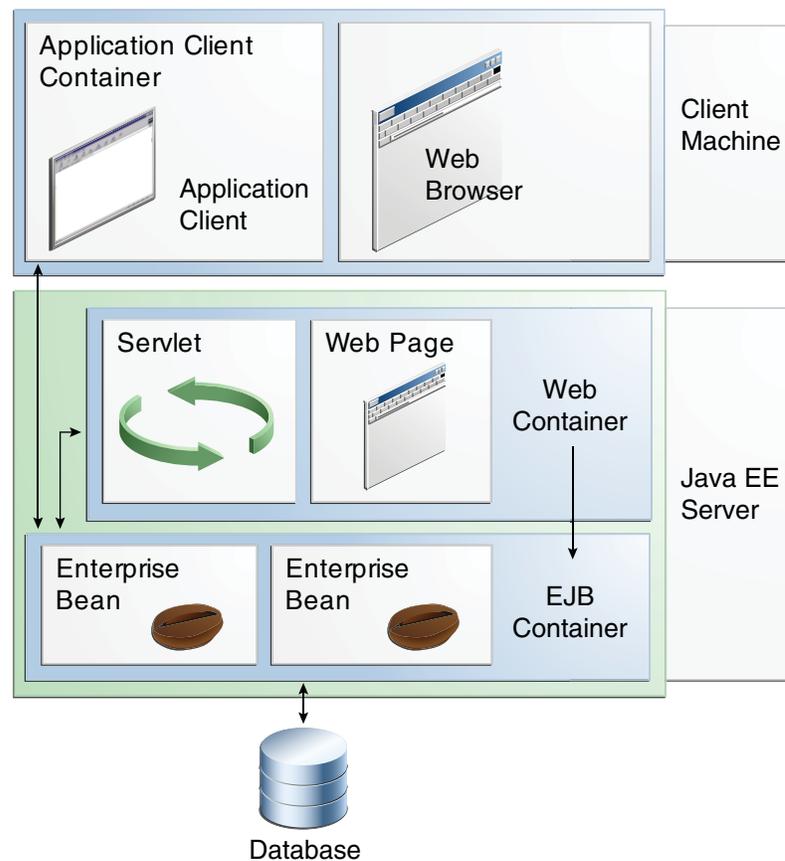
- **Programmatic security:** For an enterprise bean, code embedded in a business method that is used to access a caller's identity programmatically and that uses this information to make security decisions. Programmatic security is useful when declarative security alone is not sufficient to express the security model of an application.

In general, security management should be enforced by the container in a manner that is transparent to the enterprise beans' business methods. The programmatic security APIs described in this chapter should be used only in the less frequent situations in which the enterprise bean business methods need to access the security-context information, such as when you want to grant access based on the time of day or other nontrivial condition checks for a particular role.

Programmatic security is discussed in [Securing an Enterprise Bean Programmatically](#).

Some of the material in this chapter assumes that you have already read [Chapter 26, "Enterprise Beans"](#), [Chapter 27, "Getting Started with Enterprise Beans"](#), and [Chapter 44, "Introduction to Security in the Java EE Platform"](#).

As mentioned earlier, enterprise beans run in the EJB container, a runtime environment within the GlassFish Server, as shown in [Figure 46-1](#).

Figure 46-1 Java EE Server and Containers

This section discusses securing a Java EE application where one or more modules, such as EJB JAR files, are packaged into an EAR file, the archive file that holds the application. Security annotations will be used in the Java programming class files to specify authorized users and basic, or user name/password, authentication.

Enterprise beans often provide the business logic of a web application. In these cases, packaging the enterprise bean within the web application's WAR module simplifies deployment and application organization. Enterprise beans may be packaged within a WAR module as Java class files or within a JAR file that is bundled within the WAR module. When a servlet or JavaServer Faces page handles the web front end and the application is packaged into a WAR module as a Java class file, security for the application can be handled in the application's `web.xml` file. The EJB in the WAR file can have its own deployment descriptor, `ejb-jar.xml`, if required. Securing web applications using `web.xml` is discussed in [Chapter 45, "Getting Started Securing Web Applications"](#).

The following sections describe declarative and programmatic security mechanisms that can be used to protect enterprise bean resources. The protected resources include enterprise bean methods that are called from application clients, web components, or other enterprise beans.

For more information on this topic, read the Enterprise JavaBeans 3.1 specification. This document can be downloaded from <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=318>. Chapter 17 of this specification, "Security Management," discusses security management for enterprise beans.

46.2.1 Securing an Enterprise Bean Using Declarative Security

Declarative security enables the application developer to specify which users are authorized to access which methods of the enterprise beans and to authenticate these users with basic, or username-password, authentication. Frequently, the person who is developing an enterprise application is not the same person who is responsible for deploying the application. An application developer who uses declarative security to define method permissions and authentication mechanisms is passing along to the deployer a security view of the enterprise beans contained in the EJB JAR. When a security view is passed on to the deployer, he or she uses this information to define method permissions for security roles. If you don't define a security view, the deployer will have to determine what each business method does to determine which users are authorized to call each method.

A security view consists of a set of security roles, a semantic grouping of permissions that a given type of users of an application must have to successfully access the application. Security roles are meant to be logical roles, representing a type of user. You can define method permissions for each security role. A method permission is a permission to invoke a specified group of methods of an enterprise bean's business interface, home interface, component interface, and/or web service endpoints. After method permissions are defined, user name/password authentication will be used to verify the identity of the user.

It is important to keep in mind that security roles are used to define the logical security view of an application. They should not be confused with the user groups, users, principals, and other concepts that exist in the GlassFish Server. An additional step is required to map the roles defined in the application to users, groups, and principals that are the components of the user database in the file realm of the GlassFish Server. These steps are outlined in [Mapping Roles to Users and Groups](#).

The following sections show how an application developer uses declarative security to either secure an application or to create a security view to pass along to the deployer.

46.2.1.1 Specifying Authorized Users by Declaring Security Roles

This section discusses how to use annotations to specify the method permissions for the methods of a bean class. For more information on these annotations, refer to the Common Annotations for the Java Platform specification at <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=250>.

Method permissions can be specified on the class, the business methods of the class, or both. Method permissions can be specified on a method of the bean class to override the method permissions value specified on the entire bean class. The following annotations are used to specify method permissions:

- `@DeclareRoles`: Specifies all the roles that the application will use, including roles not specifically named in a `@RolesAllowed` annotation. The set of security roles the application uses is the total of the security roles defined in the `@DeclareRoles` and `@RolesAllowed` annotations.

The `@DeclareRoles` annotation is specified on a bean class, where it serves to declare roles that can be tested (for example, by calling `isCallerInRole`) from within the methods of the annotated class. When declaring the name of a role used as a parameter to the `isCallerInRole(String roleName)` method, the declared name must be the same as the parameter value.

The following example code demonstrates the use of the `@DeclareRoles` annotation:

```
@DeclareRoles("BusinessAdmin")
```

```
public class Calculator {
    ...
}
```

The syntax for declaring more than one role is as shown in the following example:

```
@DeclareRoles({"Administrator", "Manager", "Employee"})
```

- `@RolesAllowed("list-of-roles")`: Specifies the security roles permitted to access methods in an application. This annotation can be specified on a class or on one or more methods. When specified at the class level, the annotation applies to all methods in the class. When specified on a method, the annotation applies to that method only and overrides any values specified at the class level.

To specify that no roles are authorized to access methods in an application, use the `@DenyAll` annotation. To specify that a user in any role is authorized to access the application, use the `@PermitAll` annotation.

When used in conjunction with the `@DeclareRoles` annotation, the combined set of security roles is used by the application.

The following example code demonstrates the use of the `@RolesAllowed` annotation:

```
@DeclareRoles({"Administrator", "Manager", "Employee"})
public class Calculator {

    @RolesAllowed("Administrator")
    public void setNewRate(int rate) {
        ...
    }
}
```

- `@PermitAll`: Specifies that *all* security roles are permitted to execute the specified method or methods. The user is not checked against a database to ensure that he or she is authorized to access this application.

This annotation can be specified on a class or on one or more methods. Specifying this annotation on the class means that it applies to all methods of the class. Specifying it at the method level means that it applies to only that method.

The following example code demonstrates the use of the `@PermitAll` annotation:

```
import javax.annotation.security.*;
@RolesAllowed("RestrictedUsers")
public class Calculator {

    @RolesAllowed("Administrator")
    public void setNewRate(int rate) {
        //...
    }
    @PermitAll
    public long convertCurrency(long amount) {
        //...
    }
}
```

- `@DenyAll`: Specifies that *no* security roles are permitted to execute the specified method or methods. This means that these methods are excluded from execution in the Java EE container.

The following example code demonstrates the use of the `@DenyAll` annotation:

```
import javax.annotation.security.*;
@RolesAllowed("Users")
public class Calculator {
    @RolesAllowed("Administrator")
    public void setNewRate(int rate) {
        //...
    }
    @DenyAll
    public long convertCurrency(long amount) {
        //...
    }
}
```

The following code snippet demonstrates the use of the `@DeclareRoles` annotation with the `isCallerInRole` method. In this example, the `@DeclareRoles` annotation declares a role that the enterprise bean `PayrollBean` uses to make the security check by using `isCallerInRole("payroll")` to verify that the caller is authorized to change salary data:

```
@DeclareRoles("payroll")
@Stateless public class PayrollBean implements Payroll {
    @Resource SessionContext ctx;

    public void updateEmployeeInfo(EmplInfo info) {

        oldInfo = ... read from database;

        // The salary field can be changed only by callers
        // who have the security role "payroll"
        Principal callerPrincipal = ctx.getCallerPrincipal();
        if (info.salary != oldInfo.salary && !ctx.isCallerInRole("payroll")) {
            throw new SecurityException(...);
        }
        ...
    }
    ...
}
```

The following example code illustrates the use of the `@RolesAllowed` annotation:

```
@RolesAllowed("admin")
public class SomeClass {
    public void aMethod () {...}
    public void bMethod () {...}
    ...
}

@Stateless public class MyBean extends SomeClass implements A {

    @RolesAllowed("HR")
    public void aMethod () {...}

    public void cMethod () {...}
    ...
}
```

In this example, assuming that `aMethod`, `bMethod`, and `cMethod` are methods of business interface `A`, the method permissions values of methods `aMethod` and `bMethod` are `@RolesAllowed("HR")` and `@RolesAllowed("admin")`, respectively. The method permissions for method `cMethod` have not been specified.

To clarify, the annotations are not inherited by the subclass itself. Instead, the annotations apply to methods of the superclass that are inherited by the subclass.

46.2.1.2 Specifying an Authentication Mechanism and Secure Connection

When method permissions are specified, basic user name/password authentication will be invoked by the GlassFish Server.

To use a different type of authentication or to require a secure connection using SSL, specify this information in an application deployment descriptor.

46.2.2 Securing an Enterprise Bean Programmatically

Programmatic security, code that is embedded in a business method, is used to access a caller's identity programmatically and uses this information to make security decisions within the method itself.

46.2.2.1 Accessing an Enterprise Bean Caller's Security Context

In general, security management should be enforced by the container in a manner that is transparent to the enterprise bean's business methods. The security API described in this section should be used only in the less frequent situations in which the enterprise bean business methods need to access the security context information, such as when you want to restrict access to a particular time of day.

The `javax.ejb.EJBContext` interface provides two methods that allow the bean provider to access security information about the enterprise bean's caller:

- `getCallerPrincipal`, which allows the enterprise bean methods to obtain the current caller principal's name. The methods might, for example, use the name as a key to information in a database.

The following code sample illustrates the use of the `getCallerPrincipal` method:

```
@Stateless public class EmployeeServiceBean implements EmployeeService {
    @Resource SessionContext ctx;
    @PersistenceContext EntityManager em;

    public void changePhoneNumber(...) {
        ...
        // obtain the caller principal.
        callerPrincipal = ctx.getCallerPrincipal();

        // obtain the caller principal's name.
        callerKey = callerPrincipal.getName();

        // use callerKey as primary key to find EmployeeRecord
        EmployeeRecord myEmployeeRecord =
            em.find(EmployeeRecord.class, callerKey);

        // update phone number
        myEmployeeRecord.setPhoneNumber(...);

        ...
    }
}
```

In this example, the enterprise bean obtains the principal name of the current caller and uses it as the primary key to locate an `EmployeeRecord` entity. This example assumes that application has been deployed such that the current caller

principal contains the primary key used for the identification of employees (for example, employee number).

- `isCallerInRole`, which the enterprise bean code can use to allow the bean provider/application developer to code the security checks that cannot be easily defined using method permissions. Such a check might impose a role-based limit on a request, or it might depend on information stored in the database.

The enterprise bean code can use the `isCallerInRole` method to test whether the current caller has been assigned to a given security role. Security roles are defined by the bean provider or the application assembler and are assigned by the deployer to principals or principal groups that exist in the operational environment.

The following code sample illustrates the use of the `isCallerInRole` method:

```
@Stateless public class PayrollBean implements Payroll {
    @Resource SessionContext ctx;

    public void updateEmployeeInfo(EmplInfo info) {

        oldInfo = ... read from database;

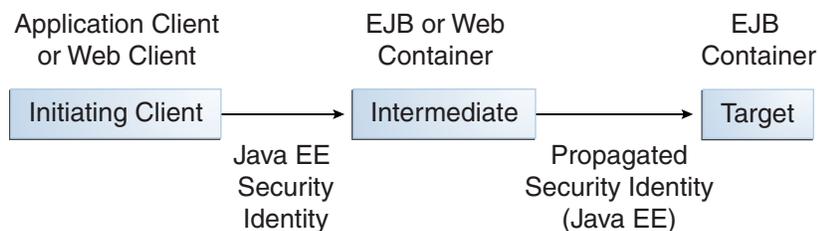
        // The salary field can be changed only by callers
        // who have the security role "payroll"
        if (info.salary != oldInfo.salary &&
            !ctx.isCallerInRole("payroll")) {
            throw new SecurityException(...);
        }
        ...
    }
    ...
}
```

You would use programmatic security in this way to dynamically control access to a method, for example, when you want to deny access except during a particular time of day. An example application that uses the `getCallerPrincipal` and `isCallerInRole` methods is described in [The converter-secure Example: Securing an Enterprise Bean with Programmatic Security](#).

46.2.3 Propagating a Security Identity (Run-As)

You can specify whether a caller's security identity should be used for the execution of specified methods of an enterprise bean or whether a specific run-as identity should be used. [Figure 46–2](#) illustrates this concept.

Figure 46–2 Security Identity Propagation



In this illustration, an application client is making a call to an enterprise bean method in one EJB container. This enterprise bean method, in turn, makes a call to an

enterprise bean method in another container. The security identity during the first call is the identity of the caller. The security identity during the second call can be any of the following options.

- By default, the identity of the caller of the intermediate component is propagated to the target enterprise bean. This technique is used when the target container trusts the intermediate container.
- A *specific* identity is propagated to the target enterprise bean. This technique is used when the target container expects access using a specific identity.

To propagate an identity to the target enterprise bean, configure a run-as identity for the bean, as described in [Configuring a Component's Propagated Security Identity](#). Establishing a run-as identity for an enterprise bean does not affect the identities of its callers, which are the identities tested for permission to access the methods of the enterprise bean. The run-as identity establishes the identity that the enterprise bean will use when it makes calls.

The run-as identity applies to the enterprise bean as a whole, including all the methods of the enterprise bean's business interface, local and remote interfaces, component interface, and web service endpoint interfaces, the message listener methods of a message-driven bean, the timeout method of an enterprise bean, and all internal methods of the bean that might be called in turn.

46.2.3.1 Configuring a Component's Propagated Security Identity

You can configure an enterprise bean's run-as, or propagated, security identity by using the `@RunAs` annotation, which defines the role of the application during execution in a Java EE container. The annotation can be specified on a class, allowing developers to execute an application under a particular role. The role must map to the user/group information in the container's security realm. The `@RunAs` annotation specifies the name of a security role as its parameter.

Here is some example code that demonstrates the use of the `@RunAs` annotation.

```
@RunAs("Admin")
public class Calculator {
    //...
}
```

You will have to map the run-as role name to a given principal defined on the GlassFish Server if the given roles are associated with more than one user principal.

46.2.3.2 Trust between Containers

When an enterprise bean is designed so that either the original caller identity or a designated identity is used to call a target bean, the target bean will receive the propagated identity only. The target bean will not receive any authentication data.

There is no way for the target container to authenticate the propagated security identity. However, because the security identity is used in authorization checks (for example, method permissions or with the `isCallerInRole` method), it is vitally important that the security identity be authentic. Because no authentication data is available to authenticate the propagated identity, the target must trust that the calling container has propagated an authenticated security identity.

By default, the GlassFish Server is configured to trust identities that are propagated from different containers. Therefore, you do not need to take any special steps to set up a trust relationship.

46.2.4 Deploying Secure Enterprise Beans

The deployer is responsible for ensuring that an assembled application is secure after it has been deployed in the target operational environment. If a security view has been provided to the deployer through the use of security annotations and/or a deployment descriptor, the security view is mapped to the mechanisms and policies used by the security domain in the target operational environment, which in this case is the GlassFish Server. If no security view is provided, the deployer must set up the appropriate security policy for the enterprise bean application.

Deployment information is specific to a web or application server.

46.3 Examples: Securing Enterprise Beans

The following examples show how to secure enterprise beans using declarative and programmatic security.

46.3.1 The cart-secure Example: Securing an Enterprise Bean with Declarative Security

This section discusses how to configure an enterprise bean for basic user name/password authentication. When a bean that is constrained in this way is requested, the server requests a user name and password from the client and verifies that the user name and password are valid by comparing them against a database of authorized users on the GlassFish Server.

If the topic of authentication is new to you, see [Specifying Authentication Mechanisms](#).

This example demonstrates security by starting with the unsecured enterprise bean application, `cart`, which is found in the `tut-install/examples/ejb/cart/` directory and is discussed in [The cart Example](#).

In general, the following steps are necessary to add user name/password authentication to an existing application that contains an enterprise bean. In the example application included with this tutorial, these steps have been completed for you and are listed here simply to show what needs to be done should you wish to create a similar application.

1. Create an application like the one in [The cart Example](#). The example in this tutorial starts with this example and demonstrates adding basic authentication of the client to this application. The example application discussed in this section can be found at `tut-install/examples/security/cart-secure/`.
2. If you have not already done so, complete the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#) to configure your system for running the tutorial applications.
3. Modify the source code for the enterprise bean, `CartBean.java`, to specify which roles are authorized to access which protected methods. This step is discussed in [Annotating the Bean](#).
4. Build, package, and deploy the enterprise bean; then build and run the client application by following the steps in [To Run the cart-secure Example Using NetBeans IDE](#) or [To Run the cart-secure Example Using Maven](#).

46.3.1.1 Annotating the Bean

The source code for the original `cart` application was modified as shown in the following code snippet (modifications in **bold**). The resulting file can be found in the file

tut-install/examples/security/cart-secure/cart-secure-ejb/src/main/java/javaeetutorial/cart/ejb/CartBean.java.

The code snippet is as follows:

```
package cart.ejb;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import javaeetutorial.cart.util.BookException;
import javaeetutorial.cart.util.IdVerifier;
import javax.ejb.Remove;
import javax.ejb.Stateful;
import javax.annotation.security.DeclareRoles;
import javax.annotation.security.RolesAllowed;

@Stateful
@DeclareRoles("TutorialUser")
public class CartBean implements Cart {
    List<String> contents;
    String customerId;
    String customerName;

    @Override
    public void initialize(String person) throws BookException {
        if (person == null) {
            throw new BookException("Null person not allowed.");
        } else {
            customerName = person;
        }

        customerId = "0";
        contents = new ArrayList<>();
    }

    @Override
    public void initialize(
        String person,
        String id) throws BookException {
        if (person == null) {
            throw new BookException("Null person not allowed.");
        } else {
            customerName = person;
        }

        IdVerifier idChecker = new IdVerifier();

        if (idChecker.validate(id)) {
            customerId = id;
        } else {
            throw new BookException("Invalid id: " + id);
        }

        contents = new ArrayList<>();
    }

    @Override
    @RolesAllowed("TutorialUser")
    public void addBook(String title) {
        contents.add(title);
    }
}
```

```
@Override
@RolesAllowed("TutorialUser")
public void removeBook(String title) throws BookException {
    boolean result = contents.remove(title);

    if (result == false) {
        throw new BookException "\"" + title + "\" not in cart.");
    }
}

@Override
@RolesAllowed("TutorialUser")
public List<String> getContents() {
    return contents;
}

@Override
@Remove()
@RolesAllowed("TutorialUser")
public void remove() {
    contents = null;
}
}
```

The `@RolesAllowed` annotation is specified on methods for which you want to restrict access. In this example, only users in the role of `TutorialUser` will be allowed to add and remove books from the cart and to list the contents of the cart. A `@RolesAllowed` annotation implicitly declares a role that will be referenced in the application; therefore, no `@DeclareRoles` annotation is required. The presence of the `@RolesAllowed` annotation also implicitly declares that authentication will be required for a user to access these methods. If no authentication method is specified in the deployment descriptor, the type of authentication will be user name/password authentication.

46.3.1.2 To Run the cart-secure Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. Follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
3. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/security/
```

4. Select the `cart-secure` folder.
5. Select the **Open Required Projects** check box.
6. Click **Open Project**.
7. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `cart-secure` project and select **Build**.

This step builds and packages the application into `cart-secure.ear`, located in the `cart-secure-ear/target` directory, and deploys this EAR file to your GlassFish Server instance, retrieves the client stubs, and runs the client.

8. In the **Login for user:** dialog box, enter the user name and password of a file realm user created on the GlassFish Server and assigned to the group `TutorialUser`; then click **OK**.

If the user name and password you enter are authenticated, the output of the application client appears in the **Output** tab:

```
...
Retrieving book title from cart: Infinite Jest
Retrieving book title from cart: Bel Canto
Retrieving book title from cart: Kafka on the Shore
Removing "Gravity's Rainbow" from cart.
Caught a BookException: "Gravity's Rainbow" not in cart.
Java Result: 1
...
```

If the user name and password are not authenticated, the dialog box reappears until you enter correct values.

46.3.1.3 To Run the cart-secure Example Using Maven

1. Follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).

2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/security/cart-secure/
```

3. To build the application, package it into an EAR file in the `cart-secure-ear/target` subdirectory, deploy it, and run it, enter the following command at the terminal window or command prompt:

```
mvn install
```

4. In the **Login for user:** dialog box, enter the user name and password of a file realm user created on the GlassFish Server and assigned to the group `TutorialUser`; then click **OK**.

If the user name and password you enter are authenticated, the output of the application client appears in the **Output** tab:

```
...
Retrieving book title from cart: Infinite Jest
Retrieving book title from cart: Bel Canto
Retrieving book title from cart: Kafka on the Shore
Removing "Gravity's Rainbow" from cart.
Caught a BookException: "Gravity's Rainbow" not in cart.
Java Result: 1
...
```

If the user name and password are not authenticated, the dialog box reappears until you enter correct values.

46.3.2 The converter-secure Example: Securing an Enterprise Bean with Programmatic Security

This example demonstrates how to use the `getCallerPrincipal` and `isCallerInRole` methods with an enterprise bean. This example starts with a very simple EJB application, `converter`, and modifies the methods of the `ConverterBean` so that currency conversion will occur only when the requester is in the role of `TutorialUser`.

The completed version of this example can be found in the `tut-install/preflinebreakexamples/security/converter-secure` directory. This example is based on the unsecured enterprise bean application, `converter`, which is discussed in [Chapter 27, "Getting Started with Enterprise Beans"](#) and is found in the `tut-install/examples/ejb/converter/` directory. This section builds on the example by

adding the necessary elements to secure the application by using the `getCallerPrincipal` and `isCallerInRole` methods, which are discussed in more detail in [Accessing an Enterprise Bean Caller's Security Context](#).

In general, the following steps are necessary when using the `getCallerPrincipal` and `isCallerInRole` methods with an enterprise bean. In the example application included with this tutorial, many of these steps have been completed for you and are listed here simply to show what needs to be done should you wish to create a similar application.

1. Create a simple enterprise bean application.
2. Set up a user on the GlassFish Server in the `file` realm, in the group `TutorialUser`, and set up default principal to role mapping. To do this, follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).
3. Modify the bean to add the `getCallerPrincipal` and `isCallerInRole` methods.
4. If the application contains a web client that is a servlet, specify security for the servlet, as described in [Specifying Security for Basic Authentication Using Annotations](#).
5. Build, package, deploy, and run the application.

46.3.2.1 Modifying ConverterBean

The source code for the original `ConverterBean` class was modified to add the `if..else` clause that tests whether the caller is in the role of `TutorialUser`. If the user is in the correct role, the currency conversion is computed and displayed. If the user is not in the correct role, the computation is not performed, and the application displays the result as 0. The code example can be found in `tut-install/examples/security/converter-secure/converter-secure-ejb/src/main/java/javaeetutorial/converter/ejb/ConverterBean.java`.

The code snippet (with modifications shown in **bold**) is as follows:

```
package converter.ejb;

import java.math.BigDecimal;
import java.security.Principal;
import javax.ejb.Stateless;
import javax.annotation.Resource;
import javax.ejb.SessionContext;
import javax.annotation.security.DeclareRoles;
import javax.annotation.security.RolesAllowed;

@Stateless()
@DeclareRoles("TutorialUser")
public class ConverterBean{

    @Resource SessionContext ctx;
    private BigDecimal yenRate = new BigDecimal("89.5094");
    private BigDecimal euroRate = new BigDecimal("0.0081");

    @RolesAllowed("TutorialUser")
    public BigDecimal dollarToYen(BigDecimal dollars) {
        BigDecimal result = new BigDecimal("0.0");
        Principal callerPrincipal = ctx.getCallerPrincipal();
        if (ctx.isCallerInRole("TutorialUser")) {
            result = dollars.multiply(yenRate);
            return result.setScale(2, BigDecimal.ROUND_UP);
        } else {
```

```

        return result.setScale(2, BigDecimal.ROUND_UP);
    }
}

@RolesAllowed("TutorialUser")
public BigDecimal yenToEuro(BigDecimal yen) {
    BigDecimal result = new BigDecimal("0.0");
    Principal callerPrincipal = ctx.getCallerPrincipal();
    if (ctx.isCallerInRole("TutorialUser")) {
        result = yen.multiply(euroRate);
        return result.setScale(2, BigDecimal.ROUND_UP);
    } else {
        return result.setScale(2, BigDecimal.ROUND_UP);
    }
}
}
}

```

46.3.2.2 Modifying ConverterServlet

The following annotations specify security for the converter web client, ConverterServlet:

```

@WebServlet(name = "ConverterServlet", urlPatterns = {"/"})
@ServletSecurity(
    @HttpConstraint(transportGuarantee = TransportGuarantee.CONFIDENTIAL,
        rolesAllowed = {"TutorialUser"}))

```

46.3.2.3 To Run the converter-secure Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. Follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
3. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/security/
```
4. Select the converter-secure folder.
5. Click **Open Project**.
6. Right-click the converter-secure project and select **Run**.

This command builds and deploys the example application to your GlassFish Server instance, then opens it in a browser.

46.3.2.4 To Run the converter-secure Example Using Maven

1. Follow the steps in [To Set Up Your System for Running the Security Examples](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:


```
tut-install/examples/security/converter-secure/
```

3. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, converter-secure.war, that is located in the target directory, and deploys the WAR file.

46.3.2.5 To Run the converter-secure Example

1. Open a web browser to the following URL:

`http://localhost:8080/converter-secure`

An Authentication Required dialog box appears.

2. Enter a user name and password combination that corresponds to a user who has already been created in the `file` realm of the GlassFish Server and has been assigned to the group of `TutorialUser`; then click **OK**.
3. Enter `100` in the input field and click **Submit**.

A second page appears, showing the converted values.

Java EE Security: Advanced Topics

This chapter provides advanced information on securing Java EE applications.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Working with Digital Certificates](#)
- [Authentication Mechanisms](#)
- [Using Form-Based Login in JavaServer Faces Web Applications](#)
- [Using the JDBC Realm for User Authentication](#)
- [Securing HTTP Resources](#)
- [Securing Application Clients](#)
- [Securing Enterprise Information Systems Applications](#)
- [Configuring Security Using Deployment Descriptors](#)
- [Further Information about Security](#)

47.1 Working with Digital Certificates

Digital certificates for the GlassFish Server have already been generated and can be found in the directory *domain-dir/config/*. These digital certificates are self-signed and are intended for use in a development environment; they are not intended for production purposes. For production purposes, generate your own certificates and have them signed by a Certificate Authority (CA).

To use the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), an application or web server must have an associated certificate for each external interface, or IP address, that accepts secure connections. The theory behind this design is that a server should provide some kind of reasonable assurance that its owner is who you think it is, particularly before receiving any sensitive information. It may be useful to think of a certificate as a "digital driver's license" for an Internet address. The certificate states with which company the site is associated, along with some basic contact information about the site owner or administrator.

The digital certificate is cryptographically signed by its owner and is difficult for anyone else to forge. For sites involved in e-commerce or in any other business transaction in which authentication of identity is important, a certificate can be purchased from a well-known CA such as VeriSign or Thawte. If your server certificate is self-signed, you must install it in the GlassFish Server keystore file (*keystore.jks*). If your client certificate is self-signed, you should install it in the GlassFish Server truststore file (*cacerts.jks*).

Sometimes, authentication is not really a concern. For example, an administrator might simply want to ensure that data being transmitted and received by the server is private and cannot be snooped by anyone eavesdropping on the connection. In such cases, you can save the time and expense involved in obtaining a CA certificate and simply use a self-signed certificate.

SSL uses **public-key cryptography**, which is based on key pairs. **Key pairs** contain one public key and one private key. Data encrypted with one key can be decrypted only with the other key of the pair. This property is fundamental to establishing trust and privacy in transactions. For example, using SSL, the server computes a value and encrypts it by using its private key. The encrypted value is called a **digital signature**. The client decrypts the encrypted value by using the server's public key and compares the value to its own computed value. If the two values match, the client can trust that the signature is authentic, because only the private key could have been used to produce such a signature.

Digital certificates are used with HTTPS to authenticate web clients. The HTTPS service of most web servers will not run unless a digital certificate has been installed. Use the procedure outlined in the next section, [Creating a Server Certificate](#), to set up a digital certificate that can be used by your application or web server to enable SSL.

One tool that can be used to set up a digital certificate is `keytool`, a key and certificate management utility that ships with the JDK. This tool enables users to administer their own public/private key pairs and associated certificates for use in self-authentication, whereby the user authenticates himself or herself to other users or services, or data integrity and authentication services, using digital signatures. The tool also allows users to cache the public keys, in the form of certificates, of their communicating peers.

For a better understanding of `keytool` and public-key cryptography, see [Further Information about Security](#) for a link to the `keytool` documentation.

47.1.1 Creating a Server Certificate

A server certificate has already been created for the GlassFish Server and can be found in the `domain-dir/config/` directory. The server certificate is in `keystore.jks`. The `cacerts.jks` file contains all the trusted certificates, including client certificates.

If necessary, you can use `keytool` to generate certificates. The `keytool` utility stores the keys and certificates in a file termed a **keystore**, a repository of certificates used for identifying a client or a server. Typically, a keystore is a file that contains one client's or one server's identity. The keystore protects private keys by using a password.

If you don't specify a directory when specifying the keystore file name, the keystores are created in the directory from which the `keytool` command is run. This can be the directory where the application resides, or it can be a directory common to many applications.

The general steps for creating a server certificate are as follows.

1. Create the keystore.
2. Export the certificate from the keystore.
3. Sign the certificate.
4. Import the certificate into a **truststore**: a repository of certificates used for verifying the certificates. A truststore typically contains more than one certificate.

The next section provides specific information on using the `keytool` utility to perform these steps.

47.1.1.1 To Use keytool to Create a Server Certificate

Run `keytool` to generate a new key pair in the default development keystore file, `keystore.jks`. This example uses the alias `server-alias` to generate a new public/private key pair and wrap the public key into a self-signed certificate inside `keystore.jks`. The key pair is generated by using an algorithm of type `RSA`, with a default password of `changeit`. For more information and other examples of creating and managing keystore files, read the `keytool` documentation.

Note: RSA is public-key encryption technology developed by RSA Data Security, Inc.

From the directory in which you want to create the key pair, run `keytool` as shown in the following steps.

1. Generate the server certificate.

Enter the `keytool` command all on one line:

```
java-home/bin/keytool -genkey -alias server-alias -keyalg RSA
-keypass changeit -storepass changeit -keystore keystore.jks
```

When you press **Enter**, `keytool` prompts you to enter the server name, organizational unit, organization, locality, state, and country code.

You must enter the server name in response to `keytool`'s first prompt, in which it asks for first and last names. For testing purposes, this can be `localhost`.

When you run the example applications, the host (server name) specified in the keystore must match the host identified in the `javaee.server.name` property specified in the `tut-install/examples/bp-project/build.properties` file (by default, this is `localhost`).

2. Export the generated server certificate in `keystore.jks` into the file `server.cer`.

Enter the `keytool` command all on one line:

```
java-home/bin/keytool -export -alias server-alias -storepass changeit
-file server.cer -keystore keystore.jks
```

3. If you want to have the certificate signed by a CA, read the example in the `keytool` documentation.
4. To add the server certificate to the truststore file, `cacerts.jks`, run `keytool` from the directory where you created the keystore and server certificate.

Use the following parameters:

```
java-home/bin/keytool -import -v -trustcacerts -alias server-alias
-file server.cer -keystore cacerts.jks -keypass changeit
-storepass changeit
```

Information on the certificate, such as that shown next, will appear:

```
Owner: CN=localhost, OU=My Company, O=Software, L=Santa Clara, ST=CA, C=US
Issuer: CN=localhost, OU=My Company, O=Software, L=Santa Clara, ST=CA, C=US
Serial number: 3e932169
```

```
Valid from: Mon Nov 26 18:15:47 EST 2012 until: Sun Feb 24 18:15:47 EST 2013
```

Certificate fingerprints:

```
MD5: 52:9F:49:68:ED:78:6F:39:87:F3:98:B3:6A:6B:0F:90
```

```
SHA1: EE:2E:2A:A6:9E:03:9A:3A:1C:17:4A:28:5E:97:20:78:3F:
```

```
SHA256: 80:05:EC:7E:50:50:5D:AA:A3:53:F1:11:9B:19:EB:0D:20:67:C1:12:
```

```
AF:42:EC:CD:66:8C:BD:99:AD:D9:76:95
    Signature algorithm name: SHA256withRSA
    Version: 3
    ...
Trust this certificate? [no]:
```

5. Enter *yes*, then press the **Enter** or **Return** key.

The following information appears:

```
Certificate was added to keystore
[Storing cacerts.jks]
```

47.1.2 Adding Users to the Certificate Realm

In the `certificate` realm, user identity is set up in the GlassFish Server security context and populated with user data obtained from cryptographically verified client certificates. For step-by-step instructions for creating this type of certificate, see [Working with Digital Certificates](#).

47.1.3 Using a Different Server Certificate with the GlassFish Server

Follow the steps in [Creating a Server Certificate](#) to create your own server certificate, have it signed by a CA, and import the certificate into `keystore.jks`.

Make sure that when you create the certificate, you follow these rules:

- When you create the server certificate, `keytool` prompts you to enter your first and last name. In response to this prompt, you must enter the name of your server. For testing purposes, this can be `localhost`.
- The server/host specified in the keystore must match the host identified in the `javaee.server.name` property specified in the `tut-install/examples/bp-project/build.properties` file for running the example applications.
- Your key/certificate password in `keystore.jks` should match the password of your keystore, `keystore.jks`. This is a bug. If there is a mismatch, the Java SDK cannot read the certificate and you get a "tampered" message.
- If you want to replace the existing `keystore.jks`, you must either change your keystore's password to the default password (`changeit`) or change the default password to your keystore's password.

47.1.3.1 To Specify a Different Server Certificate

To specify that the GlassFish Server should use the new keystore for authentication and authorization decisions, you must set the JVM options for the GlassFish Server so that they recognize the new keystore. To use a different keystore from the one provided for development purposes, follow these steps.

1. Start the GlassFish Server if you haven't already done so. Information on starting the GlassFish Server can be found in [Starting and Stopping the GlassFish Server](#).
2. Open the GlassFish Server Administration Console in a web browser at `http://localhost:4848`.
3. Expand **Configurations**, then expand **server-config**, then click **JVM Settings**.
4. Click the **JVM Options** tab.

5. Change the following JVM options so that they point to the location and name of the new keystore. The current settings are shown below:

```
-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStore=${com.sun.aas.instanceRoot}/config/keystore.jks
-Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=${com.sun.aas.instanceRoot}/config/cacerts.jks
```

6. If you've changed the keystore password from its default value, you need to add the password option as well:

```
-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=your-new-password
```

7. Click **Save**, then restart GlassFish Server.

47.2 Authentication Mechanisms

This section discusses the client authentication and mutual authentication mechanisms.

47.2.1 Client Authentication

With **client authentication**, the web server authenticates the client by using the client's public key certificate. Client authentication is a more secure method of authentication than either basic or form-based authentication. It uses HTTP over SSL (HTTPS), in which the server authenticates the client using the client's public key certificate. SSL technology provides data encryption, server authentication, message integrity, and optional client authentication for a TCP/IP connection. You can think of a public key certificate as the digital equivalent of a passport. The certificate is issued by a trusted organization, a certificate authority (CA), and provides identification for the bearer.

Before using client authentication, make sure the client has a valid public key certificate. For more information on creating and using public key certificates, read [Working with Digital Certificates](#).

The following example shows how to declare client authentication in your deployment descriptor:

```
<login-config>
  <auth-method>CLIENT-CERT</auth-method>
</login-config>
```

47.2.2 Mutual Authentication

With **mutual authentication**, the server and the client authenticate each other. Mutual authentication is of two types:

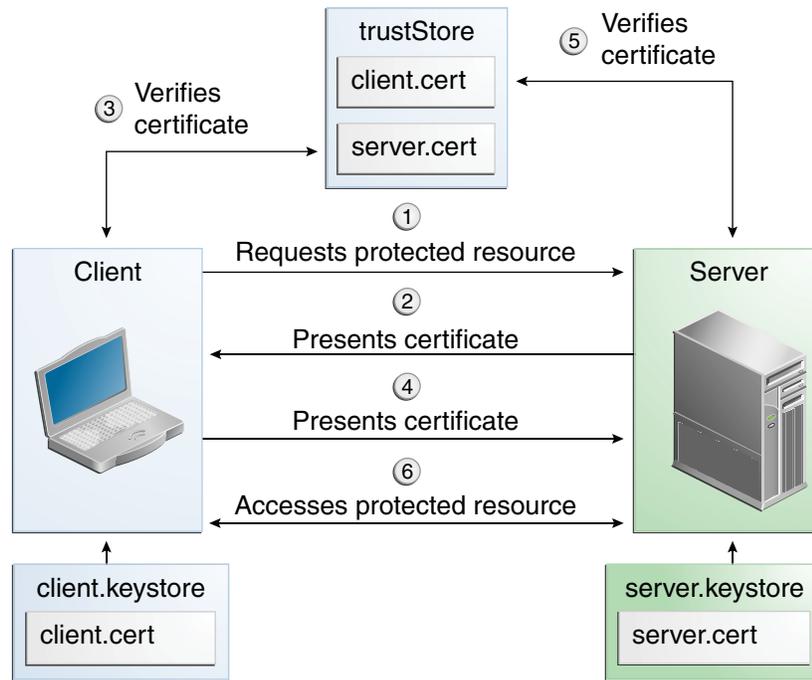
- Certificate-based (see [Figure 47-1](#))
- User name/password-based (see [Figure 47-2](#))

When using certificate-based mutual authentication, the following actions occur.

1. A client requests access to a protected resource.
2. The web server presents its certificate to the client.
3. The client verifies the server's certificate.
4. If successful, the client sends its certificate to the server.
5. The server verifies the client's credentials.
6. If successful, the server grants access to the protected resource requested by the client.

Figure 47–1 shows what occurs during certificate-based mutual authentication.

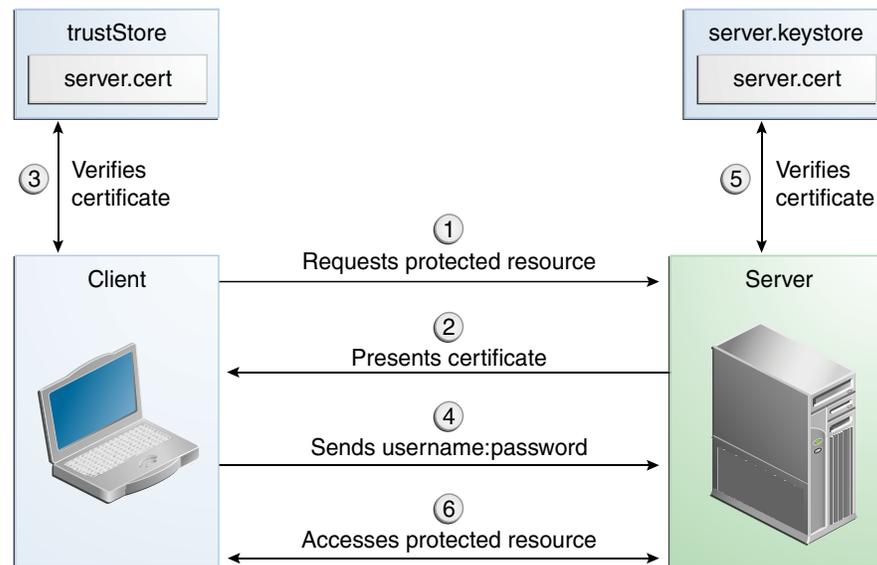
Figure 47–1 Certificate-Based Mutual Authentication



In user name/password-based mutual authentication, the following actions occur.

1. A client requests access to a protected resource.
2. The web server presents its certificate to the client.
3. The client verifies the server's certificate.
4. If successful, the client sends its user name and password to the server.
5. The server verifies the client's credentials
6. If the verification is successful, the server grants access to the protected resource requested by the client.

Figure 47–2 shows what occurs during user name/password-based mutual authentication.

Figure 47-2 User Name/Password-Based Mutual Authentication

47.2.2.1 Enabling Mutual Authentication over SSL

This section discusses setting up client-side authentication. Enabling both server-side and client-side authentication is called mutual, or two-way, authentication. In client authentication, clients are required to submit certificates issued by a certificate authority that you choose to accept.

There are at least two ways to enable mutual authentication over SSL:

- The preferred method is to set the method of authentication in the `web.xml` application deployment descriptor to `CLIENT-CERT`. This enforces mutual authentication by modifying the deployment descriptor of the given application. In this way, client authentication is enabled only for a specific resource controlled by the security constraint, and the check is performed only when the application requires client authentication.
- A less commonly used method is to set the `clientAuth` property in the certificate realm to `true` if you want the SSL stack to require a valid certificate chain from the client before accepting a connection. A `false` value (which is the default) will not require a certificate chain unless the client requests a resource protected by a security constraint that uses `CLIENT-CERT` authentication. When you enable client authentication by setting the `clientAuth` property to `true`, client authentication will be required for all the requests going through the specified SSL port. If you turn `clientAuth` on, it is on all of the time, which can severely degrade performance.

When client authentication is enabled in both of these ways, client authentication will be performed twice.

47.2.2.2 Creating a Client Certificate for Mutual Authentication

If you have a certificate signed by a trusted Certificate Authority (CA) such as Verisign, and the GlassFish Server `cacerts.jks` file already contains a certificate verified by that CA, you do not need to complete this step. You need to install your certificate in the GlassFish Server certificate file only when your certificate is self-signed.

From the directory where you want to create the client certificate, run `keytool` as outlined here. When you press Enter, `keytool` prompts you to enter the server name, organizational unit, organization, locality, state, and country code.

You must enter the server name in response to `keytool`'s first prompt, in which it asks for first and last names. For testing purposes, this can be `localhost`. The host specified in the keystore must match the host identified in the `javee.server.host` variable specified in your `tut-install/examples/bp-project/build.properties` file. If this example is to verify mutual authentication and you receive a runtime error stating that the HTTPS host name is wrong, re-create the client certificate, being sure to use the same host name you will use when running the example. For example, if your machine name is `duke`, then enter `duke` as the certificate CN or when prompted for first and last names. When accessing the application, enter a URL that points to the same location (for example, `https://duke:8181/mutualauth/hello`). This is necessary because during SSL handshake, the server verifies the client certificate by comparing the certificate name to the host name from which it originates.

To create a keystore named `client_keystore.jks` that contains a client certificate named `client.cer`, follow these steps:

1. Create a backup copy of the server truststore file. To do this,
 - a. Change to the directory containing the server's keystore and truststore files, `domain-dir\config`.
 - b. Copy `cacerts.jks` to `cacerts.backup.jks`.
 - c. Copy `keystore.jks` to `keystore.backup.jks`.

Do not put client certificates in the `cacerts.jks` file. Any certificate you add to the `cacerts` file effectively can be a trusted root for any and all certificate chains. After you have completed development, delete the development version of the `cacerts` file and replace it with the original copy.

2. Generate the client certificate. Enter the following command from the directory where you want to generate the client certificate:

```
java-home\bin\keytool -genkey -alias client-alias -keyalg RSA
-keypass changeit -storepass changeit -keystore client_keystore.jks
```

3. Export the generated client certificate into the file `client.cer`.

```
java-home\bin\keytool -export -alias client-alias -storepass changeit
-file client.cer -keystore client_keystore.jks
```

4. Add the certificate to the truststore file `domain-dir/config/cacerts.jks`. Run `keytool` from the directory where you created the keystore and client certificate. Use the following parameters:

```
java-home\bin\keytool -import -v -trustcacerts -alias client-alias
-file client.cer -keystore domain-dir/config/cacerts.jks
-keypass changeit -storepass changeit
```

The `keytool` utility returns a message like this one:

```
Owner: CN=localhost, OU=My Company, O=Software, L=Santa Clara, ST=CA, C=US
Issuer: CN=localhost, OU=My Company, O=Software, L=Santa Clara, ST=CA, C=US
Serial number: 3e39e66a
Valid from: Tue Nov 27 12:22:47 EST 2012 until: Mon Feb 25 12:22:47 EST 2013
Certificate fingerprints:
    MD5: 5A:B0:4C:88:4E:F8:EF:E9:E5:8B:53:BD:D0:AA:8E:5A
    SHA1:90:00:36:5B:E0:A7:A2:BD:67:DB:EA:37:B9:61:3E:26:B3:89:46:32
Signature algorithm name: SHA1withRSA
```

```

Version: 3
Trust this certificate? [no]: yes
Certificate was added to keystore
[Storing cacerts.jks]

```

5. Restart the GlassFish Server.

47.3 Using Form-Based Login in JavaServer Faces Web Applications

This section describes strategies for implementing form-based login in JavaServer Faces applications.

47.3.1 Using `j_security_check` in JavaServer Faces Forms

The most common way of authenticating a user in web applications is through a login form. As described in [Form-Based Authentication](#), Java EE security defines the `j_security_check` action for login forms. This allows the web container to authenticate users from many different web application resources. Facelets forms, using the `h:form`, `h:inputText`, and `h:inputSecret` tags, however, generate the action and input IDs automatically, which means developers are unable to specify `j_security_check` as the form action, nor can they set the user name and password input field IDs to `j_username` and `j_password`, respectively.

Using standard HTML form tags allows developers to specify the correct action and input IDs for the form.

```

<form action="j_security_check" method="POST">
  <input type="text" name="j_username" />
  <input type="secret" name="j_password" />
  ...
</form>

```

This form, however, doesn't have access to the features of a JavaServer Faces application, such as automatic localization of strings and the use of templating to define the look and feel of the pages. A mix of standard HTML and Facelets tags allows developers to use, for example, localized strings for the input field labels while still ensuring the form uses standard Java EE security:

```

<form action="j_security_check" method="POST">
  <h:outputLabel for="j_username">
    #{bundle['login.username']}:
  </h:outputLabel>
  <input type="text" name="j_username" />

  <h:outputLabel for="j_password">
    #{bundle['login.password']}:
  </h:outputLabel>
  <input type="secret" name="j_password" />

  <input type="submit" value="#{bundle['login.submit']}" />
</form>

```

47.3.2 Using a Managed Bean for Authentication in JavaServer Faces Applications

A managed bean can authenticate users of a JavaServer Faces application, which allows regular Facelets form tags to be used instead of a mix of standard HTML and Facelets tags. In this case, the managed bean defines `login` and `logout` methods, and Facelets forms call these methods in the `action` attribute. The managed bean's

methods call the `javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest.login` and `HttpServletRequest.logout` methods to manage user authentication.

In the following managed bean, a stateless session bean uses the user credentials passed to the `login` method to authenticate the user and resets the caller identity of the request when the `logout` method is called.

```
@Stateless
@Named
public class LoginBean {
    private String username;
    private String password;

    public String getUsername() {
        return this.username;
    }

    public void setUserName(String username) {
        this.username = username;
    }

    public String getPassword() {
        return this.password;
    }

    public void setPassword(String password) {
        this.password = password;
    }

    ...

    public String login () {
        FacesContext context = FacesContext.getCurrentInstance();
        HttpServletRequest request = (HttpServletRequest)
            context.getExternalContext().getRequest();
        try {
            request.login(this.username, this.password);
        } catch (ServletException e) {
            ...
            context.addMessage(null, new FacesMessage("Login failed."));
            return "error";
        }
        return "admin/index";
    }

    public void logout() {
        FacesContext context = FacesContext.getCurrentInstance();
        HttpServletRequest request = (HttpServletRequest)
            context.getExternalContext().getRequest();
        try {
            request.logout();
        } catch (ServletException e) {
            ...
            context.addMessage(null, new FacesMessage("Logout failed."));
        }
    }
}
```

The Facelets form then calls these methods for user login and logout.

```
<h:form>
```

```

<h:outputLabel for="usernameInput">
    #{bundle['login.username']}:
</h:outputLabel>
<h:inputText id="usernameInput" value="#{loginBean.username}"
    required="true" />

<br />
<h:outputLabel for="passwordInput">
    #{bundle['login.password']}:
</h:outputLabel>
<h:inputSecret id="passwordInput" value="#{loginBean.password}"
    required="true" />

<br />
<h:commandButton value="{bundle['login.submit']}"
    action="#{loginBean.login}" />
</h:form>

```

47.4 Using the JDBC Realm for User Authentication

An authentication realm, sometimes called a *security policy domain* or *security domain*, is a scope over which an application server defines and enforces a common security policy. A realm contains a collection of users, who may or may not be assigned to a group. GlassFish Server comes preconfigured with the file, certificate, and administration realms. An administrator can also set up LDAP, JDBC, digest, or custom realms.

An application can specify in its deployment descriptor which realm to use. If the application does not specify a realm, GlassFish Server uses its default realm, the file realm. If an application specifies that a JDBC realm is to be used for user authentication, GlassFish Server will retrieve user credentials from a database. The application server uses the database information and the enabled JDBC realm option in the configuration file.

A database provides an easy way to add, edit, or delete users at runtime and enables users to create their own accounts without any administrative assistance. Using a database also has an additional benefit, providing a place to securely store any extra user information. A realm can be thought of as a database of user names and passwords that identify valid users of a web application or set of web applications with an enumeration of the list of roles associated with each valid user. Access to specific web application resources is granted to all users in a particular role, instead of enumerating a list of associated users. A user name can have any number of roles associated with it.

47.4.1 To Configure a JDBC Authentication Realm

GlassFish Server enables administrators to specify a user's credentials (user name and password) in the JDBC realm instead of in the connection pool. This prevents other applications from browsing the database tables for user credentials. By default, storing passwords as clear text is not supported in the JDBC realm. Under normal circumstances, passwords should not be stored as clear text.

1. Create the database tables in which user credentials for the realm will be stored.
2. Add user credentials to the database tables you created.
3. Create a JDBC connection pool for the database.

You can use the Administration Console or the command line to create a connection pool.

4. Create a JDBC resource for the database.

You can use the Administration Console or the command line to create a JDBC resource.

5. Create a realm.

This step needs to associate the resource with the realm, define the tables and columns for users and groups used for authentication, and define the digest algorithm that will be used for storing passwords in the database.

You can use the Administration Console or the command line to create a realm.

6. Modify the deployment descriptor for your application to specify the JDBC realm:

- For an enterprise application in an EAR file, modify the `glassfish-application.xml` file.
- For a web application in a WAR file, modify the `web.xml` file.
- For an enterprise bean in an EJB JAR file, modify the `glassfish-ejb-jar.xml` file.

For example, for a hypothetical application, the `web.xml` file could specify the `jdbcRealm` realm, as follows:

```
<login-config>
  <auth-method>FORM</auth-method>
  <realm-name>jdbcRealm</realm-name>
  <form-login-config>
    <form-login-page>/login.xhtml</form-login-page>
    <form-error-page>/login.xhtml</form-error-page>
  </form-login-config>
</login-config>
<security-constraint>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>Secure Pages</web-resource-name>
    <description/>
    <url-pattern>/admin/*</url-pattern>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <role-name>ADMINS</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
</security-constraint>
```

Form-based login is specified for all web pages under `/admin`. Access to those pages will be allowed only to users in the `ADMINS` role.

7. Assign security roles to users or groups of users in the realm.

To assign a security role to a group or to a user, add a `security-role-mapping` element to the application server-specific deployment descriptor, in this case `glassfish-web.xml`:

```
<security-role-mapping>
  <role-name>USERS</role-name>
  <group-name>USERS</group-name>
</security-role-mapping>
<security-role-mapping>
  <role-name>ADMINS</role-name>
  <group-name>ADMINS</group-name>
</security-role-mapping>
```

Since GlassFish Server users are assigned to groups during the user creation process, this is more efficient than mapping security roles to individual users.

47.5 Securing HTTP Resources

When a request URI is matched by multiple constrained URL patterns, the constraints that apply to the request are those that are associated with the best matching URL pattern. The servlet matching rules defined in Chapter 12, "Mapping Requests To Servlets," in the Java Servlet 3.1 Specification, are used to determine the best matching URL pattern to the request URI. No protection requirements apply to a request URI that is not matched by a constrained URL pattern. The HTTP method of the request plays no role in selecting the best matching URL pattern for a request.

When HTTP methods are listed within a constraint definition, the protections defined by the constraint are applied to the listed methods only.

When HTTP methods are not listed within a constraint definition,, the protections defined by the constraint apply to the complete set of HTTP methods, including HTTP extension methods.

When constraints with different protection requirements apply to the same combination of URL patterns and HTTP methods, the rules for combining the protection requirements are as defined in Section 13.8.1, "Combining Constraints," in the Java Servlet 3.1 Specification.

Follow these guidelines to properly secure a web application:

- Do not list HTTP methods within constraint definitions. This is the simplest way to ensure that you are not leaving HTTP methods unprotected. For example:

```
<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT #1 -->
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>Do not enumerate Http Methods</display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <url-pattern>/company/*</url-pattern>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <role-name>sales</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
</security-constraint>
```

If you list methods in a constraint, all non-listed methods of the effectively infinite set of possible HTTP methods, including extension methods, will be *unprotected*. The following example shows a constraint that lists the GET method and thus defines no protection on any of the other possible HTTP methods. Do not use such a constraint unless you are certain that this is the protection scheme you intend to define.

```
<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT #2 -->
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>
    Protect GET only, leave all other methods unprotected
  </display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <url-pattern>/company/*</url-pattern>
    <http-method>GET</http-method>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <role-name>sales</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
</security-constraint>
```

- If you need to apply specific types of protection to specific HTTP methods, make sure you define constraints to cover every method that you want to permit, with

or without constraint, at the corresponding URL patterns. If there are any methods that you do not want to permit, you must also create a constraint that denies access to those methods at the same patterns; for an example, see security constraint #5 in the next bullet.

For example, to permit GET and POST, where POST requires authentication and GET is permitted without constraint, you could define the following constraints:

```
<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT #3 -->
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>Allow unprotected GET</display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <url-pattern>/company/*</url-pattern>
    <http-method>GET</http-method>
  </web-resource-collection>
</security-constraint>

<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT #4 -->
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>Require authentication for POST</display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <url-pattern>/company/*</url-pattern>
    <http-method>POST</http-method>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <role-name>sales</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
</security-constraint>
```

- The simplest way to ensure that you deny all HTTP methods except those that you want to be permitted is to use `http-method-omission` elements to omit those HTTP methods from the security constraint, and also to define an `auth-constraint` that names no roles. The security constraint will apply to all methods except those that were named in the omissions, and the constraint will apply only to the resources matched by the patterns in the constraint.

For example, the following constraint excludes access to all methods except GET and POST at the resources matched by the pattern `/company/*`:

```
<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT #5 -->
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>Deny all HTTP methods except GET and POST</display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <url-pattern>/company/*</url-pattern>
    <http-method-omission>GET</http-method-omission>
    <http-method-omission>POST</http-method-omission>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint/>
</security-constraint>
```

If you want to extend these exclusions to the unconstrained parts of your application, also include the URL pattern `/` (forward slash):

```
<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT #6 -->
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>Deny all HTTP methods except GET and POST</display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <url-pattern>/company/*</url-pattern>
    <url-pattern>/</url-pattern>
    <http-method-omission>GET</http-method-omission>
    <http-method-omission>POST</http-method-omission>
```

```

    </web-resource-collection>
    <auth-constraint/>
</security-constraint>

```

- If, for your web application, you do not want any resource to be accessible unless you explicitly define a constraint that permits access to it, you can define an `auth-constraint` that names no roles and associate it with the URL pattern `/`. The URL pattern `/` is the weakest matching pattern. Do not list any HTTP methods in this constraint.

```

<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT #7 -->
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>
    Switch from Constraint to Permission model
    (where everything is denied by default)
  </display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <url-pattern>/</url-pattern>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint/>
</security-constraint>

```

47.6 Securing Application Clients

The Java EE authentication requirements for application clients are the same as for other Java EE components, and the same authentication techniques can be used as for other Java EE application components. No authentication is necessary when accessing unprotected web resources.

When accessing protected web resources, the usual varieties of authentication can be used: HTTP basic authentication, HTTP login-form authentication, or SSL client authentication. [Specifying an Authentication Mechanism in the Deployment Descriptor](#) describes how to specify HTTP basic authentication and HTTP login-form authentication. [Client Authentication](#) describes how to specify SSL client authentication.

Authentication is required when accessing protected enterprise beans. The authentication mechanisms for enterprise beans are discussed in [Securing Enterprise Beans](#).

An application client makes use of an authentication service provided by the application client container for authenticating its users. The container's service can be integrated with the native platform's authentication system so that a single sign-on capability is used. The container can authenticate the user either when the application is started or when a protected resource is accessed.

An application client can provide a class, called a **login module**, to gather authentication data. If so, the `javax.security.auth.callback.CallbackHandler` interface must be implemented, and the class name must be specified in its deployment descriptor. The application's callback handler must fully support `Callback` objects specified in the `javax.security.auth.callback` package.

47.6.1 Using Login Modules

An application client can use the Java Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS) to create login modules for authentication. A JAAS-based application implements the `javax.security.auth.callback.CallbackHandler` interface so that it can interact with users to enter specific authentication data, such as user names or passwords, or to display error and warning messages.

Applications implement the `CallbackHandler` interface and pass it to the login context, which forwards it directly to the underlying login modules. A login module uses the callback handler both to gather input, such as a password or smart card PIN, from users and to supply information, such as status information, to users. Because the application specifies the callback handler, an underlying login module can remain independent of the various ways applications interact with users.

For example, the implementation of a callback handler for a GUI application might display a window to solicit user input, or the implementation of a callback handler for a command-line tool might simply prompt the user for input directly from the command line.

The login module passes an array of appropriate callbacks to the callback handler's `handle` method, such as a `NameCallback` for the user name and a `PasswordCallback` for the password; the callback handler performs the requested user interaction and sets appropriate values in the callbacks. For example, to process a `NameCallback`, the `CallbackHandler` might prompt for a name, retrieve the value from the user, and call the `setName` method of the `NameCallback` to store the name.

For more information on using JAAS for authentication in login modules, refer to the documentation listed in [Further Information about Security](#).

47.6.2 Using Programmatic Login

Programmatic login enables the client code to supply user credentials. If you are using an EJB client, you can use the `com.sun.appserv.security.ProgrammaticLogin` class with its convenient `login` and `logout` methods. Programmatic login is specific to a server.

47.7 Securing Enterprise Information Systems Applications

In Enterprise Information Systems (EIS) applications, components request a connection to an EIS resource. As part of this connection, the EIS can require a sign-on for the requester to access the resource. The application component provider has two choices for the design of the EIS sign-on:

- **Container-managed sign-on:** The application component lets the container take the responsibility of configuring and managing the EIS sign-on. The container determines the user name and password for establishing a connection to an EIS instance. For more information, see [Container-Managed Sign-On](#).
- **Component-managed sign-on:** The application component code manages EIS sign-on by including code that performs the sign-on process to an EIS. For more information, see [Component-Managed Sign-On](#).

You can also configure security for resource adapters. See [Configuring Resource Adapter Security](#).

47.7.1 Container-Managed Sign-On

In container-managed sign-on, an application component does not have to pass any sign-on security information to the `getConnection()` method. The security information is supplied by the container, as shown in the following example (the method call is highlighted in **bold**):

```
// Business method in an application component
Context initctx = new InitialContext();
// Perform JNDI lookup to obtain a connection factory
javax.resource.cci.ConnectionFactory cxf =
```

```

        (javax.resource.cci.ConnectionFactory)initctx.lookup(
            "java:comp/env/eis/MainframeCxFactory");
    // Invoke factory to obtain a connection. The security
    // information is not passed in the getConnection method
    javax.resource.cci.Connection cx = cxf.getConnection();
    ...

```

47.7.2 Component-Managed Sign-On

In component-managed sign-on, an application component is responsible for passing the needed sign-on security information for the resource to the `getConnection` method. For example, security information might be a user name and password, as shown here (the method call is highlighted in **bold**):

```

// Method in an application component
Context initctx = new InitialContext();

// Perform JNDI lookup to obtain a connection factory
javax.resource.cci.ConnectionFactory cxf =
    (javax.resource.cci.ConnectionFactory)initctx.lookup(
        "java:comp/env/eis/MainframeCxFactory");

// Get a new ConnectionSpec
com.myeis.ConnectionSpecImpl properties = //..

// Invoke factory to obtain a connection
properties.setUserName("...");
properties.setPassword("...");
javax.resource.cci.Connection cx =
    cxf.getConnection(properties);
...

```

47.7.3 Configuring Resource Adapter Security

A resource adapter is a system-level software component that typically implements network connectivity to an external resource manager. A resource adapter can extend the functionality of the Java EE platform either by implementing one of the Java EE standard service APIs, such as a JDBC driver, or by defining and implementing a resource adapter for a connector to an external application system. Resource adapters can also provide services that are entirely local, perhaps interacting with native resources. Resource adapters interface with the Java EE platform through the Java EE service provider interfaces (Java EE SPI). A resource adapter that uses the Java EE SPIs to attach to the Java EE platform will be able to work with all Java EE products.

To configure the security settings for a resource adapter, you need to edit the resource adapter descriptor file, `ra.xml`. Here is an example of the part of an `ra.xml` file that configures security properties for a resource adapter:

```

<authentication-mechanism>
  <authentication-mechanism-type>
    BasicPassword
  </authentication-mechanism-type>
  <credential-interface>
    javax.resource.spi.security.PasswordCredential
  </credential-interface>
</authentication-mechanism>
<reauthentication-support>>false</reauthentication-support>

```

You can find out more about the options for configuring resource adapter security by reviewing *as-install/lib/dtds/connector_1_0.dtd*. You can configure the following elements in the resource adapter deployment descriptor file:

- **Authentication mechanisms:** Use the `authentication-mechanism` element to specify an authentication mechanism supported by the resource adapter. This support is for the resource adapter, not for the underlying EIS instance.

There are two supported mechanism types:

- `BasicPassword`, which supports the following interface:

```
javax.resource.spi.security.PasswordCredential
```

- `Kerbv5`, which supports the following interface:

```
javax.resource.spi.security.GenericCredential
```

The GlassFish Server does not currently support this mechanism type.

- **Reauthentication support:** Use the `reauthentication-support` element to specify whether the resource adapter implementation supports reauthentication of existing `Managed-Connection` instances. Options are `true` or `false`.
- **Security permissions:** Use the `security-permission` element to specify a security permission that is required by the resource adapter code. Support for security permissions is optional and is not supported in the current release of the GlassFish Server. You can, however, manually update the `server.policy` file to add the relevant permissions for the resource adapter.

The security permissions listed in the deployment descriptor are different from those required by the default permission set as specified in the connector specification.

For more information on the implementation of the security permission specification, see the security policy file documentation listed in [Further Information about Security](#).

In addition to specifying resource adapter security in the `ra.xml` file, you can create a security map for a connector connection pool to map an application principal or a user group to a back-end EIS principal. The security map is usually used if one or more EIS back-end principals are used to execute operations (on the EIS) initiated by various principals or user groups in the application.

47.7.4 Mapping an Application Principal to EIS Principals

When using the GlassFish Server, you can use security maps to map the caller identity of the application (principal or user group) to a suitable EIS principal in container-managed transaction-based scenarios. When an application principal initiates a request to an EIS, the GlassFish Server first checks for an exact principal by using the security map defined for the connector connection pool to determine the mapped back-end EIS principal. If there is no exact match, the GlassFish Server uses the wildcard character specification, if any, to determine the mapped back-end EIS principal. Security maps are used when an application user needs to execute an EIS operation that requires execution as a specific identity in the EIS.

To work with security maps, use the Administration Console. From the Administration Console, follow these steps to get to the security maps page.

1. In the navigation tree, expand the **Resources** node.
2. Expand the **Connectors** node.

3. Select the **Connector Connection Pools** node.
4. On the Connector Connection Pools page, click the name of the connection pool for which you want to create a security map.
5. Click the **Security Maps** tab.
6. Click **New** to create a new security map for the connection pool.
7. Enter a name by which you will refer to the security map, as well as the other required information.

Click **Help** for more information on the individual options.

47.8 Configuring Security Using Deployment Descriptors

The recommended way to configure security in the Java EE 7 platform is with annotations. If you wish to override the security settings at deployment time, you can use security elements in the `web.xml` deployment descriptor to do so. This section describes how to use the deployment descriptor to specify basic authentication and to override default principal-to-role mapping.

47.8.1 Specifying Security for Basic Authentication in the Deployment Descriptor

The elements of the deployment descriptor that add basic authentication to an example tell the server or browser to perform the following tasks:

- Send a standard login dialog box to collect user name and password data
- Verify that the user is authorized to access the application
- If authorized, display the servlet to the user

The following sample code shows the security elements for a deployment descriptor that could be used in the example of basic authentication found in the `tut-install/examples/security/hello2_basicauth/` directory:

```
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>SecurityConstraint</display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>WRCollection</web-resource-name>
    <url-pattern>/greeting</url-pattern>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <role-name>TutorialUser</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
  <user-data-constraint>
    <transport-guarantee>CONFIDENTIAL</transport-guarantee>
  </user-data-constraint>
</security-constraint>
<login-config>
  <auth-method>BASIC</auth-method>
  <realm-name>file</realm-name>
</login-config>
<security-role>
  <role-name>TutorialUser</role-name>
</security-role>
```

This deployment descriptor specifies that the request URI `/greeting` can be accessed only by users who have entered their user names and passwords and have been authorized to access this URL because they have been verified to be in the role

TutorialUser. The user name and password data will be sent over a protected transport in order to keep it from being read in transit.

47.8.2 Specifying Non-Default Principal-to-Role Mapping in the Deployment Descriptor

To map a role name permitted by the application or module to principals (users) and groups defined on the server, use the `security-role-mapping` element in the runtime deployment descriptor file (`glassfish-application.xml`, `glassfish-web.xml`, or `glassfish-ejb-jar.xml`). The entry needs to declare a mapping between a security role used in the application and one or more groups or principals defined for the applicable realm of the GlassFish Server. An example for the `glassfish-web.xml` file is shown below:

```
<glassfish-web-app>
  <security-role-mapping>
    <role-name>DIRECTOR</role-name>
    <principal-name>schwartz</principal-name>
  </security-role-mapping>
  <security-role-mapping>
    <role-name>DEPT-ADMIN</role-name>
    <group-name>dept-admins</group-name>
  </security-role-mapping>
</glassfish-web-app>
```

The role name can be mapped to either a specific principal (user), a group, or both. The principal or group names referenced must be valid principals or groups in the current default realm of the GlassFish Server. The `role-name` in this example must exactly match the `role-name` in the `security-role` element of the corresponding `web.xml` file or the role name defined in the `@DeclareRoles` and/or `@RolesAllowed` annotations.

47.9 Further Information about Security

For more information about security, see:

- Documentation on the `keytool` command:
<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/technotes/tools/solaris/keytool.html>
- *Java Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS) Reference Guide*:
<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/technotes/guides/security/jaas/JAASRefGuide.html>
- *Java Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS): LoginModule Developer's Guide*:
<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/technotes/guides/security/jaas/JAASLMDevGuide.html>
- Documentation on security policy file syntax:
<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/technotes/guides/security/PolicyFiles.html#FileSyntax>

Part X

Java EE Supporting Technologies

Part X explores several technologies that support the Java EE platform. This part contains the following chapters:

- [Chapter 48, "Transactions"](#)
- [Chapter 49, "Resource Adapters and Contracts"](#)
- [Chapter 50, "The Resource Adapter Examples"](#)
- [Chapter 51, "Bean Validation: Advanced Topics"](#)
- [Chapter 52, "Using Java EE Interceptors"](#)
- [Chapter 53, "Batch Processing"](#)
- [Chapter 54, "Concurrency Utilities"](#)

A typical enterprise application accesses and stores information in one or more databases. Because this information is critical for business operations, it must be accurate, current, and reliable. Data integrity would be lost if multiple programs were allowed to update the same information simultaneously or if a system that failed while processing a business transaction were to leave the affected data only partially updated. By preventing both of these scenarios, software transactions ensure data integrity. Transactions control the concurrent access of data by multiple programs. In the event of a system failure, transactions make sure that after recovery, the data will be in a consistent state.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Transactions in Java EE Applications](#)
- [What Is a Transaction?](#)
- [Container-Managed Transactions](#)
- [Bean-Managed Transactions](#)
- [Transaction Timeouts](#)
- [Updating Multiple Databases](#)
- [Transactions in Web Components](#)
- [Further Information about Transactions](#)

48.1 Transactions in Java EE Applications

In a Java EE application, a transaction is a series of actions that must all complete successfully, or else all the changes in each action are backed out. Transactions end in either a commit or a rollback.

The Java Transaction API (JTA) allows applications to access transactions in a manner that is independent of specific implementations. JTA specifies standard Java interfaces between a transaction manager and the parties involved in a distributed transaction system: the transactional application, the Java EE server, and the manager that controls access to the shared resources affected by the transactions.

The JTA defines the `UserTransaction` interface that applications use to start, commit, or roll back transactions. Application components get a `UserTransaction` object through a JNDI lookup by using the name `java:comp/UserTransaction` or by requesting injection of a `UserTransaction` object. An application server uses a number of JTA-defined interfaces to communicate with a transaction manager; a transaction manager uses JTA-defined interfaces to interact with a resource manager.

The JTA 1.2 specification is available at
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=907>.

48.2 What Is a Transaction?

To emulate a business transaction, a program may need to perform several steps. A financial program, for example, might transfer funds from a checking account to a savings account by using the steps listed in the following pseudocode:

```
begin transaction
    debit checking account
    credit savings account
    update history log
commit transaction
```

Either all or none of the three steps must complete. Otherwise, data integrity is lost. Because the steps within a transaction are a unified whole, a **transaction** is often defined as an indivisible unit of work.

A transaction can end in two ways: with a commit or with a rollback. When a transaction commits, the data modifications made by its statements are saved. If a statement within a transaction fails, the transaction rolls back, undoing the effects of all statements in the transaction. In the pseudocode, for example, if a disk drive were to crash during the `credit` step, the transaction would roll back and undo the data modifications made by the `debit` statement. Although the transaction fails, data integrity would be intact because the accounts still balance.

In the preceding pseudocode, the `begin` and `commit` statements mark the boundaries of the transaction. When designing an enterprise bean, you determine how the boundaries are set by specifying either container-managed or bean-managed transactions.

48.3 Container-Managed Transactions

In an enterprise bean with **container-managed transaction demarcation**, the EJB container sets the boundaries of the transactions. You can use container-managed transactions with any type of enterprise bean: session or message-driven. Container-managed transactions simplify development because the enterprise bean code does not explicitly mark the transaction's boundaries. The code does not include statements that begin and end the transaction. By default, if no transaction demarcation is specified, enterprise beans use container-managed transaction demarcation.

Typically, the container begins a transaction immediately before an enterprise bean method starts and commits the transaction just before the method exits. Each method can be associated with a single transaction. Nested or multiple transactions are not allowed within a method.

Container-managed transactions do not require all methods to be associated with transactions. When developing a bean, you can set the transaction attributes to specify which of the bean's methods are associated with transactions.

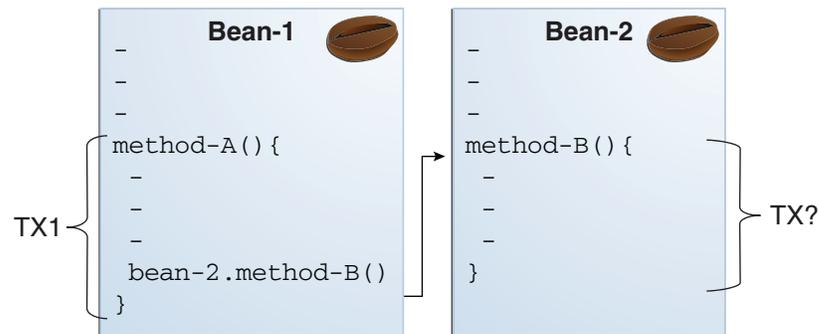
Enterprise beans that use container-managed transaction demarcation must not use any transaction-management methods that interfere with the container's transaction demarcation boundaries. Examples of such methods are the `commit`, `setAutoCommit`, and `rollback` methods of `java.sql.Connection` or the `commit` and `rollback` methods of `javax.jms.Session`. If you require control over the transaction demarcation, you must use application-managed transaction demarcation.

Enterprise beans that use container-managed transaction demarcation also must not use the `javax.transaction.UserTransaction` interface.

48.3.1 Transaction Attributes

A **transaction attribute** controls the scope of a transaction. [Figure 48–1](#) illustrates why controlling the scope is important. In the diagram, `method-A` begins a transaction and then invokes `method-B` of `Bean-2`. When `method-B` executes, does it run within the scope of the transaction started by `method-A`, or does it execute with a new transaction? The answer depends on the transaction attribute of `method-B`.

Figure 48–1 Transaction Scope



A transaction attribute can have one of the following values:

- Required
- RequiresNew
- Mandatory
- NotSupported
- Supports
- Never

48.3.1.1 Required Attribute

If the client is running within a transaction and invokes the enterprise bean's method, the method executes within the client's transaction. If the client is not associated with a transaction, the container starts a new transaction before running the method.

The `Required` attribute is the implicit transaction attribute for all enterprise bean methods running with container-managed transaction demarcation. You typically do not set the `Required` attribute unless you need to override another transaction attribute. Because transaction attributes are declarative, you can easily change them later.

48.3.1.2 RequiresNew Attribute

If the client is running within a transaction and invokes the enterprise bean's method, the container takes the following steps:

1. Suspends the client's transaction
2. Starts a new transaction
3. Delegates the call to the method

4. Resumes the client's transaction after the method completes

If the client is not associated with a transaction, the container starts a new transaction before running the method.

You should use the `RequiresNew` attribute when you want to ensure that the method always runs within a new transaction.

48.3.1.3 Mandatory Attribute

If the client is running within a transaction and invokes the enterprise bean's method, the method executes within the client's transaction. If the client is not associated with a transaction, the container throws a `TransactionRequiredException`.

Use the `Mandatory` attribute if the enterprise bean's method must use the transaction of the client.

48.3.1.4 NotSupported Attribute

If the client is running within a transaction and invokes the enterprise bean's method, the container suspends the client's transaction before invoking the method. After the method has completed, the container resumes the client's transaction.

If the client is not associated with a transaction, the container does not start a new transaction before running the method.

Use the `NotSupported` attribute for methods that don't need transactions. Because transactions involve overhead, this attribute may improve performance.

48.3.1.5 Supports Attribute

If the client is running within a transaction and invokes the enterprise bean's method, the method executes within the client's transaction. If the client is not associated with a transaction, the container does not start a new transaction before running the method.

Because the transactional behavior of the method may vary, you should use the `Supports` attribute with caution.

48.3.1.6 Never Attribute

If the client is running within a transaction and invokes the enterprise bean's method, the container throws a `RemoteException`. If the client is not associated with a transaction, the container does not start a new transaction before running the method.

48.3.1.7 Summary of Transaction Attributes

[Table 48–1](#) summarizes the effects of the transaction attributes. Both the T1 and the T2 transactions are controlled by the container. A T1 transaction is associated with the client that calls a method in the enterprise bean. In most cases, the client is another enterprise bean. A T2 transaction is started by the container just before the method executes.

In the last column of [Table 48–1](#), the word "None" means that the business method does not execute within a transaction controlled by the container. However, the database calls in such a business method might be controlled by the transaction manager of the database management system.

Table 48–1 *Transaction Attributes and Scope*

Transaction Attribute	Client's Transaction	Business Method's Transaction
Required	None	T2

Table 48–1 (Cont.) Transaction Attributes and Scope

Transaction Attribute	Client's Transaction	Business Method's Transaction
Required	T1	T1
RequiresNew	None	T2
RequiresNew	T1	T2
Mandatory	None	Error
Mandatory	T1	T1
NotSupported	None	None
NotSupported	T1	None
Supports	None	None
Supports	T1	T1
Never	None	None
Never	T1	Error

48.3.1.8 Setting Transaction Attributes

Transaction attributes are specified by decorating the enterprise bean class or method with a `javax.ejb.TransactionAttribute` annotation and setting it to one of the `javax.ejb.TransactionAttributeType` constants.

If you decorate the enterprise bean class with `@TransactionAttribute`, the specified `TransactionAttributeType` is applied to all the business methods in the class. Decorating a business method with `@TransactionAttribute` applies the `TransactionAttributeType` only to that method. If a `@TransactionAttribute` annotation decorates both the class and the method, the method `TransactionAttributeType` overrides the class `TransactionAttributeType`.

The `TransactionAttributeType` constants shown in [Table 48–2](#) encapsulate the transaction attributes described earlier in this section.

Table 48–2 TransactionAttributeType Constants

Transaction Attribute	TransactionAttributeType Constant
Required	<code>TransactionAttributeType.REQUIRED</code>
RequiresNew	<code>TransactionAttributeType.REQUIRES_NEW</code>
Mandatory	<code>TransactionAttributeType.MANDATORY</code>
NotSupported	<code>TransactionAttributeType.NOT_SUPPORTED</code>
Supports	<code>TransactionAttributeType.SUPPORTS</code>
Never	<code>TransactionAttributeType.NEVER</code>

The following code snippet demonstrates how to use the `@TransactionAttribute` annotation:

```
@TransactionAttribute(NOT_SUPPORTED)
@Stateful
public class TransactionBean implements Transaction {
    ...
    @TransactionAttribute(REQUIRES_NEW)
    public void firstMethod() {...}
}
```

```
@TransactionAttribute(REQUIRED)
public void secondMethod() {...}

public void thirdMethod() {...}

public void fourthMethod() {...}
}
```

In this example, the `TransactionBean` class's transaction attribute has been set to `NotSupported`, `firstMethod` has been set to `RequiresNew`, and `secondMethod` has been set to `Required`. Because a `@TransactionAttribute` set on a method overrides the class `@TransactionAttribute`, calls to `firstMethod` will create a new transaction, and calls to `secondMethod` will either run in the current transaction or start a new transaction. Calls to `thirdMethod` or `fourthMethod` do not take place within a transaction.

48.3.2 Rolling Back a Container-Managed Transaction

There are two ways to roll back a container-managed transaction. First, if a system exception is thrown, the container will automatically roll back the transaction. Second, by invoking the `setRollbackOnly` method of the `EJBContext` interface, the bean method instructs the container to roll back the transaction. If the bean throws an application exception, the rollback is not automatic but can be initiated by a call to `setRollbackOnly`.

48.3.3 Synchronizing a Session Bean's Instance Variables

The `SessionSynchronization` interface, which is optional, allows stateful session bean instances to receive transaction synchronization notifications. For example, you could synchronize the instance variables of an enterprise bean with their corresponding values in the database. The container invokes the `SessionSynchronization` methods (`afterBegin`, `beforeCompletion`, and `afterCompletion`) at each of the main stages of a transaction.

The `afterBegin` method informs the instance that a new transaction has begun. The container invokes `afterBegin` immediately before it invokes the business method.

The container invokes the `beforeCompletion` method after the business method has finished but just before the transaction commits. The `beforeCompletion` method is the last opportunity for the session bean to roll back the transaction (by calling `setRollbackOnly`).

The `afterCompletion` method indicates that the transaction has completed. This method has a single boolean parameter whose value is `true` if the transaction was committed and `false` if it was rolled back.

48.3.4 Methods Not Allowed in Container-Managed Transactions

You should not invoke any method that might interfere with the transaction boundaries set by the container. The list of prohibited methods follows:

- The `commit`, `setAutoCommit`, and `rollback` methods of `java.sql.Connection`
- The `getUserTransaction` method of `javax.ejb.EJBContext`
- Any method of `javax.transaction.UserTransaction`

You can, however, use these methods to set boundaries in application-managed transactions.

48.4 Bean-Managed Transactions

In **bean-managed transaction demarcation**, the code in the session or message-driven bean explicitly marks the boundaries of the transaction. Although beans with container-managed transactions require less coding, they have one limitation: When a method is executing, it can be associated with either a single transaction or no transaction at all. If this limitation will make coding your bean difficult, you should consider using bean-managed transactions.

The following pseudocode illustrates the kind of fine-grained control you can obtain with application-managed transactions. By checking various conditions, the pseudocode decides whether to start or stop certain transactions within the business method:

```
begin transaction
...
    update table-a
...
    if (condition-x)
        commit transaction
    else if (condition-y)
        update table-b
        commit transaction
    else
        rollback transaction
begin transaction
update table-c
commit transaction
```

When coding an application-managed transaction for session or message-driven beans, you must decide whether to use Java Database Connectivity or JTA transactions. The sections that follow discuss both types of transactions.

48.4.1 JTA Transactions

JTA, or the Java Transaction API, allows you to demarcate transactions in a manner that is independent of the transaction manager implementation. GlassFish Server implements the transaction manager with the Java Transaction Service (JTS). However, your code doesn't call the JTS methods directly but instead invokes the JTA methods, which then call the lower-level JTS routines.

A **JTA transaction** is controlled by the Java EE transaction manager. You may want to use a JTA transaction because it can span updates to multiple databases from different vendors. A particular DBMS's transaction manager may not work with heterogeneous databases. However, the Java EE transaction manager does have one limitation: It does not support nested transactions. In other words, it cannot start a transaction for an instance until the preceding transaction has ended.

To demarcate a JTA transaction, you invoke the `begin`, `commit`, and `rollback` methods of the `javax.transaction.UserTransaction` interface.

48.4.2 Returning without Committing

In a stateless session bean with bean-managed transactions, a business method must commit or roll back a transaction before returning. However, a stateful session bean does not have this restriction.

In a stateful session bean with a JTA transaction, the association between the bean instance and the transaction is retained across multiple client calls. Even if each

business method called by the client opens and closes the database connection, the association is retained until the instance completes the transaction.

In a stateful session bean with a JDBC transaction, the JDBC connection retains the association between the bean instance and the transaction across multiple calls. If the connection is closed, the association is not retained.

48.4.3 Methods Not Allowed in Bean-Managed Transactions

Do not invoke the `getRollbackOnly` and `setRollbackOnly` methods of the `EJBContext` interface in bean-managed transactions. These methods should be used only in container-managed transactions. For bean-managed transactions, invoke the `getStatus` and `rollback` methods of the `UserTransaction` interface.

48.5 Transaction Timeouts

For container-managed transactions, you can use the Administration Console to configure the transaction timeout interval. See [Starting the Administration Console](#).

For enterprise beans with bean-managed JTA transactions, you invoke the `setTransactionTimeout` method of the `UserTransaction` interface.

48.5.1 To Set a Transaction Timeout

1. In the Administration Console, expand the **Configurations** node, then expand the **server-config** node and select **Transaction Service**.
2. On the Transaction Service page, set the value of the **Transaction Timeout** field to the value of your choice (for example, 5).

With this setting, if the transaction has not completed within 5 seconds, the EJB container rolls it back.

The default value is 0, meaning that the transaction will not time out.

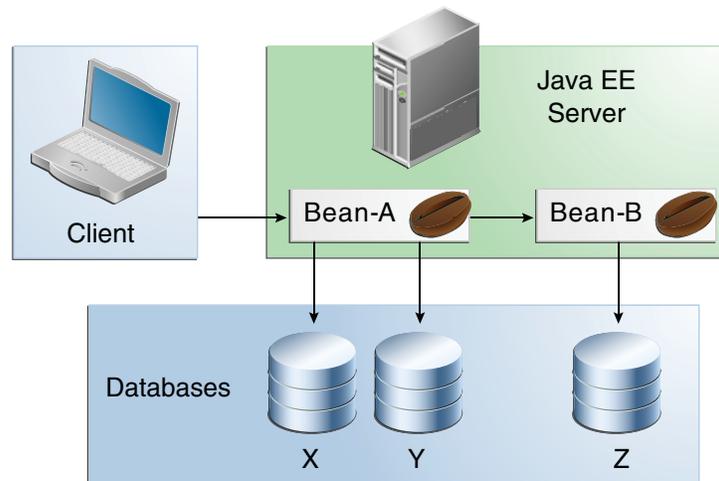
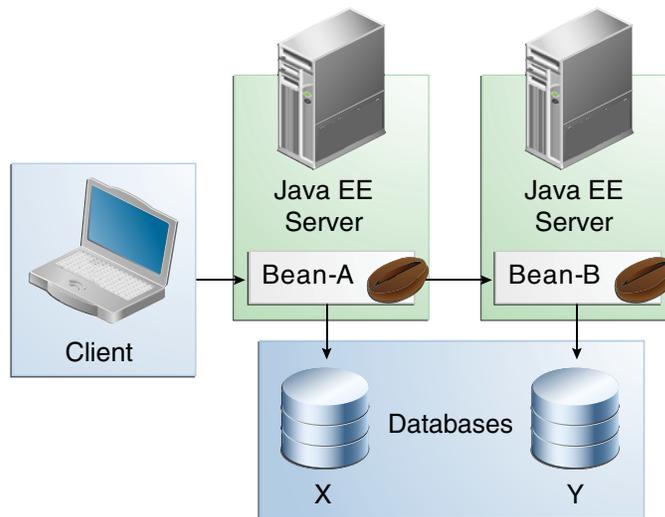
3. Click **Save**.

48.6 Updating Multiple Databases

The Java EE transaction manager controls all enterprise bean transactions except for bean-managed JDBC transactions. The Java EE transaction manager allows an enterprise bean to update multiple databases within a transaction. [Figure 48-2](#) and [Figure 48-3](#) show two scenarios for updating multiple databases in a single transaction.

In [Figure 48-2](#), the client invokes a business method in *Bean-A*. The business method begins a transaction, updates Database X, updates Database Y, and invokes a business method in *Bean-B*. The second business method updates Database Z and returns control to the business method in *Bean-A*, which commits the transaction. All three database updates occur in the same transaction.

In [Figure 48-3](#), the client calls a business method in *Bean-A*, which begins a transaction and updates Database X. Then *Bean-A* invokes a method in *Bean-B*, which resides in a remote Java EE server. The method in *Bean-B* updates Database Y. The transaction managers of the Java EE servers ensure that both databases are updated in the same transaction.

Figure 48-2 Updating Multiple Databases**Figure 48-3 Updating Multiple Databases across Java EE Servers**

48.7 Transactions in Web Components

You can demarcate a transaction in a web component by using either the `java.sql.Connection` or the `javax.transaction.UserTransaction` interface. These are the same interfaces that a session bean with bean-managed transactions can use. Transactions demarcated with the `UserTransaction` interface are discussed in [JTA Transactions](#).

48.8 Further Information about Transactions

For more information about transactions, see the Java Transaction API 1.1 specification at <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javaee/tech/jta-138684.html>.

Resource Adapters and Contracts

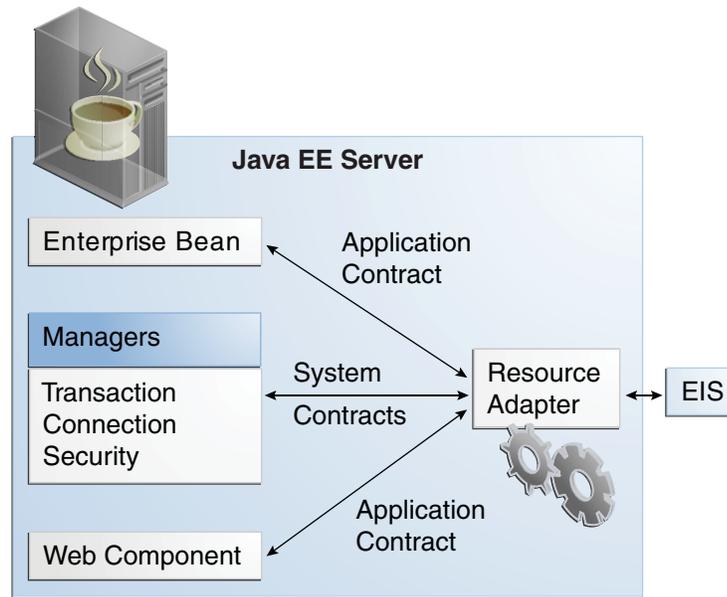
This chapter examines resource adapters and explains how communications between Java EE servers and EIS systems are mediated by them.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [What Is a Resource Adapter?](#)
- [Metadata Annotations](#)
- [Common Client Interface](#)
- [Using Resource Adapters With Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE \(CDI\)](#)
- [Further Information about Resource Adapters](#)

49.1 What Is a Resource Adapter?

A resource adapter is a Java EE component that implements the Java EE Connector Architecture for a specific EIS. Examples of EISs include enterprise resource planning, mainframe transaction processing, and database systems. In a Java EE server, the Java Message Server and JavaMail also act as EISs that you access using resource adapters. As illustrated in [Figure 49-1](#), the resource adapter facilitates communication between a Java EE application and an EIS.

Figure 49–1 Resource Adapters

Stored in a Resource Adapter Archive (RAR) file, a resource adapter can be deployed on any Java EE server, much like a Java EE application. A RAR file may be contained in an Enterprise Archive (EAR) file, or it may exist as a separate file.

A resource adapter is analogous to a JDBC driver. Both provide a standard API through which an application can access a resource that is outside the Java EE server. For a resource adapter, the target system is an EIS; for a JDBC driver, it is a DBMS. Resource adapters and JDBC drivers are rarely created by application developers. In most cases, both types of software are built by vendors that sell tools, servers, or integration software.

The resource adapter mediates communication between the Java EE server and the EIS by means of contracts. The application contract defines the API through which a Java EE component, such as an enterprise bean, accesses the EIS. This API is the only view that the component has of the EIS. The system contracts link the resource adapter to important services that are managed by the Java EE server. The resource adapter itself and its system contracts are transparent to the Java EE component.

49.1.1 Management Contracts

The Java EE Connector Architecture defines system contracts that enable resource adapter lifecycle and thread management.

49.1.1.1 Lifecycle Management

The Connector Architecture specifies a lifecycle management contract that allows an application server to manage the lifecycle of a resource adapter. This contract provides a mechanism for the application server to bootstrap a resource adapter instance during the deployment or application server startup. This contract also provides a means for the application server to notify the resource adapter instance when it is undeployed or when an orderly shutdown of the application server takes place.

49.1.1.2 Work Management Contract

The Connector Architecture work management contract ensures that resource adapters use threads in the proper, recommended manner. This contract also enables an application server to manage threads for resource adapters.

Resource adapters that improperly use threads can jeopardize the entire application server environment. For example, a resource adapter might create too many threads or might not properly release threads it has created. Poor thread handling inhibits application server shutdown and impacts the application server's performance because creating and destroying threads are expensive operations.

The work management contract establishes a means for the application server to pool and reuse threads, similar to pooling and reusing connections. By adhering to this contract, the resource adapter does not have to manage threads itself. Instead, the resource adapter has the application server create and provide needed threads. When it is finished with a given thread, the resource adapter returns the thread to the application server. The application server manages the thread, either returning it to a pool for later reuse or destroying it. Handling threads in this manner results in increased application server performance and more efficient use of resources.

In addition to moving thread management to the application server, the Connector Architecture provides a flexible model for a resource adapter that uses threads.

- The requesting thread can choose to block (stop its own execution) until the work thread completes.
- The requesting thread can block while it waits to get the work thread. When the application server provides a work thread, the requesting thread and the work thread execute in parallel.
- The resource adapter can opt to submit the work for the thread to a queue. The thread executes the work from the queue at some later point. The resource adapter continues its own execution from the point it submitted the work to the queue, no matter when the thread executes it.

With the latter two approaches, the submitting thread and the work thread may execute simultaneously or independently. For these approaches, the contract specifies a listener mechanism to notify the resource adapter that the thread has completed its operation. The resource adapter can also specify the execution context for the thread, and the work management contract controls the context in which the thread executes.

49.1.2 Generic Work Context Contract

The work management contract between the application server and a resource adapter enables a resource adapter to do a task, such as communicating with the EIS or delivering messages, by delivering `Work` instances for execution.

A generic work context contract enables a resource adapter to control the contexts in which the `Work` instances that it submits are executed by the application server's `WorkManager`. A generic work context mechanism also enables an application server to support message inflow and delivery schemes. It also provides a richer contextual `Work` execution environment to the resource adapter while still maintaining control over concurrent behavior in a managed environment.

The generic work context contract standardizes the transaction context and the security context.

49.1.3 Outbound and Inbound Contracts

The Connector Architecture defines the following outbound contracts, system-level contracts between an application server and an EIS that enable outbound connectivity to an EIS.

- The connection management contract supports connection pooling, a technique that enhances application performance and scalability. Connection pooling is transparent to the application, which simply obtains a connection to the EIS.
- The transaction management contract extends the connection management contract and provides support for management of both local and XA transactions.

A local transaction is limited in scope to a single EIS system, and the EIS resource manager itself manages such transaction. An XA transaction or global transaction can span multiple resource managers. This form of transaction requires transaction coordination by an external transaction manager, typically bundled with an application server. A transaction manager uses a two-phase commit protocol to manage a transaction that spans multiple resource managers or EISs, and uses one-phase commit optimization if only one resource manager is participating in an XA transaction.

- The security management contract provides mechanisms for authentication, authorization, and secure communication between a Java EE server and an EIS to protect the information in the EIS.

A work security map matches EIS identities to the application server domain's identities.

Inbound contracts are system contracts between a Java EE server and an EIS that enable inbound connectivity from the EIS: pluggability contracts for message providers and contracts for importing transactions.

49.2 Metadata Annotations

Java EE Connector Architecture provides a set of annotations to minimize the need for deployment descriptors.

- The `@Connector` annotation can be used by the resource adapter developer to specify that the JavaBeans component is a resource adapter JavaBeans component. This annotation is used for providing metadata about the capabilities of the resource adapter. Optionally, you can provide a JavaBeans component implementing the `ResourceAdapter` interface, as in the following example:

```
@Connector(
    displayName = "TrafficResourceAdapter",
    vendorName = "Java EE Tutorial",
    version = "7.0"
)
public class TrafficResourceAdapter implements ResourceAdapter,
                                             Serializable {
    ...
}
```

- The `@ConnectionDefinition` annotation defines a set of connection interfaces and classes pertaining to a particular connection type, as in the following example:

```
@ConnectionDefinition(
    connectionFactory = ConnectionFactory.class,
    connectionFactoryImpl = TradeConnectionFactory.class,
    connection = Connection.class,
```

```

        connectionImpl = TradeConnection.class
    )
    public class TradeManagedConnectionFactory ... {
        ...
    }

```

- The `@AdministeredObject` annotation designates a JavaBeans component as an administered object.
- The `@Activation` annotation contains configuration information pertaining to inbound connectivity from an EIS instance, as in the following example:

```

@Activation(
    messageListeners = { TrafficListener.class }
)
public class TrafficActivationSpec implements ActivationSpec,
    Serializable {
    ...
    @ConfigProperty()
    /* port to listen to requests from the EIS */
    private String port;
    ...
}

```

- The `@ConfigProperty` annotation can be used on JavaBeans components to provide additional configuration information that may be used by the deployer and resource adapter provider. The preceding example code shows several `@ConfigProperty` annotations.
- The `@ConnectionFactoryDefinition` annotation is a resource definition annotation that is used to define a connector connection factory and register it in JNDI under the name specified in the mandatory `name` annotation element. The mandatory `interfaceName` annotation element specifies the fully-qualified name of the connection factory interface class. The `transactionSupport` annotation element specifies the level of transaction support the connection factory needs to support. The `minPoolSize` and `maxPoolSize` annotation elements specify the minimum or maximum number of connections that should be allocated for a connection pool that backs this connection factory resource. Additional properties associated with the connection factory being defined can be specified through the `properties` element.

Since repeated annotations are not allowed, the `@ConnectionFactoryDefinitions` annotation acts as a container for multiple connector connection factory definitions. The `value` annotation element contains the multiple connector connection factory definitions.

- The `@AdministeredObjectDefinition` annotation is a resource definition annotation that is used to define an administered object and register it in JNDI under the name specified in the mandatory `name` annotation element. The mandatory fully-qualified name of the administered object's class must be indicated by the `className` element. Additional properties that must be configured in the administered object can be specified through the `properties` element.

Since repeated annotations are not allowed, the `@AdministeredObjectDefinitions` annotation acts as a container for multiple administered object definitions. The `value` annotation element contains the multiple administered object definitions.

The specification allows a resource adapter to be developed in mixed-mode form, that is the ability for a resource adapter developer to use both metadata annotations and

deployment descriptors in applications. An application assembler or deployer may use the deployment descriptor to override the metadata annotations specified by the resource adapter developer.

The deployment descriptor for a resource adapter, if present, is named `ra.xml`. The `metadata-complete` attribute defines whether the deployment descriptor for the resource adapter module is complete or whether the class files available to the module and packaged with the resource adapter need to be examined for annotations that specify deployment information.

For the complete list of annotations and JavaBeans components provided in the Java EE 7 platform, see the Java EE Connector Architecture 1.7 specification.

49.3 Common Client Interface

This section explains how components use the Connector Architecture Common Client Interface (CCI) API and a resource adapter to access data from an EIS. The CCI API defines a set of interfaces and classes whose methods allow a client to perform typical data access operations. The CCI interfaces and classes are as follows:

- `ConnectionFactory`: Provides an application component with a `Connection` instance to an EIS.
- `Connection`: Represents the connection to the underlying EIS.
- `ConnectionSpec`: Provides a means for an application component to pass connection-request-specific properties to the `ConnectionFactory` when making a connection request.
- `Interaction`: Provides a means for an application component to execute EIS functions, such as database stored procedures.
- `InteractionSpec`: Holds properties pertaining to an application component's interaction with an EIS.
- `Record`: The superinterface for the various kinds of record instances. Record instances can be `MappedRecord`, `IndexedRecord`, or `ResultSet` instances, all of which inherit from the `Record` interface.
- `RecordFactory`: Provides an application component with a `Record` instance.
- `IndexedRecord`: Represents an ordered collection of `Record` instances based on the `java.util.List` interface.

A client or application component that uses the CCI to interact with an underlying EIS does so in a prescribed manner. The component must establish a connection to the EIS's resource manager, and it does so using the `ConnectionFactory`. The `Connection` object represents the connection to the EIS and is used for subsequent interactions with the EIS.

The component performs its interactions with the EIS, such as accessing data from a specific table, using an `Interaction` object. The application component defines the `Interaction` object by using an `InteractionSpec` object. When it reads data from the EIS, such as from database tables, or writes to those tables, the application component does so by using a particular type of `Record` instance: a `MappedRecord`, an `IndexedRecord`, or a `ResultSet` instance.

Note, too, that a client application that relies on a CCI resource adapter is very much like any other Java EE client that uses enterprise bean methods.

49.4 Using Resource Adapters With Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI)

For details about CDI, see [Chapter 31, "Introduction to Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE"](#) and [Chapter 33, "Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE: Advanced Topics."](#)

Do not specify the following classes in the resource adapter as CDI managed beans (that is, do not inject them), because the behavior of these classes as CDI managed beans has not been portably defined:

- **Resource adapter beans:** These beans are classes that are annotated with the `javax.resource.spi.Connector` annotation or are declared as corresponding elements in the resource adapter deployment descriptor, `ra.xml`.
- **Managed connection factory beans:** These beans are classes that are annotated with the `javax.resource.spi.ConnectorDefinition` annotation or the `javax.resource.spi.ConnectorDefinitions` annotation or are declared as corresponding elements in `ra.xml`.
- **Activation specification beans:** These beans are classes that are annotated with the `javax.resource.spi.Activation` annotation or are declared as corresponding elements in `ra.xml`.
- **Administered object beans:** These beans are classes that are annotated with the `javax.resource.spi.AdministeredObject` annotation or are declared as corresponding elements in `ra.xml`.

Other types of classes in the resource adapter can be CDI managed beans and will behave in a portable manner.

49.5 Further Information about Resource Adapters

For more information about resource adapters and annotations, see

- Java EE 7 Platform Specification (JSR 342):
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=342>
- Java EE Connector Architecture 1.7 specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=322>
- EJB 3.2 specification:
<http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=345>
- Common Annotations for the Java Platform:
<http://www.jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=250>

The Resource Adapter Examples

This chapter describes two examples that show you how to use resource adapters and how to implement simple resource adapters. The `outboundconnector` example shows how to use the Common Client Interface (CCI) to connect to an EIS from a web application. The resource adapter in the `outboundconnector` example implements the outbound contract and the CCI. The `inboundconnector` example shows how to use a message-driven bean (MDB) to respond to requests coming from an EIS. The resource adapter in this example implements the inbound and work management contracts.

The following topics are addressed here:

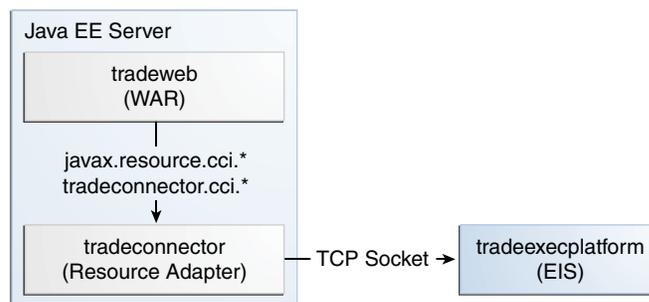
- [The `outboundconnector` Example](#)
- [The `inboundconnector` Example](#)

50.1 The `outboundconnector` Example

The `outboundconnector` example shows how to implement and use a simple outbound resource adapter that submits requests to a legacy EIS using a TCP socket. The example demonstrates the scenario in [Figure 50–1](#) and consists of the following modules:

- `tradeexecplatform` - A Java SE program that simulates a legacy EIS.
- `tradeweb` - A web application that uses the resource adapter.
- `tradeconnector` - The outbound resource adapter implementation.
- `tradeear` - An enterprise archive that contains the connector and the web application.

Figure 50–1 *The `outboundconnector` Example*



The `tradeexecplatform` module is an auxiliary project that resembles a legacy stock trading execution platform. It contains a Java SE program that listens for trading

requests in plain text on a TCP socket. The program replies to trading requests with a status value, a confirmation number, and the dollar amounts for the requested shares and fees. For example, a request-response pair would look like this:

```
>> BUY 1000 VZ MARKET
<< EXECUTED #1234567 TOTAL 50400.00 FEE 252.00
```

The `tradeweb` module is a web application with a JSF interface and a managed bean. This application enables users to submit trades to the EIS using the resource adapter provided by the `tradeconnector` module. The `tradeweb` module uses the Common Client Interface (CCI) implemented by the resource adapter to obtain connections to the EIS.

The `tradeconnector` module implements the outbound contract of the Java EE Connector Architecture to submit requests and obtain responses from the legacy stock trading execution platform (the EIS). The `tradeconnector` module also implements the Common Client Interface (CCI) to provide connection handlers for Java EE applications to use.

50.1.1 Using the Outbound Resource Adapter

In most cases, Java EE application developers use outbound resource adapters developed by a third party. Outbound resource adapters either implement the Common Client Interface or provide a custom interface for applications to interact with the EIS. Outbound resource adapters provide Java EE applications with the following elements:

- Connection factories
- Connection handles
- Other interfaces and objects specific to the EIS domain

Java EE applications obtain an instance of the connection factory via resource injection and then use the factory object to obtain connections to the EIS. The connection objects enable the application to make requests and obtain information from the EIS.

The `tradeconnector` module implements the CCI and provides applications with the additional classes listed in [Table 50–1](#).

Table 50–1 *Classes in the `tradeconnector.cci` package*

API Component	Description
<code>OrderRecord</code>	Implements the <code>Record</code> interface from the CCI. Represents a trade order for the EIS.
<code>ResponseRecord</code>	Implements the <code>Record</code> interface from the CCI. Represents a response from the EIS to a trade order.
<code>TradeInteractionSpec</code>	Implements the <code>InteractionSpec</code> interface from the CCI. Represents the only interaction provided by the EIS in this example (submitting trade orders).

The `ResourceAccessBean` managed bean in the `tradeweb` module configures a connection factory for the `tradeconnector` resource adapter using the `@ConnectionFactoryDefinition` annotation as follows:

```
@Named
@SessionScoped
@ConnectionFactoryDefinition(
    name = "java:comp/env/eis/TradeConnectionFactory",
    interfaceName = "javax.resource.cci.ConnectionFactory",
```

```

resourceAdapter = "#tradeconnector",
minPoolSize = 5,
transactionSupport = TransactionSupport.TransactionSupportLevel
                    .NoTransaction
)
public class ResourceAccessBean implements Serializable { ... }

```

The name parameter specifies the JNDI name for the connection factory. This example registers the connection factory in the `java:comp` scope. You can use the `ConnectionFactoryDefinition` annotation to specify a different scope, such as `java:global`, `java:app`, and `java:module`. The `AdministeredObjectDefinition` annotation also enables you to register administered connector objects in the JNDI namespace.

The `interfaceName` parameter specifies the interface implemented by the connection factory.

The `resourceAdapter` parameter specifies the name of the resource adapter that contains the connection factory implementation. The `#` prefix in `#tradeconnector` indicates that `tradeconnector` is an embedded resource adapter that is bundled in the same EAR as this web application.

Note: You can also configure a connection factory for a deployed outbound resource adapter using the administration commands from your application server. However, this is a vendor-specific procedure.

The managed bean obtains a connection factory object using resource injection as follows:

```

...
public class ResourceAccessBean implements Serializable {
    @Resource(lookup = "java:comp/env/eis/TradeConnectionFactory")
    private ConnectionFactory connectionFactory;
    ...
}

```

The managed bean uses the connection factory to obtain connection handles as follows:

```
Connection connection = connectionFactory.getConnection();
```

The resource adapter returns a connection handle associated with a physical connection to the EIS. Once a connection handle is available, the managed bean submits a trade and obtains the response as follows:

```

OrderRecord order = new OrderRecord();
order.setNShares(1000);
order.setTicker("VZ");
order.setOrderType(OrderRecord.OrderType.BUY);
order.setOrderClass(OrderRecord.OrderClass.MARKET);

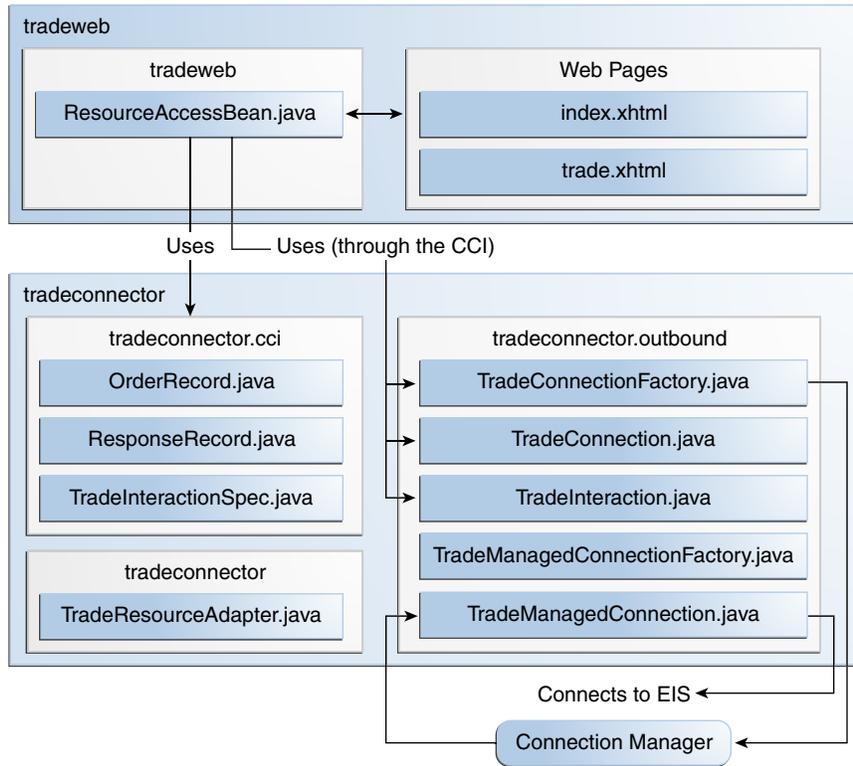
Interaction interaction = connection.createInteraction();
InteractionSpec interSpec = new TradeInteractionSpec();
ResponseRecord response = (ResponseRecord) interaction.execute(interSpec,
                                                             order);

```

50.1.2 Implementing the Outbound Resource Adapter

The `tradeconnector` module implements the outbound resource adapter contract and the Common Client Interface from the Java EE Connector Architecture for the simple legacy stock trading platform EIS used in this example. The architecture of the outbound resource adapter is shown in [Figure 50–2](#).

Figure 50–2 Architecture of the outboundconnector Example



The `tradeconnector` module implements the interfaces listed in [Table 50–2](#).

Table 50–2 Interfaces implemented in the tradeconnector module

Package	Interface	Description
<code>javax.resource.spi</code>	<code>ResourceAdapter</code>	Defines the lifecycle methods of the resource adapter.
<code>javax.resource.spi</code>	<code>ManagedConnectionFactory</code>	Defines a connection factory that the connection manager from the application server uses to obtain physical connections to the EIS.
<code>javax.resource.spi</code>	<code>ManagedConnection</code>	Defines a physical connection to the EIS that can be managed by the connection manager.
<code>javax.resource.cci</code>	<code>ConnectionFactory</code>	Defines a connection factory that applications use to obtain connection handles.
<code>javax.resource.cci</code>	<code>Connection</code>	Defines a connection handle that applications use to interact with the EIS.

When the `tradeconnector` archive is deployed and a connection pool resource is configured as described in [Using the Outbound Resource Adapter](#), the application server creates `ConnectionFactory` objects that applications can obtain using resource injection. The `ConnectionFactory` implementation delegates creating connections to the connection manager provided by the application server.

The connection manager uses the `ManagedConnectionFactory` implementation to obtain physical connections to the EIS and maintains a pool of active physical connections. When an application requests a connection handle, the connection manager associates a connection from the pool with a new connection handle that the application can use. Connection pooling improves performance and simplifies resource adapter development.

For more details, see the code and the comments in the `tradeconnector` module.

50.1.3 Running the outboundconnector Example

This section describes how to run the `outboundconnector` example using NetBeans IDE and from the command line.

50.1.3.1 To Run the outboundconnector Example using NetBeans IDE

1. Start the GlassFish Server if it is not running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
3. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:


```
tut-install/examples/connectors/
```
4. Select the `outboundconnector` folder.
5. Click **Open Project**.
6. In the **Projects** tab, expand the `outboundconnector` node.
7. Right-click on the `tradeexecplatform` module and select **Open Project**.
8. If you are connected to the Internet using a proxy, expand the source packages of the `tradeexecplatform` project and specify your proxy settings in the `TradeExecServer.java` source file.
9. Right-click on the `tradeexecplatform` project and select **Run**.

The messages from the EIS appear on the Output tab:

```
Trade execution server listening on port 4004.
```
10. Right-click on the `outboundconnector` project and select **Build**.

This command packages the resource adapter and the web application in an EAR file and deploys it to the GlassFish server.
11. Open the following URL on a web browser:


```
http://localhost:8080/tradeweb
```

The web interface enables you to connect to the EIS and submit trades. The server log shows the requests from the web application and the call sequence that provides connection handles from the resource adapter.

50.1.3.2 To Run the outboundconnector Example from the Command Line

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).

2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/connectors/outboundconnector
```

3. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the resource adapter and the web application into an EAR archive and deploys it to the GlassFish server.

4. In the same terminal window, go into the `tradeexecplatform` directory.
5. If you are connected to the Internet using a proxy, edit the `TradeExecServer.java` source file to specify your proxy settings. This file is located in the `src/main/java/javaetutorial/tradeexecplatform` directory.
6. Enter the following command to run the trade execution platform:

```
mvn exec:java
```

The messages from the EIS appear on the terminal:

```
Trade execution server listening on port 4004.
```

7. Open the following URL on a web browser:

```
http://localhost:8080/tradeweb
```

The web interface enables you to connect to the EIS and submit trades. The server log shows the requests from the web application and the call sequence that provides connection handles from the resource adapter.

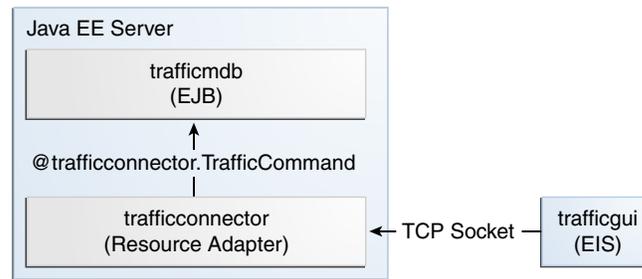
50.2 The inboundconnector Example

The `inboundconnector` example demonstrates how to implement and use a simple inbound resource adapter that accepts requests from a legacy EIS using a TCP socket.

The example is in the `tut-install/examples/connectors/inboundconnector` directory. See [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples,"](#) for basic information on building and running sample applications.

The example demonstrates the scenario in [Figure 50–3](#) and consists of the following modules:

- `trafficgui` - A Java SE program that simulates a legacy EIS.
- `tradeconnector` - The inbound resource adapter implementation.
- `trafficmdb` - A message-driven bean that is the endpoint for incoming messages.
- `trafficear` - An enterprise archive that contains the connector and MDB modules.

Figure 50–3 The inboundconnector Example

The `trafficgui` module is an auxiliary project that resembles a legacy traffic information system. It contains a Java SE program that submits traffic information requests in plain text over a TCP socket and displays the results on a graphical user interface. For example, a session between the information system and the socket server (implemented by the inbound resource adapter) would look like this:

```

>> LOCLIST
<< LOCATIONS SAN_JOSE SANTA_CLARA FREMONT
>> TIMETOLOC SAN_JOSE
<< TIME 18
>> TIMETOLOC SANTA_CLARA
<< TIME 15
>> TIMETOLOC FREMONT
>> TIME 11
  
```

In this example session the traffic information system (the EIS) requests a list of available locations, and then it requests the estimated transit time to each location.

The `trafficmdb` module contains a message-driven bean that activates the resource adapter with a configuration parameter (what port to listen on). The MDB also contains methods that provide the business logic to reply to the requests from the EIS.

The `trafficconnector` module implements the inbound contract of the Java EE Connector Architecture. This module listens for traffic information requests on the TCP port indicated by the configuration provided by the MDB and invokes the methods of the MDB to process the incoming requests. For example, when the EIS requests a list of locations using the `LOCLIST` command, the resource adapter invokes the `getLocationList()` method of the MDB.

50.2.1 Using the Inbound Resource Adapter

In most cases, Java EE application developers use inbound resource adapters developed by a third party. To use an inbound resource adapter, a Java EE application includes a message-driven bean with the following characteristics:

- The MDB implements the business interface defined by the resource adapter.
- The MDB specifies configuration parameters to activate the resource adapter.

The business interface defined by the resource adapter is not specified in the Java EE Connector Architecture; it is specific to the EIS.

The MDB in this example is defined as follows:

```

@MessageDriven(
    activationConfig = {
        @ActivationConfigProperty(propertyName = "port",
            propertyValue = "4008")
    }
)
  
```

```

)
public class TrafficMdb implements TrafficListener { ... }

```

The `TrafficListener` interface is defined in the API package of the resource adapter. The resource adapter requires the MDB to provide the `port` property.

When the MDB is deployed, it activates the `trafficconnector` resource adapter. When the resource adapter receives requests from the EIS, it invokes the methods of the MDB to obtain a response. Then the resource adapter sends the response to the EIS.

In this particular example, the `TrafficListener` interface is empty. In addition to this interface, the resource adapter provides the `TrafficCommand` annotation and uses reflection to discover which methods in the MDB are decorated with this annotation:

```

@MessageDriven(...)
public class TrafficMdb implements TrafficListener {

    @TrafficCommand(name="LOCLIST", info="Available locations")
    public String getLocationList() { ... }

    @TrafficCommand(name="TIMETOLOC", info="Time to location")
    public String getTimeToLocation(String loc) { ... }
}

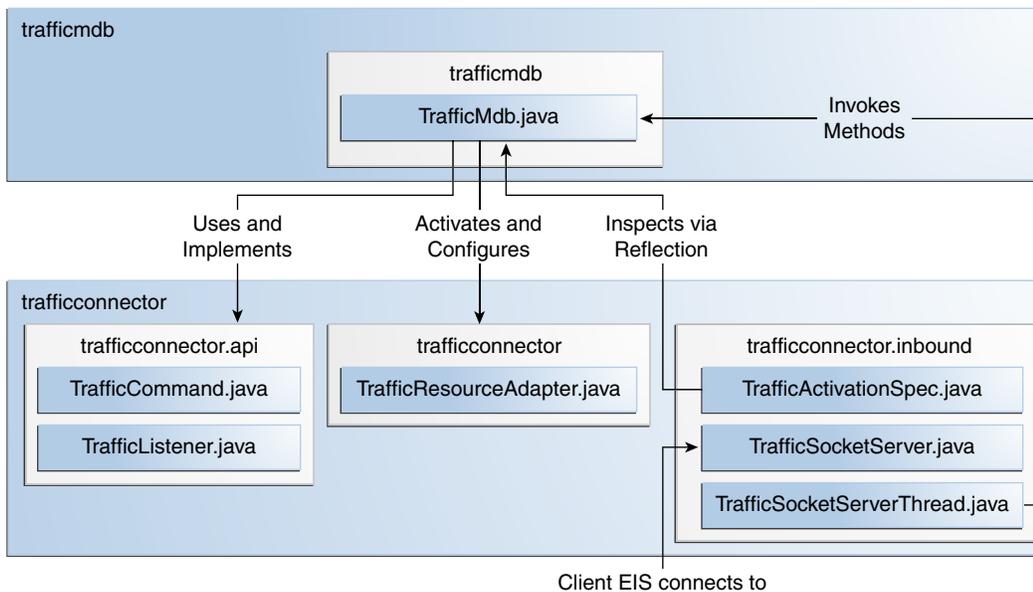
```

This approach enables you to adapt the MDB to support new features in the EIS without having to modify the `TrafficListener` interface or the resource adapter module.

50.2.2 Implementing the Inbound Resource Adapter

The `trafficconnector` module implements the inbound resource adapter contract from the Java EE Connector Architecture for the simple traffic information system (EIS) used in this example.

Figure 50–4 Architecture of the inboundconnector Example



The `trafficconnector` module implements the interfaces listed in [Table 50–3](#).

Table 50–3 Interfaces implemented in the trafficconnector module

Package	Interface	Description
javax.resource.spi	ResourceAdapter	Defines the lifecycle methods of the resource adapter.
javax.resource.spi	ActivationSpec	Defines the configuration parameters that the MDB provides to activate the inbound resource adapter.
javax.resource.spi	Work	The socket server thread classes implement this interface from the work management contract.

When an MDB activates the inbound resource adapter, the container invokes the `endpointActivation` method in the `TrafficResourceAdapter` class:

```
@Connector(...)
public class TrafficResourceAdapter implements ResourceAdapter {
    ...
    @Override
    public void endpointActivation(MessageEndpointFactory endpointFactory,
                                ActivationSpec spec)
                                throws ResourceException {
        Class endpointClass = endpointFactory.getEndpointClass();
        /* this method is called from a new thread in the example */
        MessageEndpoint endpoint = endpointFactory.createEndpoint(null);
    }
}
```

The `getEndpointClass` method returns the `Class` type of the MDB performing the activation, which enables the resource adapter to use reflection to find methods annotated with `@TrafficCommand` in the MDB.

The `createEndpoint` method returns an instance of the MDB. The resource adapter uses this instance to invoke the methods of the MDB when it receives requests from the EIS.

After obtaining the message endpoint instance (MDB), the resource adapter uses the work management contract to create a server thread that listens for requests from the EIS. The resource adapter obtains the `WorkManager` instance from the bootstrap context as follows:

```
public class TrafficResourceAdapter implements ResourceAdapter {
    WorkManager workManager;
    @Override
    public void start(BootstrapContext ctx) ... {
        workManager = ctx.getWorkManager();
    }
}
```

The resource adapter schedules the server threads using the work manager:

```
server = new TrafficSocketServer(activationSpec, endpoint, workManager);
workManager.scheduleWork(server);
```

The `TrafficSocketServer` and `TrafficSocketServerThread` classes implement the `javax.resource.spi.Work` interface from the work management contract.

The socket server threads use reflection to invoke the methods in the MDB:

```
private String callMdb(MessageEndpoint mdb, Method command,
```

```
        String[] params) {
    /* this code contains proper exception handling in the example */
    mdb.beforeDelivery(command);
    Object ret = command.invoke(mdb, (Object[]) params);
    String resp = (String) ret;
    mdb.afterDelivery();
    return resp;
}
```

50.2.3 Running the inboundconnector Example

This section describes how to run the `inboundconnector` example using NetBeans IDE and from the command line.

50.2.3.1 To Run the inboundconnector Example using NetBeans IDE

1. Start the GlassFish Server if it is not running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
3. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/connectors/`
4. Select the `inboundconnector` folder.
5. Click **Open Project**.
6. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `inboundconnector` project and select **Clean and Build**.

This command builds and packages the resource adapter and the MDB into an EAR archive and deploys it. The server log shows the call sequence that activates the resource adapter.

7. In the **Projects** tab, expand the `inboundconnector` node.
8. Right-click on the `trafficgui` module and select **Open Project**.
9. Right-click on the `trafficgui` project and select **Run**.

The EIS makes requests to the resource adapter and displays the results on a graphical user interface. The server log shows the requests from the EIS and the responses from the MDB.

50.2.3.2 To Run the inboundconnector Example from the Command Line

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/connectors/inboundconnector
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds and packages the resource adapter and the MDB into an EAR archive and deploys it. The server log shows the call sequence that activates the resource adapter.

4. In the same terminal window, go into the `trafficgui` directory.

5. Enter the following command to run the traffic information service:

```
mvn exec:java
```

The EIS makes requests to the resource adapter and displays the results on a graphical user interface. The server log shows the requests from the EIS and the responses from the MDB.

Bean Validation: Advanced Topics

This chapter describes how to create custom constraints, custom validator messages, and constraint groups using the Java API for JavaBeans Validation (Bean Validation).

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Creating Custom Constraints](#)
- [Customizing Validator Messages](#)
- [Grouping Constraints](#)
- [Using Method Constraints in Type Hierarchies](#)

51.1 Creating Custom Constraints

Bean Validation defines annotations, interfaces, and classes to allow developers to create custom constraints.

51.1.1 Using the Built-In Constraints to Make a New Constraint

Bean Validation includes several built-in constraints that can be combined to create new, reusable constraints. This can simplify constraint definition by allowing developers to define a custom constraint made up of several built-in constraints that may then be applied to component attributes with a single annotation.

```
@Pattern.List({
    @Pattern(regexp = "[a-z0-9!#$%&'*/+=?^_`{|}~-]+(?:\\. "
        + "[a-z0-9!#$%&'*/+=?^_`{|}~-]+) *"
        + "@(?:[a-z0-9](?:[a-z0-9-]*[a-z0-9])?\\.)+[a-z0-9](?:[a-z0-9-]*[a-z0-9])?")
})
@Constraint(validatedBy = {})
@Documented
@Target({ElementType.METHOD,
    ElementType.FIELD,
    ElementType.ANNOTATION_TYPE,
    ElementType.CONSTRUCTOR,
    ElementType.PARAMETER})
@Retention(RetentionPolicy.RUNTIME)
public @interface Email {

    String message() default "{invalid.email}";

    Class<?>[] groups() default {};

    Class<? extends Payload>[] payload() default {};
```

```
@Target({ElementType.METHOD,
        ElementType.FIELD,
        ElementType.ANNOTATION_TYPE,
        ElementType.CONSTRUCTOR,
        ElementType.PARAMETER})
@Retention(RetentionPolicy.RUNTIME)
@Documented
@interface List {
    Email[] value();
}
```

This custom constraint can then be applied to an attribute.

```
...
@email
protected String email;
...
```

51.2 Customizing Validator Messages

Bean Validation includes a resource bundle of default messages for the built-in constraints. These messages can be customized, and localized for non-English speaking locales.

51.2.1 The ValidationMessages Resource Bundle

The `ValidationMessages` resource bundle and the locale variants of this resource bundle contain strings that override the default validation messages. The `ValidationMessages` resource bundle is typically a properties file, `ValidationMessages.properties`, in the default package of an application.

51.2.1.1 Localizing Validation Messages

Locale variants of `ValidationMessages.properties` are added by appending an underscore and the locale prefix to the base name of the file. For example, the Spanish locale variant resource bundle would be `ValidationMessages_es.properties`.

51.3 Grouping Constraints

Constraints may be added to one or more groups. Constraint groups are used to create subsets of constraints so only certain constraints will be validated for a particular object. By default, all constraints are included in the `Default` constraint group.

Constraint groups are represented by interfaces.

```
public interface Employee {}

public interface Contractor {}
```

Constraint groups can inherit from other groups.

```
public interface Manager extends Employee {}
```

When a constraint is added to an element, the constraint declares the groups to which that constraint belongs by specifying the class name of the group interface name in the `groups` element of the constraint.

```
@NotNull(groups=Employee.class)
Phone workPhone;
```

Multiple groups can be declared by surrounding the groups with angle brackets (`{` and `}`) and separating the groups' class names with commas.

```
@NotNull(groups={ Employee.class, Contractor.class })
Phone workPhone;
```

If a group inherits from another group, validating that group results in validating all constraints declared as part of the supergroup. For example, validating the `Manager` group results in the `workPhone` field being validated, because `Employee` is a super-interface of `Manager`.

51.3.1 Customizing Group Validation Order

By default, constraint groups are validated in no particular order. There are cases where some groups should be validated before others. For example, in a particular class, basic data should be validated before more advanced data.

To set the validation order for a group, add a `javax.validation.GroupSequence` annotation to the interface definition, listing the order in which the validation should occur.

```
@GroupSequence({Default.class, ExpensiveValidationGroup.class})
public interface FullValidationGroup {}
```

When validating `FullValidationGroup`, first the `Default` group is validated. If all the data passes validation, then the `ExpensiveValidationGroup` group is validated. If a constraint is part of both the `Default` and the `ExpensiveValidationGroup` groups, the constraint is validated as part of the `Default` group, and will not be validated on the subsequent `ExpensiveValidationGroup` pass.

51.4 Using Method Constraints in Type Hierarchies

If you add validation constraints to objects in an inheritance hierarchy, special care must be taken to avoid unintended errors when using subtypes.

For a given type, subtypes should be able to be substituted without encountering errors. For example, if you have a `Person` class and an `Employee` subclass that extends `Person`, you should be able to use `Employee` instances wherever you might use `Person` instances. If `Employee` overrides a method in `Person` by adding method parameter constraints, code that works correctly with `Person` objects may throw validation exceptions with `Employee` objects.

The following code shows an **incorrect** use of method parameter constraints within a class hierarchy.

```
public class Person {
    ...
    public void setEmail(String email) { ... }
}

public class Employee extends Person {
    ...
    @Override
    public void setEmail(@Verified String email) { ... }
}
```

By adding the `@Verified` constraint to `Employee.setEmail`, parameters that were valid with `Person.setEmail` will not be valid with `Employee.setEmail`. This is called

strengthening the preconditions (that is, the method parameters) of a subtype's method. You may not strengthen the preconditions of subtype method calls.

Similarly, the return values from method calls should not be weakened in subtypes. The following code shows an **incorrect** use of constraints on method return values in a class hierarchy.

```
public class Person {
    ...
    @Verified
    public Email getEmail() { ... }
}

public class Employee extends Person {
    ...
    @Override
    public Email getEmail() { ... }
}
```

In this example, the `Employee.getEmail` method removes the `@Verified` constraint on the return value. Return values that would not pass validation when calling `Person.getEmail` are allowed when calling `Employee.getEmail`. This is called weakening the postconditions (that is, return values) of a subtype. You may not weaken the postconditions of a subtype method call.

If your type hierarchy strengthens the preconditions or weakens the postconditions of subtype method calls, a `javax.validation.ConstraintDeclarationException` will be thrown by the Bean Validation runtime.

Classes that implement several interfaces that each have the same method signature, known as parallel types, need to be aware of the constraints applied to the interfaces that they implement to avoid strengthening the preconditions. For example:

```
public interface PaymentService {
    void processOrder(Order order, double amount);
    ...
}

public interface CreditCardPaymentService {
    void processOrder(@NotNull Order order, @NotNull double amount);
    ...
}

public class MyPaymentService implements PaymentService,
    CreditCardPaymentService {

    @Override
    public void processOrder(Order order, double amount) { ... }
    ...
}
```

In this case, `MyPaymentService` has the constraints from the `placeOrder` method in `CreditCardPaymentService`, but client code that calls `PaymentService.processOrder` doesn't expect these constraints. This is another example of strengthening the preconditions of a subtype, and will result in a `ConstraintDeclarationException`.

51.4.1 Rules for Using Method Constraints in Type Hierarchies

The follow rules define how method validation constraints should be used in type hierarchies:

- Do not add method parameter constraints to overridden or implemented methods in a subtype.
- Do not add method parameter constraints to overridden or implemented methods in a subtype that was originally declared in several parallel types.
- You may add return value constraints to an overridden or implemented method in a subtype.

Using Java EE Interceptors

This chapter discusses how to create interceptor classes and methods that interpose on method invocations or lifecycle events on a target class.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Overview of Interceptors](#)
- [Using Interceptors](#)
- [The interceptor Example Application](#)

52.1 Overview of Interceptors

Interceptors are used in conjunction with Java EE managed classes to allow developers to invoke interceptor methods on an associated **target class**, in conjunction with method invocations or lifecycle events. Common uses of interceptors are logging, auditing, and profiling.

The Interceptors 1.2 specification is part of a maintenance release of JSR 318, Enterprise JavaBeans 3.1, available from <http://jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=318>. You can use interceptors on

An interceptor can be defined within a target class as an **interceptor method**, or in an associated class called an **interceptor class**. Interceptor classes contain methods that are invoked in conjunction with the methods or lifecycle events of the target class.

Interceptor classes and methods are defined using metadata annotations, or in the deployment descriptor of the application containing the interceptors and target classes.

Note: Applications that use the deployment descriptor to define interceptors are not portable across Java EE servers.

Interceptor methods within the target class or in an interceptor class are annotated with one of the metadata annotations defined in [Table 52–1](#).

Table 52–1 *Interceptor Metadata Annotations*

Interceptor Metadata Annotation	Description
<code>javax.interceptor.AroundConstruct</code>	Designates the method as an interceptor method that receives a callback after the target class is constructed.
<code>javax.interceptor.AroundInvoke</code>	Designates the method as an interceptor method.

Table 52–1 (Cont.) Interceptor Metadata Annotations

Interceptor Metadata Annotation	Description
<code>javax.interceptor.AroundTimeout</code>	Designates the method as a timeout interceptor, for interposing on timeout methods for enterprise bean timers.
<code>javax.annotation.PostConstruct</code>	Designates the method as an interceptor method for post-construct lifecycle events.
<code>javax.annotation.PreDestroy</code>	Designates the method as an interceptor method for pre-destroy lifecycle events.

52.1.1 Interceptor Classes

Interceptor classes may be designated with the optional `javax.interceptor.Interceptor` annotation, but interceptor classes aren't required to be so annotated. An interceptor class *must* have a public, no-argument constructor.

The target class can have any number of interceptor classes associated with it. The order in which the interceptor classes are invoked is determined by the order in which the interceptor classes are defined in the `javax.interceptor.Interceptors` annotation. However, this order can be overridden in the deployment descriptor.

Interceptor classes may be targets of dependency injection. Dependency injection occurs when the interceptor class instance is created, using the naming context of the associated target class, and before any `@PostConstruct` callbacks are invoked.

52.1.2 Interceptor Lifecycle

Interceptor classes have the same lifecycle as their associated target class. When a target class instance is created, an interceptor class instance is also created for each declared interceptor class in the target class. That is, if the target class declares multiple interceptor classes, an instance of each class is created when the target class instance is created. The target class instance and all interceptor class instances are fully instantiated before any `@PostConstruct` callbacks are invoked, and any `@PreDestroy` callbacks are invoked before the target class and interceptor class instances are destroyed.

52.1.3 Interceptors and CDI

Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI) builds on the basic functionality of Java EE interceptors. For information on CDI interceptors, including a discussion of interceptor binding types, see [Using Interceptors in CDI Applications](#).

52.2 Using Interceptors

An interceptor is defined using one of the interceptor metadata annotations listed in [Table 52–1](#) within the target class, or in a separate interceptor class. The following code declares an `@AroundTimeout` interceptor method within a target class.

```
@Stateless
public class TimerBean {
    ...
    @Schedule(minute="*/1", hour="*")
    public void automaticTimerMethod() { ... }

    @AroundTimeout
    public void timeoutInterceptorMethod(InvocationContext ctx) { ... }
```

```
...
}
```

If interceptor classes are used, use the `javax.interceptor.Interceptors` annotation to declare one or more interceptors at the class or method level of the target class. The following code declares interceptors at the class level.

```
@Stateless
@Interceptors({PrimaryInterceptor.class, SecondaryInterceptor.class})
public class OrderBean { ... }
```

The following code declares a method-level interceptor class.

```
@Stateless
public class OrderBean {
    ...
    @Interceptors(OrderInterceptor.class)
    public void placeOrder(Order order) { ... }
    ...
}
```

52.2.1 Intercepting Method Invocations

The `@AroundInvoke` annotation is used to designate interceptor methods for managed object methods. Only one around-invoke interceptor method per class is allowed. Around-invoke interceptor methods have the following form:

```
@AroundInvoke
visibility Object method-name(InvocationContext) throws Exception { ... }
```

For example:

```
@AroundInvoke
public void interceptOrder(InvocationContext ctx) { ... }
```

Around-invoke interceptor methods can have public, private, protected, or package-level access, and must not be declared static or final.

An around-invoke interceptor can call any component or resource callable by the target method on which it interposes, have the same security and transaction context as the target method, and run in the same Java virtual machine call-stack as the target method.

Around-invoke interceptors can throw runtime exceptions and any exception allowed by the throws clause of the target method. They may catch and suppress exceptions, and then recover by calling the `InvocationContext.proceed` method.

52.2.1.1 Using Multiple Method Interceptors

Use the `@Interceptors` annotation to declare multiple interceptors for a target method or class.

```
@Interceptors({PrimaryInterceptor.class, SecondaryInterceptor.class,
    LastInterceptor.class})
public void updateInfo(String info) { ... }
```

The order of the interceptors in the `@Interceptors` annotation is the order in which the interceptors are invoked.

Multiple interceptors may also be defined in the deployment descriptor. The order of the interceptors in the deployment descriptor is the order in which the interceptors will be invoked.

```
...
<interceptor-binding>
  <target-name>myapp.OrderBean</target-name>
  <interceptor-class>myapp.PrimaryInterceptor.class</interceptor-class>
  <interceptor-class>myapp.SecondaryInterceptor.class</interceptor-class>
  <interceptor-class>myapp.LastInterceptor.class</interceptor-class>
  <method-name>updateInfo</method-name>
</interceptor-binding>
...
```

To explicitly pass control to the next interceptor in the chain, call the `InvocationContext.proceed` method.

Data can be shared across interceptors:

- The same `InvocationContext` instance is passed as an input parameter to each interceptor method in the interceptor chain for a particular target method. The `InvocationContext` instance's `contextData` property is used to pass data across interceptor methods. The `contextData` property is a `java.util.Map<String, Object>` object. Data stored in `contextData` is accessible to interceptor methods further down the interceptor chain.
- The data stored in `contextData` is not sharable across separate target class method invocations. That is, a different `InvocationContext` object is created for each invocation of the method in the target class.

52.2.1.2 Accessing Target Method Parameters From an Interceptor Class

The `InvocationContext` instance passed to each `around-invoke` method may be used to access and modify the parameters of the target method. The `parameters` property of `InvocationContext` is an array of `Object` instances that corresponds to the parameter order of the target method. For example, for the following target method, the `parameters` property, in the `InvocationContext` instance passed to the `around-invoke` interceptor method in `PrimaryInterceptor`, is an `Object` array containing two `String` objects (`firstName` and `lastName`) and a `Date` object (`date`):

```
@Interceptors(PrimaryInterceptor.class)
public void updateInfo(String firstName, String lastName, Date date) { ... }
```

The parameters can be accessed and modified using the `InvocationContext.getParameters` and `InvocationContext.setParameters` methods, respectively.

52.2.2 Intercepting Lifecycle Callback Events

Interceptors for lifecycle callback events (`around-construct`, `post-construct`, and `pre-destroy`) may be defined in the target class or in interceptor classes. The `javax.interceptor.AroundConstruct` annotation designates the method as an interceptor method that interposes on the invocation of the target class's constructor. The `javax.annotation.PostConstruct` annotation is used to designate a method as a post-construct lifecycle event interceptor. The `javax.annotation.PreDestroy` annotation is used to designate a method as a pre-destroy lifecycle event interceptor.

Lifecycle event interceptors defined within the target class have the following form:

```
void method-name() { ... }
```

For example:

```
@PostConstruct
void initialize() { ... }
```

Lifecycle event interceptors defined in an interceptor class have the following form:

```
void method-name(InvocationContext) { ... }
```

For example:

```
@PreDestroy
void cleanup(InvocationContext ctx) { ... }
```

Lifecycle interceptor methods can have public, private, protected, or package-level access, and must not be declared static or final. Lifecycle interceptors may throw runtime exceptions but cannot throw checked exceptions.

Lifecycle interceptor methods are called in an unspecified security and transaction context. That is, portable Java EE applications should not assume the lifecycle event interceptor method has access to a security or transaction context. Only one interceptor method for each lifecycle event (post-create and pre-destroy) is allowed per class.

52.2.2.1 Using AroundConstruct Interceptor Methods

`@AroundConstruct` methods are interposed on the invocation of the target class's constructor. Methods decorated with `@AroundConstruct` may only be defined within interceptor classes or superclasses of interceptor classes. You may not use `@AroundConstruct` methods within the target class.

The `@AroundConstruct` method is called after dependency injection has been completed for all interceptors associated with the target class. The target class is created and the target class's constructor injection is performed after all associated `@AroundConstruct` methods have called the `Invocation.proceed` method. At that point, dependency injection for the target class is completed, and then any `@PostConstruct` callback methods are invoked.

`@AroundConstruct` methods can access the constructed target instance after calling `Invocation.proceed` by calling the `InvocationContext.getTarget` method.

Caution: Calling methods on the target instance from an `@AroundConstruct` method is dangerous because dependency injection may not have completed on the target instance.

`@AroundConstruct` methods must call `Invocation.proceed` in order to create the target instance. If an `@AroundConstruct` method does not call `Invocation.proceed`, the target instance will not be created.

52.2.2.2 Using Multiple Lifecycle Callback Interceptors

Multiple lifecycle interceptors may be defined for a target class by specifying the interceptor classes in the `@Interceptors` annotation:

```
@Interceptors({PrimaryInterceptor.class, SecondaryInterceptor.class,
               LastInterceptor.class})
@Stateless
public class OrderBean { ... }
```

Data stored in the `contextData` property of `InvocationContext` is not sharable across different lifecycle events.

52.2.3 Intercepting Timeout Events

Interceptors for EJB timer service timeout methods may be defined using the `@AroundTimeout` annotation on methods in the target class or in an interceptor class. Only one `@AroundTimeout` method per class is allowed.

Timeout interceptors have the following form:

```
Object method-name(InvocationContext) throws Exception { ... }
```

For example:

```
@AroundTimeout
protected void timeoutInterceptorMethod(InvocationContext ctx) { ... }
```

Timeout interceptor methods can have public, private, protected, or package-level access, and must not be declared static or final.

Timeout interceptors can call any component or resource callable by the target timeout method, and are invoked in the same transaction and security context as the target method.

Timeout interceptors may access the timer object associated with the target timeout method through the `InvocationContext` instance's `getTimer` method.

52.2.3.1 Using Multiple Timeout Interceptors

Multiple timeout interceptors may be defined for a given target class by specifying the interceptor classes containing `@AroundTimeout` interceptor methods in an `@Interceptors` annotation at the class level.

If a target class specifies timeout interceptors in an interceptor class, and also has a `@AroundTimeout` interceptor method within the target class itself, the timeout interceptors in the interceptor classes are called first, followed by the timeout interceptors defined in the target class. For example, in the following example, assume that both the `PrimaryInterceptor` and `SecondaryInterceptor` classes have timeout interceptor methods.

```
@Interceptors({PrimaryInterceptor.class, SecondaryInterceptor.class})
@Stateful
public class OrderBean {
    ...
    @AroundTimeout
    private void last(InvocationContext ctx) { ... }
    ...
}
```

The timeout interceptor in `PrimaryInterceptor` will be called first, followed by the timeout interceptor in `SecondaryInterceptor`, and finally the `last` method defined in the target class.

52.2.4 Binding Interceptors to Components

Interceptor binding types are annotations that may be applied to components to associate them with a particular interceptor. Interceptor binding types are typically custom runtime annotation types that specify the interceptor target. Use the `javax.interceptor.InterceptorBinding` annotation on the custom annotation

definition and specify the target by using `@Target` and set one or more of `TYPE` (class-level interceptors), `METHOD` (method-level interceptors), `CONSTRUCTOR` (around-construct interceptors), or any other valid target.

```
@InterceptorBinding
@Target({TYPE, METHOD})
@Retention(RUNTIME)
@Inherited
public @interface Logged { ... }
```

Interceptor binding types may also be applied to other interceptor binding types.

```
@Logged
@InterceptorBinding
@Target({TYPE, METHOD})
@Retention(RUNTIME)
@Inherited
public @interface Secured { ... }
```

52.2.4.1 Declaring the Interceptor Bindings on an Interceptor Class

Annotate the interceptor class with the interceptor binding type and `@Interceptor` to associate the interceptor binding with the interceptor class.

```
@Logged
@Interceptor
public class LoggingInterceptor {
    @AroundInvoke
    public Object logInvocation(InvocationContext ctx) throws Exception { ... }
    ...
}
```

An interceptor class may declare multiple interceptor binding types, and more than one interceptor class may declare an interceptor binding type.

If the interceptor class intercepts lifecycle callbacks, it can only declare interceptor binding types with `Target (TYPE)`, or in the case of `@AroundConstruct` lifecycle callbacks, `Target (CONSTRUCTOR)`.

52.2.4.2 Binding a Component to an Interceptor

Add the interceptor binding type annotation to the target component's class, method, or constructor. Interceptor binding types are applied using the same rules as `@Interceptor` annotations.

```
@Logged
public class Message {
    ...
    @Secured
    public void getConfidentialMessage() { ... }
    ...
}
```

If the component has a class-level interceptor binding, it must not be `final` or have any non-static, non-private `final` methods. If a non-static, non-private method has an interceptor binding applied to it, it must not be `final`, and the component class cannot be `final`.

52.2.5 Ordering Interceptors

The order in which multiple interceptors are invoked is determined by the following rules:

- Default interceptors are defined in a deployment descriptor, and are invoked first. They may specify the invocation order or override the order specified using annotations. Default interceptors are invoked in the order in which they are defined in the deployment descriptor.
- The order in which the interceptor classes are listed in the `@Interceptors` annotation defines the order in which the interceptors are invoked. Any `@Priority` settings for interceptors listed within an `@Interceptors` annotation are ignored.
- If the interceptor class has superclasses, the interceptors defined on the superclasses are invoked first, starting with the most general superclass.
- Interceptor classes may set the priority of the interceptor methods by setting a value within a `javax.annotation.Priority` annotation.
- After the interceptors defined within interceptor classes have been invoked, the target class's constructor, around-invoke, or around-timeout interceptors are invoked in the same order as the interceptors within the `@Interceptors` annotation.
- If the target class has superclasses, any interceptors defined on the superclasses are invoked first, starting with the most general superclass.

The `@Priority` annotation requires an int value as an element. The lower the number, the higher the priority of the associated interceptor.

Note: The invocation order of interceptors with the same priority value is implementation-specific.

The `javax.interceptor.Interceptor.Priority` class defines the following priority constants:

Table 52–2 *Interceptor Priority Constants*

Priority Constant	Value	Description
PLATFORM_BEFORE	0	Interceptors defined by the Java EE Platform and intended to be invoked early in the invocation chain should use the range between PLATFORM_BEFORE and LIBRARY_BEFORE. These interceptors have the highest priority.
LIBRARY_BEFORE	1000	Interceptors defined by extension libraries that should be invoked early in the interceptor chain should use the range between LIBRARY_BEFORE and APPLICATION.
APPLICATION	2000	Interceptors defined by applications should use the range between APPLICATION and LIBRARY_AFTER.
LIBRARY_AFTER	3000	Low priority interceptors defined by extension libraries should use the range between LIBRARY_AFTER and PLATFORM_AFTER.
PLATFORM_AFTER	4000	Low priority interceptors defined by the Java EE Platform should have values higher than PLATFORM_AFTER.

Note: Negative priority values are reserved by the Interceptors specification for future use, and should not be used.

The following code snippet shows how to use the priority constants in an application-defined interceptor:

```
@Interceptor
@Priority(Interceptor.Priority.APPLICATION+200
public class MyInterceptor { ... }
```

52.3 The interceptor Example Application

The interceptor example demonstrates how to use an interceptor class, containing an `@AroundInvoke` interceptor method, with a stateless session bean.

The `HelloBean` stateless session bean is a simple enterprise bean with two business methods, `getName` and `setName`, to retrieve and modify a string. The `setName` business method has an `@Interceptors` annotation that specifies an interceptor class, `HelloInterceptor`, for that method.

```
@Interceptors({HelloInterceptor.class})
public void setName(String name) {
    this.name = name;
}
```

The `HelloInterceptor` class defines an `@AroundInvoke` interceptor method, `modifyGreeting`, that converts the string passed to `HelloBean.setName` to lowercase.

```
@AroundInvoke
public Object modifyGreeting(InvocationContext ctx) throws Exception {
    Object[] parameters = ctx.getParameters();
    String param = (String) parameters[0];
    param = param.toLowerCase();
    parameters[0] = param;
    ctx.setParameters(parameters);
    try {
        return ctx.proceed();
    } catch (Exception e) {
        logger.warning("Error calling ctx.proceed in modifyGreeting()");
        return null;
    }
}
```

The parameters to `HelloBean.setName` are retrieved and stored in an `Object` array by calling the `InvocationContext.getParameters` method. Because `setName` only has one parameter, it is the first and only element in the array. The string is set to lowercase and stored in the parameters array, then passed to `InvocationContext.setParameters`. To return control to the session bean, `InvocationContext.proceed` is called.

The user interface of interceptor is a JavaServer Faces web application that consists of two Facelets views: `index.xhtml`, which contains a form for entering the name, and `response.xhtml`, which displays the final name.

52.3.1 Running the interceptor Example

You can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the interceptor example.

52.3.1.1 To Run the interceptor Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to *tut-install/examples/ejb/*.
3. Select the interceptor folder and click **Open Project**.
4. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the interceptor project and select **Run**.
This will compile, deploy, and run the interceptor example, opening a web browser page to <http://localhost:8080/interceptor/>.
5. Enter a name into the form and click **Submit**.
The name will be converted to lowercase by the method interceptor defined in the `HelloInterceptor` class.

52.3.1.2 To Run the interceptor Example Using Maven

1. Go to the following directory:

```
tut-install/examples/ejb/interceptor/
```
2. To compile the source files and package the application, use the following command:

```
mvn install
```


This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `interceptor.war`, located in the `target` directory. The WAR file is then deployed to GlassFish Server.
3. Open a web browser to <http://localhost:8080/interceptor/>.
4. Enter a name into the form and click **Submit**.
The name will be converted to lowercase by the method interceptor defined in the `HelloInterceptor` class.

Batch Processing

This chapter describes Batch Applications for the Java Platform (JSR-352), which provides support for defining, implementing, and running batch jobs. Batch jobs are tasks that can be executed without user interaction. The batch framework is composed of a job specification language based on XML, a Java API, and a batch runtime.

Some enterprise applications contain tasks that can be executed without user interaction. These tasks are executed periodically or when resource usage is low, and they often process large amounts of information such as log files, database records or images. Examples include billing, report generation, data format conversion, and image processing. These tasks are called **batch jobs**.

Batch processing refers to running batch jobs on a computer system. Java EE includes a batch processing framework that provides the batch execution infrastructure common to all batch applications, enabling developers to concentrate on the business logic of their batch applications. The batch framework consists of a job specification language based on XML, a set of batch annotations and interfaces for application classes that implement the business logic, a batch container that manages the execution of batch jobs, and supporting classes and interfaces to interact with the batch container.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Introduction to Batch Processing](#)
- [Batch Processing in Java EE](#)
- [Simple Use Case](#)
- [Using the Job Specification Language](#)
- [Creating Batch Artifacts](#)
- [Submitting Jobs to the Batch Runtime](#)
- [Packaging Batch Applications](#)
- [The webserverlog Example Application](#)
- [The phonebilling Example Application](#)
- [Further Information about Batch Processing](#)

53.1 Introduction to Batch Processing

A batch **job** can be completed without user intervention. For example, consider a telephone billing application that reads phone call records from the enterprise information systems and generates a monthly bill for each account. Since this application does not require any user interaction, it can run as a batch job.

The phone billing application consists of two phases: the first phase associates each call from the registry with a monthly bill, and the second phase calculates the tax and total amount due for each bill. Each of these phases is a **step** of the batch job.

Batch applications specify a set of steps and their execution order. Different batch frameworks may specify additional elements like decision elements or groups of steps that run in parallel. The following sections describe steps in more detail and provide information about other common characteristics of batch frameworks.

53.1.1 Steps in Batch Jobs

A step is an independent and sequential phase of a batch job. Batch jobs contain chunk-oriented steps and task-oriented steps.

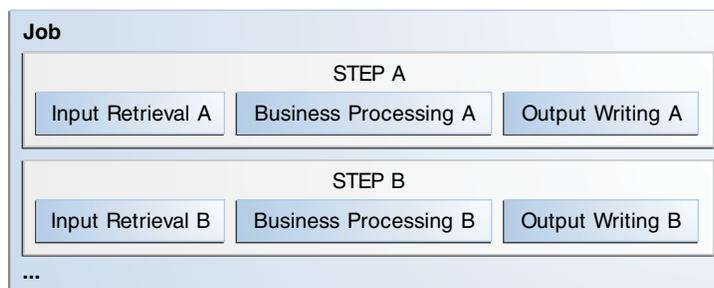
- Chunk-oriented steps** (or chunk steps) process data by reading items from a data source, applying some business logic to each item, and storing the results. Chunk steps read and process one item at a time and group the results into a chunk. The results are stored when the chunk reaches a configurable size. Chunk-oriented processing makes storing results more efficient and facilitates transaction demarcation.

Chunk steps have three parts:

- The input retrieval part reads one item at a time from a data source, such as entries on a database, files in a directory, or entries in a log file.
- The business processing part manipulates one item at a time using the business logic defined by the application. Examples include filtering, formatting, and accessing data from the item for computing a result.
- The output writing part stores a chunk of processed items at a time.

Chunk steps are often long-running because they process large amounts of data. Batch frameworks enable chunk steps to bookmark their progress using **checkpoints**. A chunk step that is interrupted can be restarted from the last checkpoint. The input retrieval and output writing parts of a chunk step save their current position after the processing of each chunk, and can recover it when the step is restarted.

Figure 53–1 *Chunk steps in a batch job*



- Task-oriented steps** (or task steps) execute tasks other than processing items from a data source. Examples include creating or removing directories, moving files, creating or dropping database tables, configuring resources, and so on. Task steps are not usually long-running compared to chunk steps.

For example, the phone billing application consists of two chunk steps:

- In the first step, the input retrieval part reads call records from the registry; the business processing part associates each call with a bill and creates a bill if one does not exist for an account; and the output writing part stores each bill in a database.
- In the second step, the input retrieval part reads bills from the database; the business processing part calculates the tax and total amount due for each bill; and the output writing part updates the database records and generates printable versions of each bill.

This application could also contain a task step that cleaned up the files from the bills generated on the previous month.

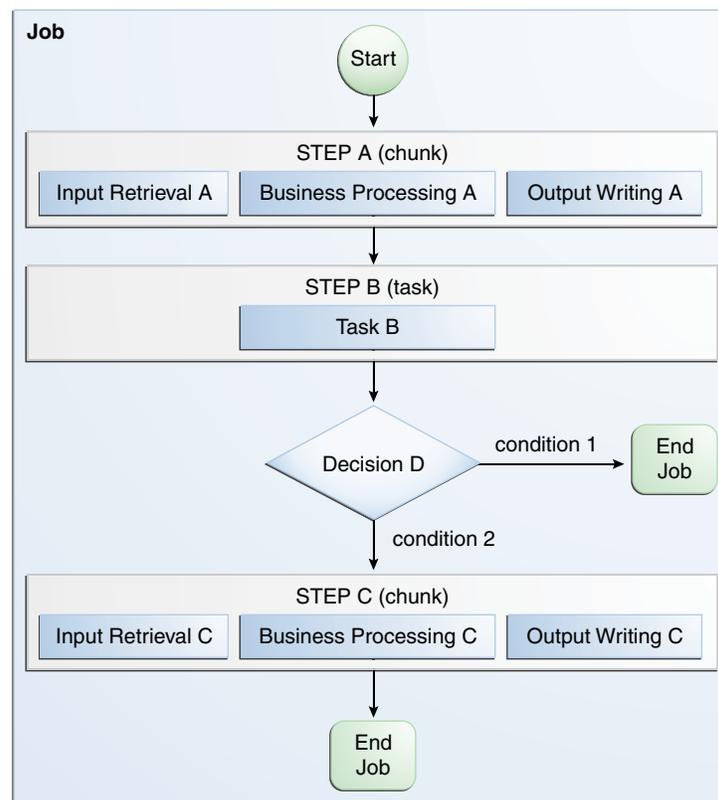
53.1.2 Status and Decision Elements

Batch frameworks keep track of a **status** for every step in a job. The status indicates if a step is running or if it has completed. If the step has completed, the status indicates one of the following: the execution of the step was successful, the step was interrupted, or there was an error.

In addition to steps, batch jobs can also contain **decision elements**. Decision elements use the exit status of the previous step to determine the next step or to terminate the batch job. Decision elements set the status of the batch job when terminating it. Like a step, a batch job can terminate successfully, be interrupted, or fail.

Figure 53–2 shows an example of a job that contains chunk steps, task steps and a decision element.

Figure 53–2 Steps and decision elements in a job



53.1.3 Parallel Processing

Batch jobs often process large amounts of data or perform computationally expensive operations. Batch applications can benefit from parallel processing in two scenarios:

- Steps that do not depend on each other can run on different threads.
- Chunk-oriented steps where the processing of each item does not depend on the results of processing previous items can run on more than one thread.

Batch frameworks provide mechanisms for developers to define groups of independent steps and to split chunk-oriented steps in parts that can run in parallel.

53.1.4 Batch Framework Functionality

Batch applications have the following common requirements:

- Define jobs, steps, decision elements and the relationships between them.
- Execute some groups of steps or parts of a step in parallel.
- Maintain state information for jobs and steps.
- Launch jobs and resume interrupted jobs.
- Handle errors.

Batch frameworks provide the batch execution infrastructure that addresses the common requirements of all batch applications, enabling developers to concentrate on the business logic of their applications. Batch frameworks consist of a format to specify jobs and steps, an application programming interface (API), and a service available at run time that manages the execution of batch jobs.

53.2 Batch Processing in Java EE

This section lists the components of the batch processing framework in Java EE and provides an overview of the steps you have to follow to create a batch application.

53.2.1 The Batch Processing Framework

Java EE includes a batch processing framework that consists of the following elements:

- A batch runtime that manages the execution of jobs.
- A job specification language based on XML.
- A Java API to interact with the batch runtime.
- A Java API to implement steps, decision elements, and other batch artifacts.

Batch applications in Java EE contain XML files and Java classes. The XML files define the structure of a job in terms of batch artifacts and the relationships between them. (A batch artifact is a part of a chunk-oriented step, a task-oriented step, a decision element, or another component of a batch application). The Java classes implement the application logic of the batch artifacts defined in the XML files. The batch runtime parses the XML files and loads the batch artifacts as Java classes to run the jobs in a batch application.

53.2.2 Creating Batch Applications

The process for creating a batch application in Java EE is the following:

1. Design the batch application:

- a. Identify the input sources, the format of the input data, the desired final result, and the required processing phases.
 - b. Organize the application as a job with chunk-oriented steps, task-oriented steps, and decision elements. Determine the dependencies between them.
 - c. Determine the order of execution in terms of transitions between steps.
 - d. Identify steps that can run in parallel and steps that can run in more than one thread.
2. Create the batch artifacts as Java classes by implementing the interfaces specified by the framework for steps, decision elements, and so on. These Java classes contain the code to read data from input sources, format items, process items and store results. Batch artifacts can access context objects from the batch runtime using dependency injection.
 3. Define jobs, steps and their execution flow in XML files using the Job Specification Language. The elements in the XML files reference batch artifacts implemented as Java classes. The batch artifacts can access properties declared in the XML files, such as names of files and databases.
 4. Use the Java API provided by the batch runtime to launch the batch application.

The following sections in this chapter describe in detail how to use the components of the batch processing framework in Java EE to create batch applications.

53.2.3 Elements of a Batch Job

A batch job can contain one or more of the following elements:

- Steps
- Flows
- Splits
- Decision elements

Steps are described in [Introduction to Batch Processing](#), and can be chunk-oriented or task-oriented. Chunk-oriented steps can be **partitioned steps**. In a partitioned chunk step, the processing of one item does not depend on other items, so these steps can run in more than one thread.

A **flow** is a sequence of steps that execute as a unit. A sequence of related steps can be grouped together into a flow. The steps in a flow can not transition to steps outside the flow. The flow transitions to the next element when its last step completes.

A **split** is a set of flows that execute in parallel; each flow runs on a separate thread. The split transitions to the next element when all its flows complete.

Decision elements use the exit status of the previous step to determine the next step or to terminate the batch job.

53.2.4 Properties and Parameters

Jobs and steps can have a number of **properties** associated with them. You define properties in the job definition file, and batch artifacts access these properties using context objects from the batch runtime. Using properties in this manner enables you to decouple static parameters of the job from the business logic and to reuse batch artifacts in different job definition files.

Specifying properties is described in [Using the Job Specification Language](#), and accessing properties in batch artifacts is described in [Creating Batch Artifacts](#).

Java EE applications can also pass **parameters** to a job when they submit it to the batch runtime. This enables you to specify dynamic parameters that are only known at run time. Parameters are also necessary for partitioned steps, since each partition needs to know, for example, what range of items to process.

Specifying parameters when submitting jobs is described in [Submitting Jobs to the Batch Runtime](#). Specifying parameters for partitioned steps and accessing them in batch artifacts is demonstrated in [The phonebilling Example Application](#).

53.2.5 Job Instances and Job Executions

A job definition can have multiple **instances**, each with different parameters. A **job execution** is an attempt to run a job instance. The batch runtime maintains information about job instances and job executions as described in [Checking the Status of a Job](#).

53.2.6 Batch and Exit Status

The state of jobs, steps, splits, and flows is represented in the batch runtime as a **batch status** value. Batch status values are listed [Table 53–1](#). They are represented as strings.

Table 53–1 *Batch status values*

Value	Description
STARTING	The job has been submitted to the batch runtime.
STARTED	The job is running.
STOPPING	The job has been requested to stop.
STOPPED	The job has stopped.
FAILED	The job finished executing because of an error.
COMPLETED	The job finished executing successfully.
ABANDONED	The job was marked abandoned.

Java EE applications can submit jobs and access the batch status of a job using the `JobOperator` interface, as described in [Submitting Jobs to the Batch Runtime](#). Job definition files can refer to batch status values using the Job Specification Language (JSL), as described in [Using the Job Specification Language](#). Batch artifacts can access batch status values using context objects, as described in [Using the Context Objects from the Batch Runtime](#).

For flows, the batch status is that of its last step. For splits, the batch status is the following:

- COMPLETED - If all its flows have a batch status of COMPLETED.
- FAILED - If any flow has a batch status of FAILED.
- STOPPED - If any flow has a batch status of STOPPED, and no flows have a batch status of FAILED.

The batch status for jobs, steps, splits, and flows is set by the batch runtime. Jobs, steps, splits, and flows also have an **exit status**, which is a user-defined value based on the batch status. You can set the exit status inside batch artifacts or in the job definition file. You can access the exit status in the same manner as the batch status, described above. The default value for the exit status is the same as the batch status.

53.3 Simple Use Case

This section demonstrates how to define a simple job using the Job Specification Language (JSL) and how to implement the corresponding batch artifacts. Refer to the rest of the sections in this chapter for detailed descriptions of the elements in the batch framework.

The following job definition specifies a chunk step and a task step as follows:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<job id="simplejob" xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
      version="1.0">
  <properties>
    <property name="input_file" value="input.txt"/>
    <property name="output_file" value="output.txt"/>
  </properties>
  <step id="mychunk" next="mytask">
    <chunk>
      <reader ref="MyReader"></reader>
      <processor ref="MyProcessor"></processor>
      <writer ref="MyWriter"></writer>
    </chunk>
  </step>
  <step id="mytask">
    <batchlet ref="MyBatchlet"></batchlet>
    <end on="COMPLETED"/>
  </step>
</job>
```

53.3.1 Chunk Step

In most cases, you have to implement a checkpoint class for chunk-oriented steps. The following class just keeps track of the line number in a text file:

```
public class MyCheckpoint implements Serializable {
    private long lineNum = 0;
    public void increase() { lineNum++; }
    public long getLineNum() { return lineNum; }
}
```

The following item reader implementation continues reading the input file from the provided checkpoint if the job was restarted. The items consist of each line in the text file. In more complex scenarios, the items are custom Java types and the input source can be a database or similar.

```
@Dependent
@Named("MyReader")
public class MyReader implements javax.batch.api.chunk.ItemReader {
    private MyCheckpoint checkpoint;
    private BufferedReader breader;
    @Inject
    JobContext jobCtx;

    public MyReader() {}

    @Override
    public void open(Serializable ckpt) throws Exception {
        if (ckpt == null)
            checkpoint = new MyCheckpoint();
        else
```

```
        checkpoint = (MyCheckpoint) ckpt;
        String fileName = jobCtx.getProperties()
            .getProperty("input_file");
        breader = new BufferedReader(new FileReader(fileName));
        for (long i=0; i<checkpoint.getLineNum(); i++)
            breader.readLine();
    }

    @Override
    public void close() throws Exception {
        breader.close();
    }

    @Override
    public Object readItem() throws Exception {
        String line = breader.readLine();
        return line;
    }
}
```

In this case, the item processor only converts the line to uppercase. More complex examples can process items in different ways or transform them into a custom output Java type.

```
@Dependent
@Named("MyProcessor")
public class MyProcessor implements javax.batch.api.chunk.ItemProcessor {
    public MyProcessor() {}

    @Override
    public Object processItem(Object obj) throws Exception {
        String line = (String) obj;
        return line.toUpperCase();
    }
}
```

Note: The batch processing API does not support generics. In most cases, you need to cast items to their specific type before processing them.

The item writer writes the processed items to the output file. It overwrites the output file if no checkpoint is provided; otherwise, it resumes writing at the end of the file. Items are written in chunks.

```
@Dependent
@Named("MyWriter")
public class MyWriter implements javax.batch.api.chunk.ItemWriter {
    private BufferedWriter bwriter;
    @Inject
    private JobContext jobCtx;

    @Override
    public void open(Serializable ckpt) throws Exception {
        String fileName = jobCtx.getProperties()
            .getProperty("output_file");
        bwriter = new BufferedWriter(new FileWriter(fileName,
            (ckpt != null)));
    }
}
```

```

@Override
public void writeItems(List<Object> items) throws Exception {
    for (int i = 0; i < items.size(); i++) {
        String line = (String) items.get(i);
        bwriter.write(line);
        bwriter.newLine();
    }
}

@Override
public Serializable checkpointInfo() throws Exception {
    return new MyCheckpoint();
}

```

53.3.2 Task Step

The task step displays the length of the output file. In more complex scenarios, task steps perform any task that does not fit the chunk processing programming model.

```

@Dependent
@Named("MyBatchlet")
public class MyBatchlet implements javax.batch.api.chunk.Batchlet {
    @Inject
    private JobContext jobCtx;

    @Override
    public String process() throws Exception {
        String fileName = jobCtx.getProperties()
            .getProperty("output_file");
        System.out.println(""+(new File(fileName)).length());
        return "COMPLETED";
    }
}

```

53.4 Using the Job Specification Language

The Job Specification Language (JSL) enables you to define the steps in a job and their execution order using an XML file. The following example shows how to define a simple job that contains one chunk step and one task step:

```

<job id="loganalysis" xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
    version="1.0">
    <properties>
        <property name="input_file" value="input1.txt"/>
        <property name="output_file" value="output2.txt"/>
    </properties>

    <step id="logprocessor" next="cleanup">
        <chunk checkpoint-policy="item" item-count="10">
            <reader ref="com.xyz.pkg.LogItemReader"></reader>
            <processor ref="com.xyz.pkg.LogItemProcessor"></processor>
            <writer ref="com.xyz.pkg.LogItemWriter"></writer>
        </chunk>
    </step>

    <step id="cleanup">
        <batchlet ref="com.xyz.pkg.CleanUp"></batchlet>
    </step>
</job>

```

```
        <end on="COMPLETED" />
    </step>
</job>
```

This example defines the `loganalysis` batch job, which consists of the `logprocessor` chunk step and the `cleanup` task step. The `logprocessor` step transitions to the `cleanup` step, which terminates the job when completed.

The `job` element defines two properties, `input_file` and `output_file`. Specifying properties in this manner enables you to run a batch job with different configuration parameters without having to recompile its Java batch artifacts. The batch artifacts can access these properties using the context objects from the batch runtime.

The `logprocessor` step is a chunk step that specifies batch artifacts for the reader (`LogItemReader`), the processor (`LogItemProcessor`), and the writer (`LogItemWriter`). This step creates a checkpoint for every ten items processed.

The `cleanup` step is a task step that specifies the `CleanUp` class as its batch artifact. The job terminates when this step completes.

The following sections describe the elements of the Job Specification Language (JSL) in more detail and show the most common attributes and child elements.

53.4.1 The job Element

The `job` element is always the top-level element in a job definition file. Its main attributes are `id` and `restartable`. The `job` element can contain one `properties` element and zero or more of each of the following elements: `listener`, `step`, `flow`, and `split`. For example:

```
<job id="jobname" restartable="true">
  <listeners>
    <listener ref="com.xyz.pkg.ListenerBatchArtifact" />
  </listeners>
  <properties>
    <property name="propertyName1" value="propertyValue1" />
    <property name="propertyName2" value="propertyValue2" />
  </properties>
  <step ...> ... </step>
  <step ...> ... </step>
  <decision ...> ... </decision>
  <flow ...> ... </flow>
  <split ...> ... </split>
</job>
```

The `listener` element specifies a batch artifact whose methods are invoked before and after the execution of the job. The batch artifact is an implementation of the `javax.batch.api.listener.JobListener` interface. See [The Listener Batch Artifacts in The webserverlog Example Application](#) for an example of a job listener implementation.

The first `step`, `flow`, or `split` element inside the `job` element executes first.

53.4.2 The step Element

The `step` element can be a child of the `job` and `flow` elements. Its main attributes are `id` and `next`. The `step` element can contain the following elements:

- One `chunk` element for chunk-oriented steps or one `batchlet` element for task-oriented steps.

- One `properties` element (optional).
This element specifies a set of properties that batch artifacts can access using batch context objects.
- One `listener` element (optional); one `listeners` element if more than one listener is specified.
This element specifies listener artifacts that intercept various phases of step execution.

For chunk steps, the batch artifacts for these listeners can be implementations of the following interfaces: `StepListener`, `ItemReadListener`, `ItemProcessListener`, `ItemWriteListener`, `ChunkListener`, `RetryReadListener`, `RetryProcessListener`, `RetryWriteListener`, `SkipReadListener`, `SkipProcessListener`, and `SkipWriteListener`.

For task steps, the batch artifact for these listeners must be an implementation of the `StepListener` interface.

See [The Listener Batch Artifacts](#) in [The webserverlog Example Application](#) for an example of an item processor listener implementation.
- One `partition` element (optional).
This element is used in partitioned steps which execute in more than one thread.
- One `end` element if this is the last step in a job.
This element sets the batch status to `COMPLETED`.
- One `stop` element (optional) to stop a job at this step.
This element sets the batch status to `STOPPED`.
- One `fail` element (optional) to terminate a job at this step.
This element sets the batch status to `FAILED`.
- One or more `next` elements if `next` attribute is not specified.
This element is associated with an exit status and refers to another step, a flow, a split, or a decision element.

The following is an example of a chunk step:

```
<step id="stepA" next="stepB">
  <properties> ... </properties>
  <listeners>
    <listener ref="MyItemReadListenerImpl"/>
    ...
  </listeners>
  <chunk ...> ... </chunk>
  <partition> ... </partition>
  <end on="COMPLETED" exit-status="MY_COMPLETED_EXIT_STATUS"/>
  <stop on="MY_TEMP_ISSUE_EXIST_STATUS" restart="step0"/>
  <fail on="MY_ERROR_EXIT_STATUS" exit-status="MY_ERROR_EXIT_STATUS"/>
</step>
```

The following is an example of a task step:

```
<step id="stepB" next="stepC">
  <batchlet ...> ... </batchlet>
  <properties> ... </properties>
  <listener ref="MyStepListenerImpl"/>
</step>
```

53.4.2.1 The chunk Element

The chunk element is a child of the `step` element for chunk-oriented steps. The attributes of this element are listed in [Table 53–2](#).

Table 53–2 Attributes of the chunk element

Attribute Name	Description	Default Value
<code>checkpoint-policy</code>	<p>Specifies how to commit the results of processing each chunk:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ <code>"item"</code> - the chunk is committed after processing <code>item-count</code> items. ■ <code>"custom"</code> - the chunk is committed according to a checkpoint algorithm specified with the <code>checkpoint-algorithm</code> element. <p>The checkpoint is updated when the results of a chunk are committed.</p> <p><i>Every chunk is processed in a global Java EE transaction. If the processing of one item in the chunk fails, the transaction is rolled back and no processed items from this chunk are stored.</i></p>	<code>"item"</code>
<code>item-count</code>	Specifies the number of items to process before committing the chunk and taking a checkpoint.	10
<code>time-limit</code>	<p>Specifies the number of seconds before committing the chunk and taking a checkpoint when <code>checkpoint-policy="item"</code>.</p> <p>If <code>item-count</code> items have not been processed by <code>time-limit</code> seconds, the chunk is committed and a checkpoint is taken.</p>	0 (no limit)
<code>buffer-items</code>	Specifies if processed items are buffered until it is time to take a checkpoint. If true, a single call to the item writer is made with a list of the buffered items before committing the chunk and taking a checkpoint.	true
<code>skip-limit</code>	Specifies the number of skippable exceptions to skip in this step during chunk processing. Skippable exception classes are specified with the <code>skippable-exception-classes</code> element.	No limit
<code>retry-limit</code>	Specifies the number of attempts to execute this step if retryable exceptions occur. Retryable exception classes are specified with the <code>retryable-exception-classes</code> element.	No limit

The chunk element can contain the following elements:

- One `reader` element.
This element specifies a batch artifact that implements the `ItemReader` interface.
- One `processor` element.
This element specifies a batch artifact that implements the `ItemProcessor` interface.
- One `writer` element.
This element specifies a batch artifact that implements the `ItemWriter` interface.
- One `checkpoint-algorithm` element (optional).
This element specifies a batch artifact that implements the `CheckpointAlgorithm` interface and provides a custom checkpoint policy.
- One `skippable-exception-classes` element (optional).
This element specifies a set of exceptions thrown from the reader, writer, and processor batch artifacts that chunk processing should skip. The `skip-limit`

attribute from the chunk element specifies the maximum number of skipped exceptions.

- One `retryable-exception-classes` element (optional).

This element specifies a set of exceptions thrown from the reader, writer, and processor batch artifacts that chunk processing will retry. The `retry-limit` attribute from the chunk element specifies the maximum number of attempts.

- One `no-rollback-exception-classes` element (optional).

This element specifies a set of exceptions thrown from the reader, writer, and processor batch artifacts that should not cause the batch runtime to roll back the current chunk, but to retry the current operation without a rollback instead.

For exception types not specified in this element, the current chunk is rolled back by default when an exception occurs.

The following is an example of a chunk-oriented step:

```
<step id="stepC" next="stepD">
  <chunk checkpoint-policy="item" item-count="5" time-limit="180"
    buffer-items="true" skip-limit="10" retry-limit="3">
    <reader ref="pkg.MyItemReaderImpl"></reader>
    <processor ref="pkg.MyItemProcessorImpl"></processor>
    <writer ref="pkg.MyItemWriterImpl"></writer>
    <skippable-exception-classes>
      <include class="pkg.MyItemException"/>
      <exclude class="pkg.MyItemSeriousSubException"/>
    </skippable-exception-classes>
    <retryable-exception-classes>
      <include class="pkg.MyResourceTempUnavailable"/>
    </retryable-exception-classes>
  </chunk>
</step>
```

This example defines a chunk step and specifies its reader, processor, and writer artifacts. The step updates a checkpoint and commits each chunk after processing five items. It skips all `MyItemException` exceptions and all its subtypes, except for `MyItemSeriousSubException`, up to a maximum of ten skipped exceptions. The step retries a chunk when a `MyResourceTempUnavailable` exception occurs, up to a maximum of three attempts.

53.4.2.2 The batchlet Element

The `batchlet` element is a child of the `step` element for task-oriented steps. This element only has the `ref` attribute, which specifies a batch artifact that implements the `Batchlet` interface. The `batch` element can contain a `properties` element.

The following is an example of a task-oriented step:

```
<step id="stepD" next="stepE">
  <batchlet ref="pkg.MyBatchletImpl">
    <properties>
      <property name="pname" value="pvalue"/>
    </properties>
  </batchlet>
</step>
```

This example defines a batch step and specifies its batch artifact.

53.4.2.3 The partition Element

The `partition` element is a child of the `step` element. It indicates that a step is partitioned. Most partitioned steps are chunk steps where the processing of each item does not depend on the results of processing previous items. You specify the number of partitions in a step and provide each partition with specific information on which items to process, such as the following:

- A range of items. For example, partition 1 processes items 1 through 500, and partition 2 processes items 501 through 1000.
- An input source. For example, partition 1 processes the items in `input1.txt` and partition 2 processes the items in `input2.txt`.

When the number of partitions, the number of items, and the input sources for a partitioned step are known at development or deployment time, you can use `partition` properties in the job definition file to specify partition-specific information and access these properties from the step batch artifacts. The runtime creates as many instances of the step batch artifacts (reader, processor, and writer) as partitions, and each artifact instance receives the properties specific to its partition.

In most cases, the number of partitions, the number of items, or the input sources for a partitioned step can only be determined at run time. Instead of specifying partition-specific properties statically in the job definition file, you provide a batch artifact that can access your data sources at run time and determine how many partitions are needed and what range of items each partition should process. This batch artifact is an implementation of the `PartitionMapper` interface. The batch runtime invokes this artifact and then uses the information it provides to instantiate the step batch artifacts (reader, writer, and processor) for each partition and to pass them partition-specific data as parameters.

The rest of this section describes the `partition` element in detail and shows two examples of job definition files: one that uses `partition` properties to specify a range of items for each partition, and one that relies on a `PartitionMapper` implementation to determine partition-specific information.

See [The Phone Billing Chunk Step](#) in [The phonebilling Example Application](#) for a complete example of a partitioned chunk step.

The `partition` element can contain the following elements:

- One `plan` element, if the `mapper` element is not specified.
This element defines the number of partitions, the number of threads, and the properties for each partition in the job definition file. The `plan` element is useful when this information is known at development or deployment time.
- One `mapper` element, if the `plan` element is not specified.
This element specifies a batch artifact that provides the number of partitions, the number of threads, and the properties for each partition. The batch artifact is an implementation of the `PartitionMapper` interface. You use this option when the information required for each partition is only known at run time.
- One `reducer` element (optional).
This element specifies a batch artifact that receives control when a partitioned step begins, ends, or rolls back. The batch artifact enables you to merge results from different partitions and perform other related operations. The batch artifact is an implementation of the `PartitionReducer` interface.
- One `collector` element (optional).

This element specifies a batch artifact that sends intermediary results from each partition to a partition analyzer. The batch artifact sends the intermediary results after each checkpoint for chunk steps and at the end of the step for task steps. The batch artifact is an implementation of the `PartitionCollector` interface.

- One analyzer element (optional).

This element specifies a batch artifact that analyzes the intermediary results from the partition collector instances. The batch artifact is an implementation of the `PartitionAnalyzer` interface.

The following is an example of a partitioned step using the `plan` element:

```
<step id="stepE" next="stepF">
  <chunk>
    <reader ...></reader>
    <processor ...></processor>
    <writer ...></writer>
  </chunk>
  <partition>
    <plan partitions="2" threads="2">
      <properties partition="0">
        <property name="firstItem" value="0"/>
        <property name="lastItem" value="500"/>
      </properties>
      <properties partition="1">
        <property name="firstItem" value="501"/>
        <property name="lastItem" value="999"/>
      </properties>
    </plan>
  </partition>
  <reducer ref="MyPartitionReducerImpl"/>
  <collector ref="MyPartitionCollectorImpl"/>
  <analyzer ref="MyPartitionAnalyzerImpl"/>
</step>
```

In this example, the `plan` element specifies the properties for each partition in the job definition file.

The following example uses a `mapper` element instead of a `plan` element. The `PartitionMapper` implementation dynamically provides the same information as the `plan` element provides in the job definition file:

```
<step id="stepE" next="stepF">
  <chunk>
    <reader ...></reader>
    <processor ...></processor>
    <writer ...></writer>
  </chunk>
  <partition>
    <mapper ref="MyPartitionMapperImpl"/>
    <reducer ref="MyPartitionReducerImpl"/>
    <collector ref="MyPartitionCollectorImpl"/>
    <analyzer ref="MyPartitionAnalyzerImpl"/>
  </partition>
</step>
```

Refer to [The phonebilling Example Application](#) for an example implementation of the `PartitionMapper` interface.

53.4.3 The flow Element

The flow element can be a child of the `job`, `flow`, and `split` elements. Its attributes are `id` and `next`. Flows can transition to flows, steps, splits, and decision elements. The flow element can contain the following elements:

- One or more step elements.
- One or more flow elements (optional).
- One or more split elements (optional).
- One or more decision elements (optional).

The last step in a flow is the one with no `next` attribute or next element. Steps and other elements in a flow cannot transition to elements outside the flow.

The following is an example of the flow element:

```
<flow id="flowA" next="stepE">
  <step id="flowAstepA" next="flowAstepB">...</step>
  <step id="flowAstepB" next="flowAflowC">...</step>
  <flow id="flowAflowC" next="flowAsplitD">...</flow>
  <split id="flowAsplitD" next="flowAstepE">...</split>
  <step id="flowAstepE">...</step>
</flow>
```

This example flow contains three steps, one flow, and one split. The last step does not have the `next` attribute. The flow transitions to `stepE` when its last step completes.

53.4.4 The split Element

The split element can be a child of the `job` and `flow` elements. Its attributes are `id` and `next`. Splits can transition to splits, steps, flows, and decision elements. The split element can only contain one or more flow elements that can only transition to other flow elements in the split.

The following is an example of a split with three flows that execute concurrently:

```
<split id="splitA" next="stepB">
  <flow id="splitAflowA">...</flow>
  <flow id="splitAflowB">...</flow>
  <flow id="splitAflowC">...</flow>
</split>
```

53.4.5 The decision Element

The decision element can be a child of the `job` and `flow` elements. Its attributes are `id` and `next`. Steps, flows, and splits can transition to a decision element. This element specifies a batch artifact that decides the next step, flow, or split to execute based on information from the execution of the previous step, flow, or split. The batch artifact implements the `Decider` interface. The decision element can contain the following elements:

- One or more end elements (optional).
This element sets the batch status to `COMPLETED`.
- One or more stop elements (optional).
This element sets the batch status to `STOPPED`.
- One or more fail elements (optional).

This element sets the batch status to `FAILED`.

- One or more `next` elements (optional).
- One `properties` element (optional).

The following is an example of the `decider` element:

```
<decision id="decisionA" ref="MyDeciderImpl">
  <fail on="FAILED" exit-status="FAILED_AT_DECIDER" />
  <end on="COMPLETED" exit-status="COMPLETED_AT_DECIDER" />
  <stop on="MY_TEMP_ISSUE_EXIST_STATUS" restart="step2" />
</decision>
```

53.5 Creating Batch Artifacts

After you define a job in terms of its batch artifacts using the Job Specification Language (JSL), you create these artifacts as Java classes that implement the interfaces in the `javax.batch.api` package and its subpackages.

This section lists the main batch artifact interfaces, demonstrates how to access context objects from the batch runtime, and provides some examples.

53.5.1 Batch Artifact Interfaces

The following tables list the interfaces that you implement to create batch artifacts. The interface implementations are referenced from the elements described in [Using the Job Specification Language](#).

[Table 53–3](#) lists the interfaces to implement batch artifacts for chunk steps, task steps, and decision elements.

[Table 53–4](#) lists the interfaces to implement batch artifacts for partitioned steps.

[Table 53–5](#) lists the interfaces to implement batch artifacts for job and step listeners.

Table 53–3 Main batch artifact interfaces

Package	Interface	Description
<code>javax.batch.api</code>	<code>Batchlet</code>	Implements the business logic of a task-oriented step. It is referenced from the <code>batchlet</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api</code>	<code>Decider</code>	Decides the next step, flow, or split to execute based on information from the execution of the previous step, flow, or split. It is referenced from the <code>decision</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk</code>	<code>CheckpointAlgorithm</code>	Implements a custom checkpoint policy for chunk steps. It is referenced from the <code>checkpoint-algorithm</code> element inside the <code>chunk</code> element.

Table 53–3 (Cont.) Main batch artifact interfaces

Package	Interface	Description
javax.batch.api.chunk	ItemReader	Reads items from an input source in a chunk step. It is referenced from the reader element inside the chunk element.
javax.batch.api.chunk	ItemProcessor	Processes input items to obtain output items in chunk steps. It is referenced from the processor element inside the chunk element.
javax.batch.api.chunk	ItemWriter	Writes output items in chunk steps. It is referenced from the writer element inside the chunk element.

Table 53–4 Partition batch artifact interfaces

Package	Interface	Description
javax.batch.api.partition	PartitionPlan	Provides details on how to execute a partitioned step, such as the number of partitions, the number of threads, and the parameters for each partition. This artifact is not referenced directly from the job definition file.
javax.batch.api.partition	PartitionMapper	Provides a PartitionPlan object. It is referenced from the mapper element inside the partition element.
javax.batch.api.partition	PartitionReducer	Receives control when a partitioned step begins, ends, or rolls back. It is referenced from the reducer element inside the partition element.
javax.batch.api.partition	PartitionCollector	Sends intermediary results from each partition to a partition analyzer. It is referenced from the collector element inside the partition element.
javax.batch.api.partition	PartitionAnalyzer	Processes data and final results from each partition. It is referenced from the analyzer element inside the partition element.

Table 53–5 Listener batch artifact interfaces

Package	Interface	Description
javax.batch.api.listener	JobListener	Intercepts job execution before and after running a job. It is referenced from the listener element inside the job element.
javax.batch.api.listener	StepListener	Intercepts step execution before and after running a step. It is referenced from the listener element inside the step element.
javax.batch.api.chunk.listener	ChunkListener	Intercepts chunk processing in chunk steps before and after processing each chunk, and on errors. It is referenced from the listener element inside the step element.

Table 53–5 (Cont.) Listener batch artifact interfaces

Package	Interface	Description
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk.listener</code>	<code>ItemReadListener</code>	Intercepts item reading in chunk steps before and after reading each item, and on errors. It is referenced from the <code>listener</code> element inside the <code>step</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk.listener</code>	<code>ItemProcessListener</code>	Intercepts item processing in chunk steps before and after processing each item, and on errors. It is referenced from the <code>listener</code> element inside the <code>step</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk.listener</code>	<code>ItemWriteListener</code>	Intercepts item writing in chunk steps before and after writing each item, and on errors. It is referenced from the <code>listener</code> element inside the <code>step</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk.listener</code>	<code>RetryReadListener</code>	Intercepts retry item reading in chunk steps when an exception occurs. It is referenced from the <code>listener</code> element inside the <code>step</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk.listener</code>	<code>RetryProcessListener</code>	Intercepts retry item processing in chunk steps when an exception occurs. It is referenced from the <code>listener</code> element inside the <code>step</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk.listener</code>	<code>RetryWriteListener</code>	Intercepts retry item writing in chunk steps when an exception occurs. It is referenced from the <code>listener</code> element inside the <code>step</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk.listener</code>	<code>SkipReadListener</code>	Intercepts skippable exception handling for item readers in chunk steps. It is referenced from the <code>listener</code> element inside the <code>step</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk.listener</code>	<code>SkipProcessListener</code>	Intercepts skippable exception handling for item processors in chunk steps. It is referenced from the <code>listener</code> element inside the <code>step</code> element.
<code>javax.batch.api.chunk.listener</code>	<code>SkipWriteListener</code>	Intercepts skippable exception handling for item writers in chunk steps. It is referenced from the <code>listener</code> element inside the <code>step</code> element.

53.5.2 Dependency Injection in Batch Artifacts

To ensure that Contexts and Dependency Injection (CDI) works in your batch artifacts, follow these steps:

1. Define your batch artifact implementations as CDI named beans using the `Named` annotation.

For example, define an item reader implementation in a chunk step as follows:

```
@Named("MyItemReaderImpl")
public class MyItemReaderImpl implements ItemReader {
    /* ... Override the ItemReader interface methods ... */
}
```

2. Provide a public, empty, and no-arguments constructor for your batch artifacts.

For example, provide the following constructor for the artifact above:

```
public MyItemReaderImpl() {}
```

3. Specify the CDI name for the batch artifacts in the job definition file, instead of using the fully qualified name of the class.

For example, define the step for the artifact above as follows:

```
<step id="stepA" next="stepB">
  <chunk>
    <reader ref="MyItemReaderImpl"></reader>
    ...
  </chunk>
</step>
```

This example uses the CDI name (`MyItemReaderImpl`) instead of the fully qualified name of the class (`com.xyz.pkg.MyItemReaderImpl`) to specify a batch artifact.

4. Ensure that your module is a CDI bean archive by annotating your batch artifacts with the `javax.enterprise.context.Dependent` annotation or by including an `empty beans.xml` deployment description with your application. For example, the following batch artifact is annotated with `@Dependent`:

```
@Dependent
@Named("MyItemReaderImpl")
public class MyItemReaderImpl implements ItemReader { ... }
```

For more information on bean archives, see [Packaging CDI Applications in Chapter 33, "Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE: Advanced Topics"](#).

Note: Contexts and Dependency Injection (CDI) is required in order to access context objects from the batch runtime in batch artifacts.

You may encounter the following errors if you do not follow this procedure:

- The batch runtime can not locate some batch artifacts.
- The batch artifacts throw null pointer exceptions when accessing injected objects.

53.5.3 Using the Context Objects from the Batch Runtime

The batch runtime provides context objects that implement the `JobContext` and `StepContext` interfaces in the `javax.batch.runtime.context` package. These objects are associated with the current job and step respectively and enable you to:

- Get information from the current job or step, such as its name, instance ID, execution ID, batch status, and exit status.
- Set the user-defined exit status.
- Store user data.
- Get property values from the job or step definition.

You can inject context objects from the batch runtime inside batch artifact implementations like item readers, item processors, item writers, batchlets, listeners, and so on. The following example demonstrates how to access property values from the job definition file in an item reader implementation:

```
@Dependent
@Named("MyItemReaderImpl")
```

```

public class MyItemReaderImpl implements ItemReader {
    @Inject
    JobContext jobCtx;

    public MyItemReaderImpl() {}

    @Override
    public void open(Serializable checkpoint) throws Exception {
        String fileName = jobCtx.getProperties()
            .getProperty("log_file_name");
        ...
    }
    ...
}

```

See [Dependency Injection in Batch Artifacts](#) for instructions on how to define your batch artifacts to use dependency injection.

Note: Do **not** access batch context objects inside artifact constructors.

Because the job does not run until you submit it to the batch runtime, the batch context objects are not available when CDI instantiates your artifacts upon loading your application. The instantiation of these beans fails and the batch runtime can not find your batch artifacts when your application submits the job.

53.6 Submitting Jobs to the Batch Runtime

The `JobOperator` interface in the `javax.batch.operations` package enables you to submit jobs to the batch runtime and obtain information about existing jobs. This interface provides the following functionality:

- Obtain the names of all known jobs.
- Start, stop, restart, and abandon jobs.
- Obtain job instances and job executions.

The `BatchRuntime` class in the `javax.batch.runtime` package provides the `getJobOperator` factory method to obtain `JobOperator` objects.

53.6.1 Starting a Job

The following example code demonstrates how to obtain a `JobOperator` object and submit a batch job:

```

JobOperator jobOperator = BatchRuntime.getJobOperator();
Properties props = new Properties();
props.setProperty("parameter1", "value1");
...
long execID = jobOperator.start("simplejob", props);

```

The first argument of the `JobOperator.start` method is the name of the job as specified in its job definition file. The second parameter is a `Properties` object that represents the parameters for this job execution. You can use job parameters to pass information that is only known at run time to a job.

53.6.2 Checking the Status of a Job

The `JobExecution` interface in the `javax.batch.runtime` package provides methods to obtain information about submitted jobs. This interface provides the following functionality:

- Obtain the batch and exit status of a job execution.
- Obtain the time the execution was started, updated, or ended.
- Obtain the job name.
- Obtain the execution ID.

The following example code demonstrates how to obtain the batch status of a job using its execution ID:

```
JobExecution jobExec = jobOperator.getJobExecution(execID);
String status = jobExec.getBatchStatus().toString();
```

53.6.3 Invoking the Batch Runtime in Your Application

The component from which you invoke the batch runtime depends on the architecture of your particular application. For example, you can invoke the batch runtime from an enterprise bean, a servlet, a managed bean, and so on.

See [The webserverlog Example Application](#) and [The phonebilling Example Application](#) for details on how to invoke the batch runtime from a managed bean driven by a JavaServer Faces user interface.

53.7 Packaging Batch Applications

Job definition files and batch artifacts do not require separate packaging and can be included in any Java EE application.

Package the batch artifact classes with the rest of the classes of your application, and include the job definition files in one of the following directories:

- `META-INF/batch-jobs/` for jar packages.
- `WEB-INF/classes/META-INF/batch-jobs/` for war packages.

The name of each job definition file must match its job ID. For example, if you defined a job as follows:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<job id="simplejob" xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
      version="1.0">
...
</job>
```

and you are packaging your application as a war archive, include the job definition file in `WEB-INF/classes/META-INF/batch-jobs/simplejob.xml`.

53.8 The webserverlog Example Application

The `webserverlog` example application, located in the `tut-install/examples/batch/webserverlog/` directory, demonstrates how to use the batch framework in Java EE to analyze the log file from a web server. This example application reads a log file and finds what percentage of page views from tablet devices are product sales.

53.8.1 Architecture of the webserverlog Example Application

The webserverlog example application consists of the following elements:

- A job definition file (`webserverlog.xml`) that uses the Job Specification Language (JSL) to define a batch job with a chunk step and a task step. The chunk step acts as a filter and the task step calculates statistics on the remaining entries.
- A log file (`log1.txt`) that serves as input data to the batch job.
- Two Java classes (`LogLine` and `LogFilteredLine`) that represent input items and output items for the chunk step.
- Three batch artifacts (`LogLineReader`, `LogLineProcessor`, and `LogFilteredLineWriter`) that implement the chunk step of the application. This step reads items from the web server log file, filters them by the web browser used by the client, and writes the results to a text file.
- Two batch artifacts (`InfoJobListener` and `InfoItemProcessListener`) that implement two simple listeners.
- A batch artifact (`MobileBatchlet.java`) that calculates statistics on the filtered items.
- Two JavaServer Faces (JSF) pages (`index.xhtml` and `jobstarted.xhtml`) that provide the front end of the batch application. The first page shows the log file that will be processed by the batch job, and the second page enables the user to check on the status of the job and shows the results.
- A session bean (`JsfbBean`) that is accessed from the JSF pages. The bean submits the job to the batch runtime, checks on the status of the job, and reads the results from a text file.

53.8.1.1 The Job Definition File

The `webserverlog.xml` job definition file is located in the `WEB-INF/classes/META-INF/batch-jobs/` directory. The file specifies seven job-level properties and two steps:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<job id="webserverlog" xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
      version="1.0">
  <properties>
    <property name="log_file_name" value="log1.txt"/>
    <property name="filtered_file_name" value="filtered1.txt"/>
    <property name="num_browsers" value="2"/>
    <property name="browser_1" value="Tablet Browser D"/>
    <property name="browser_2" value="Tablet Browser E"/>
    <property name="buy_page" value="/auth/buy.html"/>
    <property name="out_file_name" value="result1.txt"/>
  </properties>
  <listeners>
    <listener ref="InfoJobListener"/>
  </listeners>
  <step id="mobilefilter" next="mobileanalyzer"> ... </step>
  <step id="mobileanalyzer"> ... </step>
</job>
```

The first step is defined as follows:

```
<step id="mobilefilter" next="mobileanalyzer">
  <listeners>
    <listener ref="InfoItemProcessListeners"/>
  </listeners>
</step>
```

```
</listeners>
<chunk checkpoint-policy="item" item-count="10">
  <reader ref="LogLineReader"></reader>
  <processor ref="LogLineProcessor"></processor>
  <writer ref="LogFilteredLineWriter"></writer>
</chunk>
</step>
```

This step is a normal chunk step that specifies the batch artifacts that implement each phase of the step. The batch artifact names are not fully qualified class names, so the batch artifacts are CDI beans annotated with `@Named`.

The second step is defined as follows:

```
<step id="mobileanalyzer">
  <batchlet ref="MobileBatchlet"></batchlet>
  <end on="COMPLETED"/>
</step>
```

This step is a task step that specifies the batch artifact that implements it. This is the last step of the job.

53.8.1.2 The LogLine and LogFilteredLine Items

The `LogLine` class represents entries in the web server log file and it is defined as follows:

```
public class LogLine {
    private String datetime;
    private String ipaddr;
    private String browser;
    private String url;

    /* ... Constructor, getters, and setters ... */
}
```

The `LogFilteredLine` class is similar to this class but only has two fields: the IP address of the client and the URL.

53.8.1.3 The Chunk Step Batch Artifacts

The first step is composed of the `LogLineReader`, `LogLineProcessor`, and `LogFilteredLineWriter` batch artifacts.

The `LogLineReader` artifact reads records from the web server log file:

```
@Dependent
@Named("LogLineReader")
public class LogLineReader implements ItemReader {
    private ItemNumberCheckpoint checkpoint;
    private String fileName;
    private BufferedReader breader;
    @Inject
    private JobContext jobCtx;

    public LogLineReader() { }

    /* ... Override the open, close, readItem, and
     *      checkpointInfo methods ... */
}
```

The open method reads the `log_file_name` property and opens the log file with a buffered reader. In this example, the log file has been included with the application under `webserverlog/WEB-INF/classes/log1.txt`.

```
fileName = jobCtx.getProperties().getProperty("log_file_name");
ClassLoader classLoader = Thread.currentThread().getContextClassLoader();
InputStream iStream = classLoader.getResourceAsStream(fileName);
breader = new BufferedReader(new InputStreamReader(iStream));
```

If a checkpoint object is provided, the open method advances the reader up to the last checkpoint. Otherwise, this method creates a new checkpoint object. The checkpoint object keeps track of the line number from the last committed chunk.

The read method returns a new `LogLine` object or null at the end of the log file:

```
@Override
public Object readItem() throws Exception {
    String entry = breader.readLine();
    if (entry != null) {
        checkpoint.nextLine();
        return new LogLine(entry);
    } else
        return null;
}
```

The `LogLineProcessor` artifact obtains a list of browsers from the job properties and filters the log entries according to the list:

```
@Override
public Object processItem(Object item) {
    /* Obtain a list of browsers we are interested in */
    if (nbrowsers == 0) {
        Properties props = jobCtx.getProperties();
        nbrowsers = Integer.parseInt(props.getProperty("num_browsers"));
        browsers = new String[nbrowsers];
        for (int i = 1; i < nbrowsers+1; i++)
            browsers[i-1] = props.getProperty("browser_" + i);
    }

    LogLine logline = (LogLine) item;
    /* Filter for only the mobile/tablet browsers as specified */
    for (int i=0; i < nbrowsers; i++) {
        if (logline.getBrowser().equals(browsers[i])) {
            return new LogFilteredLine(logline);
        }
    }
    return null;
}
```

The `LogFilteredLineWriter` artifact reads the name of the output file from the job properties. The open method opens the file for writing. If a checkpoint object is provided, the artifact continues writing at the end of the file; otherwise, it overwrites the file if it exists. The `writeItems` method writes filtered items to the output file:

```
@Override
public void writeItems(List<Object> items) throws Exception {
    /* Write the filtered lines to the output file */
    for (int i = 0; i < items.size(); i++) {
        LogFilteredLine filtLine = (LogFilteredLine) items.get(i);
        bwriter.write(filtLine.toString());
        bwriter.newLine();
    }
}
```

```
    }  
}
```

53.8.1.4 The Listener Batch Artifacts

The `InfoJobListener` batch artifact implements a simple listener that writes log messages when the job starts and when it ends:

```
@Dependent  
@Named("InfoJobListener")  
public class InfoJobListener implements JobListener {  
    ...  
    @Override  
    public void beforeJob() throws Exception {  
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "The job is starting");  
    }  
  
    @Override  
    public void afterJob() throws Exception { ... }  
}
```

The `InfoItemProcessListener` batch artifact implements the `ItemProcessListener` interface for chunk steps:

```
@Dependent  
@Named("InfoItemProcessListener")  
public class InfoItemProcessListener implements ItemProcessListener {  
    ...  
    @Override  
    public void beforeProcess(Object o) throws Exception {  
        LogLine logline = (LogLine) o;  
        logger.log(Level.INFO, "Processing entry " + logline);  
    }  
    ...  
}
```

53.8.1.5 The Task Step Batch Artifact

The task step is implemented by the `MobileBatchlet` artifact, which computes what percentage of the filtered log entries are purchases:

```
@Override  
public String process() throws Exception {  
    /* ... Get properties from the job definition file ... */  
    /* Count from the output of the previous chunk step */  
    breader = new BufferedReader(new FileReader(fileName));  
    String line = breader.readLine();  
    while (line != null) {  
        String[] lineSplit = line.split(", ");  
        if (buyPage.compareTo(lineSplit[1]) == 0)  
            pageVisits++;  
        totalVisits++;  
        line = breader.readLine();  
    }  
    breader.close();  
    /* ... Write the result ... */  
}
```

53.8.1.6 The JavaServer Faces Pages

The `index.xhtml` page contains a text area that shows the web server log. The page provides a button for the user to submit the batch job and navigate to the next page.

```
<body>
    ...
    <textarea cols="90" rows="25"
        readonly="true">#{jsfBean.getInputLog()}</textarea>
    ...
    <h:form>
        <h:commandButton value="Start Batch Job"
            action="#{jsfBean.startBatchJob()}"></h:commandButton>
    </h:form>
</body>
```

This page calls the methods of the session bean to show the log file and submit the batch job.

The `jobstarted.xhtml` page provides a button to check the current status of the batch job and displays the results when the job finishes:

```
<p>Current Status of the Job: <b>#{jsfBean.jobStatus}</b></p>
<p>#{jsfBean.showResults()}</p>
<h:form>
    <h:commandButton value="Check Status" action="jobstarted"
        rendered="#{jsfBean.completed==false}">
    </h:commandButton>
</h:form>
```

53.8.1.7 The Session Bean

The `JsfbBean` session bean submits the job to the batch runtime, checks on the status of the job, and reads the results from a text file.

The `startBatchJob` method submits the job to the batch runtime:

```
/* Submit the batch job to the batch runtime.
 * JSF Navigation method (return the name of the next page) */
public String startBatchJob() {
    jobOperator = BatchRuntime.getJobOperator();
    execID = jobOperator.start("webserverlog", null);
    return "jobstarted";
}
```

The `getJobStatus` method checks the status of the job:

```
/* Get the status of the job from the batch runtime */
public String getJobStatus() {
    return jobOperator.getJobExecution(execID).getBatchStatus()
        .toString();
}
```

The `showResults` method reads the results from a text file.

53.8.2 Running the webserverlog Example Application

This section describes how to run the `webserverlog` example application using NetBeans IDE and from the command line.

53.8.2.1 To Run the webserverlog Example Application Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/batch/webserverlog`
3. Select the webserverlog folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the webserverlog project and select **Run**.
This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, webserverlog.war, located in the target/ directory; deploys it to the server; and launches a web browser window with the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/webserverlog/
```

53.8.2.2 To Run the webserverlog Example Application Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server is running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).
2. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/batch/webserverlog`
3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:
`mvn install`
4. Open a web browser window and type the following address:

```
http://localhost:8080/webserverlog/
```

53.9 The phonebilling Example Application

The phonebilling example application, located in the `tut-install/examples/batch/phonebilling/` directory, demonstrates how to use the batch framework in Java EE to implement a phone billing system. This example application processes a log file of phone calls and creates a bill for each customer.

53.9.1 Architecture of the phonebilling Example Application

The phonebilling example application consists of the following elements:

- A job definition file (`phonebilling.xml`) that uses the Job Specification Language (JSL) to define a batch job with two chunk steps. The first step reads call records from a log file and associates them with a bill. The second step computes the amount due and writes each bill to a text file.
- A Java class (`CallRecordLogCreator`) that creates the log file for the batch job. This is an auxiliary component that does not demonstrate any key functionality in this example.
- Two Java Persistence API (JPA) entities (`CallRecord` and `PhoneBill`) that represent call records and customer bills. The application uses a JPA entity manager to store instances of these entities in a database.
- Three batch artifacts (`CallRecordReader`, `CallRecordProcessor`, and `CallRecordWriter`) that implement the first step of the application. This step reads

call records from the log file, associates them with a bill, and stores them in a database.

- Four batch artifacts (`BillReader`, `BillProcessor`, `BillWriter`, and `BillPartitionMapper`) that implement the second step of the application. This step is a partitioned step that gets each bill from the database, calculates the amount due, and writes it to a text file.
- Two JavaServer Faces (JSF) pages (`index.xhtml` and `jobstarted.xhtml`) that provide the front end of the batch application. The first page shows the log file that will be processed by the batch job, and the second page enables the user to check on the status of the job and shows the resulting bill for each customer.
- A session bean (`JsfbBean`) that is accessed from the JSF pages. The bean submits the job to the batch runtime, checks on the status of the job, and reads the text files for each bill.

53.9.1.1 The Job Definition File

The `phonebilling.xml` job definition file is located in the `WEB-INF/classes/META-INF/batch-jobs/` directory. The file specifies three job-level properties and two steps:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<job id="phonebilling" xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
      version="1.0">
  <properties>
    <property name="log_file_name" value="log1.txt"/>
    <property name="airtime_price" value="0.08"/>
    <property name="tax_rate" value="0.07"/>
  </properties>
  <step id="callrecords" next="bills"> ... </step>
  <step id="bills"> ... </step>
</job>
```

The first step is defined as follows:

```
<step id="callrecords" next="bills">
  <chunk checkpoint-policy="item" item-count="10">
    <reader ref="CallRecordReader"></reader>
    <processor ref="CallRecordProcessor"></processor>
    <writer ref="CallRecordWriter"></writer>
  </chunk>
</step>
```

This step is a normal chunk step that specifies the batch artifacts that implement each phase of the step. The batch artifact names are not fully qualified class names, so the batch artifacts are CDI beans annotated with `@Named`.

The second step is defined as follows:

```
<step id="bills">
  <chunk checkpoint-policy="item" item-count="2">
    <reader ref="BillReader"></reader>
    <processor ref="BillProcessor"></processor>
    <writer ref="BillWriter"></writer>
  </chunk>
  <partition>
    <mapper ref="BillPartitionMapper"/>
  </partition>
  <end on="COMPLETED"/>
</step>
```

This step is a partitioned chunk step. The partition plan is specified through the `BillPartitionMapper` artifact instead of using the plan element.

53.9.1.2 The CallRecord and PhoneBill Entities

The `CallRecord` entity is defined as follows:

```
@Entity
public class CallRecord implements Serializable {
    @Id @GeneratedValue
    private Long id;
    @Temporal(TemporalType.DATE)
    private Date datetime;
    private String fromNumber;
    private String toNumber;
    private int minutes;
    private int seconds;
    private BigDecimal price;

    public CallRecord() { }

    public CallRecord(String datetime, String from,
                      String to, int min, int sec)
        throws ParseException { ... }

    public CallRecord(String jsonData) throws ParseException { ... }

    /* ... Getters and setters ... */
}
```

The `id` field is generated automatically by the JPA implementation to store and retrieve `CallRecord` objects to and from a database.

The second constructor creates a `CallRecord` object from an entry of JSON data in the log file using the JSON Processing API. Log entries look as follows:

```
{"datetime": "03/01/2013 04:03", "from": "555-0101",
"to": "555-0114", "length": "03:39"}
```

The `PhoneBill` entity is defined as follows:

```
@Entity
public class PhoneBill implements Serializable {
    @Id
    private String phoneNumber;
    @OneToMany(cascade = CascadeType.PERSIST)
    @OrderBy("datetime ASC")
    private List<CallRecord> calls;
    private BigDecimal amountBase;
    private BigDecimal taxRate;
    private BigDecimal tax;
    private BigDecimal amountTotal;

    public PhoneBill() { }

    public PhoneBill(String number) {
        this.phoneNumber = number;
        calls = new ArrayList<>();
    }

    public void addCall(CallRecord call) {
```

```

        calls.add(call);
    }

    public void calculate(BigDecimal taxRate) { ... }

    /* ... Getters and setters ... */
}

```

The `OneToMany` annotation defines the relationship between a bill and its call records. The `CascadeType.PERSIST` parameter indicates that the elements in the call list should be automatically persisted when the phone bill is persisted. The `OrderBy` annotation defines an order for retrieving the elements of the call list from the database.

The batch artifacts use instances of these two entities as items to read, process, and write.

For more information on the Java Persistence API, see [Chapter 35, "Introduction to the Java Persistence API"](#). For more information on the JSON Processing API, see [Chapter 19, "JSON Processing"](#).

53.9.1.3 The Call Records Chunk Step

The first step is composed of the `CallRecordReader`, `CallRecordProcessor`, and `CallRecordWriter` batch artifacts.

The `CallRecordReader` artifact reads call records from the log file:

```

@Dependent
@Named("CallRecordReader")
public class CallRecordReader implements ItemReader {
    private ItemNumberCheckpoint checkpoint;
    private String fileName;
    private BufferedReader breader;
    @Inject
    JobContext jobCtx;

    /* ... Override the open, close, readItem,
     *    and checkpointInfo methods ... */
}

```

The `open` method reads the `log_filename` property and opens the log file with a buffered reader:

```

fileName = jobCtx.getProperties().getProperty("log_file_name");
breader = new BufferedReader(new FileReader(fileName));

```

If a checkpoint object is provided, the `open` method advances the reader up to the last checkpoint. Otherwise, this method creates a new checkpoint object. The checkpoint object keeps track of the line number from the last committed chunk.

The `read` method returns a new `CallRecord` object or null at the end of the log file.

```

@Override
public Object readItem() throws Exception {
    /* Read a line from the log file and
     * create a CallRecord from JSON */
    String callEntryJson = breader.readLine();
    if (callEntryJson != null) {
        checkpoint.nextItem();
        return new CallRecord(callEntryJson);
    } else
        return null;
}

```

```
}
```

The `CallRecordProcessor` artifact obtains the airtime price from the job properties, calculates the price of each call, and returns the call object. This artifact only overrides the `processItem` method.

The `CallRecordWriter` artifact associates each call record with a bill and stores the bill in the database. This artifact overrides the `open`, `close`, `writeItems`, and `checkpointInfo` methods. The `writeItems` method looks like this:

```
@Override
public void writeItems(List<Object> callList) throws Exception {

    for (Object callObject : callList) {
        CallRecord call = (CallRecord) callObject;
        PhoneBill bill = em.find(PhoneBill.class, call.getFromNumber());
        if (bill == null) {
            /* No bill for this customer yet, create one */
            bill = new PhoneBill(call.getFromNumber());
            bill.addCall(call);
            em.persist(bill);
        } else {
            /* Add call to existing bill */
            bill.addCall(call);
        }
    }
}
```

53.9.1.4 The Phone Billing Chunk Step

The second step is composed of the `BillReader`, `BillProcessor`, `BillWriter`, and `BillPartitionMapper` batch artifacts. This step gets the phone bills from the database, computes the tax and total amount due, and writes each bill to a text file. Since the processing of each bill is independent of the others, this step can be partitioned and run in more than one thread.

The `BillPartitionMapper` artifact specifies the number of partitions and the parameters for each partition. In this example, the parameters represent the range of items each partition should process. The artifact obtains the number of bills in the database to calculate these ranges. It provides a partition plan object which overrides the `getPartitions` and `getPartitionProperties` methods of the `PartitionPlan` interface. The `getPartitions` method looks as follows:

```
@Override
public Properties[] getPartitionProperties() {
    /* Assign an (approximately) equal number of elements
     * to each partition. */
    long totalItems = getBillCount();
    long partItems = (long) totalItems / getPartitions();
    long remItems = totalItems % getPartitions();

    /* Populate a Properties array. Each Properties element
     * in the array corresponds to each partition. */
    Properties[] props = new Properties[getPartitions()];

    for (int i=0; i<getPartitions(); i++) {
        props[i] = new Properties();
        props[i].put("firstItem", i*partItems);
        /* Last partition gets the remainder elements */
        if (i == getPartitions()-1)

```

```

        props[i].put("numItems", partItems + remItems);
    else
        props[i].put("numItems", partItems);
    }
    return props;
}

```

The `BillReader` artifact obtains the partition parameters as follows:

```

@Dependent
@Named("BillReader")
public class BillReader implements ItemReader {
    ...
    @Inject
    JobContext jobCtx;
    private Properties partParams;
    ...
    @Override
    public void open(Serializable ckpt) throws Exception {
        /* Get the parameters for this partition */
        JobOperator jobOperator = BatchRuntime.getJobOperator();
        long execID = jobCtx.getExecutionId();
        partParams = jobOperator.getParameters(execID);

        /* Get the range of items to work on in this partition */
        long firstItem0 = ((Long) partParams.get("firstItem"))
            .longValue();
        long numItems0 = ((Long) partParams.get("numItems"))
            .longValue();

        ...
    }
    ...
}

```

This artifact also obtains an iterator to read items from the JPA entity manager:

```

/* Obtain an iterator for the bills in this partition */
String query = "SELECT b FROM PhoneBill b ORDER BY b.phoneNumber";
Query q = em.createQuery(query)
    .setFirstResult((int)firstItem).setMaxResults((int)numItems);
iterator = q.getResultList().iterator();

```

The `BillProcessor` artifact iterates over the list of call records in a bill and calculates the tax and total amount due for each bill.

The `BillWriter` artifact writes each bill to a plain text file.

53.9.1.5 The JavaServer Faces Pages

The `index.xhtml` page contains a text area that shows the log file of call records. The page provides a button for the user to submit the batch job and navigate to the next page.

```

<body>
    <h1>The Phone Billing Example Application</h1>
    <h2>Log file</h2>
    <p>The batch job analyzes the following log file:</p>
    <textarea cols="90" rows="25"
        readonly="true">#{jsfBean.createAndShowLog()}</textarea>
    <p> </p>
    <h:form>
        <h:commandButton value="Start Batch Job"

```

```
        action="#{jsfBean.startBatchJob()}"></h:commandButton>
    </h:form>
</body>
```

This page calls the methods of the session bean to show the log file and submit the batch job.

The `jobstarted.xhtml` page provides a button to check the current status of the batch job and displays the bills when the job finishes:

```
<p>Current Status of the Job: <b>#{jsfBean.jobStatus}</b></p>
<h:dataTable var="_row" value="#{jsfBean.rowList}"
    border="1" rendered="#{jsfBean.completed}">
    <!-- ... show results from jsfBean.rowList ... -->
</h:dataTable>
<!-- Render the check status button if the job has not finished -->
<h:form>
    <h:commandButton value="Check Status"
        rendered="#{jsfBean.completed==false}"
        action="jobstarted">
    </h:commandButton>
</h:form>
```

53.9.1.6 The Session Bean

The `JsfBean` session bean submits the job to the batch runtime, checks on the status of the job, and reads the text files for each bill.

The `startBatchJob` method of the bean submits the job to the batch runtime:

```
/* Submit the batch job to the batch runtime.
 * JSF Navigation method (return the name of the next page) */
public String startBatchJob() {
    jobOperator = BatchRuntime.getJobOperator();
    execID = jobOperator.start("phonebilling", null);
    return "jobstarted";
}
```

The `getJobStatus` method of the bean checks the status of the job:

```
/* Get the status of the job from the batch runtime */
public String getJobStatus() {
    return jobOperator.getJobExecution(execID).getBatchStatus()
        .toString();
}
```

The `getRowList` method of the bean creates a list of bills to be displayed on the `jobstarted.xhtml` JSF page using a table.

53.9.2 Running the phonebilling Example Application

This section describes how to run the `phonebilling` example application using NetBeans IDE and from the command line.

53.9.2.1 To Run the phonebilling Example Application Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:

```
tut-install/examples/batch/phonebilling
```

3. Select the `phonebilling` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click the `phonebilling` project and select **Run**.
This command builds and packages the application into a WAR file, `phonebilling.war`, located in the `target/` directory; deploys it to the server; and launches a web browser window with the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/phonebilling/
```

53.9.2.2 To Run the `phonebilling` Example Application Using Maven

1. Ensure that the GlassFish Server and Java DB are running. For more information, see [Chapter 2, "Using the Tutorial Examples"](#).

2. In a terminal window, go to:

```
tut-install/examples/batch/phonebilling
```

3. Enter the following command to deploy the application:

```
mvn install
```

4. Open a web browser window and type the following address:

```
http://localhost:8080/phonebilling/
```

53.10 Further Information about Batch Processing

For more information on batch processing in Java EE, see the Batch Applications for the Java Platform specification:

<http://www.jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=352>

Concurrency Utilities

This chapter describes the concurrency utilities.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- [Concurrency Basics](#)
- [Main Components of the Concurrency Utilities](#)
- [Concurrency and Transactions](#)
- [Concurrency and Security](#)
- [The jobs Concurrency Example](#)

54.1 Concurrency Basics

Concurrency is the concept of executing two or more tasks at the same time (in parallel). Tasks may include methods (functions), parts of a program, or even other programs. With current computer architectures, support for multiple cores and multiple processors in a single CPU is very common.

Since the beginning, the Java Platform has offered support for concurrent programming, which was the basis for implementing many of the services offered by Java EE containers. At Java SE 5, additional high-level API support for concurrency was provided by the `java.util.concurrent` package.

Prior to Java EE 7, there were no specific APIs that allowed enterprise developers to use concurrency utilities in a safely standard manner. The Java EE web and EJB containers instantiate objects using container-managed thread pools. Therefore, using Java SE concurrent APIs to instantiate `Thread` objects was strongly discouraged. If a developer creates a new (non-managed) `Thread` object, the container could not guarantee that other Java EE platform services (for example, transactions and security) would be part of this `Thread`.

54.1.1 Threads and Processes

The two main concurrency concepts are **processes** and **threads**.

Processes are primarily associated with applications running on the operating system (OS). A process has specific runtime resources to interact with the underlying OS and allocate other resources, such as its own memory, just as the JVM process does. A JVM is in fact a process.

The Java programming language and platform are primarily concerned with threads.

Threads share some features with processes, since both consume resources from the OS or the execution environment. But threads are easier to create and consume many fewer resources than a process.

Because threads are so lightweight, any modern CPU that has a couple of cores and a few gigabytes of RAM can handle thousands of threads in a single JVM process. The precise numbers here will depend on the combined output of the CPU, OS, and RAM available of the machine, as well as on correct configuration (tuning) of the JVM.

Although concurrent programming solves many problems and can improve performance for most applications, there are a number of situations where multiple execution lines (threads or processes) can cause major problems. Such situations include the following:

- Deadlocks
- Thread starvation
- Concurrent accessing of shared resources
- Situations when the program generates incorrect data

54.2 Main Components of the Concurrency Utilities

Concurrent resources are managed objects that provide concurrency capabilities to Java EE applications. In GlassFish Server, you configure concurrent resources and then make them available for use by application components such as servlets and EJBs. Concurrent resources are accessed through JNDI lookup or resource injection.

The primary components of the concurrency utilities are as follows.

- **ManagedExecutorService:** A managed executor service is used by applications to execute submitted tasks asynchronously. Tasks are executed on threads that are started and managed by the container. The context of the container is propagated to the thread executing the task.

For example, by using an `ManagedExecutorService.submit()` call, a task, such as the `GenerateReportTask`, could be submitted to execute at a later time and then, by using the `Future` object callback, retrieve the result when it becomes available.
- **ManagedScheduledExecutorService:** A managed scheduled executor service is used by applications to execute submitted tasks asynchronously at specific times. Tasks are executed on threads that are started and managed by the container. The context of the container is propagated to the thread executing the task. The API provides the scheduling functionality that allows users to set a specific date/time for the Task execution programmatically in the application.
- **ContextService:** A context service is used to create dynamic proxy objects that capture the context of a container and enable applications to run within that context at a later time or be submitted to an Managed Executor Service. The context of the container is propagated to the thread executing the task.
- **ManagedThreadFactory:** A managed thread factory is used by applications to create managed threads. The threads are started and managed by the container. The context of the container is propagated to the thread executing the task. This object can also be used to provide custom factories for specific use cases (with custom Threads) and, for example, set specific/proprietary properties to these objects.

54.3 Concurrency and Transactions

The most basic operations for transactions are commit and rollback but, in a distributed environment with concurrent processing, it can be difficult to guarantee that commit or rollback operations will be successfully processed and the transaction can be spread among different threads, CPU cores, different physical machines, and networks.

Ensuring that a rollback operation will successfully executed in such a scenario is crucial. Concurrency Utilities relies on Java Transaction API (JTA) to implement and support transactions on its components through `javax.transaction.UserTransaction` to allow application developers to explicitly manage transaction boundaries. More information is available in the JTA specification.

Optionally, context objects can begin, commit, or roll back transactions, but these objects cannot enlist in parent component transactions.

The following code snippet illustrates a `Runnable` task that obtains a `UserTransaction` then starts and commits a transaction while interacting with other transactional components, such as an EJB and a database.

```
public class MyTransactionalTask implements Runnable {

    UserTransaction ut = ... // obtained through JNDI or injection

    public void run() {

        // Start a transaction
        ut.begin();

        // Invoke a Service or an EJB
        myEJB.businessMethod();

        // Update a database entity using an XA JDBC driver
        myEJB.updateCustomer(customer);

        // Commit the transaction
        ut.commit();

    }
}
```

54.4 Concurrency and Security

Although Concurrency Utilities for Java EE defers most security decisions to each application server implementation, if the container supports a security context, that context can be propagated to the thread of execution. The `ContextService` can support several runtime behaviors and the `security` attribute, if enabled, will propagate the container security principal.

54.5 The jobs Concurrency Example

This section describes a very basic example that shows how to use some of the basic concurrency features in an enterprise application. Specifically, this example uses one of the main components of Concurrency Utilities for Java EE, a Managed Executor Service.

The example demonstrates a scenario where a RESTful web service, exposed as a public API, is used to submit generic jobs for execution. These jobs are processed in the

background. Each job prints a "Starting" and a "Finished" message at the beginning and end of the execution. Also, to simulate background processing, each job takes 10 seconds to execute.

The RESTful service exposes two methods:

- `/token`: Exposed as a GET method that registers and returns valid API tokens.
- `/process`: Exposed as a POST method that receives a `jobID` query parameter, which is the identifier for the job to be executed, and a custom HTTP header named `X-REST-API-Key`, which will be used internally to validate requests with tokens.

The token is used to differentiate the Quality of Service (QoS) offered by the API. Users that provide a token in a service request can process multiple concurrent jobs. However, users that do not provide a token can process only one job at a time. Since every job takes 10 seconds to execute, users that provide no token will be able to execute only one call to the service every 10 seconds. For users that provide a token, processing will be much faster.

This is made possible by using two different Managed Executor Services, one for each type of request.

54.5.1 Running the jobs Example

After configuring GlassFish Server by adding two Managed Executor Services, you can use either NetBeans IDE or Maven to build, package, deploy, and run the jobs example.

54.5.1.1 To Configure GlassFish Server for the Basic Concurrency Example

To configure GlassFish Server, follow these steps.

1. Open the Administration Console at <http://localhost:4848>.
2. Expand the **Resources** node.
3. Expand the **Concurrent Resources** node.
4. Click **Managed Executor Services**.
5. On the Managed Executor Services page, click **New** to open the New Managed Executor Services page.
6. In the **JNDI Name** field, enter `MES_High` to create the high-priority Managed Executor Service. Use the following settings (keep the default values for other settings).
 - **Thread Priority**: 10
 - **Core Size**: 2
 - **Maximum Pool Size**: 5
 - **Task Queue Capacity**: 2
7. Click **OK**.
8. On the On the Managed Executor Services page, click **New** again.
9. In the **JNDI Name** field, enter `MES_Low` to create the low-priority Managed Executor Service. Use the following settings (keep the default values for other settings):
 - **Thread Priority**: 1

- **Core Size:** 1
- **Maximum Pool Size:** 1
- **Task Queue Capacity:** 0

10. Click OK.

54.5.1.2 To Build, Package, and Deploy the jobs Example Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/concurrency`
3. Select the `jobs` folder.
4. Click **Open Project**.
5. In the **Projects** tab, right-click `jobs` and select **Build**.

This command builds and deploys the application.

54.5.1.3 To Build, Package, and Deploy the jobs Example Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:
`tut-install/examples/concurrency/jobs`
2. Enter the following command to build and deploy the application:
`mvn install`
3. After you have finished running the application, undeploy it using the `mvn cargo:undeploy` command.

54.5.1.4 To Run the jobs Example and Submit Jobs With Low Priority

To run the example as a user who submits jobs with low priority, follow these steps:

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:
`http://localhost:8080/jobs`
2. In the Jobs Client page, enter a value of one to ten digits in the **Enter a JobID** field, enter nothing in the **Enter a Token** field, then click **Submit Job**.

The following message should be displayed at the bottom of the page.

```
Job 1 successfully submitted
```

The server log includes the following messages.

```
INFO: Invalid or missing token!
INFO: Task started LOW-1
INFO: Job 1 successfully submitted
INFO: Task finished LOW-1
```

You submitted a job with low priority. This means that you cannot submit another job for 10 seconds. If you try to do so, the RESTful API will return a service unavailble (HTTP 503) response and the following message will be displayed at the bottom of the page.

```
Job 2 was NOT submitted
```

The server log will include the following messages.

```
INFO: Invalid or missing token!
INFO: Job 1 successfully submitted
INFO: Task started LOW-1
INFO: Invalid or missing token!
INFO: Job 2 was NOT submitted
INFO: Task finished LOW-1
```

54.5.1.5 To Run the jobs Example and Submit Jobs With High Priority

To run the example as a user who submits jobs with high priority, follow these steps:

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/jobs
```

2. In the Jobs Client page, enter a value of one to ten digits in the **Enter a JobID** field.
3. Visit the link (<http://localhost:8080/jobs/webapi/JobService/token>) on the Jobs Client page that tells you where to get a token. The page that displays the token will open in a new tab.
4. Copy the token and return to the Jobs Client page.
5. Paste the token in the **Enter a Token** field, then click **Submit Job**.

The following message should be displayed at the bottom of the page.

```
Job 1 successfully submitted
```

The server log includes the following messages.

```
INFO: Token accepted. Execution with high priority.
INFO: Task started HIGH-1
INFO: Job 1 successfully submitted
INFO: Task finished HIGH-1
```

You submitted a job with high priority. This means that you can submit multiple jobs, each with a token, and not face the 10 second per job restriction that the low priority submitters face. If you submit 3 jobs with tokens in rapid succession, the following messages will be displayed at the bottom of the page.

```
Job 1 was submitted
Job 2 was submitted
Job 3 was submitted
```

The server log will include the following messages.

```
INFO: Token accepted. Execution with high priority.
INFO: Task started HIGH-1
INFO: Job 1 successfully submitted
INFO: Token accepted. Execution with high priority.
INFO: Task started HIGH-2
INFO: Job 2 successfully submitted
INFO: Task finished HIGH-1
INFO: Token accepted. Execution with high priority.
INFO: Task started HIGH-3
INFO: Job 3 successfully submitted
INFO: Task finished HIGH-2
INFO: Task finished HIGH-3
```

Part XI

Case Studies

Part XI presents case studies that uses a variety of Java EE technologies. This part contains the following chapter:

- [Chapter 55, "Duke's Bookstore Case Study Example"](#)

Duke's Bookstore Case Study Example

The Duke's Bookstore example is a simple e-commerce application that illustrates some of the more advanced features of JavaServer Faces technology in combination with Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI), enterprise beans, and the Java Persistence API. Users can select books from an image map, view the bookstore catalog, and purchase books. No security is used in this application.

The following topics are addressed here:

- [Design and Architecture of Duke's Bookstore](#)
- [The Duke's Bookstore Interface](#)
- [Running the Duke's Bookstore Case Study Application](#)

55.1 Design and Architecture of Duke's Bookstore

Duke's Bookstore is a simple web application that uses many features of JavaServer Faces technology, in addition to other Java EE 7 features:

- JavaServer Faces technology, as well as Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI):
 - A set of Facelets pages, along with a template, provides the user interface to the application.
 - CDI managed beans are associated with each of the Facelets pages.
 - A custom image map component on the front page allows you to select a book to enter the store. Each area of the map is represented by a JavaServer Faces managed bean. Text hyperlinks are also provided for accessibility.
 - Action listeners are registered on the image map and the text links. These listeners retrieve the ID value for the selected book and store it in the session map so it can be retrieved by the managed bean for the next page.
 - The `h:dataTable` tag is used to render the book catalog and shopping cart contents dynamically.
 - A custom converter is registered on the credit card field on the checkout page, `bookcashier.xhtml`, which also uses an `f:validateRegex` tag to ensure that the input is correctly formatted.
 - A value-change listener is registered on the name field on `bookcashier.xhtml`. This listener saves the name in a parameter so the following page, `bookreceipt.xhtml`, can access it.
- Enterprise beans: Local, no-interface-view stateless session bean and singleton bean

- A Java Persistence API entity

The packages of the Duke's Bookstore application, located in the *tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/src/main/java/javaeetutorial/dukesbookstore/* directory, are as follows:

- `components`: Includes the custom UI component classes, `MapComponent` and `AreaComponent`
- `converters`: Includes the custom converter class, `CreditCardConverter`
- `ejb`: Includes two enterprise beans:
 - A singleton bean, `ConfigBean`, that initializes the data in the database
 - A stateless session bean, `BookRequestBean`, that contains the business logic to manage the entity
- `entity`: Includes the `Book` entity class
- `exceptions`: Includes three exception classes
- `listeners`: Includes the event handler and event listener classes
- `model`: Includes a model JavaBeans class
- `renderers`: Includes the custom renderers for the custom UI component classes
- `web.managedbeans`: Includes the managed beans for the Facelets pages
- `web.messages`: Includes the resource bundle files for localized messages

55.2 The Duke's Bookstore Interface

This section provides additional detail regarding the components of the Duke's Bookstore example and how they interact.

55.2.1 The Book Java Persistence API Entity

The `Book` entity, located in the `dukesbookstore.entity` package, encapsulates the book data stored by Duke's Bookstore.

The `Book` entity defines attributes used in the example:

- A book ID
- The author's first name
- The author's surname
- The title
- The price
- Whether the book is on sale
- The publication year
- A description of the book
- The number of copies in the inventory

The `Book` entity also defines a simple named query, `findBooks`.

55.2.2 Enterprise Beans Used in Duke's Bookstore

Two enterprise beans located in the `dukesbookstore.ejb` package provide the business logic for Duke's Bookstore.

`BookRequestBean` is a stateless session bean that contains the business methods for the application. The methods create, retrieve, and purchase books, and update the inventory for a book. To retrieve the books, the `getBooks` method calls the `findBooks` named query defined in the `Book` entity.

`ConfigBean` is a singleton session bean used to create the books in the catalog when the application is initially deployed. It calls the `createBook` method defined in `BookRequestBean`.

55.2.3 Facelets Pages and Managed Beans Used in Duke's Bookstore

The Duke's Bookstore application uses Facelets and its templating features to display the user interface. The Facelets pages interact with a set of CDI managed beans that act as backing beans, providing the underlying properties and methods for the user interface. The front page also interacts with the custom components used by the application.

The application uses the following Facelets pages, which are located in the `tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/src/main/webapp/` directory:

bookstoreTemplate.xhtml

The template file, which specifies a header used on every page as well as the style sheet used by all the pages. The template also retrieves the language set in the web browser.

Uses the `LocaleBean` managed bean.

index.xhtml

Landing page, which lays out the custom map and area components using managed beans configured in the `faces-config.xml` file, and allows the user to select a book and advance to the `bookstore.xhtml` page.

bookstore.xhtml

Page that allows the user to obtain details on the selected book or the featured book, to add either book to the shopping cart, and to advance to the `bookcatalog.xhtml` page.

Uses the `BookstoreBean` managed bean.

bookdetails.xhtml

Page that shows details on a book selected from `bookstore.xhtml` or other pages and allows the user to add the book to the cart and/or advance to the `bookcatalog.xhtml`.

Uses the `BookDetailsBean` managed bean.

bookcatalog.xhtml

Page that displays the books in the catalog and allows the user to add books to the shopping cart, view the details for any book, view the shopping cart, empty the shopping cart, or purchase the books in the shopping cart.

Uses the `BookstoreBean`, `CatalogBean`, and `ShoppingCart` managed beans.

bookshowcart.xhtml

Page that displays the contents of the shopping cart and allows the user to remove items, view the details for an item, empty the shopping cart, purchase the books in the shopping cart, or return to the catalog.

Uses the `ShowCartBean` and `ShoppingCart` managed beans.

bookcashier.xhtml

Page that allows the user to purchase books, specify a shipping option, subscribe to newsletters, or join the Duke Fan Club with a purchase over a certain amount.

Uses the `CashierBean` and `ShoppingCart` managed beans.

bookreceipt.xhtml

Page that confirms the user's purchase and allows the user to return to the catalog page to continue shopping.

Uses the `CashierBean` managed bean.

bookordererror.xhtml

Page rendered by `CashierBean` if the bookstore has no more copies of a book that was ordered.

The application uses the following managed beans:

AbstractBean

Contains utility methods called by other managed beans.

BookDetailsBean

Backing bean for the `bookdetails.xhtml` page. Specifies the name details.

BookstoreBean

Backing bean for the `bookstore.xhtml` page. Specifies the name store.

CashierBean

Backing bean for the `bookcashier.xhtml` and `bookreceipt.xhtml` pages.

CatalogBean

Backing bean for the `bookcatalog.xhtml` page. Specifies the name catalog.

LocaleBean

Managed bean that retrieves the current locale; used on each page.

ShoppingCart

Backing bean used by the `bookcashier.xhtml`, `bookcatalog.xhtml`, and `bookshowcart.xhtml` pages. Specifies the name cart.

ShoppingCartItem

Contains methods called by `ShoppingCart`, `CatalogBean`, and `ShowCartBean`.

ShowCartBean

Backing bean for the `bookshowcart.xhtml` page. Specifies the name showcart.

55.2.4 Custom Components and Other Custom Objects Used in Duke's Bookstore

The map and area custom components for Duke's Bookstore, along with associated renderer, listener, and model classes, are defined in the following packages in the `tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/src/main/java/javaetutoria1/dukesbookstore/` directory:

components

Contains the `MapComponent` and `AreaComponent` classes. See [Creating Custom Component Classes](#).

listeners

Contains the `AreaSelectedEvent` class, along with other listener classes. See [Handling Events for Custom Components](#).

model

Contains the `ImageArea` class. See [Configuring Model Data](#) for more information.

renderers

Contains the `MapRenderer` and `AreaRenderer` classes. See [Delegating Rendering to a Renderer](#).

The

`tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/src/java/dukesbookstore/` directory also contains a custom converter and other custom listeners not specifically tied to the custom components:

converters

Contains the `CreditCardConverter` class. See [Creating and Using a Custom Converter](#).

listeners

Contains the `LinkBookChangeListener`, `MapBookChangeListener`, and `NameChanged` classes. See [Implementing an Event Listener](#).

55.2.5 Properties Files Used in Duke's Bookstore

The strings used in the Duke's Bookstore application are encapsulated into resource bundles to allow the display of localized strings in multiple locales. The properties files, located in the `tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/src/main/java/javaeetutorial/dukesbookstore/web/messages/` directory, consist of a default file containing English strings and three additional files for other locales. The files are as follows:

Messages.properties

Default file, containing English strings

Messages_de.properties

File containing German strings

Messages_es.properties

File containing Spanish strings

Messages_fr.properties

File containing French strings

The language setting in the user's web browser determines which locale is used. The `html` tag in `bookstoreTemplate.xhtml` retrieves the language setting from the `language` property of `LocaleBean`:

```
<html lang="#{localeBean.language}"
...

```

For more information about resource bundles, see [Chapter 20, "Internationalizing and Localizing Web Applications."](#)

The resource bundle is configured as follows in the `faces-config.xml` file:

```
<application>
  <resource-bundle>
    <base-name>dukesbookstore.web.messages.Messages</base-name>
    <var>bundle</var>
  </resource-bundle>
</application>

```

```
</resource-bundle>
<locale-config>
  <default-locale>en</default-locale>
  <supported-locale>de</supported-locale>
  <supported-locale>fr</supported-locale>
  <supported-locale>es</supported-locale>
</locale-config>
</application>
```

This configuration means that in the Facelets pages, messages are retrieved using the prefix `bundle` with the key found in the `Messages_locale.properties` file, as in the following example from the `index.xhtml` page:

```
<h:outputText style="font-weight:bold"
  value="#{bundle.ChooseBook}" />
```

In `Messages.properties`, the key string is defined as follows:

```
ChooseBook=Choose a Book from our Catalog
```

55.2.6 Deployment Descriptors Used in Duke's Bookstore

The following deployment descriptors are used in Duke's Bookstore:

`src/main/resources/META-INF/persistence.xml`

The Java Persistence API configuration file.

`src/main/webapp/WEB-INF/bookstore.taglib.xml`

The tag library descriptor file for the custom components.

`src/main/webapp/WEB-INF/faces-config.xml`

The JavaServer Faces configuration file, which configures the managed beans for the map component as well as the resource bundles for the application.

`src/main/webapp/WEB-INF/web.xml`

The web application configuration file.

55.3 Running the Duke's Bookstore Case Study Application

This section describes how to build, package, deploy, and run the Duke's Bookstore application.

55.3.1 To Build and Deploy Duke's Bookstore Using NetBeans IDE

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open Project**.
2. In the Open Project dialog box, navigate to:
`tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore`
3. Click **Open Project**.
4. Right-click `dukes-bookstore` in the **Projects** tab and select **Build**.

This will build, package, and deploy Duke's Bookstore to the GlassFish Server.

55.3.2 To Build and Deploy Duke's Bookstore Using Maven

1. In a terminal window, go to:

tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/

2. Enter the following command:

```
mvn install
```

This command builds the application and packages it in a WAR file in the *tut-install/examples/case-studies/dukes-bookstore/target/* directory. It then deploys the application to the GlassFish Server.

55.3.3 To Run Duke's Bookstore

1. In a web browser, enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/dukes-bookstore/
```

2. On the Duke's Bookstore main page, click a book in the graphic, or click one of the links at the bottom of the page.
3. Use the pages in the application to view and purchase books.

Symbols

- @AccessTimeout annotation, 28-9
- @Alternative annotation, 33-2
- @ApplicationScoped annotation, 6-6, 16-2, 31-7
- @AroundInvoke annotation, 52-1
- @AroundTimeout annotation, 52-2
- @Asynchronous annotation, 30-1
- @ConcurrencyManagement annotation, 28-8
- @Consumes annotation, 23-3, 23-10
- @Context annotation, 25-1
- @ConversationScoped annotation, 31-7
- @CookieParam annotation, 25-1
- @DeclareRoles annotation, 46-4, 46-10
- @Decorator annotation, 33-11
- @Delegate annotation, 33-11
- @DELETE annotation, 23-3, 23-6
- @DenyAll annotation, 46-5
- @Dependent annotation, 16-2, 31-7
- @DependsOn annotation, 28-7
- @DiscriminatorColumn annotation, 35-12
- @DiscriminatorValue annotation, 35-12
- @Disposes annotation, 33-5
- @Embeddable annotation, 35-10
- @EmbeddedId annotation, 35-6
- @Entity annotation, 35-1
- @FlowScoped annotation, 16-2
- @FormParam annotation, 25-1, 25-3
- @GET annotation, 23-3, 23-6
- @GroupSequence annotation, 51-3
- @HEAD annotation, 23-3
- @HeaderParam annotation, 25-1
- @HttpConstraint annotation, 45-3, 45-16
- @HttpMethodConstraint annotation, 45-3, 45-16
- @Id annotation, 35-6
- @IdClass annotation, 35-6
- @Inject annotation, 31-6
- @Interceptor annotation, 52-2
- @Interceptors annotation, 52-2
- @Local annotation, 26-7, 28-2
- @Lock annotation, 28-8
- @ManagedBean annotation, 8-4, 16-1
- @ManyToMany annotation, 35-8
- @ManyToOne annotation, 35-8
- @MatrixParam annotation, 25-1
- @MessageDriven annotation, 43-34
- @MultipartConfig annotation, 17-15
- @Named annotation, 31-8
- @NamedQuery annotation, 37-2
- @Observes annotation, 33-7
- @OneToMany annotation, 35-8, 35-9
- @OneToOne annotation, 35-8, 35-9
- @Path annotation, 23-2, 23-5
- @PathParam annotation, 23-3, 23-11, 25-1, 25-2
- @PermitAll annotation, 46-5
- @PersistenceContext annotation, 35-14
- @PersistenceUnit annotation, 35-15
- @POST annotation, 23-3, 23-6
- @PostActivate annotation, 28-2, 28-4
- @PostConstruct annotation, 26-11, 28-2, 28-4, 52-2
- @PreDestroy annotation, 26-11, 28-2, 28-4, 52-2
- @PrePassivate annotation, 28-2, 28-4
- @Produces annotation, 23-3, 23-9, 31-10, 33-4
- @Provider annotation, 23-3
- @PUT annotation, 23-3, 23-6
- @Qualifier annotation, 31-5
- @QueryParam annotation, 23-3, 23-11, 25-1, 25-2
- @Remote annotation, 26-7, 28-2
- @Remove annotation, 26-12, 28-2, 28-5
- @RequestScoped annotation, 6-6, 16-2, 31-7
- @Resource annotation
 - JMS resources, 42-8, 43-29
- @ResourceDependency annotation, 13-10
- @RolesAllowed annotation, 46-5, 46-10
- @RunAs annotation, 46-8
- @Schedule and @Schedules annotations, 28-20
- @ServletSecurity annotation, 45-3, 45-16
- @SessionScoped annotation, 6-6, 16-2, 31-7
- @Singleton annotation, 28-7
- @Startup annotation, 28-7
- @Stateful annotation, 28-2
- @Timeout annotation, 28-18
- @Timeout method, 28-18, 28-20
- @Transient annotation, 35-3
- @WebFilter annotation, 17-7
- @WebInitParam annotation, 17-5, 17-8
- @WebListener annotation, 17-3
- @WebMethod annotation, 28-5
- @WebService annotation, 22-2
- @WebServiceRef annotation, 6-15
- @WebServlet annotation, 6-9, 17-4

A

- abstract schemas, 37-1
- access control, 44-5
- acknowledge method, 42-20
- acknowledging messages. *See* message acknowledgment
- action events, 7-8, 7-11, 10-13, 15-18
 - ActionEvent class, 15-19, 15-20
 - actionListener attribute, 10-12, 11-10, 11-11, 15-7
 - ActionListener implementation, 15-19, 15-20
 - ActionListener interface, 11-6
 - actionListener tag, 10-27, 11-6, 15-3
 - processAction(ActionEvent) method, 15-20
 - referencing methods that handle action events, 11-11, 12-12
 - writing a managed bean method to handle action events, 12-12
- action method, 7-11
- administered objects, 42-7
 - creating and removing, 43-3
 - definition, 42-4
 - See also* connection factories, destinations
- Administration Console, 1-25
 - starting, 2-5
- afterBegin method, 48-6
- afterCompletion method, 48-6
- Ajax
 - error handling, 13-6
 - event attribute of f:ajax tag, 13-5
 - example, 13-10
 - execute attribute of f:ajax tag, 13-5
 - grouping components, 13-8
 - immediate attribute of f:ajax tag, 13-5
 - listener attribute of f:ajax tag, 13-6
 - loading JavaScript resource library, 13-9
 - monitoring events, 13-6
 - onerror attribute of f:ajax tag, 13-6
 - onevent attribute of f:ajax tag, 13-6
 - overview, 13-1
 - receiving responses, 13-7
 - render attribute of f:ajax tag, 13-7
 - request lifecycle, 13-8
 - sending requests, 13-4
 - using JavaScript API directly, 13-9
 - using with Facelets, 13-3
 - using with JavaServer Faces technology, 13-1
- alternatives
 - CDI, 33-2
 - example, 34-1
- annotations, 1-1
 - interceptor metadata, 52-1
 - JAX-RS, 23-2, 25-1
 - security, 44-8, 45-16, 46-1, 46-4
- appclient tool, 1-25
- applet container, 1-10
- applets, 1-5, 1-6
- application client container, 1-10
- application clients, 1-5
 - examples, 43-29

- securing, 47-15
- application clients, JMS
 - building, 43-4
 - examples, 43-2
 - running, 43-10
- applications
 - dynamic reloading, 6-8
 - JavaServer Faces, 7-2
 - security, 44-6
 - undeploying, 6-8
- asadmin tool, 1-25
- asynchronous message consumption, 42-6
 - JMS client example, 43-9
 - See also* message-driven beans
- asynchronous method invocation
 - calling asynchronous business methods, 30-2
 - cancelling, 30-3
 - checking status, 30-3
 - creating asynchronous business methods, 30-1
 - example, 30-3
 - java.util.concurrent.Future<V> interface, 30-1
 - retrieving results, 30-2
 - session beans, 30-1
- asynchronous send mechanism, 42-25
- attributes referencing managed bean methods, 11-10
 - action attribute, 11-10
 - actionListener attribute, 11-10, 11-11
 - validator attribute, 11-10, 11-11
 - valueChangeListener attribute, 11-10, 11-11
- audit modules
 - pluggable, 44-10
- auditing, 44-5
- auth-constraint element, 45-4
- authenticate method, 45-10
- authenticating users, 45-6, 45-9
- authentication, 44-5, 44-16
 - basic, 45-7
 - basic with EJB, 46-7
 - certificate-based mutual, 47-5
 - client, 47-5, 47-7
 - digest, 45-9
 - form-based, 45-8, 45-18
 - mutual, 47-5, 47-7
 - server, 47-5
 - user name/password-based mutual, 47-6
- authorization, 44-5
- authorization constraints, 45-3, 45-4
- authorization providers
 - pluggable, 44-10
- auto commit, 1-19
- AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE mode, 42-20

B

- basic authentication, 45-7
 - EJB, 46-7
 - example, 45-16
- Bean Validation, 1-20
 - advanced, 51-1
 - constraints, 36-18

- custom constraints, 51-1
- examples, 36-18
- Java Persistence API, 35-4
- JavaServer Faces applications, 12-14, 36-19
- localization, 51-2
- messages, 51-2
- ordering, 51-3
- resource bundles, 51-2
- bean-managed transactions. *See* transactions, bean-managed
- beans
 - defined for CDI, 31-4
- beans.xml file, 31-10
- beforeCompletion method, 48-6
- BLOBs. *See* persistence, BLOBs
- bookmarkable URLs
 - component tags, 10-23
 - example, 10-24
 - view parameters, 10-23
- BufferedReader class, 17-6
- build artifacts
 - removing, 6-8
- bundles. *See* resource bundles
- business logic, 26-1
- business methods, 26-9
 - client calls, 28-4
 - exceptions, 28-5
 - locating, 27-2
 - requirements, 28-5
 - transactions, 48-4, 48-6, 48-7, 48-8
- BytesMessage interface, 42-17

C

- CallbackHandler interface, 47-15
- capture-schema tool, 1-25
- CDI. *See* Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI)
- certificate authorities, 47-1
- certificates, 44-6
 - client, 47-7
 - digital, 44-7, 47-1, 47-2
 - server, 47-2, 47-4
 - using for authentication, 47-4
- character encodings, 20-5
- character sets, 20-4
- class files
 - removing, 6-8
- client certificates
 - generating, 47-7
- client ID, for durable subscriptions, 42-13
- CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE mode, 42-20
- clients
 - authenticating, 47-5, 47-7
 - securing, 47-15
- CLOBs. *See* persistence, CLOBs
- collections
 - persistence, 35-3, 38-9
- commit method, 48-6
- commit method (JMS), 42-24

- commits. *See* transactions, commits
- Common Client Interface
 - Connector architecture, 49-6
- component binding, 12-3, 12-4, 15-31, 15-34
 - binding attribute, 12-3, 15-31, 15-34
- component properties. *See* managed bean properties
- component rendering model, 7-5, 7-7
 - decode method, 7-16, 15-14, 15-20, 15-24
 - decoding, 15-4, 15-10
 - delegated implementation, 15-4
 - direct implementation, 15-4
 - encode method, 15-25
 - encodeBegin method, 15-12
 - encodeChildren method, 15-12
 - encodeEnd method, 15-12, 15-17
 - encoding, 15-4, 15-10
 - HTML render kit, 15-21, 16-28
 - render kit, 7-7
 - Renderer class, 7-7
 - Renderer implementation, 16-29
 - RenderKit class, 7-7
 - RenderKit implementation, 16-29
- component tag attributes
 - action attribute, 10-12, 12-11, 15-7
 - actionListener attribute, 10-12, 11-10, 12-12, 15-7
 - alt attribute, 15-7
 - binding attribute, 10-4, 10-6, 12-3, 15-31, 15-34
 - columns attribute, 10-15
 - converter attribute, 10-9, 11-2, 15-26
 - for attribute, 10-11, 10-22
 - id attribute, 10-4, 10-5
 - immediate attribute, 10-4, 10-5, 15-7
 - redisplay attribute, 10-10
 - rendered attribute, 10-4, 10-6, 15-35
 - style attribute, 10-4, 10-6, 10-22
 - styleClass attribute, 10-4, 10-6
 - validator attribute, 10-9, 12-12
 - value attribute, 10-4, 10-6, 12-4, 15-7, 15-31, 15-32
 - valueChangeListener attribute, 10-9, 11-11, 12-13
 - var attribute, 20-4
- component tags, 7-7, 7-9, 12-4
 - attributes. *See* component tag attributes
 - body tag, 10-7
 - bookmarkable URLs, 10-23
 - button tag, 10-23
 - column tag, 10-2
 - commandButton tag, 10-2, 10-12
 - commandLink tag, 10-2, 10-13
 - dataTable tag, 10-2, 10-19, 12-5
 - form tag, 10-2, 10-7
 - graphicImage tag, 10-2, 10-13, 15-7
 - head tag, 10-7
 - inputHidden tag, 10-3, 10-8
 - inputSecret tag, 10-3, 10-8, 10-10
 - inputText tag, 10-3, 10-8, 10-10
 - inputTextarea tag, 10-3, 10-8
 - link tag, 10-23
 - message tag, 10-3, 10-22
 - messages tag, 10-3, 10-22

- outputFormat tag, 10-3, 10-9, 10-11
- outputLabel tag, 10-3, 10-9, 10-10
- outputLink tag, 10-3, 10-9, 10-11
- outputScript tag, 10-25
- outputStylesheet tag, 10-25
- outputText tag, 10-3, 10-9, 10-10, 10-13, 12-6
- panelGrid tag, 10-3, 10-14
- panelGroup tag, 10-3, 10-14
- resource relocation, 10-25
- selectBooleanCheckbox tag, 10-3, 10-16, 12-6
- selectItems tag, 12-8
- selectManyCheckbox tag, 10-3, 10-17, 12-7
- selectManyListbox tag, 10-3, 10-17
- selectManyMenu tag, 10-3, 10-17
- selectOneListbox tag, 10-4, 10-16
- selectOneMenu tag, 10-4, 10-16, 12-7, 12-8
- selectOneRadio tag, 10-4, 10-16
- component-managed sign-on, 47-16, 47-17
- components
 - boxes, 10-3, 10-4
 - buttons, 10-2, 10-12
 - check boxes, 10-3, 10-16
 - data grids, 10-2
 - fields, 10-3
 - hidden fields, 10-3
 - hyperlinks, 10-13
 - images, 10-13
 - Java EE, 1-4
 - labels, 10-3
 - links, 10-2
 - menus, 10-3, 10-4, 10-16, 10-17
 - options, 10-4
 - password fields, 10-3
 - radio buttons, 10-4
 - table columns, 10-2
 - tables, 10-3, 10-14, 10-19
 - text areas, 10-3
- composite components
 - advanced features, 14-1
 - attributes, 14-1
 - default attribute, 14-1
 - example, 14-2
 - f:validateBean tag, 14-2
 - f:validateRegex tag, 14-2
 - f:validateRequired tag, 14-2
 - Facelets, 8-10
 - invoking managed beans, 14-2
 - method-signature attribute, 14-1
 - name attribute, 14-1
 - required attribute, 14-1
 - type attribute, 14-2
 - validating values, 14-2
- concurrent access, 48-1
- concurrent access to entity data, 40-1
- conditional HTTP requests
 - JAX-RS, 25-9
- confidentiality, 44-16
- configuring JavaServer Faces applications
 - Application class, 16-4
 - application configuration resource files, 16-3
 - configuring managed beans, 16-1, 16-14
 - error message registration, 15-28
 - faces-config.xml files, 16-27
 - including the classes, pages, and other resources, 16-34
 - javax.faces.application.CONFIG_FILES context parameter, 16-4
 - registering custom converters, 16-25
 - registering custom renderers, 16-28
 - registering custom UI components, 16-30
 - registering custom validators, 16-24
 - registering messages, 16-21
 - specifying a path to an application configuration resource file, 16-33
 - specifying where UI component state is saved, 15-16, 16-33
 - value binding, 15-32
- configuring JavaServer Faces applications.
 - See configuring navigation rules
- configuring managed beans, 15-7, 16-14
- configuring navigation rules, 7-10, 16-26
 - from-action element, 16-27
 - from-view-id element, 16-27
 - navigation-case element, 16-27
 - navigation-rule element, 16-27
 - to-view-id element, 16-27
- connection factories, 42-8
 - creating, 43-31, 43-42
 - injecting resources, 42-8, 43-29
- Connection interface, 48-6, 48-9
- Connection interface (JMS), 42-9
- connection pooling, 3-2
- ConnectionFactory interface (JMS), 42-8
- connections
 - securing, 44-16
- connections, JMS
 - introduction, 42-9
 - managing in enterprise bean applications, 42-29
- connectors. *See* Java EE Connector architecture
- container-managed sign-on, 47-16
- container-managed transactions. *See* transactions, container-managed
- containers, 1-8
 - application client, 1-10
 - configurable services, 1-9
 - nonconfigurable services, 1-9
 - security, 44-1, 44-8
 - services, 1-8
 - trust between, 46-9
 - See also* EJB container, embedded enterprise bean container, web container
- context parameters, 6-6
 - specifying, 6-12
- contexts
 - JMS, 42-9
- Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI), 1-20
 - advanced topics, 33-1
 - alternatives, 33-2
 - basic concepts, 31-1

- beans, 31-4
- configuring applications, 31-10
- converting managed beans to JAX-RS root resource classes, 25-8
- decorators, 33-11
- disposer methods, 33-5
- EL, 31-8
- events, 33-7
- examples, 32-1, 34-1
- Facelets pages, 31-9
- injectable objects, 31-5
- injecting beans, 31-6
- integrating with JAX-RS, 25-8
- interceptors, 33-9
- managed beans, 31-4
- observer methods, 33-7
- overview, 31-3
- producer fields, 33-4
- producer methods, 31-10, 33-4
- qualifiers, 31-5
- scopes, 31-7
- setter and getter methods, 31-9
- specialization, 33-3
- stereotypes, 33-12
- conversational state, 26-2
- conversion model, 7-5, 7-8
 - converter attribute, 10-9, 11-2, 15-26
 - Converter implementations, 7-8, 11-1, 15-26
 - Converter interface, 15-24
 - converterId attribute, 11-2
 - converting data between model and presentation, 7-8
 - javax.faces.convert package, 11-1
 - model view, 15-24, 15-25
 - presentation view, 15-24, 15-25
 - See also* converters, converter tags
- Converter implementation classes
 - BigDecimalConverter class, 11-1
 - BigIntegerConverter class, 11-1
 - BooleanConverter class, 11-1
 - ByteConverter class, 11-1
 - CharacterConverter class, 11-1
 - DateTimeConverter class, 11-1, 11-2, 11-3
 - DoubleConverter class, 11-1
 - EnumConverter class, 11-1
 - FloatConverter class, 11-1
 - IntegerConverter class, 11-1
 - LongConverter class, 11-1
 - NumberConverter class, 11-2, 11-4
 - ShortConverter class, 11-2
- converter tags
 - convertDateTime tag, 11-3
 - convertDateTime tag attributes, 11-4
 - converter tag, 11-3, 15-26
 - convertNumber tag, 11-2, 11-4
 - convertNumber tag attributes, 11-5
- converters, 7-5, 7-15
 - custom converters, 7-8, 15-26
 - See also* standard converters
- converting data. *See* conversion model
- cookie parameters
 - JAX-RS, 23-13
- createBrowser method, 43-11
- createTimer method, 28-19
- credential, 44-12
- Criteria API, 38-1
 - creating queries, 38-4
 - examples, 36-14
 - expressions, 38-6, 38-7
 - path navigation, 38-6
 - query execution, 38-9
 - query results, 38-6, 38-8
- criteria queries
 - string-based, 39-1
- cryptography
 - public-key, 47-2
- custom converters
 - binding to managed bean properties, 15-35
 - creating, 15-23
 - getAsObject method, 15-24
 - getAsObject(FacesContext, UIComponent, String) method, 15-24
 - getAsString method, 15-25
 - getAsString(FacesContext, UIComponent, Object) method, 15-25
 - registering. *See* registering custom converters using, 15-26
- custom objects
 - custom converters, 15-26
 - using, 15-22
 - using custom components, renderers and tags together, 15-4
 - See also* custom tags, custom UI components, custom validators
- custom renderers
 - creating the Renderer class, 15-17
 - determining necessity of, 15-4
 - performing decoding, 15-14
 - performing encoding, 15-12
 - registering with a render kit, 16-28
- custom tags, 7-10, 15-4
 - getRendererType method, 15-18
 - identifying the renderer type, 15-17
 - specifying, 15-30
 - tag library descriptor, 15-9
- custom UI components
 - creating, 15-1
 - creating component classes, 15-9
 - custom objects, 15-22
 - delegating rendering, 15-16
 - determining necessity of, 15-2
 - handling events emitted by, 15-20
 - queueEvent method, 15-14
 - registering. *See* registering custom UI components
 - restoreState(FacesContext, Object) method, 15-16
 - saveState(FacesContext) method, 15-16
 - saving state, 15-15
 - specifying where state is saved, 16-33
 - steps for creating, 15-9

- custom validators, 15-27
 - binding to managed bean properties, 15-35
 - custom validator tags, 15-30
 - implementing the `Validator` interface, 15-28
 - registering, 16-24
 - using, 15-30
 - `validate` method, 12-12, 15-28
 - `Validator` implementation, 12-11, 15-28, 15-30
 - `Validator` interface, 15-27
 - validator tag, 15-27, 15-30

D

- data encryption, 47-5
- data integrity, 44-5, 48-1, 48-2
- data sources, 3-2
- databases
 - clients, 26-1
 - connections, 28-5, 48-7
 - data recovery, 48-1
 - EIS tier, 1-3
 - message-driven beans and, 26-4
 - multiple, 48-7, 48-8
 - See also* transactions
- `DataSource` interface, 3-2
- debugging
 - Java EE applications, 2-7
- declarative security, 44-1, 45-2, 46-1
 - example, 46-10
- decorators
 - CDI, 33-11
 - example, 34-18
- delivery delay for messages, 42-23
- delivery modes, 42-22
 - `JMSDeliveryMode` message header field, 42-16
- `DeliveryMode` interface, 42-22
- Dependency Injection for Java (JSR 330), 1-20, 31-1
- deployer roles, 1-14
- deployment, 27-3
- deployment descriptors, 5-1, 44-1, 44-9
 - enterprise bean, 5-3, 44-9, 46-1, 46-3
 - Java EE, 5-2
 - runtime, 5-2, 5-5
 - `security-role-mapping` element, 44-15
 - `security-role-ref` element, 45-14
 - web application, 5-4, 6-2, 16-31, 44-9
- `Destination` interface, 42-8
- destinations, 42-8
 - creating, 43-31, 43-42
 - injecting resources, 42-8, 43-29
 - `JMSDestination` message header field, 42-16
 - temporary, 42-23, 43-38
 - See also* queues, temporary destinations, topics
- `destroy` method, 17-13
- development roles, 1-12
 - application assemblers, 1-13
 - application client developers, 1-13
 - application component providers, 1-13
 - application deployers and administrators, 1-13
 - enterprise bean developers, 1-13
 - Java EE product providers, 1-12
 - tool providers, 1-12
 - web component developers, 1-13
- digest authentication, 45-9
- digital signatures, 47-2
- disposer methods
 - CDI, 33-5
- document roots, 5-4
- `doFilter` method, 17-7, 17-8, 17-9
- `doGet` method, 17-5
- domains, 2-4
- `doPost` method, 17-5
- downloading
 - GlassFish Server, 2-1
- `DUPS_OK_ACKNOWLEDGE` mode, 42-21
- durable subscriptions, 42-13
 - examples, 43-16, 43-24, 43-32
 - shared, 42-15

E

- eager attribute
 - managed beans, 16-3
- EAR files, 5-1
- EIS tier, 1-8
 - security, 47-16
- EJB container, 1-10
 - container-managed transactions, 48-2
 - message-driven beans, 42-29
 - `onMessage` method, invoking, 43-30
 - services, 26-1, 46-1
 - See also* embedded enterprise bean container
- EJB JAR files, 26-11
- `EJBContext` interface, 48-6, 48-8
- `ejb-jar.xml` file, 5-3, 44-9, 46-3
- EL, 6-4, 9-1
 - CDI managed beans, 31-8
 - composite expressions, 9-6
 - deferred evaluation expressions, 9-2
 - expression examples, 9-10
 - immediate evaluation expressions, 9-2
 - literal expressions, 9-6, 9-8
 - literals, 9-5
 - lvalue expressions, 9-2, 9-3
 - managed beans, 12-2
 - method expressions, 9-2, 9-7
 - method-binding expressions, 7-11
 - operators, 9-9
 - overview, 9-1
 - parameterized method calls, 9-8
 - reserved words, 9-10
 - rvalue expressions, 9-2, 9-3
 - type conversion during expression evaluation, 9-6
 - value expressions, 9-2, 9-3
 - See also* method binding
- embeddable classes, persistence, 35-10
- embedded enterprise bean container
 - creating, 29-2
 - developing applications, 29-1

- examples, 29-4
- initializing enterprise bean modules, 29-3
- overview, 29-1
- running applications, 29-2
- session bean references, 29-3
- shutting down, 29-3
- See also* EJB container, enterprise beans
- end-to-end security, 44-8
- enterprise applications, 1-1
 - securing, 46-1
- enterprise beans, 1-7, 1-17
 - accessing, 26-5
 - classes, 26-11
 - compiling, 27-3
 - contents, 26-11
 - converting to JAX-RS root resource classes, 25-8
 - defined, 26-1
 - dependency injection, 26-6
 - deployment, 26-11
 - distribution, 26-7
 - exceptions, 28-24
 - finding, 29-3
 - getCallerPrincipal method, 46-7
 - implementor of business logic, 1-7
 - integrating with JAX-RS, 25-8
 - interceptors, 52-1
 - interfaces, 26-5, 26-11
 - isCallerInRole method, 46-7
 - JAX-RS resources, 23-15
 - JNDI lookup, 26-6
 - lifecycles, 26-11
 - local access, 26-7
 - local interfaces, 26-8
 - packaging, 5-3, 27-3
 - performance, 26-7
 - programmatically security, 46-7
 - remote access, 26-9
 - remote interfaces, 26-9
 - securing, 46-1
 - singletons, 23-15
 - testing, 29-4
 - timer service, 28-16
 - types, 26-2
 - web services, 26-2, 26-10, 28-14
 - See also* business methods, embedded enterprise bean container, message-driven beans, session beans
- Enterprise Information Systems. *See* EIS tier
- entities
 - abstract, 35-11
 - abstract schema names, 37-3
 - application-managed entity managers, 35-15
 - cascading operations, 35-9
 - collections, 37-15
 - container-managed entity managers, 35-14
 - controlling caching, 41-2
 - creating, 36-9
 - discriminator columns, 35-12
 - entity manager, 35-14
 - finding, 35-16, 36-9
 - inheritance, 35-11, 36-13
 - inheritance mapping, 35-12
 - lifecycle, 35-16
 - managing, 35-14, 36-9
 - mapping to multiple tables, 36-7
 - non-entity superclasses, 35-12
 - overview, 35-1
 - persistent fields, 35-2
 - persistent properties, 35-2
 - persisting, 35-16
 - primary keys, 35-6
 - querying, 35-18
 - relationships, 36-9
 - removing, 35-17, 36-10
 - requirements, 35-1
 - superclasses, 35-11
 - synchronizing, 35-17
 - validating, 35-4
- entity data
 - lock modes, 40-2
 - optimistic locking, 40-1, 40-2
 - pessimistic locking, 40-1, 40-4
- entity providers
 - JAX-RS, 23-8
- entity relationships
 - bidirectional, 35-8
 - many-to-many, 35-8, 36-12
 - many-to-one, 35-8
 - multiplicity, 35-7
 - one-to-many, 35-8
 - one-to-one, 35-8
 - query language, 35-9
 - unidirectional, 35-9
- equals method, 35-6
- event and listener model, 7-5, 7-8
 - binding listeners to managed bean properties, 15-35
 - Event class, 7-8
 - event handlers, 7-15, 15-9
 - event listeners, 7-16, 7-17
 - handling events of custom UI components, 15-20
 - implementing event listeners, 15-18
 - Listener class, 7-8
 - listener class, 12-11
 - queueEvent method, 15-14
 - ValueChangeEvent class, 11-11
 - See also* action events, value-change events
- events
 - CDI, 33-7
 - example, 34-13
- examples, 2-1
 - Ajax, 13-10
 - asynchronous method invocation, session beans, 30-3
 - basic authentication, 45-16
 - Bean Validation, 36-18
 - bookmarkable URLs, 10-24
 - building, 2-6
 - CDI, 32-1, 34-1
 - composite components, 14-2

- connectors, 50-1
- Criteria API, 36-14
- directory structure, 2-6
- Duke's Bookstore case study, 55-1
- embedded enterprise bean container, 29-4
- file upload using servlets, 17-24
- interceptors, 52-9
- JAX-RS, 23-14, 25-17
- JAX-WS, 22-2
- JMS asynchronous message consumption, 43-9
- JMS durable subscriptions, 43-16
- JMS in a web application, 43-26
- JMS local transactions, 43-18
- JMS message acknowledgment, 43-14
- JMS message-driven beans, 43-29
- JMS queue browsing, 43-11
- JMS shared durable subscriptions, 43-24
- JMS synchronous message consumption, 43-7
- JMS with entities, 43-36
- JMS with session beans, 43-32
- message-driven beans, 43-29
- persistence, 36-1
- primary keys, 35-7
- query language, 36-10, 37-4
- required software, 2-1
- resource adapters, 50-1
- security, 45-18, 46-10, 46-13
- sending JMS messages, 43-4
- servlets, 6-9, 17-23, 27-2
- session beans, 27-1, 28-1
- singleton session beans, 28-7
- timer service, 28-21
- web clients, 27-2
- web services, 28-14
- exceptions
 - business methods, 28-5
 - enterprise beans, 28-24
 - JMS, 42-19
 - mapping to error screens, 6-13
 - rolling back transactions, 28-25, 48-6
 - transactions, 48-4
- expiration of JMS messages, 42-22
 - JMSExpiration message header field, 42-16
- Expression Language. *See* EL
- expressions
 - lvalue expressions, 12-3

F

- Facelets, 8-1
 - composite components, 8-10
 - configuring applications, 8-7
 - f:ajax tag, 13-3
 - features, 8-1
 - resources, 8-12
 - templating, 8-8
 - using Ajax with, 13-3
 - XHTML pages, 8-5
 - See also* EL
- Facelets applications

- developing, 8-3
- lifecycle, 8-3
 - using JavaScript in, 13-9
- Faces Flows, using, 16-5
- faces-config.xml file, 16-3
- FacesContext class, 7-14, 15-23
 - Apply Request Values phase, 7-16
 - custom converters, 15-24
 - performing encoding, 15-13
 - Process Validations phase, 7-16
 - Update Model Values phase, 7-17
 - validation methods, 12-12
 - Validator interface, 15-28
- FacesServlet class, 16-32
- filter chains, 17-7, 17-9
- Filter interface, 17-7
- filters, 17-7
 - defining, 17-7
 - mapping to web components, 17-9
 - mapping to web resources, 17-9
 - overriding request methods, 17-9
 - overriding response methods, 17-9
 - response wrappers, 17-9
- foreign keys, 36-3
- form parameters, 23-13
 - JAX-RS, 25-3
- form-based authentication, 45-8
- forward method, 17-11

G

- garbage collection, 26-13
- GenericServlet interface, 17-1
- getBody method, 42-17
- getCallerPrincipal method, 46-7, 46-13
- getConnection method, 3-2
- getPart method, 17-16
- getParts method, 17-16
- getRemoteUser method, 45-12
- getRequestDispatcher method, 17-10
- getRollbackOnly method, 42-33, 48-8
- getServletContext method, 17-11
- getSession method, 17-12
- getStatus method, 48-8
- getUserPrincipal method, 45-12
- GlassFish Server
 - adding users to, 44-13
 - downloading, 2-1
 - enabling debugging, 2-8
 - installation tips, 2-1
 - securing, 44-9
 - server log, 2-7
 - SSL connectors, 44-17
 - starting, 2-4
 - stopping, 2-4
 - tools, 1-24
- groups, 44-12
 - managing, 44-13

H

handling events. *See* event and listener model
hashCode method, 35-6
header parameters
 JAX-RS, 23-13
helper classes, 26-11
 session bean example, 28-5
HTTP, 22-1
 basic authentication, 45-7
 over SSL, 47-5
HTTP methods, 23-6
HTTP request and response entity bodies, 23-8
 supported types, 23-8
HTTP request URLs, 17-6
 query strings, 17-6
 request paths, 17-6
HTTP requests, 17-6, 23-6
 See also requests
HTTP responses, 17-7
 status codes, 6-13
 See also responses
HTTPS, 44-7, 44-17, 45-5, 47-2
HttpServletRequest interface, 17-1
HttpServletRequest interface, 17-6, 45-12
HttpServletRequestResponse interface, 17-7
HttpSession interface, 17-12

I

identification, 44-5
implicit navigation, 7-3, 7-10
implicit objects, 15-34
 binding component values to, 15-33
include method, 17-11
init method, 17-5
InitialContext interface, 1-23
initialization parameters, 17-5
initializing properties with the managed-property element
 initializing Array and List properties, 16-20
 initializing managed-bean properties, 16-20
 initializing Map properties, 16-19
 initializing maps and lists, 16-21
 referencing a context initialization parameter, 16-18
initParams attribute, 17-5
injectable objects
 CDI, 31-5
integrity, 44-16
 of data, 44-5
interceptors, 52-1
 CDI, 33-9
 example, 52-9
 example (CDI), 34-13
internationalization, 20-1
internationalizing JavaServer Faces applications
 FacesContext.getLocale method, 11-4
 loadBundle tag, 20-4
 using the FacesMessage class to create a message, 16-23

invalidate method, 17-12
isCallerInRole method, 46-7, 46-13
ISO 8859 character encoding, 20-5
isUserInRole method, 45-12

J

JAAS, 1-24, 44-6, 47-15
 login modules, 47-16
JACC, 1-21, 44-10
JAF, 1-23
JAR files, 5-1
 query language, 37-14
JAR signatures, 44-6
JASPIC, 1-21
Java API for JavaBeans Validation. *See* Bean Validation
Java API for RESTful Web Services. *See* JAX-RS
Java API for XML Binding (JAXB), 1-23
 using with JAX-RS, 25-11
Java API for XML Processing (JAXP), 1-23
Java API for XML Web Services. *See* JAX-WS
Java Authentication and Authorization Service. *See* JAAS
Java Authentication Service Provider Interface for Containers (JASPIC), 1-21
Java Authorization Contract for Containers. *See* JACC
Java BluePrints, 2-6
Java Cryptography Extension (JCE), 44-6
Java Database Connectivity API. *See* JDBC API
Java DB, 1-25
 starting, 2-5
 stopping, 2-5
Java EE applications, 1-3
 debugging, 2-7
 deploying, 27-3
 iterative development, 27-4
 tiers, 1-3
Java EE clients, 1-5
 See also application clients, web clients
Java EE components, 1-4
Java EE Connector architecture, 1-20, 49-1
 example, 50-1
Java EE modules, 5-1, 5-2
 application client modules, 5-2
 EJB modules, 5-2, 26-11
 resource adapter modules, 5-2
 See also web modules
Java EE platform, 1-3
 APIs, 1-14
 JMS and, 42-3
 overview, 1-1
Java EE security model, 1-9
Java EE servers, 1-10
Java EE transaction model, 1-9
Java Generic Security Services, 44-6
Java GSS-API, 44-6
Java Message Service (JMS) API, 42-1
 See also JMS, message-driven beans
Java Message Service (JMS) API. *See* JMS

- Java Naming and Directory Interface API. *See* JNDI
- Java Persistence API, 1-19
- Java Persistence API query language. *See* query language
- Java Persistence Criteria API. *See* Criteria API
- Java Secure Sockets Extension (JSSE), 44-6
- Java Servlet technology, 1-17, 17-1
 - See also* servlets
- Java Transaction API, 1-19, 48-7
- JavaBeans Activation Framework (JAF), 1-23
- JavaBeans components, 1-6
- JavaMail API, 1-21
 - example, 50-1
- JavaServer Faces application development
 - bean property, 12-5
 - Bean Validation, 12-14
 - managed beans, 12-1
 - web pages, 10-1
- JavaServer Faces applications
 - configuring. *See* configuring JavaServer Faces applications
 - HTML tags, 10-2
 - queueing messages, 12-13
- JavaServer Faces core tag library, 10-1, 10-27
 - selectItems tag, 10-18
 - actionListener tag, 10-27, 11-6, 15-3
 - ajax tag, 13-3
 - attribute tag, 10-28
 - convertDateTime tag, 10-27, 11-3
 - convertDateTime tag attributes, 11-4
 - converter tag, 10-27, 11-3, 15-26
 - converterId attribute, 11-2
 - convertNumber tag, 10-27, 11-2, 11-4
 - convertNumber tag attributes, 11-5
 - facet tag, 10-20, 10-28
 - loadBundle tag, 10-28
 - metadata tag, 10-23, 10-28
 - param tag, 10-11, 10-28
 - selectItem tag, 10-17, 10-18, 10-28
 - selectItems tag, 10-17, 10-18, 10-28
 - type attribute, 11-6
 - validateDoubleRange tag, 10-28, 11-8
 - validateLength tag, 10-28, 11-8
 - validateLongRange tag, 10-28, 11-8, 11-9
 - validator tag, 7-10, 10-28, 15-27
 - custom validator tags, 15-30
 - valueChangeListener tag, 10-27, 11-6
 - viewparam tag, 10-23
- JavaServer Faces standard HTML render kit
 - library, 7-7, 16-28
 - html_basic TLD, 15-21
 - See also* component tags
- JavaServer Faces standard UI components, 7-5, 15-1
 - UIComponent component, 15-25
- JavaServer Faces tag libraries, 8-2
 - JavaServer Faces core tag library, 10-1, 10-27
 - JavaServer Faces HTML render kit tag
 - library, 10-1
 - namespace directives, 10-2
- JavaServer Faces Technology
 - Faces Flows, 16-5
- JavaServer Faces technology, 1-6, 1-18, 7-1
 - advantages, 7-3
 - bookmarkable URLs, 10-23
 - component tags. *See* component tags
 - composite components, 14-1
 - FacesContext class. *See* FacesContext class
 - FacesServlet class, 16-32
 - features, 7-2
 - partial processing, 13-8
 - partial rendering, 13-8
 - using Ajax with, 13-1
 - Validator interface, 12-12
 - See also* component rendering model
 - See also* component tags
 - See also* conversion model
 - See also* event and listener model
 - See also* Facelets
 - See also* JavaServer Faces standard UI components
 - See also* lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces application
 - See also* UI component behavioral interfaces
 - See also* UI component classes
 - See also* validation model
- JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library (JSTL), 1-19
- javax.servlet package, 17-1
- javax.servlet.http package, 17-1
- JAXB, 1-23
 - using with JAX-RS, 25-11
- JAXP, 1-23
- JAX-RS, 1-19, 23-1
 - accessing XML documents, 25-11
 - advanced features, 25-1
 - annotations, 25-1
 - application overview, 23-3
 - conditional HTTP requests, 25-9
 - converting CDI managed beans to root resource classes, 25-8
 - converting enterprise beans to root resource classes, 25-8
 - entity providers, 23-8
 - examples, 23-14, 25-17
 - extracting Java type of request or response, 25-3
 - form parameters, 25-3
 - integrating with CDI, 25-8
 - integrating with EJB technology, 25-8
 - introduction, 21-2
 - path parameters, 25-2
 - path templates, 23-5
 - query parameters, 25-2
 - reference implementation, 23-1
 - request headers, 25-1
 - request method designators, 23-2, 23-6
 - resource class methods, 25-7
 - resource classes, 23-2
 - resource methods, 23-2
 - runtime content negotiation, 25-10
 - runtime resource resolution, 25-7
 - static content negotiation, 25-10
 - subresource locators, 25-7

- subresource methods, 25-7
- subresources, 25-7
- URI, 25-1
- using with JAXB, 25-11
- JAX-WS, 1-24
 - defined, 22-1
 - examples, 22-2
 - introduction, 21-1
 - service endpoint interfaces, 22-2
 - specification, 22-10
- JCE, 44-6
- JDBC API, 1-22, 3-2
- JMS, 1-20
 - achieving reliability and performance, 42-19
 - administered objects, 42-7
 - application client examples, 43-2
 - architecture, 42-4
 - basic concepts, 42-4
 - definition, 42-2
 - examples, 43-1, 43-26, 43-29
 - introduction, 42-1
 - Java EE platform, 42-3, 42-26
 - messaging domains, 42-4
 - programming model, 42-6
- JMSConsumer interface, 42-10
- JMSContext interface, 42-9
- JMSCorrelationID message header field, 42-16
- JMSDeliveryMode message header field, 42-16
- JMSDeliveryTime message header field, 42-16
- JMSDestination message header field, 42-16
- JMSException class, 42-19
- JMSExpiration message header field, 42-16
- JMSMessageID message header field, 42-16
- JMSPriority message header field, 42-16
- JMSProducer interface, 42-10
- JMSRedelivered message header field, 42-17
- JMSReplyTo message header field, 42-17
- JMSTimestamp message header field, 42-16
- JMSType message header field, 42-17
- JNDI, 1-23, 3-1
 - data source naming subcontexts, 1-23
 - enterprise bean lookup, 26-6
 - enterprise bean naming subcontexts, 1-23
 - environment naming contexts, 1-23
 - jms naming subcontext, 42-9
 - namespace for JMS administered objects, 42-7
 - naming contexts, 1-23
 - naming environments, 1-23
 - naming subcontexts, 1-23
- jsf.js file, 13-9
- JSR 339. *See* JAX-RS
- JSR 346. *See* Contexts and Dependency Injection for Java EE (CDI)
- JSSE, 44-6
- JSTL, 1-19
- JTA, 1-19, 48-7
- JTS API, 48-7
- JUnit, 29-4

K

- Kerberos, 44-6
- key pairs, 47-2
- keystores, 44-6, 47-1, 47-2
 - managing, 47-2
- keytool utility, 47-2

L

- lifecycle of a JavaServer Faces application, 7-3, 7-13
 - action and value-change event processing, 7-9
 - Apply Request Values phase, 7-16, 15-14
 - custom converters, 15-24, 15-25
 - getRendererType method (Render Response phase), 15-18
 - immediate attribute, 15-7
 - Invoke Application phase, 7-17
 - performing encoding (Render Response phase), 15-12
 - Process Validations phase, 7-16
 - Render Response phase, 7-17
 - renderResponse method, 7-14, 7-16, 7-17
 - responseComplete method, 7-15, 7-16, 7-17
 - Restore View phase, 7-15
 - saving state, 15-16
 - Update Model Values phase, 7-17
 - updateModels method, 7-17
 - Validator interface, 15-29
 - views, 7-15
- listener classes, 17-2
 - defining, 17-2
- listener interfaces, 17-2
- listeners
 - HTTP, 44-9
 - IIOp, 44-9
- local interfaces, 26-8
- local transactions, 42-24
- localization, 20-1
 - Bean Validation, 51-2
- log, server, 2-7
- login configuration, 45-6, 45-9
- login method, 45-10
- login modules, 47-15
- logout method, 45-10

M

- managed bean creation facility, 16-14
- managed bean declarations, 15-7
 - key-class element, 16-19
 - list-entries element, 16-17
 - managed-bean element, 16-15
 - managed-bean element, 16-21
 - managed-bean-name element, 16-16
 - managed-property element, 16-17
 - map-entries element, 16-17, 16-19
 - map-entry element, 16-19
 - null-value elements, 16-17
 - value element, 16-17
- managed bean methods

- attributes. *See* attributes referencing managed bean methods
- referencing. *See* referencing managed bean methods
- writing. *See* writing managed bean methods
- managed bean properties, 11-2, 12-1, 12-3, 15-31
 - bound to component instances, 12-9
 - UIData properties, 12-5
 - UIInput and UIOutput properties, 12-5
 - UISelectBoolean properties, 12-6
 - UISelectedItem properties, 12-8
 - UISelectItems properties, 12-8
 - UISelectMany properties, 12-7
 - UISelectOne properties, 12-7
 - writing, 12-3
- managed beans, 7-2
 - composite components, 14-2
 - configuring in JavaServer Faces technology, 16-1
 - conversion model, 7-8
 - custom component alternative, 15-3
 - defined for CDI, 31-4
 - developing, 8-4
 - event and listener model, 7-9
 - JavaServer Faces technology, 12-1
 - loading JavaScript, 13-10
 - method binding, 10-9
 - properties. *See* managed bean properties
 - See also* value binding
- Managed Beans specification, 1-19, 31-1
- MapMessage interface, 42-17
- matrix parameters
 - JAX-RS, 23-13
- Maven tool, 2-3
- message acknowledgment, 42-20
 - bean-managed transactions, 42-33
 - example, 43-14
- message bodies, 42-17
- message consumers, 42-10
 - shared, 42-15
- message consumption, 42-6
 - asynchronous, 42-6, 43-9
 - synchronous, 42-6, 43-7
- message headers, 42-16
- message IDs
 - JMSMessageID message header field, 42-16
- Message interface, 42-17
- message listeners, 26-4, 42-11
 - examples, 43-9, 43-38
- message producers, 42-10
- message properties, 42-17
- message security, 45-2
- message selectors, 42-12
- MessageBodyReader interface, 23-8
- MessageBodyWriter interface, 23-8
- message-driven beans, 1-17, 26-4
 - accessing, 26-4
 - coding, 43-30, 43-34, 43-38
 - defined, 26-4
 - examples, 43-29, 43-32, 43-36
 - garbage collection, 26-13

- introduction, 42-29
 - onMessage method, 26-5, 43-30
 - requirements, 43-30
 - transactions, 26-5, 48-2, 48-7
- MessageListener interface, 42-11
- messages
 - integrity, 47-5
 - MessageFormat pattern, 10-11, 10-28
 - outputFormat tag, 10-11
 - param tag, 10-11, 10-28
 - parameter substitution tags, 10-28
 - queueing messages, 12-13, 16-22
 - securing, 44-8
 - using the FacesMessage class to create a message, 16-23
- messages, JMS
 - body formats, 42-17
 - browsing, 42-18
 - definition, 42-4
 - delivery delay, 42-23
 - delivery modes, 42-22
 - expiration, 42-22
 - headers, 42-16
 - introduction, 42-16
 - persistence, 42-22
 - priority levels, 42-22
 - properties, 42-17
- messaging domains, 42-4
 - point-to-point, 42-5
 - publish/subscribe, 42-5
- messaging, definition, 42-1
- metadata annotations
 - resource adapters, 49-4
 - security, 44-8
- Metamodel API, 38-1
 - using, 36-14, 38-2
- method binding
 - method expressions, 15-14
 - method-binding expressions, 7-11, 16-27
- method expressions, 7-9, 11-10
- method permissions, 46-4
 - annotations, 46-4
- mutual authentication, 47-5, 47-7

N

- naming contexts, 1-23
- naming environments, 1-23
- navigation
 - configuring, 7-10, 16-26
 - implicit, 7-10
- navigation model, 7-10
 - action attribute, 10-12, 11-10, 15-7
 - action methods, 12-11, 16-26
 - ActionEvent class, 11-11
 - configuring navigation rules, 16-26
 - logical outcome, 12-11, 16-26
 - NavigationHandler class, 7-11
 - referencing methods that perform navigation, 11-10, 12-11

- writing a managed bean method to perform navigation processing, 12-11

NetBeans IDE, 2-3

NON_PERSISTENT delivery mode, 42-22

non-repudiation, 44-5

O

ObjectMessage interface, 42-17

objects, administered, 42-7

- creating and removing, 43-3

observer methods, CDI, 33-7

onMessage method

- introduction, 42-11
- message-driven beans, 26-5, 42-30, 43-30

P

package-applclient tool, 1-25

parameters

- extracting, 23-11

path parameters

- JAX-RS, 23-13, 25-2

path templates

- JAX-RS, 23-5

permissions

- security policy, 44-10

persistence

- BLOBs, 36-8
- cascade operations, 36-7
- CLOBs, 36-8
- collections, 35-3
- concurrent access to entity data, 40-1
- configuration, 35-17
- context, 35-14
- embeddable classes, 35-10
- entities, 35-1
- examples, 36-1
- JMS example, 43-36
- JMS messages, 42-22
- locking strategies, 40-1
- many-to-many, 36-12
- maps, 35-4
- one-to-many, 36-3
- one-to-one, 36-3
- overview, 35-1
- persistence units, 35-17
- persistent fields, 35-2
- primary keys, 35-6, 36-4, 36-5
- properties, 35-3
- queries, 35-1, 35-18, 36-10, 37-2
 - creating, 38-4
 - Criteria, 38-1
 - dynamic, 37-2
 - executing, 38-9
 - expressions, 38-6, 38-7
 - joins, 38-5
 - parameters, 37-2, 37-3
 - path navigation, 38-6
 - results, 38-6, 38-8

- static, 37-2
- typesafe, 38-1
 - See also* query language
- query language, 35-9
- relationships, 36-2
- scope, 35-17
- second-level cache, 41-1
- self-referential relationships, 36-2
- string-based criteria queries, 39-1
- temporal types, 36-8

persistence units

- query language, 37-1, 37-14

PERSISTENT delivery mode, 42-22

pluggable audit modules, 44-10

pluggable authorization providers, 44-10

point-to-point messaging domain, 42-5

- See also* queues

POJOs, 1-2

policy files, 44-6

primary keys, 36-3

- compound, 36-5
- defined, 35-6
- examples, 35-7
- generated, 36-4

principal, 44-12

PrintWriter class, 17-6

priority levels, for messages, 42-22

- JMSPriority message header field, 42-16

producer fields

- CDI, 33-4
- example, 34-8

producer methods

- CDI, 31-10, 33-4
- example, 34-5

programmatic security, 44-2, 44-9, 45-2, 46-2

- example, 46-13

programming model, JMS, 42-6

providers

- JMS, 42-4

proxies, 22-1

public key certificates, 47-5

public-key cryptography, 47-2

publish/subscribe messaging domain

- durable subscriptions, 42-13
- introduction, 42-5
- See also* topics

Q

qualifiers

- using in CDI, 31-5

Quality of Service, 44-5

query language

- ABS function, 37-23
- abstract schemas, 37-1, 37-3, 37-15
- ALL expression, 37-21
- ANY expression, 37-21
- arithmetic functions, 37-22
- ASC keyword, 37-27
- AVG function, 37-25

- BETWEEN expression, 37-7, 37-19
- Boolean literals, 37-18
- Boolean logic, 37-24
- case expressions, 37-23
- collection member expressions, 37-15, 37-21
- collections, 37-15, 37-20, 37-21
- compared to SQL, 37-5, 37-14, 37-16
- comparison operators, 37-7, 37-19
- CONCAT function, 37-22
- conditional expressions, 37-6, 37-17, 37-18, 37-24
- constructors, 37-26
- COUNT function, 37-25
- DELETE expression, 37-8
- DELETE statement, 37-4
- DESC keyword, 37-27
- DISTINCT keyword, 37-4
- domain of query, 37-1, 37-12, 37-14
- duplicate values, 37-4
- enum literals, 37-18
- equality, 37-24
- ESCAPE clause, 37-20
- examples, 36-10, 37-4
- EXISTS expression, 37-21
- FETCH JOIN operator, 37-16
- FROM clause, 37-3, 37-12
- grammar, 37-8
- GROUP BY clause, 37-3, 37-27
- HAVING clause, 37-4, 37-27
- identification variables, 37-3, 37-12, 37-14
- identifiers, 37-12
- IN operator, 37-16, 37-19
- INNER JOIN operator, 37-16
- input parameters, 37-6, 37-18
- IS EMPTY expression, 37-7
- IS FALSE operator, 37-24
- IS NULL expression, 37-7
- IS TRUE operator, 37-24
- JOIN statement, 37-5, 37-15
- LEFT JOIN operator, 37-16
- LEFT OUTER JOIN operator, 37-16
- LENGTH function, 37-22
- LIKE expression, 37-6, 37-20
- literals, 37-18
- LOCATE function, 37-22
- LOWER function, 37-22
- MAX function, 37-25
- MEMBER expression, 37-21
- MIN function, 37-26
- MOD function, 37-23
- multiple declarations, 37-14
- multiple relationships, 37-6
- named parameters, 37-5, 37-18
- navigation, 37-5, 37-6, 37-15, 37-17
- negation, 37-24
- NOT operator, 37-24
- null values, 37-20, 37-24
- numeric comparisons, 37-24
- numeric literals, 37-18
- operator precedence, 37-19
- operators, 37-19

- ORDER BY clause, 37-4, 37-27
- parameters, 37-4
- parentheses, 37-18
- path expressions, 37-2, 37-16
- positional parameters, 37-18
- range variables, 37-15
- relationship fields, 37-2
- relationships, 37-1, 37-5, 37-6
- return types, 37-25
- root, 37-15
- scope, 37-1
- SELECT clause, 37-3, 37-25
- setNamedParameter method, 37-5
- SIZE function, 37-23
- SQRT function, 37-23
- state fields, 37-2
- string comparison, 37-24
- string functions, 37-22
- string literals, 37-18
- subqueries, 37-21
- SUBSTRING function, 37-22
- SUM function, 37-26
- syntax, 37-3, 37-8
- TRIM function, 37-22
- types, 37-17, 37-24
- UPDATE expression, 37-4, 37-8
- UPPER function, 37-22
- WHERE clause, 37-3, 37-17
- wildcards, 37-20
- query parameters
 - JAX-RS, 23-11, 25-2
- query roots, 38-5
- Queue interface, 42-8
- QueueBrowser interface, 42-18
 - JMS client example, 43-11
- queues, 42-8
 - browsing, 42-18, 43-11
 - creating, 42-8, 43-42
 - injecting resources, 43-29
 - temporary, 42-23, 43-38

R

- realms, 44-10, 44-11
 - admin-realm, 44-11
 - certificate, 44-11, 47-4
 - configuring, 44-10
 - file, 44-11
- receiveBody method, 42-18
- recover method, 42-21
- redelivery of messages, 42-20, 42-21
 - JMSRedelivered message header field, 42-17
- referencing managed bean methods, 11-10
 - for handling action events, 11-11, 12-12
 - for handling value-change events, 11-11
 - for performing navigation, 11-10, 12-11
 - for performing validation, 11-11, 12-12
- registering custom converters, 16-25
 - converter element, 16-25
- registering custom renderers, 16-28

- renderer element, 16-29
- render-kit element, 16-28, 16-29
- registering custom UI components, 15-9, 16-30
 - component element, 16-30
- registering custom validators, 16-24
 - validator element, 16-24
- registering messages, 16-21
 - resource-bundle element, 16-22
- relationship fields
 - query language, 37-2
- relationships
 - direction, 35-8
 - unidirectional, 36-4
- reliability, JMS
 - basic mechanisms, 42-21
 - durable subscriptions, 42-13
 - local transactions, 42-24
 - message acknowledgment, 42-20
 - message delivery delay, 42-23
 - message expiration, 42-22
 - message persistence, 42-22
 - message priority levels, 42-22
 - temporary destinations, 42-23
- remote interfaces, 26-9
- Remote Method Invocation (RMI), and messaging, 42-1
- request headers
 - JAX-RS, 25-1
- request method designators
 - JAX-RS, 23-2, 23-6
- Request objects
 - JAX-RS, 25-10
- request parameters
 - extracting, 23-11
- RequestDispatcher interface, 17-10
- request/reply mechanism
 - JMSCorrelationID message header field, 42-16
 - JMSReplyTo message header field, 42-17
 - temporary destinations and, 42-23
- requests, 17-5
 - customizing, 17-8
 - getting information from, 17-5
 - retrieving a locale, 20-2
 - See also* HTTP requests
- Required transaction attribute, 42-33
- resource adapters, 1-20, 49-1
 - example, 50-1
 - metadata annotations, 49-4
 - security, 47-17
- resource bundles, 20-1
 - Bean Validation, 51-2
- resource classes
 - JAX-RS, 23-2
- resource methods
 - JAX-RS, 23-2
- resources, 49-1
 - JMS, 42-29
 - See also* data sources
- ResponseBuilder class, 23-8
- responses, 17-6

- buffering output, 17-7
 - customizing, 17-8
 - setting headers, 17-5
 - See also* HTTP responses
- RESTful web services, 1-19, 23-1
 - defined, 23-1
- roles, 44-12
 - application, 44-15
 - declaring, 45-10
 - mapping to groups, 44-15
 - mapping to users, 44-15
 - referencing, 46-4
 - security, 44-13, 45-10, 46-4
- rollback method, 48-6, 48-7, 48-8
- rollback method (JMS), 42-24
- rollbacks. *See* transactions, rollbacks
- root resource classes, 23-2
- run-as identity, 46-8

S

- SAAJ, 1-24
- SASL, 44-6
- schema
 - deployment descriptors, 44-9
- schemagen tool, 1-25
- scopes
 - CDI, 31-7
 - introduction, 6-6
 - JavaServer Faces technology, 16-2
 - servlets, 17-4
- secure connections, 44-16
- Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), 44-16
- security
 - annotations, 44-8, 45-16, 46-1
 - application, 44-5, 44-6
 - application clients, 47-15
 - callback handlers, 47-15
 - component-managed sign-on, 47-17
 - constraints, 45-3
 - container trust, 46-9
 - container-managed sign-on, 47-16
 - containers, 44-1, 44-8
 - context for enterprise beans, 46-7
 - declarative, 44-1, 44-9, 45-2, 46-1
 - deploying enterprise beans, 46-10
 - EIS applications, 47-16
 - end-to-end, 44-8
 - enterprise applications, 46-1
 - enterprise beans, 46-1
 - examples, 45-18, 46-10, 46-13
 - groups, 44-12
 - introduction, 44-1
 - JAAS login modules, 47-16
 - Java SE, 44-5
 - login forms, 47-15
 - login modules, 47-15
 - mechanism features, 44-4
 - mechanisms, 44-5, 44-6
 - message, 45-2

- message-layer, 44-8
- method permissions, 46-4
- overview, 44-1
- policy domain, 44-12
- programmable, 44-2, 44-9, 45-2, 45-10, 46-2
- programmable login, 47-16
- propagating identity, 46-8
- realms, 44-11
- resource adapters, 47-17
- role names, 45-10, 46-4
- roles, 44-12, 44-13, 45-10, 46-4
- run-as identity, 46-8
- simple walkthrough, 44-2
- transport-layer, 44-7, 44-16
- users, 44-12
- web applications, 45-1
- web components, 45-1
- security constraints, 45-3
 - multiple, 45-5
- security domain, 44-12
- security identity
 - propagating, 46-8
 - specific identity, 46-9
- security role references, 45-14
- security roles, 44-13, 46-4
- security-role-mapping element, 44-15
- security-role-ref element, 45-14
- send method, 42-10
- sending messages
 - JMS client example, 43-4
- sending messages asynchronously, 42-25
- server authentication, 47-5
- server certificates, 47-1
- server log, 2-7
- service methods
 - servlets, 17-5
- Servlet interface, 17-1
- ServletContext interface, 17-11
- ServletInputStream class, 17-6
- ServletOutputStream class, 17-6
- ServletRequest interface, 17-5
- ServletResponse interface, 17-6
- servlets, 1-6, 17-1
 - binary data, 17-6
 - character data, 17-6
 - compiling, 27-3
 - creating, 17-4
 - examples, 6-9, 17-23, 27-2
 - finalizing, 17-13
 - initializing, 17-5
 - lifecycle, 17-2
 - lifecycle events, 17-2
 - packaging, 27-3
 - scope objects, 17-4
 - service methods, 17-5, 17-14, 17-15
 - specifying initialization parameters, 17-5
 - tracking service requests, 17-13
 - uploading files with, 17-15, 19-1
- session beans, 1-17, 26-2
 - activation, 26-12
 - bean-managed concurrency, 28-8, 28-10
 - business interfaces, 26-5
 - clients, 26-2
 - concurrent access, 28-8
 - container-managed concurrency, 28-8
 - databases, 48-6
 - eager initialization, 28-7
 - examples, 27-1, 28-1, 28-7, 28-14, 43-32
 - handling errors, 28-11
 - no-interface views, 26-5
 - passivation, 26-12
 - requirements, 28-2
 - singleton, 26-3, 28-7
 - stateful, 26-2, 26-3
 - stateless, 26-3, 26-4
 - transactions, 48-2, 48-6, 48-7
 - web services, 26-10, 28-14
 - See also* asynchronous method invocation
- Session interface, 42-9
- sessions, 17-12
 - associating attributes, 17-12
 - associating with user, 17-13
 - invalidating, 17-12
 - notifying objects associated with, 17-12
- sessions, JMS, 42-9
 - managing in enterprise bean applications, 42-29
- SessionSynchronization interface, 48-6
- setRollbackOnly method, 42-33, 48-6, 48-8
- shared durable subscriptions, 42-15
- shared message consumers, 42-15
- sign-on
 - component-managed, 47-16, 47-17
 - container-managed, 47-16
- Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL), 44-6
- SingleThreadModel interface, 17-4
- SOAP, 21-1, 22-1, 22-10
- SOAP messages, 1-11, 1-24
 - securing, 44-8
- SOAP with Attachments API for Java (SAAJ), 1-24
- specialization, CDI, 33-3
- SQL, 1-22, 37-5, 37-14, 37-16
- SQL92, 37-24
- SSL, 44-7, 44-16, 45-5, 47-5
 - connectors, GlassFish Server, 44-17
 - handshake, 44-16
 - verifying support, 44-17
- standard converters, 7-8
 - converter tags, 11-3
 - NumberConverter class, 11-2
 - using, 11-1
- standard validators, 7-9
 - using, 11-8
- state fields, query language, 37-2
- stereotypes, CDI, 33-12
- StreamMessage interface, 42-17
- string-based criteria queries, 39-1
- subresources, JAX-RS, 25-7
- subscription names, for durable subscribers, 42-13
- substitution parameters, defining. *See* messages,

- param tag
- synchronous message consumption, 42-6
 - JMS client example, 43-7

T

- templating
 - Facelets, 8-8
- temporary JMS destinations, 42-23
 - examples, 43-38
- testing
 - enterprise beans, 29-4
 - unit, 29-4
- TextMessage interface, 42-17
- timer service, 28-16
 - automatic timers, 28-16, 28-20
 - calendar-based timer expressions, 28-16
 - cancelling timers, 28-20
 - creating timers, 28-19
 - examples, 28-21
 - exceptions, 28-21
 - getInfo method, 28-21
 - getNextTimeout method, 28-21
 - getTimeRemaining method, 28-21
 - getting information, 28-21
 - programmatically timers, 28-16, 28-18
 - saving timers, 28-20
 - transactions, 28-21
- timestamps, for messages
 - JMSTimestamp message header field, 42-16
- Topic interface, 42-8
- topics, 42-8
 - creating, 42-8, 43-42
 - durable subscriptions, 42-13
 - temporary, 42-23
- transactions, 48-1
 - application-managed, 35-15
 - attributes, 48-3, 48-5
 - bean-managed, 42-33, 48-7, 48-8
 - boundaries, 48-2, 48-6, 48-7
 - business methods. *See* business methods, transactions
 - commits, 48-2, 48-6
 - container-managed, 42-32, 48-2
 - container-managed transaction demarcation, 48-2
 - defined, 48-2
 - distributed, 42-32
 - examples, 43-18
 - exceptions. *See* exceptions, transactions
 - JDBC, 48-8
 - JMS and enterprise bean applications, 42-29
 - JTA, 48-7
 - local, 42-24
 - managers, 48-4, 48-7, 48-8
 - message-driven beans. *See* message-driven beans, transactions
 - nested, 48-2, 48-7
 - Required attribute, 42-33
 - rollbacks, 48-2, 48-6, 48-7
 - scope, 48-3

- session beans. *See* session beans, transactions
- timeouts, 48-8
- timer service, 28-21
 - web components, 48-9
- transport guarantees, 45-5
- transport-guarantee element, 45-5
- transport-layer security, 44-7, 44-16
- truststores, 47-1, 47-2
 - managing, 47-2

U

- UI component behavioral interfaces, 7-6
 - ActionSource interface, 7-6, 7-9, 15-10, 15-19
 - ActionSource2 interface, 7-6, 15-10
 - ClientBehaviorHolder interface, 7-7
 - ConvertibleValueHolder interface, 7-6
 - EditableValueHolder interface, 7-6, 15-10
 - NamingContainer interface, 7-6, 15-10
 - StateHolder interface, 7-6, 15-10, 15-16
 - SystemEventListenerHolder interface, 7-7
 - ValueHolder interface, 7-6, 15-10
- UI component classes, 7-5, 7-7, 15-2
 - javax.faces.component package, 15-10
 - UIColumn class, 7-5
 - UICommand class, 7-5, 7-7
 - UIComponent class, 7-5, 7-7
 - UIComponentBase class, 7-5, 15-10, 15-12
 - UIData class, 7-5, 12-5
 - UIForm class, 7-6
 - UIGraphic class, 7-6
 - UIInput and UIOutput classes, 12-5
 - UIInput class, 7-6, 7-9
 - UIMessage class, 7-6
 - UIMessages class, 7-6
 - UIOutcomeTarget class, 7-6
 - UIOutput class, 7-6, 7-8
 - UIPanel class, 7-6
 - UIParameter class, 7-6
 - UISelectBoolean class, 7-6, 12-6
 - UISelectItem class, 7-6, 12-8
 - UISelectItems class, 7-6, 12-8
 - UISelectMany class, 7-6, 12-7
 - UISelectOne class, 7-6, 7-7, 12-7
 - UIViewRoot class, 7-6
 - See also* custom UI components
- UnavailableException class, 17-5
- undeploying modules and applications, 6-8
- Unicode character set, 20-4
- unified expression language. *See* EL
- Uniform Resource Identifiers (URIs), 23-1
- URI path parameters
 - JAX-RS, 23-13
- URI path templates
 - JAX-RS, 23-4, 23-5
- URL paths, 6-9
- US-ASCII character set, 20-4
- user data constraints, 45-3, 45-5
- user-data-constraint element, 45-5
- users, 44-12

- adding to GlassFish Server, 44-13
- managing, 44-13
- UserTransaction interface, 48-6, 48-7, 48-8, 48-9
 - message-driven beans, 42-33
- using pages, 8-12
- UTF-8 character encoding, 20-5
- utility classes, 26-11

V

- validating input. *See* Bean Validation, validation model
- validation
 - customizing, 51-1
 - entities, 35-4
 - groups, 51-2
 - localization, 51-2
 - messages, 51-2
 - ordering, 51-3
- validation model, 7-5, 7-9
 - referencing a method that performs validation, 11-11
 - validator attribute, 10-9, 11-10, 11-11, 12-12
 - Validator implementation, 7-9, 15-31
 - Validator interface, 7-10, 12-11, 12-12
 - custom validator tags, 15-30
 - implementing, 15-28
 - writing a managed bean method to perform validation, 12-12
 - See also* validators
- Validator implementation classes, 7-9, 11-8
 - DoubleRangeValidator class, 10-28, 11-8
 - LengthValidator class, 10-28, 11-8
 - LongRangeValidator class, 10-28, 11-8, 11-9
- validator tags
 - composite components, 14-2
 - validateDoubleRange tag, 11-8
 - validateLength tag, 11-8
 - validateLongRange tag, 11-8, 11-9
 - validator tag, 7-10, 15-30
- validators, 7-5, 7-15
 - custom validators, 10-28, 15-30
 - default, 16-24
 - registering, 11-9
- value binding
 - acceptable types of component values, 12-4
 - component instances to bean properties. *See* component binding
 - component values and instances to managed bean properties, 15-31
 - component values to implicit objects, 15-33
 - component values to managed bean properties, 15-32
 - properties, 12-4
 - value attribute, 12-4, 15-7, 15-31, 15-32
 - value expressions, 12-6, 15-14, 15-34
 - value-binding expressions, 15-32
- value expressions, 12-3
 - ValueExpression class, 12-3
- value-change events, 7-9, 15-19

- processValueChange(ValueChangeEvent) method, 15-19
- processValueChangeEvent method, 12-13
- referencing methods that handle value-change events, 11-11
- type attribute, 11-6
- ValueChangeEvent class, 11-6, 15-19
- valueChangeListener attribute, 10-9, 11-10, 12-13
- ValueChangeListener class, 11-6, 12-13, 15-19
- ValueChangeListener implementation, 15-19
- valueChangeListener tag, 10-27, 11-6, 15-3
- writing a managed bean method to handle value-change events, 12-13

- Variant class
 - JAX-RS, 25-10

W

- W3C, 1-23, 22-1, 22-10
- WAR files, 5-1
- web applications, 5-4, 6-1
 - configuring, 6-2, 6-9
 - deployment descriptors, 6-2
 - document roots, 5-4
 - establishing the locale, 20-2
 - internationalizing and localizing, 20-1
 - JMS example, 43-26
 - maintaining state across requests, 17-12
 - parsing and formatting localized dates and numbers, 20-4
 - presentation-oriented, 6-1
 - providing localized messages, 20-2
 - retrieving localized messages, 20-3
 - securing, 45-1
 - service-oriented, 6-1
 - setting the resource bundle, 20-3
 - specifying context parameters, 6-12
 - specifying welcome files, 6-13
- web clients, 1-5, 6-1
 - examples, 27-2
- web components, 1-6, 6-1
 - applets bundled with, 1-6
 - concurrent access to shared resources, 17-4
 - forwarding to other web components, 17-11
 - including other web resources, 17-11
 - invoking other web resources, 17-10
 - mapping exceptions to error screens, 6-13
 - mapping filters to, 17-9
 - scope objects, 17-4
 - securing, 45-1
 - sharing information, 17-3
 - transactions, 48-9
 - types, 1-6
 - utility classes bundled with, 1-6
 - web context, 17-11
- web container, 1-10, 6-2
 - loading and initializing servlets, 17-2
 - mapping URLs to web components, 6-9
- web modules, 5-2, 5-4
 - packaging and deploying, 6-6

- undeploying, 6-8
- viewing deployed, 6-7
- web pages
 - XHTML, 8-2
- web resource collections, 45-3, 45-4
- web resources, 5-4
 - Facelets, 8-12
 - mapping filters to, 17-9
 - unprotected, 45-4
- web services, 1-10
 - declaring references to, 6-15
 - endpoint implementation classes, 28-14
 - examples, 22-2, 28-14
 - introduction, 21-1
 - JAX-RS compared to JAX-WS, 21-1
 - See also* enterprise beans, web services
- web-resource-collection element, 45-4
- web.xml file, 5-4, 16-31, 44-9, 46-3
- welcome files, 6-13
- work flows, 26-4
- writing managed bean methods, 12-11
 - for handling action events, 12-12
 - for handling value-change events, 12-13
 - for performing navigation, 12-11
 - for performing validation, 12-12
- writing managed bean properties
 - converters, 12-10
 - listeners, 12-10
 - validators, 12-10
- WSDL, 1-11, 21-1, 22-1, 22-10
- wsgen tool, 1-25
- wsimport tool, 1-25

X

- xjc tool, 1-25
- XML, 1-11, 22-1
- XML schema
 - mappings of Java classes to XML data types, 22-9
 - mappings to Java data types, 22-9

